

# ΞΕΝΟΦΩΝΤΟΣ ΚΥΡΟΥ ΑΝΑΒΑΣΙΣ



(c) 2024 Benjamin Crowell, CC-BY-SA

Source code: <https://bitbucket.org/ben-crowell/ransom>

English translation by H.G. Dakyns, 1901.

Some glosses are based on entries in Wiktionary, CC-BY-SA, Cunliffe, or Liddell and Scott.

Cover art: Aneta Ribarska, CC-BY-SA

*vocabulary*

**ἀθροίζω** press close together; (mid) muster  
**ἀμφότερος** both ~amphora  
**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**ἀντί** for, equivalent to  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ῶ) show, point out; (mid) declare  
**ἀποκτείνω** kill  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away  
**ἀρχήν** (adv) originally  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**ἀσθενέω** be weak, sick  
**ἀτιμάζω** insult, dishonor  
**βασιλεία** kingdom  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**βίος** life; also βιοτή  
**βιόω** live ~biology  
**βουλεύω** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**διαβάλλω** throw across; slander  
**διατίθημι** arrange; set out goods for sale  
**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω, ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐξαιτέω** demand  
**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm

**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**καθίστημι** set down, land  
**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf) there is a danger that  
**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon  
**μῆποτε** absolutely never  
**νέος** young; neuter: recently ~neon  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman  
**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian  
**σατράπης** (m, 1) satrap, Persian governor  
**συλλαμβάνω** arrest, capture  
**τελευτάω** bring about, finish  
**τελευτή** conclusion, fulfilment  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τριακόσιοι** three hundred  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπάρχω** start, lead, set an example  
**ὑποπτεύω** guess, observe, be suspicious of  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy

## 1.1

Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίνονται παῖδες δύο, πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἄρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἠσθένει Δαρεῖος καὶ ὑπόπτει τελευτήν τοῦ βίου, ἐβούλετο τὰ παιδὲ ἀμφοτέρω παρεῖναι. ὁ μὲν οὖν πρεσβύτερος παρῶν ἐτύγχανε· Κῦρον δὲ μεταπέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐποίησε, καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπέδειξε πάντων ὅσοι ἐς Καστωλοῦ πεδῖον ἀθροίζονται. ἀναβαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν Τισσαφέρην ὡς φίλον, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔχων ὀπλίτας ἀνέβη τριακοσίους, ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίαν Παρράσιον.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε Δαρεῖος καὶ κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν Ἄρταξέρξης, Τισσαφέρην διαβάλλει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν ὡς ἐπιβουλεύει αὐτῷ. ὁ δὲ πείθεται καὶ συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον ὡς ἀποκτενῶν· ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ἐξαιτησαμένη αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν. ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπῆλθε κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτμασθεῖς, βουλεύεται ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλά, ἣν δύνηται, βασιλεύσει ἀντ' ἐκεῖνου. Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπῆρχε τῷ Κύρῳ, φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἄρταξέρξην. ὅστις δ' ἀφικνεῖτο τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς αὐτὸν πάντας οὕτω διατιθεὶς ἀπεπέμπετο ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ δὲ

1.1

Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίνονται παῖδες δύο, πρεσβύτερος μὲν

Ἄρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος· ἐπεὶ δὲ **|be weak, 'sick** καὶ

**|guess, ob-**βίου, ἐβούλετο τῶ παῖδε ἀμφοτέρω παρεῖναι.  
**serve, be**fulfilment

**suspicious** πρεσβύτερος παρὼν ἐτύγχανε· Κῦρον δὲ **|send; (mid) summon**  
**of**

ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν **|satrap, Per-**ίησε, καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν  
**sian gover-**

ἀπέδειξε πάντων ὅσοι ἐς **|for** στῶλοῦ πεδίου ἀθροίζονται. ἀναβαίνει

οὖν ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν Τισσαφέρην ὡς φίλον, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔχων

ὀπίστας ἀνέβη τριακοσίους, ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίαν Παρράσιον.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε Δαρείος καὶ κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν

Ἄρταξέρξης, Τισσαφέρην **|throw** ἔν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν  
**across;**

ὡς **|plot, plan, harm**· ὁ **|slander**εται καὶ συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον ὡς

ἀποκτενῶν· ἡ δὲ μήτηρ **|demand** αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ

τὴν **| (adv) originally** πῆλθε κινδυνεύσας καὶ **|dishonor** βουλεύεται

ὅπως **|absolutely** ἔσται ἐπὶ τῶ ἀδελφῶ, ἀλλά, ἦν δύνηται, βασιλεύσει  
**|never**

ἀντ' ἐκείνου. Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπῆρχε τῶ Κύρω, φιλοῦσα

αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἄρταξέρξη. ὅστις δ' ἀφικνεῖτο

τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς αὐτὸν πάντας οὕτω **|arrange; set out** ετο  
**|goods for sale**

ὥστε αὐτῶ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ. καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῶ δὲ

## 1.1

Darius and Parysatis had two sons: the elder was named Artaxerxes, and the younger Cyrus. Now, as Darius lay sick and felt that the end of life drew near, he wished both his sons to be with him. The elder, as it chanced, was already there, but Cyrus he must needs send for from the province over which he had made him satrap, having appointed him general moreover of all the forces that muster in the plain of the Castolus. Thus Cyrus went up, taking with him Tissaphernes as his friend, and accompanied also by a body of Hellenes, three hundred heavy armed men, under the command of Xenias the Parrhasian.

Now when Darius was dead, and Artaxerxes was established in the kingdom, Tissaphernes brought slanderous accusations against Cyrus before his brother, the king, of harbouring designs against him. And Artaxerxes, listening to the words of Tissaphernes, laid hands upon Cyrus, desiring to put him to death; but his mother made intercession for him, and sent him back again in safety to his province. He then, having so escaped through peril and dishonour, fell to considering, not only how he might avoid ever again being in his brother's power, but how, if possible, he might become king in his stead. Parysatis, his mother, was his first resource; for she had more love for Cyrus than for Artaxerxes upon his throne. Moreover Cyrus's behaviour towards all who came to him from the king's court was such that, when he sent them away again, they were better friends to himself than to the king his brother. Nor did he neglect the

*vocabulary*

**ἀθροίζω** press close together; (mid) muster  
**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**ἀξιόω** consider worthy, fitting  
**ἀποκτείνω** kill  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away  
**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning  
**ἄν** again, then again; next ~after  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφίστημι** stand apart; exact payment  
**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**βέλτιστος** best, noblest  
**βουλεύω** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**δασμός** division of a spoil  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω, ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐκβάλλω** throw out, fell, let fall  
**ἐκπίπτω** fall out of  
**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm  
**ἐπιβουλή** a plot, scheme  
**ἐπικρύπτω** hide something; (mid) do secretly  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔχθω** (mp) be hated  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit

**κατάγω** lead down, make landfall  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ὀπόσος** as/how many/great  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also *πειρηγίζω*  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πλήν** except  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also *πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω*  
**πολεμόω** make an enemy of  
**πολιορκέω** besiege  
**προαισθάνομαι** forbode, know beforehand  
**πρόφασις** -ος (f) proposal; as occasioned by  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble  
**συμπράσσω** cooperate  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also *ἐντυγχάνω*  
**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's support, seize; speak up  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch; also *φυλακεύς*  
**ὤδε** thus

βαρβάρων ἐπεμελείτο ὡς πολεμεῖν τε ἱκανοὶ εἴσαν καὶ εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχουεν αὐτῷ. τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν ἤθροίζεν ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο ἐπικρυπτόμενος, ὅπως ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον λάβοι βασιλέα.

Ἔοδε οὖν ἐποίειτο τὴν συλλογὴν. ὅποσας εἶχε φυλακὰς ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι παρήγγειλε τοῖς φρουράρχοις ἐκάστοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας Πελοποννησίους ὅτι πλείστους καὶ βελτίστους, ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος Τισσαφέρνους ταῖς πόλεσι. καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους τὸ ἀρχαῖον ἐκ βασιλέως δεδομένοι, τότε δὲ ἀφειστήκεσαν πρὸς Κῦρον πᾶσαι πλὴν Μιλήτου· ἐν Μιλήτῳ δὲ Τισσαφέρνης προαισθόμενος τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα βουλευομένους ἀποστῆναι πρὸς Κῦρον, τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπέκτεινε τοὺς δ' ἐξέβαλεν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπολαβὼν τοὺς φεύγοντας συλλέξας στράτευμα ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν καὶ ἐπειράτο κατάγειν τοὺς ἐκπεπωκότας. καὶ αὕτη αὖ ἄλλη πρόφασις ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀθροίζειν στράτευμα.

Πρὸς δὲ βασιλέα πέμπων ἠξίου ἀδελφὸς ὦν αὐτοῦ δοθῆναι οἱ ταύτας τὰς πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρνην ἄρχειν αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ ταῦτα· ὥστε βασιλεὺς τὴν μὲν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλὴν οὐκ ἠσθάνετο, Τισσαφέρνει δ' ἐνόμιζε πολεμοῦντα αὐτὸν ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν· ὥστε οὐδὲν ἤχθετο αὐτῶν πολεμοῦντων. καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος ἀπέπεμπε τοὺς γιγνομένους δασμοὺς βασιλεῖ ἐκ τῶν πόλεων ὧν Τισσαφέρνους ἐτύγγαθεν ἔχων.



βαρβάρων ἐπεμελείτο ὡς πολεμεῖν τε ἱκανοὶ εἶησαν καὶ εὐνοϊκῶς  
 ἔχοιεν αὐτῷ. τὴν δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν ἤθροιζεν ὡς μάλιστα **enter, put on, strip  
 off**

**hide something;** τως ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον λάβοι βασιλέα.  
**(mid) do secretly**

ᾠδε οὖν ἐποιεῖτο τὴν **gathering, as/how many/great ἴς ἐν ταῖς**  
**summary,**  
 πόλεσι παρήγγειλε τοῖς **gains, on** ἐκάστοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας  
**the commander**

Πελοποννησίουσ ὅτι πλείστους καὶ **best,** ὡς **plot, plan, harm**  
**noblest**

Τισσαφέρνους ταῖς πόλεσι. καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις

Τισσαφέρνους τὸ **ancient, from ἠασιλέως δεδομέναι, τότε δὲ**  
**the beginning**

ἀφειστήκεσαν πρὸς Κύρον πᾶσαι πλὴν Μιλήτου· ἐν Μιλήτῳ

δὲ Τισσαφέρνης **forbode,** τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα βουλευομένους

ἀποστῆναι πρὸς Κ **know be-**  
**forehands** μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπέκτεινε τοὺς δ' ἐξέβαλεν. ὁ

δὲ Κύρος ὑπολαβὼν τοὺς φεύγοντας **collect, στρατεύματα ἐπολιόρκει**  
**assemble**

Μιλήτον καὶ κατὰ **earth; a country ἔτταν καὶ ἐπειράτο** **lead down,**  
**make land-**

**fall out of** καὶ αὕτη αὐ ἄλλη **proposal; ᾠ, as ὑτῷ** **fall** ἄθροίζεν  
**occasioned by**

στράτευμα.

Πρὸς δὲ βασιλέα πέμπων ἠξίου ἀδελφὸς ὢν αὐτοῦ δοθῆναι οἱ

ταύτας τὰς πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρνην ἄρχειν αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ

μήτηρ **cooperate** αὐτῷ ταῦτα· ὥστε βασιλεὺς τὴν μὲν πρὸς

ἑαυτὸν **a plot, scheme ἵσθάνετο,** Τισσαφέρνει δ' ἐνόμιζε πολεμοῦντα

αὐτὸν ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν· ὥστε οὐδὲν **ἄχθομαι?;** **be burdened**  
**with ; or ἔχθω?;** **(mp) be**

πολεμοῦντων. καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κύρος ἀπέπεμπε τοὺς **hated** ἠνομήτους

**division of a spoil** τῶν πόλεων ὢν Τισσαφέρνους ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων.

barbarians in his own service; but trained them, at once to be capable as warriors and devoted adherents of himself. Lastly, he began collecting his Hellenic armament, but with the utmost secrecy, so that he might take the king as far as might be at unawares.

The manner in which he contrived the levying of the troops was as follows: First, he sent orders to the commandants of garrisons in the cities (so held by him), bidding them to get together as large a body of picked Peloponnesian troops as they severally were able, on the plea that Tissaphernes was plotting against their cities; and truly these cities of Ionia had originally belonged to Tissaphernes, being given to him by the king; but at this time, with the exception of Miletus, they had all revolted to Cyrus. In Miletus, Tissaphernes, having become aware of similar designs, had forestalled the conspirators by putting some to death and banishing the remainder. Cyrus, on his side, welcomed these fugitives, and having collected an army, laid siege to Miletus by sea and land, endeavouring to reinstate the exiles; and this gave him another pretext for collecting an armament. At the same time he sent to the king, and claimed, as being the king's brother, that these cities should be given to himself rather than that Tissaphernes should continue to govern them; and in furtherance of this end, the queen, his mother, co-operated with him, so that the king not only failed to see the design against himself, but concluded that Cyrus was spending his money on armaments in order to make war on Tissaphernes. Nor did it pain him greatly to see the two at war together, and the less so because Cyrus was careful

*vocabulary*

**ἄγαμαι** admire; begrudge; also  
**ἀγαίομαι**  
**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology  
**αὔ** again, then again; next ~after  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**δισχίλιοι** 2000  
**ἕξ** six ~hexagon  
**καταλύω** unyoke; destroy  
**λανθάνω** escape notice; (mp+gen)  
 forget ~Lethe; also **καταλήθομαι**  
**μήνη** moon ~moon  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**μυρίος** immense, myriad ~myriad  
**ξένος** guest-friend, host, stranger  
 ~xenophobe  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἴκοι** at home  
**ὀρμάω** set in motion, rush at  
 ~hormone  
**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**περιγίγνομαι** surpass  
**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also  
**πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω**  
**πολεμώω** make an enemy of  
**πράγμα** -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing,

affair

**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
 campaign  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συγγίγνομαι** associate with, meet, have  
 sex  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble  
**συμβάλλω** pit against; mp: meet, fall  
 in with  
**συμβουλεύω** give advice; (mid) consult  
**τετρακισχίλιοι** 4000  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τρέφω** nurture; solidify ~atrophy  
**τρόπος** (m/n) turn; manner, kind,  
 fashion  
**τροφή** support, maintenance  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
**ἐντυγχάνω**  
**ὑπέειπον** say as preface, premise  
**φυγᾶς** -δος (m, 3) exile, refugee  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape  
**χοῦμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**χρυσίον** gold coin  
**χώρα** place  
**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

Ἄλλο δὲ στράτευμα αὐτῷ συνελέγετο ἐν Χερρονήσῳ τῇ κατ' ἀντιπέρας Ἀβύδου τόνδε τὸν τρόπον. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἦν· τούτῳ συγγενόμενος ὁ Κῦρος ἠγάσθη τε αὐτὸν καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ μυρίους δαρεικούς. ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρυσίον στράτευμα συνέλεξεν ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων καὶ ἐπολέμει ἐκ Χερρονήσου ὀρμώμενος τοῖς Θραξὶ τοῖς ὑπὲρ Ἑλλησποντον οἰκοῦσι καὶ ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας· ὥστε καὶ χρήματα συνεβάλλοντο αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφήν τῶν στρατιωτῶν αἱ Ἑλλησποντιακαὶ πόλεις ἐκοῦσαι. τοῦτο δ' αὐ οὕτω τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα.

Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ὢν ἐτύγγανεν αὐτῷ, καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν οἴκοι ἀντιστασιωτῶν ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον καὶ αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς δισχιλίους ξένους καὶ τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν, ὡς οὕτως περιγεγόμενος ἂν τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ εἰς τετρακισχιλίους καὶ ἕξ μηνῶν μισθόν, καὶ δείτῃ αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν καταλῦσαι πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτας πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλευῆται. οὕτω δὲ αὐ τὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τρεφόμενον στράτευμα.

Πρόξενον δὲ τὸν Βοιώτιον ξένον ὄντα ἐκέλευσε λαβόντα ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους παραγενέσθαι, ὡς ἐς Πισίδας βουλόμενος στρατεύεσθαι, ὡς πράγματα παρεχόντων τῶν Πισιδῶν τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ.

Σοφαίνετον δὲ τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιοῦ, ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους, ἐκέλευσεν ἄνδρας λαβόντας

Ἄλλο δὲ στρατεύμα αὐτῷ <sup>|collect, assemble</sup> ἐν Χερρονήσῳ τῇ κατ' ἀντιπέρας Ἀβύδου τόνδε τὸν τρόπον. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος

<sup>|φυγάζ?:; exile; associate with; Kŭros |admire; : αὐτὸν καὶ refugee ; or φυγή?:; meet, have sex |begrudge</sup>  
<sup>|δίδωμι?:; should; bind; need, fail ; or δίδωμι?:; gold coin</sup> <sup>|ράτευμα</sup>  
<sup>|gather</sup>  
<sup>|collect, assemble</sup> ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων καὶ ἐπολέμει ἐκ Χερρονήσου ὁρμώμενος τοῖς Θραξὶ τοῖς ὑπὲρ Ἑλλησποντον οἰκοῦσι καὶ ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας· ὥστε καὶ χρήματα συνεβάλλοντο αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφήν τῶν στρατιωτῶν αἱ Ἑλλησποντιακαὶ πόλεις ἐκοῦσαι. τοῦτο δ' αὖ οὕτω τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τὸ στρατεύμα.

Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ὦν ἐτύγχανεν αὐτῷ, καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν οἴκοι <sup>|partisan adversary</sup> ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον καὶ αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς <sup>|2000</sup> ξένους καὶ τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν, ὡς οὕτως

περιγεγόμενος ἂν τῶν <sup>|partisan adversary</sup> ὁ δὲ Κῦρος <sup>|δίδωμι?:; should; bind; need, fail ; or δίδωμι?:; give; permit</sup>  
<sup>|4000</sup> καὶ ἕξ μηνῶν μισθόν, καὶ δεῖται αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν

καταλῦσαι πρὸς τοὺς <sup>|partisan adversary</sup> πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ <sup>|give advice; (mid) consult</sup>  
 οὕτω δὲ αὖ τὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τρεφόμενον στρατεύμα.

<sup>|doing certain public duties</sup> ἐν Βοιωτίῳ ξένον ὄντα ἐκέλευσε λαβόντα ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους παραγενέσθαι, ὡς ἐς Πισίδας βουλόμενος στρατεῦσθαι, ὡς πράγματα παρεχόντων τῶν Πισιδῶν τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ.

Σοφαίνετον δὲ τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιοῖν, ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους, ἐκέλευσεν ἄνδρας λαβόντας

to remit the tribute due to the king from the cities which belonged to Tissaphernes.

A third army was being collected for him in the Chersonese, over against Abydos, the origin of which was as follows: There was a Lacedaemonian exile, named Clearchus, with whom Cyrus had become associated. Cyrus admired the man, and made him a present of ten thousand darics. Clearchus took the gold, and with the money raised an army, and using the Chersonese as his base of operations, set to work to fight the Thracians north of the Hellespont, in the interests of the Hellenes, and with such happy result that the Hellepontine cities, of their own accord, were eager to contribute funds for the support of his troops. In this way, again, an armament was being secretly maintained for Cyrus.

Then there was the Thessalian Aristippus, Cyrus's friend, who, under pressure of the rival political party at home, had come to Cyrus and asked him for pay for two thousand mercenaries, to be continued for three months, which would enable him, he said, to gain the upper hand of his antagonists. Cyrus replied by presenting him with six months' pay for four thousand mercenaries— only stipulating that Aristippus should not come to terms with his antagonists without final consultation with himself. In this way he secured to himself the secret maintenance of a fourth armament.

Further, he bade Proxenus, a Boeotian, who was another friend, get together as many men as possible, and join him in an expedition which he meditated against the Pisidians, who were causing annoyance to his territory. Similarly two other friends, Sphaenetus the Stymphalian, and Socrates the Achaean, had orders to get together as many men as possible and come to him, since he was

*vocabulary*

**ἄθροίζω** press close together; (mid) muster  
**ἀκρόπολις** -εως (f/m) citadel  
**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, out to sea  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away  
**βαρβαρικός** non-Greek  
**ἐκβάλλω** throw out, fell, let fall  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἡδέως** pleasantly  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**κατάγω** lead down, make landfall  
**καταπράσσω** accomplish, build  
**ξενία** ξεινίης hospitality  
**ξενικός** strange, foreign  
**ξένιος** of hospitality  
**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἴκοι** at home  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὅσος** as/how many/great  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage

**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend  
**παύω** stop something ~pause  
**πεντακόσιοι** 500  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πλήν** except  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**πολιορκέω** besiege  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**προῖστημι** put forward; (+gen) be head of, guard  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**πρόφασις** -ος (f) proposal; as occasioned by  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign  
**τετρακισχίλιοι** 4000  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπίσχομαι** promise, agree to do; also ὑπισχνέομαι  
**φυγάζ** -δος (m, 3) exile, refugee  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard ~phylactery  
**χίλιοι** thousand ~kilo-  
**χώρα** place

ἐλθεῖν ὅτι πλείστους, ὡς πολεμήσων Τισσαφέρνει σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι τοῖς Μιλησίων. καὶ ἐποίουν οὕτως οὗτοι.

## 1.2

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει ἤδη πορεύεσθαι αὐτῷ ἄνω, τὴν μὲν πρόφασιν ἐποιεῖτο ὡς Πισίδας βουλόμενος ἐκβαλεῖν παντάπασιν ἐκ τῆς χώρας· καὶ ἀθροίζει ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους τό τε βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ παραγγέλλει τῷ τε Κλεάρχῳ λαβόντι ἦκειν ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα καὶ τῷ Ἀριστίπῳ συναλλαγέντι πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα· καὶ Ξενία τῷ Ἀρκάδι, ὃς αὐτῷ προειστήκει τοῦ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι ξενικοῦ, ἦκειν παραγγέλλει λαβόντα τοὺς ἄλλους πλὴν ὅποσοι ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν τὰς ἀκροπόλεις φυλάττειν. ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς Μίλητον πολιορκοῦντας, καὶ τοὺς φυγάδας ἐκέλευσε σὺν αὐτῷ στρατεύεσθαι, ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς, εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν ἐφ' ἃ ἐστρατεύετο, μὴ πρόσθεν παύσεσθαι πρὶν αὐτοὺς καταγάγοι οἴκαδε. οἱ δὲ ἠδέως ἐπέιθοντο· ἐπίστευον γὰρ αὐτῷ· καὶ λαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα παρήσαν εἰς Σάρδεις.

Ξενίας μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων λαβὼν παρεγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις ὀπλίτας εἰς τετρακισχιλίους, Πρόξενος δὲ παρῆν ἔχων ὀπλίτας μὲν εἰς πεντακοσίους καὶ χιλίους, γυμνήτας δὲ πεντακοσίους, Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος ὀπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους, Σωκράτης



ἐλθεῖν ὅτι πλείστους, ὡς πολεμήσων Τισσαφέρνει σὺν τοῖς |exile,  
τοῖς Μιλησίων. καὶ ἐποίουν οὕτως οὗτοι. |refugee

## 1.2

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει ἤδη πορεύεσθαι αὐτῷ |accomplish, pass, waste; ποιῶ  
ὡς Πισίδας βουλόμενος ἐκβαλεῖν παντάπασι ἐκ τῆς χώρας· καὶ |upwards, out to sea  
ἀθροίζει ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους τό τε |non-Greek καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν.  
ἐνταῦθα καὶ παραγγέλλει τῷ τε Κλεάρχῳ λαβόντι ἤκειν ὅσον ἦν  
αὐτῷ στράτευμα καὶ τῷ Ἀριστίπῳ συναλλαγέντι πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι  
ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα· καὶ Ξενία τῷ Ἀρκάδι,  
ὃς αὐτῷ προειστήκει τοῦ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι |strange, ἦκειν παραγγέλλει  
λαβόντα τοὺς ἄλλους πλὴν |foreign  
|as/how many/great τὰς |citadel  
φυλάττειν. ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς Μίλητον πολιορκοῦντας, καὶ τοὺς  
|exile, ἐκέλευσε σὺν αὐτῷ στρατεύεσθαι, |promise, αὐτοῖς, εἰ  
|refugee καλῶς |accomplish, ἐφ' ᾧ ἐστρατεύετο, μὴ πρόσθεν παύσεσθαι πρὶν  
|build αὐτοὺς |lead down, καδε. οἱ δὲ |pleasantly ἴθοντο· ἐπίστευον γὰρ  
|make land- αὐτῷ· κ|fall λαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα παρήσαν εἰς Σάρδεις.

|ξενία?: ἡ hospitality ; ἢ ὁ πόλεων λαβὼν παρεγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις  
|ξένιος?: of hospitality  
ὄπλιτας εἰς |4000

Πρόξενος δὲ παρῆν ἔχων ὄπλιτας  
μὲν εἰς |500 καὶ χιλίους, γυμνήτας δὲ |500

Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος ὄπλιτας ἔχων χιλίους, Σωκράτης

on the point of opening a campaign, along with Milesian exiles, against Tissaphernes. These orders were duly carried out by the officers in question.

## 1.2

But when the right moment seemed to him to have come, at which he should begin his march into the interior, the pretext which he put forward was his desire to expel the Pisidians utterly out of the country; and he began collecting both his Asiatic and his Hellenic armaments, avowedly against that people. From Sardis in each direction his orders sped: to Clearchus, to join him there with the whole of his army; to Aristippus, to come to terms with those at home, and to despatch to him the troops in his employ; to Xenias the Arcadian, who was acting as general in chief of the foreign troops in the cities, to present himself with all the men available, excepting only those who were actually needed to garrison the citadels. He next summoned the troops at present engaged in the siege of Miletus, and called upon the exiles to follow him on his intended expedition, promising them that if he were successful in his object, he would not pause until he had reinstated them in their native city. To this invitation they hearkened gladly; they believed in him; and with their arms they presented themselves at Sardis.

So, too, Xenias arrived at Sardis with the contingent from the cities, four thousand hoplites; Proxenus, also, with fifteen hundred hoplites

*vocabulary*

ἄγριος wild, savage (ἄγρός)  
 ἀφικνέομαι arrive  
 βασίλεια noblewoman; also βασίλη  
 βασιλείος kingly  
 βασιλεύω be king  
 γέφυρα (ῦ) dam, dike; bridge; also  
 γεφύρα  
 γυμνάζω exercise, do training  
 διαβαίνω pass over, cross  
 εἰκός οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
 εἴκοσι twenty  
 ἐνταῦθα thither  
 ἐντεῦθεν thence  
 ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic  
 ἔπειμι lie upon; approach  
 ἑπτὰ seven  
 ζεύγνυμι yoke, join  
 ἦκω to have come  
 ἦμερος domesticated  
 θηρεύω hunt  
 θηρίον (f/m/n) wild animal  
 ~megatherium; also θήρ  
 ἴημι release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
 ἵππεύς (m) charioteer; also  
 ἵππιοχάρμης

κατανοέω observe well, understand  
 οἰκέω inhabit  
 οἰκουμένη inhabited  
 ὀκτώ eight ~octopus  
 ὀπλίτης (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
 ὁπότε when; also ὀπότε  
 ὀρμάω set in motion, rush at  
 ~hormone  
 παραγίγνομαι be beside, attend  
 παράδεισος park  
 παρασκευή (f/m) preparation  
 πελταστής (m) light troops  
 πεντακόσιοι 500  
 πλήρης full, complete; (+gen) full of  
 πλοῖον ship  
 πορεύω carry  
 ποταμός river ~hippopotamus  
 ῥέω flow ~rheostat  
 σταθμός cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
 στόλος expedition  
 στρατεύω make an expedition, war,  
 campaign  
 τρεῖς three ~three  
 τριακόσιοι three hundred  
 χίλιοι thousand ~kilo-

δὲ ὁ Ἄχαιὸς ὀπλίτας ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους, Πασίων δὲ ὁ Μεγαρεὺς τριακοσίους μὲν ὀπλίτας, τριακοσίους δὲ πελταστὰς ἔχων παρεγένετο· ἦν δὲ καὶ οὗτος καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ Μίλητον στρατευομένων. οὗτοι μὲν εἰς Σάρδεις αὐτῷ ἀφίκοντο.

Τισσαφέρνης δὲ κατανοήσας ταῦτα, καὶ μείζονα ἠγησάμενος εἶναι ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ Πισίδας τὴν παρασκευὴν, πορεύεται ὡς βασιλέα ἢ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα ἰππέας ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους. καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους τὸν Κύρου στόλον, ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο.

Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων οὓς εἴρηκα ὠρμᾶτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων· καὶ ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυδίας σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ τὸν Μαϊάνδρον ποταμόν. τούτου τὸ εὖρος δύο πλέθρα· γέφυρα δὲ ἐπὴν ἐξευγμένη πλοίοις ἐπτά. τοῦτον διαβάς ἐξελαύνει διὰ Φρυγίας σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας ὀκτῶ εἰς Κολοσσάς, πόλιν οἰκουμένην καὶ εὐδαίμονα καὶ μεγάλην. ἐνταῦθα ξμεινεν ἡμέρας ἐπτά· καὶ ἦκε Μένων ὁ Θετταλὸς ὀπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς πεντακοσίους, Δόλοπας καὶ Αἰνιᾶνας καὶ Ὀλυνθίους.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσι εἰς Κελαινάς, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα Κύρω βασιλεία ἦν καὶ παράδεισος μέγας ἀγρίων θηρίων πλήρης, ἃ ἐκείνος ἐθήρευεν ἀπὸ ἵππου, ὅποτε γυμνάσαι βούλοιτο ἑαυτὸν τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου ρεῖ ὁ Μαϊάνδρος ποταμός·

δὲ ὁ Ἀχαιὸς ὀπλίτας ἔχων ὥς 500 Πασιῶν δὲ ὁ  
 Μεγαρεὺς τριακοσίους μὲν ὀπλίτας, τριακοσίους δὲ <sup>light</sup> ἔχων  
 παρεγένετο· ἦν δὲ καὶ οὗτος καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ Μίλητον  
 στρατευομένων. οὗτοι μὲν εἰς Σάρδεϊς αὐτῷ ἀφίκοντο.

Τισσαφέρνης δὲ κατανοήσας ταῦτα, καὶ μείζονα ἡγήσάμενος εἶναι ἢ  
 ὥς ἐπὶ Πισίδας τὴν παρασκευὴν, πορεύεται ὥς βασιλέα ἢ <sup>enter, put on, strip</sup>  
 τάχιστα ἰππέας ἔχων ὥς 500 <sup>off</sup> καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν δι' ἐπέ  
 ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους τὸν Κύρου στόλον, ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο.

Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων οὓς εἴρηκα ὠρμάτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων· καὶ ἐξελαύνει  
 διὰ τῆς Λυδίας <sup>cottage; post</sup> ἰς <sup>Persian</sup> εἵκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ  
 τὸν Μαϊάνδρον ποταμὸν. τούτου <sup>unit, ca. 5</sup> <sup>km</sup> <sup>width; (caps) the</sup> 30 <sup>dam, dike; bridge</sup>  
 ἐπὶν <sup>yoke, join</sup> τλοίοις ἐπτά. τούτων <sup>past tense, or</sup> ἀπὸ τῆς Φρυγίας  
<sup>cottage; post</sup> <sup>Persian</sup> ὀκτὼ εἰς Κολοσσάς, πόλιν <sup>οἰκουμένη?: inhabited ; or</sup>  
<sup>unit, ca. 5</sup> <sup>km</sup> γάλην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας ἐπτά· καὶ ἦκε Μένων  
<sup>blessed with</sup> <sup>good genius</sup> ὁ Θετταλὸς ὀπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους καὶ <sup>light</sup> <sup>500</sup>  
<sup>troops</sup> Δόλοπας καὶ Αἰνιᾶνας καὶ Ὀλυνθίους.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει <sup>cottage; post</sup> ἰς <sup>Persian</sup> εἵκοσιν εἰς Κελαινάς,  
 τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν <sup>unit, ca. 5</sup> <sup>οἰκουμένη?: inhabited ; or</sup> <sup>οἰκέω?: inhabit</sup> <sup>αὐτὰ</sup>  
<sup>good genius</sup> Κύρῳ <sup>βασιλεία?: noblewoman</sup> <sup>ος μέγας ἀγρίων θηρίων</sup> <sup>full, complete; (+gen)</sup>  
<sup>; or βασιλεις?: kingly</sup> <sup>full of</sup> ἐκεῖνος <sup>hunt</sup> ἀπὸ ἵππου, ὅποτε <sup>exercise, do</sup> <sup>ύλοιτο ἐαυτὸν τε καὶ</sup>  
<sup>training</sup> τοὺς ἵππους. διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου ρεῖ ὁ Μαϊάνδρος ποταμός·

and five hundred light-armed troops; Sophaenetus the Stymphalian, with one thousand hoplites; Socrates the Achaean, with five hundred hoplites; while the Megarion Pasion came with three hundred hoplites and three hundred peltasts. This latter officer, as well as Socrates, belonged to the force engaged against Miletus. These all joined him at Sardis.

But Tissaphernes did not fail to note these proceedings. An equipment so large pointed to something more than an invasion of Pisidia: so he argued; and with what speed he might, he set off to the king, attended by about five hundred horse. The king, on his side, had no sooner heard from Tissaphernes of Cyrus's great armament, than he began to make counter-preparations.

Thus Cyrus, with the troops which I have named, set out from Sardis, and marched on and on through Lydia three stages, making two and twenty parasangs, to the river Maeander. That river is two hundred feet broad, and was spanned by a bridge consisting of seven boats. Crossing it, he marched through Phrygia a single stage, of eight parasangs, to Colossae, an inhabited city, prosperous and large. Here he remained seven days, and was joined by Menon the Thessalian, who arrived with one thousand hoplites and five hundred peltasts, Dolopes, Aenianes, and Olynthians. From this place he marched three stages, twenty parasangs in all, to Celaenae, a populous city of Phrygia, large and prosperous. Here Cyrus owned a palace and a large park full of wild beasts, which he used to hunt on horseback, whenever he wished to give himself or his horses exercise. Through the midst of the

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
**ἄγων** -ος (m, 3) gathering place (ἄγω)  
**ἄθλον** prize; also ἀέθλιον, ἀέθλιος, ἄεθλον  
**ἀκρόπολις** -εως (f/m) citadel  
**ἀποχωρέω** go away from, retreat  
**ἀριθμός** number  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**δέκα** ten ~decimal  
**δέρμα** (n, 3) skin, hide ~dermatology  
**διακόσιοι** two hundred  
**δισχίλιοι** 2000  
**δώδεκα** twelve ~dodecahedron; also δυοκαίδεκα, δωδέκα  
**εἰκός** οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
**εἴκοσι** twenty  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**ἐρίζω** struggle, contend  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**θεωρέω** be sent to consult an oracle; observe, contemplate

**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**μυρίος** immense, myriad ~myriad  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**ὄθεν** whence  
**οικήω** inhabit  
**οικοδομέω** build, build a house  
**οικουμένη** inhabited  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman  
**παράδεισος** park  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**πηγή** waters, headwaters  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat  
**σοφία** skill ~sophistry  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**σύμπας** all together  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
**τριακόσιοι** three hundred  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape  
**χίλιοι** thousand ~kilo-

αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων· ῥεῖ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῆς Κελαινῶν πόλεως. ἔστι δὲ καὶ μεγάλου βασιλέως βασιλεία ἐν Κελαιναῖς ἐρυμνὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσίου ποταμοῦ ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκροπόλει· ῥεῖ δὲ καὶ οὗτος διὰ τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἐμβάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαϊάνδρον·

Τοῦ δὲ Μαρσίου τὸ εὐρὸς ἐστὶν ἕκκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Ἀπόλλων ἐκδεῖραι Μαρσύαν νικήσας ἐρίζοντά οἱ περὶ σοφίας, καὶ τὸ δέρμα κρεμάσαι ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ ὅθεν αἱ πηγαί· διὰ δὲ τοῦτο ὁ ποταμὸς καλεῖται Μαρσύας. ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἠττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ ἀπεχώρει, λέγεται οἰκοδομῆσαι ταῦτά τε τὰ βασιλεία καὶ τὴν Κελαινῶν ἀκρόπολιν. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε Κῦρος ἡμέρας τριάκοντα· καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἔχων ὀπλίτας χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς Θρᾶκας ὀκτακοσίους καὶ τοξότας Κρήτας διακοσίους. ἅμα δὲ καὶ Σῶσις παρῆν ὁ Συρακόσιος ἔχων ὀπλίτας τριακοσίους, καὶ Σοφαίνετος Ἀρκάδας ἔχων ὀπλίτας χιλίους. καὶ ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν καὶ ἀριθμὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ, καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμπαντες ὀπλίται μὲν μύριοι χίλιοι, πελτασταὶ δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Πέλτας, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινε ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν αἷς Ξενίας ὁ Ἄρκας τὰ Λύκαια ἔθυσε καὶ ἀγῶνα ἔθηκε· τὰ δὲ ἄθλα ἦσαν σπλεγγίδες χρυσαί· ἐθεώρει δὲ τὸν ἀγῶνα καὶ Κῦρος. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δώδεκα ἐς Κεράμων ἀγοράν,



αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰσὶν ἐκ τῶν |kingly      ρεῖ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῆς Κελαιῶν  
 πόλεως. ἔστι δὲ καὶ μεγάλου βασιλέως |βασιλεια?:      no-|fortified,  
 ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσίου ποταμοῦ |blewoman ;      or |impreg-  
 οὗτος διὰ τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἐμβάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαϊάνδρον·

Τοῦ δὲ Μαρσίου τὸ |width; (caps)      ροι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν. ἐνταῦθα  
 λέγεται Ἀπόλλων ἐκδείραι Μαρσίαν νικήσας |the east wind      |struggle,      ἰ περὶ σοφίας,  
 καὶ τὸ |skin, |hang      ἐν τῷ |cave      ὅθεν αἱ πηγαί· διὰ δὲ τοῦτο ὁ  
 ποταμὸς καλεῖται Μαρσύας. ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος  
 ἠττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ ἀπεχώρει, λέγεται οἰκοδομησαὶ ταυτὰ τε τὰ

|βασιλεια?:      noblewoman ; |citadel      ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε Κῦρος ἡμέρας  
 |or βασιλειος?:      kingly      τριάκοντα· καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος |φυγᾶς?:      exile, ' refugee ; or  
 χιλίους καὶ |light      Θράκας |800      καὶ |archer      Κρήτας  
 |troops

διακοσίους. ἅμα δὲ καὶ Σῶσις παρῆν ὁ Συρακόσιος ἔχων ὀπίτας  
 τριακοσίους, καὶ Σοφαίνετος Ἀρκάδας ἔχων ὀπίτας χιλίους. καὶ  
 ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος |scrutiny καὶ ἀριθμὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ  
 παραδείσῳ, καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμπαντες ὀπίται μὲν μύριοι χίλιοι,

|light      δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς |2000  
 |troops

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει |cottage; post'      |Persian      δέκα εἰς Πέλτας,  
 πόλιν |οἰκουμένη?:      inhabited' μείνει |km      5      μέρας τρεῖς· ἐν αἷς Ξενίας  
 ; or οἰκέω?:      inhabit      ὁ Ἄρκας τὰ Λύκαια ἔθυσσε καὶ ἀγῶνα ἔθηκε· τὰ δὲ ἄθλα ἦσαν  
 |skin scraper,      ρυσαί· ἔθεώρει δὲ τὸν ἀγῶνα καὶ Κῦρος. ἐντεῦθεν

ἐξελαίνει |cottage; post'      |Persian      δώδεκα ἐς Κεράμων ἀγοράν,  
 |unit, ca.      5      |km

park flows the river Maeander, the sources of which are within the palace buildings, and it flows through the city of Celaenae. The great king also has a palace in Celaenae, a strong place, on the sources of another river, the Marsyas, at the foot of the acropolis. This river also flows through the city, discharging itself into the Maeander, and is five and twenty feet broad. Here is the place where Apollo is said to have flayed Marsyas, when he had conquered him in the contest of skill. He hung up the skin of the conquered man, in the cavern where the spring wells forth, and hence the name of the river, Marsyas. It was on this site that Xerxes, as tradition tells, built this very palace, as well as the citadel of Celaenae itself, on his retreat from Hellas, after he had lost the famous battle. Here Cyrus remained for thirty days, during which Clearchus the Lacedaemonian arrived with one thousand hoplites and eight hundred Thracian peltasts and two hundred Cretan archers. At the same time, also, came Sosis the Syracusian with three thousand hoplites, and Sophaenetus the Arcadian with one thousand hoplites; and here Cyrus held a review, and numbered his Hellenes in the park, and found that they amounted in all to eleven thousand hoplites and about two thousand peltasts.

From this place he continued his march two stages— ten parasangs— to the populous city of Peltae, where he remained three days; while Xenias, the Arcadian, celebrated the Lycaea with sacrifice, and instituted games. The prizes were headbands of gold; and Cyrus himself was a spectator of the contest. From this place the march was continued two stages— twelve parasangs— to Ceramon-agora, a populous city, the last on the confines of Mysia.

*vocabulary*

**άνιάω** vex  
**ἀποδίδωμι** repay  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**δέκα** ten ~decimal  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διάγω** ferry across  
**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also  
**ἐλαστρέω**  
**ἐλπίζ** -δος (f) hope ~voluptuary  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ῶ) display, exhibit  
**ἔσχατος** farthest, last  
**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**θηρεύω** hunt  
**θύρα** door ~door  
**κρήνη** well, spring  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**οικήω** inhabit  
**οἰκουμένη** inhabited  
**οἶνος** wine ~wine

**ὀφείλω** owe, should, if only  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**πλέος** full; also πλεῖος, πλέως  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πολλάκις** often  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συντάσσω** gather, assemble  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τέσσαρες** (3) four  
**τήγω** melt  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
**τρόπος** (m/n) turn; manner, kind, fashion  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch; also  
 φυλακεύς  
**φύλαξ** (m) guard; sentry; also  
 φυλακός, φυλακτήρ  
**χοῦμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**χώρα** place

πόλις οἰκουμένην, ἐσχάτην πρὸς τῇ Μυσία χώρᾳ. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας τριάκοντα εἰς Καῦστρου πεδίου, πόλις οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας πέντε· καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις ὠφείλετο μισθὸς πλέον ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν, καὶ πολλάκις ἰόντες ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας ἀπήτουν. ὁ δὲ ἐλπίδας λέγων διῆγε καὶ δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος· οὐ γὰρ ἦν πρὸς τοῦ Κύρου τρόπον ἔχοντα μὴ ἀποδιδόναί.

Ἐνταῦθα ἀφικνεῖται Ἐπύαξα ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ τοῦ Κιλικίων βασιλέως παρὰ Κῦρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο Κύρῳ δοῦναι χρήματα πολλά. τῇ δ' οὖν στρατιᾷ τότε ἀπέδωκε Κύρος μισθὸν τεττάρων μηνῶν. εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα φυλακὴν καὶ φύλακας περὶ αὐτὴν Κίλικας καὶ Ἄσπενδίους· ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ συγγενέσθαι Κῦρον τῇ Κιλίσσῃ.

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐλαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Θύμβριον, πόλις οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἦν παρὰ τὴν ὁδὸν κρήνη ἡ Μίδου καλουμένη τοῦ Φρυγῶν βασιλέως, ἐφ' ἣ λέγεται Μίδας τὸν Σάτυρον θηρεῦσαι οἴῳ κεράσας αὐτήν.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Τυριάειον, πόλις οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας τρεῖς. καὶ λέγεται δεηθῆναι ἡ Κίλισσα Κύρου ἐπιδείξει τὸ στράτευμα αὐτῇ· βουλόμενος οὖν ἐπιδείξει ἐξέτασις ποιεῖται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων. ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην οὕτω ταχθῆναι καὶ στήναι, συντάξαι δ' ἕκαστον τοὺς

πόλιν |οικουμένη?: inhabited ὅς τῇ Μυσία χώρα. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει  
; or οἰκέω?: inhabit

|cottage; post Persian τριάκοντα εἰς Καῦστρου πεδῖον, πόλιν  
unit, ca. 5

|οικουμένη?: inhabited ἕμεινεν ἡμέρας πέντε· καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις  
; or οἰκέω?: inhabit  
ᾧφείλετο μισθὸς πλέον ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν, καὶ πολλὰκις ἰόντες ἐπὶ τὰς

θύρας |demand ἑ ἐλπίδας λέγων |ferry αἰ δῆλος ἦν |vex  
to have |across

οὐ γὰρ |returned τοῦ Κύρου τρόπου ἔχοντα μὴ ἀποδιδόναί.

Ἐνταῦθα ἀφικνέεται Ἐπύαξα ἡ Συνενέσιος γυνὴ τοῦ Κιλικίου

βασιλέως παρὰ Κῦρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο Κύρῳ δοῦναι χρήματα πολλά. τῇ

δ' οὖν στρατιᾷ τότε ἀπέδωκε Κῦρος μισθὸν τεττάρων μηνῶν. εἶχε δὲ

ἡ Κίλισσα φυλακὴν καὶ |guard; περὶ αὐτὴν Κίλικας καὶ Ἀσπενδίου·  
sentry

ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ |associate with, ὡν τῇ Κιλίσσῃ.  
meet, have sex

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐλαύνει |cottage; post Persian δέκα εἰς Θύμβριον,  
unit, ca. 5

πόλιν |οικουμένη?: inhabited ἦν πρὸς τὴν ὁδὸν |well, ἡ Μίδου  
; or οἰκέω?: inhabit |spring

καλουμένη τοῦ Φρυγῶν βασιλέως, ἐφ' ἣ λέγεται Μίδας τὸν Σάτυρον

|hunt οἴνω |mix αὐτήν.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει |cottage; post Persian δέκα εἰς Τυριάειον,  
unit, ca. 5

πόλιν |οικουμένη?: inhabited ἕμεινεν ἡμέρας τρεῖς. καὶ λέγεται  
; or οἰκέω?: inhabit

δεηθῆναι ἡ Κίλισσα Κῦρον ἐπιδείξει τὸ στράτευμα αὐτῇ· βουλόμενος

οὖν ἐπιδείξει |scrutiny ποιεῖται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ

τῶν βαρβάρων. ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς

εἰς μάχην οὕτω ταχθῆναι καὶ σῆναι, συντάξαι δ' ἕκαστον τοὺς

Thence a march of three stages— thirty parasangs— brought him to Caystru-pedion, a populous city. Here Cyrus halted five days; and the soldiers, whose pay was now more than three months in arrear, came several times to the palace gates demanding their dues; while Cyrus put them off with fine words and expectations, but could not conceal his vexation, for it was not his fashion to stint payment, when he had the means.

At this point Epyaxa, the wife of Syennesis, the king of the Cilicians, arrived on a visit to Cyrus; and it was said that Cyrus received a large gift of money from the queen. At this date, at any rate, Cyrus gave the army four months' pay. The queen was accompanied by a bodyguard of Cilicians and Aspendians; and, if report speaks truly, Cyrus had intimate relations with the queen.

From this place he marched two stages— ten parasangs— to Thymbrium, a populous city. Here, by the side of the road, is the spring of Midas, the king of Phrygia, as it is called, where Midas, as the story goes, caught the satyr by drugging the spring with wine. From this place he marched two stages— ten parasangs— to Tyriaeum, a populous city. Here he halted three days; and the Cilician queen, according to the popular account, begged Cyrus to exhibit his armament for her amusement. The latter being only too glad to make such an exhibition, held a review of the Hellenes and barbarians in the plain. He ordered the Hellenes to draw up their lines and post themselves in their customary battle order,

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**αὐτόματος** self-willed  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**γέλως** -τος laughter  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
**εἰκός οἰκός** (n, 3) likely  
**εἶτα** then, therefore, next  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεὶ  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔσχατος** farthest, last  
**εὐώνυμος** spindle tree  
**θαυμάζω** marvel ~theater; also  
 ἀποθαυμάζω  
**θεωρέω** be sent to consult an oracle;  
 observe, contemplate  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon;  
 also καταλείπω  
**κραυγή** screaming, shouting

**ὄλος** complete, generally, actually  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**πρό** before, forward ~prolog  
**προβάλλω** throw before  
**πρόεμι** to have been before, earlier  
**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order  
 before  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**προλέγω** pick the best  
**σκηνή** tent, booth  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τέσσαρες** (3) four  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φόβος** fear, rout, panic ~phobia  
**χαλκός** bronze, arms  
**χιτών** -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor

ἑαυτοῦ. ἐτάχθησαν οὖν ἐπὶ τεττάρων· εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου, τὸ δὲ μέσον οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί. ἐθεώρει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς βαρβάρους· οἱ δὲ παρήλανον τεταγμένοι κατὰ ἕλας καὶ κατὰ τάξεις· εἶτα δὲ τοὺς Ἑλλήνας, παρελαύνων ἐφ' ἄρματος καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἐφ' ἄρμαμάξης. εἶχον δὲ πάντες κράνη χαλκῆ καὶ χιτῶνας φοινικοῦς καὶ κνημίδας καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας ἐκκεκαλυμμένας.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ πάντας παρήλασε, στήσας τὸ ἄρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος μέσης, πέμψας Πίγρητα τὸν ἐρμηνέα παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκέλευσε προβαλέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα καὶ ἐπιχωρῆσαι ὅλην τὴν φάλαγγα. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα προεῖπον τοῖς στρατιώταις· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐσάλπιγξε, προβαλόμενοι τὰ ὄπλα ἐπήσαν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου θάπτον προϊόντων σὺν κραυγῇ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου δρόμος ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς, τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων φόβος πολὺς, καὶ ἢ τε Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐπὶ τῆς ἀρμαμάξης καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς καταλιπόντες τὰ ὄνια ἔφυγον. οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες σὺν γέλῳτι ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς ἦλθον. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα ἰδοῦσα τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐθαύμασε. Κῦρος δὲ ἦσθη τὸν ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους φόβον ἰδών.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν εἰς Ἰκόνιον, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν ἐσχάτην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυκαονίας σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας



ἑαυτοῦ. ἐτάχθησαν οὖν ἐπὶ τετάρων· εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, τὸ δὲ |spindle tree<sup>ῥῥ</sup> ἔαρχος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου, τὸ δὲ μέσον οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί. ἐθεώρει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς βαρβάρους· οἱ δὲ |pass, ταταγμένοι κατὰ |military κατὰ τάξεις· εἶτα δὲ τοὺς |outstrip |group Ἕλληνας, |pass, ἐφ' ἄρματος καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἐφ' ἄρμαμάξης. |outstrip εἶχον δὲ πάντες κράνη χαλκᾶ καὶ χιτῶνας φοινικοῦς καὶ |greave καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας ἐκκεκαλυμμένας.

|after; ἵε πάντας |pass, στήσας τὸ ἄρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος  
|because |outstrip  
μέσης, πέμψας Πίγρητα τὸν |interpreter ρὰ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκέλευσε |throw before τὰ ὄπλα καὶ |yield ὄλην τὴν φάλαγγα. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα |προεῖπον?: foretell, proclaim, order before ; or |προλέγω?: pick the best |sound the|throw before τὰ ὄπλα ἐπήσαν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου θάττον |trumpet |πρόειμι?: to|screaming, τοῦ |self-willed |running ἔγενετο τοῖς |have been|shouting ἔωταearlier τὰς σκηναίς, τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων φόβος πολὺς, καὶ ; or προίημι?: |send Κίλις forth,φυγεν ἐπὶ τῆς ἄρμαμάξης καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς |abandon καταλιπόντες τὰ |for sale ἴγον. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες σὺν |laughter ἵ τὰς σκηναίς |ἄλθομαι?: become whole ; |or|brilliance, splen- ἦν τάξιν |ἔρχομαι?: go, come |dor, magnanimity τοῦ στρατεύματος εθαύμασε. Κῦρος δὲ ἦσθη τὸν ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους φόβον ἰδῶν.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει |cottage; post |Persian εἴκοσιν εἰς Ἰκόνιον, |unit, ca. 5 τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν ἐσχάτην. |kmαὔθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας.

ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυκαονίας |cottage; post τε |Persian |unit, ca. 5 |km

each general marshalling his own battalion. Accordingly they drew up four-deep. The right was held by Menon and those with him; the left by Clearchus and his men; the centre by the remaining generals with theirs. Cyrus first inspected the barbarians, who marched past in troops of horses and companies of infantry. He then inspected the Hellenes; driving past them in his chariot, with the queen in her carriage. And they all had brass helmets and purple tunics, and greaves, and their shields uncovered.

After he had driven past the whole body, he drew up his chariot in front of the centre of the battle-line, and sent his interpreter Pigres to the generals of the Hellenes, with orders to present arms and to advance along the whole line. This order was repeated by the generals to their men; and at the sound of the bugle, with shields forward and spears in rest, they advanced to meet the enemy. The pace quickened, and with a shout the soldiers spontaneously fell into a run, making in the direction of the camp. Great was the panic of the barbarians. The Cilician queen in her carriage turned and fled; the sutlers in the marketing place left their wares and took to their heels; and the Hellenes meanwhile came into camp with a roar of laughter. What astounded the queen was the brilliancy and order of the armament; but Cyrus was pleased to see the terror inspired by the Hellenes in the hearts of the Asiatics.

From this place he marched on three stages— twenty parasangs— to Iconium, the last city of Phrygia, where he remained three days. Thence he marched through Lycaonia five stages— thirty parasangs. This was hostile country, and he gave it over to the Hellenes

*vocabulary*

ἄγγελος (m/f) messenger ~angel

αἰίδω sing; also αἰοδιάω

αἰσθάνομαι see, learn, find out about

ἄκρος at the edge, extreme; also ἄκρα,

ἄκρη

ἀναβαίνω go up, embark

ἀποκτείνω kill

ἀποπέμπω send away

αὐτοῦ here, there

διό because of which

ἐάω let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,

not worry about

εἰκός οἰκότος (n, 3) likely

εἴκοσι twenty

εἴσω into; also ἔσω

ἐνταῦθα thither

ἐντεῦθεν thence

ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic

ἐπιτρέπω entrust, decide

ἦκω to have come

ἠώς ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene

ἴημι release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet

ἰσχυρός strong, forceful, violent

καταβαίνω go down

κωλύω hinder, prevent

λείπω leave something; depart

~eclipse; also λιπάω

ὁδός (f) threshold, road, journey

~odometer; also οὐδός

οἰκέω inhabit

ὄρνομι set upon, arouse ~hormone;

also ὑπόρνομι

ὄρος ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill

~hormone

πάντη everywhere

πεδίον plain, sea ~foot

πειράω try, test ~empirical; also

πειρητίζω

πέντε five ~pentagon

σκηνή tent, booth

σταθμός cottage; post; also σταθμόν

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army

στρατιώτης (m, 1) soldier, mercenary

τέσσαρες (3) four

τρεις three ~three

τριάκοντα thirty

τριήρης -ους (f, 3) trireme

τῷ so, therefore; in that case

ὑπάρχω start, lead, set an example

ὑψηλός high

φυλάσσω guard, be on guard

~phylactery

χώρα place

τριάκοντα. ταύτην τὴν χώραν ἐπέτρεψε διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ὡς πολεμίαν οὔσαν. ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν· καὶ συνέπεμψεν αὐτῇ στρατιώτας οὓς Μένων εἶχε καὶ αὐτόν. Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελαύνει διὰ Καππαδοκίας σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε πρὸς Δάναν, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν ᾧ Κῦρος ἀπέκτεινεν ἄνδρα Πέρσην Μεγαφέρην, φουκιστὴν βασιλείον, καὶ ἕτερόν τινα τῶν ὑπάρχων δυνάστην, αἰτιασάμενος ἐπιβουλεύειν αὐτῷ.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρώωντο εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν· ἡ δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς ἀμαξιτὸς ὀρθία ἰσχυρῶς καὶ ἀμήχανος εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι, εἴ τις ἐκώλυεν. ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ Σύνενσεις εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων φυλάττων τὴν εἰσβολήν· διὸ ἔμεινεν ἡμέραν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἦκεν ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι λελοιπῶς εἴη Σύνενσεις τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο ὅτι τὸ Μένωνος στρατεύμα ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἦν εἴσω τῶν ὀρέων, καὶ ὅτι τριήρεις ἤκουε περιπελούσας ἀπ' Ἰωνίας εἰς Κιλικίαν Ταμῶν ἔχοντα τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ αὐτοῦ Κύρου. Κῦρος δ' οὖν ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος, καὶ εἶδε τὰς σκηνὰς οὓς οἱ Κίλικες ἐφύλαττον. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ κατέβαινεν εἰς πεδίον μέγα καὶ καλόν, ἐπίρρυτον, καὶ δένδρων παντοδαπῶν σύμπλεων καὶ ἀμπέλων· πολὺ δὲ καὶ σήσαμον καὶ μελίην καὶ κέγχρον καὶ πυροὺς καὶ κριθὰς φέρει. ὄρος δ' αὐτὸ περιείχεν ὄχυρον καὶ ὑψηλὸν πάντη ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν.

τριάκοντα. ταύτην τὴν χώραν ἐπέτρεψε |make prey of ἑ. Ἐλλησιν  
 ὡς πολεμίαν οὖσαν. ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν  
 ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν· καὶ |send with αὐτῇ στρατιώτας οὖς  
 Μένων εἶχε καὶ αὐτόν. Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελαύνει διὰ  
 Καππαδοκίας |cottage; post ἄρας |Persian εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε πρὸς  
 Δάναν, πόλιν |οἰκουμένη?: inhabited, or blessed with a αὔθα ἔμειναν  
 |οἰκέω?: inhabit |good genius  
 ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν ᾧ Κῦρος ἀπέκτεινεν ἄνδρα Πέρσην Μεγαφέρην,  
 |dye; |kingly καὶ ἕτερόν τινα τῶν ὑπάρχων |lord,  
 |persian |ruler  
 |bane |plot, plan, harm ἄ.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο |throw into ἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν· ἣ δὲ |invasion, ἑ. ἴδος  
 |road |shrill ἰσχυρῶς καὶ |unremedia- ἑλθεῖν στρατεύματι, εἰ τις  
 |ble, helpless  
 ἐκώλυεν. ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ Συνένσεις εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν |ἄκρον?: ἑ. ἑ. extremity ; or  
 |ἄκρος?: at the edge, extreme  
 τὴν |invasion, ἑ. ὁ ἔμεινεν ἡμέραν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. τῇ δ' |the next; later  
 |an entrance  
 ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι λελοιπῶς εἶη Συνένσεις τὰ |ἄκρις?: hilltop ; or ἄκρον?: ex-  
 |extreme ῥέων, καὶ ὅτι  
 τὸ Μένωνος στρατεύμα ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἦν εἰς  
 τριήρεις ἦκουε |sail around ἀπ' Ἰωνίας εἰς Κιλικίαν Ταμῶν ἔχοντα  
 τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ αὐτοῦ Κύρου. Κῦρος δ' οὖν ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη  
 οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος, καὶ εἶδε τὰς σκηναὺς οὗ οἱ Κίλικες ἐφύλαττον.  
 ἐντεῦθεν δὲ κατέβαινεν εἰς πεδίον μέγα καὶ καλόν, |running καὶ  
 |tree |of every σύμπλεων καὶ |vine πολὺ δὲ καὶ |sesame  
 |kind, mani-  
 καὶ |millefold καὶ |small καὶ |wheat καὶ |barley φέρει. ὄρος δ'  
 |thing,  
 αὐτὸ |(|mid) |strong, καὶ ὑψηλὸν πάντῃ ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν.  
 |protect |secure

to pillage. At this point Cyrus sent back the Cilician queen to her own country by the quickest route; and to escort her he sent the soldiers of Menon, and Menon himself. With the rest of the troops he continued his march through Cappadocia four stages— twenty-five parasangs—to Dana, a populous city, large and flourishing. Here they halted three days, within which interval Cyrus put to death, on a charge of conspiracy, a Persian nobleman named Megaphernes, a wearer of the royal purple; and along with him another high dignitary among his subordinate commanders.

From this place they endeavoured to force a passage into Cilicia. Now the entrance was by an exceedingly steep cart-road, impracticable for an army in face of a resisting force; and report said that Syennesis was on the summit of the pass guarding the approach. Accordingly they halted a day in the plain; but next day came a messenger informing them that Syenesis had left the pass; doubtless, after perceiving that Menon's army was already in Cilicia on his own side of the mountains; and he had further been informed that ships of war, belonging to the Lacedaemonians and to Cyrus himself, with Tamos on board as admiral, were sailing round from Ionia to Cilicia. Whatever the reason might be, Cyrus made his way up into the hills without let or hindrance, and came in sight of the tents where the Cilicians were on guard. From that point he descended gradually into a large and beautiful plain country, well watered, and thickly covered with trees of all sorts and vines. This plain produces sesame plentifully, as also panic and millet and barley and wheat; and it is shut in on all sides by a steep and lofty wall of mountains

*vocabulary*

**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι,  
 ὄλλυμι  
**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βασίλεια** noblewoman; also βασίλη  
**βασίλειος** kingly  
**διαρπάζω** make prey of  
**εἰκός** οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
**εἶτα** then, therefore, next  
**ἑκατόν** hundred  
**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over  
**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also  
 ἐλαστρέω  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἦμερος** domesticated  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**καταβαίνω** go down  
**κρείσσω** more powerful  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**ὄλεθρος** ruin, destruction, death  
 (ὄλλυμι)  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman

**ὀργίζω** anger, provoke, annoy  
**ὄρнуμι** set upon, arouse ~hormone;  
 also ὑπόρнуμι  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**πίστις** -εως (f) faith; treaty, proof,  
 credit  
**πλανάω** lead astray  
**πλήν** except  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**πω** not at all; until now, (not) yet  
**ρέω** flow ~rheostat  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιά** army  
**συγγίγνομαι** associate with, meet, have  
 sex  
**τέσσαρες** (3) four  
**ὑπερβολή** a throwing beyond others  
**ὑπολείπω** leave (food, person)  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χοῦμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

Καταβὰς δὲ διὰ τούτου τοῦ πεδίου ἤλασε σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας πέντε καὶ ἕκοσιν εἰς Ταρσοὺς, τῆς Κιλικίας πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα, οὗ ἦν τὰ Συεννέσιος βασιλεία τοῦ Κιλικίων βασιλέως· διὰ μέσου δὲ τῆς πόλεως ῥεῖ ποταμὸς Κύδνος ὄνομα, εὖρος δύο πλέθρων. ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες μετὰ Συεννέσιος εἰς χωρίον ὄχυρον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη πλὴν οἱ τὰ καπηλεία ἔχοντες· ἔμειναν δὲ καὶ οἱ παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκοῦντες ἐν Σόλοις καὶ ἐν Ἰσοῖς.

Ἐπύαξα δὲ ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ προτέρα Κύρου πέντε ἡμέραις εἰς Ταρσοὺς ἀφίκετο· ἐν δὲ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τῶν ὁρέων τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίου δύο λόχοι τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος ἀπώλοντο· οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν ἀρπάζοντάς τι κατακοπήναι ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλικίων, οἱ δὲ ὑπολειφθέντας καὶ οὐ δυναμένους εὐρεῖν τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα οὐδὲ τὰς ὁδοὺς εἶτα πλανωμένους ἀπολέσθαι· ἦσαν δ' οὖν οὗτοι ἑκατὸν ὀπλίται. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἦκον, τὴν τε πόλιν τοὺς Ταρσοὺς διήρπασαν, διὰ τὸν ὄλεθρον τῶν συστρατιωτῶν ὀργιζόμενοι, καὶ τὰ βασιλεία τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ. Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ εἰσῆλασεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, μετεπέμπετο τὸν Σύννεσιον πρὸς ἑαυτόν· ὁ δ' οὔτε πρότερον οὐδενί πω κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ εἰς χεῖρας ἐλθεῖν ἔφη οὔτε τότε Κύρω ἰέναι ἤθελε, πρὶν ἢ γυνὴ αὐτὸν ἔπεισε καὶ πίστεις ἔλαβε.

Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, Σύννεσις μὲν ἔδωκε Κύρω χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς τὴν στρατιάν, Κῦρος δὲ ἐκείνῳ



Καταβάς δὲ διὰ τούτου τοῦ πεδίου ἤλασε |cottage; post' ταρας

|Persian πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν εἰς Ταρσοὺς, τῆς Κιλικίας πόλιν  
 unit, ca. 5  
 |κμάλην καὶ |blessed with a ἦν τὰ Συνενέσιος |βασίλεια?: ἡ noblewoman ; or  
 |good genius |βασίλειος?: kingly  
 βασιλέως· διὰ μέσου δὲ τῆς πόλεως ῥεῖ ποταμὸς Κυδνος ὄνομα,

|width; 30 meters or ἴτην τὴν πόλιν ἐξέλιπον οἱ |dwell in μετὰ  
 (caps) the square  
 |east wind εἰς χωρίον |strong, ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη πλὴν οἱ τὰ καπηλεία  
 |secure  
 ἔχοντες· ἔμειναν δὲ καὶ οἱ παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκοῦντες ἐν Σόλοις  
 καὶ ἐν Ἴσσοις.

Ἐπύαξα δὲ ἡ Συνενέσιος γυνὴ προτέρα Κύρου πέντε ἡμέραις εἰς  
 Ταρσοὺς ἀφίκετο· ἐν δὲ τῇ |a throw- ὀρέων τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίου  
 δύο |ambush, ἄνωστος στήθεσιν ἄλλοις ἀπόλωντο· οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν  
 |band, child- |others  
 |carry off, seize κατακοπῆναι ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλικίων, οἱ δὲ |leave (food, person)  
 καὶ οὐ δυναμένους εὐρεῖν τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα οὐδὲ τὰς ὁδοὺς εἶτα  
 πλανωμένους ἀπολέσθαι· ἦσαν δ' οὖν οὗτοι ἑκατὸν ὀπλίται. οἱ δ'  
 ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἤκον, τὴν τε πόλιν τοὺς Ταρσοὺς |make prey of ἰ τὸν  
 ὄλεθρον τῶν |comrade ὀργιζόμενοι, καὶ τὰ |βασίλεια?: ἡ noblewoman ; or  
 Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ |drive home; land τὴν πόλιν, |send; (mid) summon |βασίλειος?: kingly  
 πρὸς ἑαυτόν· ὁ δ' οὔτε πρότερον οὐδενὶ πω κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ εἰς χεῖρας  
 ἐλθεῖν ἔφη οὔτε τότε Κύρω ἵεναι ἠθέλε, πρὶν ἢ γυνὴ αὐτὸν ἔπεισε καὶ  
 πίστει ἔλαβε.

Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ |associate with, ἡλούς, Συνένσεις μὲν ἔδωκε  
 |meet, have sex  
 Κῦρω χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς τὴν στρατιάν, Κῦρος δὲ ἐκείνῳ

from sea to sea.

Descending through this plain country, he advanced four stages—twenty-five parasangs— to Tarsus, a large and prosperous city of Cilicia. Here stood the palace of Syennesis, the king of the country; and through the middle of the city flows a river called the Cydnus, two hundred feet broad. They found that the city had been deserted by its inhabitants, who had betaken themselves, with Syennesis, to a strong place on the hills. All had gone, except the tavern-keepers. The sea-board inhabitants of Soli and Issi also remained.

Now Epyaxa, Syennesis's queen, had reached Tarsus five days in advance of Cyrus. During their passage over the mountains into the plain, two companies of Menon's army were lost. Some said they had been cut down by the Cilicians, while engaged on some pillaging affair; another account was that they had been left behind, and being unable to overtake the main body, or discover the route, had gone astray and perished. However it was, they numbered one hundred hoplites; and when the rest arrived, being in a fury at the destruction of their fellow soldiers, they vented their spleen by pillaging the city of Tarsus and the palace to boot. Now when Cyrus had marched into the city, he sent for Syennesis to come to him; but the latter replied that he had never yet put himself into the hands of any one who was his superior, nor was he willing to accede to the proposal of Cyrus now; until, in the end, his wife persuaded him, and he accepted pledges of good faith. After this they met, and Syennesis gave Cyrus large sums in aid of his army; while Cyrus presented him with the customary royal gifts— to wit, a horse with a gold

*vocabulary*

**ἀπολαμβάνω** receive, recover, take  
aside, cut off  
**ἀτιμάω** dishonor  
**βιάζω** use force on  
**δακρύω** weep  
**δαπανάω** spend, consume, waste  
**διαρπάζω** make prey of  
**δῶρον** gift ~donate  
**εἰκός οἰκότος** (n, 3) likely  
**εἶτα** then, therefore, next  
**ἐκκλησία** assembly  
**ἐκφεύγω** flee from, escape  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
happen, happen to exist; also **τυγχάνω**  
**ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics  
**ἤμερος** domesticated  
**θαυμάζω** marvel ~theater; also  
**ἀποθαυμάζω**  
**ἴδιος** private, personal  
**μηκέτι** no more  
**μικρός** small; also **σμικρός**  
**μυρίος** immense, myriad ~myriad  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ξένος** guest-friend, host, stranger  
~xenophobe

**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
~odometer; also **ὀδός**  
**πατρίς** -δος fatherland  
**πείρω** pierce, run through ~pierce  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also  
**πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω**  
**πού** no doubt; somewhere/how  
**πράγμα** -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing,  
affair  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**πρόσω** forward, in the future; also  
**πόρρω, πρόσωθεν**  
**σιωπάω** be silent  
**στολή** equipment, gear  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συνάγω** assemble; join in battle  
**τιμάω** honor, exalt  
**τίμιος** honored, precious; also **τιμήεις**  
**τιμωρέω** take vengeance  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**ὔστερον** later  
**ὔστερος** later, last  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear  
**χρύσεος** golden  
**χώρα** place  
**φέλιον** armlet, anklet

δῶρα ἃ νομίζεται παρὰ βασιλεῖ τίμα, ἵππον χρυσοχάλινον καὶ στρεπτὸν χρυσοῦν καὶ ψέλια καὶ ἀκινάκην χρυσοῦν καὶ στολὴν Περσικὴν, καὶ τὴν χώραν μηκέτι διαρπάζεσθαι· τὰ δὲ ἠρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα, ἣν που ἐντυγχάνωσιν, ἀπολαμβάνειν.

### 1.3

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ ἡμέρας εἴκοσιν· οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι τοῦ πρόσω· ὑπώπτευον γὰρ ἤδη ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἰέναι· μισθωθῆναι δὲ οὐκ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἔφασαν. πρῶτος δὲ Κλέαρχος τοὺς αὐτοῦ στρατιώτας ἐβιάζετο ἰέναι· οἱ δ' αὐτόν τε ἔβαλλον καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τὰ ἐκείνου, ἐπεὶ ἄρξαιντο προϊέναι. Κλέαρχος δὲ τότε μὲν μικρὸν ἐξέφυγε μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι, ὕστερον δ' ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται βιάσασθαι, συνήγαγεν ἐκκλησίαν τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐδάκρυε πολὺν χρόνον ἐστός· οἱ δὲ ὀρώντες ἐθαύμαζον καὶ ἐσιώπων· εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε τοιάδε.

«Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλεπῶς φέρω τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασιν. ἐμοὶ γὰρ ξένος Κῦρος ἐγένετο καί με φεύγοντα ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος τά τε ἄλλα ἐτίμησε καὶ μυρίους ἔδωκε δαρεικοὺς· οὓς ἐγὼ λαβὼν οὐκ εἰς τὸ ἴδιον κατεθέμην ἐμοὶ οὐδὲ καθηδυνπάθησα, ἀλλ' εἰς ὑμᾶς ἔδαπάνων. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς τοὺς Θρᾶκας ἐπολέμησα, καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἐτιμωρούμην μεθ' ὑμῶν, ἐκ τῆς Χερρονήσου αὐτοὺς

δῶρα ἃ νομίζεται παρὰ βασιλεῖ | honored, τον | gold-bridled καὶ  
 | easily turning, pliant, ar- | armlet, αἰ | Persian χρυσοῦν καὶ | equipment, gear  
 | ticutate | ankle | short  
 Περσικὴν, καὶ τὴν χώραν μηκέτι | make prey of τὰ δὲ ἥρπασμένα  
 | slave ἣν που | meet, find, ob- | receive, recover, take  
 | | tain; succeed, | aside, cut off  
 | | happen, hap-  
 | | pen to exist

### 1.3

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ ἡμέρας εἴκοσιν· οἱ γὰρ  
 στρατιῶται οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι τοῦ | forward, | guess, observe, be ὅτι ἐπὶ  
 βασιλέα ἰέναι· μισθωθῆναι δὲ οὐ | in the | suspicious of  
 | future τούτῳ ἔφασαν. πρῶτος  
 δὲ Κλέαρχος τοὺς αὐτοῦ στρατιώτας ἐβιάζετο ἰέναι· οἱ δ' αὐτὸν  
 τε ἔβαλλον καὶ τὰ | beast of burden ἄρου, ἐπεὶ ἄρξαιτο προΐεναι.  
 Κλέαρχος δὲ τότε μὲν μικρὸν | flee μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι, ὕστερον  
 δ' ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνησεται βιάσασθαι, συνήγαγεν ἐκκλησίαν τῶν  
 αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν | weep πολὺν χρόνον ἐστάως· οἱ  
 δὲ ὀρώντες ἐθαύμαζον καὶ | be silent εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε τοιάδε.

«Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλεπῶς φέρω τοῖς παροῦσι  
 πράγμασιν. ἐμοὶ γὰρ ξένος Κῦρος ἐγένετο καὶ με φεύγοντα ἐκ τῆς  
 πατρίδος τά τε ἄλλα | ἀτιμάω?: dishonor ἔδωκε δαρεικοὺς· οὓς ἐγὼ  
 | ; or τιμάω?: honor  
 λαβὼν οὐκ εἰς τὸ ἴδιον κατεθέμην ἐμοὶ οὐδὲ καθηδυπάθησα, ἀλλ' εἰς  
 ὑμᾶς | spend, καὶ πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς τοὺς Θυράκας ἐπολέμησα, καὶ  
 | consume,  
 ὑπὲρ | waste Ἀλάδος ἐτιμωρούμην μεθ' ὑμῶν, ἐκ τῆς Χερρονήσου αὐτοὺς

bit, a necklace of gold, a gold bracelet, and a gold scimitar, a Persian dress, and lastly, the exemption of his territory from further pillage, with the privilege of taking back the slaves that had been seized, wherever they might chance to come upon them.

### 1.3

At Tarsus Cyrus and his army halted for twenty days; the soldiers refusing to advance further, since the suspicion ripened in their minds, that the expedition was in reality directed against the king; and as they insisted, they had not engaged their services for that object. Clearchus set the example of trying to force his men to continue their march; but he had no sooner started at the head of his troops than they began to pelt him and his baggage train, and Clearchus had a narrow escape of being stoned to death there and then. Later on, when he perceived that force was useless, he summoned an assembly of his own men; and for a long while he stood and wept, while the men gazed in silent astonishment. At last he spoke as follows:

“Fellow soldiers, do not marvel that I am sorely distressed on account of the present troubles. Cyrus has been no ordinary friend to me. When I was in banishment he honoured me in various ways, and made me also a present of ten thousand darics. These I accepted, but not to lay them up for myself for private use; not to squander them in pleasure, but to expend them on yourselves. And, first of all, I went to war with the Thracians, and with you to aid, I wreaked vengeance on them in behalf of Hellas; driving them out of the Chersonese, when they wanted to

*vocabulary*

**ἄγγελος** (m/f) messenger ~angel  
**ἄημι** blow  
**ἀλέξω** ward off; aid  
**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἀντί** for, equivalent to  
**ἄπτω** set on fire; attach; mid: touch, seize ~haptic  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφαιρέω** take away  
**βάββαρος** non-Greek  
**γνώμη** sign, mind, will, decision  
**δισχίλιοι** 2000  
**ἐνοικέω** dwell in  
**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**ἐπαινέω** concur, concur with  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεὶ  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**ἔρομαι** ask, search through; also ἀνέρομαι, εἴρομαι, ἐξείρομαι, ἐξέρομαι  
**ἐχθρός** hated, distasteful ~external  
**ἔψω** boil, be boiling  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart; also θαρρέω  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit

**καθίστημι** set down, land  
**λάθρα** secretly (λανθάνω); also λάθρη  
**λυπέω** annoy, distress  
**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οὔομαι, οἶομαι  
**ὅπη** wherever, however  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὄπου** where  
**πατρίς** -δος fatherland  
**πορεύω** carry  
**προδίδωμι** betray  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up station  
**συμπορεύομαι** proceed together, assemble  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τίμιος** honored, precious; also τιμήεις  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**φιλία** friendship  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**ψεύδω** middle: to lie  
**ώφελέω** help, be useful

ἐξελαύνων βουλομένους ἀφαιρείσθαι τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας Ἕλληνας τὴν γῆν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κῦρος ἐκάλει, λαβὼν ὑμᾶς ἐπορευόμεν, ἵνα εἴ τι δέοιτο ὠφελοίην αὐτὸν ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ ἔπαθον ὑπ' ἐκείνου. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς οὐ βούλεσθε συμπορεύεσθαι, ἀνάγκη δὴ μοι ἢ ὑμᾶς προδόντα τῇ Κύρου φιλίᾳ χρῆσθαι ἢ πρὸς ἐκείνον ψευσάμενον μεθ' ὑμῶν εἶναι. εἰ μὲν δὴ δίκαια ποιήσω οὐκ οἶδα, αἰρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν ὅ τι ἂν δέη πείσομαι. καὶ οὐποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ Ἕλληνας ἀγαγὼν εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, προδοὺς τοὺς Ἕλληνας τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων φιλίαν εἰλόμην, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ οὐ θέλετε πείθεσθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν ἔψομαι καὶ ὅ τι ἂν δέη πείσομαι. νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ εἶναι καὶ πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ συμμάχους, καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν μὲν ἂν οἶμαι εἶναι τίμιος ὅπου ἂν ᾧ, ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὧν οὐκ ἂν ἰκανὸς οἶμαι εἶναι οὐτ' ἂν φίλον ὠφελῆσαι οὐτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν ἀλέξασθαι. ὡς ἐμοῦ οὖν ἰόντος ὅπῃ ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς οὕτω τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε.»

Ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οἳ τε αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες ὅτι οὐ φαίη παρὰ βασιλέα πορεύεσθαι ἐπήνεσαν· παρὰ δὲ Ξενίου καὶ Πασίωνος πλείους ἢ δισχιλίοι λαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ. Κῦρος δὲ τούτοις ἀπορῶν τε καὶ λυπούμενος μετεπέμπετο τὸν Κλεάρχον· ὁ δὲ ἰέναι μὲν οὐκ ἤθελε, λάθρα δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν πέμπων αὐτῷ ἄγγελον ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν ὡς καταστησομένων τούτων εἰς τὸ δέον. μεταπέμπεσθαι δ' ἐκέλευεν αὐτόν· αὐτὸς δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἰέναι.



ἐξελαιύνων βουλομένους ἀφαιρείσθαι τοὺς |dwell in Ἑλληνας τὴν  
 earth|after; Ἐκείνους ἄλλοις ἐπιπέσειν ἵνα οὐκ ἐπιπέσειεν ἑαυτοῖς  
 a |because ἕνεκα τῆς ἐπιπέσεως αὐτῶν. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ οὐκ ἐπιπέσειεν ἑαυτοῖς  
 coun-οἴην αὐτὸν |ἄημι?: blow; or ἄντι?: ἐκείνου. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς οὐ  
 try |for, equivalent to  
 βούλεσθε |proceed to- ἀνάγκη δὴ μοι ἢ ὑμᾶς προδόντα τῇ Κύρου  
 gether, assem-  
 |friendship|ble ἢ πρὸς ἐκείνον ψευσάμενον μεθ' ὑμῶν εἶναι. εἰ μὲν δὲ  
 δίκαια ποιήσω οὐκ οἶδα, αἰρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν ὅ τι ἂν  
 δέη πείσομαι. καὶ οὐποτέ |ἔρομαι?: ask, search through; or εἶρω?: declare; (pf)  
 τοὺς βαρβάρους, προδοὺς τοὺς Ἑλληνας τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων |friendship  
 εἰλόμην, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ οὐ θέλετε πείθεσθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν εἴσομαι  
 καὶ ὅ τι ἂν δέη πείσομαι. νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ εἶναι καὶ πατρίδα καὶ  
 φίλους καὶ συμμάχους, καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν μὲν ἂν οἶμαι εἶναι |honored, w  
 ἂν ὦ, ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ἂν οὐκ ἂν ἰκανὸς οἶμαι εἶναι οὐτ' ἂν φίλον  
 ἀφελῆσαι οὐτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν |ward off; aid' ἐμοῦ οὖν ἰόντος ὅπῃ ἂν καὶ  
 ὑμεῖς οὕτω τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε.»

Ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οἳ τε αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι  
 ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες ὅτι οὐ φαίη παρὰ βασιλέα πορεύεσθαι ἐπήνεσαν·  
 παρὰ δὲ Ξενίου καὶ Πασίωνος πλείους ἢ |2000 λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα  
 καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα |encamp or παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ. Κῦρος δὲ  
 take up sta-  
 τούτοις ἀπορῶν τῆ |tion ἰλυπούμενος |send; (mid) summon ἵρχον·  
 ὁ δὲ ἰέναι μὲν οὐκ ἤθελε, |secretly ἔτε τῶν στρατιωτῶν πέμπων  
 αὐτῷ ἄγγελον ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν ὡς καταστησομένων τούτων εἰς τὸ  
 δέον. |send; (mid) summon ἕνεκα αὐτόν· αὐτὸς δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἰέναι.

deprive its Hellenic inhabitants of their lands. But as soon as Cyrus summoned me, I took you with me and set out, so that, if my benefactor had any need of me, I might requite him for the good treatment I myself had received at his hands.... But since you are not minded to continue the march with me, one of two things is left to me to do; either I must renounce you for the sake of my friendship with Cyrus, or I must go with you at the cost of deceiving him. Whether I am about to do right or not, I cannot say, but I choose yourselves; and, whatever betide, I mean to share your fate. Never shall it be said of me by any one that, having led Greek troops against the barbarians, I betrayed the Hellenes, and chose the friendship of the barbarian. No! since you do not choose to obey and follow me, I will follow after you. Whatever betide, I will share your fate. I look upon you as my country, my friends, my allies; with you I think I shall be honoured, wherever I be; without you I do not see how I can help a friend or hurt a foe. My decision is taken. Wherever you go, I go also.”

Such were his words. But the soldiers, not only his own, but the rest also, when they heard what he said, and how he had scouted the idea of going up to the great king’s palace, expressed their approval; and more than two thousand men deserted Xenias and Pasion, and took their arms and baggage-train, and came and encamped with Clearchus. But Cyrus, in despair and vexation at this turn of affairs, sent for Clearchus. He refused to come; but, without the knowledge of the soldiers, sent a message to Cyrus, bidding him keep a good heart, for that all would arrange itself in the right way; and bade him keep on sending for him, whilst he himself refused to go. After that he got together his own men, with those who had joined him, and of the rest any who chose to come, and spoke as follows: “Fellow soldiers, it is clear that the relations of Cyrus

*vocabulary*

**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**αἰσχύνω** spoil, disgrace  
**ἀμελέω** disregard (μέλω)  
**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp.~sin  
**ἄξιος** worthy ~axiom  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve  
**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck  
**ἀσφαλῆς** going ahead, standing firm  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
 ἀφήκω  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**γνώμη** sign, mind, will, decision  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**δίκη** justice  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ἐχθρός** hated, distasteful ~external  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἡμέτερος** our, my

**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ιδιώτης** -ου (m, 1) private, not public  
**ἵππικός** of horses  
**καθεύδω** lie down  
**κάθημαι** sit  
**μέντοι** however  
**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon  
**ναυτικός** of ships  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**ὄφελος** (n, 3) a use, a help  
**παύω** stop something ~pause  
**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (πούς)  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
**πρόσω** forward, in the future; also  
 πόρρω, πρόσωθεν  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συνάγω** assemble; join in battle  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**ώρα** season, time ~horoscope

μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα συναγαγὼν τοὺς θ' ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώτας καὶ τοὺς προσελθόντας αὐτῷ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τὸν βουλόμενον, ἔλεξε τοιαύδε.

«Ἄνδρες στρατιώται, τὰ μὲν δὴ Κύρου δῆλον ὅτι οὕτως ἔχει πρὸς ἡμᾶς ὥσπερ τὰ ἡμέτερα πρὸς ἐκείνον· οὔτε γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἐκείνου ἔτι στρατιώται, ἐπεὶ γε οὐ συνεπόμεθα αὐτῷ, οὔτε ἐκείνος ἔτι ἡμῖν μισθοδότης. ὅτι μέντοι ἀδικεῖσθαι νομίζει ὑφ' ἡμῶν οἶδα· ὥστε καὶ μεταπεμπομένου αὐτοῦ οὐκ ἐθέλω ἐλθεῖν, τὸ μὲν μέγιστον αἰσχυνόμενος ὅτι σύννοϊδα ἐμαντῷ πάντα ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν, ἔπειτα καὶ δεδιὼς μὴ λαβὼν με δίκην ἐπιθῆ ὧν νομίζει ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἡδικῆσθαι. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ οὐχ ὥρα εἶναι ἡμῖν καθεῦδειν οὐδ' ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ βουλευέσθαι ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων. καὶ ἕως γε μένομεν αὐτοῦ σκεπτέον μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα μενοῦμεν, εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπίεμαι, ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα ἄπιμεν, καὶ ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔξομεν· ἄνευ γὰρ τούτων οὔτε στρατηγοῦ οὔτε ἰδιώτου ὄφελος οὐδέν. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ πολλοῦ μὲν ἄξιος ᾧ ἂν φίλος ἦ, χαλεπώτατος δ' ἐχθρὸς ᾧ ἂν πολέμιος ἦ, ἔχει δὲ δύναμιν καὶ πεζὴν καὶ ἵππικὴν καὶ ναυτικὴν ἦν πάντες ὁμοίως ὀρώμεν τε καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα· καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ πόρρω δοκοῦμέν μοι αὐτοῦ καθῆσθαι. ὥστε ὥρα λέγειν ὅ τι τις γινώσκει ἄριστον εἶναι.» ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο.

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἀνίσταντο οἱ μὲν ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου, λέξοντες ἃ ἐγγίνωσκον, οἱ δὲ καὶ ὑπ' ἐκείνου ἐγκέλευστοι, ἐπιδεικνύντες οἷα εἶη ἢ ἀπορία ἄνευ τῆς Κύρου γνώμης καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπίεμαι. εἷς

μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα συναγαγὼν τοὺς θ' ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώτας καὶ τοὺς προσελθόντας αὐτῷ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τὸν βουλόμενον, ἔλεξε τοιάδε.

«Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὰ μὲν δὴ Κύρου δῆλον ὅτι οὕτως ἔχει πρὸς ἡμᾶς ὥσπερ τὰ ἡμέτερα πρὸς ἐκείνον· οὔτε γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἐκείνου ἔτι στρατιῶται, ἐπεὶ γε οὐ συννεπόμεθα αὐτῷ, οὔτε ἐκείνος ἔτι ἡμῖν

**|paymaster** ὅτι μέντοι ἀδικεῖσθαι νομίζει ὑφ' ἡμῶν οἶδα· ὥστε καὶ **|send; (mid) summon** ἵ οὐκ ἐθέλω ἐλθεῖν, τὸ μὲν μέγιστον αἰσχυρόμενος ὅτι σύννοδα ἑμαυτῷ πάντα ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν, ἔπειτα καὶ δεδιὼς μὴ λαβὼν με δίκην ἐπιθῆ ὧν νομίζει ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἠδικηθῆσαι. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ οὐχ ἄρα εἶναι ἡμῖν καθεύδειν οὐδ' **|disregard** ὧν αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ βουλευέσθαι ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων. καὶ ἕως γε μένομεν

αὐτοῦ **|thing to consider, one who must consider** αἰ ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα μενούμεν, εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα ἄπιμεν, καὶ ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεα ἔξομεν· ἄνευ γὰρ τούτων οὔτε στρατηγοῦ οὔτε **|private, a use, a help not public**τος δ' ἐχθρὸς ᾧ ἂν πολέμιος ἦ, ἔχει δὲ δύναμιν καὶ πεζῆν καὶ **|of horses** ἢ ναυτικὴν ἦν πάντες ὁμοίως ὀρώμεν τε καὶ **|ἀπιστέω?: disbelieve; or ἐπίστημι?: stand the future ready, take a stand; γινώσκω ἐπίσταμαι?: know** ὡς ἂν ἴσασθε καὶ ἐπίσταται. ἄριστον εἶναι.» ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο.

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἀνίσταντο οἱ μὲν ἐκ τοῦ **|self-willed** λέξοντες ἂ ἐγίνωσκον, οἱ δὲ καὶ ὑπ' ἐκείνου **|urged on** ἐπιδεικνύντες οἷα εἶη ἡ **|difficulty, bottleneck** τῆς Κύρου γνώμης καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι. εἰς

to us are identical with ours to him. We are no longer his soldiers, since we have ceased to follow him; and he, on his side, is no longer our paymaster. He, however, no doubt considers himself wronged by us; and though he goes on sending for me, I cannot bring myself to go to him: for two reasons, chiefly from a sense of shame, for I am forced to admit to myself that I have altogether deceived him; but partly, too, because I am afraid of his seizing me and inflicting a penalty on the wrongs which he conceives that I have done him. In my opinion, then, this is no time for us to go to sleep and forget all about ourselves, rather it is high time to deliberate on our next move; and as long as we do remain here, we had better bethink us how we are to abide in security; or, if we are resolved to turn our backs at once, what will be the safest means of retreat; and, further, how we are to procure supplies, for without supplies there is no profit whatsoever in the general or the private soldier. The man with whom we have to deal is an excellent friend to his friends, but a very dangerous enemy to his foes. And he is backed by a force of infantry and cavalry and ships such as we all alike very well see and know, since we can hardly be said to have posted ourselves at any great distance from him. If, then, any one has a suggestion to make, now is the time to speak." With these words he ceased.

Then various speakers stood up; some of their own motion to propound their views; others inspired by Clearchus to dilate on the hopeless difficulty of either staying, or going back without the goodwill of Cyrus. One of these, in particular, with a make-believe of anxiety to commence the homeward march without further pause, called upon them instantly to choose other generals, if Clearchus were not himself prepared to lead them back: "Let them at once purchase supplies" (the market being in the heart of the Asiatic camp), "let them

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
**ἀγοράζω** do commerce  
**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also ἄκρα, ἄκρη  
**ἄλλομαι** to jump ~sally  
**ἀναρπάζω** carry off  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back  
**ἀποπλέω** sail away  
**διό** because of which  
**δυνατός** powerful, possible  
**ἐμβαίνω** step on, board  
**ἐνοράω** look at, notice something in  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὑ) display, exhibit  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide, chief  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake

**κωλύω** hinder, prevent  
**μηδέ** and not; not even  
**μήτε** neither...nor...  
**ὅθεν** whence  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**ποιητέος** to be made, done  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πραΐξις** -εως (f/m/n) result, business  
**προκαταλαμβάνω** seize beforehand  
**προσποιέω** give over to  
**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry  
 ~repudiate  
**στόλος** expedition  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατηγία** office of command  
**συντάσσω** gather, assemble  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**τριήρης** -ους (f, 3) trireme  
**τῶ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φθάνω** do first, outstrip  
**φιλία** friendship  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**χοῦμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**χώρα** place

δὲ δὴ εἶπε προσποιούμενος σπεύδειν ὡς τάχιστα πορεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατηγούς μὲν ἐλέσθαι ἄλλους ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ μὴ βούλεται Κλέαρχος ἀπάγειν· τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδει' ἀγοράζεσθαι ἢ δ' ἀγορὰ (ἦν ἐν τῷ βαρβαρικῷ στρατεύματι) καὶ συσκευάζεσθαι· ἐλθόντας δὲ Κύρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὡς ἀποπλέοιεν· ἐὰν δὲ μὴ διδῶ ταῦτα, ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν Κύρον ὅστις διὰ φιλίας τῆς χώρας ἀπάξει. ἐὰν δὲ μηδὲ ἡγεμόνα διδῶ, συντάττεσθαι τὴν ταχίστην, πέμψαι δὲ καὶ προκαταληφμένους τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως μὴ φθάσωσι μήτε Κύρος μήτε οἱ Κίλικες καταλαβόντες, ὧν πολλοὺς καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἔχομεν ἀνηρπακότες. οὗτος μὲν τοιαῦτα εἶπε· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον Κλέαρχος εἶπε τοσοῦτον. «Ὡς μὲν στρατηγήσοντα ἐμὲ ταύτην τὴν στρατηγίαν μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω· πολλὰ γὰρ ἐνορῶ δι' ἃ ἐμοὶ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον· ὡς δὲ τῷ ἀνδρὶ ὄν ἂν ἔλησθε πείσομαι ἢ δυνατὸν μάλιστα, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων.»

Μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη, ἐπιδεικνὺς μὲν τὴν εὐήθειαν τοῦ τὰ πλοῖα αἰτεῖν κελεύοντος, ὥσπερ πάλιν τὸν στόλον Κύρου ποιουμένου, ἐπιδεικνὺς δὲ ὡς εὐήθες εἶναι ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν παρὰ τούτου ᾧ λυμαινόμεθα τὴν πρᾶξιν. «εἰ δὲ καὶ τῷ ἡγεμόνι πιστεύσομεν ὄν ἂν Κύρος διδῶ, τί κωλύει καὶ τὰ ἄκρα ἡμῖν κελεύειν Κύρον προκαταλαβεῖν; ἐγὼ γὰρ ὀκνοίην μὲν ἂν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα ἐμβαίνειν ἃ ἡμῖν δοίη, μὴ ἡμᾶς ταῖς τριήρεσι καταδύσῃ, φοβοίμην δ' ἂν τῷ ἡγεμόνι ὄν δοίη ἔπεσθαι, μὴ ἡμᾶς ἀγάγῃ ὅθεν οὐκ ἔσται ἐξελθεῖν·



δὲ δὴ εἶπε |give over to σπεύδειν ὡς τάχιστα πορεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν  
 Ἑλλάδα στρατηγούς μὲν ἐλέσθαι ἄλλους ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ μὴ βούλεται  
 Κλέαρχος ἀπάγειν· τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδει' |do commerce', δ' ἀγορὰ (ἦν ἐν  
 τῷ |non-Greek στρατεύματι) καὶ συσκευάζεσθαι· ἐλθόντας δὲ Κῦρον  
 αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὡς ἀποπλείειν· ἐὰν δὲ μὴ |δίδωμι?· should; bind; need, fail ; or  
 |δίδωμι?· give; permit  
 Κῦρον ὅστις διὰ |φιλία?: friendship ; or ἐὰν δὲ μηδὲ ἡγεμόνα |δίδωμι?· should;  
 |φίλος?: friend; beloved bind; need, fail ;  
 συντάττεσθαι τὴν ταχίστην, πέμψαι δὲ καὶ |seize beforehand or δίδωμι?· give;  
 |ἄκροις?: hilltop ; or ἄκρον?: extremity ; τε οἱ Κίλικες καταλαβόντες,  
 |ἄκροσ?: at the edge, extreme  
 ὧν πολλοὺς καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἔχομεν |carry off οὗτος μὲν  
 τοιαῦτα εἶπε· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον Κλέαρχος εἶπε τοσοῦτον. «Ὡς μὲν  
 στρατηγήσοντα ἐμὲ ταύτην τὴν |office of command ὑμῶν λεγέτω·  
 πολλὰ γὰρ |look at, notice τοῦτο οὐ |to be made, done ἢ ἀνδρὶ ὄν  
 |something in  
 ἂν |to jump εἴσομαι ἢ δυνατὸν μάλιστα, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι  
 ἐπίσταμαι ὡς τις καὶ ἄλλος μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων.»

Μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη, ἐπιδεικνὺς μὲν τὴν |goodhearted-  
 |ness, silliness  
 τὰ πλοῖα αἰτεῖν κελούντος, ὥσπερ πάλιν τὸν στόλον Κύρου  
 ποιούμενον, ἐπιδεικνὺς δὲ ὡς εὐηθὲς εἶη ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν παρὰ τούτου  
 φῶ |treat with extreme in-|w. «εἰ δὲ καὶ τῷ ἡγεμόνι πιστεύσομεν  
 |dignity and violence  
 ὄν ἂν Κῦρος |δίδωμι?· should; bind; |ἄκροις?: hilltop ; or ἄκρον?: extremity ;  
 |need, fail ; or δίδωμι?· |or ἄκροσ?: at the edge, extreme  
 |seize beforehand give; permit ὀκνοῖν μὲν ἂν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα |step on, board  
 ἂ ἡμῖν δοίη, μὴ ἡμᾶς ταῖς τριήρεσι καταδύσῃ, φοβοίμην δ' ἂν τῷ  
 ἡγεμόνι ὄν δοίη ἔπεσθαι, μὴ ἡμᾶς ἀγάγῃ ὅθεν οὐκ ἔσται ἐξελεῖν·

pack up their baggage: let them,” he added, “go to Cyrus and ask for some ships in order to return by sea: if he refused to give them ships, let them demand of him a guide to lead them back through a friendly district; and if he would not so much as give them a guide, they could but put themselves, without more ado, in marching order, and send on a detachment to occupy the pass— before Cyrus and the Cilicians, whose property,” the speaker added, “we have so plentifully pillaged, can anticipate us.” Such were the remarks of that speaker; he was followed by Clearchus, who merely said: “As to my acting personally as general at this season, pray do not propose it: I can see numerous obstacles to my doing so. Obedience, in the fullest, I can render to the man of your choice, that is another matter: and you shall see and know that I can play my part, under command, with the best of you.”

After Clearchus another spokesman stood up, and proceeded to point out the simplicity of the speaker, who proposed to ask for vessels, just as if Cyrus were minded to renounce the expedition and sail back again. “And let me further point out,” he said, “what a simple-minded notion it is to beg a guide of the very man whose designs we are marring. If we can trust any guide whom Cyrus may vouchsafe to us, why not order Cyrus at once to occupy the pass on our behoof? For my part, I should think twice before I set foot on any ships that he might give us, for fear lest he should sink them with his men of war; and I should equally hesitate to follow any guide of his: he might lead us into some place out of which we should find it impossible to escape. I should much prefer, if I am to return home against the will of Cyrus at all, to give him the slip, and so begone: which indeed is impossible. But these schemes are simply nonsensical. My proposal is that a deputation

*vocabulary*

**ἀγγέλλω** carry a message, announce  
 ~angel  
**ἄγνουμι** break  
**ἀέκων** unwilling  
**ἀντί** for, equivalent to  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain  
**ἀποκρίνω** (ι) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
**ἀσφαλής** going ahead, standing firm  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also ἀφήνω  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**δεῦρο** here, come here!  
**δίκη** justice  
**δυνατός** powerful, possible  
**δώδεκα** twelve ~dodecahedron; also δυοκαίδεκα, δωδέκα  
**ἐκεῖ** there  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something

**ἐχθρός** hated, distasteful ~external  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**κεῖμαι** lie  
**λανθάνω** escape notice; (mp+gen) forget ~Lethe; also καταλήθομαι  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**ξένος** guest-friend, host, stranger ~xenophobe  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**παραπλήσιος** similar to  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πραΐξις** -εως (f/m/n) result, business  
**πρόθυμος** willing, eager  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do; also ὑπίσχομαι  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous  
**φανερῶ** demonstrate  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ἄκοντος ἀπιῶν Κύρου λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθῶν· ὁ οὐ δυνατὸν ἔστιν. ἀλλ' ἐγὼ φημι ταῦτα μὲν φλυαρίας εἶναι· δοκεῖ δέ μοι ἄνδρας ἐλθόντας πρὸς Κύρον οἷτινες ἐπιτήδειοι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἐρωτᾶν ἐκείνον τί βούλεται ἡμῖν χρήσθαι· καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἢ πρᾶξις ἢ παραπλησία οἷα περ καὶ πρόσθεν ἐχρήτο τοῖς ξένοις, ἔπεισθαι καὶ ἡμᾶς καὶ μὴ κακίους εἶναι τῶν πρόσθεν τούτῳ συναναβάντων· ἐὰν δὲ μείζων ἢ πρᾶξις τῆς πρόσθεν φαίνεται καὶ ἐπιπικνωτέρα καὶ ἐπικινδυνότερα, ἀξιούσιν ἢ πείσαντα ἡμᾶς ἄγειν ἢ πεισθέντα πρὸς φιλίαν ἀφιέναι· οὕτω γὰρ καὶ ἐπόμενοι ἂν φίλοι αὐτῷ καὶ πρόθυμοι ἐποίμεθα καὶ ἀπιόντες ἀσφαλῶς ἂν ἀπιόμεν· ὅ τι δ' ἂν πρὸς ταῦτα λέγη ἀπαγγεῖλαι δεῦρο· ἡμᾶς δ' ἀκούσαντας πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευέσθαι.»

Ἔδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἄνδρας ἐλόμενοι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ πέμπουσιν οἱ ἠρώτων Κύρον τὰ δόξαντα τῇ στρατιᾷ. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούει Ἀβροκόμαν ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι, ἀπέχοντα δώδεκα σταθμούς· πρὸς τοῦτον οὖν ἔφη βούλεσθαι ἐλθεῖν· κὰν μὲν ἢ ἐκεῖ, τὴν δίκην ἔφη χρήζειν ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ, «ἦν δὲ φύγη, ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα.» ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ αἰρετοὶ ἀγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρατιώταις· τοῖς δὲ ὑποψία μὲν ἦν ὅτι ἄγει πρὸς βασιλέα, ὅμως δὲ ἐδόκει ἔπεισθαι. προσαιτοῦσι δὲ μισθόν· ὁ δὲ Κύρος ὑπισχνεῖται ἡμιόλιον πᾶσι δώσειν οὗ πρότερον ἔφερον, ἀντὶ δαρεικῶν τρία ἡμιδαρεικὰ τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ· ὅτι δὲ ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἄγοι οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα ἤκουσεν οὐδεὶς ἐν τῷ γε φανερῷ.

βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ἄκοντος ἀπιὼν Κύρου λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθῶν· ὁ οὐ δυνατὸν ἐστίν. ἀλλ' ἐγὼ φημι ταῦτα μὲν |nonsense ἵναι· δοκεῖ δέ μοι ἄνδρας ἐλθόντας πρὸς Κῦρον οἵτινες ἐπιτήδειοι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἐρωτᾶν |ἔξειμι?: ἴδιον ἔκει?: ἴδιον καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἢ πρᾶξις ἢ παραπλησία |there ; or κείμαι?: lie οἷαπερ καὶ πρόσθεν ἐχρήτο τοῖς ξένοις, ἔπεσθαι καὶ ἡμᾶς καὶ μὴ κακίους εἶναι τῶν πρόσθεν τούτῳ |go up with ἐὰν δὲ μείζων ἢ πρᾶξις τῆς πρόσθεν φαίνεται καὶ |of/with pain, toil ἵπικινδυνότερα, ἀξιούσιν ἢ πείσαντα ἡμᾶς ἄγειν ἢ πεισθέντα πρὸς |friendship ἴδιον οὕτω γὰρ καὶ ἐπόμενοι ἂν φίλοι αὐτῷ καὶ πρόθυμοι ἐποίμεθα καὶ ἀπίοντες ἀσφαλῶς ἂν ἀπίομεν· ὅτι δ' ἂν πρὸς ταῦτα λέγῃ ἀπαγγεῖλαι δεῦρο· ἡμᾶς δ' ἀκούσαντας πρὸς ταῦτα βουλεύεσθαι.»

Ἔδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἄνδρας ἐλόμενοι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ πέμπουσιν οἱ ἡρώτων Κῦρον τὰ δόξαντα τῇ στρατιᾷ. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούει Ἀβροκόμαν ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι, ἀπέχοντα δάδεκα |cottage; post ἰσὺς τοῦτον οὖν ἔφη βούλεσθαι ἐλθεῖν· κὰν μὲν ἢ |ἔξειμι?: ἴδιον ἔκει?: ἴδιον ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ, «ἦν δὲ φύγη, ἡμεῖς |κείμαι?: lie αὐτὰ βουλευσόμεθα.» ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ

eligible, |carry a mes- ἴδιον στρατιώταις· τοῖς δὲ |suspicion ἴδιον ἦν ὅτι able |sage, an- |τοῖς πρὸς ἀποδοῦναι, ὁμοῦς δὲ ἐδόκει ἔπεσθαι. |demand as well. σθόν· taken  
 ὁ δὲ Κῦρος |promise, |1.5 πᾶσι δώσειν οὐ πρότερον ἔφερον, |agree to do |times ἀντὶ δαρεικοῦ τρία ἡμῶν δαρεικὰ τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ· ὅτι δὲ ἐπὶ βασιλείᾳ ἄγοι οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα ἤκουσεν οὐδεὶς ἐν τῷ γε φανερωῷ.

of fit persons, with Clearchus, should go to Cyrus: let them go to Cyrus and ask him: what use he proposes to make of us? and if the business is at all similar to that on which he once before employed a body of foreigners— let us by all means follow: let us show that we are the equals of those who accompanied him on his march up formerly. But if the design should turn out to be of larger import than the former one— involving more toil and more danger— we should ask him, either to give us good reasons for following his lead, or else consent to send us away into a friendly country. In this way, whether we follow him, we shall do so as friends, and with heart and soul, or whether we go back, we shall do so in security. The answer to this shall be reported to us here, and when we have heard it, we will advise as to our best course.”

This resolution was carried, and they chose and sent a deputation with Clearchus, who put to Cyrus the questions which had been agreed upon by the army. Cyrus replied as follows: That he had received news that Abrocomas, an enemy of his, was posted on the Euphrates, twelve stages off; his object was to march against this aforesaid Abrocomas: and if he were still there, he wished to inflict punishment on him, “or if he be fled” (so the reply concluded), “we will there deliberate on the best course.” The deputation received the answer and reported it to the soldiers. The suspicion that he was leading them against the king was not dispelled; but it seemed best to follow him. They only demanded an increase of pay, and Cyrus promised to give them half as much again as they had hitherto received— that is to say, a daric and a half a month to each man, instead of a daric. Was he really leading them to attack the king? Not even at this moment was any one apprised of the fact, at any rate in any open and public manner.

*vocabulary***ἀγέομαι** go before, lead ~hegemony;

also ἡγέομαι

**ἀφίστημι** stand apart; exact payment**δέκα** ten ~decimal**εἰκός οἰκότος** (n, 3) likely**ἐνταῦθα** thither**ἐντεῦθεν** thence**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic**ἔξω** outward, outside**ἑπτακόσιοι** 700**ἔσχατος** farthest, last**ἔσωθεν** inside, from inside**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius**εὐρος** (n, 3) width; (caps) the east

wind

**ἥμερος** domesticated**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene**μετάπεμπτos** sent for**μισθοφόρος** mercenary**ναός νεώς** (f/m) temple, shrine; also

νηός

**ναύαρχος** admiral**οἰκέω** inhabit**οἰκουμένη** inhabited**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy

infantryman

**ὀρμέω** be anchored**παρασάγγης** (m, 1) Persian unit, ca. 5 km**πέντε** five ~pentagon**πεντεκαίδεκα** 15**πολιορκέω** besiege**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus**πρό** before, forward ~prolog**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae**ρέω** flow ~rheostat**σκηνή** tent, booth**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also

masc)

**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;

(pl noun) 200 meters; also σταδίη

**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν**στρατηγέω** be a general**συμπολεμέω** join in war**συστρατεύω** join in an expedition**σώζω** save**τείχος** -υς (n, 3) outdoor wall; also

τειχίον

**τετρακόσιοι** 400**τρεις** three ~three**τριάκοντα** thirty**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch; also

φυλακεύς

**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard

~phylactery

## 1.4

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα ἐπὶ τὸν Ψάρον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ εὖρος τρία πλέθρα. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας πέντε ἐπὶ τὸν Πύραμον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ εὖρος στάδιον. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα εἰς Ἴσσοὺς, τῆς Κιλικίας ἐσχάτην πόλιν ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ Κύρω παρήσαν αἱ ἐκ Πελοποννήσου νῆες τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε καὶ ἐπ' αὐταῖς ναύαρχος Πυθαγόρας Λακεδαιμόνιος. ἠγείτο δ' αὐταῖς Ταμῶς Αἰγύπτιος ἐξ Ἐφέσου, ἔχων ναὺς ἑτέρας Κύρου πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι, αἷς ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον, ὅτε Τισσαφέρνει φίλη ἦν, καὶ συνεπολέμει Κύρω πρὸς αὐτόν. παρήν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος Λακεδαιμόνιος ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν, μετάπεμπος ὑπὸ Κύρου, ἑπτακοσίους ἔχων ὀπλίτας, ὧν ἐστρατήγει παρὰ Κύρω. αἱ δὲ νῆες ὄρμουν παρὰ τὴν Κύρου σκηνὴν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ παρὰ Ἄβροκόμα μισθοφόροι Ἕλληνες ἀποστάντες ἦλθον παρὰ Κῦρον τετρακόσιοι ὀπλίται καὶ συνεστρατεύοντο ἐπὶ βασιλέα. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας πέντε ἐπὶ πύλας τῆς Κιλικίας καὶ τῆς Συρίας. ἦσαν δὲ ταῦτα δύο τείχη, καὶ τὸ μὲν ἔσωθεν τὸ πρὸ τῆς Κιλικίας Σύννεσις εἶχε καὶ Κιλικίων φυλακὴ, τὸ δὲ ἔξω τὸ πρὸ τῆς Συρίας βασιλέως ἐλέγετο φυλακὴ φυλάττειν. διὰ μέσου δὲ ρεῖ τούτων ποταμὸς Κάρσος ὄνομα, εὖρος



1.4

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει |cottage; post Persian δέκα ἐπὶ τὸν Ψάρον  
 ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ |width; 30 meters or 30 kilometers or ὕθεν ἐξελαύνει |cottage; post  
 (caps) the its square  
 ἕνα |Persian πρὸς τὸν Πύραμον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ |width; (caps) the  
 unit, ca. 5 east wind east wind  
 στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl)cottage; post Persian unit, 15  
 also masc) ; or στάδιος?: ca. 5 km  
 (adj) standing upright, firm; χάτην πόλιν ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ |οικομένη?: inhabited ;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters or οἰκέω?: inhabit  
 μεγάλην καὶ |blessed with a ἄθρα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ Κύρω  
 |good genius  
 παρήσαν αἱ ἐκ Πελοποννήσου νῆες τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε καὶ ἐπ’  
 αὐταῖς |admiral Πυθαγόρας Λακεδαιμόνιος. |go before, lead Ταμῶς  
 Αἰγύπτιος ἐξ Ἐφέσου, ἔχων ναῦς ἑτέρας Κύρου πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι,  
 αἷς ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον, ὅτε Τισσαφέρνει φίλη ἦν, καὶ |join in war  
 Κύρω πρὸς αὐτόν. παρήν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος Λακεδαιμόνιος ἐπὶ  
 τῶν νεῶν, |sent for ὑπὸ Κύρου, |700 ἔχων ὀπλίτας, ὧν  
 ἐστρατήγει παρὰ Κύρω. αἱ δὲ νῆες |be anchored τὴν Κύρου σκηνὴν.  
 ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ παρὰ Ἀβροκόμα μισθοφόροι Ἕλληνες ἀποστάντες  
 |ἄλθομαι?: ἔβωμαι? 400 ὀπλίται καὶ |join in an ἐπὶ  
 |whole ; or ἔρχομαι?: |expedition  
 |go, come ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει |cottage; post Persian πέντε ἐπὶ  
 unit, ca. 5  
 km αὐτὰ δύο τείχη, καὶ  
 τὸ μὲν |ἔσωθεν?: ἔσωθεν, ἔξωθεν ἰκίας Συνέννεσις εἶχε καὶ Κιλικίων  
 |inside ; or σώζω?: save  
 φυλακῆ, τὸ δὲ ἔξω τὸ πρὸ τῆς Συρίας βασιλέως ἐλέγετο φυλακῆ  
 φυλάττειν. διὰ μέσου δὲ ῥεῖ τούτων ποταμὸς Κάρσος ὄνομα. |width; (caps) the  
 east wind east wind

**1.4**

From this point he marched two stages— ten parasangs— to the river Psarus, which is two hundred feet broad, and from the Psarus he marched a single stage— five parasangs— to Issi, the last city in Cilicia. It lies on the seaboard— a prosperous, large and flourishing town. Here they halted three days, and here Cyrus was joined by his fleet. There were thirty-five ships from Peloponnesus, with the Lacedaemonian admiral Pythagoras on board. These had been piloted from Ephesus by Tamos the Egyptian, who himself had another fleet of twenty-five ships belonging to Cyrus. These had formed Tamos's blockading squadron at Miletus, when that city sided with Tissaphernes; he had also used them in other military services rendered to Cyrus in his operations against that satrap. There was a third officer on board the fleet, the Lacedaemonian Cheirisophus, who had been sent for by Cyrus, and had brought with him seven hundred hoplites, over whom he was to act as general in the service of Cyrus. The fleet lay at anchor opposite Cyrus's tent. Here too another reinforcement presented itself. This was a body of four hundred hoplites, Hellenic mercenaries in the service of Abrocomas, who deserted him for Cyrus, and joined in the campaign against the king.

From Issi, he marched a single stage— five parasangs— to the gates of Cilicia and Syria. This was a double fortress: the inner and nearer one, which protects Cilicia, was held by Syennesis and a garrison of Cilicians; the outer and further one, protecting Syria, was reported to be garrisoned by a body of the king's troops. Through the gap between the two fortresses flows a river named the Carsus, which is a hundred feet broad, and the whole space between was scarcely more

*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*  
**ἀμφότερος** both ~amphora  
**ἀναστρέφω** act: overturn; mid: find oneself in  
**ἄξιος** worthy ~axiom  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀποπλέω** sail away  
**βία** strength, force  
**βιάζω** use force on  
**δειλός** wretched, poor, cowardly  
 ~Deimos; also *δείλος*  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**διώκω** chase  
**εἶω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about  
**εἶσω** into; also *ἔσω*  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also *εἴνεκα, ἔνεκεν*  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἐπτά** seven  
**εὐχόμαι** declare, boast; pray (*εὐχος*)  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**μέντοι** however

**ναός νεώς** (f/m) temple, shrine; also *νηός*  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also *οἶμαι, οἴομαι*  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**πέτρα** rock, cliff, reef ~petrified  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also *σταθμόν*  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τείχος** -υς (n, 3) outdoor wall; also *τειχίον*  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
**τριήρης** -ους (f, 3) trireme  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard  
 ~phylactery  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also *καταχέω*  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

πλήθρου. ἅπαν δὲ τὸ μέσον τῶν τειχῶν ἦσαν στάδιοι τρεῖς· καὶ παρελθεῖν οὐκ ἦν βία· ἦν γὰρ ἡ πάροδος στενὴ καὶ τὰ τεῖχη εἰς τὴν θάλατταν καθήκοντα, ὑπερθεν δ' ἦσαν πέτραι ἡλίβατοι· ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς τείχεσιν ἀμφοτέροις ἐφειστήκεσαν πύλαι. ταύτης ἔνεκα τῆς παρόδου Κῦρος τὰς ναῦς μετεπέμψατο, ὅπως ὀπλίτας ἀποβιβάσειεν εἴσω καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν, καὶ βιασόμενος τοὺς πολεμίους εἰ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς Συρίαις πύλαις, ὅπερ ᾤετο ποιήσειν ὁ Κῦρος τὸν Ἀβροκόμαν, ἔχοντα πολὺ στρατεύμα. Ἀβροκόμας δὲ οὐ τοῦτ' ἐποίησεν, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Κῦρον ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ὄντα, ἀναστρέψας ἐκ Φοινίκης παρὰ βασιλέα ἀπήλανεν, ἔχων, ὡς ἐλέγετο, τριάκοντα μυριάδας στρατιᾶς.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ Συρίας σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας πέντε εἰς Μυριάνδον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην ὑπὸ Φοινίκων ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ· ἐμπόριον δ' ἦν τὸ χωρίον καὶ ὄρμουν αὐτόθι ὀλκάδες πολλαί. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας ἐπτά· καὶ Ξενίας ὁ Ἄρκας στρατηγὸς καὶ Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεὺς ἐμβάντες εἰς πλοῖον καὶ τὰ πλείστου ἄξια ἐνθήμενοι ἀπέπλευσαν, ὡς μὲν τοῖς πλείστοις ἐδόκουν φιλοτιμηθέντες ὅτι τοὺς στρατιώτας αὐτῶν τοὺς παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἀπελθόντας ὡς ἀπίνοντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πάλιν καὶ οὐ πρὸς βασιλέα εἶα Κῦρος τὸν Κλέαρχον ἔχειν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν ἀφανεῖς, διήλθε λόγος ὅτι διώκει αὐτοὺς Κῦρος τριήρεσι· καὶ οἱ μὲν ἠὔχοντο ὡς δειλοὺς ὄντας αὐτοὺς ληφθῆναι, οἱ δ' ᾤκτιρον εἰ ἀλώσωντο. Κῦρος δὲ συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγούς εἶπεν·

«Ἀπολελοίπασιν ἡμῶς Ξενίας καὶ Πασίων. ἀλλ' εὖ γε μέντοι

|30 meters or its square |αν δὲ τὸ μέσον τῶν τειχῶν ἦσαν |στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also masc) ; or στάδιος?: (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl)

παρελθεῖν οὐκ ἦν βία· ἦν γὰρ ἡ |detour, narrow side way, |noun-πέτραι |epithet of stone τοῖς

θάλατταν |come down, from above |noun- |tain pass

(a day) |to fall, be proper |ειστήκεσαν πύλαι. ταύτης ἕνεκα τῆς |detour, side way, mountain pass

Κῦρος τὰς ναῦς |send; (mid) summon λίτας |put ashore, put off αἰ

ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν, καὶ βιασόμενος τοὺς πολεμίους εἰ φυλάττειεν ἐπὶ

ταῖς Συρίαις πύλαις, ὅπερ ᾤετο ποιήσειεν ὁ Κῦρος τὸν Ἀβροκόμαν,

ἔχοντα πολὺ στράτευμα. Ἀβροκόμας δὲ οὐ τοῦτ' ἐποίησεν, ἀλλ'

ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Κῦρον ἐν Κιλικία ὄντα, ἀναστρέψας ἐκ Φοινίκης παρὰ

βασιλέα |expel, ex- |ων, ὡς ἐλέγετο, τριάκοντα |countless, τρατιᾶς.

|clude, ward |off |myriad

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ Συρίας |cottage; post |Persian πέντε εἰς

Μυριάνδον, πόλιν |οἰκουμένη?: inhabited |ἐπὶ κμῇ θαλάττῃ |immigrant,

; or οἰκέω?: inhabit |metric

δ' ἦν τὸ χωρίον καὶ |be an- |on the |towed |λλαί. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν

|chored |spot |merchant

ἡμέρας ἑπτὰ· καὶ Ξενίας ὁ Ἄρκας στ |ship γῶς καὶ Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεὺς

|step on, board |οῖον καὶ τὰ πλείστον ἄξια |load; mp: ἐπλευσαν,

|take to heart

ὡς μὲν τοῖς πλείστοις ἐδόκουν φιλοτιμηθέντες ὅτι τοὺς στρατιώτας

αὐτῶν τοὺς παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἀπελθόντας ὡς ἀπιόντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα

πάλιν καὶ οὐ πρὸς βασιλέα εἶα Κῦρος τὸν Κλέαρχον ἔχειν. ἐπεὶ δ'

ἦσαν ἀφανεῖς, διήλθε λόγος ὅτι διώκει αὐτοὺς Κῦρος τριήρεσι· καὶ

οἱ μὲν ἠῦχοντο ὡς δειλοὺς ὄντας αὐτοὺς ληφθῆναι, οἱ δ' |pity εἰ

ἀλώσουτο. Κῦρος δὲ |call together οὓς στρατηγούς εἶπεν·

<|leave behind, ἡμᾶς Ξενίας καὶ Πασίων. ἀλλ' εὐ γε μέντοι

|fail

than six hundred yards. To force a passage here would be impossible, so narrow was the pass itself, with the fortification walls stretching down to the sea, and precipitous rocks above; while both fortresses were furnished with gates. It was the existence of this pass which had induced Cyrus to send for the fleet, so as to enable him to lead a body of hoplites inside and outside the gates; and so to force a passage through the enemy, if he were guarding the Syrian gate, as he fully expected to find Abrocomas doing with a large army. This, however, Abrocomas had not done; but as soon as he learnt that Cyrus was in Cilicia, he had turned round and made his exit from Phoenicia, to join the king with an army amounting, as report said, to three hundred thousand men.

From this point Cyrus pursued his march, through Syria a single stage— five parasangs— to Myriandus, a city inhabited by Phoenicians, on the sea-coast. This was a commercial port, and numerous merchant vessels were riding at anchor in the harbour. Here they halted seven days, and here Xenias the Arcadian general, and Pasion the Megarian got on board a trader, and having stowed away their most valuable effects, set sail for home; most people explained the act as the outcome of a fit of jealousy, because Cyrus had allowed Clearchus to retain their men, who had deserted to him, in hopes of returning to Hellas instead of marching against the king; when the two had so vanished, a rumour spread that Cyrus was after them with some ships of war, and some hoped the cowards might be caught, others pitied them, if that should be their fate.

But Cyrus summoned the generals and addressed them: “Xenias and Pasion,” he said, “have taken leave of us; but they need not flatter themselves that in so doing they have stolen into hiding. I know where they are gone; nor will they owe their escape to

*vocabulary*

**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape  
**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
**ἀφήκω**  
**διώκω** chase  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**εἰκός** οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἐννυμι** clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics  
**ἔρομαι** ask, search through; also  
**ἀνέρομαι, εἴρομαι, ἐξείρομαι, ἐξέρομαι**  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**ἡώς** ἡοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**κεῖμαι** lie

**μά** by (in oaths)  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὅπη** wherever, however  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**πάνυ** altogether, very  
**παράδεισος** park  
**πάρος** before, in the past  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**πηγή** waters, headwaters  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πρόθυμος** willing, eager  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**συλλαμβάνω** arrest, capture  
**τέκνον** child ~oxytocin  
**τέσσαρες** (3) four  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
**τριήρης** -ους (f, 3) trireme  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**χοῦμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**ώρα** season, time ~horoscope

ἐπιστάσθων ὅτι οὔτε ἀποδεδράκασιν· οἶδα γὰρ ὅπη οἴχονται· οὔτε ἀποπεφεύγασιν· ἔχω γὰρ τριήρεις ὥστε ἐλεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον· ἀλλὰ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ ἔγωγε αὐτοὺς διώξω, οὐδ' ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ ἕως μὲν ἂν παρῆ τις χρῶμαι, ἐπειδὴν δὲ ἀπιέναι βούληται, συλλαβὸν καὶ αὐτοὺς κακῶς ποιῶ καὶ τὰ χρήματα ἀποσυλῶ. ἀλλὰ ἴτωσαν, εἰδότες ὅτι κακίους εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. καίτοι ἔχω γε αὐτῶν καὶ τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας ἐν Τράλλεσι φρουρούμενα· ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τούτων στερήσονται, ἀλλ' ἀπολήψονται τῆς πρόσθεν ἕνεκα περὶ ἐμὲ ἀρετῆς.»

Καὶ ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, εἴ τις καὶ ἀθυμότερος ἦν πρὸς τὴν ἀνάβασιν, ἀκούοντες τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἥδιον καὶ προθυμότερον συνεπορεύοντο.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἵκοσιν ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εἶδος πλέθρου, πλήρη δ' ἰχθύων μεγάλων καὶ πραέων, οὓς οἱ Σύροι θεοὺς ἐνόμιζον καὶ ἀδικεῖν οὐκ εἶων, οὐδὲ τὰς περιστεράς. αἱ δὲ κῶμαι ἐν αἷς ἐσκήνουν Παρυσάτιδος ἦσαν εἰς ζώνην δεδομένα.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα ἐπὶ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Δάρδατος ποταμοῦ, οὗ τὸ εἶδος πλέθρου. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν τὰ Βελέσους βασιλεία τοῦ Συρίας ἄρξαντος, καὶ παράδεισος πάνυ μέγας καὶ καλός, ἔχων πάντα ὅσα ὦραι φύουσι. Κῦρος δ' αὐτὸν



ἐπιστάσθων ὅτι οὔτε ἀποδεδράκασιν· οἶδα γὰρ ὅπη οἴχονται· οὔτε

avoid, es-cape, free· ἔχω γὰρ τριήρεις ὥστε ἐλείν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον·  
 ; or εἶρω?: declare; (pf) string  
 εἰς μὲν ἂν παρῆ τις χρώμαι, |when δὲ ἀπιέναι βῶσθαι together συλλαβῶν  
 καὶ αὐτοὺς κακῶς ποιῶ καὶ τὰ χρήματα |despoil, rob ἡ δὲ ἴτωσαν,  
 εἰδότες ὅτι κακίους εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. καίτοι ἔχω  
 γε αὐτῶν καὶ τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας ἐν Τράλλεσι |keep watch ἀλλ' οὐδὲ  
 τούτων στερήσονται, ἀλλ' |receive, recover, take aside, cut off ὅσθην ἔνεκα περὶ ἐμὲ  
 ἀρετῆς.»

Καὶ ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνας, εἴ τις καὶ |having low morale  
 πῆν |going up, mount-ing, going inland ἐς πῆν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἥδιον καὶ προθυμότερον

proceed together, assemble  
 Μετὰ ταῦτα Κύρος ἐξελαύνει |cottage; post' ταρας |Persian unit, ca. 5  
 εἴκοσιν ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ |width; 30 meters full, complete; (caps) or its(+gen) full of  
 δ' |to fish μεγάλων καὶ πρᾶέων, οὓς οἱ Σὺν the θεῖο square μίζον καὶ  
 ἀδικεῖν οὐκ εἶων, οὐδὲ τὰς |dove αἰ δὲ |wind?; κωμη?; ;σκηνώ?: camp ; or village ;σκηνώ?: camp  
 Παρυσάτιδος ἦσαν εἰς |ζώνη?: girdle; waist ; or κεῖμαι?:  
 |or ζώννυμι?: gird |lie

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει |cottage; post' γε |Persian τριάκοντα ἐπὶ τὰς  
 πηγὰς τοῦ Δάρδατος ποταμοῦ, οὗ π |width; 30 meters or κτῆτος, καὶ παράδεισος πάντ  
 τὰ Βελέσους |βασίλεια?: noblewoman the east  
 μέγας καὶ καλός, ἔχων πάντα ὅσα ἀ |wind φύουσι. Κύρος δ' αὐτὸν

speed; I have men of war to capture their craft, if I like. But heaven help me! if I mean to pursue them: never shall it be said of me, that I turn people to account as long as they stay with me, but as soon as they are minded to be off, I seize and maltreat them, and strip them of their wealth. Not so! let them go with the consciousness that our behaviour to them is better than theirs to us. And yet I have their children and wives safe under lock and key in Tralles; but they shall not be deprived even of these. They shall receive them back in return for their former goodness to me.” So he spoke, and the Hellenes, even those who had been out of heart at the thought of marching up the country, when they heard of the nobleness of Cyrus, were happier and more eager to follow him on his path.

After this Cyrus marched onwards four stages— twenty parasangs— to the river Chalus. That river is a hundred feet broad, and is stocked with tame fish which the Syrians regard as gods, and will not suffer to be injured— and so too the pigeons of the place. The villages in which they encamped belonged to Parysatis, as part of her girdle money. From this point he marched on five stages— thirty parasangs— to the sources of the river Dardas, which is a hundred feet broad. Here stood the palace of Belesys, the ruler of Syria, with its park— which was a very large and beautiful one, and full of the products of all the seasons in their course. But Cyrus cut down the park and burnt the palace. Thence he marched on three stages—

*vocabulary*

**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**ἀναπειθῶ** persuade; also ἐπιπειθομαι,  
 πείθω, παραπειθῶ  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**ἀργύριον** small coin  
**αὐτόθι** on the spot  
**βασίλεια** noblewoman; also βασίλη  
**βασίλειος** kingly  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**ἐκκλησία** assembly  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**καθίστημι** set down, land  
**κατακαίω** burn down  
**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)  
 there is a danger that  
**κρύπτω** hide, cover ~cryptic; also  
 κατακρύπτω  
**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**μισθός** reward, wages

**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**πεντεκαίδεκα** 15  
**πλέος** full; also πλεῖος, πλέως  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πονέω** work; be busy  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πότερος** which, whichever of two  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
 masc)  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble  
**τέσσαρες** (3) four  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**ὑπίσχομαι** promise, agree to do; also  
 ὑπισχνέομαι  
**χαλεπαίνω** be violent, rage  
**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**χωρίς** separately

ἐξέκοιψε καὶ τὰ βασιλεία κατέκαυσεν. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελάνει σταθμούς τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων σταδίων· καὶ πόλις αὐτόθι ᾠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων Θάψακος ὄνομα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας πέντε. καὶ Κῦρος μεταπεμφόμενος τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο πρὸς βασιλέα μέγαν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα· καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ ἀναπειθεῖν ἔπεσθαι.

Οἱ δὲ ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίαν ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἔφασαν αὐτοὺς πάλαι ταῦτ' εἰδότας κρύπτειν, καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι, ἐὰν μὴ τις αὐτοῖς χρήματα διδῶ, ὥσπερ τοῖς προτέροις μετὰ Κύρου ἀναβᾶσι παρὰ τὸν πατέρα τοῦ Κύρου, καὶ ταῦτα οὐκ ἐπὶ μάχην ἰόντων, ἀλλὰ καλοῦντος τοῦ πατρὸς Κύρου. ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ Κύρῳ ἀπήγγελλον· ὁ δ' ὑπέσχετο ἀνδρὶ ἐκάστῳ δώσειν πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς, ἐπὰν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἦκωσι, καὶ τὸν μισθὸν ἐντελεῖ μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἰς Ἰωνίαν πάλιν. τὸ μὲν δὴ πολὺ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ οὕτως ἐπέισθη.

Μένων δὲ πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι τί ποιήσουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται, πότερον ἔψονται Κύρῳ ἢ οὐ, συνέλεξε τὸ αὐτοῦ στρατεύμα χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε.

«Ἄνδρες, ἐάν μοι πεισθῆτε, οὔτε κινδυνεύσαντες οὔτε πονήσαντες τῶν ἄλλων πλέον προτιμήσεσθε στρατιωτῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου. τί οὖν

cut out, down, off | **βασιλεία**? burn down | ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει | cottage; post  
 noble-  
 τρεῖς | Persian | **ἕρπον** | ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, ὄντα  
 ca. 5 km ; | or  
 τὸ | width; (caps) **βασιλείου**? : | 200 | on the spot ὁ μεγάλη καὶ  
 east wind | king | meters (pl also masc)  
 blessed with a | **ἱκός** ὁ **στάδιος**? : ἑ(adj) | ἡμέρας πέντε. καὶ Κύρος  
 good genius | standing upright,  
 send; (mid) summon | **ῥήματα** | 200 | Ἑλλήνων ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς  
 meters  
 ἔσοιτο πρὸς βασιλέα μέγαν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα· καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν  
 ταῦτα τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ | persuade ἔπεισθαι.

Οἱ δὲ ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίαν ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται  
 |be violent, rage ἔπεισθησαν, καὶ ἔφασαν αὐτοὺς πάλαι ταῦτ' εἰδότας  
 κρύπτειν, καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι, ἐὰν μὴ τις αὐτοῖς χρήματα | **δίδομι**? : should;  
 ὥσπερ τοῖς προτέροις μετὰ Κύρου ἀναβᾶσι παρὰ τὸν πατέρα | or **δίδωμι**? : give;  
 Κύρου, καὶ ταῦτα οὐκ ἐπὶ μάχην ἰόντων, ἀλλὰ καλοῦντος τοῦ πατρὸς | permit  
 Κύρου. ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ Κύρω ἀπήγγελλον· ὁ δ' | **ὑπέχω**? : ἰ hold out one's  
 ἐκάστῳ δώσειν πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς, | when, 's Βαβυλ **ὑπίσχομαι**? : promise, agree  
 τὸν μισθὸν ἐντελῇ μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἰς Ἰωνίαν | after | to do  
 πάλιν. τὸ μὲν δὴ πολὺ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ οὕτως ἐπέειπε.

Μένων δὲ πρὶν δηλὸν εἶναι τί ποιήσουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται,  
 | which, " | ὄνται Κύρω ἢ οὐ, | collect, ὃ αὐτοῦ στράτευμα χωρὶς  
 | whichever | assemble  
 τῶν ἄλλων καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε.

«Ἄνδρες, ἐὰν μοι πεισθῆτε, οὔτε κινδυνεύσαντες οὔτε πονήσαντες  
 τῶν ἄλλων πλέον προτιμήσεσθε στρατιωτῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου. τί οὖν

fifteen parasangs– to the river Euphrates, which is nearly half a mile broad. A large and flourishing city, named Thapsacus, stands on its banks. Here they halted five days, and here Cyrus sent for the generals of the Hellenes, and told them that the advance was now to be upon Babylon, against the great king; he bade them communicate this information to the soldiers and persuade them to follow.

The generals called an assembly, and announced the news to the soldiers. The latter were indignant and angry with the generals, accusing them of having kept secret what they had long known; and refused to go, unless such a bribe of money were given them as had been given to their predecessors, when they went up with Cyrus to the court of his father, not as now to fight a battle, but on a peaceful errand– the visit of a son to his father by invitation. The demand was reported to Cyrus by the generals, and he undertook to give each man five silver minae as soon as Babylon was reached, and their pay in full, until he had safely conveyed them back to Ionia again. In this manner the Hellenic force were persuaded– that is to say, the majority of them.

Menon, indeed, before it was clear what the rest of the soldiers would do– whether, in fact they would follow Cyrus or not– collected his own troops apart and made them the following speech:

“Men,” he said, “if you will listen to me, there is a method by which, without risk or toil, you may win the special favour of Cyrus beyond the rest of the soldiers. You ask what it is I would have you to do? I will tell you. Cyrus

*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*  
**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**αἷτιος** guilty ~etiology; also *αἰτίος*  
**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, out to sea  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀποδίδωμι** repay  
**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**δῶρον** gift ~donate  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about  
**ἐλπίς** -δος (f) hope ~voluptuary  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**ἐπαινέω** concur, concur with  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics  
**εὐχομαι** declare, boast; pray (*εὐχος*)  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**θεῖος** divine; uncle  
**θέω** run, run for  
**κατακαίω** burn down  
**μαστός** *μαζοῦ* nipple, breast

**μέλω** be in/on the mind  
**μηκέτι** no more  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (*πούς*)  
**πιστός** faithful (*πειθω*)  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier  
**πρόθυμος** willing, eager  
**σαφής** clear, understandable  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τεύχω** make, cause; pass: happen; pass pf: be, become; pass pf ppl: well made  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also *ἐντυγχάνω*  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑποχωρέω** recoil (*χώρη*)  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**φρούριον** fort  
**χάρις** -τος (f) grace ~eucharist  
**χρή** it is necessary, must, should ~chresard  
**ψηφίζω** count, vote

κελεύω ποιῆσαι; νῦν δέϊται Κῦρος ἔπεσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπὶ βασιλέα· ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς χρῆναι διαβῆναι τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι ὅτι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται Κύρω. ἦν μὲν γὰρ ψηφίσωνται ἔπεσθαι, ὑμεῖς δόξετε αἴτιοι εἶναι ἄρξαντες τοῦ διαβαίνειν, καὶ ὡς προθυμοτάτοις οὖσιν ὑμῖν χάριν εἴσεται Κῦρος καὶ ἀποδώσει· ἐπίσταται δ' εἴ τις καὶ ἄλλος· ἦν δὲ ἀποψηφίσωνται οἱ ἄλλοι, ἄπμμεν μὲν ἅπαντες τοῦμπαλιν, ὑμῖν δὲ ὡς μόνοις πειθομένοις πιστοτάτοις χρήσεται καὶ εἰς φρούρια καὶ εἰς λοχαγίας, καὶ ἄλλου οὔτινος ἂν δέησθε οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φίλοι τεύξεσθε Κύρου.»

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπέειθοντο καὶ διέβησαν πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο διαβεβηκότας, ἦσθη τε καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι πέμψας Γλοῦν εἶπεν· «Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἦδη ὑμᾶς ἐπαινώ· ὅπως δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμὲ ἐπαινεσετε ἐμοὶ μελήσει, ἢ μηκέτι με Κῦρον νομίζετε.» οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατιῶται ἐν ἐλπίσι μεγάλαις ὄντες ἠύχοντο αὐτὸν εὐτυχεῖν, Μένωνι δὲ καὶ δῶρα ἐλέγετο πέμψαι μεγαλοπρεπῶς. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας διέβαινε· συνείπετο δὲ καὶ τὸ ἄλλο στρατεῦμα αὐτῷ ἅπαν. καὶ τῶν διαβαινόντων τὸν ποταμὸν οὐδεὶς ἐβρέχθη ἀνωτέρω τῶν μαστῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ. οἱ δὲ Θαιψακηνοὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐπόποθ' οὔτος ὁ ποταμὸς διαβατὸς γένοιτο πεζῇ εἰ μὴ τότε, ἀλλὰ πλοίοις, ἃ τότε Ἀβροκόμας προΐων κατέκαυσε, ἵνα μὴ Κῦρος διαβῆ. ἐδόκει δὲ θεῖον εἶναι καὶ σαφῶς ὑποχωρῆσαι τὸν ποταμὸν Κύρω ὡς βασιλεύσονται. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς



κελεύω ποιῆσαι; νῦν δέεται Κῦρος ἔπεσθαι τοὺς Ἑλληνας ἐπὶ βασιλέα· ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς χρῆναι |pass over, cross´ ; ράτην ποταμὸν πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι ὅ τι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἑλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται Κύρω. ἦν μὲν γὰρ ψηφίσωνται ἔπεσθαι, ὑμεῖς δόξετε αἴτιοι εἶναι ἄρξαντες τοῦ |pass over, cross´ ; προθυμοτάτοις οὔσιν ὑμῖν χάριν εἶσεται Κῦρος καὶ ἀποδώσει· |ἐπιστάτης?: suppliant, dépendant ; or (mid) vote´ |ἐφίστημι?: stand ready, take a stand against, for ac- |quittal πειθόμενοι ἄλλοι, ἅπμμεν μὲν ἅπαντες τοῦμπαλιν, ὑμῖν δὲ ὡς |rank of ma- ἰ ἄλλου |jor, captain πιστοτάτοις χρήσεται καὶ εἰς |fort καὶ εἰς |rank of ma- ἰ ἄλλου οὔτινος ἂν δέησθε οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φίλοι τεύξεσθε Κύρου.»

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπέιθοντο καὶ |pass over, cross´ τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Κῦρος δ´ ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο |pass over, cross´ , τῆ τε καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι πέμψας Γλοῦν εἶπεν· «Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἦδη ὑμᾶς ἐπαινῶ· ὅπως δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμὲ ἐπαινεῖτε ἐμοὶ μελήσει, ἢ μηκέτι με Κῦρον νομίζετε.» οἱ μὲν δὲ στρατιῶται ἐν ἐλπίσι μεγάλας ὄντες ἠύχοντο αὐτὸν |be lucky, |prosper, suc- |ceed ὡνι δὲ καὶ δῶρα ἐλέγετο πέμψαι |pass over, cross´ το δὲ καὶ τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα αὐτῷ ἅπαν. καὶ τῶν |pass over, cross´ ´ ποταμὸν οὐδεὶς |soak ἀνωτέρω τῶν |breast ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ. οἱ δὲ Θαψακηνοὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐπόποθ´ οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς |crossable, |fordable , ἐνοιοι |to have |burn down |been |before |recoil ἵνα μὴ Κῦρος |pass over, cross´ , |θεῖον?: brimstone, |θεῖος?: divine; |earlier ; |or θεῶ?: run |θεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς

at this instant is begging the Hellenes to follow him to attack the king. I say then: Cross the Euphrates at once, before it is clear what answer the rest will make; if they vote in favour of following, you will get the credit of having set the example, and Cyrus will be grateful to you. He will look upon you as being the heartiest in his cause; he will repay, as of all others he best knows how; while, if the rest vote against crossing, we shall go back again; but as the sole adherents, whose fidelity he can altogether trust, it is you whom Cyrus will turn to account, as commandants of garrisons or captains of companies. You need only ask him for whatever you want, and you will get it from him, as being the friends of Cyrus.”

The men heard and obeyed, and before the rest had given their answer, they were already across. But when Cyrus perceived that Menon’s troops had crossed, he was well pleased, and he sent Glus to the division in question, with this message: “Soldiers, accept my thanks at present; eventually you shall thank me. I will see to that, or my name is not Cyrus.” The soldiers therefore could not but pray heartily for his success; so high their hopes ran. But to Menon, it was said, he sent gifts with lordly liberality. This done, Cyrus proceeded to cross; and in his wake followed the rest of the armament to a man. As they forded, never a man was wetted above the chest: nor ever until this moment, said the men of Thapascus, had the river been so crossed on foot, boats had always been required; but these, at the present time, Abrocomas, in his desire to hinder Cyrus from crossing, had been at pains to burn. Thus the passage was looked upon as a thing miraculous; the river had manifestly retired before the face of Cyrus, like a courtier bowing to his future

*vocabulary*

**ἄγριος** wild, savage (ἄγρός)  
**αἶρω** raise, win ~aorta; also ἀείρω  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βραχύς** low, short  
**δένδρον** tree; also δένδρεον  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**διίστημι** stand apart ~stand  
**διώκω** chase  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
**ἐννέα** nine  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**θηρίον** (f/m/n) wild animal  
 ~megatherium; also θήρ  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἵππιοχάρμης  
**ἱστίον** sail  
**κεῖμαι** lie  
**κρέας** (n, 3) meat ~creatine  
**κώμη** village

**μεστός** full  
**οἶνος** wine ~wine  
**ὀνίνημι** help, please, be available  
**ὄνος** donkey ~onager  
**παντοῖος** all kinds of  
**παραπλήσιος** similar to  
**παύω** stop something ~pause  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**πεντήκοντα** fifty  
**πέτομαι** to fly ~petal; also πτέτομαι,  
 πωτάομαι  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πλήρης** full, complete; (+gen) full of  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πτέρυξ** -γος (f) wing ~archeopteryx  
**σίτος** (m/n) grain, bread, food  
 ~parasite  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τρέχω** run, spin; also τροχάζω,  
 τροχάω, τρωχάω  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὕλη** forest, firewood

Συρίας σταθμούς έννέα παρασάγγας πενήκοντα· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς τὸν Ἀράξην ποταμὸν. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν κῶμαι πολλαὶ μεσταὶ σίτου καὶ οἴνου. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.

## 1.5

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ τόπῳ ἦν μὲν ἡ γῆ πεδίων ἅπαν ὁμαλὲς ὥσπερ θάλαττα, ἀψινθίου δὲ πλήρες· εἰ δέ τι καὶ ἄλλο ἐνῆν ὕλης ἢ καλάμου, ἅπαντα ἦσαν εὐώδη ὥσπερ ἀρώματα· δένδρον δ' οὐδὲν ἐνῆν, θηρία δὲ παντοῖα, πλείστοι ὄνοι ἄγριοι, πολλὰ δὲ στρουθοὶ αἱ μεγάλοι· ἐνῆσαν δὲ καὶ ὠτίδες καὶ δορκάδες· ταῦτα δὲ τὰ θηρία οἱ ἵππεῖς ἐνίοτε ἐδίωκον. καὶ οἱ μὲν ὄνοι, ἐπεὶ τις διώκοι, προδραμόντες ἔστασαν· πολὺ γὰρ τῶν ἵππων ἔτρεχον θᾶπτον· καὶ πάλιν, ἐπεὶ πλησιάζοιεν οἱ ἵπποι, ταῦτόν ἐποίουν, καὶ οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν, εἰ μὴ διαστάντες οἱ ἵππεῖς θηρῶεν διαδεχόμενοι. τὰ δὲ κρέα τῶν ἀλισκομένων ἦν παραπλήσια τοῖς ἐλαφείοις, ἀπαλώτερα δέ. στρουθὸν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔλαβεν· οἱ δὲ διώξαντες τῶν ἵππέων ταχὺ ἐπαύοντο· πολὺ γὰρ ἀπέσπα φεύγουσα, τοῖς μὲν ποσὶ δρόμῳ, ταῖς δὲ πτέρυξιν αἴρουσα, ὥσπερ ἰστίῳ χρωμένη. τὰς δὲ ὠτίδας ἂν τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῆ ἔστι λαμβάνειν· πέτονται γὰρ βραχὺ ὥσπερ πέρδικες καὶ ταχὺ ἀπαγορεύουσι.

Συρίας |cottage; post 'a Persian πενήκοντα· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται  
 πρὸς τὸν Ἀράξην ποταμὸν ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν |unit, ca. 5 κώμη?: village full  
 καὶ οἴνου. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς κλίε |; or κείμαι?:  
 ἐπέσιτίσαντο.

### 1.5

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾶ?: right-  
 ἔχων |cottage; post 'μους πέντε Persian τριάκοντα καὶ π δεξιῶς?: right-  
 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ τόπῳ ἦν μὲν κμ earth; a country ὀμαλὲς ὥσπερ  
 θάλαττα, |type ὄfull, complete; αἱ ἄλλο |be in "λης ἢ |reed  
 ἀπαντα ἢ |sagebrush |(+gen) full of  
 ἀπαντα ἢ |plan |fragrant ἢ περ |land |tree δ' οὐδὲν |be in θηρία  
 δὲ |all kinds of ἰστοι |ῶνος?:, donkey ; ὁ |sparrow αἱ μεγάλαι  
 |be in δὲ καὶ |bustard, |be available; or ὄνομαι?: θηρία οἱ ἵππεῖς |sometimes  
 ἐδίωκον. καὶ |ner μὲν ὄνος?: donkey ; or |run forth, outrun ἴσαν  
 πολὺ γὰρ τῶν ἵππων |be available; καὶ ὄνομαι?: θηρία οἱ ἵππεῖς |bring/be near  
 ἵπποι, |identical οἴουν, καὶ οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν, εἰ μὴ |stand οἱ ἵππεῖς  
 θηρῶν |be next, succeed δὲ κρέα τῶν ἀλισκομένων ἦν παραπλήσια  
 τοῖς |deerlike, of deer 'τερα δέ. |sparrow δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔλαβεν· οἱ δὲ  
 διώξαντες τῶν ἵππέων ταχὺ ἐπαύοντο· πολὺ γὰρ |refuse, ' re- νσα,  
 τοῖς μὲν ποσὶ |running τὰς δὲ |wing αἶροι |declare περ |sail  
 χρωμένῃ. τὰς δὲ |bustard, ~ Old ταχὺ ἀνιστῆ ἔστι λαμβάνειν·  
 πέτονται γὰρ βραχ |World roadrun-  
 ῶσπερ πέρδικες καὶ ταχὺ |(trans) forbid; (intrans)  
 |say goodbye

king. From this place he continued his march through Syria nine stages— fifty parasangs— and they reached the river Araxes. Here were several villages full of corn and wine; in which they halted three days, and provisioned the army.

## 1.5

Thence he marched on through Arabia, keeping the Euphrates on the right, five desert stages— thirty-five parasangs. In this region the ground was one long level plain, stretching far and wide like the sea, full of absinth; whilst all the other vegetation, whether wood or reed, was sweet scented like spice or sweet herb; there were no trees; but there was wild game of all kinds— wild asses in greatest abundance, with plenty of ostriches; besides these, there were bustards and antelopes. These creatures were occasionally chased by the cavalry. The asses, when pursued, would run forward a space, and then stand still— their pace being much swifter than that of horses; and as soon as the horses came close, they went through the same performance. The only way to catch them was for the riders to post themselves at intervals, and to hunt them in relays, as it were. The flesh of those they captured was not unlike venison, only more tender. No one was lucky enough to capture an ostrich. Some of the troopers did give chase, but it had soon to be abandoned; for the bird, in its effort to escape, speedily put a long interval between itself and its pursuers; plying its legs at full speed, and using its wings the while like a sail. The bustards were not so hard to catch when started suddenly; for they only take short flights, like partridges, and

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
**ἄλφιτον** barley meal  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι,  
 ὄλλυμι  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**δένδρον** tree; also δένδρεον  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**διαγίγνομαι** go through, pass  
**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing  
**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also  
 ἐλαστρέω  
**ἐνενήκοντα** ninety; also ἐνήκοντα  
**ἐνοικέω** dwell in  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**ἐπτά** seven  
**ἐρήμος** empty  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ἡδέως** pleasantly  
**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**κρέας** (n, 3) meat ~creatine  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**λιμός** (m/f) famine  
**μακρός** long, tall

**ὄνος** donkey ~onager  
**ὄποτε** when; also ὀπότε  
**ὄργή** urge, impulse; anger  
**ὀρύσσω** dig  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὀδός  
**πάνυ** altogether, very  
**πορεύω** carry  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πρίαμαι** buy  
**σίτος** (m/n) grain, bread, food  
 ~parasite  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**στρατός** common people/soldiers  
 ~strategy  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τέσσαρες** (3) four  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**χόρτος** enclosed space for animals  
**χώρα** place  
**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
 ~heir  
**φιλός** naked, bare ~epsilon

Τὰ δὲ κρέα αὐτῶν ἥδιστα ἦν. πορευόμενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Μάσκαν ποταμόν, τὸ εἶδος πλεθριαῖον. ἐνταῦθα ἦν πόλις ἐρήμη, μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ Κορσωτή· περιερρεῖτο δ' αὕτη ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκα κύκλω. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τρισκαίδεκα παρασάγγας ἐνενήκοντα τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ Πύλας. ἐν τούτοις τοῖς σταθμοῖς πολλὰ τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἀπώλετο ὑπὸ λιμοῦ· οὐ γὰρ ἦν χόρτος οὐδὲ ἄλλο οὐδὲν δένδρον, ἀλλὰ ψιλὴ ἦν ἅπασα ἡ χώρα· οἱ δὲ ἐνοικοῦντες ὄνους ἀλέτας παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ὀρύττοντες καὶ ποιοῦντες εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἦγον καὶ ἐπώλουν καὶ ἀνταγοράζοντες σίτον ἔζων.

Τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ὁ σίτος ἐπέλιπε, καὶ πρίασθαι οὐκ ἦν εἰ μὴ ἐν τῇ Λυδία ἀγορᾷ ἐν τῷ Κύρου βαρβαρικῷ, τὴν καπίθην ἀλεύρων ἢ ἀλφίτων τεττάρων σίγλων. ὁ δὲ σίγλος δύναται ἐπτὰ ὀβολοὺς καὶ ἡμιωβέλιον Ἀττικούς· ἡ δὲ καπίθη δύο χοίνικας Ἀττικὰς ἐχώρει. κρέα οὖν ἐσθίοντες οἱ στρατιῶται διεγίννοντο. ἦν δὲ τούτων τῶν σταθμῶν οὓς πάνυ μακροὺς ἤλαυνεν, ὅποτε ἢ πρὸς ὕδωρ βούλοιτο διατελέσαι ἢ πρὸς χιλόν. καὶ δὴ ποτε στενοχωρίας καὶ πηλοῦ φανέντος ταῖς ἀμάξαις δυσπορεύτου ἐπέστη ὁ Κῦρος σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ἀρίστοις καὶ εὐδαμονεστάτοις καὶ ἔταξε Γλοῦν καὶ Πίγρητα λαβόντας τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ συνεκβιβάζειν τὰς ἀμάξας. ἐπεὶ δ' ἔδοκον αὐτῷ σχολαίως ποιεῖν, ὥσπερ ὀργῇ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν Πέρσας τοὺς



Τὰ δὲ κρέα αὐτῶν |pleasantly πορευόμενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας  
 ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Μάσκαν ποταμόν, τὸ |width:30 m in ἐνταῦθα  
 ἦν πόλις ἐρήμη, μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ |the (caps) size ρσωτή· περιερρέιτο δ'  
 αὕτη ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκα |circle, ἐνταῦθ' |east wind ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ  
 ἐπεισιόσαντο. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει |cottage; post ἴμους τρισκαίδεκα  
 |Persian unit, |ninetyn τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν ἐν |δεξιᾶ?: right-hand ; or  
 |ca. 5 km |δεξιῶς?: right-hand  
 ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ Πύλας. ἐν τούτοις τοῖς σταθμοῖς πολλὰ τῶν |beast of burden  
 ἀπώλετο ὑπὸ λιμοῦ· οὐ γὰρ ἦν |enclosed space for ἄλλο οὐδὲν |tree ἀλλὰ  
 |naked, bare τα ἢ χώρα· οἱ δὲ |animals in |don- |miller, ἵπτον  
 ποταμόν |dig καὶ ποιοῦντες εἰς Βαβυλῶνα |key |grinding stone καὶ |go back and forth  
 καὶ ἀνταγοράζοντες σίτον ἕζων.

Τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ὁ σίτος |fail, not work |buy οὐκ ἦν εἰ μὴ ἐν  
 τῇ Λυδία ἀγορᾶ ἐν τῷ Κύρου |non-Greek τὴν |Persian |flour ἢ  
 |barley meal ἄρων σίγλων. ὁ δὲ σίγλος |lord, |1 liter? |type of small  
 |small coin Ἀττικῶς· ἢ δὲ |Persian |unit of volume |coin, weight  
 οὖν ἐσθίοντες οἱ στρατιῶται |litre? through, pass τούτων τῶν |στάθμη?: car-  
 οὓς πάνυ μακροὺς ἤλανεν, ὅποτε ἢ πρὸς ὕδωρ βούλοιτο δὲ |στάθμός?: cottage;  
 ἢ πρὸς χιλόν. καὶ δὴ ποτε |a narrows, strait |clay φανέντος ταῖς  
 ἀμάξαις |impassable ἐπέστη ὁ Κύρος σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ἀρίστοις  
 καὶ εὐδαιμονεστάτοις καὶ ἔταξε Γλοῦν καὶ Πίγρητα λαβόντας τοῦ  
 |non-Greek στρατοῦ συνεκβιβάξεν τὰς ἀμάξας. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκουν αὐτῶ  
 σχολαίως ποιεῖν, ὥσπερ ὀργῇ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν Πέρσας τοὺς

are soon tired. Their flesh is delicious.

As the army wended its way through this region, they reached the river Mascas, which is one hundred feet in breadth. Here stood a big deserted city called Corsote, almost literally environed by the stream, which flows round it in a circle. Here they halted three days and provisioned themselves. Thence they continued their march thirteen desert stages— ninety parasangs— with the Euphrates still on their right, until they reached the Gates. On these marches several of the baggage animals perished of hunger, for there was neither grass nor green herb, or tree of any sort; but the country throughout was barren. The inhabitants make their living by quarrying millstones on the river banks, which they work up and take to Babylon and sell, purchasing corn in exchange for their goods. Corn failed the army, and was not to be got for money, except in the Lydian market open in Cyrus's Asiatic army; where a kapithe of wheat or barley cost four shekels; the shekel being equal to seven and a half Attic obols, whilst the kapithe is the equivalent of two Attic choeneces, dry measure, so that the soldiers subsisted on meat alone for the whole period. Some of the stages were very long, whenever they had to push on to find water or fodder; and once they found themselves involved in a narrow way, where the deep clay presented an obstacle to the progress of the wagons. Cyrus, with the nobles about him, halted to superintend the operation, and ordered Glus and Pigres to take a body of barbarians and to help in extricating the wagons. As they seemed to be slow about the business, he turned round angrily to the Persian nobles and bade them lend a hand to force the wagons out. Then, if ever, what goes to constitute one

*vocabulary*

**ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery (ἀνάγκη)  
**ἄπτω** set on fire; attach; mid: touch, seize ~haptic  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about  
**εἶτα** then, therefore, next  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also ἰθύς  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider ~theater; also θάομαι, θηέομαι  
**ἰσχυρός** strong, forceful, violent  
**κράτιστος** best  
**μέρος** -ος (n, 3) part  
**νέος** young; neuter: recently ~neon  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**νίκη** victory ~Nike  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**νόος** mind, intention ~paranoia  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**οἶνος** wine ~wine  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,

**οἶομαι**

**ὅπου** where  
**πίμπλημι** fill (+gen.) ~plenum  
**πλέος** full; also πλεῖος, πλέως  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πλήθος** -ος (3) numerical superiority  
**ποικίλος** ornamented  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**προσέχω** direct a thing to  
**ρίπτω** hurl; also ἐπιρρίπτω  
**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry ~repudiate  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**σύμπας** all together  
**συνάγω** assemble; join in battle  
**τεύχω** make, cause; pass: happen; pass pf: be, become; pass pf ppl: well made  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**χιτών** -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor  
**χώρα** place  
**ὧδε** thus

κρατίστους συνεπισπεύσαι τὰς ἀμάξας. ἔνθα δὴ μέρος τι τῆς εὐταξίας ἦν θεάσασθαι. ῥίψαντες γὰρ τοὺς πορφυροὺς κἀνδύς ὅπου ἔτυχεν ἕκαστος ἐστηκώς, ἔεντο ὥσπερ ἂν δράμοι τις ἐπὶ νίκη καὶ μάλα κατὰ πρανοὺς γηλόφου, ἔχοντες τούτους τε τοὺς πολυτελεῖς χιτῶνας καὶ τὰς ποικίλας ἀναξυρίδας, ἔνιοι δὲ καὶ στρεπτοὺς περὶ τοῖς τραχήλοις καὶ ψέλια περὶ ταῖς χερσίν· εὐθὺς δὲ σὺν τούτοις εἰσπηδήσαντες εἰς τὸν πηλὸν θάττον ἢ ὡς τις ἂν ᾤετο μετεώρους ἐξεκόμισαν τὰς ἀμάξας.

Τὸ δὲ σύμπαν δῆλος ἦν Κῦρος ὡς σπεύδων πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ οὐ διατρίβων ὅπου μὴ ἐπισιτισμοῦ ἔνεκα ἢ τινος ἄλλου ἀναγκαίου ἐκαθέζετο, νομίζων, ὅσῳ θάττον ἔλθοι, τοσούτῳ ἀπαρασκευαστοτέρῳ βασιλεῖ μαχεῖσθαι, ὅσῳ δὲ σχολαίτερον, τοσούτῳ πλεόν συναγείρεσθαι βασιλεῖ στρατεύμα. καὶ συνιδεῖν δ' ἦν τῷ προσέχοντι τὸν νοῦν τῇ βασιλέως ἀρχῇ πλήθει μὲν χώρας καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἰσχυρὰ οὖσα, τοῖς δὲ μήκεσι τῶν ὁδῶν καὶ τῷ διεσπᾶσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις ἀσθενῆς, εἴ τις διὰ ταχέων τὸν πόλεμον ποιοῖτο.

Πέραν δὲ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ποταμοῦ κατὰ τοὺς ἐρήμους σταθμοὺς ἦν πόλις εὐδαίμων καὶ μεγάλη, ὄνομα δὲ Χαρμάνδη· ἐκ ταύτης οἱ στρατιῶται ἠγόραζον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, σχεδίαις διαβαίνοντες ᾧδε. διφθέρας ἄς εἶχον στεγάσματα ἐπίμπλασαν χόρτου κούφου, εἶτα συνῆγον καὶ συνέσπων, ὡς μὴ ἄπτεσθαι τῆς κάρφης τὸ ὕδωρ· ἐπὶ τούτων διέβαινον καὶ ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, οἶνόν τε ἐκ τῆς βαλάνου πεποιημένον τῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ

κρατίστους |join in forc- τὰς ἀμάξας. ἔνθα δὴ μέρος τι τῆς |good order  
 ing onward  
 ἦν θεάσασθαι. |hurl γὰρ τοὺς πορφυροῦς |sleeved ἵπου ἔτυχεν  
 |jacket  
 ἕκαστος ἐστήκως, ἔεντο ὥσπερ ἂν δράμοι τις ἐπὶ νίκῃ καὶ μάλα κατὰ  
 πρानουῦς |hill, ἔχοντες τούτους τε τοὺς |very expensive; καὶ  
 mound (person) extrava-  
 τὰς ποικίλας ἀναξυρίδας, |be in ἐ καὶ |easily getting, pliant, neck  
 |articulate  
 καὶ |armlet, ρὶ ταῖς χερσίν· εὐθὺς δὲ σὺν τούτοις |burst in, rush in τὸν  
 |anklet  
 |πηλός?: clay ; ἢ πάλλω?: shake, up in the remove; ἄς ἀμάξας.  
 |brandish |air |bury a  
 |corpse  
 Τὸ δὲ σύμπαν δῆλος ἦν Κῦρος ὡς σπευδῶν πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδὸν  
 καὶ οὐ |wear down, delay, ἢ |resupply, ἔνεκα ἢ τινος ἄλλον  
 |forage  
 ἀναγκαίου |act: set, seat; pass: ὅσω θᾶπτον ἔλθοι, τοσοῦτῳ  
 |sit down, sit up  
 ἀπαρασκευαστοτέρῳ βασιλεῖ μαχεῖσθαι, ὅσω δὲ |slow, leisurely  
 τοσοῦτῳ πλέον |gather βασιλεῖ στράτευμα. καὶ συνιδεῖν δ' ἦν  
 |together  
 τῷ προσέχοντι τὸν νοῦν τῇ βασιλέως ἀρχῇ πλήθει μὲν χώρας καὶ  
 ἀνθρώπων ἰσχυρὰ οὖσα, τοῖς δὲ |length, ὧν ὀδῶν καὶ τῷ |tear apart  
 |stature  
 τὰς δυνάμεις ἀσθενής, εἴ τις διὰ |τάχος?: speed ; ἰον ποιῶτο.  
 |or ταχύς?: fast  
 Πέραν δὲ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ποταμοῦ κατὰ τοὺς ἐρήμους |cottage; post  
 ἦν πόλις |blessed with ἠ μεγάλη, ὄνομα δὲ Χαρμάνδη· ἐκ ταύτης  
 |good genius  
 οἱ στρατιῶται |do commerce ἐπιτήδεια, |raft |pass over, cross  
 ὠδε. διφθέρας ἄς εἶχον |a covering ἐπίμπλασαν |enclosed space for  
 |animals  
 |light, εἶτα συνῆγον καὶ συνέσπων, ὡς μὴ ἄπτεσθαι τῆς  
 |nimble  
 |hay τὸ ὕδωρ· ἐπὶ τούτων |pass over, cross ἴλαμβανον τὰ  
 ἐπιτήδεια, οἶνόν τε ἐκ τῆς |acorn πεποιημένον τῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ

branch of good discipline, was to be witnessed. Each of those addressed, just where he chanced to be standing, threw off his purple cloak, and flung himself into the work with as much eagerness as if it had been a charge for victory. Down a steep hill side they flew, with their costly tunics and embroidered trousers— some with the circlets round their necks, and bracelets on their arms— in an instant, they had sprung into the miry clay, and in less time than one could have conceived, they had landed the wagons safe on terra firma.

Altogether it was plain that Cyrus was bent on pressing on the march, and averse to stoppages, except where he halted for the sake of provisioning or some other necessary object; being convinced that the more rapidly he advanced, the less prepared for battle would he find the king; while the slower his own progress, the larger would be the hostile army which he would find collected. Indeed, the attentive observer could see, at a glance, that if the king's empire was strong in its extent of territory and the number of inhabitants, that strength is compensated by an inherent weakness, dependent upon the length of roads and the inevitable dispersion of defensive forces, where an invader insists upon pressing home the war by forced marches.

On the opposite side of the Euphrates to the point reached on one of these desert stages, was a large and flourishing city named Charmande. From this town the soldiers made purchases of provisions, crossing the river on rafts, in the following fashion: They took the skins which they used as tent coverings, and filled them with light grass; they then compressed and stitched them tightly together by the ends, so that the water might not touch the

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγουρις  
**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**ἀμαρτάνω** miss, fail, lose; sin; also  
 ἀφάμαρτάνω, ἤμβροτον, ἀπήμβροτον  
**ἀμφότερος** both ~amphora  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**γόνυ** γουνός (n, 3) knee ~polygon  
**εἶτα** then, therefore, next  
**ἐκεῖ** there  
**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked senseless;  
 also ἐκπλήγνυμι  
**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also  
 ἐλαστρέω  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
 ἰθύς  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἵππιοχάρμης  
**ἰσχυρός** strong, forceful, violent  
**κεῖμαι** lie  
**κραυγή** screaming, shouting  
**κρίνω** sift, separate, choose ~critic  
**λίθος** (m/f) stone ~monolith; also  
 λιθάς

**ξύλον** piece of wood ~xylophone  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὀργίζω** anger, provoke, annoy  
**οὐπω** no longer  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πληγή** a hit  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πράγμα** -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing,  
 affair  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**σίτος** (m/n) grain, bread, food  
 ~parasite  
**σκηνή** tent, booth  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τεσσαράκοντα** forty; also  
 τετταράκοντα  
**τρέχω** run, spin; also τροχάζω,  
 τροχάω, τρωχάω  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑστερος** later, last  
**χώρα** place

φοίνικος καὶ σίτον μελίνης· τοῦτο γὰρ ἦν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ πλείστον.

Ἄμφιλεξάντων δέ τι ἐνταῦθα τῶν τε τοῦ Μένωνος στρατιωτῶν καὶ τῶν τοῦ Κλεάρχου ὁ Κλεάρχος κρίνας ἀδικεῖν τὸν τοῦ Μένωνος πληγὰς ἐνέβαλεν· ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα ἔλεγεν· ἀκούσαντες δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον καὶ ὠργίζοντο ἰσχυρῶς τῷ Κλεάρχῳ. τῇ δὲ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ Κλεάρχος ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ ἐκεῖ κατασκευάμενος τὴν ἀγορὰν ἀφιππεύει ἐπὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν διὰ τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος σὺν ὀλίγοις τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν· Κῦρος δὲ οὐπω ἦκεν, ἀλλ' ἔτι προσήλαυεν· τῶν δὲ Μένωνος στρατιωτῶν ξύλα σχίζων τις ὡς εἶδε Κλεάρχον διελαύνοντα, ἦισι τῇ ἀξίνῃ· καὶ οὗτος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἤμαρτεν· ἄλλος δὲ λίθῳ καὶ ἄλλος, εἶτα πολλοί, κραυγῆς γενομένης. ὁ δὲ καταφεύγει εἰς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα, καὶ εὐθὺς παραγγέλλει εἰς τὰ ὄπλα· καὶ τοὺς μὲν ὀπίστας αὐτοῦ ἐκέλευσε μείναι τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ γόνατα θέντας, αὐτὸς δὲ λαβὼν τοὺς Θρᾶκας καὶ τοὺς ἰππέας οἵ ἦσαν αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι πλείους ἢ τετταράκοντα, τούτων δὲ οἱ πλείστοι Θρᾶκες, ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μένωνος, ὥστ' ἐκείνους ἐκπεπλήχθαι καὶ αὐτὸν Μένωνα, καὶ τρέχειν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα· οἱ δὲ καὶ ἔστασαν ἀποροῦντες τῷ πράγματι.

Ὁ δὲ Πρόξενος ἔτυχε γὰρ ὕστερος προσίων καὶ τάξις αὐτῷ ἐπομένη τῶν ὀπλιτῶν εὐθὺς οὖν εἰς τὸ μέσον ἀμφοτέρων ἄγων ἔθετο τὰ ὄπλα καὶ ἐδεῖτο τοῦ Κλεάρχου μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. ὁ δ' ἐχαλέπαιεν ὅτι αὐτοῦ ὀλίγου δεήσαντος καταλευσθῆναι πράως



|red, red dye; palm|millet tree    τούτο γὰρ ἦν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ πλείστον.

Ἀμφιλεξάντων δέ τι ἐνταῦθα τῶν τε τοῦ Μένωνος στρατιωτῶν καὶ τῶν τοῦ Κλεάρχου ὁ Κλέαρχος κρίνας ἀδικεῖν τὸν τοῦ Μένωνος πληγὰς ἐνέβαλεν· ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα ἔλεγεν· ἀκούσαντες δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται |be violent, rage ὠργίζοντο ἰσχυρῶς τῷ Κλεάρχῳ. τῇ δὲ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ Κλέαρχος ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὴν |crossing, passage τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ ἐξεῖλεν |inspect, explore τὴν ἀγορὰν |ride away πρὸς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν διὰ τὴν Μένωνος στρατεύματος σὺν ὀλίγοις τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν· Κῦρος δὲ ἐκεῖ· ἦκεν, ἀλλ' ἔτι |go to, approach δὲ Μένωνος στρατιωτῶν ξύλιον |split τις ὡς εἶδε Κλέαρχον |drive through, ἴησι τῇ |axe καὶ οὐκ ἔμεν αὐτοῦ ἡμαρτεν· ἄλλος δὲ |made of stone ; or λίθος·: stone εἶτα πολλοί, |screaming, shouting ἰομένης. ὁ δὲ |resort to, flee to, ἀπεπαλὸν τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα, καὶ εὐθὺς παραγγέλλει εἰς τὰ ὄπλα· καὶ τοὺς μὲν ὀπλίτας αὐτοῦ ἐκέλευσε μῖναι τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ γόνατα θέντας, αὐτοὺς δὲ λαβάν τοὺς Θωράκας καὶ τοὺς ἰππέας οἳ ἦσαν αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι πλείους ἢ τετταράκοντα, τούτων δὲ οἱ πλείστοι Θωράκες, ἤλανεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μένωνος, ὥστ' ἐκείνους |panic, be ἢ αὐτὸν Μένωνα, καὶ |knocked τρέχειν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα· οἱ δὲ καὶ |senseless ἀποροῦντες τῷ πράγματι.

Ὁ δὲ Πρόξενος ἔτυχε γὰρ ὕστερος προσιῶν καὶ τάξις αὐτῷ ἐπομένη τῶν ὀπλιτῶν εὐθὺς οὖν εἰς τὸ μέσον ἀμφοτέρων ἄγων ἔθετο τὰ ὄπλα καὶ ἐδεῖτο τοῦ Κλεάρχου μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. ὁ δ' |be violent, rage αὐτοῦ ὀλίγου δεήσαντος καταλευσθῆναι πρῶως

hay. On these they crossed and got provisions: wine made from the date-nut, and millet or panic-corn, the common staple of the country. Some dispute or other here occurred between the soldiers of Menon and Clearchus, in which Clearchus sentenced one of Menon's men, as the delinquent, and had him flogged. The man went back to his own division and told them. Hearing what had been done to their comrade, his fellows fretted and fumed, and were highly incensed against Clearchus. The same day Clearchus visited the passage of the river, and after inspecting the market there, was returning with a few followers, on horseback, to his tent, and had to pass through Menon's quarters. Cyrus had not yet come up, but was riding up in the same direction. One of Menon's men, who was splitting wood, caught sight of Clearchus as he rode past, and aimed a blow at him with his axe. The aim took no effect; when another hurled a stone at him, and a third, and then several, with shouts and hisses. Clearchus made a rapid retreat to his own troops, and at once ordered them to get under arms. He bade his hoplites remain in position with their shields resting against their knees, while he, at the head of his Thracians and horsemen, of which he had more than forty in his army—Thracians for the most part—advanced against Menon's soldiers, so that the latter, with Menon himself, were panic-stricken, and ran to seize their arms; some even stood riveted to the spot, in perplexity at the occurrence. Just then Proxenus came up from behind, as chance would have it, with his division of hoplites, and without a moment's hesitation marched into the open space between the rival parties, and grounded arms; then he fell to begging Clearchus to desist. The latter was not too well pleased to hear his trouble mildly spoken of, when he had barely

*vocabulary*

**ἀκέομαι** heal, fix  
**ἀμρότερος** both ~amphora  
**βάβαρος** non-Greek  
**γένος** -υς (n, 3) race, kind, generation, birth, offspring ~genus  
**γένυς** (f) jaw  
**δισχίλιοι** 2000  
**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also  
**ἐλαστρέω**  
**ἐμέω** vomit ~emetic  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξίστημι** displace, transform; (+gen) give up  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach  
**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
**ἰθύς**  
**ζῶ** live ~zoo; also ζάω, ζώω  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἦμερος** domesticated  
**ἡμέτερος** our, my  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**ἰππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
**ἰπποχάρμης**  
**ἴχτιον** footprint ~ichneumon  
**καίω** burn ~caustic

**κόπρος** (f) dung, a farm yard  
 ~coprolite  
**κωλύω** hinder, prevent  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**πάθος** -υς (n, 3) an experience, passion, condition  
**παλτός** brandished, hurled  
**παύω** stop something ~pause  
**πείρω** pierce, run through ~pierce  
**πιστός** faithful (πειθω)  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also  
**πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω**  
**πράγμα** -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing, affair  
**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**πύθω** rot ~putrid; also καταπύθω  
**πυνθάνομαι** learn, inquire, (+gen) hear of ~buddha; also πεύθομαι  
**συνάπτω** join together  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**ὔστερον** later  
**ὔστερος** later, last  
**χίλιοι** thousand ~kilo-  
**χώρα** place

λέγει τὸ αὐτοῦ πάθος, ἐκέλευσέ τε αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ μέσου ἐξίστασθαι.

Ἐν τούτῳ δ' ἐπήει καὶ Κῦρος καὶ ἐπίθετο τὸ πρᾶγμα· εὐθὺς δ' ἔλαβε τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας καὶ σὺν τοῖς παροῦσι τῶν πιστῶν ἦκεν ἐλαύνων εἰς τὸ μέσον, καὶ λέγει τάδε. Κλέαρχε καὶ Πρόξενε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἴστε ὅ τι ποιεῖτε. εἰ γάρ τινα ἀλλήλοις μάχην συνάψετε, νομίζετε ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐμέ τε κατακεκόψεσθαι καὶ ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ἐμοῦ ὕστερον· κακῶς γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων ἐχόντων πάντες οὗτοι οὓς ὄρατε βάρβαροι πολεμώτεροι ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων. ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐν ἑαυτῷ ἐγένετο· καὶ παυσάμενοι ἀμφότεροι κατὰ χώραν ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα.

## 1.6

Ἐντεῦθεν προϊόντων ἐφαίνετο ἵχνια ἵππων καὶ κόπρος· εἰκάζετο δ' εἶναι ὁ στίβος ὡς δισχιλίων ἵππων. οὗτοι προϊόντες ἔκαιον καὶ χιλὸν καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο χρήσιμον ἦν. Ὀρόντας δέ, Πέρσης ἀνὴρ, γένει τε προσήκων βασιλεῖ καὶ τὰ πολέμα λεγόμενος ἐν τοῖς ἀρίστοις Περσῶν ἐπιβουλεύει Κύρῳ καὶ πρόσθεν πολεμήσας, καταλλαγεὶς δέ. οὗτος Κύρῳ εἶπεν, εἰ αὐτῷ δοίῃ ἱππέας χιλίους, ὅτι τοὺς προκατακαίοντας ἱππέας ἢ κατακαῖνοι ἂν ἐνεδρεύσας ἢ ζῶντας πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ἂν ἔλοι καὶ κωλύσειε τοῦ καίειν ἐπιόντας, καὶ ποιήσειεν ὥστε

λέγοι τὸ αὐτοῦ |an experience, αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ μέσου |displace, transform;  
 |passion, condition |(+gen) give up  
 Ἐν τούτῳ δ' ἐπῆει καὶ Κῦρος καὶ |πύθω?: rot ; or, πυθάνομαι?: learn, in-  
 |quire, (+gen) hear of  
 ἔλαβε τὰ |brandished, `s χεῖρας καὶ σὺν τοῖς παροῦσι τῶν πιστῶν  
 |hurled  
 ἦκεν ἐλαύνων εἰς τὸ μέσον, καὶ λέγει τάδε. Κλέαρχε καὶ Πρόξενε  
 καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἴστε ὅ τι ποιεῖτε. εἰ γάρ  
 τινα ἀλλήλοισ μάχην |join together, ἴξετε ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐμέ τε  
 κατακεκόψεσθαι καὶ ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ἐμοῦ ὕστερον· κακῶς γὰρ τῶν  
 ἡμετέρων ἐχόντων πάντες οὔτοι οὗς ὀράτε βάρβαροι πολεμώτεροι  
 ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων. |ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix ; or, ὡς  
 |ἀκούω?: hear, listen  
 ἐν ἑαυτῷ ἐγένετο· καὶ παυσάμενοι ἀμφότεροι κατὰ χώραν ἔθεντο τὰ  
 ὄπλα.

## 1.6

Ἐντεῦθεν |πρόεμι?: to have footprint οὐν καὶ |dung, a farm yard  
 |been before, earlier  
 εἶναι ὅ στίβον |προσθήσεται?: send ὡν, οὔτοι |to have been, καὶ χιλῶν  
 |forth, abandon |before, earlier  
 καὶ εἰ τι ἄλλο χρήσιμον ἦν. Ὀρόντας δέ, Πέρσης ἀνὴρ, γένει τε  
 προσήκων βασιλεῖ καὶ τὰ πολέμια λεγόμενος ἐν τοῖς ἀρίστοις Περσῶν  
 |plot, plan, harm, καὶ πρόσθεν πολεμήσας, καταλλαγείς δέ. οὔτος  
 Κύρω εἶπεν, εἰ αὐτῷ δοίῃ ἰππέας χιλίους, ὅτι τοὺς προκατακαίοντας  
 ἰππέας ἢ κατακαίνοι ἂν ἐνεδρεύσας ἢ |live πολλοὺς αὐτῶν  
 ἂν ἔλοι καὶ κωλύσειε τοῦ καίειν ἐπιόντας, καὶ ποιήσειεν ὥστε

escaped being stoned to death; and he bade Proxenus retire and leave the intervening space open. At this juncture Cyrus arrived and inquired what was happening. There was no time for hesitation. With his javelins firmly grasped in his hands he galloped up— escorted by some of his faithful bodyguard, who were present— and was soon in the midst, exclaiming: “Clearchus, Proxenus, and you other Hellenes yonder, you know not what you do. As surely as you come to blows with one another, our fate is sealed— this very day I shall be cut to pieces, and so will you: your turn will follow close on mine. Let our fortunes once take an evil turn, and these barbarians whom you see around will be worse foes to us than those who are at present serving the king.” At these words Clearchus came to his senses. Both parties paused from battle, and retired to their quarters: order reigned.

## 1.6

As they advanced from this point (opposite Charmande), they came upon the hoof-prints and dung of horses at frequent intervals. It looked like the trail of some two thousand horses. Keeping ahead of the army, these fellows burnt up the grass and everything else that was good for use. Now there was a Persian, named Orontas; he was closely related to the king by birth: and in matters pertaining to war reckoned among the best of Persian warriors. Having formerly been at war with Cyrus, and afterwards reconciled to him, he now made a conspiracy to destroy him. he made a proposal to Cyrus: if Cyrus would furnish him with a thousand horsemen, he would deal with these troopers, who were burning down everything in front of

*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*  
**ἀναγιγνώσκω** recognize  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**βουλευέω** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**γράφω** scratch, incise ~photograph  
**δίδημι** should; bind; need, fail; also  
**δέω**  
**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also *δύνω*,  
*ἐξαποδύνω*  
**εἶσω** into; also *ἔσω*  
**ἐμέω** vomit ~emetic  
**ἐνειμι** be in  
**ἐπτά** seven  
**ἐπτάς** (f) seven-year period  
**ἐτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**θεά** (2) goddess ~theology  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
*ἵππιοχάρμης*  
**μέρος** -υς (n, 3) part  
**μήποτε** absolutely never  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also *οἶμαι*,

*οἶμαι*

**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**πίστις** -εως (f) faith; treaty, proof,  
 credit  
**πιστός** faithful (*πείθω*)  
**πιστώω** reassure; also (pass) promise  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**σκηνή** tent, booth  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**συγκαλέω** call together  
**συλλαμβάνω** arrest, capture  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τήκω** melt  
**τρισχίλιοι** 3000  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑποδέχομαι** welcome, accept, suffer  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**φιλία** friendship  
**φράζω** consider ~phrase  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**ὥδε** thus

μήποτε δύνασθαι αὐτοὺς ἰδόντας τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα βασιλεῖ διαγγεῖλαι. τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἀκούσαντι ταῦτα ἐδόκει ὠφέλιμα εἶναι, καὶ ἐκέλευεν αὐτὸν λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἐκάστου τῶν ἡγεμόνων.

Ὁ δ' Ὀρόντας νομίσας ἐτόίμους εἶναι αὐτῷ τοὺς ἰππέας γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλέα ὅτι ἤξει ἔχων ἰππέας ὡς ἂν δύνηται πλείστους· ἀλλὰ φράσαι τοῖς αὐτοῦ ἰππεῦσιν ἐκέλευεν ὡς φίλιον αὐτὸν ὑποδέχεσθαι. ἐνῆν δὲ ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ καὶ τῆς πρόσθεν φιλίας ὑπομνήματα καὶ πίστεως. ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν δίδωσι πιστῷ ἀνδρὶ, ὡς ᾤετο· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν Κύρῳ δίδωσιν. ἀναγνοὺς δὲ αὐτὴν ὁ Κύρος συλλαμβάνει Ὀρόνταν, καὶ συγκαλεῖ εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν Πέρσας τοὺς ἀρίστους τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἑπτὰ, καὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγούς ἐκέλευσεν ὀπλίτας ἀγαγεῖν, τούτους δὲ θέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα περὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ σκηνήν. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἐποίησαν, ἀγαγόντες ὡς τρισχιλίους ὀπλίτας. Κλέαρχον δὲ καὶ εἶσω παρεκάλεσε σύμβουλον, ὅς γε καὶ αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐδόκει προτιμηθῆναι μάλιστα τῶν Ἑλλήνων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐξῆλθεν, ἀπήγγειλε τοῖς φίλοις τὴν κρίσιν τοῦ Ὀρόντα ὡς ἐγένετο· οὐ γὰρ ἀπόρρητον ἦν.

Ἐφη δὲ Κύρον ἄρχεν τοῦ λόγου ὧδε. Παρεκάλεσα ὑμᾶς, ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὅπως σὺν ὑμῖν βουλευόμενος ὃ τι δίκαιόν ἐστι καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων, τοῦτο πράξω περὶ Ὀρόντα τουτουί. τουτον γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ ἔδωκεν ὑπήκοον εἶναι ἐμοί· ἐπεὶ δὲ ταχθεῖς, ὡς ἔφη αὐτός, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐμοῦ



absolutely never  
 ἴασθαι αὐτοὺς ἰδόντας τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα βασιλεῖ  
 διαγγεῖλαι. τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἀκούσαντι ταῦτα ἐδόκει ὠφέλιμα εἶναι, καὶ  
 ἐκέλευεν αὐτὸν λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἐκάστου τῶν ἡγεμόνων.

Ὁ δ' Ὀρόντας νομίσας ἐτοιμοὺς εἶναι αὐτῷ τοὺς ἰππέας γράφει  
 ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλέα ὅτι ἦξι ἔχων ἰππέας ὡς ἂν δύνηται  
 πλείστους· ἀλλὰ φράσαι τοῖς αὐτοῦ ἰππεῦσιν ἐκέλευεν ὡς φίλιον

αὐτὸν |welcome, accept, suffer |be in`έ ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ καὶ τῆς πρόσθεν φιλία?: friend-  
 ὑπομνήματα καὶ πίστεως. ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν |δίδωμι?: friends, beloved and; ship ; or φίλος?:  
 ἀνδρί, ὡς ᾤετο· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν Κύρῳ |δίδωμι?: |recognize; give; permit ὁ need, fail ; or δίδωμι?:  
 Κῦρος συλλαμβάνει Ὀρόνταν, καὶ |bring together |need, should; ἠνθὸν τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν  
 Πέρσας τοὺς ἀρίστους τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν |fail ; or |δίδωμι?: φίλους ἑαυτοῦ καὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων  
 στρατηγοὺς ἐκέλευσεν ὀπλίτας ἀγαγῆναι |give; permit οὗτους δὲ θέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα  
 περὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ σκηνὴν. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἐποίησαν, ἀγαγόντες ὡς

|3000 ὀπλίτας. Κλέαρχον δὲ καὶ εἴσω παρεκάλεσε σύμβουλον,  
 ὅς γε καὶ αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐδόκει προτιμηθῆναι μάλιστα τῶν  
 Ἑλλήνων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐξῆλθεν, ἀπήγγειλε τοῖς φίλοις τὴν κρίσιν τοῦ  
 Ὀρόντα ὡς ἐγένετο· οὐ γὰρ ἀπόρρητον ἦν.

Ἐφη δὲ Κῦρον ἄρχειν τοῦ λόγου ὧδε. Παρεκάλεσα ὑμᾶς,  
 ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὅπως σὺν ὑμῖν βουλευόμενος ὅ τι δίκαιόν ἐστι  
 καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων, τοῦτο πράξω περὶ Ὀρόντα  
 τουτουί. τουτον γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ ἔδωκεν ὑπήκοον  
 εἶναι ἐμοί· ἐπεὶ δὲ ταχθεῖς, ὡς ἔφη αὐτός, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐμοῦ

them; he would lay an ambush and cut them down, or he would capture a host of them alive; in any case, he would put a stop to their aggressiveness and burnings; he would see to it that they did not ever get a chance of setting eyes on Cyrus's army and reporting its advent to the king. The proposal seemed plausible to Cyrus, who accordingly authorised Orontas to take a detachment from each of the generals, and be gone. He, thinking that he had got his horsemen ready to his hand, wrote a letter to the king, announcing that he would ere long join him with as many troopers as he could bring; he bade him, at the same time, instruct the royal cavalry to welcome him as a friend. The letter further contained certain reminders of his former friendship and fidelity. This despatch he delivered into the hands of one who was a trusty messenger, as he thought; but the bearer took and gave it to Cyrus. Cyrus read it. Orontas was arrested. Then Cyrus summoned to his tent seven of the noblest Persians among his personal attendants, and sent orders to the Hellenic generals to bring up a body of hoplites. These troops were to take up a position round his tent. This the generals did; bringing up about three thousand hoplites. Clearchus was also invited inside, to assist at the court-martial; a compliment due to the position he held among the other generals, in the opinion not only of Cyrus, but also of the rest of the court. When he came out, he reported the circumstances of the trial (as to which, indeed, there was no mystery) to his friends. He said that Cyrus opened the inquiry with these words: "I have invited you hither, my friends, that I may take advice with you, and carry out whatever, in the sight of God and man, it is right for me to do, as concerning the man before you, Orontas. The prisoner was, in the

*vocabulary*

**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**ἀκρόπολις** -εως (f/m) citadel  
**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
**ἄν** again, then again; next ~after  
**ἀφίστημι** stand apart; exact payment  
**βωμός** altar; stand, pedestal  
**γνώμη** sign, mind, will, decision  
**δεξιὰ** right-hand  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**δόξα** what one expects ~doxology  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω, ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐμέω** vomit ~emetic  
**ἐνειμι** be in  
**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm  
**ἐρωτάω** ask about something  
**μηκέτι** no more

**ὅποτε** when; also ὅπποτε  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὀδός  
**παρώω** maim; also πηρώω  
**παύω** stop something ~pause  
**πεῖσα** obedience, subjection  
**πιστός** faithful (πεῖθω)  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**πολεμόω** make an enemy of  
**συμβουλεύω** give advice; (mid) consult  
**τρίτος** third  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑστερον** later  
**ὑστερος** later, last  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard ~phylactery  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χώρα** place

ἀδελφοῦ οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοὶ ἔχων τὴν ἐν Σάρδεσιν ἀκρόπολιν, καὶ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν προσπολεμῶν ἐποίησα ὥστε δόξαι τούτῳ τοῦ πρὸς ἐμὲ πολέμου παύσασθαι, καὶ δεξιὰν ἔλαβον καὶ ἔδωκα.

Μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, Ὀρόντα, ἔστιν ὅ τι σε ἠδίκησα; ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐ. πάλιν δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἠρώτα· Οὐκοῦν ὕστερον, ὡς αὐτὸς σὺ ὁμολογεῖς, οὐδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἀδικούμενος ἀποστὰς εἰς Μυσοὺς κακῶς ἐποίεις τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν ὅ τι ἐδύνω; ἔφη Ὀρόντας. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὁπότε αὐτὸν ἔγνωσ τὴν σαυτοῦ δύναμιν, ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος βωμὸν μεταμέλειν τέ σοι ἔφησθα καὶ πείσας ἐμὲ πιστὰ πάλιν ἔδωκάς μοι καὶ ἔλαβες παρ' ἐμοῦ; καὶ ταῦθ' ὡμολόγει Ὀρόντας. Τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεῖς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν τὸ τρίτον ἐπιβουλεύων μοι φανερὸς γέγονας; εἰπόντος δὲ τοῦ Ὀρόντα ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθεῖς, ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος αὐτόν· Ὁμολογεῖς οὖν περὶ ἐμὲ ἄδικος γεγενῆσθαι; Ἡ γὰρ ἀνάγκη, ἔφη Ὀρόντας.

Ἐκ τούτου πάλιν ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος· Ἔτι οὖν ἂν γένοιο τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος, ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός; ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδ' εἰ γενοίμην, ὦ Κῦρε, σοί γ' ἂν ποτε ἔτι δόξαμι. πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος εἶπε τοῖς παροῦσιν· Ὁ μὲν ἀνὴρ τοιαῦτα μὲν πεποίηκε, τοιαῦτα δὲ λέγει· ὑμῶν δὲ σὺ πρῶτος, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀπόφηναι γνώμην ὅ τι σοι δοκεῖ. Κλέαρχος δὲ εἶπε τάδε. Συμβουλεύω ἐγὼ τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον ἐκποδῶν ποιεῖσθαι ὡς τάχιστα, ὡς μηκέτι δέη τοῦτον φυλάττεσθαι, ἀλλὰ σχολὴ ἢ ἡμῶν, τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι, τοὺς ἐθελοντὰς τούτους

ἀδελφοῦ οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοὶ ἔχων τὴν ἐν Σάρδεσιν |citadel  
καὶ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν προσπολεμῶν ἐποίησα ὥστε δόξαι τούτῳ τοῦ πρὸς  
ἐμὲ πολέμου παύσασθαι, καὶ |δεξιὰ?: right-hand ; or  
|δεξιός?: right-hand

Μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, Ὀρόντα, ἔστιν ὅ τι σε ἠδίκησα; ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐ.  
πάλιν δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἠρώτα· Οὐκοῦν ὕστερον, ὡς αὐτὸς σὺ ὁμολογεῖς,  
οὐδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἀδικούμενος ἀποστὰς εἰς Μυσοὺς κακῶς ἐποίηεις τὴν  
ἐμὴν χώραν ὅ τι |enter, pūt on, ῥόντας. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὅπότε  
|strip off  
αὐτὸν ἔγνωσ τὴν σαυτοῦ δύναμιν, ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος |altar  
μεταμέλειν τέ σοι ἔφησθα καὶ |πειῖσα?: obedience, subjection ; or πάσχω?: suffer  
; or πείθω?: persuade  
καὶ ἔλαβες παρ' ἐμοῦ; καὶ ταῦθ' ὡμολόγει Ὀρόντας. Τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ  
Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεὶς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν τὸ τρίτον |plot, plan, harm φανερὸς  
γέγονας; εἰπόντος δὲ τοῦ Ὀρόντα ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθεὶς, ἠρώτησεν ὁ  
Κῦρος αὐτόν· Ὅμολογεῖς οὖν περὶ ἐμὲ ἄδικος γεγενῆσθαι; Ἡ γὰρ  
ἀνάγκη, ἔφη Ὀρόντας.

Ἐκ τούτου πάλιν ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος· Ἔτι οὖν ἂν γένοιο τῷ ἐμῷ  
ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος, ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός; ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδ'  
εἰ γενοίμην, ὦ Κῦρε, σοί γ' ἂν ποτε ἔτι δόξαιμι. πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος  
εἶπε τοῖς παροῦσιν· Ὁ μὲν ἀνὴρ τοιαῦτα μὲν πεποίηκε, τοιαῦτα δὲ  
λέγει· ὑμῶν δὲ σὺ πρῶτος, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀπόφηναι γνώμην ὅ τι σοι  
δοκεῖ. Κλέαρχος δὲ εἶπε τάδε. |give advice; ὦ τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον  
|(mid) consult  
ἐκποδῶν ποιεῖσθαι ὡς τάχιστα, ὡς μηκέτι δέη τοῦτον φυλάττεσθαι,  
ἀλλὰ σχολὴ ἢ ἡμῖν, τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι, τοὺς ἐθελοντὰς τούτους

first instance, given to me by my father, to be my faithful subject. In the next place, acting, to use his own words, under the orders of my brother, and having hold of the acropolis of Sardis, he went to war with me. I met war with war, and forced him to think it more prudent to desist from war with me: whereupon we shook hands, exchanging solemn pledges. After that,” and at this point Cyrus turned to Orontas, and addressed him personally—“ after that, did I do you any wrong?” Answer, “Never.” Again another question: “Then later on, having received, as you admit, no injury from me, did you revolt to the Mysians and injure my territory, as far as in you lay?”—“ I did,” was the reply. “Then, once more having discovered the limits of your power, did you flee to the altar of Artemis, crying out that you repented? and did you thus work upon my feelings, that we a second time shook hands and made interchange of solemn pledges? Are these things so?” Orontas again assented. “Then what injury have you received from me,” Cyrus asked, “that now for the third time, you have been detected in a treasonous plot against me?”—“ I must needs do so,” he answered. Then Cyrus put one more question: “But the day may come, may it not, when you will once again be hostile to my brother, and a faithful friend to myself?” The other answered: “Even if I were, you could never be brought to believe it, Cyrus.”

At this point Cyrus turned to those who were present and said: “Such has been the conduct of the prisoner in the past: such is his language now. I now call upon you, and you first, Clearchus, to declare your opinion— what think you?” And Clearchus answered: “My advice to you is to put this man out of the way as soon as may be, so that we may be saved the necessity of watching him, and have more leisure, as far as he is concerned, to requite the services of those whose friendship is sincere.”—“ To this opinion,” he told us, “the rest

*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*  
**ἄλλως** otherwise  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**γνώμη** sign, mind, will, decision  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**δώδεκα** twelve ~dodecahedron; also  
*δουκαίδεκα, δωδέκα*  
**εἰσάγω** lead in  
**εἶτα** then, therefore, next  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξάγω** lead out  
**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**ἐξέτασις** scrutiny  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach  
**εὐώνυμος** spindle tree  
**ζῶ** live ~zoo; also *ζάω, ζώω*  
**ζώνη** girdle; waist, loins ~zone  
**ζώννυμι** gird  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἥμερος** domesticated  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θνήσκω** die ~euthanasia; also

*ἐκθνήσκω*

**θνήσκω** die ~euthanasia; also  
*ἀποθνήσκω*  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also *ὁδός*  
**παρασάγγης** (m, 1) Persian unit, ca. 5  
 km  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πιστός** faithful (*πειθω*)  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**προστίθηναι** set in place  
**πώποτε** never  
**σκηνή** tent, booth  
**σκηπτούχος** scepter-bearer  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also *σταθμόν*  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιά** army  
**συγκαλέω** call together  
**τάφος** (f/m/n) (m) funeral, grave; (n)  
 astonishment  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τρίτος** third  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

εὖ ποιεῖν. ταύτη δὲ τῇ γνώμῃ ἔφη καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους προσθέσθαι.

Μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, κελεύοντος Κύρου ἔλαβον τῆς ζώνης τὸν Ὀρόνταν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ ἅπαντες ἀναστάντες καὶ οἱ συγγενεῖς· εἶτα δ' ἐξήγουν αὐτὸν οἷς προσετάχθη. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον αὐτὸν οἵπερ πρόσθεν προσεκύνουν, καὶ τότε προσεκύνησαν, καίπερ εἰδότες ὅτι ἐπὶ θάνατον ἄγοιτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου σκηνὴν εἰσήχθη, τοῦ πιστοτάτου τῶν Κύρου σκηπτούχων, μετὰ ταῦτα οὔτε ζῶντα Ὀρόνταν οὔτε τεθνηκότα οὐδεὶς εἶδε πώποτε, οὐδὲ ὅπως ἀπέθανεν οὐδεὶς εἰδὼς ἔλεγεν· εἵκαζον δὲ ἄλλοι ἄλλως· τάφος δὲ οὐδεὶς πώποτε αὐτοῦ ἐφάνη.

## 1.7

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας δώδεκα. ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ Κύρος ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ περὶ μέσας νύκτας· ἐδόκει γὰρ εἰς τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἔω ἤξειν βασιλέα σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι μαχομένον· καὶ ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον μὲν τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως ἡγεῖσθαι, Μένωνα δὲ τὸν Θετταλὸν τοῦ εὐωνύμου, αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ διέταξε.

Μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἐξέτασιν ἅμα τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἦκοντες αὐτόμολοι παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἀπήγγελλον Κύρῳ περὶ τῆς βασιλείας στρατιᾶς. Κύρος δὲ συγκαλέσας τοὺς



εὖ ποιεῖν. ταύτη δὲ τῇ γνώμῃ ἔφη καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους προσθέσθαι.

Μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, κελύοντος Κύρου ἔλαβον τῆς ζώνῃ?: ` girdle; waist ; or  
ζώννυμι?: gird  
ἐπὶ θανάτῳ ἅπαντες ἀναστάντες καὶ οἱ συγγενεῖς· εἶτα δ' ἐξήγον  
αὐτὸν οἷς προσετάχθη. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον αὐτὸν οἷπερ πρόσθεν  
προσεκύνουν, καὶ τότε προσεκύνησαν, καίπερ εἰδότες ὅτι ἐπὶ θάνατον  
ἄγοιτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν Ἄρταπάτου σκηνὴν εἰσῆχθη, τοῦ πιστοτάτου  
τῶν Κύρου |scepter-bearer μετὰ ταῦτα οὔτε |live Ὀρόνταν οὔτε  
|die οὐδεὶς εἶδε |never , οὐδὲ ὅπως ἀπέθανεν οὐδεὶς εἰδὼς  
ἔλεγεν· εἰκαζον δὲ ἄλλοι ἄλλως· |(m) funeral|never αὐτοῦ  
grave; (n)  
ἐφάνη. |astonishment

## 1.7

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας |cottage; post ^ |Persian  
δώδεκα. ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ Κῦρος |scrutiny |unit, ca. 5  
|kmῖται τῶν  
Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ περὶ μέσας νύκτας·  
ἐδόκει γὰρ εἰς τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἕω ἤξειν βασιλέα σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι  
μαχομένον· καὶ ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον μὲν τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως ἠγεισθαι,  
Μένωνα δὲ τὸν Θετταλὸν τοῦ |spindle tree ἔτος δὲ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ διέταξε.

Μετὰ δὲ τὴν |scrutiny ἅμα τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἦκοντες  
αὐτόμολοι παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἀπήγγελλον Κύρῳ  
περὶ τῆς βασιλέως στρατιᾶς. Κῦρος δὲ |call together τοὺς

of the court adhered.” After that, at the bidding of Cyrus, each of those present, in turn, including the kinsmen of Orontas, took him by the girdle; which is as much as to say, “Let him die the death,” and then those appointed led him out; and they who in old days were wont to do obeisance to him, could not refrain, even at that moment, from bowing down before him, albeit they knew he was being led forth to death.

After they had conducted him to the tent of Artapates, the trustiest of Cyrus’s wand-bearers, none set eyes upon him ever again, alive or dead. No one, of his own knowledge, could declare the manner of his death; though some conjectured one thing and some another. No tomb to mark his resting-place, either then or since, was ever seen.

## 1.7

From this place Cyrus marched through Babylonia three stages—twelve parasangs. Now, on the third stage, about midnight, Cyrus held a review of the Hellenes and Asiatics in the plain, expecting that the king would arrive the following day with his army to offer battle. He gave orders to Clearchus to take command of the right wing, and to Menon the Thessalian of the left, while he himself undertook to the disposition of his own forces in person. After the review, with the first approach of day, deserters from the great king arrived, bringing Cyrus information about the royal army. Then Cyrus summoned the generals and captains of the Hellenes, and held a council of war to arrange the plan

*vocabulary*

**ἄγνουμι** break  
**ἄγων** -ος (m, 3) gathering place (ἄγω)  
**ἄημι** blow  
**αἰσχύνω** spoil, disgrace  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἄλλομαι** to jump ~sally  
**ἀμείνων** better  
**ἀντί** for, equivalent to  
**ἄξιος** worthy ~axiom  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀποδίδωμι** repay  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
 ἀφήνω  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**διδάσκω** teach ~didactic  
**ἔνειμι** be in  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θαρσύνω** encourage  
**καῦμα** -τος (n, 3) heat ~caustic  
**κίνδυνος** (ὑ) danger  
**κραυγή** screaming, shouting  
**κρείσσω** more powerful

**κτάομαι** acquire, possess (κτῆμα)  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**μιμνήσκω** remind; (mid) remember,  
 turn one's thoughts to ~mnemonic  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἴκοι** at home  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οἴομαι,  
 οἶομαι  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**πιστός** faithful (πείθω)  
**πλήθος** -ος (3) numerical superiority  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**πῶς** how? why?  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do; also  
 ὑπίσχομαι  
**φυγάζ** -δος (m, 3) exile, refugee  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**χώρα** place

στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς τῶν Ἑλλήνων συνεβουλεύετό τε πῶς ἂν τὴν μάχην ποιοῖτο καὶ αὐτὸς παρήνει θαρρύνων τοιάδε.

ἽΩ ἄνδρες Ἑλληνες, οὐκ ἀνθρώπων ἀπορῶν βαρβάρων συμμάχους ὑμᾶς ἄγω, ἀλλὰ νομίζω ἀμείονας καὶ κρείττους πολλῶν βαρβάρων ὑμᾶς εἶναι, διὰ τοῦτο προσέλαβον. ὅπως οὖν ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἧς κέκτησθε καὶ ἧς ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ εὐδαιμονίζω. εὖ γὰρ ἴστε ὅτι τὴν ἐλευθερίαν ἐλοίμην ἂν ἀντὶ ὧν ἔχω πάντων καὶ ἄλλων πολλαπλασίω. ὅπως δὲ καὶ εἰδῆτε εἰς οἷον ἔρχεσθε ἀγῶνα, ὑμᾶς εἰδῶς διδάξω. τὸ μὲν γὰρ πλῆθος πολὺ καὶ κραυγῇ πολλῇ ἐπίασιν· ἂν δὲ ταῦτα ἀνάσχησθε, τὰ ἄλλα καὶ αἰσχύνεσθαι μοι δοκῶ οἷους ἡμῖν γνώσεσθε τοὺς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ὄντας ἀνθρώπους. ὑμῶν δὲ ἀνδρῶν ὄντων καὶ εὖ τῶν ἐμῶν γενομένων, ἐγὼ ὑμῶν τὸν μὲν οἴκαδε βουλόμενοι ἀπιέναι τοῖς οἴκοι ζηλωτὸν ποιήσω ἀπελθεῖν, πολλοὺς δὲ οἶμαι ποιήσειν τὰ παρ' ἐμοὶ ἐλέσθαι ἀντὶ τῶν οἴκοι.

Ἐνταῦθα Γαυλίτης παρών, φηγὰς Σάμιος, πιστὸς δὲ Κύρω, εἶπεν· Καὶ μὴν, ὦ Κύρε, λέγουσί τινες ὅτι πολλὰ ὑπισχνῆ νῦν διὰ τὸ ἐν τοιοῦτῳ εἶναι τοῦ κινδύνου προσιόντος, ἂν δὲ εὖ γένηταί τι, οὐ μεμνήσεσθαι σέ φασιν· ἔνιοι δὲ οὐδ' εἰ μεμνήῳ τε καὶ βούλοιο δύνασθαι ἂν ἀποδοῦναι ὅσα ὑπισχνῆ. ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἔλεξεν ὁ Κύρος·

Ἄλλ' ἔστι μὲν ἡμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀρχὴ πατρίᾳ πρὸς μὲν μεσημβρίαν μέχρι οὗ διὰ καῦμα οὐ δύνανται οἰκεῖν ἄνθρωποι, πρὸς δὲ

στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων |give advice; τε πῶς ἂν  
 | (mid) consult  
 τὴν μάχην ποιῶτο καὶ αὐτὸς παρήνει |θάρσυνος?: having plucked up courage ;  
 |or θαρσύνω?: encourage

|type of fruit ἄλγητες, οὐκ ἀνθρώπων ἀπορῶν βαρβάρων συμμάχους  
 ὑμᾶς ἄγω, ἀλλὰ νομίζων ἀμείνονας καὶ κρείττους πολλῶν βαρβάρων  
 ὑμᾶς εἶναι, διὰ τοῦτο προσέλαβον. ὅπως οὖν ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες ἄξιοι  
 τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἧς κέκτησθε καὶ ἧς ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ εὐδαιμονίζω. εὖ γὰρ  
 ἴστε ὅτι τὴν ἐλευθερίαν |to jump ἴν ἀντὶ ὧν ἔχω πάντων καὶ ἄλλων  
 πολλαπλασίῳν. ὅπως δὲ καὶ εἰδῆτε εἰς οἶον ἔρχεσθε ἀγῶνα, ὑμᾶς  
 εἰδῶς διδάξω. τὸ μὲν γὰρ πλήθος πολὺ καὶ |screaming, ἡ ἑπίασιν·  
 |shouting  
 ἂν δὲ ταῦτα ἀνάσχησθε, τὰ ἄλλα καὶ αἰσχύνεσθαι μοι δοκῶ οἴους ἡμῖν  
 γνώσεσθε τοὺς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ὄντας ἀνθρώπους. ὑμῶν δὲ ἀνδρῶν ὄντων  
 καὶ εὖ τῶν ἐμῶν γενομένων, ἐγὼ ὑμῶν τὸν μὲν οἴκαδε βουλόμενον  
 ἀπιέναι τοῖς οἴκοι ζηλωτὸν ποιήσω ἀπελθεῖν, πολλοὺς δὲ οἶμαι  
 ποιήσειν τὰ παρ' ἐμοὶ ἐλέσθαι ἀντὶ τῶν οἴκοι.

Ἐνταῦθα Γαυλίτης παρών, |φυγάς?: 'exile, refugeè ; ἴ' or , εἶπεν·  
 |φυγή?: flight, means of escape  
 Καὶ μὴν, ὦ Κύρε, λέγουσί τινες ὅτι πολλὰ |promise, ἴν δια τὸ  
 |agree to  
 ἐν τοιούτῳ εἶναι τοῦ κινδύνου προσιόντος, ἂν |do εὖ γένηται τι, οὐ  
 μεμνήσεσθαι σέ φασιν· |be in ἴε οὐδ' εἰ μεμνήῳ τε καὶ βούλοιο δύνασθαι

ἂν ἀποδοῦναι ὅσα |promise, |ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix ; or ἴζυρος·  
 |agree to |ἀκούω?: hear, listen  
 do,

Ἄλλ' ἔστι μὲν ἡμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀρχὴ πατρῆα πρὸς μὲν μεσημβρίαν  
 μέχρι οὗ διὰ |heat οὐ δύνανται οἰκεῖν ἄνθρωποι, πρὸς δὲ

of battle. He took this opportunity also to address the following words of compliment and encouragement to the meeting: “Men of Hellas,” he said, “it is certainly not from dearth of barbarians to fight my battles that I put myself at your head as my allies; but because I hold you to be better and stronger than many barbarians. That is why I took you. See then that you prove yourselves to be men worthy of the liberty which you possess, and which I envy you. Liberty— it is a thing which, be well assured, I would choose in preference to all my other possessions, multiplied many times. But I would like you to know into what sort of struggle you are going: learn its nature from one who knows. Their numbers are great, and they come on with much noise; but if you can hold out against these two things, I confess I am ashamed to think, what a sorry set of folk you will find the inhabitants of this land to be. But you are men, and brave you must be, being men: it is agreed; then if you wish to return home, any of you, I undertake to send you back, in such sort that your friends at home shall envy you; but I flatter myself I shall persuade many of you to accept what I will offer you here, in lieu of what you left at home.”

Here Gaulites, a Samian exile, and a trusty friend of Cyrus, being present, exclaimed: “Ay, Cyrus, but some say you can afford to make large promises now, because you are in the crisis of impending danger; but let matters go well with you, will you recollect? They shake their heads. Indeed, some add that, even if you did recollect, and were ever so willing, you would not be able to make good all

*vocabulary*

**αἶρω** raise, win ~aorta; also ἀείρω  
**ἀξιόω** consider worthy, fitting  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away  
**ἀριθμός** number  
**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**αὔ** again, then again; next ~after  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**γνώμη** sign, mind, will, decision  
**δείδω** to fear ~Deimos  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**δέκα** ten ~decimal  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**διακόσιοι** two hundred  
**διό** because of which  
**δῶμα** -τος (n, 3) hall, house  
 ~domicile; also δῶ  
**εἰκός** οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
**εἴκοσι** twenty  
**ἑκατόν** hundred  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔρομαι** ask, search through; also

ἀνέρομαι, εἶρομαι, ἐξείρομαι, ἐξέρομαι  
**ἡμέτερος** our, my  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ικανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**ικάνω** reach, arrive at  
**ἰππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἰππιολάουτος  
**κρατέω** rule ~democracy  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**μυρίος** immense, myriad ~myriad  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,  
 οἶομαι  
**ὄπισθεν** behind, hereafter; also ὄπιθεν  
**πρό** before, forward ~prolog  
**πρόθυμος** willing, eager  
**πως** somehow  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**χρῦσεος** golden  
**ὥδε** thus

ἄρκτον μέχρι οὐδὲ διὰ χειμῶνα· τὰ δ' ἐν μέσῳ τούτων πάντα σατραπεύουσιν οἱ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ φίλοι. ἦν δ' ἡμεῖς νικήσωμεν, ἡμᾶς δεῖ τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους τούτων ἐγκρατεῖς ποιῆσαι. ὥστε οὐ τοῦτο δέδοικα, μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ὅ τι δῶ ἐκάστῳ τῶν φίλων, ἂν εὖ γένηται, ἀλλὰ μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ἰκανοὺς οἷς δῶ. ὑμῶν δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ στέφανον ἐκάστῳ χρυσοῦν δώσω.

Οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες αὐτοὶ τε ἦσαν πολὺ προθυμότεροι καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐξήγγελλον. εἰσήσαν δὲ παρ' αὐτὸν οἳ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων τινὲς ἀξιῶντες εἰδέναι τί σφίσι εἴη, ἐὰν κρατήσωσιν. ὁ δὲ ἐμπιπλὰς ἀπάντων τὴν γνώμην ἀπέπεμπε. παρεκελεύοντο δὲ αὐτῷ πάντες ὅσοι περ διελέγοντο μὴ μάχεσθαι, ἀλλ' ὀπισθεν εἰσὶν τῶν τάττεσθαι. ἐν δὲ τῷ καιρῷ τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ᾧ δὲ πῶς ἤρετο τὸν Κῦρον· Οἶε γὰρ σοὶ μαχεῖσθαι, ᾧ Κῦρε, τὸν ἀδελφόν; Νῆ Δί, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἴπερ γε Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος ἐστὶ παῖς, ἐμὸς δὲ ἀδελφός, οὐκ ἀμαχεῖ ταῦτ' ἐγὼ λήψομαι.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ ἀριθμὸς ἐγένετο τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων ἀσπίς μυρία καὶ τετρακοσία, πελτασταὶ δὲ δισχίλιοι καὶ πεντακόσιοι, τῶν δὲ μετὰ Κῦρον βαρβάρων δέκα μυριάδες καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσι. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι μυριάδες καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα διακόσια. ἄλλοι δὲ ἦσαν ἐξακισχίλιοι ἰππεῖς, ὧν Ἀρταγέρσης ἤρχεν· οὗτοι δ' αὖ πρὸ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως τεταγμένοι ἦσαν.



|bear μέχρι οὐδὲ διὰ χειμῶνα· τὰ δ' ἐν μέσῳ τούτων πάντα  
 σατραπεύουσιν οἱ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ φίλοι. ἦν δ' ἡμεῖς νικήσωμεν,  
 ἡμᾶς δεῖ τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους τούτων ἐγκρατεῖς ποιῆσαι. ὥστε οὐ  
 τοῦτο δέδοικα, μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ὅ τι δῶ ἐκάστῳ τῶν φίλων, ἂν εὖ γένηται,  
 ἀλλὰ μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ἰκανοὺς οἷς δῶ. ὑμῶν δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ |στεφανος?: ring ;  
 ἐκάστῳ χρυσοῦν δώσω. |or στεφανώω?: set  
 |about

Οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες αὐτοὶ τε ἦσαν πολὺ προθυμότεροι καὶ τοῖς  
 ἄλλοις |bring news|go in δὲ παρ' αὐτὸν οἳ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ  
 |out τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων τινὲς ἀξιοῦντες εἰδέναι τί σφίσιν ἔσται, ἐὰν  
 κρατήσωσιν. ὁ δὲ ἐμπιπλὰς ἀπάντων τὴν γνώμην ἀπέπεμπε.  
 παρεκλεύοντο δὲ αὐτῷ πάντες ὅσοι περ διελέγοντο μὴ μάχεσθαι, ἀλλ'  
 ὀπισθεν ἑαυτῶν τάττεσθαι. ἐν δὲ τῷ καιρῷ τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ὠδέσας  
 ἤρετο τὸν Κῦρον· |ῶις?:, 'sheep ; ; or ἴθαι, ὦ Κῦρε, τὸν ἀδελφόν; Νη  
 |ῶιωμα?: suppose Δ', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἶπερ γε Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος ἔστι παῖς, ἐμὸς  
 δὲ ἀδελφός, οὐκ ἀμαχεῖ ταῦτ' ἐγὼ λήψομαι.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ ἀριθμὸς ἐγένετο τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων  
 ἀσπὶς μυρία καὶ |400 |light δὲ |2000 καὶ |500  
 |troops τῶν δὲ μετὰ Κύρου βαρβάρων δέκα |countless, καὶ ἄρματα  
 |myriad δρεπανηφόρα ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσι. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο  
 εἶναι ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι |countless, καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα  
 |myriad διακόσια. ἄλλοι δὲ ἦσαν ἑξακισχίλιοι ἰππεῖς, ὧν Ἀρταγέρσης  
 ἤρχεν· οὗτοι δ' αὖ πρὸ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως τεταγμένοι ἦσαν.

your promises, and repay.” When Cyrus heard that, he answered: “You forget, sirs, my father’s empire stretches southwards to a region where men cannot dwell by reason of the heat, and northwards to a region uninhabitable through cold; but all the intervening space is mapped out in satrapies belonging to my brother’s friends: so that if the victory be ours, it will be ours also to put our friends in possession in their room. On the whole my fear is, not that I may not have enough to give to each of my friends, but lest I may not have friends enough on whom to bestow what I have to give, and to each of you Hellenes I will give a crown of gold.”

So they, when they heard these words, were once more elated than ever themselves, and spread the good news among the rest outside. And there came into his presence both the generals and some of the other Hellenes also, claiming to know what they should have in the event of victory; and Cyrus satisfied the expectations of each and all, and so dismissed them. Now the advice and admonition of all who came into conversation with him was, not to enter the battle himself, but to post himself in rear of themselves; and at this season Clearchus put a question to him: “But do you think that your brother will give battle to you, Cyrus?” and Cyrus answered: “Not without a battle, be assured, shall the prize be won; if he be the son of Darius and Parysatis, and a brother of mine.”

In the final arming for battle at this juncture, the numbers were as follows: Of Hellenes there were ten thousand four hundred heavy infantry with two thousand five hundred targeteers, while the barbarians with Cyrus reached a total of one hundred thousand. He

*vocabulary***ἀγγέλλω** carry a message, announce

~angel

**ἄημι** blow**ἀντί** for, equivalent to**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, out to sea**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor**βαθύς** high, deep ~bathysphere**βασιλεύω** be king**δώδεκα** twelve ~dodecahedron; also**δωκαίδεκα, δωδέκα****εἰκός** οἰκότος (n, 3) likely**εἴκοσι** twenty**εἰσβάλλω** throw into**ἑκατόν** hundred**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also**ἐλαστρέω****ἐνενήκοντα** ninety; also ἐνήκοντα**ἔννυμι** clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest**ἐντεῦθεν** thence**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεὶ**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide, chief**ἰσχυρός** strong, forceful, violent**μεταξύ** between**μέχρι** as far as, until**μυριάς** (f, 3) countless, myriad**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι, οἴομαι**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot**πέντε** five ~pentagon**πεντήκοντα** fifty**πλοῖον** ship**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus**πρό** before, forward ~prolog**πυνθάνομαι** learn, inquire, (+gen) hear of ~buddha; also πεύθομαι**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army**τάφρος** (f) ditch, trench**τείχος** -υς (n, 3) outdoor wall; also**τειχίον****τέσσαρες** (3) four**τρεις** three ~three**τριάκοντα** thirty**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case**ὕστερον** later**ὕστερος** later, last

Τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως στρατεύματος ἦσαν ἄρχοντες καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεμόνες τέτταρες, τριάκοντα μυριάδων ἕκαστος, Ἀβροκόμας, Τισσαφέρνης, Γωβρύας, Ἀρβάκης. τούτων δὲ παρεγένοντο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἐνενήκοντα μυριάδες καὶ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἑκατὸν καὶ πεντήκοντα· Ἀβροκόμας δὲ ὑστέρησε τῆς μάχης ἡμέραις πέντε, ἐκ Φοινίκης ἐλαύνων. ταῦτα δὲ ἠγγελλον πρὸς Κῦρον οἱ αὐτομολήσαντες ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως πρὸ τῆς μάχης, καὶ μετὰ τὴν μάχην οἱ ὑστερον ἐλήφθησαν τῶν πολεμίων ταῦτά ἠγγελλον.

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας τρεῖς συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι παντὶ καὶ τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ καὶ τῷ βαρβαρικῷ· ὤφειτο γὰρ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ μαχεῖσθαι βασιλέα· κατὰ γὰρ μέσον τὸν σταθμὸν τοῦτον τάφρος ἦν ὀρυκτὴ βαθεῖα, τὸ μὲν εὖρος ὀργυιαὶ πέντε, τὸ δὲ βάθος ὀργυιαὶ τρεῖς. παρετέτατο δὲ ἡ τάφρος ἄνω διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγας μέχρι τοῦ Μηδίας τείχους. ἔνθα αἱ διώρυχες, ἀπὸ τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ ρέουσαι· εἰσὶ δὲ τέτταρες, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πλεθριαῖαι, βαθεῖαι δὲ ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ πλοῖα πλεί ἐν αὐταῖς σιταγωγὰ· εἰσβάλλουσι δὲ εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην, διαλείπουσι δ' ἑκάστη παρασάγγην, γέφυραι, δ' ἔπεισιν. ἦν δὲ παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην πάροδος στενὴ μεταξύ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου ὡς εἴκοσι ποδῶν τὸ εὖρος· ταύτην δὲ τὴν τάφρον βασιλεὺς ποιεῖ μέγας ἀντὶ ἐρύματος, ἐπειδὴ πυνθάνεται Κῦρον προσελαύνοντα. ταύτην δὴ τὴν πάροδον

Τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως στρατεύματος ἦσαν ἄρχοντες καὶ στρατηγοὶ  
 καὶ ἡγεμόνες τέτταρες, τριάκοντα |countless, ἑκαστος, Ἄβροκόμας,  
 Τισσαφέρνης, Γαωβρύας, Ἀρβάκης. |myriad τούτων δὲ παρεγένοντο ἐν  
 τῇ μάχῃ |ninety |countless, αἱ ἄρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἑκατὸν  
 καὶ πενήκοντα· Ἄβροκόμας δὲ ὑστέρησε τῆς μάχης ἡμέραις  
 πέντε, ἐκ Φοινίκης ἐλαύνων. ταῦτα δὲ |carry a mes- ; Κῦρον οἱ  
 αὐτομολήσαντες ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων παρὰ μ|sage, an-  
 νόνη βασιλέως πρὸ τῆς  
 μάχης, καὶ μετὰ τὴν μάχην οἱ ὕστερον ἐλήφθησαν τῶν πολεμίων

|identi-|carry a mes-  
 cal |sage, an-  
 |nounce  
 Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει |cottage; post |Persian τρεῖς  
 συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι παντὶ καὶ τῷ |unit, ca. 5  
 κ|km ληρικῶ καὶ τῷ  
 |non-Greek ᾤετο γὰρ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ μαχεῖσθαι βασιλέα· κατὰ γὰρ  
 μέσον τὸν |cottage; post ὠν τάφρος ἦν |dug out|high, deep , ἐν |width; (caps) the  
 ὄργυιαι πέντε, τὸ δὲ βάθος ὄργυιαι τρεῖς. παρετέτατο δὲ ἡ τάφρος  
 |east wind

|accomplish, pass, waste; upwards,|Persian μέχρι τοῦ Μηδίας  
 |out to sea |unit, ca. 5  
 τείχους. ἔνθα αἱ διώρυχες, ἀπὸ τοῦ |km κητος ποταμοῦ ρέουσαι· εἰσὶ δὲ  
 τέτταρες, τὸ μὲν |width; 30 m in size|high, deep' χυρῶς, καὶ πλοῖα πλεῖ  
 ἐν αὐταῖς σιταγα|the |throw into δὲ εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην, διαλείπουσι δ'  
 |east  
 ἑκάστη |Persian |wind|dam, dike; bridge ἦν δὲ παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην  
 |unit, ca. 5 km  
 |detour, |narrow ταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς τάφρου ὡς εἴκοσι ποδῶν  
 |side way,  
 |mountain pass, (caps) ἐ τὴν τάφρον βασιλεὺς ποιεῖ μέγας ἀντὶ |protection  
 |tail, the east wind  
 |after; |υθάνεται Κῦρον |go to, approach ταύτην δὴ τὴν |detour, side way,  
 |because |mountain pass

had too about twenty scythe-chariots. The enemy's forces were reported to number one million two hundred thousand, with two hundred scythe-chariots, besides which he had six thousand cavalry under Artagerses. These formed the immediate vanguard of the king himself. The royal army was marshalled by four generals or field-marshals, each in command of three hundred thousand men. Their names were Abrocomas, Tissaphernes, Gobryas, and Arbaces. (But of this total not more than nine hundred thousand were engaged in the battle, with one hundred and fifty scythe-chariots; since Abrocomas, on his march from Phoenicia, arrived five days too late for the battle.) Such was the information brought to Cyrus by deserters who came in from the king's army before the battle, and it was corroborated after the battle by those of the enemy who were taken prisoners.

From this place Cyrus advanced one stage— three parasangs— with the whole body of his troops, Hellenic and barbarian alike in order of battle. He expected the king to give battle the same day, for in the middle of this day's march a deep sunk trench was reached, thirty feet broad, and eighteen feet deep. The trench was carried inland through the plain, twelve parasang's distance, to the wall of Media. (Here are canals, flowing from the river Tigris; they are four in number, each a hundred feet broad, and very deep, with corn ships plying upon them; they empty themselves into the Euphrates, and are at intervals of one parasang apart, and are spanned by bridges.)

Between the Euphrates and the trench was a narrow passage, twenty feet only in breadth. The trench itself had been constructed by the great king upon hearing of Cyrus's approach, to serve as a line of defence. Through this narrow

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγουρις  
**αἰίδω** sing; also αἰοδιάω  
**αἰίρω** raise, win ~aorta; also αἴρω  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἀποδίδωμι** repay  
**ἀράομαι** pray, vow, invoke  
**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**δέκα** ten ~decimal  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**εἶσω** into; also ἔσω  
**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also  
 ἐλαστρέω  
**ἐνδέκατος** eleventh  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**ἦνίκα** when  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἵππιοχάρμης  
**καταλύω** unyoke; destroy  
**κράτος** -εος (n, 3) strength, power;  
 victory ~democracy; also κάρτος  
**κωλύω** hinder, prevent

**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πλήθω** be filled ~plenum  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρό** before, forward ~prolog  
**προφαίνω** show; pass: appear  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τάλαντον** scale, a unit of weight  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τάφρος** (f) ditch, trench  
**τρισχίλιοι** 3000  
**τρίτος** third  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do; also  
 ὑπίσχομαι  
**ὑποχωρέω** recoil (χώρη)  
**ὑστεραίος** the next; later  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous  
**χρυσίον** gold coin

Κῦρός τε καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ παρηγήθη καὶ ἐγένοντο εἴσω τῆς τάφρου.

Ταύτη μὲν οὖν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐμαχέσατο βασιλεὺς, ἀλλ' ὑποχωρούντων φανερὰ ἦσαν καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἵχνη πολλά. ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος Σιλανὸν καλέσας τὸν Ἀμπρακιώτην μάντιν ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ δαρεικοὺς τρισχιλίους, ὅτι τῇ ἐνδεκάτῃ ἀπ' ἐκείνης ἡμέρα πρότερον θυόμενος εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι βασιλεὺς οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν, Κῦρος δ' εἶπεν· Οὐκ ἄρα ἔτι μαχεῖται, εἰ ἐν ταύταις οὐ μαχεῖται ταῖς ἡμέραις· ἐὰν δ' ἀληθείης, ὑπισχνουμαί σοι δέκα τάλαντα. τοῦτο τὸ χρυσίον τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ παρηγήθον αἱ δέκα ἡμέραι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ οὐκ ἐκώλυε βασιλεὺς τὸ Κύρου στρατεύμα διαβαίνειν, ἔδοξε καὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπεγνωκέναι τοῦ μάχεσθαι· ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο ἡμελημένως μᾶλλον. τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπὶ τε τοῦ ἄρματος καθήμενος τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο καὶ ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει ἔχων πρὸ αὐτοῦ, τὸ δὲ πολὺ αὐτῷ ἀνατεταραγμένον ἐπορεύετο καὶ τῶν ὄπλων τοῖς στρατιώταις πολλὰ ἐπὶ ἀμαξῶν ἤγοντο καὶ ὑποζυγίων.

## 1.8

Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσιν καὶ πλησίον ἦν ὁ σταθμὸς ἔνθα ἔμελλε καταλύειν, ἠνίκα Πατηγύας, ἀνὴρ Πέρσης τῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον χρηστός, προφαίνεται ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ κράτος ἰδρῶντι τῷ ἵππῳ, καὶ



Κύρος τε καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ παρήλθε καὶ ἐγένοντο εἴσω τῆς τάφρου.

Ταύτη μὲν οὖν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐμαχέσατο βασιλεὺς, ἀλλ' |recoil φανερὰ ἦσαν καὶ ἵππων καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἵχνη πολλά. ἐνταῦθα Κύρος Σιλανὸν καλέσας τὸν Ἀμπρακιώτην |seer ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ δαρεικοὺς |3000 . ὅτι τῇ |eleventh ἀπ' ἐκείνης ἡμέρᾳ πρότερον θυόμενος εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι βασιλεὺς οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν, Κύρος δ' εἶπεν· Οὐκ ἄρα ἔτι μαχεῖται, εἰ ἐν ταύταις οὐ μαχεῖται ταῖς ἡμέραις· ἐὰν δ' ἀληθείσης, |promise, σοι δέκα |agree to do τάλαντα. τοῦτο τὸ |gold coin ἵτε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ παρήλθον αἱ δέκα ἡμέραι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ οὐκ ἐκώλυε βασιλεὺς τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα |pass over, cross καὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπεγνωκέναι τοῦ μάχεσθαι· ὥστε τῇ |the next; later s ἐπορεύετο ἡμελημένως μᾶλλον. τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπὶ τε τοῦ ἄρματος καθημένος τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο καὶ ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει ἔχων πρὸ αὐτοῦ, τὸ δὲ πολὺ αὐτῷ ἀνατεταραγμένον ἐπορεύετο καὶ τῶν ὄπλων τοῖς στρατιώταις πολλὰ ἐπὶ ἀμαξῶν ἦγοντο καὶ |beast of burden

## 1.8

Καὶ ἦδη τε ἦν ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν |be filled καὶ πλησίον ἦν ὁ |cottage; post ἔμελλε καταλύειν, ἠνίκα Πατηγύας, ἀνὴρ Πέρσης τῶν ἀμφὶ Κύρον χρηστός, |show; pass: appear ἀνὰ κράτος |sweat τῷ ἵππῳ, καὶ

passage then Cyrus and his army passed, and found themselves safe inside the trench. So there was no battle to be fought with the king that day; only there were numerous unmistakable traces of horse and infantry in retreat. Here Cyrus summoned Silanus, his Ambraciot soothsayer, and presented him with three thousand darics; because eleven days back, when sacrificing, he had told him that the king would not fight within ten days, and Cyrus had answered: "Well, then, if he does not fight within that time, he will not fight at all; and if your prophecy comes true, I promise you ten talents." So now, that the ten days were passed, he presented him with the above sum.

But as the king had failed to hinder the passage of Cyrus's army at the trench, Cyrus himself and the rest concluded that he must have abandoned the idea of offering battle, so that next day Cyrus advanced with less than his former caution. On the third day he was conducting the march, seated in his carriage, with only a small body of troops drawn up in front of him. The mass of the army was moving on in no kind of order: the soldiers having consigned their heavy arms to be carried in the wagons or on the backs of beasts.

## 1.8

It was already about full market time and the halting-place at which the army was to take up quarters was nearly reached, when Pategyas, a Persian, a trusty member of Cyrus's personal staff, came galloping up at full speed on his horse, which was

*vocabulary***ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark**ἀνθέω** sprout**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**αὐτίκα** at once**βαρβαρικός** non-Greek**βασιλεύω** be king**βοάω** shout**δείλη** afternoon ~diem**δεξιὰ** right-hand**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous**ἐνδύω** go into, put on**ἐντυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,

happen, happen to exist; also τυγχάνω

**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also

ιθύς

**εὐώνυμος** spindle tree**ἥμερος** domesticated**ἦνίκα** when**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene**θώραξ** -ηκος (m) corselet; torso**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also

ἵππιοχάρμης

**καθίστημι** set down, land**κείρω** shave, sever, raze; devour, use

up

**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn**κεφαλή** head; height ~gable**κραίνω** accomplish; (rare) rule**μάχαιρα** knife, dagger**νεφέλη** cloud, fog ~nebula**οὐπω** no longer**παλτός** brandished, hurled**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,

recommend, encourage

**πλήν** except**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,

come in

**σπουδή** (f/m) 'pushing,' with difficulty,

quickly, seriously; an effort (σπεύδω)

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case**χίλιοι** thousand ~kilo-**φιλός** naked, bare ~epsilon

εὐθὺς πᾶσιν οἷς ἐνετύγχανεν ἐβόα καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῶ προσέρχεται ὡς εἰς μάχην παρεσκευασμένος. ἔνθα δὴ πολὺς τάραχος ἐγένετο· αὐτίκα γὰρ ἐδόκουν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ πάντες δὲ ἀτάκτοις σφίσιν ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι· Κῦρος τε καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄρματος τὸν θώρακα ἐνεδύετο καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας ἔλαβε, τοῖς τε ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλεν ἐξοπλίζεσθαι καὶ καθίστασθαι εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν ἕκαστον. ἔνθα δὴ σὺν πολλῇ σπουδῇ καθίσταντο, Κλέαρχος μὲν τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρατος ἔχων πρὸς τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ, Πρόξενος δὲ ἐχόμενος, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι μετὰ τοῦτον, Μένων δὲ καὶ τὸ στράτευμα τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας ἔσχε τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ. τοῦ δὲ βαρβαρικοῦ ἵππεις μὲν Παφλαγόνες εἰς χιλίους παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἔστησαν ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν πελταστικόν, ἐν δὲ τῷ εὐώνυμῳ Ἀριαῖός τε ὁ Κύρου ὑπαρχος καὶ τὸ ἄλλο βαρβαρικόν, Κῦρος δὲ καὶ ἵππεις τούτου ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι κατὰ τὸ μέσον, ὠπλισμένοι θώραξι μὲν αὐτοὶ καὶ παραμηριδίους καὶ κράνεσι πάντες πλὴν Κύρου· Κῦρος δὲ ψιλὴν ἔχων τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰς τὴν μάχην καθίστατο λέγεται δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους Πέρσας ψιλαῖς ταῖς κεφαλαῖς ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ διακινδυνεύειν. οἱ δ' ἵπποι πάντες οἱ μετὰ Κύρου εἶχον καὶ προμετωπίδια καὶ προστερνίδια· εἶχον δὲ καὶ μαχαίρας οἱ ἵππεις Ἑλληνικὰς.

Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας καὶ οὐπω καταφανεῖς ἦσαν οἱ πολέμοι· ἠνίκα δὲ δείλη ἐγίνετο, ἐφάνη κοινορτὸς ὥσπερ νεφέλη

εὐθὺς πᾶσιν οἷς |meet, find, obtain; succeed, |ρικῶς καὶ ἑλληνικῶς  
 |happen, happen to exist  
 ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ προσέρχεται ὡς εἰς μάχην  
 παρεσκευασμένος. ἔνθα δὴ πολὺς τάραχος ἐγένετο· αὐτίκα γὰρ  
 ἐδόκουν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ πάντες δὲ ἀτάκτοις σφίσιν ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι·  
 Κῦρος τε καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄρματος τὸν |corselet; ἕδύετο καὶ  
 |torso  
 ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον τὰ |brandished, ἑ; χεῖρας ἔλαβε, τοῖς τε ἄλλοις  
 |hurled  
 πᾶσι παρήγγελλεν ἐξοπλίζεσθαι καὶ καθίστασθαι εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν  
 ἕκαστον. ἔνθα δὴ σὺν πολλῇ σπουδῇ καθίσταντο, Κλέαρχος μὲν  
 τὰ |δεξιᾶ?: right-hand ;,or πρὸς τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ, Πρόξενος  
 |δεξιῶς?: right-hand  
 δὲ ἐχόμενος, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι μετὰ τοῦτον, Μένων δὲ καὶ τὸ στράτευμα  
 τὸ |spindle tree ἄσχε τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ. τοῦ δὲ |non-Greek ἵππεῖς  
 μὲν Παφλαγόνες εἰς χιλίους παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἔστησαν ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ  
 καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν πελταστικόν, ἐν δὲ τῷ |spindle tree, αἰὸς τε ὁ  
 Κύρου ὑπαρχος καὶ τὸ ἄλλο |non-Greek . Κῦρος δὲ καὶ ἵππεῖς τούτου  
 ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι κατὰ τὸ μέσον, ὀπλισμένοι θώραξι μὲν αὐτοὶ καὶ  
 παραμηριδίοις καὶ |accomplish ἑες πλὴν Κύρου· Κῦρος δὲ |naked, bare  
 τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰς τὴν μάχην καθίστατο λέγεται δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους  
 Πέρσας |naked, bare :φαλαῖς ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ διακινδυνεύειν. οἱ δ' ἵπποι  
 πάντες οἱ μετὰ Κύρου εἶχον καὶ προμετωπίδια καὶ προστερνίδια·  
 εἶχον δὲ καὶ μαχαίρας οἱ ἵππεῖς Ἑλληνικάς.

Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας καὶ οὐπω καταφανεῖς ἦσαν οἱ  
 πολέμοι· ἠνίκα δὲ |afternoon ἔετο, ἐφάνη κονιορτὸς ὥσπερ νεφέλη

bathed in sweat, and to every one he met he shouted in Greek and Persian, as fast as he could ejaculate the words: "The king is advancing with a large army ready for battle." Then ensued a scene of wild confusion. The Hellenes and all alike were expecting to be attacked on the instant, and before they could form their lines. Cyrus sprang from his carriage and donned his corselet; then leaping on to his charger's back, with the javelins firmly clutched, he passed the order to the rest, to arm themselves and fall into their several ranks.

The orders were carried out with alacrity; the ranks shaped themselves. Clearchus held the right wing resting on the Euphrates, Proxenus was next, and after him the rest, while Menon with his troops held the Hellenic left. Of the Asiatics, a body of Paphlagonian cavalry, one thousand strong, were posted beside Clearchus on the right, and with them stood the Hellenic peltasts. On the left was Ariæus, Cyrus's second in command, and the rest of the barbarian host. Cyrus was with his bodyguard of cavalry about six hundred strong, all armed with corselets like Cyrus, and cuirasses and helmets; but not so Cyrus: he went into battle with head unhelmeted. So too all the horses with Cyrus wore forehead-pieces and breast-pieces, and the troopers carried short Hellenic swords.

It was now mid-day, and the enemy was not yet in sight; but with the approach of afternoon was seen dust like a white cloud, and after a considerable interval a black pall as it were spread far and high above the plain. As they came nearer, very soon was seen here and there a glint of bronze and spear-points; and the ranks could plainly be distinguished. On the left were troopers wearing white cuirasses. That is Tissaphernes in

*vocabulary*

**ἀνέχω** raise; mid: endure, submit  
**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**βοάω** shout  
**γνώμη** sign, mind, will, decision  
**δίφρος** seat, chariot box ~bear  
**δρέπανον** sickle; also δρεπάνη  
**ἔθνος** -εος (n, 3) tribe, company, flock  
 ~ethnic  
**ἐκεῖ** there  
**ἐντυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also τυγχάνω  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐώνυμος** spindle tree  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἵππιοχάρμης  
**ἴσος** equal; also ἔσση  
**κείμεαι** lie  
**κραυγή** screaming, shouting  
**λευκός** white ~light

**μέντοι** however  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**περίειμι** be superior to  
**πλήθος** -υς (3) numerical superiority  
**πλήρης** full, complete; (+gen) full of  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρό** before, forward ~prolog  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τάχα** quickly, soon ~tachometer  
**τέσσαρες** (3) four  
**τοξότης** (m, 1) archer  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὔστερον** later  
**ὔστερος** later, last  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χαλκός** bronze, arms  
**ψεύδω** middle: to lie

λευκή, χρόνῳ δὲ συχνῶ ὕστερον ὥσπερ μελανία τις ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐπὶ πολὺ. ὅτε δὲ ἐγγύτερον ἐγίνοντο, τάχα δὴ καὶ χαλκός τις ἤστραπτε καὶ λόγχοι καὶ αἱ τάξεις καταφανεῖς ἐγίνοντο. καὶ ἦσαν ἵππεῖς μὲν λευκοθώρακες ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν πολεμίων· Τισσαφέρνης ἐλέγγοτο τούτων ἄρχων· ἐχόμενοι δὲ γερροφόροι, ἐχόμενοι δὲ ὀπλίται σὺν ποδήρησι ξυλίαις ἀσπίσιν. Αἰγύπτιοι δ' οὗτοι ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἄλλοι δ' ἵππεῖς, ἄλλοι τοξόται.

Πάντες δ' οὗτοι κατὰ ἔθνη ἐν πλαισίῳ πλήρει ἀνθρώπων ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος ἐπορεύετο. πρὸ δὲ αὐτῶν ἄρματα διαλείποντα συχνὸν ἀπ' ἀλλήλων τὰ δὴ δρεπανηφόρα καλούμενα· εἶχον δὲ τὰ δρέπανα ἐκ τῶν ἀξόνων εἰς πλάγιον ἀποτεταμένα καὶ ὑπὸ τοῖς δίφροις εἰς γῆν βλέποντα, ὡς διακόπτειν ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν. ἡ δὲ γνώμη ἦν ὡς εἰς τὰς τάξεις τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐλῶντα καὶ διακόψοντα. ὁ μέντοι Κῦρος εἶπεν ὅτε καλέσας παρεκελεύετο τοῖς Ἑλλησι τὴν κραυγὴν τῶν βαρβάρων ἀνέχεσθαι, ἐφεύσθη τοῦτο· οὐ γὰρ κραυγῇ ἀλλὰ σιγῇ ὡς ἀνυστὸν καὶ ἡσυχῇ ἐν ἴσῳ καὶ βραδέως προσῆσαν.

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κῦρος παρελαύνων αὐτὸς σὺν Πίγρητι τῷ ἐρμηνεῖ καὶ ἄλλοις τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἐβόα ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίων, ὅτι ἐκεῖ βασιλεὺς εἶη· κὰν τοῦτ', ἔφη, νικῶμεν, πάνθ' ἡμῖν πεποιήται. ὁρῶν δὲ ὁ Κλεάρχος τὸ μέσον στίφος καὶ ἀκούων Κύρου ἔξω ὄντα τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ εὐωνύμου βασιλέα τοσοῦτον γὰρ πλήθει περιῆν



λευκή, χρόνω δὲ συχνῶ ὕστερον ὥσπερ μελανία τις ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐπὶ  
πολύ. ὅτε δὲ ἐγγύτερον ἐγίνοντο, τάχα δὴ καὶ χαλκός τις |flash lightning  
καὶ λόγχοι καὶ αἱ τάξεις καταφανεῖς ἐγίνοντο. καὶ ἦσαν ἱππεῖς  
μὲν λευκοθώρακες ἐπὶ τοῦ |spindle tree ἕν πολεμίῳν. Τισσαφέρνης  
ἐλέγετο τούτων ἄρχειν· ἐχόμενοι δὲ γεροφόροι, ἐχόμενοι δὲ ὀπλίται  
σὺν ποδήρεσι ξυλίαις ἀσπίσιν. Αἰγύπτιοι δ' οὗτοι ἐλέγοντο εἶναι·  
ἄλλοι δ' ἱππεῖς, ἄλλοι |archer

Πάντες δ' οὗτοι κατὰ ἔθνη ἐν πλαισίῳ |full, complete; ἕν ἕκαστον  
(+gen) full of  
τὸ ἔθνος ἐπορεύετο. πρὸ δὲ αὐτῶν ἄρματα διαλείποντα συχνὸν ἀπ'  
ἀλλήλων τὰ δὴ δρεπανηφόρα καλούμενα· εἶχον δὲ τὰ |sickle ἕκ  
τῶν |axle εἰς πλάγιον ἀποτεταμένα καὶ ὑπὸ τοῖς δίφοις εἰς |earth; a coun-  
try  
βλέποντα, ὡς διακόπτειν ὅτῳ |meet, find, obtain; succeed, ὡς εἰς τὰς  
|happen, happen to exist  
τάξεις τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐλῶντα καὶ διακόψοντα. ὁ μέντοι Κῦρος εἶπεν  
ὅτε καλέσας παρεκελεύετο τοῖς Ἕλλησι τὴν |screaming, ἕν βαρβάρων  
|shouting  
ἀνέχεσθαι, ἐψεύσθη τοῦτο· οὐ γὰρ |screaming, ἕν  
|shouting  
ἡσυχῇ ἐν ἴσῳ καὶ |slow, dull, late, ἕταν.

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κῦρος |pass, αὐτὸς σὺν Πίγρητι τῷ |interpreter  
|outstrip  
καὶ ἄλλοις τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἐβόα ἄγειν τὸ  
στράτευμα κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίῳν, ὅτι |ἔξειμι?: go forth ; or  
|ἔκει?: there ; or κείμαι?:  
εἶη· κὰν τοῦτ', ἔφη, νικῶμεν, πάνθ' ἡμῖν πεπο|lieαι. ὁρῶν  
δὲ ὁ Κλεάρχος τὸ μέσον στίφος καὶ ἀκούων Κύρου ἔξω ὄντα  
τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ |spindle tree ἕν σιλέα τοσοῦτον γὰρ πλήθει |be superior to

command, they said, and next to these a body of men bearing wicker-shields, and next again heavy-armed infantry, with long wooden shields reaching to the feet. These were the Egyptians, they said, and then other cavalry, other bowmen; all were in national divisions, each nation marching in densely-crowded squares. And all along their front was a line of chariots at considerable intervals from one another— the famous scythe-chariots, as they were named— having their scythes fitted to the axle-trees and stretching out slantwise, while others protruded under the chariot-seats, facing the ground, so as to cut through all they encountered. The design was to let them dash full speed into the ranks of the Hellenes and cut them through.

Curiously enough the anticipation of Cyrus, when at the council of war he admonished the Hellenes not to mind the shouting of the Asiatics, was not justified. Instead of shouting, they came on in deep silence, softly and slowly, with even tread. At this instant, Cyrus, riding past in person, accompanied by Pigres, his interpreter, and three or four others, called aloud to Clearchus to advance against the enemy's centre, for there the king was to be found: "And if we strike home at this point," he added, "our work is finished." Clearchus, though he could see the compact body at the centre, and had been told by Cyrus that the king lay outside the Hellenic left (for, owing to numerical superiority, the king, while holding his own centre, could well overlap Cyrus's extreme left), still hesitated to draw off his right wing from the river, for fear of being turned on both flanks; and he simply replied, assuring Cyrus that he would take care all went well.

At this time the barbarian army was evenly advancing,

*vocabulary*

**αἶρω** raise, win ~aorta; also ἀείρω  
**ἀντίος** opposite, facing  
**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve  
**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
**ἀρόω** plow ~arable  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**δεύτερος** second  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await ~doctrine  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔρομαι** ask, search through; also ἀνέρομαι, εἶρομαι, ἐξείρομαι, ἐξέρομαι  
**εὐώνυμος** spindle tree  
**ἦνίκα** when  
**θαυμάζω** marvel ~theater; also ἀποθαυμάζω  
**κείρω** shave, sever, raze; devour, use up  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn  
**μέλος** -υς (n, 3) limb  
**μέλω** be in/on the mind  
**νίκη** victory ~Nike

**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**οὐκέτι** no more  
**πάνυ** altogether, very  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage  
**παρελαύνω** pass, outstrip; also παρεξελαύνω  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πελάζω** bring/come to, near, into contact with; also προσπελάζω, πιλνάω  
**πορεύω** carry  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πρόεμι** to have been before, earlier  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**συναντάω** encounter  
**συντάσσω** gather, assemble  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τέσσαρες** (3) four  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle ~phalanx  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χώρα** place

βασιλεὺς ὥστε μέσον τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ἔχων τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου ἕξω ἦν ἀλλ' ὅμως ὁ Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἤθελεν ἀποσπάσαι ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ δεξιὸν κέρασ, φοβούμενος μὴ κυκλωθεῖη ἐκατέρωθεν, τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλει ὅπως καλῶς ἔχοι.

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν στράτευμα ὁμαλῶς προΐει, τὸ δὲ Ἑλληνικὸν ἔτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένον συνετάττετο ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος παρελαύνων οὐ πάνυ πρὸς αὐτῷ στρατεύματι κατεθεᾶτο ἐκατέρωσε ἀποβλέπων εἰς τε τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς φίλους. ἰδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, πελάσας ὡς συναντῆσαι ἤρετο εἴ τι παραγγέλλοι· ὁ δ' ἐπιστήσας εἶπε καὶ λέγειν ἐκέλευε πᾶσιν ὅτι καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ καὶ τὰ σφάγια καλὰ.

Ταῦτα δὲ λέγων θορύβου ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος, καὶ ἤρετο τίς ὁ θόρυβος εἶη. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν ὅτι σύνθημα παρέρχεται δεύτερον ἤδη. καὶ ὡς ἐθαύμασε τίς παραγγέλλει καὶ ἤρετο ὅ τι εἶη τὸ σύνθημα. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο· Ζεὺς σωτὴρ καὶ νίκη. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἀκούσας, Ἀλλὰ δέχομαί τε, ἔφη, καὶ τοῦτο ἔστω. ταῦτα δ' εἰπὼν εἰς τὴν αὐτοῦ χώραν ἀπήλυνε.

Καὶ οὐκέτι τρία ἢ τέτταρα στάδια διειχέτην τὸν φάλαγγε ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ἠνίκα ἐπαιάνιζόν τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ ἤρχοντο ἀντίοι ἰέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις. ὡς δὲ πορευομένων ἐξεκύμαιέ τι τῆς φάλαγγος, τὸ

βασιλεὺς ὥστε μέσον τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ἔχων τοῦ Κύρου |spindle tree´ ἦν  
 ἀλλ' ὅμως ὁ Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἤθελεν ἀποσπάσαι ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ  
 δεξιὸν κέρας, φοβούμενος μὴ κυκλωθείη ἑκατέρωθεν, τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ  
 ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι αὐτῷ |μέλοσζ?: vain, idle ; or μέλος?: limb  
 ; or μέλω?: be in/on the mind

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν |non-Greek στράτευμα ὁμαλῶς  
 |to have `been` ληλικὸν ἔτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένον συνετάττετο ἐκ τῶν  
 |before, earlier ἔτι προσιόντων. καὶ ὁ Κύρος |pass, οὐ πάνυ πρὸς αὐτῷ  
 |outstrip στρατεύματι κατεθεᾶτο ἑκατέρωσε ἀποβλέπων εἰς τε τοὺς πολεμίους  
 καὶ τοὺς φίλους. ἰδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ Ξενοφῶν  
 Ἀθηναῖος, πελάσας ὡς |encounter ἤρετο εἴ τι παραγγέλλοι· ὁ δ'  
 ἐπιστήσας εἶπε καὶ λέγειν ἐκέλευε πᾶσι ὅτι καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ καὶ  
 τὰ σφάγια καλὰ.

Ταῦτα δὲ λέγων θορύβου ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος, καὶ ἤρετο τίς  
 ὁ θόρυβος εἶη. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν ὅτι σύνθημα παρέρχεται δεύτερον  
 ἤδη. καὶ ὡς ἐθαύμασε τίς παραγγέλλει καὶ ἤρετο ὅ τι εἶη τὸ σύνθημα.

ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο· Ζεὺς σωτήρ καὶ νίκη. ὁ δὲ Κύρος |ἀκέομαι?: ` heal, fix ; or  
 |ἀκούω?: hear, listen δέχομαί τε, ἔφη, καὶ τοῦτο ἔστω. ταῦτα δ' εἰπὼν εἰς τὴν αὐτοῦ χώραν

|expel, ex-  
 |clude, ward  
 |off

Καὶ οὐκέτι τρία ἢ τέτταρα |στάδιον pass through ἵλαγγε ἀπ' ἀλλήλων  
 200 meters καὶ ἤρχοντο ἀντίοι ἰέναι τοῖς  
 (pl also  
 masc)  
 πολέμοις. ὡς δὲ πορευθέντες ἐξεκύμαιέ τι τῆς φάλαγγος, τὸ

; or  
 στάδιος?:  
 (adj)  
 stand-  
 ing  
 up-  
 right,  
 firm;  
 (pl  
 noun)

and the Hellenic division was still riveted to the spot, completing its formation as the various contingents came up. Cyrus, riding past at some distance from the lines, glanced his eye first in one direction and then in the other, so as to take a complete survey of friends and foes; when Xenophon the Athenian, seeing him, rode up from the Hellenic quarter to meet him, asking him whether he had any orders to give. Cyrus, pulling up his horse, begged him to make the announcement generally known that the omens from the victims, internal and external alike, were good. While he was still speaking, he heard a confused murmur passing through the ranks, and asked what it meant. The other replied that it was the watchword being passed down for the second time. Cyrus wondered who had given the order, and asked what the watchword was. On being told it was "Zeus our Saviour and Victory," he replied, "I accept it; so let it be," and with that remark rode away to his own position. And now the two battle lines were no more than three or four furlongs apart, when the Hellenes began chanting the paean, and at the same time advanced against the enemy.

But with the forward movement a certain portion of the line curved onwards in advance, with wave-like sinuosity, and the portion left behind quickened to a run; and simultaneously a thrilling cry burst from all lips, like that in honour of the war-god— eleleu! eleleu! and the running became general. Some say they clashed their shields and spears, thereby causing terror to the horses; and before they had got within arrowshot the barbarians swerved and took to flight. And now the

*vocabulary*

**αἰδέομαι** respect, be ashamed  
**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**ἀντίος** opposite, facing  
**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**ἀσφαλής** going ahead, standing firm  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**βοάω** shout  
**διό** because of which  
**διώκω** chase  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐξάγω** lead out  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔργω** bound, fend off; do; also  
**ἐργαθεῖν**  
**ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics  
**εὐώνυμος** spindle tree  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ἦμαι** sit, lie  
**ἡμισυς** half ~hemisphere  
**ἡνίοχος** rein holder; also ἡνιοχεύς  
**θέω** run, run for

**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
**ἵππιοχάρμης**  
**καθίζω** to seat ~sit; also ἴζω, καθιζάνω  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake  
**κενός** empty, vain  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn  
**κράτος** -εος (n, 3) strength, power; victory ~democracy; also κάρτος  
**μέντοι** however  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὀδός  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage  
**πλήν** except  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιά** army  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φόβος** fear, rout, panic ~phobia

ὑπολειπόμενον ἤρξατο δρόμῳ θεῖν· καὶ ἅμα ἐφθέγγαντο πάντες οἶον τῷ Ἐνναλίῳ ἐλελίζουσι, καὶ πάντες δὲ ἔθεον. λέγουσι δέ τινες ὡς καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ δόρατα ἐδούπησαν φόβον ποιοῦντες τοῖς ἵπποις. πρὶν δὲ τόξευμα ἐξικνεῖσθαι ἐκκλίνουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ φεύγουσι.

Καὶ ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐδίωκον μὲν κατὰ κράτος οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐβόων δὲ ἀλλήλοις μὴ θεῖν δρόμῳ, ἀλλ' ἐν τάξει ἔπεσθαι. τὰ δ' ἄρματα ἐφέροντο τὰ μὲν δι' αὐτῶν τῶν πολεμίῳν, τὰ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κενὰ ἡμιόχων. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ προῖδοιεν, δίσταντο· ἔστι δ' ὅστις καὶ κατελήφθη ὥσπερ ἐν ἵπποδρόμῳ ἐκπλαγείς· καὶ οὐδὲν μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν ἔφασαν, οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τοξευθῆναι τις ἐλέγετο.

Κῦρος δ' ὁρῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῶντας τὸ καθ' αὐτοὺς καὶ διώκοντας, ἠδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἤδη ὡς βασιλεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οὐδ' ὡς ἐξήχθη διώκειν, ἀλλὰ συνεσπειραμένην ἔχων τὴν τῶν σὺν ἑαυτῷ ἑξακοσίων ἱππέων τάξιν ἐπεμελείτο ὅ τι ποιήσει βασιλεὺς. καὶ γὰρ ἤδει αὐτὸν ὅτι μέσον ἔχει τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος. καὶ πάντες δ' οἱ τῶν βαρβάρων ἄρχοντες μέσον ἔχοντες τὸ αὐτῶν ἠγοῦνται, νομίζοντες οὕτω καὶ ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ εἶναι, ἢ ἢ ἢ ἰσχὺς αὐτῶν ἐκατέρωθεν, καὶ εἴ τι παραγγεῖλαι χρήζοιεν, ἡμίσει ἂν χρόνῳ αἰσθάνεσθαι τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ βασιλεὺς δὴ τότε μέσον ἔχων τῆς αὐτοῦ στρατιᾶς ὅμως ἔξω ἐγένετο τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου κέρατος. ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ ἐμάχετο ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου οὐδὲ



|leave (food, person) |running ἴν· καὶ ἅμα |make a sound, utter ἴν  
 τῷ Ἐνναλίῳ |shake; turn ἰ πάντες δὲ ἔθειον. λέγουσι δέ τινες ὡς καὶ  
 ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ δόρατα |to thud φόβον ποιοῦντες τοῖς ἵπποις.  
 πρὶν δὲ τόξενμα |arrive at ἐκκλίνουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ φεύγουσι.

Καὶ ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐδίωκον μὲν κατὰ κράτος οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐβόων δὲ  
 ἀλλήλοις μὴ θεῖν |running ἴλλ' ἐν τάξει ἔπεσθαι. τὰ δ' ἄρματα  
 ἐφέροντο τὰ μὲν δι' αὐτῶν τῶν πολεμίων, τὰ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων  
 κενὰ |rein holder ἴ δ' ἐπεὶ προΐδοιεν, δίσταντο· ἔστι δ' ὅστις καὶ  
 κατελήφθη ὥσπερ ἐν |race track ἐκπλαγείς· καὶ οὐδὲν μέντοι οὐδὲ  
 τοῦτον παθεῖν ἔφασαν, οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ  
 ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ |spindle tree ἔσθηνάι τις ἐλέγετο.

Κῦρος δ' ὀρώων τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῶντας τὸ καθ' αὐτοὺς καὶ διώκοντας,  
 ἠδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἤδη ὡς βασιλεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτόν,  
 οὐδ' ὡς ἐξήχθη διώκειν, ἀλλὰ συνεσπειραμένην ἔχων τὴν τῶν σὺν  
 ἑαυτῷ ἑξακοσίων ἵππέων τάξιν ἐπεμελεῖτο ὅ τι ποιήσει βασιλεὺς.  
 καὶ γὰρ ἤδει αὐτόν ὅτι μέσον ἔχει τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος.  
 καὶ πάντες δ' οἱ τῶν βαρβάρων ἄρχοντες μέσον ἔχοντες τὸ αὐτῶν  
 ἠγοῦνται, νομίζοντες οὕτω καὶ ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ εἶναι, ἦν ἦ ἢ  
 ἰσχὺς αὐτῶν ἐκατέρωθεν, καὶ εἴ τι παραγγεῖλαι |need ἡμίσει  
 ἂν χρόνῳ αἰσθάνεσθαι τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ βασιλεὺς δὴ τότε  
 μέσον ἔχων τῆς αὐτοῦ στρατιᾶς ὅμως ἕξω ἐγένετο τοῦ Κύρου  
 |spindle tree ἴατος. ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ ἐμάχετο ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου οὐδὲ

Hellenes gave chase with might and main, checked only by shouts to one another not to race, but to keep their ranks. The enemy's chariots, reft of their charioteers, swept onwards, some through the enemy themselves, others past the Hellenes. They, as they saw them coming, opened a gap and let them pass. One fellow, like some dumbfounded mortal on a racecourse, was caught by the heels, but even he, they said, received no hurt, nor indeed, with the single exception of some one on the left wing who was said to have been wounded by an arrow, did any Hellene in this battle suffer a single hurt.

Cyrus, seeing the Hellene's conquering, as far as they at any rate were concerned, and in hot pursuit, was well content; but in spite of his joy and the salutations offered him at that moment by those about him, as though he were already king, he was not led away to join in the pursuit, but keeping his squadron of six hundred horsemen in cloe order, waited and watched to see what the king himself would do. The king, he knew, held the centre of the Persian army. Indeed it is the fashion for the Asiatic monarch to occupy that position during action, for this twofold reason: he holds the safest place, with his troops on either side of him, while, if he has occasion to despatch any necessary rider along the lines, his troops will receive the message in half the time. The king accordingly on this occasion held the centre of his army, but for all that, he was outside Cyrus's left wing; and seeing that no one offered him battle in front, nor yet the troops in front of him, he wheeled as if to encircle the enemy. It was then that Cyrus, in apprehension lest the king might get round to the rear and cut to pieces

*vocabulary*

**ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at  
**ἀνέχω** raise; mid: endure, submit  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἀντίος** opposite, facing  
**ἀποκτείνω** kill  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**βίαιος** by force  
**δέιδω** to fear ~Deimos  
**διώκω** chase  
**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also  
**ἐλαστρέω**  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεὶ  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
**ἰθύς**  
**θεράπων** (m, 3) helper, henchman, servant ~therapy  
**ἰάομαι** cure ~pediatrician  
**ἰατῆρ** ἰητῆρος (m) doctor ~pediatrician  
**ἰατρός** physician  
**καθοράω** look down

**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon;  
 also καταλιμπάνω  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus  
**ὄπισθεν** behind, hereafter; also ὄπιθεν  
**ὀπόσος** as/how many/great  
**ὀρμάω** set in motion, rush at  
 ~hormone  
**ὀρμέω** be anchored  
**ὀφθαλμός** eye  
**παλτός** brandished, hurled  
**πάνυ** altogether, very  
**πιστός** faithful (πεῖθω)  
**πλήν** except  
**πρό** before, forward ~prolog  
**σκηπτουχός** scepter-bearer  
**στέρονον** chest ~sternum  
**σχεδόν** near, approximately at  
 ~ischemia  
**τιτρώσκω** wound, bring to grief  
 ~trauma; also τρώω  
**τρέπω** divert ~trophy  
**τροπή** rout, turning of an enemy  
**ὑπέιπον** say as preface, premise  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape

τοῖς αὐτοῦ τεταγμένοις ἔμπροσθεν, ἐπέκαμπτεν ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν.

Ἐνθα δὴ Κῦρος δείσας μὴ ὄπισθεν γενόμενος κατακόψῃ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐλαύνει ἀντίος· καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις νικᾷ τοὺς πρὸ βασιλέως τεταγμένους καὶ εἰς φυγὴν ἔτρεψε τοὺς ἑξακισχιλίους, καὶ ἀποκτεῖναι λέγεται αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ Ἄρταγέρσην τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν. ὡς δ' ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο, διασπείρονται καὶ οἱ Κύρου ἑξακόσιοι εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὀρμήσαντες, πλὴν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἀμφ' αὐτὸν κατελείφθησαν, σχεδὸν οἱ ὁμοτράπεζοι καλούμενοι.

Σὺν τούτοις δὲ ὢν καθορᾷ βασιλέα καὶ τὸ ἀμφ' ἐκείνον στίφος· καὶ εὐθὺς οὐκ ἠνέσχετο, ἀλλ' εἰπὼν Τὸν ἄνδρα ὀρῶ ἴετο ἐπ' αὐτὸν καὶ παίει κατὰ τὸ στέρινον καὶ τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρακος, ὧς φησι Κτησίας ὁ ἰατρός, καὶ ἰᾶσθαι αὐτὸς τὸ τραῦμά φησι. παίοντα δ' αὐτὸν ἀκοντίζει τις παλτῶ ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν βιαίως· καὶ ἐνταῦθα μαχόμενοι καὶ βασιλεὺς καὶ Κῦρος καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου, ὅποσοι μὲν τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα ἀπέθνησκον Κτησίας λέγει· παρ' ἐκείνω γὰρ ἦν.

Κῦρος δὲ αὐτὸς τε ἀπέθανε καὶ ὀκτὼ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἔκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῶ. Ἄρταπάτης δ' ὁ πιστότατος αὐτῶ τῶν σκηπτούχων θεράπων λέγεται, ἐπειδὴ πεπτωκότεα εἶδε Κῦρον, καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου περιπεσεῖν αὐτῶ. καὶ οἱ μὲν φασὶ βασιλέα κελεῦσαί τινα ἐπισφάζαι αὐτὸν Κύρω, οἱ δ' ἑαυτὸν

τοῖς αὐτοῦ τεταγμένοις ἔμπροσθεν, ἐπέκαμπεν ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν.

Ἔνθα δὴ Κῦρος δείσας μὴ ὄπισθεν γενόμενος κατακόψῃ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐλαύνει ἀντίος· καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις νικᾷ τοὺς πρὸ βασιλέως τεταγμένους καὶ εἰς φυγὴν ἔτρεψε τοὺς ἑξακισχιλίους, καὶ ἀποκτεῖναι λέγεται αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ Ἀρταγέρσην τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν. ὡς δ' ἢ **rout,** ἔνετο, διασπείρονται καὶ οἱ Κύρου **turning** ἑξακόσιοι εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὀρμήσαντες, πλὴν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἀμφ' αὐτὸν κατελείφθησαν, σχεδὸν οἱ ὁμοτράπεζοι καλούμενοι.

Σὺν τούτοις δὲ ἂν **look down** ἰλέα καὶ τὸ ἀμφ' ἐκείνον στίφος· καὶ εὐθὺς οὐκ ἠνέσχετο, ἀλλ' εἰπὼν Τὸν ἄνδρα ὀρώ ἔτεο ἐπ' αὐτὸν καὶ παίει κατὰ τὸ **chest** καὶ **wound,** ἰὰ τοῦ θώρακος, ὡς φησι Κτησίας ὁ **ιατῆρ?;** **bring to** ἰατρός? **cure grief** τὸς τὸ τραῦμά φησι. παίοντα δ' αὐτὸν ἀκονί **doctor ; or** **brandished,** ὄν ὀφθαλμὸν **by force** αἰ ἐναυῆθα **physician** **hurled** μαχόμενοι καὶ βασιλεὺς καὶ Κῦρος καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου, **as/how many/great** βασιλέα ἀπέθνησκον Κτησίας λέγει· παρ' ἐκείνω γὰρ ἦν.

Κῦρος δὲ αὐτὸς τε ἀπέθανε καὶ ὀκτῶ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἔκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῷ. Ἀρταπάτης δ' ὁ πιστότατος αὐτῷ τῶν **scepter-bearer** θεράπων λέγεται, **after;** ἐπτωκότα εἶδε Κῦρον, **because** καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου περιπεσεῖν αὐτῷ. καὶ οἱ μὲν φασὶ βασιλέα κελεύσαι τινα ἐπισφάζαι αὐτὸν Κύρω, οἱ δ' ἑαυτὸν

the Hellenic body, charged to meet him. Attacking with his six hundred, he mastered the line of troops in front of the king, and put to flight the six thousand, cutting down, as is said, with his own hand their general, Artagerses.

But as soon as the rout commenced, Cyrus's own six hundred themselves, in the ardour of pursuit, were scattered, with the exception of a handful who were left with Cyrus himself— chiefly his table companions, so-called. Left alone with these, he caught sight of the king, and the close throng about him. Unable longer to contain himself, with a cry, "I see the man," he rushed at him and dealt a blow at his chest, wounding him through the corselet. This, according to the statement of Ctesias the surgeon, who further states that he himself healed the wound. As Cyrus delivered the blow, some one struck him with a javelin under the eye severely; and in the struggle which then ensued between the king and Cyrus and those about them to protect one or other, we have the statement of Ctesias as to the number slain on the king's side, for he was by his side. On the other, Cyrus himself fell, and eight of his bravest companions lay on the top of him. The story says that Artapes, the trustiest among his wand-wearers, when he saw that Cyrus had fallen to the ground, leapt from his horse and threw his arms about him. Then, as one account says, the king bade one slay him as a worthy victim to his brother: others say that Artapates drew his scimitar and slew himself by his own hand.

*vocabulary*

**αἰσχρός** shameful  
**ἀκέομαι** heal, fix  
**ἀκινάκης** (m, 1) Persian short sword  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἄξιος** worthy ~axiom  
**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning  
**ἀτιμάζω** insult, dishonor  
**διό** because of which  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔργω** bound, fend off; do; also  
 ἐργαθεῖν  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
 ἰθύς  
**ἐφοράω** look upon  
**ἡλικία** time of life, contemporaries  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater; also θάομαι, θηέομαι  
**θηρίον** (f/m/n) wild animal  
 ~megatherium; also θήρ

**θύρα** door ~door  
**κράτιστος** best  
**κρίνω** sift, separate, choose ~critic  
**μανθάνω** learn, be trained ~math  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also  
 πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**πρέπω** be conspicuous, preeminent  
 ~refurbish  
**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**σπάω** draw, pull out, pluck ~spatula  
**στρεπτός** easily turning, pliant,  
 articulate ~strep throat  
**τελευτάω** bring about, finish  
**τιμάω** honor, exalt  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry  
**χρύσεος** golden  
**ψέλιον** armlet, anklet

ἐπισφάξασθαι σπασάμενον τὸν ἀκινάκην· εἶχε γὰρ χρυσοῦν· καὶ στρεπτόν δ' ἐφόρει καὶ ψέλια καὶ τᾶλλα ὥσπερ οἱ ἄριστοι Περσῶν· ἐτετίμητο γὰρ ὑπὸ Κύρου δι' εὐνοϊάν τε καὶ πιστότητα.

## 1.9

Κῦρος μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν, ἀνὴρ ὢν Περσῶν τῶν μετὰ Κῦρον τὸν ἀρχαῖον γενομένων βασιλικώτατός τε καὶ ἄρχειν ἀξιώτατος, ὡς παρὰ πάντων ὁμολογεῖται τῶν Κύρου δοκούντων ἐν πείρα γενέσθαι. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἔτι παῖς ὢν, ὅτ' ἐπαιδεύετο καὶ σὺν τῷ ἀδελφῷ καὶ σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις παισὶ, πάντων πάντα κράτιστος ἐνομιζέτο. πάντες γὰρ οἱ τῶν ἀρίστων Περσῶν παῖδες ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις παιδεύονται· ἔνθα πολλὴν μὲν σωφροσύνην καταμάθοι ἂν τις, αἰσχρὸν δ' οὐδὲν οὐτ' ἀκούσαι οὐτ' ἰδεῖν ἔστι. θεῶνται δ' οἱ παῖδες καὶ τιμωμένους ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ ἀκούουσι, καὶ ἄλλους ἀτιμαζομένους· ὥστε εὐθὺς παῖδες ὄντες μανθάνουσιν ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἄρχεσθαι.

Ἐνθα Κῦρος αἰδημονέστατος μὲν πρῶτον τῶν ἡλικιωτῶν ἐδόκει εἶναι, τοῖς τε πρεσβυτέροις καὶ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ὑποδεεστέρων μᾶλλον πείθεσθαι, ἔπειτα δὲ φιλιππότατος καὶ τοῖς ἵπποις ἄριστα χρῆσθαι· ἔκρινον δ' αὐτὸν καὶ τῶν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον ἔργων, τοξικῆς τε καὶ ἀκοντίσεως, φιλομαθέστατον εἶναι καὶ μελετηρότατον. ἐπεὶ δὲ τῇ ἡλικίᾳ ἔπρεπε, καὶ φιλοθηρότατος ἦν καὶ πρὸς τὰ θηρία



ἐπισφάζασθαι |draw, pull out `ν |Persian  
short  
|easily turn-ἐφοράω?: |armlet, υἷ |sword  
ing, pliant,look |anklet  
articulate γὰρ upon Κῦρον δι' εὐνοϊάν τε καὶ πιστότητα.  
or φορέω?:  
frequen-  
tative of  
φέρω, to  
carry

1.9

Κῦρος μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν, ἀνὴρ ὢν Περσῶν τῶν μετὰ Κῦρον  
τὸν |ancient, , from 'νων βασιλικώτατός τε καὶ ἄρχειν ἀξιώτατος, ὡς  
|the beginning  
παρὰ πάντων ὁμολογεῖται τῶν Κῦρου δοκούντων ἐν πείρα γενέσθαι.  
πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἔτι παῖς ὢν, ὅτ' ἐπαιδύετο καὶ σὺν τῷ ἀδελφῷ  
καὶ σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις παισὶ, πάντων πάντα κράτιστος ἐνομίζετο.  
πάντες γὰρ οἱ τῶν ἀρίστων Περσῶν παῖδες ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως  
θύραις παιδεύονται· ἔνθα πολλὴν μὲν σωφροσύνην καταμάθοι ἂν τις,  
αἰσχρὸν δ' οὐδὲν οὐτ' |ἀκέομαι?: ἡεῶ, ἡεῶ ; or ὦνται δ' οἱ παῖδες καὶ  
|ἀκούω?: hear, listen  
τιμωμένους ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ ἀκούουσι, καὶ ἄλλους |dishonor  
ὥστε εὐθὺς παῖδες ὄντες μανθάνουσιν ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἄρχεσθαι.

Ἐνθα Κῦρος αἰδημονέστατος μὲν πρῶτον τῶν ἡλικιωτῶν ἐδόκει  
εἶναι, τοῖς τε πρεσβυτέροις καὶ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ὑποδεεστέρων μᾶλλον  
πέιθεσθαι, ἔπειτα δὲ φιλιππότατος καὶ τοῖς ἵπποις ἄριστα χρῆσθαι·  
ἔκρινον δ' αὐτὸν καὶ τῶν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον ἔργων, τοξικῆς τε  
καὶ ἀκοντίσεως, φιλομαθέστατον εἶναι καὶ μελετηρότατον. ἐπεὶ  
δὲ τῇ ἡλικίᾳ |be conspicu-ἰλοθηρότατος ἦν καὶ πρὸς τὰ θηρία  
|ous, preemi-  
|nent

A golden scimitar it is true, he had; he wore also a collar and bracelets and the other ornaments such as the noblest Persians wear; for his kindness and fidelity had won him honours at the hands of Cyrus.

## 1.9

So died Cyrus; a man the kingliest and most worthy to rule of all the Persians who have lived since the elder Cyrus: according to the concurrent testimony of all who are reputed to have known him intimately. To begin from the beginning, when still a boy, and whilst being brought up with his brother and the other lads, his unrivalled excellence was recognised. For the sons of the noblest Persians, it must be known, are brought up, one and all, at the king's portals. Here lessons of sobriety and self-control may largely be laid to heart, while there is nothing base or ugly for eye or ear to feed upon. There is the daily spectacle ever before the boys of some receiving honour from the king, and again of others receiving dishonour; and the tale of all this is in their ears, so that from earliest boyhood they learn how to rule and to be ruled.

In this courtly training Cyrus earned a double reputation; first he was held to be a paragon of modesty among his fellows, rendering an obedience to his elders which exceeded that of many of his own inferiors; and next he bore away the palm for skill in horsemanship and for love of the animal itself. Nor less in matters of war, in the use of the bow and the javelin, was he held by men in general to be at once the aptest of learners and the most eager practiser. As soon as

*vocabulary*

**ἄημι** blow  
**ἀθροίζω** press close together; (mid) muster  
**ἀλέξω** ward off; aid  
**ἀντί** for, equivalent to  
**ἅπαξ** once  
**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ὑ) show, point out; (mid) declare  
**ἄρκτος** (f) bear  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἐκφέρω** carry off  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὑ) display, exhibit  
**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide  
**ἐπιφέρω** bestow  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐχή** prayer  
**εὐχομαι** declare, boast; pray (εὐχος)  
**ζέω** boil ~eczema  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**καθήκω** come down, (a day) to fall, be proper  
**μείων** less, smaller  
**μέντοι** however  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὁδός

**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also **πειρηγίζω**  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πλήν** except  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also **πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω**  
**ποτός** potable  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**σατράπης** (m, 1) satrap, Persian governor  
**σπένδω** libate (σπονδή); also **ἀποσπένδω**  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**συνθέω** go smoothly  
**συντίθημι** hearken, mark  
**τελέω** fulfill; pf pass: be feasible  
**τέλος** -υς (n, 3) end; military post  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**τρέω** flee in fear  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**ψεύδω** middle: to lie  
**ὤτειλή** wound

μέντοι φιλοκινδυνότατος. καὶ ἄρκτον ποτὲ ἐπιφερομένην οὐκ ἔτρεσεν, ἀλλὰ συμπεσὼν κατεσπάσθη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, καὶ τὰ μὲν ἔπαθεν, ὧν καὶ τὰς ὠτειλὰς εἶχεν, τέλος δὲ κατέκανε· καὶ τὸν πρῶτον μέντοι βοηθήσαντα πολλοῖς μακαριστὸν ἐποίησεν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεπέμφθη ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς σατράπης Λυδίας τε καὶ Φρυγίας τῆς μεγάλης καὶ Καππαδοκίας, στρατηγὸς δὲ καὶ πάντων ἀπεδείχθη οἷς καθήκει εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδῖον ἀθροίζεσθαι, πρῶτον μὲν ἐπέδειξεν αὐτόν, ὅτι περὶ πλείστου ποιοῖτο, εἴ τω σπείσαιτο καὶ εἴ τω συνθοῖτο καὶ εἴ τω ὑπόσχοιτό τι, μηδὲν ψεύδεσθαι. καὶ γὰρ οὖν ἐπίστευον μὲν αὐτῷ αἱ πόλεις ἐπιτρεπόμεναι, ἐπίστευον δ' οἱ ἄνδρες· καὶ εἴ τις πολέμιος ἐγένετο, σπεισαμένου Κύρου ἐπίστευε μηδὲν ἂν παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς παθεῖν.

Τοιγαροῦν ἐπεὶ Τισσαφέρνει ἐπολέμησε, πᾶσαι αἱ πόλεις ἐκοῦσαι Κῦρον εἴλοντο ἀντὶ Τισσαφέρνους πλὴν Μιλησίων· οὗτοι δὲ ὅτι οὐκ ἤθελε τοὺς φεύγοντας προσέσθαι ἐφοβοῦντο αὐτόν. καὶ γὰρ ἔργῳ ἐπεδείκνυτο καὶ ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ ἂν ποτε προοῖτο, ἐπεὶ ἄπαξ φίλος αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο, οὐδ' εἰ ἔτι μὲν μείους γένοιτο, ἔτι δὲ κάκιον πράξειαν.

Φανερός δ' ἦν καὶ εἴ τις τι ἀγαθὸν ἢ κακὸν ποιήσειεν αὐτόν, νικᾶν πειρώμενος· καὶ εὐχὴν δέ τινες αὐτοῦ ἐξέφερον ὡς εὐχοίτο τοσοῦτον χρόνον ζῆν ἕστε νικῆν καὶ τοὺς εἶ καὶ κακῶς ποιοῦντας ἀλεξόμενος. καὶ γὰρ οὖν πλείστοι δὴ αὐτῷ ἐνὶ γε ἀνδρὶ τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν ἐπεθύμησαν

μέντοι φιλοκινδυνότατος, καὶ |bear |τοτέ ἐπιφερομένην οὐκ |flee  
 ἀλλὰ συμπεσὼν κατεσπάσθη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, καὶ τὰ μὲν ἔπαθεν, ὦν  
 καὶ τὰς |wound εἶχεν, τέλος δὲ κατέκανε· καὶ τὸν πρῶτον μέντοι  
 βοηθήσαντα πολλοῖς μακαριστὸν ἐποίησεν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεπέμφθη ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς |satrap, Per- δίας τε καὶ  
 Φρυγίας τῆς μεγάλης καὶ Καππαδοκίας, |sian gover-  
 ἀπεδείχθη οἷς |come down, (a day) ἢ πεδίον ἀθροίζεσθαι, πρῶτον μὲν  
 |to fall, be proper  
 ἐπέδειξεν αὐτόν, ὅτι περὶ πλείστου ποιοῖτο, εἴ τῳ |libate καὶ εἴ  
 τῳ |συνθέω?: ἡὸ ἰσμοόθλῃ ;, or ὅ τι, μἡδὲν ψεύδεσθαι. καὶ γὰρ οὐδ  
 |συντίθημι?: hearken, mark  
 ἐπίστευον μὲν αὐτῷ αἱ πόλεις ἐπιτρεπόμεναι, ἐπίστευον δ' οἱ ἄνδρες·  
 καὶ εἴ τις πολέμιος ἐγένετο, |libate Κύρου ἐπίστευε μἡδὲν ἄν  
 παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς παθεῖν.

Τοιγαροῦν ἐπεὶ Τισσαφέρνει ἐπολέμησε, πᾶσαι αἱ πόλεις ἐκοῦσαι  
 Κῦρον εἶλοντο ἀντὶ Τισσαφέρνου πλὴν Μιλησίων· οὗτοι δὲ ὅτι οὐκ  
 ἠθέλε τὸς φεύγοντας προέσθαι ἐφοβοῦντο αὐτόν. καὶ γὰρ ἔργῳ  
 ἐπεδείκνυτο καὶ ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ ἄν ποτε προῖτο, ἐπεὶ |once φίλος  
 αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο, οὐδ' εἴ ἔτι μὲν |less, ἰνουντο, ἔτι δὲ κάκιον πράξειαν.  
 |smaller

Φανερός δ' ἦν καὶ εἴ τίς τι ἀγαθὸν ἢ κακὸν ποιήσειεν αὐτόν, νικᾶν  
 πειρώμενος· καὶ |prayer ἔτινες αὐτοῦ ἐξέφερον ὡς εὐχαιοτο τοσοῦτον  
 χρόνον ζῆν ἔσθε νικῆῃ καὶ τοὺς εἶδ κακῶς ποιῶντας |ward off; aid  
 καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲν πλείστοι δὴ αὐτῷ ἐνὶ γε ἀνδρὶ τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν ἐπεθύμησαν

his age permitted, the same pre-eminence showed itself in his fondness for the chase, not without a certain appetite for perilous adventure in facing the wild beasts themselves. Once a bear made a furious rush at him, and without wincing he grappled with her, and was pulled from his horse, receiving wounds the scars of which were visible through life; but in the end he slew the creature, nor did he forget him who first came to his aid, but made him enviable in the eyes of many.

After he had been sent down by his father to be satrap of Lydia and Great Phrygia and Cappadocia, and had been appointed general of the forces, whose business it is to muster in the plain of the Castolus, nothing was more noticeable in his conduct than the importance which he attached to the faithful fulfilment of every treaty or compact or undertaking entered into with others. He would tell no lies to any one. Thus doubtless it was that he won the confidence alike of individuals and of the communities entrusted to his care; or in case of hostility, a treaty made with Cyrus was a guarantee sufficient to the combatant that he would suffer nothing contrary to its terms. Therefore, in the war with Tissaphernes, all the states of their own accord chose Cyrus in lieu of Tissaphernes, except only the men of Miletus, and these were only alienated through fear of him, because he refused to abandon their exiled citizens; and his deeds and words bore emphatic witness to his principle: even if they were weakened in number or in fortune, he would never abandon those who had once become his friends.

He made no secret of his endeavour to outdo his friends and his foes alike in reciprocity of conduct. The prayer has been attributed to him, "God grant I may live along enough to recompense my friends and requite my foes with a strong arm." However this may be, no one, at

*vocabulary*

**ἀδεής** fearless ~Deimos  
**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**ἀξιόω** consider worthy, fitting  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**δῶρον** gift ~donate  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὑ) display, exhibit  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**κακοῦργος** causing evil  
**κακώω** harm, disfigure  
**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf) there is a danger that  
**μέντοι** however  
**ὄδος** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι, οἴομαι

**ὅπη** wherever, however  
**ὅπη** wherever, however  
**ὅπου** where  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὄδος  
**ὀφθαλμός** eye  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**πολλάκις** often  
**πορεύω** carry  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**στείβω** trample  
**στερέω** steal, take  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign  
**σῶμα** -τος (n, 3) corpse ~somatic  
**τιμάω** honor, exalt  
**τιμωρέω** take vengeance  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous  
**χρῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**χώρα** place

καὶ χρήματα καὶ πόλεις καὶ τὰ ἐαυτῶν σώματα προέσθαι.

Οὐ μὲν δὴ οὐδὲ τοῦτ' ἄν τις εἴποι, ὡς τοὺς κακούργους καὶ ἀδίκους εἶα καταγελᾶν, ἀλλὰ ἀφειδέστατα πάντων ἐτιμωρεῖτο· πολλάκις δ' ἦν ἰδεῖν παρὰ τὰς στειβομένας ὁδοὺς καὶ ποδῶν καὶ χειρῶν καὶ ὀφθαλμῶν στερομένους ἀνθρώπους· ὥστ' ἐν τῇ Κύρου ἀρχῇ ἐγένετο καὶ Ἕλληνι καὶ βαρβάρῳ μηδὲν ἀδικοῦντι ἀδεῶς πορεύεσθαι ὅπη τις ἤθελεν, ἔχοντι ὅ τι προχωροίη.

Τοὺς γε μέντοι ἀγαθοὺς εἰς πόλεμον ὠμολόγητο διαφερόντως τιμᾶν. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἦν αὐτῷ πόλεμος πρὸς Πισίδας καὶ Μυσούς· στρατευόμενος οὖν καὶ αὐτὸς εἰς ταύτας τὰς χώρας, οὓς ἐώρα ἐθέλοντας κινδυνεύειν, τούτους καὶ ἄρχοντας ἐποίει ἧς κατεστρέφετο χώρας, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἄλλοις δώροις ἐτίμα· ὥστε φαίνεσθαι τοὺς μὲν ἀγαθοὺς εὐδαιμονεστάτους, τοὺς δὲ κακοὺς δούλους τούτων ἀξιοῦσθαι εἶναι. τοιγαροῦν πολλῇ ἦν ἀφθονία αὐτῷ τῶν ἐθελόντων κινδυνεύειν, ὅπου τις οἶοιτο Κῦρον αἰσθήσεσθαι.

Εἷς γε μὴν δικαιοσύνην εἴ τις φανερός γένοιτο ἐπιδείκνυσθαι βουλόμενος, περὶ παντὸς ἐποιεῖτο τούτους πλουσιωτέρους ποιεῖν τῶν ἐκ τοῦ ἀδίκου φιλοκερδούντων. καὶ γὰρ οὖν ἄλλα τε πολλὰ δικαίως αὐτῷ διεχειρίζετο καὶ στρατεύματι ἀληθινῶ ἐχρήσατο. καὶ γὰρ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, οἳ χρημάτων ἔνεκα πρὸς ἐκείνον ἔπλευσαν, ἔγνωσαν κερδαλεώτερον εἶναι



καὶ χρήματα καὶ πόλεις καὶ τὰ ἐαυτῶν σώματα προσέσθαι.

Οὐ μὲν δὴ οὐδὲ τοῦτ' ἂν τις εἴποι, ὡς τοὺς **|causing evil** :αὶ ἀδίκους εἶα καταγελᾶν, ἀλλὰ ἀφειδέστατα πάντων ἐτιμωρεῖτο· πολλάκις δ' ἦν ἰδεῖν παρὰ τὰς **|trample** ὁδοὺς καὶ ποδῶν καὶ χειρῶν καὶ ὀφθαλμῶν στερομένους ἀνθρώπους· ὥστ' ἐν τῇ Κύρου ἀρχῇ ἐγένετο καὶ Ἑλληνι καὶ βαρβάρῳ μηδὲν ἀδικοῦντι **|fearless** κρῦεσθαι ὅπῃ τις ἤθελεν, ἔχοντι ὅ τι προχωροῖ.

Τοὺς γε μέντοι ἀγαθοὺς εἰς πόλεμον ὠμολόγητο διαφερόντως τιμᾶν. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἦν αὐτῷ πόλεμος πρὸς Πισίδας καὶ Μυσούς· στρατευόμενος οὖν καὶ αὐτὸς εἰς ταύτας τὰς χώρας, οὓς ἑώρα ἐθέλοντας κινδυνεύειν, τούτους καὶ ἄρχοντας ἐποίει ἡς κατεστρέφετο χώρας, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἄλλοις δώροις ἐτίμα· ὥστε φαίνεσθαι τοὺς μὲν ἀγαθοὺς εὐδαιμονεστάτους, τοὺς δὲ κακοὺς δούλους τούτων ἀξιοῦσθαι εἶναι. τοιγαροῦν πολλὴ ἦν ἀφθονία αὐτῷ τῶν ἐθελόντων κινδυνεύειν, ὅπου τις οἶοιτο Κῦρον αἰσθήσεσθαι.

Εἰς γε μὴν δικαιοσύνην εἴ τις φανερὸς γένοιτο ἐπιδείκνυσθαι βουλόμενος, περὶ παντὸς ἐποιεῖτο τούτους πλουσιωτέρους ποιεῖν τῶν ἐκ τοῦ ἀδίκου φιλοκερδούντων. καὶ γὰρ οὖν ἄλλα τε πολλὰ δικαίως αὐτῷ διεχειρίζετο καὶ στρατεύματι ἀληθινῶ ἐχρήσατο. καὶ γὰρ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, οἳ χρημάτων ἕνεκα πρὸς ἐκείνον ἔπλευσαν, ἔγνωσαν κερδαλεώτερον εἶναι

least in our days, ever drew together so ardent a following of friends, eager to lay at his feet their money, their cities, their own lives and persons; nor is it to be inferred from this that he suffered the malefactor and the wrongdoer to laugh him to scorn; on the contrary, these he punished most unflinchingly. It was no rare sight to see on the well-trodden highways, men who had forfeited hand or foot or eye; the result being that throughout the satrapy of Cyrus any one, Helene or barbarian, provided he were innocent, might fearlessly travel wherever he pleased, and take with him whatever he felt disposed. However, as all allowed, it was for the brave in war that he reserved especial honour. To take the first instance to hand, he had a war with the Pisidians and Mysians. Being himself at the head of an expedition into those territories, he could observe those who voluntarily encountered risks; these he made rulers of the territory which he subjected, and afterwards honoured them with other gifts. So that, if the good and brave were set on a pinnacle of fortune, cowards were recognised as their natural slaves; and so it befell that Cyrus never had lack of volunteers in any service of danger, whenever it was expected that his eye would be upon them.

So again, wherever he might discover any one ready to distinguish himself in the service of uprightness, his delight was to make this man richer than those who seek for gain by unfair means. On the same principle, his own administration was in all respects uprightly conducted, and, in particular, he secured the services of an army worthy of the name. Generals, and subalterns alike, came to him from across the seas,

*vocabulary*

**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**ἀποκρύπτω** hide away  
**αὖ** again, then again; next ~after  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφαιρέω** take away  
**ἀχάριστος** ungracious, unpleasant  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**δῶρον** gift ~donate  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔργω** bound, fend off; do; also  
 ἐργαθεῖν  
**ἡδέως** pleasantly  
**θαρσαλέος** bold, over-bold  
**θεραπεύω** help, serve  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**ἱκάνω** reach, arrive at  
**κέρδος** -υς (n, 3) advantage, cunning  
**κοσμέω** marshal, array  
**κράτιστος** best  
**κρίνω** sift, separate, choose ~critic  
**κρύπτω** hide, cover ~cryptic; also  
 κατακρύπτω  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οἴομαι,

**οἶομαι**  
**οἴομαι** suppose, hope; also οἴμαι,  
 οἴομαι  
**πάομαι** experience, suffer ~pathos;  
 also πάσχω  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also  
 πειρητίζω  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also  
 πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**πονέω** work; be busy  
**προθυμία** zeal, alacrity  
**πῶποτε** never  
**σκοπός** (m/f) lookout ~telescope  
**σῶμα** -τος (n, 3) corpse ~somatic  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τρόπος** (m/n) turn; manner, kind,  
 fashion  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**χοῦμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**χώρα** place

Κύρω καλῶς πειθαρχεῖν ἢ τὸ κατὰ μῆνα κέρδος. ἀλλὰ μὴν εἴ τις γέ τι αὐτῷ προστάξαντι καλῶς ὑπηρετήσειεν, οὐδενὶ πώποτε ἀχάριστον εἶασε τὴν προθυμίαν. τοιγαροῦν δὴ κράτιστοι ὑπηρεταὶ παντὸς ἔργου Κύρω ἐλέχθησαν γενέσθαι.

Εἰ δέ τινα ὀρήη δεινὸν ὄντα οἰκονόμον ἐκ τοῦ δικαίου καὶ κατασκευάζοντά τε ἧς ἄρχοι χώρας καὶ προσόδους ποιοῦντα, οὐδένα ἂν πώποτε ἀφείλετο, ἀλλ' ἀεὶ πλείω προσεδίδου· ὥστε καὶ ἡδέως ἐπόνουν καὶ θαρραλέως ἐκτῶντο καὶ ὁ ἐπέπατο αὐτὸς τις ἤκιστα Κῦρον ἔκρυπτεν· οὐ γὰρ φθονῶν τοῖς φανερώς πλουτοῦσιν ἐφαίνετο, ἀλλὰ πειρώμενος χρῆσθαι τοῖς τῶν ἀποκρυπτομένων χρήμασι. φίλους γε μὴν, ὅσους ποιήσαιτο καὶ εὖνους γνοίη ὄντας καὶ ἱκανοὺς κρίνειε συνεργοὺς εἶναι ὃ τι τυγχάνει βουλόμενος κατεργάζεσθαι, ὁμολογεῖται πρὸς πάντων κράτιστος δὴ γενέσθαι θεραπεύειν. καὶ γὰρ αὐτὸ τοῦτο οὐπερ αὐτὸς ἔνεκα φίλων ᾗετο δεῖσθαι, ὡς συνεργοὺς ἔχει, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπειρᾶτο συνεργὸς τοῖς φίλοις κράτιστος εἶναι τούτου ὅτου αἰσθάνοιτο ἕκαστον ἐπιθυμοῦντα.

Δῶρα δὲ πλείστα μὲν οἶμαι εἶς γε ἀνὴρ ἐλάμβανε διὰ πολλά· ταῦτα δὲ πάντων δὴ μάλιστα τοῖς φίλοις διεδίδου, πρὸς τοὺς τρόπους ἐκάστου σκοπῶν καὶ ὅτου μάλιστα ὀρήη ἕκαστον δεόμενον. καὶ ὅσα τῷ σώματι αὐτοῦ πέμποι τις ἢ ὡς εἰς πόλεμον ἢ ὡς εἰς καλλωπισμὸν, καὶ περὶ τούτων λέγειν αὐτὸν ἔφασαν ὅτι τὸ μὲν ἑαυτοῦ σῶμα οὐκ ἂν δύναιτο τούτοις πᾶσι κοσμηθῆναι,

Κύρω καλῶς πειθαρχεῖν ἢ τὸ κατὰ μῆνα |**advantage,**  
 |**cunning** ἂ μὴν εἴ τις γέ  
 τι αὐτῷ προστάξαντι καλῶς ὑπηρετήσκειν, οὐδενὶ |**never** |**ungracious,**  
 εἴασε τὴν προθυμίαν. τοιγαροῦν δὴ κράτιστοι ὑπηρεταὶ παντὸς ἔργου  
 |**unpleasant**  
 Κύρω ἐλέχθησαν γενέσθαι.

Εἰ δέ τινα ὀρήγη δεινὸν ὄντα οἰκονόμον ἐκ τοῦ δικαίου καὶ  
 κατασκευάζοντά τε ἧς ἄρχοι χώρας καὶ προσόδους ποιοῦντα, οὐδένα  
 ἂν |**never** ἀφείλετο, ἀλλ' ἀεὶ πλείω προσεδίδου· ὥστε καὶ |**pleasantly**  
 ἐπόνουν καὶ |**bold** ἐκτῶντο καὶ ὁ |**suffer** αὐτὸς τις ἥκιστα Κῶρον  
 ἔκρυπτεν· οὐ γὰρ φθονῶν τοῖς φανερώς πλουτοῦσιν ἐφαίνετο, ἀλλὰ  
 πειρώμενος χρῆσθαι τοῖς τῶν |**hide away** χρήμασι. φίλους  
 γε μὴν, ὅσους ποιήσαιτο καὶ εὖνους γνότην ὄντας καὶ ἰκανοὺς κρίνειε  
 συνεργοὺς εἶναι ὅτι τυγχάνει βουλόμενος κατεργάζεσθαι, ὁμολογεῖται  
 πρὸς πάντων κράτιστος δὴ γενέσθαι θεραπεύειν. καὶ γὰρ αὐτὸ  
 τοῦτο οὐπερ αὐτὸς ἔνεκα φίλων ᾤετο δεῖσθαι, ὡς συνεργοὺς ἔχει,  
 καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπειρᾶτο συνεργὸς τοῖς φίλοις κράτιστος εἶναι τούτου ὅτου  
 αἰσθάνοιτο ἕκαστον ἐπιθυμοῦντα.

Δῶρα δὲ πλείεστα μὲν οἶμαι εἶς γε ἀνὴρ ἐλάμβανε διὰ πολλά·  
 ταῦτα δὲ πάντων δὴ μάλιστα τοῖς φίλοις διεδίδου, πρὸς τοὺς  
 τρόπους ἐκάστου σκοπῶν καὶ ὅτου μάλιστα ὀρήγη ἕκαστον δεόμενον.  
 καὶ ὅσα τῷ σώματι αὐτοῦ πέμποι τις ἢ ὡς εἰς πόλεμον ἢ  
 ὡς εἰς καλλωπισμὸν, καὶ περὶ τούτων λέγειν αὐτὸν ἔφασαν ὅτι  
 τὸ μὲν ἑαυτοῦ σῶμα οὐκ ἂν |**enter, put on,** |**strip off**  
 |**strip off** ἡς πᾶσι κοσμηθῆναι,

not merely to make money, but because they saw that loyalty to Cyrus was a more profitable investment than so many pounds a month. Let any man whatsoever render him willing service, such enthusiasm was sure to win its reward. And so Cyrus could always command the service of the best assistants, it was said, whatever the work might be.

Or if he saw any skilful and just steward who furnished well the country over which he ruled, and created revenues, so far from robbing him at any time, to him who had, he delighted to give more. So that toil was a pleasure, and gains were amassed with confidence, and least of all from Cyrus would a man conceal the amount of his possessions, seeing that he showed no jealousy of wealth openly avowed, but his endeavour was rather to turn to account the riches of those who kept them secret. Towards the friends he had made, whose kindness he knew, or whose fitness as fellow-workers with himself, in aught which he might wish to carry out, he had tested, he showed himself in turn an adept in the arts of courtesy. Just in proportion as he felt the need of this friend or that to help him, so he tried to help each of them in return in whatever seemed to be their heart's desire.

Many were the gifts bestowed on him, for many and diverse reasons; no one man, perhaps, ever received more; no one, certainly, was ever more ready to bestow them upon others, with an eye ever to the taste of each, so as to gratify what he saw to be the individual requirement. Many of these presents were sent to him to serve as personal adornments of the body or for battle; and as touching these he would say, "How am I to deck myself out in all these? to my mind a man's chief ornament is the adornment of nobly-adorned friends." Indeed, that

*vocabulary***ἄγνουμι** break**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return**ἄρτος** bread, loaf**βάβαρος** non-Greek**γεύω** taste ~gusto**δυνατός** powerful, possible**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,**ἐξαποδύνω****ἐκπίνω** drink up, consume**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεί**ἐπιχειρέω** lay hands on**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene**κοσμέω** marshal, array**κόσμος** order; adornment ~cosmos**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike**νομίζω** consider customary**οἶνος** wine ~wine**οἰνώω** (m, 3) make drunk**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,**οἶομαι****ὁπότε** when; also ὁπότε**ὅπου** where**οὐπω** no longer**πάνυ** altogether, very**πεινάω** be hungry**περίεμι** be superior to**πιστός** faithful (πείθω)**πλεῖστος** most numerous**πλήν** except**πολλάκις** often**πορεύω** carry**σῶμα** -τος (n, 3) corpse ~somatic**τιμάω** honor, exalt**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy**χαρίζομαι** gratify someone ~charisma**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω**χῆν** (m/f, 3) goose ~gander

φίλους δὲ καλῶς κεκοσμημένους μέγιστον κόσμον ἀνδρὶ νομίζοι.

Καὶ τὸ μὲν τὰ μεγάλα νικᾶν τοὺς φίλους εὖ ποιοῦντα οὐδὲν θαυμαστόν, ἐπειδὴ γε καὶ δυνατώτερος ἦν· τὸ δὲ τῇ ἐπιμελείᾳ περιεῖναι τῶν φίλων καὶ τῷ προθυμείσθαι χαρίζεσθαι, ταῦτα ἔμοιγε μᾶλλον δοκεῖ ἀγαστὰ εἶναι. Κῦρος γὰρ ἔπεμπε βίκους οἴνου ἡμιδεεῖς πολλάκις ὅποτε πάνυ ἡδὺν λάβοι, λέγων ὅτι οὐπω δὴ πολλοῦ χρόνου τούτου ἡδίοι οἴνω ἐπιτύχοι· τούτον οὖν σοὶ ἔπεμψε καὶ δεῖταί σου τήμερον τούτον ἐκπιεῖν σὺν οἷς μάλιστα φιλεῖς.

Πολλάκις δὲ χῆνας ἡμβρώτους ἔπεμπε καὶ ἄρτων ἡμίσεια καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, ἐπιλέγειν κελεύων τὸν φέροντα· Τούτοις ἦσθη Κῦρος· βούλεται οὖν καὶ σὲ τούτων γεύσασθαι. ὅπου δὲ χιλὸς σπάνιος πάνυ εἴη, αὐτὸς δὲ δύναιτο παρασκευάσασθαι διὰ τὸ πολλοὺς ἔχειν ὑπηρέτας καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν, διαπέμπων ἐκέλευε τοὺς φίλους τοῖς τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα ἄγουσιν ἵπποις ἐμβάλλειν τούτον τὸν χιλόν, ὡς μὴ πεινῶντες τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ φίλους ἄγωσιν.

Εἰ δὲ δὴ ποτε πορευοίτο καὶ πλείστοι μέλλοιεν ὄψεσθαι, προσκαλῶν τοὺς φίλους ἐσπουδαιολογεῖτο, ὡς δηλοῖ οὗς τιμᾶ. ὥστε ἐγὼ μὲν γε, ἐξ ᾧ ἀκούω, οὐδένα κρῖνω ὑπὸ πλειόνων πεφιλησθαι οὔτε Ἑλλήνων οὔτε βαρβάρων. τεκμήριον δὲ τούτου καὶ τόδε. παρὰ μὲν Κύρου δούλου ὄντος οὐδεὶς ἀπήει πρὸς βασιλέα, πλὴν Ὀρόντας ἐπεχείρησε· καὶ οὗτος δὴ ὃν ᾤετο πιστόν οἱ εἶναι ταχὺ



φίλους δὲ καλῶς κεκοσμημένους μέγιστον κόσμον ἀνδρὶ νομίζοι.

Καὶ τὸ μὲν τὰ μεγάλα νικᾶν τοὺς φίλους εἶ ποιοῦντα οὐδὲν θαυμαστόν, **after;** , ε καὶ δυνατώτερος ἦν· τὸ δὲ τῇ ἐπιμελείᾳ **because** **|be superior to** ἰλῶν καὶ τῷ προθυμῆσθαι χαρίζεσθαι, ταῦτα ἔμοιγε μᾶλλον δοκεῖ ἀγαστὰ εἶναι. Κῦρος γὰρ ἔπεμπε βίκους οἴνου ἡμιδεεῖς πολλάκις ὅποτε πάνυ ἠδὺν λάβοι, λέγων ὅτι οὐπω δὴ πολλοῦ χρόνου τούτου ἠδίου οἴνω ἐπιτύχοι· τούτον οὖν σοὶ ἔπεμψε καὶ δεῖταί σου τήμερον τούτον **|drink up, consume** τα φιλεῖς.

Πολλάκις δὲ **|goose** ἡμβρότους ἔπεμπε καὶ ἄρτων ἡμίσεια καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, ἐπιλέγειν κελεύων τὸν φέροντα· Τούτοις ἦσθη Κῦρος· βούλεται οὖν καὶ σὲ τούτων γεύσασθαι. ὅπου δὲ χιλὸς σπάνιος πάνυ εἶη, αὐτὸς δὲ **|enter, put on, strip off** σκευάσασθαι διὰ τὸ πολλοὺς ἔχειν ὑπέρτας καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν, διαπέμπων ἐκέλευε τοὺς φίλους τοῖς τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα ἄγουσιν ἵπποις ἐμβάλλειν τούτον τὸν χιλόν, ὡς μὴ **|be hungry** οὖς ἑαυτοῦ φίλους ἄγωσιν.

Εἰ δὲ δὴ ποτε πορεύοιτο καὶ πλείστοι μέλλοιεν ὄψεσθαι, προσκαλῶν τοὺς φίλους ἐσπουδαιολογεῖτο, ὡς δηλοῖ οὗς τιμᾶ. ὥστε ἐγὼ μὲν γε, ἐξ ὧν ἀκούω, οὐδένα κρίνω ὑπὸ πλειόνων πεφιλησθαι οὔτε Ἑλλήνων οὔτε βαρβάρων. τεκμήριον δὲ τούτου καὶ τόδε. παρὰ μὲν Κύρου δούλου ὄντος οὐδεὶς ἀπήει πρὸς βασιλέα, πλὴν Ὀρόντας ἐπεχείρησε· καὶ οὗτος δὴ ὦν ἔφετο πιστόν οἱ εἶναι ταχὺ

he should triumph over his friends in the great matters of well-doing is not surprising, seeing that he was much more powerful than they, but that he should go beyond them in minute attentions, and in an eager desire to give pleasure, seems to me, I must confess, more admirable. Frequently when he had tasted some specially excellent wine, he would send the half remaining flagon to some friend with a message to say: "Cyrus says, this is the best wine he has tasted for a long time, that is his excuse for sending it to you. He hopes you will drink it up to-day with a choice party of friends." Or, perhaps, he would send the remainder of a dish of geese, half loaves of bread, and so forth, the bearer being instructed to say: "This is Cyrus's favourite dish, he hopes you will taste it yourself." Or, perhaps, there was a great dearth of provender, when, through the number of his servants and his own careful forethought, he was enabled to get supplies for himself; at such times he would send to his friends in different parts, bidding them feed their horses on his hay, since it would not do for the horses that carried his friends to go starving. Then, on any long march or expedition, where the crowd of lookers-on would be large, he would call his friends to him and entertain them with serious talk, as much as to say, "These I delight to honour."

So that, for myself, and from all that I can hear, I should be disposed to say that no one, Greek or barbarian, was ever so beloved. In proof of this, I may cite the fact that, though Cyrus was the king's vassal and slave, no one ever forsook him to join his master, if I may except the attempt of Orontas, which was abortive. That man, indeed, had to learn that Cyrus was closer

*vocabulary*

**ἀγαπάω** welcome, be host; also  
**ἀγαπάζω**  
**ἀγέομαι** go before, lead ~hegemony;  
 also ἡγέομαι  
**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀποτέμνω** cut off, sever  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general,  
 governor  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**βίος** life; also βιοτή  
**βιόω** live ~biology  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**διαρπάζω** make prey of  
**διώκω** chase  
**ἐκφεύγω** flee from, escape  
**ἐθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεί  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐώνυμος** spindle tree  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἵππικός** of horses  
**κάλως** halyard

**κεφαλή** head; height ~gable  
**κρίνω** sift, separate, choose ~critic  
**μέντοι** however  
**νέος** young; neuter: recently ~neon  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**ὀρθός** upright ~orthogonal  
**ὀρμάω** set in motion, rush at  
 ~hormone  
**οὐκέτι** no more  
**πιστός** faithful (πείθω)  
**πιστώω** reassure; also (pass) promise  
**πλήν** except  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**τελευτή** conclusion, fulfilment  
**τέσσαρες** (3) four  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τιμή** honor, value  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπέιπον** say as preface, premise  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy

αὐτὸν ἦρε Κύρον ἀπῆλθον, ἐπειδὴ πολέμοι ἀλλήλοις λέως πολλοὶ πρὸς Κύρον ἀπῆλθον, ἐπειδὴ πολέμοι ἀλλήλοις ἐγένοντο, καὶ οὗτοι μέντοι οἱ μάλιστα ὑπ' αὐτοῦ ἀγαπώμενοι, νομίζοντες παρὰ Κύρῳ ὄντες ἀγαθοὶ ἀξιοτέρας ἂν τιμῆς τυγχάνειν ἢ παρὰ βασιλεῖ.

Μέγα δὲ τεκμήριον καὶ τὸ ἐν τῇ τελευτῇ τοῦ βίου αὐτῷ γενόμενον ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς ἦν ἀγαθὸς καὶ κρίνειν ὀρθῶς ἐδύνατο τοὺς πιστοὺς καὶ εὖνους καὶ βεβαίους. ἀποθνήσκοντος γὰρ αὐτοῦ πάντες οἱ περὶ αὐτὸν φίλοι καὶ συντράπεζοι ἀπέθανον μαχόμενοι ὑπὲρ Κύρου πλὴν Ἀριαίου· οὗτος δὲ τεταγμένος ἐτύγχανεν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τοῦ ἵππικου ἄρχων· ὡς δ' ἦσθετο Κύρον πεπτωκότα, ἔφυγεν ἔχων καὶ τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν οὗ ἠγείτο.

## 1.10

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ Κύρου ἀποτέμεται ἡ κεφαλὴ καὶ ἡ χεὶρ ἡ δεξιὰ. βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ διώκων εἰσπίπτει εἰς τὸ Κύρειον στρατόπεδον· καὶ οἱ μὲν μετὰ Ἀριαίου οὐκέτι ἴστανται, ἀλλὰ φεύγουσι διὰ τοῦ αὐτῶν στρατοπέδου εἰς τὸν σταθμὸν ἔνθεν ὠρμῶντο· τέτταρες δ' ἐλέγοντο παρασάγγαι εἶναι τῆς ὁδοῦ. βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ τά τε ἄλλα πολλὰ διαρπάζουσι καὶ τὴν Φωκαΐδα τὴν Κύρου παλλακίδα τὴν σοφὴν καὶ καλὴν λεγομένην εἶναι λαμβάνει. ἡ δὲ Μιλησία ἡ νεωτέρα ληφθεῖσα ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα ἐκφεύγει

αὐτὸν ἤρε Κύρον ἀπῆλθον, <sup>|after;</sup> <sup>|because</sup> ἄλλήλοις λέως πολλοὶ  
 πρὸς Κύρον ἀπῆλθον, <sup>|after;</sup> <sup>|because</sup> ἄλλήλοις ἐγένοντο, καὶ οὗτοι  
 μέντοι οἱ μάλιστα ὑπ' αὐτοῦ ἀγαπώμενοι, νομίζοντες παρὰ Κύρω  
 ὄντες ἀγαθοὶ ἀξιωτέρας ἂν τιμῆς τυγχάνειν ἢ παρὰ βασιλεῖ.

Μέγα δὲ τεκμήριον καὶ τὸ ἐν τῇ <sup>|conclusion,</sup> <sup>|fulfilment</sup> βίου αὐτῷ γενόμενον  
 ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς ἦν ἀγαθὸς καὶ κρίνειν ὀρθῶς <sup>|enter, put on,</sup> <sup>|strip off</sup> πιστοὺς  
 καὶ εὖνους καὶ βεβαίους. ἀποθνήσκοντος γὰρ αὐτοῦ πάντες οἱ  
 περὶ αὐτὸν φίλοι καὶ συντράπεζοι ἀπέθανον μαχόμενοι ὑπὲρ Κύρου  
 πλὴν Ἀριαίου· οὗτος δὲ τεταγμένος ἐτύγχανεν ἐπὶ τῷ <sup>|spindle tree</sup>  
<sup>|of horses</sup> ἵχων· ὡς δ' ἦσθετο Κύρον πεπτωκότα, ἔφυγεν ἔχων καὶ τὸ  
 στράτευμα πᾶν οὖ <sup>|go before, lead</sup>

### 1.10

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ Κύρου <sup>|cut off, sever</sup> ἡ κεφαλὴ καὶ ἡ χεὶρ ἡ <sup>|δεξιὰ?:</sup> <sup>|δεξιός?:</sup> <sup>|right-</sup> <sup>|hand</sup> ; <sup>|right-</sup>  
 βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ διώκων εἰσπίπτει εἰς τὸ Κ <sup>|hand</sup>  
 στρατόπεδον· καὶ οἱ μὲν μετὰ Ἀριαίου οὐκέτι ἴστανται, ἀλλὰ φεύγουσι  
 διὰ τοῦ αὐτῶν στρατοπέδου εἰς τὸν <sup>|cottage; post</sup> ἰν ὠρμῶντο·  
 τέτταρες δ' ἐλέγοντο <sup>|Persian</sup> εἶναι τῆς ὁδοῦ. βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ  
 οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ τά τε ἄλλ <sup>|unit, ca. 5</sup> <sup>|km</sup> πολλὰ <sup>|make prey of</sup> ἰ τὴν Φωκαΐδα τὴν  
 Κύρου <sup>|sex slave</sup> τὴν σοφὴν καὶ καλὴν λεγομένην εἶναι λαμβάνει.  
 ἡ δὲ Μιλησία ἡ νεωτέρα ληφθεῖσα ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλεία <sup>|flee</sup>

to the heart of him on whose fidelity he relied than he himself was. On the other hand, many a man revolted from the king to Cyrus, after they went to war with one another; nor were these nobodies, but rather persons high in the king's affection; yet for all that, they believed that their virtues would obtain a reward more adequate from Cyrus than from the king. Another great proof at once of his own worth and of his capacity rightly to discern all loyal, loving and firm friendship is afforded by an incident which belongs to the last moment of his life. He was slain, but fighting for his life beside him fell also every one of his faithful bodyguard of friends and table-companions, with the sole exception of Ariaeus, who was in command of the cavalry on the left, and he no sooner perceived the fall of Cyrus than he betook himself to flight, with the whole body of troops under his lead.

## 1.10

Then the head of Cyrus and his right hand were severed from the body. But the king and those about him pursued and fell upon the Cyreian camp, and the troops of Ariaeus no longer stood their ground, but fled through their own camp back to the halting-place of the night before— a distance of four parasangs, it was said. So the king and those with him fell to ravaging right and left, and amongst other spoil he captured the Phocaeen woman, who was a concubine of Cyrus, witty and beautiful, if fame speaks correctly. The Milesian, who was the younger, was also seized by some of the king's men; but, letting go her outer garment, she made good her escape to

*vocabulary*

**ἀθροίζω** press close together; (mid) muster  
**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back  
**ἀποκτείνω** kill  
**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon  
**ἄϛ** again, then again; next ~after  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**βουλεύω** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**γυμνός** naked, unarmed  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διελαύνω** drive through, over  
**διέχω** pass through  
**δίιστημι** stand apart ~stand  
**διώκω** chase  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντός** within  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐώνυμος** spindle tree

**καθίζω** to seat ~sit; also ἵζω, καθιζάνω  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὄπισθεν** behind, hereafter; also ὄπιθεν  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὀπόσος** as/how many/great  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters; also σταδίη  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**συντάσσω** gather, assemble  
**σώζω** save  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions

γυμνή πρὸς τῶν Ἑλλήνων οἱ ἔτυχον ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις ὄπλα  
 ἔχοντες καὶ ἀντιταχθέντες πολλοὺς μὲν τῶν ἀρπαζόντων ἀπέκτειναν,  
 οἱ δὲ καὶ αὐτῶν ἀπέθανον· οὐ μὴν ἔφυγόν γε, ἀλλὰ καὶ ταύτην  
 ἔσωσαν καὶ τᾶλλα, ὅποσα ἐντὸς αὐτῶν καὶ χρήματα καὶ ἄνθρωποι  
 ἐγένοντο, πάντα ἔσωσαν. ἐνταῦθα διέσχον ἀλλήλων βασιλεὺς τε καὶ  
 οἱ Ἕλληνες ὡς τριάκοντα στάδια, οἱ μὲν διώκοντες τοὺς καθ' αὐτούς  
 ὡς πάντας νικῶντες, οἱ δ' ἀρπάζοντες ὡς ἤδη πάντες νικῶντες. ἐπεὶ  
 δ' ἦσθοντο οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι ἐν τοῖς  
 σκευοφόροις εἶη, βασιλεὺς δ' αὖ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες  
 νικῶεν τὸ καθ' αὐτούς καὶ εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν οἴχονται διώκοντες, ἔνθα  
 δὴ βασιλεὺς μὲν ἀθροίζει τε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ καὶ συντάττεται, ὁ δὲ  
 Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο Πρόξενον καλέσας πλησιαιτάτος γὰρ ἦν, εἰ  
 πέμποιεν τινὰς ἢ πάντες ἴοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀρῆξοντες. ἐν  
 τούτῳ καὶ βασιλεὺς δῆλος ἦν προσιῶν πάλιν, ὡς ἐδόκει, ὅπισθεν. καὶ  
 οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες στραφέντες παρεσκευάζοντο ὡς ταύτη προσιόντος  
 καὶ δεξιόμενοι, ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ταύτη μὲν οὐκ ἦγεν, ἦ δὲ παρήλθεν  
 ἔξω τοῦ εὐωνύμου κέρατος ταύτη καὶ ἀπήγεν, ἀναλαβὼν καὶ τοὺς  
 ἐν τῇ μάχῃ πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας αὐτομολήσαντας καὶ Τισσαφέρην  
 καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ. ὁ γὰρ Τισσαφέρηνς ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ συνόδῳ  
 οὐκ ἔφυγεν, ἀλλὰ διήλασε παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας  
 πελταστάς· διελαύνων δὲ κατέκανε μὲν οὐδένα, διαστάντες δ' οἱ  
 Ἕλληνες ἔπαιον καὶ ἠκόντιζον αὐτούς· Ἐπισθένης δὲ Ἀμφιπολίτης



γυμνή πρὸς τῶν Ἑλλήνων οἱ ἔτυχον ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις ὄπλα  
 ἔχοντες καὶ ἀντιταχθέντες πολλοὺς μὲν τῶν |carry off, seize ἔκτειναν,  
 οἱ δὲ καὶ αὐτῶν ἀπέθανον· οὐ μὴν ἔφυγόν γε, ἀλλὰ καὶ ταύτην  
 ἔσωσαν καὶ τᾶλλα, |as/how many/great καὶ χρήματα καὶ ἀνθρωποι  
 ἐγένοντο, πάντα ἔσωσαν. ἐνταῦθα |pass through ἦν βασιλεὺς τε καὶ  
 οἱ Ἕλληνες ὡς τριάκοντα |στάδιον?: ,200 meters (pl also masc) ; or στάδιος?:  
 ὡς πάντας νικῶντες, οἱ δ' |carry off, seize ἦδη πάντες νικῶντες. ἐπεὶ  
 δ' ἦσθοντο οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι ἐν τοῖς  
 σκευοφόροις εἶη, βασιλεὺς δ' αὐτῶν ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες  
 νικῶντες τὸ καθ' αὐτοὺς καὶ εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν οἴχονται διώκοντες, ἔνθα  
 δὴ βασιλεὺς μὲν ἀθροίζει τε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ καὶ συντάττεται, ὁ δὲ  
 Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο Πρόξενον καλέσας πλησιαίτατος γὰρ ἦν, εἰ  
 πέμποιέν τινας ἢ πάντες ἴοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀρήξοντες. ἐν  
 τούτῳ καὶ βασιλεὺς δῆλος ἦν προσίων πάλιν, ὡς ἐδόκει, ὄπισθεν. καὶ  
 οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες στραφέντες παρεσκευάζοντο ὡς ταύτη προσιώντος  
 καὶ δεξόμενοι, ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ταύτη μὲν οὐκ ἦγεν, ἦ δὲ παρηλθεν  
 ἔξω τοῦ |spindle tree ,ιατος ταύτη καὶ ἀπῆγεν, ἀναλαβὼν καὶ τοὺς  
 ἐν τῇ μάχῃ πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας αὐτομολήσαντας καὶ Τισσαφέρην  
 καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ. ὁ γὰρ Τισσαφέρνης ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ συνόδῳ  
 οὐκ ἔφυγεν, ἀλλὰ |drive through, ταρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας  
 |light troops |drive over |stand apart δ' οἱ  
 Ἕλληνες ἐπα|over καὶ ἠκόντιζον αὐτούς· Ἐπισθένης δὲ Ἀμφιπολίτης

the Hellenes, who had been left among the camp followers on guard. These fell at once into line and put to the sword many of the pillagers, though they lost some men themselves; they stuck to the place and succeeded in saving not only that lady, but all else, whether chattels or human beings, which lay within their reach.

At this point the king and the Hellenes were something like three miles apart; the one set were pursuing their opponents just as if their conquest had been general; the others were pillaging as merrily as if their victory were already universal. But when the Hellenes learnt that the king and his troops were in the baggage camp; and the king, on his side, was informed by Tissaphernes that the Hellenes were victorious in their quarter of the field, and had gone forward in pursuit, the effect was instantaneous. The king massed his troops and formed into line. Clearchus summoned Proxenus, who was next him, and debated whether to send a detachment or to go in a body to the camp to save it.

Meanwhile the king was seen again advancing, as it seemed, from the rear; and the Hellenes, turning right about, prepared to receive his attack then and there. But instead of advancing upon them at that point, he drew off, following the line by which he had passed earlier in the day, outside the left wing of his opponent, and so picked up in his passage those who had deserted to the Hellenes during the battle, as also Tissaphernes and his division. The latter had not fled in the first shock of the encounter; he had charged parallel to the line of the Euphrates into the Greek peltasts, and through them. But charge as he might, he did not lay low a single man. On the contrary, the Hellenes made a gap to let them through, hacking them with their swords and hurling their j

*vocabulary***αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω***ἀθρόος** grouped**ἀναστρέφω** act: overturn; mid: find oneself in**ἀντίος** opposite, facing**ἀποχωρέω** go away from, retreat**ἄν** again, then again; next ~after**ἄθις** back, again, moreover ~after**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive**βάββαρος** non-Greek**βασιλεύω** be king**βουλεύω** to deliberate ~volunteer**δείδω** to fear ~Deimos**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await

~doctrine

**ἐγγύς** near**ἐκεῖ** there**ἐνταῦθα** thither**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel**εὐώνυμος** spindle tree**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also*ἵππιοχάρμης***καθίστημι** set down, land**κεῖμαι** lie**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn**κώμη** village**λείπω** leave something; depart~eclipse; also *λιπάω***μέχρι** as far as, until**ξύλον** piece of wood ~xylophone**ὄμοῦ** together**ὄπισθεν** behind, hereafter; also *ὄπιθεν***οὐκέτι** no more**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (*πούς*)**πορεύω** carry**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus**πρόθυμος** willing, eager**προίημι** send forth, abandon**προσάγω** bring to a place**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**σύνειμι** be with (+dat.)**συντάσσω** gather, assemble**τελέω** fulfill; pf pass: be feasible**τέλος** -ος (n, 3) end; military post**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle

~phalanx

**χρύσεος** golden**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)

~heir

ἦρχε τῶν πελταστῶν καὶ ἐλέγετο φρόνιμος γενέσθαι. ὁ δ' οὖν Τισσαφέρνης ὡς μείον ἔχων ἀπηλλάγη, πάλιν μὲν οὐκ ἀναστρέφει, εἰς δὲ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀφικόμενος τὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκεῖ συντυγχάνει βασιλεῖ, καὶ ὁμοῦ δὴ πάλιν συνταξάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον τῶν Ἑλλήνων κέρας, ἔδεισαν οἱ Ἕλληνες μὴ προσάγοιεν πρὸς τὸ κέρας καὶ περιπτύξαντες ἀμφοτέρωθεν αὐτοὺς κατακόψειαν· καὶ ἔδοκει αὐτοῖς ἀναπτύσσειν τὸ κέρας καὶ ποιήσασθαι ὄπισθεν τὸν ποταμόν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἐβουλεύοντο, καὶ δὴ βασιλεὺς παραμειψόμενος εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα κατέστησεν ἀντίαν τὴν φάλαγγα ὥσπερ τὸ πρῶτον μαχοῦμενος συνήει. ὡς δὲ εἶδον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐγγύς τε ὄντας καὶ παρατεταγμένους, αὐθις παιανίσαντες ἐπῆσαν πολὺ ἔτι προθυμότερον ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν. οἱ δ' αὖ βάρβαροι οὐκ ἔδέχοντο, ἀλλὰ ἐκ πλέονος ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν ἔφευγον· οἱ δ' ἐπεδίωκον μέχρι κώμης τινός· ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες· ὑπὲρ γὰρ τῆς κώμης γήλοφος ἦν, ἐφ' οὗ ἀνεστράφησαν οἱ ἀμφὶ βασιλέα, πεζοὶ μὲν οὐκέτι, τῶν δὲ ἰππέων ὁ λόφος ἐνεπλήσθη, ὥστε τὸ ποιούμενον μὴ γινώσκειν. καὶ τὸ βασίλειον σημεῖον ὁρᾶν ἔφασαν αἰετόν τινα χρυσοῦν ἐπὶ πέλτῃ ἐπὶ ξύλου ἀνατεταμένον.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἐνταῦθ' ἐχώρουν οἱ Ἕλληνες, λείπουσι δὴ καὶ τὸν λόφον οἱ ἰππεῖς· οὐ μὴν ἔτι ἀθρόοι ἀλλ' ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν· ἐφιλοῦτο δ' ὁ λόφος τῶν ἰππέων· τέλος δὲ καὶ πάντες ἀπεχώρησαν. ὁ οὖν Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἀνεβίβαζεν ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον, ἀλλ' ὑπ' αὐτὸν

ἦρχε τῶν |light troops καὶ ἐλέγετο φρόνιμος γενέσθαι. ὁ δ' οὖν  
 Τισσαφέρης ὡς |less, smaller ὡν ἀπηλλάγη, πάλιν μὲν οὐκ ἀναστρέφει,  
 εἰς δὲ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀφικόμενος τὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων |ἔξειμι?: go forth ; or ἐκεῖ?:  
 βασιλεῖ, καὶ ὁμοῦ δὴ πάλιν συνταξάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν  
 κατὰ τὸ |spindle tree ἔν τῶν Ἑλλήνων κέρας, ἔδρισαν οἱ Ἕλληνες μὴ  
 προσάγειν πρὸς τὸ κέρας καὶ περιπτύξαντες |from or on αὐτοὺς  
 κατακόψειαν· καὶ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς ἀναπτύσσειν τὸ κέρας καὶ ποιήσασθαι  
 ὀπισθεν τὸν ποταμόν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἐβουλεύοντο, καὶ δὴ βασιλεὺς  
 παραμειψάμενος εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα κατέστησεν ἀντίαν τὴν φάλαγγα  
 ὥσπερ τὸ πρῶτον μαχόμενος συνήει. ὡς δὲ εἶδον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐγγύς  
 τε ὄντας καὶ παρατεταγμένους, αὐθις παιανίσαντες ἐπῆσαν πολλὴ ἔτι  
 προθυμότερον ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν. οἱ δ' αὖ βάρβαροι οὐκ ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλὰ  
 ἐκ πλέονος ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν ἔφευγον· οἱ δ' ἐπεδίωκον μέχρι |village ἑνός·  
 ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες· ὑπὲρ γὰρ τῆς |village |hill, ἦν, ἐφ'  
 οὐ ἀνεστράφησαν οἱ ἀμφὶ βασιλέα, πεζοὶ μὲν οὐκέτι, τῶν δὲ ἵππέων  
 ὁ |neck, crest on ἄ a ὥστε τὸ ποιούμενον μὴ γινώσκειν. καὶ τὸ  
 |helmet, hilltop  
 |kingly σημεῖον ὄραν ἔφασαν |eagle τινα χρυσοῦν ἐπὶ πέλτῃ ἐπὶ  
 ξύλου ἀνατεταμένον.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἐνταῦθ' ἐχώρουν οἱ Ἕλληνες, λείπουσι δὴ καὶ τὸν  
 |neck, crest on ἄ a οὐ μὴν ἔτι ἀθρόοι ἀλλ' ἄλλοι |from elsewhere ἑ ὁ  
 |helmet, hilltop  
 δ' ὁ |neck, crest on ἄ a ἔλος δὲ καὶ πάντες ἀπεχώρησαν. ὁ  
 οὖν Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἀνεβίβαζεν ἐπὶ τὸν |neck, crest on ἄ a αὐτὸν  
 |helmet, hilltop

avelins as they passed. Episthenes of Amphipolis was in command of the peltasts, and he showed himself a sensible man, it was said. Thus it was that Tissaphernes, having got through haphazard, with rather the worst of it, failed to wheel round and return the way he came, but reaching the camp of the Hellenes, there fell in with the king; and falling into order again, the two divisions advanced side by side.

When they were parallel with the (original) left wing of the Hellenes, fear seized the latter lest they might take them in flank and enfold them on both sides and cut them down. In this apprehension they determined to extend their line and place the river on their rear. But while they deliberated, the king passed by and ranged his troops in line to meet them, in exactly the same position in which he had advanced to offer battle at the commencement of the engagement. The Hellenes, now seeing them in close proximity and in battle order, once again raised the paean and began the attack with still greater enthusiasm than before: and once again the barbarians did not wait to receive them, but took to flight, even at a greater distance than before. The Hellenes pressed the pursuit until they reached a certain village, where they halted, for above the village rose a mound, on which the king and his party rallied and reformed; they had no infantry any longer, but the crest was crowded with cavalry, so that it was impossible to discover what was happening. They did see, they said, the royal standard, a kind of golden eagle, with wings extended, perched on a bar of wood and raised upon a lance.

But as soon as the Hellenes again moved onwards, the hostile cavalry at once left the hillock— not in a body any longer, but in fragments— some streaming from one side,

*vocabulary*

**αἰδέομαι** respect, be ashamed  
**ἄλευρον** flour  
**ἄμαξα** wagon  
**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
**ἀφήκω**  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**διαγίγνομαι** go through, pass  
**διαρπάζω** make prey of  
**διώκω** chase  
**δυσάω** afflict  
**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω,  
**ἐξαποδύνω**  
**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also  
**ἐλαστρέω**  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἥλιος** sun; also ἡέλιος  
**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**θαυμάζω** marvel ~theater; also  
**ἀποθαυμάζω**  
**θνήσκω** die ~euthanasia; also

**ἀποθνήσκω**  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake  
**καταλύω** unyoke; destroy  
**κράτος** -εος (n, 3) strength, power;  
 victory ~democracy; also **κάρτος**  
**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop  
**μεστός** full  
**οἶνος** wine ~wine  
**οἰνόω** (m, 3) make drunk  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also **ὀδός**  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**ποτός** potable  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**σκηνή** tent, booth  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**σχεδόν** near, approximately at  
 ~ischemia  
**τελέω** fulfill; pf pass: be feasible  
**τέλος** -υς (n, 3) end; military post  
**τετρακόσιοι** 400  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**ὑπέειπον** say as preface, premise  
**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions

στήσας τὸ στράτευμα πέμπει Λύκιον τὸν Συρακόσιον καὶ ἄλλον ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον καὶ κελεύει κατιδόντας τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ λόφου τί ἐστὶν ἀπαγγεῖλαι. καὶ ὁ Λύκιος ἤλασέ τε καὶ ἰδὼν ἀπαγγέλλει ὅτι φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος. σχεδὸν δ' ὅτε ταῦτα ἦν καὶ ἥλιος ἔδυετο.

Ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστησαν οἱ Ἕλληες καὶ θέμενοι τὰ ὄπλα ἀνεπαύοντο· καὶ ἅμα μὲν ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι οὐδαμοῦ Κῦρος φαίνοιτο οὐδ' ἄλλος ἀπ' αὐτοῦ οὐδεὶς παρήει· οὐ γὰρ ἤδεσαν αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα, ἀλλ' εἵκαζον ἢ διώκοντα οἴχεσθαι ἢ καταληψόμενόν τι προελληλακέναι· καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐβουλεύοντο εἰ αὐτοῦ μείναντες τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐνταῦθα ἄγοιντο ἢ ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἀμφὶ δορπηστὸν ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς.

Ταύτης μὲν τῆς ἡμέρας τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο. καταλαμβάνουσι δὲ τῶν τε ἄλλων χρημάτων τὰ πλείστα διηρπασμένα καὶ εἴ τι σιτίον ἢ ποτὸν ἦν, καὶ τὰς ἀμάξας μεστὰς ἀλεύρων καὶ οἴνου, ἃς παρεσκευάσατο Κῦρος, ἵνα εἴ ποτε σφόδρα τὸ στράτευμα λάβῃ ἐνδεια, διαδιδοίῃ τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἦσαν δ' αὐταὶ τετρακόσiai, ὡς ἐλέγοντο, ἅμαξαι, καὶ ταύτας τότε οἱ σὺν βασιλεῖ διήρπασαν. ὥστε ἄδειπνοι ἦσαν οἱ πλείστοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων· ἦσαν δὲ καὶ ἀνάριστοι· πρὶν γὰρ δὴ καταλῦσαι τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς ἄριστον βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη. ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν νύκτα οὕτω διεγέροντο.



στήσας τὸ στράτευμα πέμπει Λύκιον τὸν Συρακόσιον καὶ ἄλλον

ἐπὶ τὸν |neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop κατιδόντας τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ |neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop

ἀπαγγέλλαι. καὶ ὁ Λύκιος ἤλασέ τε καὶ ἰδὼν ἀπαγγέλλει ὅτι φεύγουσιν

ἀνὰ κράτος. σχεδὸν δ' ὅτε ταῦτα ἦν καὶ ἦλιος |δυσάω?: afflict ; or δύω?: enter, put on, strip off

Ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ θέμενοι τὰ ὄπλα |cause to cease

καὶ ἅμα μὲν ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι οὐδαμοῦ Κῦρος φαίνοιτο οὐδ' ἄλλος ἀπ'

αὐτοῦ οὐδεὶς παρήει· οὐ γὰρ ἤδεσαν αὐτὸν |die . ἀλλ' εἵκαζον

ἢ διώκοντα οἴχεσθαι ἢ καταληψόμενον τι προεληλακέναι· καὶ αὐτοὶ

ἐβουλεύοντο εἰ αὐτοῦ μείναντες τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐνταῦθα ἄγουντο ἢ

ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται

ἀμφὶ δορπηστὸν ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς.

Ταύτης μὲν τῆς ἡμέρας τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο. καταλαμβάνουσι

δὲ τῶν τε ἄλλων χρημάτων τὰ πλείστα διηρπασμένα καὶ εἴ τι

σιτίον ἢ |potable, ʹ, καὶ τὰς ἀμάξας |full |flour καὶ οἴνου, ἃς

παρεσκευάσατο Κῦρος, ἵνα εἴ ποτε σφόδρα τὸ στράτευμα λάβοι

ἔνδεια, διαδιδούη τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἦσαν δ' αὐταὶ |400 . ὡς

ἐλέγοντο, |wagon . καὶ ταύτας τότε οἱ σὺν βασιλεῖ |make prey of

ὥστε ἄδειπνοι ἦσαν οἱ πλείστοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων· ἦσαν δὲ καὶ

ἀνάριστοι· πρὶν γὰρ δὴ καταλῦσαι τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς ἄριστον

βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη. ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν νύκτα οὕτω |go through, pass

some from another; and the crest was gradually stripped of its occupants, till at last the company was gone. Accordingly, Clearchus did not ascend the crest, but posting his army at its base, he sent Lycius of Syracuse and another to the summit, with orders to inspect the condition of things on the other side, and to report results. Lycius galloped up and investigated, bringing back news that they were fleeing might and main. Almost at that instant the sun sank beneath the horizon. There the Hellenes halted; they grounded arms and rested, marvelling the while that Cyrus was not anywhere to be seen, and that no messenger had come from him. For they were in complete ignorance of his death, and conjectured that either he had gone off in pursuit, or had pushed forward to occupy some point. Left to themselves, they now deliberated, whether they should stay where they were and have the baggage train brought up, or should return to camp. They resolved to return, and about supper time reached the tents. Such was the conclusion of this day.

They found the larger portion of their property pillaged, eatables and drinkables alike, not excepting the wagons laden with corn and wine, which Cyrus had prepared in case of some extreme need overtaking the expedition, to divide among the Hellenes. There were four hundred of these wagons, it was said, and these had now been ransacked by the king and his men; so that the greater number of the Hellenes went supperless, having already gone without their breakfasts, since the king had appeared before the usual halt for breakfast. Accordingly, in no better plight than this they passed the night.

*vocabulary*

**ἀθροίζω** press close together; (mid) muster  
**ἄλθομαι** become whole, sound  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἀνέχω** raise; mid: endure, submit  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also ἀφήκω  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βαρύς** heavy ~baritone  
**ἐνθάδε** here, hither  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ζέω** boil ~eczema  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἥλιος** sun; also ἡέλιος  
**ἦμερος** domesticated  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θαυμάζω** marvel ~theater; also ἀποθαυμάζω  
**θνήσκω** die ~euthanasia; also

**ἀποθνήσκω**  
**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down, have sex  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**ὄθεν** whence  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι, οἴομαι  
**ὀράω** set in motion, rush at ~hormone  
**ὀρμέω** be anchored  
**ὀρμή** pressure, assault, order  
**ὀφείλω** owe, should, if only  
**πορεύω** carry  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**πυνθάνομαι** learn, inquire, (+gen) hear of ~buddha; also πεύθομαι  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign  
**τελευτάω** bring about, finish  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ώφελέω** help, be useful

## 2

## 2.1

Ὡς μὲν οὖν ἠθροίσθη Κύρω τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ὅτε ἐπὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν Ἄρταξέρξην ἐστρατεύετο, καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ ἀνόδῳ ἐπράχθη καὶ ὡς ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο καὶ ὡς Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησε καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐλθόντες οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐκοιμήθησαν οἰόμενοι τὰ πάντα νικᾶν καὶ Κῦρον ζῆν, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.

Ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συνελθόντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι Κῦρος οὔτε ἄλλον πέμπει σημαίνοντα ὅτι χρῆ ποιεῖν οὔτε αὐτὸς φαίνοιτο. ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς συσκευασαμένοις ἃ εἶχον καὶ ἐξοπλισαμένοις προϊέναι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν, ἕως Κύρω συμμείξειαν. ἤδη δὲ ἐν ὁρμῇ ὄντων ἄμα ἠλιῷ ἀνέχοντι ἦλθε Προκλήης ὁ Τευθρανίας ἄρχων, γεγωνὼς ἀπὸ Δαμαράτου τοῦ Λάκωνος, καὶ Γλοῦς ὁ Ταμῶ. οὗτοι ἔλεγον ὅτι Κῦρος μὲν τέθνηκεν, Ἀριαῖος δὲ πεφευγὼς ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ εἶη μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων βαρβάρων ὅθεν τῇ προτεραία ὠρμῶντο, καὶ λέγει ὅτι ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν περιμένειεν αὐτούς, εἰ μέλλοιεν ἤκειν, τῇ δὲ ἄλλῃ ἀπιέναι φαίη ἐπὶ Ἰωνίας, ὅθενπερ ἦλθε. ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες πυνθανόμενοι βαρέως ἔφερον. Κλέαρχος δὲ τάδε εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' ὄφελε μὲν Κῦρος ζῆν· ἐπεὶ δὲ τετελεύτηκεν, ἀπαγγέλλετε Ἀριαίῳ ὅτι ἡμεῖς νικῶμέν τε βασιλέα καί, ὡς ὀράτε,

οὐδείς ἔτι ἡμῖν μάχεται, καί, εἰ μὴ ὑμεῖς ἦλθετε, ἐπορευόμεθα ἂν ἐπὶ βασιλέα. ἐπαγγελόμεθα δὲ Ἀριαίῳ, ἐὰν ἐνθάδε ἔλθῃ, εἰς τὸν

## 2

## 2.1

Ὡς μὲν οὖν ἠθροίσθη Κύρω τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ὅτε ἐπὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν Ἄρταξέρξην ἐστρατεύετο, καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ ἀνόδῳ ἐπράχθη καὶ ὡς ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο καὶ ὡς Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησε καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐλθόντες οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐκοιμήθησαν οἰόμενοι τὰ πάντα νικᾶν καὶ Κῦρον ζῆν, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.

Ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συνελθόντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι Κῦρος οὔτε ἄλλον πέμπει σηματοῦντα ὅτι χρὴ ποιεῖν οὔτε αὐτὸς φαίνοιο. ἔδοξε οὖν αὐτοῖς συσκευασαμένοις ἃ εἶχον καὶ ἐξοπλισαμένοις προϊέναι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν, ἕως Κύρω συμμείξειαν. ἤδη δὲ ἐν ὄρμῃ ὄντων ἄμα ἠλίῳ ἀνέχοντι Προκλήῃς ὁ Τευθρανίας ἄρχων, γεγονὼς ἀπὸ Δαμαράτου τοῦ Λάκωνος, καὶ Γλοῦς ὁ Ταμῶ. οὗτοι ἔλεγον ὅτι Κῦρος μὲν , Ἀριαῖος δὲ πεφευγὼς ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ εἶη μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων βαρβάρων ὅθεν τῇ προτεραία ὠρμῶντο, καὶ λέγει ὅτι ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν περιμένειεν αὐτούς, εἰ μέλλοιεν ἤκειν, τῇ δὲ ἄλλῃ ἀπιέναι φαίη ἐπὶ Ἰωνίας, ὅθενπερ . ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες πυνθανόμενοι βαρέως ἔφερον. Κλέαρχος δὲ τάδε εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' ὠφέλε μὲν Κῦρος ζῆν· ἐπεὶ δὲ τετελεύτηκεν, ἀπαγγέλλετε Ἀριαίῳ ὅτι ἡμεῖς νικῶμέν τε βασιλέα καί, ὡς ὀράτε,

οὐδείς ἔτι ἡμῖν μάχεται, καί, εἰ μὴ ὑμεῖς | ἄλθομαι?: , become whole ; or  
 ἐπὶ βασιλείᾳ. ἐπαγγελόμεθα δὲ Ἀριαίῳ, εἰάν ἐνθάδε ἔλθῃ, εἰς τὸν | ἔρχομαι?: go, come

| ἄλθομαι?: become whole  
 ; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come

| die

| ἄλθομαι?: become whole  
 ; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come

## 2

### 2.1

With the break of day the generals met, and were surprised that Cyrus should not have appeared himself, or at any rate have sent some one to tell them what to do. Accordingly, they resolved to put what they had together, to get under arms, and to push forward until they effected junction with Cyrus. Just as they were on the point of starting, with the rising sun came Procles the ruler of Teuthrania. He was a descendant of Damaratus the Laconian, and with him also came Glus the son of Tamos. These two told them, first, that Cyrus was dead; next, that Ariaeus had retreated with the rest of the barbarians to the halting-place whence they had started at dawn on the previous day; and wished to inform them that, if they were minded to come, he would wait for this one day, but on the morrow he should return home again to Ionia, whence he came.

When they heard these tidings, the generals were sorely distressed; so too were the rest of the Hellenes when they were informed of it. Then Clearchus spoke as follows: "Would that Cyrus were yet alive! But since he is dead, take back this answer to Ariaeus, that we, at any rate, have conquered the king; and, as you yourselves may see, there is not a man left in the field to meet us. Indeed, had you not arrived, we should ere this have begun our march upon the king. Now, we can promise to Ariaeus that, if he will join us here, we will place him on the king's throne. Surely to those who conquer empire pertains." With these words he sent back the messengers and with them he sent Cheirisophus the Laconian, and Menon the Thessalian. That was what Menon himself wished, being, as he was, a friend and intimate of Ariaeus, and bound by mutual ties of hospitality.



*vocabulary*

ἄγγελος (m/f) messenger ~angel  
 ἀγορά assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
 ἄμαξα wagon  
 ἀποκτείνω kill  
 ἄρχων -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
 ἀσπίς -δος (f) shield ~spit  
 βάβαρος non-Greek  
 βαρύς heavy ~baritone  
 βασιλείος kingly  
 βασιλεύω be king  
 βοῦς βοός (m/f) cow, ox; shield  
 ~bovine  
 δύνω enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω, ἐξαποδύνω  
 ἐάω let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about  
 ἐκβάλλω throw out, fell, let fall  
 ἐπιστήμων skillful, clever  
 ἔπομαι follow, support, chase ~sequel  
 ἐρῆμος empty  
 ἥμερος domesticated  
 ἠώς ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
 θρόνος seat, chair, throne ~throne  
 θύρα door ~door  
 κῆρυξ -κος (m) henchman, functionary  
 κόπτω beat, cut, strike

κρέας (n, 3) meat ~creatine  
 μικρός small; also σμικρός  
 νικάω win, defeat ~Nike  
 νίκη victory ~Nike  
 ξένος guest-friend, host, stranger  
 ~xenophobe  
 ξύλον piece of wood ~xylophone  
 οἴχομαι come, go, leave, be gone  
 ὅμως anyway, nevertheless  
 ὄνος donkey ~onager  
 ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 πλήθω be filled ~plenum  
 πρόειμι to have been before, earlier  
 προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender, come in  
 προσποιέω give over to  
 σίτος (m/n) grain, bread, food  
 ~parasite  
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army  
 τάξις -εως (f) arrangement  
 τάσσω arrange  
 τοσοῦτος so much  
 τυγχάνω meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also ἐντυγχάνω  
 φάλαγξ -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
 φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics

θρόνον τὸν βασιλείου καθιεῖν αὐτόν· τῶν γὰρ μάχην νικῶντων καὶ τὸ  
 ἄρχειν ἐστί. ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἀποστέλλει τοὺς ἀγγέλους καὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς  
 Χειρίσοφον τὸν Λάκωνα καὶ Μένωνα τὸν Θετταλόν· καὶ γὰρ αὐτὸς  
 Μένων ἐβούλετο· ἦν γὰρ φίλος καὶ ξένος Ἀρραίου. οἱ μὲν ᾤχοντο,  
 Κλέαρχος δὲ περιέμενε· τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ἐπορίζετο σῖτον, ὅπως  
 ἐδύνατο, ἐκ τῶν ὑποζυγίων κόπτοντες τοὺς βοῦς καὶ ὄνους· ξύλοις  
 δὲ ἐχρῶντο μικρὸν προϊόντες ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, οὗ ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο,  
 τοῖς τε οἰστοῖς πολλοῖς οὔσιν, οὓς ἠνάγκαζον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐκβάλλειν  
 τοὺς αὐτομολοῦντας παρὰ βασιλέως, καὶ τοῖς γέρροις καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι  
 ταῖς ξυλίαις ταῖς Αἰγυπτίαις· πολλαὶ δὲ καὶ πέλται καὶ ἄμαξαι ἦσαν  
 φέρεσθαι ἔρημοι· οἷς πᾶσι χρώμενοι κρέα ἐψοντες ἤσθιον ἐκείνην  
 τὴν ἡμέραν. καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν περὶ πλήθουσαν ἀγορὰν καὶ ἔρχονται  
 παρὰ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους κήρυκες οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι βάρβαροι,  
 ἦν δ' αὐτῶν Φαλῖνος εἰς Ἕλληνα, ὃς ἐτύγχανε παρὰ Τισσαφέρνει ὦν  
 καὶ ἐντίμως ἔχων· καὶ γὰρ προσεποιεῖτο ἐπιστήμων εἶναι τῶν ἀμφὶ  
 τάξεις τε καὶ ὄπλομαχίαν. οὗτοι δὲ προσελθόντες καὶ καλέσαντες  
 τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἄρχοντας λέγουσιν ὅτι βασιλεὺς κελεύει τοὺς  
 Ἕλληνας, ἐπεὶ νικῶν τυγχάνει καὶ Κῦρον ἀπέκτονε, παραδόντας  
 τὰ ὄπλα ἰόντας ἐπὶ βασιλέως θύρας εὐρίσκεσθαι ἂν τι δύνωνται  
 ἀγαθόν. ταῦτα μὲν εἶπον οἱ βασιλέως κήρυκες· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες  
 βαρέως μὲν ἤκουσαν, ὅμως δὲ Κλέαρχος τοσοῦτον εἶπεν, ὅτι οὐ τῶν  
 νικῶντων εἶη τὰ ὄπλα παραδιδόναι· ἀλλ', ἔφη, ὑμεῖς μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες

θρόνον τὸν **|kingly** καθιεῖν αὐτόν· τῶν γὰρ μάχην νικῶντων καὶ τὸ  
 ἄρχειν ἐστί. ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἀποστέλλει τοὺς ἀγγέλους καὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς  
 Χειρίσοφον τὸν Λάκωνα καὶ Μένωνα τὸν Θετταλόν· καὶ γὰρ αὐτὸς  
 Μένων ἐβούλετο· ἦν γὰρ φίλος καὶ ξένος Ἀριαίου. οἱ μὲν ὄχοντο,  
 Κλέαρχος δὲ περιέμενε· τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ἐπορίζετο σῖτον, ὅπως  
**|enter, put on,|beast** ὄξους καὶ **|donkey** ἵλοις  
**|strip off** **|burden**  
 δὲ ἐχρῶντο μικρὸν **|to have been** ἤσ φάλαγγος, οὐδ' ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο,  
**|before, earlier**  
 τοῖς τε οἰστοῖς πολλοῖς οὖσιν, οὓς ἠνάγκαζον οἱ Ἕλληες ἐκβάλλειν  
 τοὺς αὐτομολοῦντας παρὰ βασιλέως, καὶ τοῖς γέροισι καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι  
 ταῖς ξυλίταις ταῖς Αἰγυπτίαις· πολλαὶ δὲ καὶ πέλται καὶ **|wagon** ἦσαν  
 φέρεσθαι ἔρημοι· οἷς πᾶσι χρώμενοι κρέα **|boil, be boiling** ἐκείνην  
 τὴν ἡμέραν. καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν περὶ **|be filled** ἀγορὰν καὶ ἔρχονται  
 παρὰ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους κήρυκες οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι βάρβαροι,  
 ἦν δ' αὐτῶν Φαλίνος εἷς Ἕλληγ, ὃς ἐτύγχανε παρὰ Τισσαφέρνει ὄν  
 καὶ ἐντίμως ἔχων· καὶ γὰρ **|give over to** **|skillful,** εἶναι τῶν ἀμφὶ  
**|clever**  
 τάξεις τε καὶ ὀπλομαχίαν. οὗτοι δὲ προσελθόντες καὶ καλέσαντες  
 τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἄρχοντας λέγουσιν ὅτι βασιλεὺς κελεύει τοὺς  
 Ἕλληνας, ἐπεὶ νικῶν τυγχάνει καὶ Κύρον ἀπέκτονε, παραδόντας  
 τὰ ὄπλα ἰόντας ἐπὶ βασιλέως θύρας εὐρίσκεσθαι ἂν τι δύνωνται  
 ἀγαθόν. ταῦτα μὲν εἶπον οἱ βασιλέως κήρυκες· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληες  
 βαρέως μὲν ἤκουσαν, ὅμως δὲ Κλέαρχος τοσοῦτον εἶπεν, ὅτι οὐ τῶν  
 νικῶντων εἶη τὰ ὄπλα παραδιδόναι· ἀλλ', ἔφη, ὑμεῖς μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες

So these set off, and Clearchus waited for them.

The soldiers furnished themselves with food (and drink) as best they might— falling back on the baggage animals, and cutting up oxen and asses. There was no lack of firewood; they need only step forward a few paces from the line where the battle was fought, and they would find arrows to hand in abundance, which the Hellenes had forced the deserters from the king to throw away. There were arrows and wicker shields also, and the huge wooden shields of the Egyptians. There were many targets also, and empty wagons left to be carried off. Here was a store which they were not slow to make use of to cook their meat and serve their meals that day.

It was now about full market hour when heralds from the king and Tissaphernes arrived. These were barbarians with one exception. This was a certain Phalinus, a Hellene who lived at the court of Tissaphernes, and was held in high esteem. He gave himself out to be a connoisseur of tactics and the art of fighting with heavy arms. These were the men who now came up, and having summoned the generals of the Hellenes, they delivered themselves of the following message: “The great king having won the victory and slain Cyrus, bids the Hellenes to surrender their arms; to betake themselves to the gates of the king’s palace, and there obtain for themselves what terms they can.” That was what the heralds said, and the Hellenes listened with heavy hearts; but Clearchus spoke, and his words were few; “Conquerors do not, as a rule, give up their arms”; then turning to the others he added, “I leave it to you, my fellow-generals, to make the best and noblest answer, that ye may, to these gentlemen. I will rejoin you presently.” At the moment an official had summoned him to come and look at the entrails which had been taken out, for, as it chanced, he was engaged in sacrificing. As soon as he was gone, Clearchus the

*vocabulary***αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology**ἀκέομαι** heal, fix**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured**ἀνθέω** sprout**ἀποκρίνω** (*i*) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself**ἀποκτείνω** kill**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence**αὐτίκα** at once**ἀχάριστος** ungracious, unpleasant**βασιλεύω** be king**γελάω** laugh, smile, laugh at**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos**δῶρον** gift ~donate**ἐντός** within**ἔοικα** seem, seem likely, beseem ~icon**ἦκω** to have come**θαυμάζω** marvel ~theater; also**ἀποθαυμάζω****θύω** rush; sacrifice**ἱερή** holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph; also**ἱερόν, ἱερός, ἱρός****κράς** -τός (f, 3) head**κράτος** -εος (n, 3) strength, power; victory ~democracy; also **κάρτος****μέντοι** however**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike**νομίζω** consider customary**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι, οἶομαι**οἶος** (3) only, single**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also **ὁδός****παρέχω** furnish**περιγίγνομαι** surpass**πλήθος** -υς (3) numerical superiority**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus**πότερος** which, whichever of two**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**στερέω** steal, take**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary**σῶμα** -τος (n, 3) corpse ~somatic**τίη** strengthened form of τί**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also**ἐντυγχάνω****ὕμετερος** yours**φιλία** friendship**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics**χαρίζομαι** gratify someone ~charisma**χώρα** place

στρατηγού, τούτοις ἀποκρίνασθε ὅ τι κάλλιστόν τε καὶ ἄριστον ἔχετε· ἐγὼ δὲ αὐτίκα ἤξω. ἐκάλεσε γάρ τις αὐτὸν τῶν ὑπηρετῶν, ὅπως ἴδοι τὰ ἱερά ἐξηρημένα· ἔτυχε γὰρ θυόμενος. ἔνθα δὴ ἀπεκρίνατο Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ἄρκας, πρεσβύτατος ὢν, ὅτι πρόσθεν ἂν ἀποθάνοιεν ἢ τὰ ὄπλα παραδοίησαν· Πρόξενος δὲ ὁ Θηβαῖος, Ἄλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη, ὦ Φαλίνε, θαυμάζω πότερα ὡς κρατῶν βασιλεὺς αἰτεῖ τὰ ὄπλα ἢ ὡς διὰ φιλίαν δῶρα. εἰ μὲν γὰρ ὡς κρατῶν, τί δεῖ αὐτὸν αἰτεῖν καὶ οὐ λαβεῖν ἐλθόντα; εἰ δὲ πείσας βούλεται λαβεῖν, λεγέτω τί ἔσται τοῖς στρατιώταις, ἐὰν αὐτῷ ταῦτα χαρίσωνται. πρὸς ταῦτα Φαλίνος εἶπε· Βασιλεὺς νικᾶν ἡγείται, ἐπεὶ Κῦρον ἀπέκτεινε. τίς γὰρ αὐτῷ ἔστιν ὅστις τῆς ἀρχῆς ἀντιποιεῖται; νομίζει δὲ καὶ ὑμᾶς ἑαυτοῦ εἶναι, ἔχων ἐν μέσῃ τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ καὶ ποταμῶν ἐντὸς ἀδιαβάτων καὶ πλήθος ἀνθρώπων ἐφ' ὑμᾶς δυνάμενος ἀγαγεῖν, ὅσον οὐδ' εἰ παρέχοι ὑμῖν δύναισθε ἂν ἀποκτεῖναι. μετὰ τοῦτον Θεόπομπος Ἀθηναῖος εἶπεν· ὦ Φαλίνε, νῦν, ὡς σὺ ὀρᾷς, ἡμῖν οὐδὲν ἔστιν ἀγαθὸν ἄλλο εἰ μὴ ὄπλα καὶ ἀρετή. ὄπλα μὲν οὖν ἔχοντες οἰόμεθα ἂν καὶ τῇ ἀρετῇ χρῆσθαι, παραδόντες δ' ἂν ταῦτα καὶ τῶν σωμάτων στερηθῆναι. μὴ οἶν οἶου τὰ μόνα ἀγαθὰ ἡμῖν ὄντα ὑμῖν παραδώσειν, ἀλλὰ σὺν τούτοις καὶ περὶ τῶν ὑμετέρων ἀγαθῶν μαχοῦμεθα. ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Φαλίνος ἐγέλασε καὶ εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ φιλοσόφω μὲν ἔοικας, ὦ νεανίσκε, καὶ λέγεις οὐκ ἀχάριστα· ἴσθι μέντοι ἀνόητος ὢν, εἰ οἶε τὴν ὑμετέραν ἀρετὴν περιγενέσθαι ἂν τῆς βασιλέως δυνάμεως.

στρατηγοί, τούτοις ἀποκρίνασθε ὅ τι κάλλιστόν τε καὶ ἄριστον ἔχετε· ἐγὼ δὲ αὐτίκα ἤξω. ἐκάλεσε γάρ τις αὐτὸν τῶν ὑπηρετῶν, ὅπως ἴδοι τὰ ἱερὰ ἐξηρημένα· ἔτυχε γὰρ θυόμενος. ἔνθα δὴ ἀπεκρίνατο Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ἄρκας, πρεσβύτατος ὢν, ὅτι πρόσθεν ἂν ἀποθάνοιεν ἢ τὰ ὄπλα παραδοίησαν· Πρόξενος δὲ ὁ Θηβαῖος, Ἄλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη, ὦ Φαλίνε, θαυμάζω |which, |κράς?: head ; or κράτος?: ἴπλα ἢ ὡς |whichever |strength, power; victory διὰ |friendship ι. εἰ μὲν γὰρ ὡς |κράς?: head ; or κράτος?: καὶ οὐ |strength, power; victory λαβεῖν ἐλθόντα; εἰ δὲ |πεισα?: obedience, subjection ; or πάσχω?: suffer ; or |πειθω?: persuade στρατιώταις, ἐὰν αὐτῶ ταῦτα χαρίσωνται. πρὸς ταῦτα Φαλίνος εἶπε· Βασιλεὺς νικᾶν ἠγείται, ἐπεὶ Κῦρον ἀπέκτεινε. τίς γὰρ αὐτῶ ἔστιν ὅστις τῆς ἀρχῆς ἀντιποιεῖται; νομίζει δὲ καὶ ὑμᾶς ἑαυτοῦ εἶναι, ἔχων ἐν μέσῃ τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρα καὶ ποταμῶν ἐντὸς ἀδιαβάτων καὶ πληθὸς ἀνθρώπων ἐφ' ὑμᾶς δυνάμενος ἀγαγεῖν, ὅσον οὐδ' εἰ παρέχοι ὑμῖν |enter, put ὄν, ὁποκτεῖναι. μετὰ τοῦτον Θεόπομπος Ἀθηναῖος εἶπεν· |strip off |type of fruit ἴν, ὡς σὺ ὀρέῃς, ἡμῖν οὐδὲν ἔστιν ἀγαθὸν ἄλλο εἰ μὴ ὄπλα καὶ ἀρετή. ὄπλα μὲν οὖν ἔχοντες οἰόμεθα ἂν καὶ τῇ ἀρετῇ χρῆσθαι, παραδόντες δ' ἂν ταῦτα καὶ τῶν σωματῶν |steal, take μὴ οὖν οἴου τὰ μόνα ἀγαθὰ ἡμῖν ὄντα ὑμῖν παραδώσειν, ἀλλὰ σὺν τούτοις καὶ περὶ τῶν ὑμετέρων ἀγαθῶν μαχοῦμεθα. |ἀκέομαι?: ἰ heal, fix ; or |ἀκούω?: hear, listen ταῦτα ὁ Φαλίνος ἐγέλασε καὶ εἶπεν· Ἄλλὰ φιλοσόφω μὲν ἔοικας, ὦ νεανίσκε, καὶ λέγεις οὐκ |ungracious, |unpleasant ἴθι μέντοι ἀνόητος ὢν, εἰ |οῖς?: ἰsheep ; or οἴομαι?:|surpass ἂν τῆς βασιλείως δυνάμεως. |suppose

Arcadian, by right of seniority, answered: "They would sooner die than give up their arms." Then Proxenus the Theban said: "For my part, I marvel if the king demands our arms as our master, or for the sake of friendship merely, as presents. If as our master, why need he ask for them rather than come and take them? But if he would fain wheedle us out of them by fine speeches, he should tell us what the soldiers will receive in turn for such kindness." In answer to him Phalinus said: "The king claims to have conquered, because he has put Cyrus to death; and who is there now to claim the kingdom as against himself? He further flatters himself that you also are in his power, since he holds you in the heart of his country, hemmed in by impassable rivers; and he can at any moment bring against you a multitude so vast that even if leave were given to rise and slay you could not kill them." After him Theopompus the Athenian spoke. "Phalinus," he said, "at this instant, as you yourself can see, we have nothing left but our arms and our valour. If we keep the former we imagine we can make use of the latter; but if we deliver up our arms we shall presently be robbed of our lives. Do not suppose then that we are going to give up to you the only good things which we possess. We prefer to keep them; and by their help we will do battle with you for the good things which are yours." Phalinus laughed when he heard those words, and said: "Spoken like a philosopher, my fine young man, and very pretty reasoning too; yet, let me tell you, your wits are somewhat scattered if you imagine that your valour will get the better of the king's power." There were one or two others, it was said, who with a touch of weakness in their tone or argument, made answer: "They had proved good and trusty friends to Cyrus, and the king might find them no less valuable. If he liked to be friends with them, he



*vocabulary*

**ἀέκων** unwilling  
**ἄκων** (3) javelin ~acme  
**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἀναλέγω** gather up  
**ἄξιος** worthy ~axiom  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**δόξα** what one expects ~doxology  
**δυνατός** powerful, possible  
**ἔαρ** -ος (n) spring (season)  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**εἴτε** if, whenever  
**ἐλπίς** -δος (f) hope ~voluptuary  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θεά** (2) goddess ~theology  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**μιαίνω** stain ~miasma  
**μυρίος** immense, myriad ~myriad

**οἰδέω** swell  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οὔμαι,  
 οἶομαι  
**ὅπη** wherever, however  
**ὄπη** wherever, however  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**πιστός** faithful (πείθω)  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also  
 πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**πολεμόω** make an enemy of  
**πράγμα** -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing,  
 affair  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
 campaign  
**συμβουλεύω** give advice; (mid) consult  
**σώζω** save  
**τιμή** honor, value  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**ὑπάγω** lead  
**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's  
 support, seize; speak up  
**ὑποστρέφω** turn around, go back

ἄλλους δέ τινες ἔφασαν λέγειν ὑπομαλακίζομένους, ὡς καὶ Κύρω  
 πιστοὶ ἐγένοντο καὶ βασιλεῖ ἂν πολλοῦ ἄξιοι γένοιτο, εἰ βούλοιτο  
 φίλος γενέσθαι· καὶ εἴτε ἄλλο τι θέλοι χρῆσθαι εἴτ' ἐπ' Αἴγυπτον  
 στρατεύειν, συγκαταστρέψαιτ' ἂν αὐτῷ. ἐν τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ἦκε,  
 καὶ ἠρώτησεν εἰ ἤδη ἀποκεκριμένοι εἶεν. Φαλῖνος δὲ ὑπολαβὼν  
 εἶπεν· Οὗτοι μὲν, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἄλλος ἄλλα λέγει· σὺ δ' ἡμῖν εἰπέ τί  
 λέγεις. ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ σε, ὦ Φαλῖνε, ἄσμενος ἐόρακα, οἶμαι δὲ  
 καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες· σύ τε γὰρ Ἕλληνας εἶ καὶ ἡμεῖς τοσοῦτοι ὄντες  
 ὅσους σὺ ὄρας· ἐν τοιούτοις δὲ ὄντες πράγμασι συμβουλευόμεθά σοι  
 τί χρῆ ποιεῖν περὶ ὧν λέγεις. σὺ οὖν πρὸς θεῶν συμβούλευσον ἡμῖν  
 ὃ τι σοι δοκεῖ κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον εἶναι, καὶ ὃ σοι τιμὴν οἴσει  
 εἰς τὸν ἔπειτα χρόνον ἀναλεγόμενον, ὅτι Φαλῖνός ποτε πεμφθεὶς  
 παρὰ βασιλέως κελεύσων τοὺς Ἕλληνας τὰ ὄπλα παραδοῦναι  
 συμβουλευόμενοις συνεβούλευσεν αὐτοῖς τάδε. οἶσθα δὲ ὅτι ἀνάγκη  
 λέγεσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἂν συμβουλεύσης. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ταῦτα  
 ὑπήγετο βουλόμενος καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν παρὰ βασιλέως πρεσβεύοντα  
 συμβουλεύσαι μὴ παραδοῦναι τὰ ὄπλα, ὅπως εὐέλπιδες μᾶλλον εἶεν οἱ  
 Ἕλληνες. Φαλῖνος δὲ ὑποστρέψας παρὰ τὴν δόξαν αὐτοῦ εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ,  
 εἰ μὲν τῶν μυρίων ἐλπίδων μία τις ὑμῖν ἐστι σωθῆναι πολεμοῦντας  
 βασιλεῖ, συμβουλεύω μὴ παραδιδόναι τὰ ὄπλα· εἰ δέ τοι μηδεμία  
 σωτηρίας ἐστὶν ἐλπίς ἄκοντος βασιλέως, συμβουλεύω σῆζεσθαι ὑμῖν  
 ὅπῃ δυνατόν. Κλέαρχος δὲ πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν· Ἄλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ

ἄλλους δέ τινες ἔφασαν λέγειν ὑπομαλακιζομένους, ὡς καὶ Κύρω  
 πιστοὶ ἐγένοντο καὶ βασιλεῖ ἂν πολλοῦ ἄξιοι γένοιτο, εἰ βούλοιο  
 φίλος γενέσθαι· καὶ εἴτε ἄλλο τι θέλοι χρῆσθαι εἴτ' ἐπ' Αἴγυπτον  
 στρατεύειν, συγκαταστρέψαι τ' ἂν αὐτῷ. ἐν τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ἦκε,  
 καὶ ἠρώτησεν εἰ ἤδη ἀποκεκρίμενοι εἶεν. Φαλῖνος δὲ ὑπολαβὼν  
 εἶπεν· Οὗτοι μὲν, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἄλλος ἄλλα λέγει· σὺ δ' ἡμῖν εἰπέ τί  
 λέγεις. ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ σε, ὦ Φαλίνε, ἄσμενος ἐόρακα, οἶμαι δὲ  
 καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες· σύ τε γὰρ Ἕλληνας εἶ καὶ ἡμεῖς τοσοῦτοι ὄντες  
 ὅσους σὺ ὀράς· ἐν τοιούτοις δὲ ὄντες πράγμασι **give advice;** σοι  
 τί χρὴ ποιεῖν περὶ ὧν λέγεις. σὺ οὖν πρὸς θεῶν **(mid) consult**  
 ὅ τι σοι δοκεῖ κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον εἶναι, καὶ ὃ σοι τιμὴν οἴσει  
 εἰς τὸν ἔπειτα χρόνον **gather up** ὅτι Φαλῖνός ποτε πεμφθεὶς  
 παρὰ βασιλέως κελύσων τοὺς Ἕλληνας τὰ ὄπλα παραδοῦναι  
**give advice; (mid)consult** αὐτοῖς τάδε. οἶσθα δὲ ὅτι ἀνάγκη  
 λέγεσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἂν **give advice; (mid) consult** ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ταῦτα  
 ὑπήγετο βουλόμενος καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸςβέοντα  
**give advice; (mid) consult** ἢ παραδοῦναι τὰ ὄπλα, ὅπως εὐέλπιδες μᾶλλον εἶεν οἱ  
 Ἕλληνες. Φαλῖνος δὲ ὑποστρέψας παρὰ τὴν δόξαν αὐτοῦ εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ,  
 εἰ μὲν τῶν μυρίων ἐλπίδων μία τις ὑμῖν ἐστι σωθῆναι πολεμοῦντας  
 βασιλεῖ, **give advice; (mid) consult** ἢ παραδιδόναι τὰ ὄπλα· εἰ δέ τοι μηδεμία  
 σωτηρίας ἐστὶν ἐλπίς ἄκοντος βασιλέως, **give advice; (mid) consult** ἔζεσθαι ὑμῖν  
 ὅπῃ δυνατόν. Κλέαρχος δὲ πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ

might turn them to any use that pleased his fancy, say for a campaign against Egypt. Their arms were at his service; they would help to lay that country at his feet.”

Just then Clearchus returned, and wished to know what answer they had given. The words were barely out of his mouth before Phalinus interrupting, answered: “As for your friends here, one says one thing and one another; will you please give us your opinion”; and he replied: “The sight of you, Phalinus, caused me much pleasure; and not only me, but all of us, I feel sure; for you are a Hellene even as we are— every one of us whom you see before you. In our present plight we would like to take you into our counsel as to what we had better do touching your proposals. I beg you then solemnly, in the sight of heaven— do you tender us such advice as you shall deem best and worthiest, and such as shall bring you honour of after time, when it will be said of you how once on a time Phalinus was sent by the great king to bid certain Hellenes yield up their arms, and when they had taken him into their counsel, he gave them such and such advice. You know that whatever advice you do give us cannot fail to be reported in Hellas.”

Clearchus threw out these leading remarks in hopes that this man, who was the ambassador from the king, might himself be led to advise them not to give up their arms, in which case the Hellenes would be still more sanguine and hopeful. But, contrary to his expectation, Phalinus turned round and said: “I say that if you have one chance, one hope in ten thousand to wage a war with the king successfully, do not give up your arms. That is my advice. If, however, you have no chance of escape without the king’s consent, then I say save yourselves in the only way you can.” And Clearchus answered: “So, then, that is your deliberate view? Well, this is

*vocabulary*

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἀμείνων** better  
**ἀνέχω** raise; mid: endure, submit  
**ἄξιος** worthy ~axiom  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
**αὔριον** tomorrow  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also ἀφήγω  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something

**ἦγω** to have come  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι, οἶομαι  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**πολεμόω** make an enemy of  
**πότερος** which, whichever of two  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**ταυτός** identical  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

σὺ λέγεις· παρ' ἡμῶν δὲ ἀπάγγελλε τάδε, ὅτι ἡμεῖς οἰόμεθα, εἰ μὲν δέοι βασιλεῖ φίλους εἶναι, πλείονος ἂν ἄξιοι εἶναι φίλοι ἔχοντες τὰ ὄπλα ἢ παραδόντες ἄλλω, εἰ δὲ δέοι πολεμεῖν, ἄμεινον ἂν πολεμεῖν ἔχοντες τὰ ὄπλα ἢ ἄλλω παραδόντες. ὁ δὲ Φαλῖνος εἶπε· Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἀπαγγελοῦμεν· ἀλλὰ καὶ τάδε ὑμῖν εἰπεῖν ἐκέλευσε βασιλεύς, ὅτι μένουσι μὲν ὑμῖν αὐτοῦ σπονδαὶ εἴησαν, προῖοῦσι δὲ καὶ ἀπιούσι πόλεμος. εἶπατε οὖν καὶ περὶ τούτου πότερα μενεῖτε καὶ σπονδαὶ εἰσιν ἢ ὡς πολέμου ὄντος παρ' ὑμῶν ἀπαγγελῶ. Κλέαρχος δ' ἔλεξεν· Ἀπάγγελλε τοίνυν καὶ περὶ τούτου ὅτι καὶ ἡμῖν ταῦτα δοκεῖ ἄπερ καὶ βασιλεῖ. Τί οὖν ταῦτά ἐστιν; ἔφη ὁ Φαλῖνος. ἀπεκρίνατο Κλέαρχος· Ἦν μὲν μένωμεν, σπονδαί, ἀπιούσι δὲ καὶ προῖοῦσι πόλεμος. ὁ δὲ πάλιν ἠρώτησε· Σπονδὰς ἢ πόλεμον ἀπαγγελῶ; Κλέαρχος δὲ ταῦτα πάλιν ἀπεκρίνατο· Σπονδαὶ μὲν μένουσιν, ἀπιούσι δὲ καὶ προῖοῦσι πόλεμος. ὅ τι δὲ ποιήσοι οὐ διεσήμηνε.

## 2.2

Φαλῖνος μὲν δὴ ᾤχετο καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. οἱ δὲ παρὰ Ἀριαίου ἦγον Προκλῆς καὶ Χειρίσοφος· Μένων δὲ αὐτοῦ ἔμεινε παρὰ Ἀριαίῳ· οὗτοι δὲ ἔλεγον ὅτι πολλοὺς φαίη Ἀριαῖος εἶναι Πέρσας ἑαυτοῦ βελτίους, οὓς οὐκ ἂν ἀνασχέσθαι αὐτοῦ βασιλεύοντος· ἀλλ' εἰ βούλεσθε συναπιέναι, ἦκειν ἤδη κελεύει τῆς νυκτός. εἰ δὲ μή, αὔριον πρὸς ἀπιέναι φησίν. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' οὕτω χρὴ ποιεῖν· ἐὰν μὲν ἦκωμεν,

οὐ λέγεις· παρ' ἡμῶν δὲ ἀπάγγελλε τάδε, ὅτι ἡμεῖς οἰόμεθα, εἰ μὲν δέοι βασιλεῖ φίλους εἶναι, πλείονος ἂν ἄξιοι εἶναι φίλοι ἔχοντες τὰ ὄπλα ἢ παραδόντες ἄλλω, εἰ δὲ δέοι πολεμεῖν, ἄμεινον ἂν πολεμεῖν ἔχοντες τὰ ὄπλα ἢ ἄλλω παραδόντες. ὁ δὲ Φαλῖνος εἶπε· Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἀπαγγελοῦμεν· ἀλλὰ καὶ τάδε ὑμῖν εἰπεῖν ἐκέλευσε βασιλεὺς, ὅτι μένουσι μὲν ὑμῖν αὐτοῦ σπονδαὶ εἴησαν, προϊοῦσι δὲ καὶ ἀπιοῦσι πόλεμος. εἴπατε οὖν καὶ περὶ τούτου **which, ,** εἴτε καὶ σπονδαί **whichever** εἰσιν ἢ ὡς πολέμου ὄντος παρ' ὑμῶν ἀπαγγελω. Κλέαρχος δ' ἔλεξεν· Ἀπάγγελλε τοίνυν καὶ περὶ τούτου ὅτι καὶ ἡμῖν **identical**· εἰ ἄπερ καὶ βασιλεῖ. Τί οὖν ταῦτά ἐστιν; ἔφη ὁ Φαλῖνος. ἀπεκρίνατο Κλέαρχος· Ἦν μὲν μένωμεν, σπονδαί, ἀπιοῦσι δὲ καὶ προϊοῦσι πόλεμος. ὁ δὲ πάλιν ἠρώτησε· Σπονδὰς ἢ πόλεμον ἀπαγγελω; Κλέαρχος δὲ **identical** πάλιν ἀπεκρίνατο· Σπονδαὶ μὲν μένουσιν, ἀπιοῦσι δὲ καὶ προϊοῦσι πόλεμος. ὅ τι δὲ ποιήσοι οὐ διεσήμηνε.

## 2.2

Φαλῖνος μὲν δὴ ᾤχετο καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. οἱ δὲ παρὰ Ἀριαίου ἦκον Προκλῆς καὶ Χειρίσοφος· Μένων δὲ αὐτοῦ ἔμενε παρὰ Ἀριαίῳ· οὗτοι δὲ ἔλεγον ὅτι πολλοὺς φαίη Ἀριαῖος εἶναι Πέρσας ἑαυτοῦ βελτίους, οὓς οὐκ ἂν ἀνασχέσθαι αὐτοῦ βασιλεύοντος· ἀλλ' εἰ βούλεσθε συναπιέαι, ἦκειν ἢδη κελεύει τῆς νυκτός. εἰ δὲ μή, **tomorrow** ἢ ἀπιέαι φησίν. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' οὕτω χρὴ ποιεῖν· ἔαν μὲν ἦκωμεν,

our answer, take it back. We conceive that in either case, whether we are expected to be friends with the king, we shall be worth more as friends if we keep our arms than if we yield them to another; or whether we are to go to war, we shall fight better with them than without.” And Phalinus said: “That answer we will repeat; but the king bade me tell you this besides, ’Whilst you remain here there is truce; but one step forward or one step back, the truce ends; there is war. ’ Will you then please inform us as to that point also? Are you minded to stop and keep truce, or is there to be war? What answer shall I take from you?” And Clearchus replied: “Pray answer that we hold precisely the same views on this point as the king.”—“How say you the same views?” asked Phalinus. Clearchus made answer: “As long as we stay here there is truce, but a step forward or a step backward, the truce ends; there is war.” The other again asked: “Peace or war, what answer shall I make?” Clearchus returned answer once again in the same words: “Truce if we stop, but if we move forwards or backwards war.” But what he was minded really to do, that he refused to make further manifest.

## 2.2

Phalinus and those that were with him turned and went. But the messengers from Ariaeus, Procles and Cheirisophus came back. As to Menon, he stayed behind with Ariaeus, They brought back this answer from Ariaeus: “’There are many Persians, ’ he says, ’better than himself who will not suffer him to sit upon the king’s throne; but if you are minded to go back with him, you must join him this very night, otherwise he will set off himself to-morrow on the homeward route.’ ’ And Clearchus said: “It had best stand thus between us then.



*vocabulary***αείρω** raise, win ~aorta; also *αἴρω***ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp.~sin**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart**ἀριθμός** number**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor**αὐτοῦ** here, there**δειπνέω** eat, dine**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos**δεύτερος** second**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also *δύνω*,*ἐξαποδύνω***ἐντεῦθεν** thence**ἑξήκοντα** sixty**ἔξω** outward, outside**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel**ἥλιος** sun; also *ἡέλιος***θύω** rush; sacrifice**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also*ἵππιοχάρμης***κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn**μέχρι** as far as, until**μυρίος** immense, myriad ~myriad**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey~odometer; also *οὐδός***οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also *οἶμαι*, *οἴομαι***ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey~odometer; also *ὀδός***πάνυ** altogether, very**πέντε** five ~pentagon**πεντήκοντα** fifty**πλοῖον** ship**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus**πυνθάνομαι** learn, inquire, (+gen) hear of ~buddha; also *πεύθομαι***σκότος** (m/n) darkness, shadow

~shadow

**στρατηγέω** be a general**συμφέρω** bring together (*φέρω*)**τεσσαράκοντα** forty; also*τετταράκοντα***τοιόσδε** such**τρεις** three ~three**τριάκοντα** thirty**τριακόσιοι** three hundred**τρίτος** third**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case**φρονέω** think, be wise ~phrenology**χέω** pour, scatter; also *καταχέω***ὧδε** thus

ὥσπερ λέγετε· εἰ δὲ μή, πράττετε ὅποιον ἂν τι ὑμῖν οἴσθε μάλιστα συμφέρειν. ὅ τι δὲ ποιήσοι οὐδὲ τούτοις εἶπε. μετὰ ταῦτα ἦδη ἡλίου δύνοντος συγκαλέσας στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς ἔλεξε τοιάδε. Ἐμοί, ὦ ἄνδρες, θυομένω ἰέναι ἐπὶ βασιλέα οὐκ ἐγίνετο τὰ ἱερά. καὶ εἰκότως ἄρα οὐκ ἐγίνετο· ὡς γὰρ ἐγὼ νῦν πυθάνομαι, ἐν μέσῳ ἡμῶν καὶ βασιλέως ὁ Τίγρης ποταμός ἐστι ναυσίπορος, ὃν οὐκ ἂν δυναίμεθα ἄνευ πλοίων διαβῆναι· πλοῖα δὲ ἡμεῖς οὐκ ἔχομεν. οὐ μὲν δὴ αὐτοῦ γε μένειν οἶόν τε· τὰ γὰρ ἐπιτήδεια οὐκ ἔστιν ἔχειν· ἰέναι δὲ παρὰ τοὺς Κύρου φίλους πάνυ καλὰ ἡμῖν τὰ ἱερά ἦν. ὠδε οὖν χρῆ ποιεῖν· ἀπιόντας δειπνεῖν ὅ τι τις ἔχει· ἐπειδὴν δὲ σημήνη τῷ κέρατι ὡς ἀναπαύεσθαι, συσκευάζεσθε· ἐπειδὴν δὲ τὸ δεύτερον, ἀνατίθεσθε ἐπὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ ἔπεσθε τῷ ἡγουμένῳ, τὰ μὲν ὑποζύγια ἔχοντες πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ, τὰ δὲ ὄπλα ἔξω. ταῦτ' ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀπῆλθον καὶ ἐποιοῦν οὕτω. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ὁ μὲν ἦρχεν, οἱ δὲ ἐπεΐθοντο, οὐχ ἐλόμενοι, ἀλλὰ ὀρώντες ὅτι μόνος ἐφρόνει οἷα δεῖ τὸν ἄρχοντα, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἄπειροι ἦσαν. ἀριθμὸς τῆς ὁδοῦ ἦν ἦλθον ἐξ Ἐφέσου τῆς Ἰωνίας μέχρι τῆς μάχης σταθμοὶ τρεῖς καὶ ἐνενήκοντα, παρασάγγαι πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα καὶ πεντακόσιοι, στάδιοι πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑξακισχίλιοι καὶ μύριοι· ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς μάχης ἐλέγοντο εἶναι εἰς Βαβυλῶνα στάδιοι ἑξήκοντα καὶ τριακόσιοι. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπεὶ σκότος ἐγένετο Μιλτοκύθης μὲν ὁ Θραῆς ἔχων τοὺς τε ἵππείας τοὺς μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ εἰς τετταράκοντα

ὡσπερ λέγετε· εἰ δὲ μή, πράττετε |whatever kind, ἢ οἴσθε μάλιστα  
 συμφέρειν. ὅ τι δὲ ποιήσοι οὐδὲ τούτοις εἶπε. μετὰ ταῦτα ἤδη  
 ἡλίου δύνοντος |call together τρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς ἔλεξε τοιάδε.  
 Ἐμοί, ὦ ἄνδρες, θυομένω ἰέναι ἐπὶ βασιλέα οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ ἱερά.  
 καὶ εἰκότως ἄρα οὐκ ἐγίγνετο· ὡς γὰρ ἐγὼ νῦν πυνθάνομαι, ἐν  
 μέσῳ ἡμῶν καὶ βασιλέως ὁ Τύγρης ποταμός ἐστι ναυσίπορος, ὃν  
 οὐκ ἂν |enter, put on, ἢ πλοίων |pass over, cross δὲ ἡμεῖς οὐκ ἔχομεν.  
 οὐ μὲν δὴ αὐτοῦ γε μένειν οἶόν τε· τὰ γὰρ ἐπιτήδεια οὐκ ἔστιν  
 ἔχειν· ἰέναι δὲ παρὰ τοὺς Κύρου φίλους πάννυ καλὰ ἡμῖν τὰ ἱερά  
 ἦν. ὠδε οὖν χρὴ ποιῆν· ἀπιόντας δειπνεῖν ὅ τι τις ἔχει· |when  
 δὲ σημήνη τῷ κέρατι ὡς |cause to cease ὑσκευάζεσθε· |when δὲ τὸ  
 δεύτερον, |reproach ἐπὶ τὰ |beast of burden τῷ τρίτῳ ἔπεσθε τῷ  
 ἡγουμένῳ, τὰ μὲν |beast of burden πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ, τὰ δὲ ὄπλα  
 ἔξω. ταῦτ' ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀπήλθον καὶ ἐποίον  
 οὕτω. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ὁ μὲν ἦρχεν, οἱ δὲ ἐπέιθοντο, οὐχ ἐλόμενοι,  
 ἀλλὰ ὀρώντες ὅτι μόνος ἐφρόνει οἷα δεῖ τὸν ἄρχοντα, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι  
 ἄπειροι ἦσαν. ἀριθμὸς τῆς ὁδοῦ ἦν |ἀλθομαι?: become whole νίας  
 |; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come  
 μέχρι τῆς μάχης |cottage; post. καὶ |ninety Persian πέντε  
 καὶ τριάκοντα καὶ |500 |στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also masc) ; or  
 καὶ μύριοι· ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς μάχης εἰς Βαβυλῶνα |στάδιος?: (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun)  
 |200 meters  
 ἐξήκοντα καὶ τριακόσιοι. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπεὶ σκότος ἐγένετο Μιλ|στάδιον?: 200  
 |meters (pl also  
 μὲν ὁ Θραῶξ ἔχων τοὺς τε ἵππείας τοὺς μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ εἰς τετταρ|στάδιος?: (adj)  
 |standing upright,  
 |firm; (pl noun)  
 |200 meters

If we come, well and good, be it as you propose; but if we do not come, do whatsoever you think most conducive to your interests.” And so he kept these also in the dark as to his real intention.

After this, when the sun was already sinking, he summoned the generals and officers, and made the following statement: “Sirs, I sacrificed and found the victims unfavourable to an advance against the king. After all, it is not so surprising perhaps, for, as I now learn, between us and the king flows the river Tigris, navigable for big vessels, and we could not possibly cross it without boats, and boats we have none. On the other hand, to stop here is out of the question, for there is no possibility of getting provisions. However, the victims were quite agreeable to us joining the friends of Cyrus. This is what we must do then. Let each go away and sup on whatever he has. At the first sound of the bugle to turn in, get kit and baggage together; at the second signal, place them on the baggage animals; and at the third, fall in and follow the lead, with the baggage animals on the inside protected by the river, and the troops outside.” After hearing the orders, the generals and officers retired, and did as they were bid; and for the future Clearchus led, and the rest followed in obedience to his orders, not that they had expressly chosen him, but they saw that he alone had the sense and wisdom requisite in a general, while the rest were inexperienced.

Here, under cover of the darkness which descended, the Thracian Miltocythes, with forty horsemen and three hundred Thracian infantry, deserted to the king; but the rest of the troops— Clearchus leading and the rest following in accordance with the orders promulgated—took their departure, and about midnight reached their first stage, having come up with Ariaeus and his army. They grounded arms just as they stood in rank, and the generals and officers of

*vocabulary***ἄγνουμι** break**ἅπαξ** once**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι,

ὄλλυμι

**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive**βάββαρος** non-Greek**βασιλεύω** be king**γνώμη** sign, mind, will, decision**δεῦρο** here, come here!**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω,

ἐξαποδύνω

**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel**κάπρος** boar**κράτιστος** best**κρείσσω** more powerful**λιμός** (m/f) famine**μήτε** neither...nor...**ξίφος** -εος (n, 3) sword**ὄδος** (f) threshold, road, journey

~odometer; also οὐδός

**ὄμνουμι** swear**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey

~odometer; also ὁδός

**οὐκέτι** no more**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (πούς)**πιστός** faithful (πείθω)**πλεῖστος** most numerous**πορεύω** carry**πότερος** which, whichever of two**προδίδωμι** betray**προίημι** send forth, abandon**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν**στόλος** expedition**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army**στρατιά** army**σφάζω** cut the throat**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement**τάσσω** arrange**ταῦρος** bull ~steer**τρεις** three ~three**τριακόσιοι** three hundred**ὑπάρχω** start, lead, set an example**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω**χώρα** place

καὶ τῶν πεζῶν Θρακῶν ὡς τριακοσίους ἠὺτομόλησε πρὸς βασιλέα. Κλέαρχος δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἠγείτο κατὰ τὰ παρηγγελμένα, οἱ δ' εἶποντο· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸν πρῶτον σταθμὸν παρ' Ἀριαῖον καὶ τὴν ἐκείνου στρατιὰν ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας· καὶ ἐν τάξει θέμενοι τὰ ὄπλα συνήλθον οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων παρ' Ἀριαῖον· καὶ ὤμοσαν οἳ τε Ἕλληνες καὶ ὁ Ἀριαῖος καὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ κρᾶτιστοι μῆτε προδώσειν ἀλλήλους σύμμαχοί τε ἔσεσθαι· οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι προσώμοσαν καὶ ἠγήσασθαι ἀδόλως. ταῦτα δ' ὤμοσαν, σφάξαντες ταῦρον καὶ κάπρον καὶ κριὸν εἰς ἀσπίδα, οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες βάπτοντες ξίφος, οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι λόγχην. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ ἐγένετο, εἶπεν ὁ Κλέαρχος· Ἄγε δὴ, ὦ Ἀριαῖε, ἐπεὶ περ ὁ αὐτὸς ὑμῖν στόλος ἐστὶ καὶ ἡμῖν, εἰπέ τίνα γνώμην ἔχεις περὶ τῆς πορείας, πότερον ἄπιμεν ἢ περ ἤλθομεν ἢ ἄλλην τινὰ ἐννενοηκέαι δοκεῖς ὁδὸν κρείττω. ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἦν μὲν ἤλθομεν ἀπιόντες παντελῶς ἂν ὑπὸ λιμοῦ ἀπολοίμεθα· ὑπάρχει γὰρ νῦν ἡμῖν οὐδὲν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. ἐπτακαίδεκα γὰρ σταθμῶν τῶν ἐγγυτάτω οὐδὲ δεῦρο ἰόντες ἐκ τῆς χώρας οὐδὲν εἶχομεν λαμβάνειν· ἔνθα δέ τι ἦν, ἡμεῖς διαπορευόμενοι κατεδαπανήσαμεν. νῦν δ' ἐπινοοῦμεν πορεύεσθαι μακροτέραν μὲν, τῶν δ' ἐπιτηδείων οὐκ ἀπορήσομεν. πορευτέον δ' ἡμῖν τοὺς πρώτους σταθμοὺς ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα μακροτάτους, ἵνα ὡς πλείστον ἀποσπάσωμεν τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύματος· ἦν γὰρ ἅπαξ δύο ἢ τριῶν ἡμερῶν ὁδὸν ἀπόσχωμεν, οὐκέτι μὴ δύνηται βασιλεὺς ἡμᾶς

καὶ τῶν |πέζα?:<sup>~</sup>, pole end ,; or ίους ἠὲτομολήσε πρὸς βασιλέα.  
 Κλέαρχος δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις |πέζος?: on foot; footsoldier  
 Κλέαρχος δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις |go before, lead ` παρηγγελμένα, οἱ δ'  
 εἶποντο· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸν πρῶτον |cottage; post, Ἄριαϊον  
 καὶ τὴν ἐκείνου στρατιὰν ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας· καὶ ἐν τάξει θέμενοι  
 τὰ ὄπλα συνῆλθον οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων παρ'  
 Ἄριαϊον· καὶ ᾤμωσαν οἳ τε Ἕλληνες καὶ ὁ Ἄριαϊός τε καὶ τῶν σὺν  
 αὐτῷ οἱ κράτιστοι μῆτε |betray ἀλλήλους σύμμαχοί τε ἔσεσθαι·  
 οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι προσώμωσαν καὶ ἠγήσεσθαι ἀδόλως, ταῦτα δ'  
 ᾤμωσαν, |cut the|bull καὶ |boar καὶ |ram εἰς ἀσπίδα, οἱ  
 μὲν Ἕλληνες |submerge θρόνον, οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι λόγχην. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ  
 πιστὰ ἐγένετο, εἶπεν ὁ Κλέαρχος· Ἄγε δὴ, ὦ Ἄριαϊε, ἐπεὶ περὶ ὁ αὐτὸς  
 ὑμῖν στόλος ἐστὶ καὶ ἡμῖν, εἶπέ τίνα γνώμην ἔχεις περὶ τῆς πορείας,  
 |which, ἢ μιν ἢ περ |ἄλθομαι?: become whole` νενοηκέναι δοκεῖς  
 |whichever ; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come  
 ὁδὸν κρείττω. ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἦν μὲν |ἄλθομαι?: become whole ὡς ἂν  
 ; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come  
 ὑπὸ λιμοῦ ἀπολοίμεθα· ὑπάρχει γὰρ νῦν ἡμῖν οὐδὲν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων.  
 ἑπτακαίδεκα γὰρ |στάθμη?: carpenter's line ; ὁρ δειῦρο ἰόντες ἐκ τῆς  
 |σταθμός?: cottage; post  
 χώρας οὐδὲν εἶχομεν λαμβάνειν· ἐνθα δὲ τι ἦν, ἡμεῖς διαπορευόμενοι  
 κατεδαπανήσαμεν. νῦν δ' ἐπινοοῦμεν πορεύεσθαι μακροτέραν μὲν,  
 τῶν δ' ἐπιτηδείων οὐκ ἀπορήσομεν. πορευτέον δ' ἡμῖν τοὺς  
 πρώτους |cottage; post ἂν δυνώμεθα μακροτάτους, ἵνα ὡς πλείστον  
 ἀποσπάσωμεν τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύματος· ἦν γὰρ |once δύο ἢ  
 τριῶν ἡμερῶν ὁδὸν ἀπόσχωμεν, οὐκέτι μὴ δύνηται βασιλεὺς ἡμᾶς

the Hellenes met in the tent of Ariaeus. There they exchanged oaths—the Hellenes on the one side and Ariaeus with his principal officers on the other— not to betray one another, but to be true to each other as allies. The Asiatics further solemnly pledged themselves by oath to lead the way without treachery. The oaths were ratified by the sacrifice of a bull, a wolf, a boar, and a ram over a shield. The Hellenes dipped a sword, the barbarians a lance, into the blood of the victims.

As soon as the pledge was taken, Clearchus spoke: “And now, Ariaeus,” he said, “since you and we have one expedition in prospect, will you tell us what you think about the route; shall we return the way we came, or have you devised a better?” He answered: “To return the same way is to perish to a man by hunger; for at this moment we have no provisions whatsoever. During the seventeen last stages, even on our way hither, we could extract nothing from the country; or, if there was now and again anything, we passed over and utterly consumed it. At this time our project is to take another and a longer journey certainly, but we shall not be in straits for provisions. The earliest stages must be very long, as long as we can make them; the object is to put as large a space as possible between us and the royal army; once we are two or three days’ journey off, the danger is over. The king will never overtake us. With a small army he will not dare to dog our heels, and with a vast equipment he will lack the power to march quickly. Perhaps he, too, may even find a scarcity of provisions. There,” said he, “you asked for my opinion, see, I have given it.”

Here was



*vocabulary*

**αιδέομαι** respect, be ashamed  
**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**γνώμη** sign, mind, will, decision  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω, ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also ἰθύς  
**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἥλιος** sun; also ἠέλιος  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θέω** run, run for  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also ἵππιοχάρμης  
**ἴσος** equal; also ἔσση  
**καταβαίνω** go down  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake  
**κραυγή** screaming, shouting  
**κώμη** village  
**μέντοι** however  
**νέμω** to allot, to pasture (νομός)

**ξύλον** piece of wood ~xylophone  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πού** no doubt; somewhere/how  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**στόλος** expedition  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τολμάω** dare (τλάω)  
**τρόπος** (m/n) turn; manner, kind, fashion  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὔστερος** later, last  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard ~phylactery  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**χώρα** place  
**ψεύδω** middle: to lie

καταλαβείν. ὀλίγω μὲν γὰρ στρατεύματι οὐ τολμήσει ἐφέπεσθαι· πολὺν δ' ἔχων δ' ἔχων στόλον οὐ δυνήσεται ταχέως πορεύεσθαι· ἴσως δὲ καὶ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων σπανιεῖ. ταύτην, ἔφη, τὴν γνώμην ἔχω ἔγωγε.

Ἦν δὲ αὕτη ἡ στρατηγία οὐδὲν ἄλλο δυναμένη ἢ ἀποδρᾶναι ἢ ἀποφυγεῖν· ἡ δὲ τύχη ἐστρατήγησε κάλλιον. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, ἐπορεύοντο ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχοντες τὸν ἥλιον, λογιζόμενοι ἦξιεν ἅμα ἠλίῳ δύνοντι εἰς κώμας τῆς Βαβυλωνίας χώρας· καὶ τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ ἐφειύσθησαν. ἔτι δὲ ἀμφὶ δείλην ἔδοξαν πολεμίους ὄραν ἱππέας· καὶ τῶν τε Ἑλλήνων οἱ μὴ ἔτυχον ἐν ταῖς τάξεσιν ὄντες εἰς τὰς τάξεις ἔθεον, καὶ Ἀριαῖος ἐτύγχανε γὰρ ἐφ' ἀμάξης πορευόμενος διότι ἐτέρωτο καταβὰς ἐθωρακίζετο καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ὠπλίζοντο ἦκον λέγοντες οἱ προπεμφθέντες σκοποὶ ὅτι οὐχ ἱππεῖς εἰσιν, ἀλλ' ὑποζύγια νέμονται. καὶ εὐθὺς ἔγνωσαν πάντες ὅτι ἐγγύς που ἐστρατοπεδεύετο βασιλεύς· καὶ γὰρ καπνὸς ἐφαίνετο ἐν κώμαις οὐ πρόσω. Κλέαρχος δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τοὺς πολεμίους οὐκ ἦγεν· ἦδει γὰρ καὶ ἀπειρηκότας τοὺς στρατιώτας καὶ ἀσίτους ὄντας· ἦδη δὲ καὶ ὀψὲ ἦν· οὐ μέντοι οὐδὲ ἀπέκλινε, φυλαττόμενος μὴ δοκοίη φεύγειν, ἀλλ' εὐθύρῳρον ἄγων ἅμα τῷ ἠλίῳ δυομένῳ εἰς τὰς ἐγγυτάτω κώμας τοὺς πρώτους ἄγων κατεσκήνωσεν, ἐξ ὧν διήρπαστο ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύματος καὶ αὐτὰ τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν ξύλα. οἱ μὲν οὖν πρῶτοι ὁμῶς τρόπῳ τινὶ ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο, οἱ δὲ ὕστεροι σκοταῖοι προσιόντες ὡς ἐτύγχανον ἕκαστοι ἠυλίζοντο, καὶ κραυγὴν πολλήν

καταλαβείν. ὀλίγω μὲν γὰρ στρατεύματι οὐ τολμήσει ἐφέπεσθαι· πολὺν δ' ἔχων δ' ἔχων στόλον οὐ δυνήσεται ταχέως πορεύεσθαι· ἴσως δὲ καὶ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων σπανιεῖ. ταύτην, ἔφη, τὴν γνώμην ἔχω ἔγωγε.

Ἦν δὲ αὕτη ἡ |office of command ἄλλο δυναμένη ἢ ἀποδρᾶναι ἢ  
 |avoid, es- δὲ τύχη ἐστρατήγησε κάλλιον. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο,  
 |cape, go  
 |free|εύοντο ἐν |δεξιᾶ?: right-hand; or |λογιζόμενοι ἤξεν ἅμα ἠλίω  
 |δεξιός?: right-hand  
 δύνοντι εἰς |village τῆς Βαβυλωνίας χώρας· καὶ τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ  
 ἐψεύσθησαν. ἔτι δὲ ἀμφὶ |afternoon ἕσαν πολεμίους ὄραν ἰππέας·  
 καὶ τῶν τε Ἑλλήνων οἳ μὴ ἔτυχον ἐν ταῖς τάξεσιν ὄντες εἰς τὰς  
 τάξεις ἔθεον, καὶ Ἀριαῖος ἐτύγχανε γὰρ ἐφ' |wagon πορευόμενος  
 διότι ἐπέτρωτο καταβάς ἐθωρακίζετο καὶ οἳ σὺν αὐτῷ. ἐν ᾧ δὲ  
 |prepare, arm ἢ λέγοντες οἳ |send, send|lookout ἴτι οὐχ ἰππεῖς  
 |ahead  
 εἰσιν, ἀλλ' |beast of burden ἔ. καὶ εὐθὺς ἔγνωσαν πάντες ὅτι ἐγγύς  
 που |encamp or βασιλεύς· καὶ γὰρ |smoke ἐφαίνετο ἐν |village  
 |take up sta-  
 οὐ |forward, in ἄρχος δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τοὺς πολεμίους οὐκ ἦγεν· ἦδει γὰρ  
 |the future  
 καὶ |refuse, re- οὐς στρατιώτας καὶ |not eating as· ἦδη δὲ καὶ |late  
 |nounce,  
 ἦν· |declare οἳ οὐδὲ |bend aside ἰλαττόμενος μὴ δοκοίη φεύγειν, ἀλλ'  
 εὐθύωρον ἄγων ἅμα τῷ ἠλίῳ |δυσάω?: afflict; or δύω?:|village τοὺς  
 |enter, put on, strip off  
 πρώτους ἄγων κατεσκήνωσεν, ἐξ ὧν |make prey of τοῦ βασιλικῷ  
 στρατεύματος καὶ αὐτὰ τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν ζύλα. οἳ μὲν οὖν  
 πρώτοι ὅμως τρόπῳ τινὶ |encamp or , οἳ δὲ ὕστεροι σκοταῖοι  
 |take up sta-  
 προσιώντες ὡς ἐτύγχανον |τίοναστοι |be driven home|screaming, λλήν  
 |shouting

a plan of the campaign, which was equivalent to a stampede: helter-skelter they were to run away, or get into hiding somehow; but fortune proved a better general. For as soon as it was day they recommenced the journey, keeping the sun on their right, and calculating that with the westerling rays they would have reached villages in the territory of Babylonia, and in this hope they were not deceived. While it was yet afternoon, they thought they caught sight of some of the enemy's cavalry; and those of the Hellenes who were not in rank ran to their ranks; and Ariaeus, who was riding in a wagon to nurse a wound, got down and donned his cuirass, the rest of his party following his example. Whilst they were arming themselves, the scouts, who had been sent forward, came back with the information that they were not cavalry but baggage animals grazing. It was at once clear to all that they must be somewhere in the neighbourhood of the king's encampment. Smoke could actually be seen rising, evidently from villages not far ahead. Clearchus hesitated to advance upon the enemy, knowing that the troops were tired and hungry; and indeed it was already late. On the other hand he had no mind either to swerve from his route—guarding against any appearance of flight. Accordingly he marched straight as an arrow, and with sunset entered the nearest villages with his vanguard and took up quarters.

These villages had been thoroughly sacked and dismantled by the royal army—down to the very woodwork and furniture of the houses. Still, the vanguard contrived to take up their quarters in some sort of fashion; but the rear division, coming up in the dark, had to bivouac as best they could, one detachment after another; and a great noise they made, with hue and cry to one another, so that the enemy could hear them; and those

*vocabulary*

**ἀνατέλλω** cause to grow  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**γράφω** scratch, incise ~photograph  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**δοῦπος** roar  
**εἰκός** οικότος (n, 3) likely  
**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked senseless; also ἐκπλήγνυμι  
**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack  
**ἔοικα** seem, seem likely, beseem ~icon  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεὶ  
**ἐτεός** true  
**ἔτης** (m, 1) fellow townsman?  
**ζητέω** seek  
**ἥλιος** sun; also ἡέλιος  
**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**καπνός** smoke  
**κενός** empty, vain  
**κῆρυξ** -κος (m) henchman, functionary  
**κηρύσσω** be a henchman, summon people

**μέντοι** however  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**ὀνίνημι** help, please, be available  
**ὀνομαι** minimize, think little of  
**ὄνος** donkey ~onager  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**πρόεμι** to have been before, earlier  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**σιγή** silence  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τάλαντον** scale, a unit of weight  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τείνω** stretch, tend ~tense  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also ἐντυγχάνω  
**ὕστεραίος** the next; later  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φόβος** fear, rout, panic ~phobia

ἐποίουν καλοῦντες ἀλλήλους, ὥστε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἀκούειν· ὥστε οἱ μὲν ἐγγύτατα τῶν πολεμίων καὶ ἔφυγον ἐκ τῶν σκηνωμάτων. δῆλον δὲ τοῦτο τῇ ὑστεραία ἐγένετο· οὔτε γὰρ ὑποζύγιον ἔτ' οὐδὲν ἐφάνη οὔτε στρατόπεδον οὔτε καπνὸς οὐδαμοῦ πλησίον. ἐξεπλάγη δέ, ὡς ἔοικε, καὶ βασιλεὺς τῇ ἐφόδῳ τοῦ στρατεύματος. ἐδήλωσε δὲ τοῦτο οἷς τῇ ὑστεραία ἔπραττε. προϊούσης μέντοι τῆς νυκτὸς ταύτης καὶ τοῖς Ἕλλησι φόβος ἐμπίπτει, καὶ θόρυβος καὶ δοῦπος ἦν οἶον εἰκὸς φόβου ἐμπεσόντος γενέσθαι. Κλέαρχος δὲ Τολμίδην Ἥλειον, ὃν ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων παρ' ἑαυτῷ κήρυκα ἄριστον τῶν τότε, ἀνειπεῖν ἐκέλευσε σιγὴν κηρύξαντα ὅτι προαγορεύουσιν οἱ ἄρχοντες, ὃς ἂν τὸν ἀφέντα τὸν ὄνον εἰς τὰ ὄπλα μνηύσῃ, ὅτι λήψεται μισθὸν τάλαντον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἐκηρύχθη, ἔγνωσαν οἱ στρατιῶται ὅτι κενὸς ὁ φόβος εἶη καὶ οἱ ἄρχοντες σῶοι. ἅμα δὲ ὄρθρω παρήγγειλεν ὁ Κλέαρχος εἰς τάξιν τὰ ὄπλα τίθεσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἥπερ εἶχον ὅτε ἦν ἡ μάχη.

### 2.3

Ὅ δὲ δὴ ἔγραψα ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἐξεπλάγη τῇ ἐφόδῳ, τῷδε δῆλον ἦν. τῇ μὲν γὰρ πρόσθεν ἡμέρᾳ πέμπων τὰ ὄπλα παραδιδόναι ἐκέλευε, τότε δὲ ἅμα ἠλίω ἀνατέλλοντι κήρυκας ἔπεμψε περὶ σπονδῶν. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ ἦλθον πρὸς τοὺς προφύλακας, ἐζήτησαν τοὺς ἄρχοντας. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀπήγγελλον οἱ προφύλακες, Κλέαρχος τυχὼν τότε τὰς τάξεις ἐπισκοπῶν εἶπε τοῖς προφύλαξι κελεύειν τοὺς κήρυκας περιμένειν

ἐποίουν καλοῦντες ἀλλήλους, ὥστε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἀκούειν· ὥστε οἱ μὲν ἐγγύτατα τῶν πολεμίων καὶ ἔφυγον ἐκ τῶν σκιημάτων.

δῆλον δὲ τοῦτο τῇ |the next; later ὅ· οὔτε γὰρ |beast of burden of ζῆτης?: fellow townsman? ; or τείνω?: ἐφάνη οὔτε στρατόπεδον οὔτε |smoke οὐδαμοῦ πλησίον. |smoke, been knocked at ἐπὶ τῆς ἀφάνειας true ; or δέ, ὡς ἔοικε, καὶ βασιλεὺς τῇ ἐφόδῳ τοῦ στρατεύματος. ἐδῆ |έτος?: year ; or ἔτι?: still, yet τοῦτο οἷς τῇ |the next; later τε. |προέμι?: , τό have been before, , earlier ; or καὶ τοῖς Ἑλλήσι φόβος |fall into; attack ἴρυβος καὶ |roar ἦν οἶον εἰκὸς φόβου |fall into; attack ἴθαι. Κλέαρχος δὲ Τολμίδην Ἡλείον, ὃν ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων παρ' ἑαυτῷ κήρυκα ἄριστον τῶν τότε, ἀνειπεῖν ἐκέλευσε |silence ἰρύξαντα ὅτι προαγορεύουσιν οἱ ἄρχοντες, ὃς ἂν τὸν ἀφέντα τὸν |ῶνος?: donkey ; or ὀνίνημι?: help, please, ἂν τάλαντον. |be available ; or ὀνομαι?: minimize ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἐκηρύχθη, ἔγνωσαν οἱ στρατιῶται ὅτι κενὸς ὁ φόβος εἶη καὶ οἱ ἄρχοντες σῶοι. ἅμα δὲ ὄρθρω παρήγγειλεν ὁ Κλέαρχος εἰς τάξιν τὰ ὄπλα τίθεσθαι τοὺς Ἑλληνας ἥπερ εἶχον ὅτε ἦν ἡ μάχη.

## 2.3

Ὁ δὲ δὴ ἔγραψα ὅτι βασιλεὺς |panic, ἄbe ὄδω, τῷδε δῆλον ἦν. τῇ μὲν γὰρ πρόσθεν ἡμέρᾳ πέ |knocked ὄπλα παραδιδόναι ἐκέλευε, τότε δὲ ἅμα ἠλίω |cause to grow ἴρουκας ἔπεμψε περὶ σπονδῶν. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ |ἄλθομαι?: become whole ἰκας, ἐζήτουν τοὺς ἄρχοντας. |after; ; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come |because δὲ ἀπήγγελλον οἱ προφύλακες, Κλέαρχος τυχῶν τότε τὰς τάξεις ἐπισκοπῶν εἶπε τοῖς προφύλαξι κελεύειν τοὺς κήρυκας περιμένειν

in their immediate proximity actually took to their heels, left their quarters, and decamped, as was plain enough next morning, when not a beast was to be seen, nor sign of camp or wreath of smoke anywhere in the neighbourhood. The king, as it would appear, was himself quite taken aback by the advent of the army; as he fully showed by his proceedings next day.

During the progress of this night the Hellenes had their turn of scare—a panic seized them, and there was a noise and clatter, hardly to be explained except by the visitation of some sudden terror. But Clearchus had with him the Eleian Tolmides, the best herald of his time; him he ordered to proclaim silence, and then to give out this proclamation of the generals: “Whoever will give any information as to who let an ass into the camp shall receive a talent of silver in reward.” On hearing this proclamation the soldiers made up their minds that their fear was baseless, and their generals safe and sound. At break of day Clearchus gave the order to the Hellenes to get under arms in line of battle, and take up exactly the same position as they held on the day of the battle.

### 2.3

And now comes the proof of what I stated above—that the king was utterly taken aback by the sudden apparition of the army; only the day before, he had sent and demanded the surrender of their arms—and now, with the rising sun, came heralds sent by him to arrange a truce. These, having reached the advanced guard, asked for the generals. The guard reported their arrival; and Clearchus, who was busy inspecting the ranks, sent back word to the heralds that they must await his leisure. Having carefully arranged



*vocabulary*

ἄγγελος (m/f) messenger ~angel  
 ἄγνυμι break  
 ἀνθέω sprout  
 ἀπαγγέλλω tell about  
 ἄπειμι be absent, go away, return  
 ἀπελαύνω expel, exclude, ward off  
 ἀποκρίνω (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
 ἄχρι as far as (+gen); until  
 βασιλεύω be king  
 βουλευέω to deliberate ~volunteer  
 δέος -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
 δῆλος visible, conspicuous  
 διατριβέω wear down, delay ~tribology  
 ἐγγύς near  
 ἔνθεν thence, whence  
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable  
 ἐρωτάω ask about something  
 ἡγεμών -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide, chief  
 ἦκω to have come  
 ἡσυχία peace and quiet  
 ἱκανός sufficient; competent, fit  
 καθίζω to seat ~sit; also ἴζω, καθιζάνω

καθίστημι set down, land  
 μεθίστημι change; take a stand  
 μέντοι however  
 μέχρι as far as, until  
 ὀκνέω shrink from, hesitate  
 ὅπλομαι get ready, prepare  
 ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 οὐδός (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὁδός  
 πάντη everywhere  
 πού no doubt; somewhere/how  
 προίημι send forth, abandon  
 σπένδω libate (σπονδή); also ἀποσπένδω  
 σπονδή libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
 στρατεύμα -τος (n, 3) army  
 στρατηγέω be a general  
 στρατιώτης (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
 ταυτός identical  
 τίη strengthened form of τί  
 τολμάω dare (τλάω)  
 φάλαγξ -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
 φράζω consider ~phrase  
 χέω pour, scatter; also καταχέω

ἄχρι ἂν σχολάσῃ. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέστησε τὸ στράτευμα ὡς καλῶς ἔχειν ὀραῖσθαι πάντῃ φάλαγγα πυκνήν, ἐκ τῶν ὄπλων δὲ μηδένα καταφανῆ εἶναι, ἐκάλεσε τοὺς ἀγγέλους, καὶ αὐτὸς τε προῆλθε τοὺς τε εὐοπλοτάτους ἔχων καὶ εὐειδεστάτους τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις στρατηγοῖς ταῦτὰ ἔφρασεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν πρὸς τοῖς ἀγγέλοις, ἀνηρώτα πρῶτα τί βούλουτο. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι περὶ σπονδῶν ἦκοιεν ἄνδρες οἵτινες ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται τά τε παρὰ βασιλέως τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἀπαγγεῖλαι καὶ τὰ παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων βασιλεῖ. ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἄπαγγέλλετε τοῖνυν αὐτῷ ὅτι μάχης δεῖ πρῶτον· ἄριστον γὰρ οὐκ ἔστιν οὐδ' ὁ τολμήσων περὶ σπονδῶν λέγειν τοῖς Ἑλλησι μὴ πορίσας ἄριστον. ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ ἄγγελοι ἀπήλυνον, καὶ ἦκον ταχύ· ὦ καὶ δῆλον ἦν ὅτι ἐγγὺς που βασιλεὺς ἦν ἢ ἄλλος τις ὃ ἐπετέτακτο ταῦτα πράττειν· ἔλεγον δὲ ὅτι εἰκότα δοκοῖεν λέγειν βασιλεῖ, καὶ ἦκοιεν ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες οἱ αὐτούς, ἐὰν σπονδαὶ γένωνται, ἄξουσιν ἔνθεν ἔξουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὁ δὲ ἡρώτα εἰ αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀνδράσι σπένδοιτο τοῖς ἰοῦσι καὶ ἀπιούσιν, ἢ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἔσονται σπονδαί. οἱ δέ, Ἄπασιν, ἔφασαν, μέχρι ἂν βασιλεῖ τὰ παρ' ὑμῶν διαγγεληθῇ. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα εἶπον, μεταστησάμενος αὐτοὺς ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο· καὶ ἐδόκει ταχὺ τὰς σπονδὰς ποιέισθαι καὶ καθ' ἡσυχίαν ἐλθεῖν τε ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια καὶ λαβεῖν. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπε· Δοκεῖ μὲν κάμοι ταῦτα· οὐ μέντοι ταχύ γε ἀπαγγελῶ, ἀλλὰ διατρέψω ἔστ' ἂν ὀκνήσωσιν οἱ ἄγγελοι μὴ ἀποδόξῃ ἡμῖν τὰς σπονδὰς ποιήσασθαι·

ἄχρι ἂν σχολάσῃ. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέστησε τὸ στράτευμα ὡς καλῶς ἔχειν ὀρᾶσθαι πάντῃ φάλαγγα πυκνήν, ἐκ τῶν ὄπλων δὲ μηδένα καταφανῆ εἶναι, ἐκάλεσε τοὺς ἀγγέλους, καὶ αὐτὸς τε προῆλθε τοὺς τε εὐοπλοτάτους ἔχων καὶ εὐειδεστάτους τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις στρατηγοῖς **identical**, ἴασεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν πρὸς τοῖς ἀγγέλοις, ἀνηρώτα πρῶτα τί βούλουτο. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι περὶ σπονδῶν ἤκοιεν ἄνδρες οἵτινες ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται τά τε παρὰ βασιλέως τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἀπαγγεῖλαι καὶ τὰ παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων βασιλεῖ. ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἀπαγγέλλετε τοῖνυν αὐτῷ ὅτι μάχης δεῖ πρῶτον· ἄριστον γὰρ οὐκ ἔστω οὐδ' ὁ τολμήσων περὶ σπονδῶν λέγειν τοῖς Ἑλλησι μὴ πορίσασ ἄριστον. ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ ἄγγελοι **expel, ex-clude, ward off** ἡ ἦκον ταχύ· ᾧ καὶ δῆλον ἦν ὅτι ἐγγύς που βασιλεὺς ἦν ἄλλος τις ᾧ ἐπετέτακτο ταῦτα πράττειν· ἔλεγον δὲ ὅτι εἰκότα δοκοῖεν λέγειν βασιλεῖ, καὶ ἤκοιεν ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες οἱ αὐτούς, ἐὰν σπονδαὶ γένωνται, **ἄγνομι?: break ; or ἄγω?: lead, bring** ἔνθεν ἔξουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὁ δὲ ἠρώτα εἰ αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀνδράσι **libate** τοῖς ἰοῦσι καὶ ἀπιούσιν, ἢ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἔσονται σπονδαί. οἱ δέ, Ἄπασιν, ἔφασαν, μέχρι ἂν βασιλεῖ τὰ παρ' ὑμῶν διαγγελθῆ. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα εἶπον, **change; take a stand** ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο· καὶ ἐδόκει ταχὺ τὰς σπονδὰς ποιεῖσθαι καὶ καθ' **peace and quiet** τε ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια καὶ λαβεῖν. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπε· Δοκεῖ μὲν κάμοι ταῦτα· οὐ μέντοι ταχύ γε ἀπαγγελῶ, ἀλλὰ **wear down, delay** **hesitate** οἱ ἄγγελοι μὴ ἀποδόξῃ ἡμῖν τὰς σπονδὰς ποιήσασθαι·

the troops so that from every side they might present the appearance of a compact battle line without a single unarmed man in sight, he summoned the ambassadors, and himself went forward to meet them with the soldiers, who for choice accoutrement and noble aspect were the flower of his force; a course which he had invited the other generals also to adopt.

And now, being face to face with the ambassadors, he questioned them as to what their wishes were. They replied that they had come to arrange a truce, and were persons competent to carry proposals from the king to the Hellenes and from the Hellenes to the king. He returned answer to them: "Take back word then to your master, that we need a battle first, for we have had no breakfast; and he will be a brave man who will dare mention the word 'truce' to Hellenes without providing them with breakfast." With this message the heralds rode off, but were back again in no time, which was a proof that the king, or some one appointed by him to transact the business, was hard by. They reported that "the message seemed reasonable to the king; they had now come bringing guides who, if a truce were arranged, would conduct them where they would get provisions." Clearchus inquired "whether the truce was offered to the individual men merely as they went and came, or to all alike." "To all," they replied, "until the king receives your final answer." When they had so spoken, Clearchus, having removed the ambassadors, held a council; and it was resolved to make a truce at once, and then quietly to go and secure provisions; and Clearchus said: "I agree to the resolution; still I do not propose to announce it at once, but to wile away time till the ambassadors begin to fear that we have decided against the truce; though I suspect," he added, "the same fear will be operative on the minds of our soldiers also." As soon as the right moment seemed to have arrived, he delivered his answer in favour

*vocabulary*

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp.~sin  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ῶ) show, point out; (mid) declare  
**ἀριστερός** left-hand  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**δόρου** δουρός (n, 3) spear shaft, plank ~druid  
**ἐκκόπτω** cut out, down, off  
**ἐκπίπτω** fall out of  
**ἐμβαίνω** step on, board  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also τυγχάνω  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also ἰθύς  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide, chief  
**ἡμέτερος** our, my  
**κώμη** village  
**μέντοι** however

**ᾄθεν** whence  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οὔμαι, οὔομαι  
**οἶνος** wine ~wine  
**παίζω** play  
**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πλήρης** full, complete; (+gen) full of  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian  
**προφαίνω** show; pass: appear  
**σίτος** (m/n) grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**σπένδω** libate (σπονδή); also ἀποσπένδω  
**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry ~repudiate  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τάφρος** (f) ditch, trench  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φόβος** fear, rout, panic ~phobia  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**ῥορα** season, time ~horoscope

οἰμαί γε μέντοι, ἔφη, καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις στρατιώταις τὸν αὐτὸν φόβον παρέσεσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει καιρὸς εἶναι, ἀπήγγελλεν ὅτι σπένδοιτο, καὶ εὐθὺς ἠγγεῖσθαι ἐκέλευε πρὸς τὰπιτήδεια. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἠγοῦντο, Κλέαρχος μέντοι ἐπορεύετο τὰς μὲν σπονδὰς ποιησάμενος, τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ἔχων ἐν τάξει, καὶ αὐτὸς ὠπισθοφυλάκει. καὶ ἐνετύγχανον τάφροις καὶ αὐλῶσιν ὕδατος πλήρεις, ὡς μὴ δύνασθαι διαβαίνειν ἄνευ γεφυρῶν· ἀλλ' ἐποιοῦντο διαβάσεις ἐκ τῶν φοινίκων οἱ ἦσαν ἐκπεπτωκότες, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἐξέκοπτον. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἦν Κλέαρχον καταμαθεῖν ὡς ἐπεστάται, ἐν μὲν τῇ ἀριστερᾷ χειρὶ τὸ δόρυ ἔχων, ἐν δὲ τῇ δεξιᾷ βακτηριᾷ· καὶ εἴ τις αὐτῷ δοκοίη τῶν πρὸς τοῦτο τεταγμένων βλακεύειν, ἐκλεγόμενος τὸν ἐπιτήδειον ἔπαισεν ἄν, καὶ ἅμα αὐτὸς προσελάμβανεν εἰς τὸν πηλὸν ἐμβαίνων· ὥστε πᾶσιν αἰσχύνῃν εἶναι μὴ οὐ συσπουδάξειν. καὶ ἐτάχθησαν πρὸς αὐτὸ οἱ εἰς τριάκοντα ἔτη γεγονότες· ἐπεὶ δὲ Κλέαρχον ἐώρων σπουδάζοντα, προσελάμβανον καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι. πολὺ δὲ μᾶλλον ὁ Κλέαρχος ἔσπευδεν, ὑποπτεύων μὴ αἰεὶ οὕτω πλήρεις εἶναι τὰς τάφρους ὕδατος οὐ γὰρ ἦν ὥρα οἷα τὸ πεδίον ἄρδειν, ἀλλ' ἵνα ἤδη πολλὰ προφαίνοιτο τοῖς Ἕλλησι δεινὰ εἰς τὴν πορείαν, τούτου ἕνεκα βασιλέα ὑπώπτευεν ἐπὶ τὸ πεδίον τὸ ὕδωρ ἀφεικέναι. πορευόμενοι δὲ ἀφίκοντο εἰς κώμας ὅθεν ἀπέδειξαν οἱ ἠγεμόνες λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ἐνῆν δὲ σῖτος πολὺς καὶ οἶνος φοινίκων καὶ ὄξος εἴλητον ἀπὸ τῶν αὐτῶν. αὐταὶ δὲ αἱ βάλανοι τῶν φοινίκων οἷας μὲν ἐν τοῖς Ἕλλησι εἴστω ἰδεῖν τοῖς

οἶμαί γε μέντοι, ἔφη, καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις στρατιώταις τὸν αὐτὸν φόβον  
 παρέσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει καιρὸς εἶναι, ἀπήγγελλεν ὅτι libate  
 καὶ εὐθὺς ἠγείσθαι ἐκέλευε πρὸς τὰπιτήδεια. καὶ οἱ μὲν go before, lead  
 Κλέαρχος μέντοι ἐπορεύετο τὰς μὲν σπονδὰς ποιησάμενος, τὸ δὲ  
 στρατεύμα ἔχων ἐν τάξει, καὶ αὐτὸς ὠπισθοφυλάκει. καὶ meet, find, obtain; suc-  
 τάφροις καὶ ἀλῶσιν ὕδατος full, complete; δύνασθαι ἐπι- succeed, happen, happen to  
 ἄνεν dam, dike; bridge οὖντο crossing, ἐκ τῶν red, red dye; ἴσαν  
 |fall out of |passage |palm tree  
 τούς δὲ καὶ cut out, down, off αὐθὰ ἦν Κλέαρχον  
 καταμαθεῖν ὡς ἐπεστάται, ἐν μὲν τῇ ἀριστερᾷ χειρὶ τὸ δόρυ ἔχων,  
 ἐν δὲ τῇ δεξιᾷ? right-hand ; or τις αὐτῷ δοκοίη τῶν πρὸς τοῦτο  
 δεξιός?: right-hand  
 τεταγμένων βλακεύειν, ἐκλεγόμενος τὸν ἐπιτήδειον play ἄν, καὶ  
 ἅμα αὐτὸς προσελάμβανεν εἰς τὸν πηλός? step on, board : πᾶσιν  
 αἰσχύνῃν εἶναι μὴ οὐ συσπουδάξειν. οἱ αἱ ἐτάχθησαν πρὸς αὐτὸ οἱ  
 εἰς τριάκοντα ἔτης?: fellow townsmen; shake or ἔτος?: year ; or τίθημι?: put; cause;  
 προσελάμβανον καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι. ἀλλὰ δὲ μᾶλλον ὁ Κλέαρχος  
 ἔσπευδεν, guess, observe, always, full, complete; τάφρους ὕδατος  
 οὐ γὰρ ἦν ὄφρα οἷα τὸ πεδῖον ἄρδεν, ἀλλ' ἵνα ἤδη πολλὰ show; pass: appear  
 τοῖς Ἕλλησι δεινὰ εἰς τὴν πορείαν, τούτου ἕνεκα βασιλέα guess, observe, be sus-  
 ἐπὶ τὸ πεδῖον τὸ ὕδωρ ἀφεικέναι. πορευόμενοι δὲ ἀφίκοντο εἰς village  
 ὄθεν ἀπέδειξαν οἱ ἠγεμόνες λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. be in `εἰ σίτος  
 πολὺς καὶ οἶνος red, red dye; ὄξος ἐψητὸν ἀπὸ τῶν αὐτῶν. αὐταὶ δὲ  
 αἱ acorn τῶν red, red dye; ; μὲν ἐν τοῖς Ἕλλησι ἔστιν ἰδεῖν τοῖς  
 palm tree

of the truce, and bade the ambassadors at once conduct them to the provisions.

So these led the way; and Clearchus, without relaxing precaution, in spite of having secured a truce, marched after them with his army in line and himself in command of the rearguard. Over and over again they encountered trenches and conduits so full of water that they could not be crossed without bridges; but they contrived well enough for these by means of trunks of palm trees which had fallen, or which they cut down for the occasion. And here Clearchus's system of superintendence was a study in itself; as he stood with a spear in his left hand and a stick in the other; and when it seemed to him there was any dawdling among the parties told off to the work, he would pick out the right man and down would come the stick; nor, at the same time, was he above plunging into the mud and lending a hand himself, so that every one else was forced for very shame to display equal alacrity. The men told off for the business were the men of thirty years of age; but even the elder men, when they saw the energy of Clearchus, could not resist lending their aid also. What stimulated the haste of Clearchus was the suspicion in his mind that these trenches were not, as a rule, so full of water, since it was not the season to irrigate the plain; and he fancied that the king had let the water on for the express purpose of vividly presenting to the Hellenes the many dangers with which their march was threatened at the very start.

Proceeding on their way they reached some villages, where their guides indicated to them that they would find provisions. They were found to contain plenty of corn, and wine made from palm dates, and an acidulated beverage extracted by boiling from the same fruit. As to the palm nuts or dates themselves, it was noticeable that the sort which we are accustomed



*vocabulary*

**ἀγγελία** message, news ~angel  
**ἀγγέλλω** carry a message, announce  
 ~angel  
**αἰίδω** sing; also αἰοδιάω  
**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology  
**ἀμήχανος** unremediable, helpless  
 (μῆχος)  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἀποκτείνω** kill  
**ἀποτίθημι** put away  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βάββαρος** non-Greek  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**γείτων** -ονος (m, 3) neighbor  
**διό** because of which  
**διώκω** chase  
**ἐγκέφαλος** brain  
**εἶδος** -εος (n, 3) appearance, form  
 ~-oid  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐρμηνεύς** (m) interpreter  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἤλεκτρον** amber ~electron

**ἥμερος** domesticated  
**θαυμάζω** marvel ~theater; also  
**ἀποθαυμάζω**  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**κάλλος** -υς (n, 3) beauty  
**μέγεθος** -υς (n, 3) tall, big (person)  
**ξηραίνω** dry up  
**ὅθεν** whence  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οἶομαι,  
 οἶομαι  
**ὅλος** complete, generally, actually  
**ὄψις** ὄψεως (f) sight, view  
 ~thanatopsis  
**πάσσω** sprinkle; insert in a web  
**πείρω** pierce, run through ~pierce  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**πως** somehow  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὕμετερος** yours  
**φοῖνιξ** -κος (m) red, red dye; palm tree  
**χαρίζομαι** gratify someone ~charisma  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω

οικέταις απέκειντο, αἱ δὲ τοῖς δεσπόταις ἀποκείμεναι ἦσαν ἀπόλεκτοι, θαυμάσαι τοῦ κάλλους καὶ μεγέθους, ἡ δὲ ὄψις ἠλέκτρον οὐδὲν διέφερεν· τὰς δὲ τινὰς ξηραίνοντες τραγήματα ἀπετίθεισαν. καὶ ἦν καὶ παρὰ πότον ἡδὺ μὲν, κεφαλαγὲς δέ. ἐνταῦθα καὶ τὸν ἐγκέφαλον τοῦ φοίνικος πρῶτον ἔφαγον οἱ στρατιῶται, καὶ οἱ πολλοὶ ἐθαύμασαν τό τε εἶδος καὶ τὴν ιδιότητα τῆς ἡδονῆς. ἦν δὲ σφόδρα καὶ τοῦτο κεφαλαγὲς. ὁ δὲ φοῖνιξ ὅθεν ἐξαιρεθεῖη ὁ ἐγκέφαλος ὅλος ἠυαίνεται.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἦκε Τισσαφέρνης καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλέως γυναικὸς ἀδελφὸς καὶ ἄλλοι Πέρσαι τρεῖς· δοῦλοι δὲ πολλοὶ εἶποντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοί, ἔλεγε πρῶτος Τισσαφέρνης δι' ἑρμηνέως τοιάδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, γείτων οἰκῶ τῇ Ἑλλάδι, καὶ ἐπεὶ ὑμᾶς εἶδον εἰς πολλὰ καὶ ἀμήχανα πεπτωκότας, εὕρημα ἐποιησάμην εἴ πως δυναίμην παρὰ βασιλέως αἰτήσασθαι δοῦναι ἐμοὶ ἀποσῶσαι ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. οἶμαι γὰρ ἂν οὐκ ἀχαρίστως μοι ἔχειν οὔτε πρὸς ὑμῶν οὔτε πρὸς τῆς πάσης Ἑλλάδος. ταῦτα δὲ γνοὺς ἠτούμην βασιλέα, λέγων αὐτῷ ὅτι δικαίως ἂν μοι χαρίζοιτο, ὅτι αὐτῷ Κῦρόν τε ἐπιστρατεύοντα πρῶτος ἠγγεῖλα καὶ βοήθειαν ἔχων ἅμα τῇ ἀγγελίᾳ ἀφικόμην, καὶ μόνος τῶν κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας τεταγμένων οὐκ ἔφυγον, ἀλλὰ διήλασα καὶ συνέμειξα βασιλεῖ ἐν τῷ ὑμετέρῳ στρατοπέδῳ ἔνθα βασιλεὺς ἀφίκετο, ἐπεὶ Κῦρον ἀπέκτεινε καὶ τοὺς ξὺν Κύρῳ βαρβάρους ἐδίωξε σὺν τοῖσδε τοῖς παροῦσι

οϊκέταις ἀπέκειντο, αἱ δὲ τοῖς δεσπότηαις ἀποκείμεναι ἦσαν ἀπόλεκτοι,  
 θαυμάσαι τοῦ |beauty καὶ μεγέθους, ἡ δὲ ὄψις |amber οὐδὲν  
 διέφερεν· τὰς δὲ τινὰς |dry up τραγήματα |put away καὶ ἦν  
 καὶ παρὰ πότον ἡδὺν μὲν, κεφαλαλγὲς δέ. ἐνταῦθα καὶ τὸν |brain  
 τοῦ |red, red dye; τον ἔφαγον οἱ στρατιῶται, καὶ οἱ πολλοὶ ἐθαύμασαν  
 |palm tree  
 τό τε εἶδος καὶ τὴν ιδιότητα τῆς ἡδονῆς. ἦν δὲ σφόδρα καὶ τοῦτο  
 κεφαλαλγὲς. ὁ δὲ |red, red dye; ᾗραιθείη ὁ |brain ὅλος |to dry  
 |palm tree  
 Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἦκε  
 Τισσαφέρνης καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλέως γυναικὸς ἀδελφὸς καὶ ἄλλοι Πέρσαι  
 τρεῖς· δοῦλοι δὲ πολλοὶ εἶποντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς οἱ τῶν  
 Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοί, ἔλεγε πρῶτος Τισσαφέρνης δι' |interpreter ἰάδε.  
 Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, |neighbor ἰὼ τῇ Ἑλλάδι, καὶ ἐπεὶ ὑμᾶς  
 εἶδον εἰς πολλὰ καὶ |unremedia- ττωκότας, εὕρημα ἐποησάμην εἰ  
 |ble, helpless  
 πως |enter, put on, ἀ βασιλέως αἰτήσασθαι δοῦναι ἐμοὶ ἀποσῶσαι  
 |strip off  
 ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. οἶμαι γὰρ ἂν οὐκ ἀχαρίστως μοι ἔχειν  
 οὔτε πρὸς ὑμῶν οὔτε πρὸς τῆς πάσης Ἑλλάδος. ταῦτα δὲ γνοὺς  
 ἡτούμην βασιλέα, λέγων αὐτῷ ὅτι δικαίως ἂν μοι χαρίζοιτο, ὅτι  
 αὐτῷ Κῦρόν τε ἐπιστρατεύοντα πρῶτος |carry a mes- ἠθήειαν ἔχων  
 |sage, an-  
 ἅμα τῇ |message, news, ἦν, καὶ μόνος |nounce ἰτὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας  
 τεταγμένων οὐκ ἔφυγον, ἀλλὰ |drive καὶ συνέμειξα βασιλεῖ ἐν τῷ  
 |through,  
 ὑμετέρῳ στρατοπέδῳ ἔνθα βα|over ἰφίκετο, ἐπεὶ Κῦρον ἀπέκτεινε  
 καὶ τοὺς ξὺν Κύρῳ βαρβάρους ἐδίωξε σὺν τοῖσδε τοῖς παροῦσι

to see in Hellas were set aside for the domestic servants; those put aside for the masters are picked specimens, and are simply marvellous for their beauty and size, looking like great golden lumps of amber; some specimens they dried and preserved as sweetmeats. Sweet enough they were as an accompaniment of wine, but apt to give headache. Here, too, for the first time in their lives, the men tasted the brain of the palm. No one could help being struck by the beauty of this object, and the peculiarity of its delicious flavour; but this, like the dried fruits, was exceedingly apt to give headache. When this cabbage or brain has been removed from the palm the whole tree withers from top to bottom.

In these villages they remained three days, and a deputation from the great king arrived— Tissaphernes and the king's brother in law and three other Persians— with a retinue of many slaves. As soon as the generals of the Hellenes had presented themselves, Tissaphernes opened the proceedings with the following speech, through the lips of an interpreter: “Men of Hellas, I am your next-door neighbour in Hellas. Therefore was it that I, when I saw into what a sea of troubles you were fallen, regarded it as a godsend, if by any means I might obtain, as a boon from the king, the privilege of bringing you back in safety to your own country: and that, I take it, will earn me gratitude from you and all Hellas. In this determination I preferred my request to the king; I claimed it as a favour which was fairly my due; for was it not I who first announced to him the hostile approach of Cyrus? who supported that announcement by the aid I brought; who alone among the officers confronted with the Hellenes in battle did not flee, but charged right through and united my troops with the king inside your camp, where he was arrived, having slain Cyrus; it

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**αἰσχύνω** spoil, disgrace  
**ἀκέομαι** heal, fix  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
**ἀποκτείνω** kill  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω, ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐμέω** vomit ~emetic  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἐνθάδε** here, hither  
**ἔρομαι** ask, search through; also ἀνέρομαι, εἴρομαι, ἐξείρομαι, ἐξέρομαι  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**θνήσκω** die ~euthanasia; also ἀποθνήσκω  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**μέντοι** however  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**οἰδέω** swell  
**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οἴομαι, οἶτομαι

**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειρώω** try, test ~empirical; also πειρητίζω  
**πιστός** faithful (πείθω)  
**πόα ποιῆς** grass  
**ποῖος** what kind  
**πορεύω** carry  
**προδίδωμι** betray  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**πρόφασις** -ος (f) proposal; as occasioned by  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign  
**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult  
**τρίτος** third  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπάρχω** start, lead, set an example  
**ὑπέχω** hold out one's hand; submit to; also ὑποσχέθω  
**ὑπίσχομαι** promise, agree to do; also ὑπισχνέομαι  
**ὑστεραίος** the next; later  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χώρα** place

νῦν μετ' ἐμοῦ, οἵπερ αὐτῷ εἰσι πιστότατοι. καὶ περὶ μὲν τούτων  
 ὑπέσχετό μοι βουλευέσθαι· ἐρέσθαι δέ με ὑμᾶς ἐκέλευεν ἐλθόντα  
 τίνος ἔνεκεν ἐστρατεύσατε ἐπ' αὐτόν. καὶ συμβουλεύω ὑμῖν μετρίως  
 ἀποκρίνασθαι, ἵνα μοι εὐπρακτότερον ἢ ἐάν τι δύνωμαι ἀγαθὸν ὑμῖν  
 παρ' αὐτοῦ διαπράξασθαι. πρὸς ταῦτα μεταστάντες οἱ Ἕλληνες  
 ἐβουλεύοντο· καὶ ἀπεκρίναντο, Κλέαρχος δ' ἔλεγεν· Ἡμεῖς οὔτε  
 συνήλθομεν ὡς βασιλεῖ πολεμήσοντες οὔτε ἐπορευόμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλέα,  
 ἀλλὰ πολλὰς προφάσεις Κῦρος ἤρρισκεν, ὡς καὶ σὺ εἶδιστα, ἵνα  
 ὑμᾶς τε ἀπαρασκευάστους λάβῃ καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐνθάδε ἀγάγοι. ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἤδη  
 αὐτὸν ἐωρῶμεν ἐν δεινῷ ὄντα, ἡσχύνθημεν καὶ θεοὺς καὶ ἀνθρώπους  
 προδοῦναι αὐτόν, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ παρέχοντες ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς  
 εὖ ποιεῖν. ἐπεὶ δὲ Κῦρος τέθνηκεν, οὔτε βασιλεῖ ἀντιποιοῦμεθα τῆς  
 ἀρχῆς οὔτ' ἔστιν ὅτου ἔνεκα βουλοίμεθα ἂν τὴν βασιλέως χώραν  
 κακῶς ποιεῖν, οὐδ' αὐτὸν ἀποκτεῖναι ἂν ἐθέλοιμεν, πορευοίμεθα δ' ἂν  
 οἴκαδε, εἴ τις ἡμᾶς μὴ λυποίῃ· ἀδικοῦντα μέντοι πειρασόμεθα σὺν  
 τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμύνασθαι· ἐὰν μέντοι τις ἡμᾶς καὶ εὖ ποιῶν ὑπάρχη,  
 καὶ τούτου εἰς γε δύναμιν οὐχ ἡττησόμεθα εὖ ποιοῦντες. ὁ μὲν  
 οὕτως εἶπεν· ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης, Ταῦτα, ἔφη, ἐγὼ ἀπαγγελῶ  
 βασιλεῖ καὶ ὑμῖν πάλιν τὰ παρ' ἐκείνου· μέχρι δ' ἂν ἐγὼ ἦκω αἰ  
 σπονδαὶ μενόντων· ἀγορὰν δὲ ἡμεῖς παρέξομεν. καὶ εἰς μὲν τὴν  
 ὑστεραίαν οὐχ ἦκεν· ὥσθ' οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐφρόντιζον· τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἦκων  
 ἔλεγεν ὅτι διαπεπραγμένος ἦκοι παρὰ βασιλέως δοθῆναι αὐτῷ σῆξιν

νῦν μετ' ἐμοῦ, οἵπερ αὐτῶ εἰσι πιστότατοι. καὶ περὶ μὲν τούτων

|**ὑπέχω?: hold out one's hand;|ask, search through** ἔκελευεν ἐλθόντα  
submit to ; or **ὑπίσχομαι?:**

|**promise, agree to do:** ὕσατε ἐπ' αὐτόν. καὶ |**give advice; ἠν μετρίως**  
(mid) consult

ἀποκρίνασθαι, ἵνα μοι εὐπρακτότερον ἢ ἑάν τι δύνωμαι ἀγαθὸν ὑμῖν

παρ' αὐτοῦ διαπραξάσθαι. πρὸς ταῦτα μεταστάντες οἱ Ἕλληνες

ἐβουλεύοντο· καὶ ἀπεκρίναντο, Κλέαρχος δ' ἔλεγεν· Ἡμεῖς οὔτε

συνήλθομεν ὡς βασιλεῖ πολεμήσοντες οὔτε ἐπορευόμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλέα,

ἀλλὰ πολλὰς |**proposal; ἄσχος** ἠΰρισκεν, ὡς καὶ σὺ εἶ οἶσθα, ἵνα  
occasioned by

ὑμᾶς τε ἀπαρασκευάστους λάβοι καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐνθάδε ἀγάγοι. ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἤδη

αὐτὸν ἐωρῶμεν ἐν δεινῶ ὄντα, ἠσχύνθημεν καὶ θεοὺς καὶ ἀνθρώπους

|**betray** αὐτόν, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ παρέχοντες ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς

εἶ ποιεῖν. ἐπεὶ δὲ Κῦρος |**die** οὔτε βασιλεῖ ἀντιποιοῦμεθα τῆς

ἀρχῆς οὔτ' ἔστιν ὅτου ἕνεκα βουλοίμεθα ἂν τὴν βασιλέως χώραν

κακῶς ποιεῖν, οὐδ' αὐτὸν ἀποκτεῖναι ἂν ἐθέλοιμεν, πορευοίμεθα δ' ἂν

οἴκαδε, εἴ τις ἡμᾶς μὴ λυποίῃ· ἀδικοῦντα μέντοι πειρασόμεθα σὺν

τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμύνασθαι· ἐὰν μέντοι τις ἡμᾶς καὶ εἶ |**πόα?: ἄσχος; or ποῖος?:**

καὶ τούτου εἷς γε δύναμιν οὐχ ἠττησόμεθα εἶ ποιοῦντες. ὁ μὲν  
|**what kind**

οὕτως εἶπεν· |**ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix ; or, s,** Ταῦτα, ἔφη, ἐγὼ ἀπαγγελῶ

βασιλεῖ καὶ ὑμῖν πάλιν τὰ παρ' ἐκείνου· μέχρι δ' ἂν ἐγὼ ἦκω αἰ

σπονδαὶ μερόντων· ἀγορὰν δὲ ἡμεῖς παρέξομεν. καὶ εἰς μὲν τὴν

|**the next; later** ἦκεν· ὥσθ' οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐφρόντιζον· τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἦκων

ἔλεγεν ὅτι διαπεπραγμένος ἦκει παρὰ βασιλέως δοθῆναι αὐτῶ σῆζεν

was I, lastly, who gave chase to the barbarians under Cyrus, with the help of those here present with me at this moment, which are also among the trustiest followers of our lord the king. Now, I counsel you to give a moderate answer, so that it may be easier for me to carry out my design, if haply I may obtain from him some good thing on your behalf.”

Thereupon the Hellenes retired and took counsel. Then they answered, and Clearchus was their spokesman: “We neither mustered as a body to make war against the king, nor was our march conducted with that object. But it was Cyrus, as you know, who invented many and divers pretexts, that he might take you off your guard, and transport us hither. Yet, after a while, when we saw that he was in sore straits, we were ashamed in the sight of God and man to betray him, whom we had permitted for so long a season to benefit us. But now that Cyrus is dead, we set up no claim to his kingdom against the king himself; there is neither person nor thing for the sake of which we would care to injure the king’s country; we would not choose to kill him if we could, rather we would march straight home, if we were not molested; but, God helping us, we will retaliate on all who injure us. On the other hand, if any be found to benefit us, we do not mean to be outdone in kindly deeds, as far as in us lies.”

So he spoke, and Tissaphernes listened and replied: “That answer will I take back to the king and bring you word from him again. Until I come again, let the truce continue, and we will furnish you with a market.” All next day he did not come back, and the Hellenes were troubled with anxieties, but on the third day he arrived with the news that he had obtained from the



*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
**ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery  
 (ἀνάγκη)  
**ἄξιος** worthy ~axiom  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀρχήν** (adv) originally  
**αὖ** again, then again; next ~after  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
 ἀφήνω  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**δεξιὰ** right-hand  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**εἰκός** οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἐπειδάν** when

**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἦμερος** domesticated  
**μηδέ** and not; not even  
**ὄμνυμι** swear  
**ὅπου** where  
**πάνυ** altogether, very  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πιστός** faithful (πεῖθω)  
**πορεύω** carry  
**ποτή** flight?  
**ποτός** potable  
**πρίαμαι** buy  
**σίτος** (m/n) grain, bread, food  
 ~parasite  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**τελέω** fulfill; pf pass: be feasible  
**τέλος** -υς (n, 3) end; military post  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**φιλία** friendship  
**χώρα** place

τοὺς Ἑλληνας, καίπερ πάνυ πολλῶν ἀντιλεγόντων ὡς οὐκ ἄξιον εἶη βασιλεῖ ἀφεῖναι τοὺς ἐφ' ἑαυτὸν στρατευσαμένους. τέλος δὲ εἶπε· Καὶ νῦν ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν πιστὰ λαβεῖν παρ' ἡμῶν ἢ μὴν φιλίαν παρέξειν ὑμῖν τὴν χώραν καὶ ἀδόλως ἀπάξειν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀγορὰν παρέχοντας· ὅπου δ' ἂν μὴ ἦ πρίασθαι, λαμβάνειν ὑμᾶς ἐκ τῆς χώρας εἰσομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὑμᾶς δὲ αὖ ἡμῖν δεήσει ὁμόσαι ἢ μὴν πορεύεσθαι ὡς διὰ φιλίας ἀσινῶς σῖτα καὶ ποτὰ λαμβάνοντας ὅπότεν μὴ ἀγορὰν παρέχωμεν, εἰ δὲ παρέχωμεν ἀγορὰν, ὠνουμένους ἔξειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ ὤμοσαν καὶ δεξιὰς ἔδοσαν Τισσαφέρνης καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλείως γυναικὸς ἀδελφὸς τοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς καὶ ἔλαβον παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Τισσαφέρνης εἶπε· Νῦν μὲν δὴ ἄπειμι ὡς βασιλέα· ἐπειδὴν δὲ διαπράξωμαι ἃ δέομαι, ἦξω συσκευασάμενος ὡς ἀπάξω ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ αὐτὸς ἀπιὼν ἐπὶ τὴν ἑμαυτοῦ ἀρχήν.

## 2.4

Μετὰ ταῦτα περιέμενον Τισσαφέρνην οἱ τε Ἑλληνες καὶ ὁ Ἀριαῖος ἐγγὺς ἀλλήλων ἐστρατοπεδευμένοι ἡμέρας πλείους ἢ εἴκοσιν. ἐν δὲ ταύταις ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς Ἀριαῖον καὶ οἱ ἀδελφοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναγκαῖοι καὶ πρὸς τοὺς σὺν ἐκείνῳ Περσῶν τινες, οἱ παρεθάρρυνόν τε καὶ δεξιὰς ἐνίοις παρὰ βασιλέως ἔφερον μὴ μνησικακήσειν

*βασιλέα αὐτοῖς τῆς σὺν Κύρῳ ἐπιστρατείας μηδὲ ἄλλου μηδενὸς τῶν*

τοὺς Ἑλληνας, καίπερ πάνυ πολλῶν ἀντιλεγόντων ὡς οὐκ ἄξιον  
 εἶη βασιλεῖ ἀφεῖναι τοὺς ἐφ' ἑαυτὸν στρατευσαμένους. τέλος δὲ  
 εἶπε· Καὶ νῦν |go forth 'μῖν πιστὰ λαβεῖν παρ' ἡμῶν ἢ μὴν |friendship  
 παρέξειν ὑμῖν τὴν χώραν καὶ ἀδόλως ἀπάξειν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα  
 ἀγορὰν παρέχοντας· ὅπου δ' ἂν μὴ ἢ |buy λαμβάνειν ὑμᾶς  
 ἐκ τῆς χώρας εἰσομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὑμᾶς δὲ αὖ ἡμῖν δεήσει  
 ὁμόσαι ἢ μὴν πορεύεσθαι ὡς διὰ |φιλία?: 'friendship ; ὁρ|ποτή?:  
 λαμβάνοντας ὅποταν μὴ ἀγορὰν παρέχωμεν, εἰ δὲ παρέχ|φίλος?: friend; beloved |flight?  
 ἀγορὰν, ὠνούμενους ἔξεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ ὡμ|ποτός?:  
 καὶ |δεξιό?: 'right-hand ; ὁρ |ης καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλέως γυναικὸς ἀδελφὸς  
 |δεξιός?: right-hand  
 τοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς καὶ ἔλαβον παρὰ τῶν  
 Ἑλλήνων. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Τισσαφέρηνς εἶπε· Νῦν μὲν δὴ ἄπειμι ὡς  
 βασιλέα· |when δὲ διαπράξωμαι ἃ δέομαι, ἥξω συσκευασάμενος  
 ὡς ἀπάξω ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ αὐτὸς ἀπῶν ἐπὶ τὴν ἑμαντοῦ  
 (adv) originally

## 2.4

Μετὰ ταῦτα περιέμενον Τισσαφέρην οἱ τε Ἑλληνες καὶ ὁ Ἀριαῖος  
 ἐγγὺς ἀλλήλων ἐστρατοπεδευμένοι ἡμέρας πλείους ἢ εἴκοσιν. ἐν  
 δὲ ταύταις ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς Ἀριαῖον καὶ οἱ ἀδελφοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι  
 ἀναγκαῖοι καὶ πρὸς τοὺς σὺν ἐκείνῳ Περσῶν τινες, οἱ παρεθάρρυνόν  
 τε καὶ |δεξιό?: 'right-hand ; ὁρ |σιλέως ἔφερον μὴ μνησικακήσειν  
 |δεξιός?: right-hand

*βασιλέα αὐτοῖς τῆς σὺν Κύρῳ ἐπιστρατείας μηδὲ ἄλλου μηδενὸς τῶν*

king the boon he asked; he was permitted to save the Hellenes, though there were many gainsayers who argued that it was not seemly for the king to let those who had marched against him depart in peace. And at last he said: "You may now, if you like, take pledges from us, that we will make the countries through which you pass friendly to you, and will lead you back without treachery into Hellas, and will furnish you with a market; and wherever you cannot purchase, we will permit you to take provisions from the district. You, on your side, must swear that you will march as through a friendly country, without damage—merely taking food and drink wherever we fail to supply a market— or, if we afford a market, you shall only obtain provisions by paying for them." This was agreed to, and oaths and pledges exchanged between them— Tissaphernes and the king's brother in law upon the one side, and the generals and officers of the Hellenes on the other. After this Tissaphernes said: "And now I go back to the king; as soon as I have transacted what I have a mind to, I will come back, ready equipped, to lead you away to Hellas, and to return myself to my own dominion."

## 2.4

After these things the Hellenes and Ariaeus waited for Tissaphernes, being encamped close to one another: for more than twenty days they waited, during which time there came visitors to Ariaeus, his brother and other kinsfolk. To those under him came certain other Persians, encouraging them and bearing pledges to some of them from the king himself— that he would bear no grudge against them on account of the part they bore in the expedition against him with Cyrus, or for aught else of the things which were

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγορις  
**ἀείρω** raise, win ~aorta; also αἴρω  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι, ὄλλυμι  
**ἀρέσκω** make amends  
**αὔθις** back, again, moreover ~after  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also ἀφήκω  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**ἐκὼν** willingly  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also ἰθύς  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**θύρα** door ~door  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also ἵππιοχάρμης

**ἴσος** equal; also ἔϊση  
**κωλύω** hinder, prevent  
**νέος** young; neuter: recently ~neon  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**νόος** mind, intention ~paranoia  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**ὅθεν** whence  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πού** no doubt; somewhere/how  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near  
**προσέχω** direct a thing to  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιά** army  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπάγω** lead  
**φόβος** fear, rout, panic ~phobia

παροιχομένων. τούτων δὲ γιγνομένων ἔνδηλοι ἦσαν οἱ περὶ Ἀριαῖον  
 ἦπτον προσέχοντες τοῖς Ἑλλήσι τὸν νοῦν· ὥστε καὶ διὰ τοῦτο τοῖς μὲν  
 πολλοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων οὐκ ἤρεσκον, ἀλλὰ προσιόντες τῷ Κλεάρχῳ  
 ἔλεγον καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις στρατηγοῖς· Τί μένομεν; ἢ οὐκ ἐπιστάμεθα  
 ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἡμᾶς ἀπολέσαι ἂν περὶ παντὸς ποιήσαιτο, ἴνα καὶ τοῖς  
 ἄλλοις Ἑλλήσι φόβος εἴη ἐπὶ βασιλέα μέγαν στρατεύειν; καὶ νῦν μὲν  
 ἡμᾶς ὑπάγεται μένειν διὰ τὸ διεσπάρθαι αὐτοῦ τὸ στράτευμα· ἐπὶ  
 δὲ πάλιν ἀλισθῆ αὐτῷ ἡ στρατιά, οὐκ ἔστιν ὅπως οὐκ ἐπιθήσεται  
 ἡμῖν. ἴσως δὲ που ἢ ἀποσκάπτει τι ἢ ἀποτειχίζει, ὡς ἄπορος εἴη  
 ἡ ὁδός. οὐ γάρ ποτε ἐκὼν γε βουλήσεται ἡμᾶς ἐλθόντας εἰς τὴν  
 Ἑλλάδα ἀπαγγεῖλαι ὡς ἡμεῖς τοσοῦδε ὄντες ἐνικῶμεν τὸν βασιλέα  
 ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις αὐτοῦ καὶ καταγελάσαντες ἀπήλθομεν. Κλεάρχος  
 δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο τοῖς ταῦτα λέγουσιν· Ἐγὼ ἐνθυμοῦμαι μὲν καὶ ταῦτα  
 πάντα· ἐννοῶ δ' ὅτι εἰ νῦν ἄπιμεν, δόξομεν ἐπὶ πολέμῳ ἀπιέναι  
 καὶ παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς ποιεῖν. ἔπειτα πρῶτον μὲν ἀγορὰν οὐδεὶς  
 παρέξει ἡμῖν οὐδὲ ὄθεν ἐπισιτιούμεθα· αὐθις δὲ ὁ ἡγησόμενος οὐδεὶς  
 ἔσται· καὶ ἅμα ταῦτα ποιούντων ἡμῶν εὐθὺς Ἀριαῖος ἀφεστήξει· ὥστε  
 φίλος ἡμῖν οὐδεὶς λελείφεται, ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ πρόσθεν ὄντες πολέμιοι  
 ἡμῖν ἔσονται. ποταμὸς δ' εἰ μὲν τις καὶ ἄλλος ἄρα ἡμῖν ἐστὶ  
 διαβατέος οὐκ οἶδα· τὸν δ' οὖν Εὐφράτην ἴσμεν ὅτι ἀδύνατον διαβῆναι  
 καλυόντων πολεμίων. οὐ μὲν δὴ ἂν μάχεσθαι γε δέη, ἵππεις εἰσὶν  
 ἡμῖν ζύμμαχοι, τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἵππεις εἰσὶν οἱ πλείστοι καὶ πλείστου



|pass, keep going ὑτων δὲ γιγνομένων ἔνδηλοι ἦσαν οἱ περὶ Ἄριαϊον  
 ἦττον προσέχοντες τοῖς Ἑλλησι τὸν νοῦν· ὥστε καὶ διὰ τοῦτο τοῖς μὲν  
 πολλοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων οὐκ ἤρεσκον, ἀλλὰ προσιόντες τῷ Κλεάρχῳ  
 ἔλεγον καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις στρατηγοῖς· Τί μένομεν; ἢ οὐκ ἀπιστέω?: disbelieve ;  
 ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἡμᾶς ἀπολέσαι ἂν περὶ παντὸς ποιήσαιτο, ἢ οὐκ ἔπίστημι?: stand  
 ἄλλοις Ἑλλησι φόβος εἶη ἐπὶ βασιλέα μέγαν στρατεύειν; καὶ νῦν μὲν  
 ἡμᾶς ὑπάγεται μένειν διὰ τὸ διεσπάρθαι αὐτοῦ τὸ στράτευμα· |when,  
 δὲ πάλιν ἀλισθῆ αὐτῷ ἢ στρατιά, οὐκ ἔστιν ὅπως οὐκ ἐπιθήσεται  
 ἡμῖν. ἴσως δέ που ἢ ἀποσκάπτει τι ἢ ἀποτειχίζει, ὡς ἄπορος εἶη  
 ἢ ὁδός. οὐ γάρ ποτε ἐκὼν γε βουλήσεται ἡμᾶς ἐλθόντας εἰς τὴν  
 Ἑλλάδα ἀπαγγεῖλαι ὡς ἡμεῖς τοσοῖδε ὄντες ἐνικῶμεν τὸν βασιλέα  
 ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις αὐτοῦ καὶ καταγέλασαντες ἀπήλθομεν. Κλεάρχος  
 δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο τοῖς ταῦτα λέγουσιν· Ἐγὼ ἐνθυμοῦμαι μὲν καὶ ταῦτα  
 πάντα· ἐννοῶ δ' ὅτι εἰ νῦν ἄπιμεν, δόξομεν ἐπὶ πολέμῳ ἀπιέναι  
 καὶ παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς ποιεῖν. ἔπειτα πρῶτον μὲν ἀγορὰν οὐδεὶς  
 παρέξει ἡμῖν οὐδὲ ὄθεν ἐπισιτιούμεθα· αὐθις δὲ ὁ ἡγησόμενος οὐδεὶς  
 ἔσται· καὶ ἅμα ταῦτα ποιούντων ἡμῶν εὐθὺς Ἄριαϊος ἀφεστήξει· ὥστε  
 φίλος ἡμῖν οὐδεὶς λελείψεται, ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ πρόσθεν ὄντες πολέμιοι  
 ἡμῖν ἔσονται. ποταμὸς δ' εἰ μὲν τις καὶ ἄλλος ἄρα ἡμῖν ἔστι  
 διαβατέος οὐκ οἶδα· τὸν δ' οὖν Εὐφράτην ἴσμεν ὅτι ἀδύνατον |pass over, cross  
 κωλύοντων πολεμίων. οὐ μὲν δὴ ἂν μάχεσθαι γε δέη, ἵππεῖς εἰσιν  
 ἡμῖν ξύμμαχοι, τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἵππεῖς εἰσιν οἱ πλείστοι καὶ πλείστου

past. Whilst these overtures were being made, Ariaeus and his friends gave manifest signs of paying less attention to the Hellenes, so much so that, if for no other reason, the majority of the latter were not well pleased, and they came to Clearchus and the other generals, asking what they were waiting for. "Do we not know full well," they said, "that the king would give a great deal to destroy us, so that other Hellenes may take warning and think twice before they march against the king. To-day it suits his purpose to induce us to stop here, because his army is scattered; but as soon as he has got together another armament, attack us most certainly he will. How do we know he is not at this moment digging away at trenches, or running up walls, to make our path impassable. It is not to be supposed that he will desire us to return to Hellas with a tale how a handful of men like ourselves beat the king at his own gates, laughed him to scorn, and then came home again." Clearchus replied: "I too am keenly aware of all this; but I reason thus: if we turn our backs now, they will say, we mean war and are acting contrary to the truce, and then what follows? First of all, no one will furnish us with a market or means of providing ourselves with food. Next, we shall have no one to guide us; moreover, such action on our part will be a signal to Ariaeus to hold aloof from us, so that not a friend will be left to us; even those who were formerly our friends will now be numbered with our enemies. What other river, or rivers, we may find we have to cross, I do not know; but this we know, to cross the Euphrates in face of resistance is impossible. You see, in the event of being driven to an engagement, we have no cavalry to help us, but with the enemy it is the reverse— not

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
**ἀείδω** sing; also ἀοιδιάω  
**ἀμφότερος** both ~amphora  
**ἄξιος** worthy ~axiom  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain  
**ἄπιστος** not trusting, not trustworthy  
**ἀποκτείνω** kill  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι, ὄλλυμι  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**γάμος** wedding ~bigamy  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**εἰκός** οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
**εἴκοσι** twenty  
**εἴσω** into; also ἔσω  
**ἑκατόν** hundred  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also ἰθύς  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide, chief

**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat  
**ἴμι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**ὄμνυμι** swear  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πιστός** faithful (πείθω)  
**πλέος** full; also πλεῖος, πλέως  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πληγή** a hit  
**πορεύω** carry  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up station  
**σώζω** save  
**τείχος** -υς (n, 3) outdoor wall; also τειχίον  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard ~phylactery  
**χόρτος** enclosed space for animals  
**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat) ~heir

ἄξιοι· ὥστε νικῶντες μὲν τίνα ἂν ἀποκτείναιμεν; ἡττωμένων δὲ οὐδένα οἶόν τε σωθῆναι. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν βασιλέα, ᾧ οὕτω πολλά ἐστι τὰ σύμμαχα, εἶπερ προθυμείται ἡμᾶς ἀπολέσαι, οὐκ οἶδα ὅ τι δεῖ αὐτὸν ὁμόσαι καὶ δεξιὰν δοῦναι καὶ θεοὺς ἐπιορκῆσαι καὶ τὰ ἑαυτοῦ πιστὰ ἄπιστα ποιῆσαι Ἑλλησί τε καὶ βαρβάρους. τοιαῦτα πολλά ἔλεγεν.

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἦκε Τισσαφέρνης ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν ὡς εἰς οἶκον ἀπιὼν καὶ Ὀρόντας τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν· ἦγε δὲ καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα τὴν βασιλέως ἐπὶ γάμφῳ. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἤδη Τισσαφέρνους ἡγουμένου καὶ ἀγορὰν παρέχοντος ἐπορεύοντο· ἐπορεύετο δὲ καὶ Ἄριαῖος τὸ Κύρου βαρβαρικὸν ἔχων στράτευμα ἅμα Τισσαφέρνει καὶ Ὀρόντα καὶ ξυνεστρατοπεδεύετο σὺν ἐκείνοις. οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες ὑφορῶντες τούτους αὐτοὶ ἐφ' ἑαυτῶν ἐχώρουν ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες. ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο δὲ ἐκάστοτε ἀπέχοντες ἀλλήλων παρασάγγην καὶ πλεόν· ἐφυλάττοντο δὲ ἀμφοτέρω ὡσπερ πολεμίους ἀλλήλους, καὶ εὐθὺς τοῦτο ὑποψίαν παρέιχεν. ἐνίοτε δὲ καὶ ξυλιζόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ καὶ χόρτον καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα ξυλλέγοντες πληγὰς ἐνέτεινον ἀλλήλοις· ὥστε καὶ τοῦτο ἔχθραν παρέιχε. διελθόντες δὲ τρεῖς σταθμοὺς ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τὸ Μηδίας καλούμενον τεῖχος, καὶ παρήλθον εἰς αὐτοῦ. ἦν δὲ ὠκοδομημένον πλίνθοις ὀπταῖς ἐν ἀσφάλτῳ κειμέναις, εὖρος εἴκοσι ποδῶν, ὕψος δὲ ἑκατόν· μῆκος δ' ἐλέγετο εἶναι εἴκοσι παρασάγγαι· ἀπέχει δὲ Βαβυλῶνος οὐ πολὺ. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας

ἄξιοι ὥστε νικῶντες μὲν τίνα ἂν ἀποκτείναιμεν; |(pass) be weaker, be over-  
 οὐδένα οἶόν τε σωθῆναι. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν βασιλέα, ᾧ οὕτω πολλά ἐστι τὰ  
 σύμμαχα, εἶπερ προθυμείται ἡμᾶς ἀπολέσαι, οὐκ οἶδα ὅ τι δεῖ αὐτὸν  
 ὁμόσαι καὶ |δεξιᾶ?: right-hand ; or|swear καὶ τὰ ἑαυτοῦ πιστὰ  
 |δεξιόσ?: right-hand |falsely  
 ἄπιστα ποιῆσαι Ἑλληνσί τε καὶ βαρβάροις. τοιαῦτα πολλά ἔλεγεν.

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἦκε Τισσαφέρνης ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν ὡς εἰς  
 οἶκον ἀπιὼν καὶ Ὀρόντας τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν ἦγε δὲ καὶ τὴν  
 θυγατέρα τὴν βασιλέως ἐπὶ γάμῳ. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἤδη Τισσαφέρνους  
 ἡγουμένου καὶ ἀγορὰν παρέχοντος ἐπορεύοντο· ἐπορεύετο δὲ καὶ  
 Ἀριαῖος τὸ Κύρου |non-Greek ἔχων στρατεύμα ἅμα Τισσαφέρνει  
 καὶ Ὀρόντα καὶ ξυνεστρατοπεδεύετο σὺν ἐκείνοις. οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες  
 ὑφορώντες τούτους αὐτοὶ ἐφ' ἑαυτῶν ἐχώρουν ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες.

|encamp or δὲ ἐκάστοτε ἀπέχοντες ἀλλήλων |Persian  
 take up sta-  
 tion πλέον· ἐφυλάττοντο δὲ ἀμφοτέροι ὥσπερ πολεμίο|km  
 καὶ εὐθὺς τοῦτο |suspicion γαρεύχεν. |sometimes αἱ ξυλιζόμενοι  
 ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ καὶ |enclosed ` `λα τοιαῦτα ξυλλέγοντες πληγὰς  
 |tauten ἀλλήλοις|animals καὶ τοῦτο ἔχθραν παρέιχε. διελθόντες  
 δὲ τρεῖς |cottage; post' ἴκοντο πρὸς τὸ Μηδίας καλούμενον τείχος,  
 καὶ παρήλθον εἴσω αὐτοῦ. ἦν δὲ ὠκοδομημένον πλίνθοις ὀπταῖς  
 ἐν ἀσφάλτῳ κειμέναις, |width; (caps) ὁδῶν, ὕψος δὲ ἑκατόν·  
 |length, ὃ ἐλέγετο εἶναι εἴκοσι |Persian ἀπέχει δὲ Βαβυλῶνος  
 stature οὐ πολὺ. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν |km  
 |cottage; post' |Persian  
 |unit, ca. 5  
 |km

only the most, but the best of his troops are cavalry, so that if we are victorious, we shall kill no one, but if we are defeated, not a man of us can escape. For my part, I cannot see why the king, who has so many advantages on his side, if he desires to destroy us, should swear oaths and tender solemn pledges merely in order to perjure himself in the sight of heaven, to render his word worthless and his credit discreditable the wide world over." These arguments he propounded at length.

Meanwhile Tissaphernes came back, apparently ready to return home; he had his own force with him, and so had Orontas, who was also present, his. The latter brought, moreover, his bride with him, the king's daughter, whom he had just wedded. The journey was now at length fairly commenced. Tissaphernes led the way, and provided a market. They advanced, and Ariaeus advanced too, at the head of Cyrus's Asiatic troops, side by side with Tissaphernes and Orontas, and with these two he also pitched his camp. The Hellenes, holding them in suspicion, marched separately with the guides, and they encamped on each occasion a parasang apart, or rather less; and both parties kept watch upon each other as if they were enemies, which hardly tended to lull suspicion; and sometimes, whilst foraging for wood and grass and so forth on the same ground, blows were exchanged, which occasioned further embitterments. Three stages they had accomplished ere they reached the wall of Media, as it is called, and passed within it. It was built of baked bricks laid upon bitumen. It was twenty feet broad and a hundred feet high, and the length of it was said to be twenty parasangs. It lies at no great distance from Babylon.

From this point

*vocabulary***ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain**ἀπολαμβάνω** receive, recover, take  
aside, cut off**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive**βάρβαρος** non-Greek**γεφύρα** (ῦ) dam, dike; bridge; also  
γέφυρα**γέφυρα** (ῦ) dam, dike; bridge; also  
γεφύρα**δεῖπνον** meal, food; also δεῖπνος**δένδρεον** tree; also δένδρον**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω,

ἐξαποδύνω

**ἐγγύς** near**ἐλαχύς** small; comp.: less ~light**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply**ἐπτά** seven**ἐρωτάω** ask about something**ζεύγνυμι** yoke, join**ζητέω** seek**λύω** loosen, free, ransom ~loose**μέντοι** however**μικρός** small; also σμικρός**ξένος** guest-friend, host, stranger  
~xenophobe**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle**παντοῖος** all kinds of**παράδεισος** park**πεντεκαίδεκα** 15**πιστός** faithful (πείθω)**πλησίος** near, neighboring**πλοῖον** ship**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus**ποῦ** where?**πρό** before, forward ~prolog**προίημι** send forth, abandon**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
come in**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
masc)**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army**τάφρος** (f) ditch, trench**τελέω** fulfill; pf pass: be feasible**τέλος** -υς (n, 3) end; military post**τίη** strengthened form of τί**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
happen, happen to exist; also

ἐντυγχάνω

**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch; also

φυλακεύς

**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard

~phylactery

**χώρα** place

ὀκτώ· καὶ διέβησαν διώρυχας δύο, τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ γεφύρας, τὴν δὲ ἐξευγμένην πλοίοις ἑπτὰ· αὐταὶ δ' ἦσαν ἀπὸ τοῦ Τύγρητος ποταμοῦ· κατετέμνητο δὲ ἐξ αὐτῶν καὶ τάφροι ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν, αἱ μὲν πρῶται μεγάλαι, ἔπειτα δὲ ἐλάττους· τέλος δὲ καὶ μικροὶ ὀχετοί, ὥσπερ ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἐπὶ τὰς μελίσσας· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Τύγρητα ποταμόν· πρὸς ᾧ πόλις ἦν μεγάλη καὶ πολυάνθρωπος ἣ ὄνομα Σιττάκη, ἀπέχουσα τοῦ ποταμοῦ σταδίους πεντεκαίδεκα. οἱ μὲν οὖν Ἕλληνες παρ' αὐτὴν ἐσκήνησαν ἐγγὺς παραδείσου μεγάλου καὶ καλοῦ καὶ δασέος παντοίων δένδρων, οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι διαβεβηκότες τὸν Τύγρητα· οὐ μέντοι καταφανεῖς ἦσαν. μετὰ δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον ἔτυχον ἐν περιπάτῳ ὄντες πρὸ τῶν ὄπλων Πρόξενος καὶ Ξενοφῶν· καὶ προσελθὼν ἄνθρωπός τις ἠρώτησε τοὺς προφύλακας ποῦ ἂν ἴδοι Πρόξενον ἢ Κλέαρχον· Μένωνα δὲ οὐκ ἐζήτει, καὶ ταῦτα παρ' Ἀριαίου ὦν τοῦ Μένωνος ξένου. ἐπεὶ δὲ Πρόξενος εἶπεν ὅτι αὐτός ἐμι ὄν ζητεῖς, εἶπεν ὁ ἄνθρωπος τάδε. Ἐπεμψέ με Ἀριαῖος καὶ Ἀρτάοζος, πιστοὶ ὄντες Κύρω καὶ ὑμῖν εὖνοι, καὶ κελεύουσι φυλάττεσθαι μὴ ὑμῖν ἐπιθῶνται τῆς νυκτὸς οἱ βάρβαροι· ἔστι δὲ στράτευμα πολὺ ἐν τῷ πλησίον παραδείσῳ. καὶ παρὰ τὴν γέφυραν τοῦ Τύγρητος ποταμοῦ πέμψαι κελεύουσι φυλακὴν, ὡς διανοεῖται αὐτὴν λῦσαι Τισσαφέρνης τῆς νυκτὸς, ἐὰν δύνηται, ὡς μὴ διαβῆτε ἀλλ' ἐν μέσῳ ἀποληφθῆτε τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἄγουσιν αὐτὸν παρὰ τὸν Κλέαρχον καὶ



ὀκτώ· καὶ |pass over, cross, as δύο, τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ |dam, dike; bridge  
 |yoke, join πλοίοις ἑπτὰ· αὐταὶ δ' ἦσαν ἀπὸ τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ·  
 κατετέμνητο δὲ ἐξ αὐτῶν καὶ τάφροι ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν, αἱ μὲν πρῶται  
 μεγάλαι, ἔπειτα δὲ ἐλάττους· τέλος δὲ καὶ μικροὶ ὄχετοί, ὥσπερ  
 ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἐπὶ τὰς |millet καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Τίγρητα  
 ποταμόν· πρὸς ᾧ πόλις ἦν μεγάλη καὶ πολυάνθρωπος ἣ ὄνομα  
 Σιττάκη, ἀπέχουσα τοῦ ποταμοῦ |στάδιον?:|15 οἱ μὲν  
 οὖν Ἕλληνας παρ' αὐτὴν ἐσκήνησαν |200 meters| παραδείσου μεγάλου καὶ  
 καλοῦ καὶ δασέος |all kinds|tree |mase) of| ἄρβαροι |pass over, cross  
 |of| στάδιοι?:|  
 τὸν Τίγρητα· οὐ μέντοι καταφανέ|standing  
 ἔτυχον ἐν περιπάτῳ ὄντες πρὸ τῶν |upright, firm; (pl  
 καὶ προσελθὼν ἄνθρωπός τις ἤρ|noun)| εἶπεν τοὺς προφύλακας ποῦ ἂν  
 ἴδοι Πρόξενον ἢ Κλέαρχον· Μένωνα δὲ οὐκ ἐζήτει, καὶ ταῦτα  
 παρ' Ἀριαίου ὡν τοῦ Μένωνος ξένου. ἐπεὶ δὲ Πρόξενος εἶπεν  
 ὅτι αὐτός εἰμι ὃν ζητεῖς, εἶπεν ὁ ἄνθρωπος τάδε. Ἐπεμμέ με  
 Ἀριαῖος καὶ Ἀρτάοζος, πιστοὶ ὄντες Κύρω καὶ ὑμῖν εὖνοι, καὶ  
 κελεύουσι φυλάττεσθαι μὴ ὑμῖν ἐπιθῶνται τῆς νυκτὸς οἱ βάρβαροι·  
 ἔστι δὲ στράτευμα πολὺ ἐν τῷ πλησίον παραδείσῳ. καὶ παρὰ  
 τὴν |dam, dike; bridge|τος ποταμοῦ πέμψαι κελεύουσι φυλακὴν,  
 ὡς διανοεῖται αὐτὴν λῦσαι Τισσαφέρην τῆς νυκτὸς, ἐὰν δύνηται,  
 ὡς μὴ |pass over, cross| μέσῳ |receive, recover, take|ταμοῦ καὶ τῆς  
 |aside, cut off|  
 διώρυχος. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἄγουσιν αὐτὸν παρὰ τὸν Κλέαρχον καὶ

they marched two stages— eight parasangs— and crossed two canals, the first by a regular bridge, the other spanned by a bridge of seven boats. These canals issued from the Tigris, and from them a whole system of minor trenches was cut, leading over the country, large ones to begin with, and then smaller and smaller, till at last they become the merest runnels, like those in Hellas used for watering millet fields. They reached the river Tigris. At this point there was a large and thickly populated city named Sittace, at a distance of fifteen furlongs from the river. The Hellenes accordingly encamped by the side of that city, near a large and beautiful park, which was thick with all sorts of trees.

The Asiatics had crossed the Tigris, but somehow were entirely hidden from view. After supper, Proxenus and Xenophon were walking in front of the place d'armes, when a man came up and demanded of the advanced guard where he could find Proxenus or Clearchus. He did not ask for Menon, and that too though he came from Ariaeus, who was Menon's friend. As soon as Proxenus had said: "I am he, whom you seek," the man replied: "I have been sent by Ariaeus and Artaozus, who have been trusty friends to Cyrus in past days, and are your well-wishers. They warn you to be on your guard, in case the barbarians attack you in the night. There is a large body of troops in the neighbouring park. They also warn you to send and occupy the bridge over the Tigris, since Tissaphernes is minded to break it down in the night, if he can, so that you may not cross, but be caught between the river and the canal." On hearing this they took the man to Clearchus and acquainted him with his statement. Clearchus, on his side, was much disturbed, and indeed alarmed at the news. But a young fellow who was

*vocabulary*

ἄγγελος (m/f) messenger ~angel  
 αἶρω raise, win ~aorta; also ἀείρω  
 ἀναπαύω cause to cease  
 ἀνθέω sprout  
 ἀπαγγέλλω tell about  
 ἀρόω plow ~arable  
 βάβαρος non-Greek  
 γεφύρα (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge; also  
 γέφυρα  
 γέφυρα (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge; also  
 γεφύρα  
 δέος -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
 δῆλος visible, conspicuous  
 διαβαίνω pass over, cross  
 ἐάω let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
 εἶτα then, therefore, next  
 ἔνιμι be in  
 ἔνθεν thence, whence  
 ἐπειδή after; because; also ἐπεί  
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable  
 ἐπιτίθημι put on, apply  
 ἑπτά seven  
 ἔρομαι ask, search through; also  
 ἀνέρομαι, εἶρομαι, ἐξείρομαι, ἐξέρομαι  
 ζεύγνυμι yoke, join  
 ἡσάομαι (pass) be weaker, be

overcome; (active) defeat  
 ἠώς ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
 κείμει lie  
 κώμη village  
 λύω loosen, free, ransom ~loose  
 μέντοι however  
 νῆσος (f) island ~Polynesia  
 νικάω win, defeat ~Nike  
 ὀκνέω shrink from, hesitate  
 ὅμως anyway, nevertheless  
 οὐδός (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὁδός  
 πέραν on the other side, across  
 πλοῖον ship  
 σώζω save  
 ταράσσω mess things up  
 τριάκοντα thirty  
 φοβέω drive away ~phobia  
 φράζω consider ~phrase  
 φυλακή guard, prison, watch; also  
 φυλακεύς  
 φυλάσσω guard, be on guard  
 ~phylactery  
 χώρα place  
 χωρέω withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
 ~heir  
 ὠθέω push

φράζουσιν ἃ λέγει. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἀκούσας ἐταράχθη σφόδρα καὶ ἐφοβεῖτο. νεανίσκος δέ τις τῶν παρόντων ἐννοήσας εἶπεν ὡς οὐκ ἀκόλουθα εἶη τό τε ἐπιθήσεσθαι καὶ λύσειν τὴν γέφυραν. δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι ἐπιτιθεμένους ἢ νικᾶν δεήσει ἢ ἡττᾶσθαι. ἐὰν μὲν οὖν νικῶσι, τί δεῖ λύειν αὐτοὺς τὴν γέφυραν; οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν πολλαὶ γέφυραι ὦσιν ἔχοιμεν ἂν ὅποι φηγόντες ἡμεῖς σωθῶμεν. ἐὰν δὲ ἡμεῖς νικῶμεν, λελυμένης τῆς γεφύρας οὐχ ἔξουσιν ἐκεῖνοι ὅποι φύγωσιν· οὐδὲ μὴν βοηθῆσαι πολλῶν ὄντων πέραν οὐδεὶς αὐτοῖς δυνήσεται λελυμένης τῆς γεφύρας. ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος ταῦτα ἤρετο τὸν ἄγγελον πόση τις εἶη χώρα ἢ ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ Τύγρητος καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι πολλὴ καὶ κῶμαι ἔνεισι καὶ πόλεις πολλαὶ καὶ μεγάλαι. τότε δὴ καὶ ἐγνώσθη ὅτι οἱ βάρβαροι τὸν ἄνθρωπον ὑποπέμψειαν, ὀκνοῦντες μὴ οἱ Ἕλληνας διελόντες τὴν γέφυραν μείναιεν ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ἐρύματα ἔχοντες ἔνθεν μὲν τὸν Τύγρητα, ἔνθεν δὲ τὴν διώρυχα· τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδεια ἔχοιεν ἐκ τῆς ἐν μέσῳ χώρας πολλῆς καὶ ἀγαθῆς οὕσης καὶ τῶν ἐργασομένων ἐνότων· εἶτα δὲ καὶ ἀποστροφή γένοιτο εἴ τις βούλοιτο βασιλέα κακῶς ποιεῖν. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἀνεπαύοντο· ἐπὶ μέντοι τὴν γέφυραν ὅμως φυλακὴν ἔπεμψαν· καὶ οὔτε ἐπέθετο οὐδεὶς οὐδαμῶθεν οὔτε πρὸς τὴν γέφυραν οὐδεὶς ἦλθε τῶν πολεμίων, ὡς οἱ φυλάττοντες ἀπήγγελλον. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἕως ἐγένετο, διέβαινον τὴν γέφυραν ἔξευγμένην πλοίοις τριάκοντα καὶ ἑπτὰ ὡς οἶόν τε μάλιστα πεφυλαγμένως·

φράζουσιν ἃ λέγει. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἀκέομαι? mess things up, 1 και  
 ἔφοβεῖτο. νεανίσκος δέ τις τῶν παόντων or νόνησας εἶπεν ὡς οὐκ  
 ἀκούω?:  
 ἀκόλουθα εἶη τό τε ἐπιθήσασθαι και hear, ν τήν |dam, dike; bridge ` , ρ  
 |listen  
 ὅτι ἐπιτιθεμένους ἢ νικᾶν δεήσει ἢ (pass) be weaker, be over- : ὠσι, τί  
 |come; (active) defeat  
 δεῖ λύειν αὐτοὺς τήν |dam, dike; bridge ` , αν πολλὰ |dam, dike; bridge  
 ἔχοιμεν αν ὅποι φυγόντες ἡμεῖς σωθῶμεν. εἰν δὲ ἡμεῖς νικῶμεν,  
 λελυμένης τῆς |dam, dike; bridge ν ἐκεῖνοι ὅποι φύγωσιν· οὐδὲ μὴν  
 βοηθῆσαι πολλῶν ὄντων |across οὐδεὶς αὐτοῖς δυνήσεται λελυμένης  
 τῆς |dam, dike; |κέομαι?: ` heal, fix ; , or ταῦτα ἤρετο τὸν ἄγγελον  
 |bridge |ἀκούω?: hear, listen  
 πόση τις εἶη χώρα ἢ ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ Τίγρητος και τῆς διώρυχος. ὁ δὲ  
 εἶπεν ὅτι πολλὴ και |κώμη?: |be in και πόλεις πολλὰ και μεγάλαι.  
 τότε δὴ και ἐγνώσθη; ὅτι or βάρβαροι τὸν ἄνθρωπον ὑποπέμφειαν,  
 |hesitate μη οἱ Ἕλληγες διελόντες τήν |dam, dike; bridge ἐν  
 τῇ νήσῳ |protection ` , οντες ἔνθεν μὲν τὸν Τίγρητα, ἔνθεν δὲ τήν  
 διώρυχα· τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδεια ἔχοιεν ἐκ τῆς ἐν μέσῳ χώρας πολλῆς  
 και ἀγαθῆς οὐσης και τῶν ἐργασομένων |be in εἶτα δὲ και  
 ἀποστροφή γένοιτο εἴ τις βούλοιο βασιλέα κακῶς ποιεῖν. μετὰ  
 δὲ ταῦτα |cause to cease ` τὶ μέντοι τήν |dam, dike; bridge ` λακὴν  
 ἔπεμφαν· και οὔτε ἐπέθετο οὐδεὶς οὐδαμόθεν οὔτε πρὸς τήν |dam, dike; bridge  
 οὐδεὶς |ἄλθομαι?: become whole ἵς οἱ φυλάττοντες ἀπήγγελλον.  
 ; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come  
 |after; δὲ ἕως ἐγένετο, |pass over, cross |dam, dike; yoke, join  
 |because |bridge  
 πλοίοις τριάκοντα και ἐπτά ὡς οἶόν τε μάλιστα πεφυλαγμένως·

present, struck with an idea, suggested that the two statements were inconsistent; as to the contemplated attack and the proposed destruction of the bridge. Clearly, the attacking party must either conquer or be worsted: if they conquer, what need of their breaking down the bridge? "Why! if there were half a dozen bridges," said he, "we should not be any the more able to save ourselves by flight— there would be no place to flee to; but, in the opposite case, suppose we win, with the bridge broken down, it is they who will not be able to save themselves by flight; and, what is worse for them, not a single soul will be able to bring them succour from the other side, for all their numbers, since the bridge will be broken down."

Clarchus listened to the reasoning, and then he asked the messenger, "How large the country between the Tigris and the canal might be?" "A large district," he replied, "and in it are villages and cities numerous and large." Then it dawned upon them: the barbarians had sent the man with subtlety, in fear lest the Hellenes should cut the bridge and occupy the island territory, with the strong defences of the Tigris on the one side and of the canal on the other; supplying themselves with provisions from the country so included, large and rich as it was, with no lack of hands to till it; in addition to which, a harbour of refuge and asylum would be found for any one, who was minded to do the king a mischief.

After this they retired to rest in peace, not, however, neglecting to send a guard to occupy the bridge in spite of all, and there was no attack from any quarter whatsoever; nor did any of the enemy's people approach the bridges: so the guards were able to report next morning. But as soon as it was morning, they proceeded to cross the bridge, which consisted of thirty-seven vessels, and

*vocabulary*

**ἀγέομαι** go before, lead ~hegemony;  
also ἡγέομαι  
**αἰδῶ** sing; also αἰδιῶ  
**ἄλλοτε** at another time  
**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**διαρπάζω** make prey of  
**διό** because of which  
**δόξα** what one expects ~doxology  
**εἰκός** οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
**εἴκοσι** twenty  
**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked senseless;  
also ἐκπλήγνυμι  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἕξ** six ~hexagon  
**ἐξαγγέλλω** bring news out  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεὶ  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide  
**ἐρῆμος** empty

**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**θεωρέω** be sent to consult an oracle;  
observe, contemplate  
**κῶμη** village  
**μέντοι** however  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὄλος** complete, generally, actually  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πλὴν** except  
**πορεύω** carry  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds; also  
πρόβασις  
**σίτος** (m/n) grain, bread, food  
~parasite  
**σκοπός** (m/f) lookout ~telescope  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιά** army  
**τέσσαρες** (3) four  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**ψευδής** lying, false

ἐξήγγελλον γάρ τινες τῶν παρὰ Τισσαφέρνους Ἑλλήνων ὡς διαβαινόντων μέλλοιεν ἐπιθήσασθαι. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ψευδῆ ἦν· διαβαινόντων μέντοι ὁ Γλοῦς αὐτῶν ἐπεφάνη μετ' ἄλλων σκοπῶν εἰ διαβαίνοιεν τὸν ποταμόν· ἐπειδὴ δὲ εἶδεν, ὄχρητο ἀπελαύνων.

Ἄπο δὲ τοῦ Τίγρητος ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι ἐπὶ τὸν Φύσκον ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος πλήθρον· ἐπὴν δὲ γέφυρα. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ὤκειτο πόλις μεγάλη ὄνομα Ὡπις· πρὸς ἣν ἀπήντησε τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ὁ Κύρου καὶ Ἀρταξέρξου νόθος ἀδελφὸς ἀπὸ Σούσων καὶ Ἐκβατάνων στρατιὰν πολλὴν ἄγων ὡς βοηθήσων βασιλεῖ· καὶ ἐπιστήσας τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα παρερχομένους τοὺς Ἑλληνας ἐθεώρει. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἠγείτο μὲν εἰς δύο, ἐπορεύετο δὲ ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε ἐφιστάμενος· ὅσον δὲ ἂν χρόνον τὸ ἠγούμενον τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐπιστήσειε, τοσοῦτον ἦν ἀνάγκη χρόνον δι' ὅλου τοῦ στρατεύματος γίνεσθαι τὴν ἐπίστασιν· ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα καὶ αὐτοῖς τοῖς Ἑλλησι δόξαι πάμπολυ εἶναι, καὶ τὸν Πέρσιν ἐκπεπλήχθαι θεωροῦντα. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Μηδίας σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους ἕξ παρασάγγας τριάκοντα εἰς τὰς Παρυσάτιδος κώμας τῆς Κύρου καὶ βασιλέως μητρός. ταύτας Τισσαφέρνης Κύρω ἐπεγγελῶν διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἐπέτρεψε πλὴν ἀνδραπόδων. ἐνὴν δὲ σίτος πολὺς καὶ πρόβατα καὶ ἄλλα χρήματα. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν ἐν



|bring news out' τινες τῶν παρὰ Τισσαφέρνους Ἑλλήνων ὡς  
 |pass over, cross ἄλλοιεν ἐπιθήσεσθαι. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν |lying, ἦν  
 |pass over, cross ἴσθαι ὁ Γλοῦς αὐτῶν ἐπέφάνη μετ' ἄλλων σκοπῶν  
 εἰ |pass over, cross σταμόν· |after; ἔειδεν, ᾗχετο |expel, ex-  
 |because |clude, ward  
 Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Τίγρητος ἐπορεύθησαν |cottage; post ἄρας |Persian  
 εἴκοσιν ἐπὶ τὸν Φύσκον ποταμόν, τὸ |width; 30 meters or ἦν δὲ  
 (caps) |its square  
 |dam, dike; bridge ὕθα ᾠκέιτο πόλις μετ' ἑὸν ὄνομα Ὀπίς· πρὸς  
 |the east  
 ἦν ἀπήντησε τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ὁ Κύρου |wind Ἀρταξέρξου |bastard  
 ἀδελφὸς ἀπὸ Σούσων καὶ Ἐκβατάνων στρατιὰν πολλὴν ἄγων  
 ὡς βοηθήσων βασιλεῖ· καὶ ἐπιστήσας τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα  
 παρερχομένους τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐθεώρει. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος |go before, lead  
 εἰς δύο, ἐπορεύετο δὲ ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε ἐφιστάμενος· ὅσον δὲ  
 ἂν χρόνον τὸ ἡγούμενον τοῦ στρατεύματος |disbelieve τοσοῦτον  
 ἦν ἀνάγκη χρόνον δι' ὅλου τοῦ στρατεύματος γίνεσθαι τὴν  
 ἐπίστασιν· ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα καὶ αὐτοῖς τοῖς Ἕλλησι δόξα  
 πάμπλου εἶναι, καὶ τὸν Πέρσῃν |panic, be ᾠροῦντα. ἐντεῦθεν  
 |knocked  
 δ' ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Μηδίας |cottage; post ἡμῶν ἐξ |Persian  
 |village τῆς Κύρου κ |km βασιλέως  
 μητρὸς. ταύτας Τισσαφέρνης Κύρῳ ἐπεγγελῶν |make prey of ἵ  
 Ἕλλησιν ἐπέτρεψε πλὴν |slave |be in ἵε σίτος πολὺς καὶ  
 πρόβατα καὶ ἄλλα χρήματα. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν |cottage; post  
 ἐρήμους τέτταρας |Persian εἴκοσι τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν ἐν  
 |unit, ca. 5  
 |km

in so doing they used the utmost precaution possible; for reports were brought by some of the Hellenes with Tissaphernes that an attempt was to be made to attack them while crossing. All this turned out to be false, though it is true that while crossing they did catch sight of Glus watching, with some others, to see if they crossed the river; but as soon as he had satisfied himself on that point, he rode off and was gone.

From the river Tigris they advanced four stages— twenty parasangs— to the river Physcus, which is a hundred feet broad and spanned by a bridge. Here lay a large and populous city named Opis, close to which the Hellenes were encountered by the natural brother of Cyrus and Artaxerxes, who was leading a large army from Susa and Ecbatana to assist the king. He halted his troops and watched the Helleens march past. Clearchus led them in column two abreast: and from time to time the vanguard came to a standstill, just so often and just so long the effect repeated itself down to the hindmost man: halt! halt! halt! along the whole line: so that even to the Hellenes themselves their army seemed enormous; and the Persian was fairly astonished at the spectacle.

From this place they marched through Media six desert stages— thirty parasangs— to the villages of Parysatis, Cyrus's and the king's mother. These Tissaphernes, in mockery of Cyrus, delivered over to the Hellenes to plunder, except that the folk in them were not to be made slaves. They contained much corn, cattle, and other property. From this place they advanced four desert stages— twenty parasangs— keeping the Tigris on the left. On the

*vocabulary*

**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**ἀνήκεστος** incurable (ἄκος)  
**ἀριστερός** left-hand  
**ἄρτος** bread, loaf  
**ἄν** again, then again; next ~after  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**διάγω** ferry across  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεὶ  
**ἐπιβουλή** a plot, scheme  
**ἔρομαι** ask, search through; also  
**ἀνέρομαι, εἶρομαι, ἐξείρομαι, ἐξέρομαι**  
**ἐτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἦμερος** domesticated  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἶνος** wine ~wine  
**ὄρκος** oath ~orc  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὁδός

**παύω** stop something ~pause  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also  
 πειρητίζω  
**πέραν** on the other side, across  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also  
 πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**πως** somehow  
**σαφής** clear, understandable  
**σκοπός** (m/f) lookout ~telescope  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**σχεδία** raft  
**τέσσαρες** (3) four  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τυρός** cheese  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑποψία** suspicion  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous  
**φθάνω** do first, outstrip  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard  
 ~phylactery  
**χρηζέω** need

ἀριστερᾷ ἔχοντες. ἐν δὲ τῷ πρώτῳ σταθμῷ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ πόλις ὠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων ὄνομα Καιναί, ἐξ ἧς οἱ βάρβαροι διήγον ἐπὶ σχεδιάις διφθερίναις ἄρτους, τυρούς, οἶνον.

## 2.5

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Ζαπάταν ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος τετάρων πλέθρων. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν δὲ ταύταις ὑποψίαί μὲν ἦσαν, φανερά δὲ οὐδεμία ἐφαίνετο ἐπιβουλή. ἔδοξεν οὖν τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ξυγγενέσθαι τῷ Τισσαφέρνει καὶ εἶ πως δύναιτο παῦσαι τὰς ὑποψίας πρὶν ἐξ αὐτῶν πόλεμον γενέσθαι. καὶ ἔπεμψεν τινα ἐροῦντα ὅτι ξυγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ χρήζει. ὁ δὲ ἐτοίμως ἐκέλευεν ἤκειν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ξυνήλθον, λέγει ὁ Κλεάρχος τάδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ Τισσαφέρνη, οἶδα μὲν ἡμῖν ὄρκους γεγενημένους καὶ δεξιὰς δεδομένας μὴ ἀδικήσῃν ἀλλήλους· φυλαττόμενον δὲ σέ τε ὄρῳ ὡς πολεμίους ἡμᾶς καὶ ἡμεῖς ὀρώντες ταῦτα ἀντιφυλαττόμεθα. ἐπεὶ δὲ σκοπῶν οὐ δύναμαι οὔτε σὲ αἰσθέσθαι πειρώμενον ἡμᾶς κακῶς ποιεῖν ἐγώ τε σαφῶς οἶδα ὅτι ἡμεῖς γε οὐδὲ ἐπινοοῦμεν τοιοῦτον οὐδέν, ἔδοξέ μοι εἰς λόγους σοι ἔλθειν, ὅπως εἰ δυναίμεθα ἐξέλοιμεν ἀλλήλων τὴν ἀπιστίαν. καὶ γὰρ οἶδα ἀνθρώπους ἤδη τοὺς μὲν ἐκ διαβολῆς τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἐξ ὑποψίας οἱ φοβηθέντες ἀλλήλους φθάσαι βουλόμενοι πρὶν παθεῖν ἐποίησαν ἀνήκεστα κακὰ τοὺς οὔτε μέλλοντας οὔτ' αἰ βουλομένους τοιοῦτον οὐδέν. τὰς οὖν τοιαύτας ἀγνωμοσύνας νομίζων

ἀριστερᾷ ἔχοντες. ἐν δὲ τῷ πρώτῳ σταθμῷ |across τοῦ ποταμοῦ πόλις  
 ὠκέϊτο μεγάλη καὶ |blessed with a ι Καιναί, ἐξ ἧς οἱ βάρβαροι |ferry  
 ἐπὶ |raft διφθερίναις ἄρτους, |cheese οἶνον. |across

## 2.5

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Ζαπάταν ποταμόν, τὸ |width; (caps) the  
 τεττάρων |30 meters or ` ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν δὲ ταύταις |east wind  
 |suspicion ἔν ῆσαν, φανερὰ δὲ οὐδεμία ἐφαίνετο |a plot, scheme ἔεν  
 οὖν τῷ Κλέαρχῳ ξυγγενέσθαι τῷ Τισσαφέρνει καὶ εἴ πως |enter, put on, strip  
 παῦσαι τὰς |suspicion ρὶν ἐξ αὐτῶν πόλεμον γενέσθαι. καὶ ἐπεμψέν  
 τινα |ask, search through` θαι αὐτῷ |need ὁ δὲ ἐτοίμως ἐκέλευεν  
 ἦκειν. |after; ἔ ξυνῆλθον, λέγει ὁ Κλέαρχος τάδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ  
 |because  
 Τισσαφέρνῃ, οἶδα μὲν ἡμῖν ὄρκους γεγενημένους καὶ |δεξιᾶ?: ἔ right-hand ; or  
 μὴ ἀδικήσειν ἀλλήλους· φυλαττόμενον δὲ σέ τε ὄρω ὡς πολεμίους  
 |δεξιόζ?: right-hand  
 ἡμᾶς καὶ ἡμεῖς ὄρωντες ταῦτα ἀντιφυλαττόμεθα. ἐπεὶ δὲ σκοπῶν  
 οὐ δύναμαι οὔτε σὲ αἰσθῆσθαι πειρώμενον ἡμᾶς κακῶς ποιεῖν ἐγώ  
 τε σαφῶς οἶδα ὅτι ἡμεῖς γε οὐδὲ ἐπινοοῦμεν τοιοῦτον οὐδέν, ἔδοξέ  
 μοι εἰς λόγους σοι ἐλθεῖν, ὅπως εἰ |enter, put on, ἔλομεν ἀλλήλων  
 |strip off  
 τὴν ἀπιστίαν. καὶ γὰρ οἶδα ἀνθρώπους ἤδη τοὺς μὲν ἐκ διαβολῆς  
 τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἐξ |suspicion ἔ φοβηθέντες ἀλλήλους φθάσαι βουλόμενοι  
 πρὶν παθεῖν ἐποίησαν |incurable κακὰ τοὺς οὔτε μέλλοντας οὔτ' αἰ  
 βουλομένους τοιοῦτον οὐδέν. τὰς οὖν τοιαύτας ἀγνωμοσύνας νομίζων

first of these stages, on the other side of the river, lay a large city; it was a well to do place named Caenae, from which the natives used to carry across loaves and cheeses and wine on rafts made of skins.

## 2.5

After this they reached the river Zapatas, which is four hundred feet broad, and here they halted three days. During the interval suspicions were rife, though no act of treachery displayed itself. Clearchus accordingly resolved to bring to an end these feelings of mistrust, before they led to war. Consequently, he sent a messenger to the Persian to say that he desired an interview with him; to which the other readily consented. As soon as they were met, Clearchus spoke as follows: "Tissaphernes," he said, "I do not forget that oaths have been exchanged between us, and right hands shaken, in token that we will abstain from mutual injury; but I can see that you watch us narrowly, as if we were foes; and we, seeing this, watch you narrowly in return. But as I fail to discover, after investigation, that you are endeavouring to do us a mischief— and I am quite sure that nothing of the sort has ever entered our heads with regard to you—the best plan seemed to me to come and talk the matter over with you, so that, if possible, we might dispel the mutual distrust on either side. For I have known people ere now, the victims in some cases of calumny, or possibly of mere suspicion, who in apprehension of one another and eager to deal the first blow, have committed irreparable wrong against those who neither intended nor so much as harboured a thought of mischief against them.

*vocabulary*

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp.~sin  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve  
**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck  
**ἀποφεύγω** avoid, escape, go free  
**ἀφίστημι** stand apart; exact payment  
**διαβατός** crossable, fordable  
**διδάσκω** teach ~didactic  
**ἐλπίς** -δος (f) hope ~voluptuary  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐπιχειρέω** lay hands on  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**θεά** (2) goddess ~theology  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**ἴσος** equal; also ἔσση  
**κατακτείνω** kill, slay  
**κρατέω** rule ~democracy  
**κωλύω** hinder, prevent  
**μεστός** full  
**νομίζω** consider customary

**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**ὀρθός** upright ~orthogonal  
**ὄρκος** oath ~orc  
**ὄχλος** mob, crowd  
**πάντη** everywhere  
**παύω** stop something ~pause  
**ποῖος** what kind  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also  
 πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**σκότος** (m/n) darkness, shadow  
 ~shadow  
**στερέω** steal, take  
**συντίθημι** hearken, mark  
**σώζω** save  
**τάχος** -υς (n, 3) speed  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**φιλία** friendship  
**χώρα** place  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

συνουσίαις μάλιστα παύεσθαι ἤκω καὶ διδάσκειν σε βούλομαι ὡς σὺ  
 ἡμῖν οὐκ ὀρθῶς ἀπιστεῖς. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ καὶ μέγιστον οἱ θεῶν  
 ἡμᾶς ὄρκοι κωλύουσι πολεμίους εἶναι ἀλλήλοις· ὅστις δὲ τούτων  
 σύννοιδεν αὐτῷ παρημεληκῶς, τοῦτον ἐγὼ οὐποτ' ἂν εὐδαιμονίσαιμι.  
 τὸν γὰρ θεῶν πόλεμον οὐκ οἶδα οὔτ' ἀπὸ ποίου ἂν τάχους οὔτε  
 ὅποι ἂν τις φεύγων ἀποφύγοι οὔτ' εἰς ποῖον ἂν σκότος ἀποδραΐη  
 οὔθ' ὅπως ἂν εἰς ἐχυρὸν χωρίον ἀποσταίη. πάντη γὰρ πάντα τοῖς  
 θεοῖς ὕποχα καὶ πάντων ἴσον οἱ θεοὶ κρατοῦσι. περὶ μὲν δὴ τῶν  
 θεῶν τε καὶ τῶν ὄρκων οὕτω γινώσκω, παρ' οὗς ἡμεῖς τὴν φιλίαν  
 συνθέμενοι κατεθέμεθα· τῶν δ' ἀνθρωπίνων σὲ ἐγὼ ἐν τῷ παρόντι  
 νομίζω μέγιστον εἶναι ἡμῖν ἀγαθόν. σὺν μὲν γὰρ σοὶ πᾶσα μὲν  
 ὁδὸς εὐπορος, πᾶς δὲ ποταμὸς διαβατός, τῶν τε ἐπιτηδείων οὐκ  
 ἀπορία· ἄνευ δὲ σοῦ πᾶσα μὲν διὰ σκότους ἢ ὁδός· οὐδὲν γὰρ αὐτῆς  
 ἐπιστάμεθα· πᾶς δὲ ποταμὸς δύσπορος, πᾶς δὲ ὄχλος φοβερός,  
 φοβερῶτατον δ' ἐρημία· μεστή γὰρ πολλῆς ἀπορίας ἐστίν. εἰ δὲ  
 δὴ καὶ μανέντες σε κατακτείναιμεν, ἄλλο τι ἂν ἢ τὸν εὐεργέτην  
 κατακτείναντες πρὸς βασιλέα τὸν μέγιστον ἔφεδρον ἀγωνιζόμεθα;  
 ὅσων δὲ δὴ καὶ οἶων ἂν ἐλπίδων ἐμαυτὸν στερήσαιμι, εἰ σέ τι κακὸν  
 ἐπιχειρήσαιμι ποιεῖν, ταῦτα λέξω. ἐγὼ γὰρ Κύρον ἐπεθύμησά μοι  
 φίλον γενέσθαι, νομίζων τῶν τότε ἰκανώτατον εἶναι εἶ ποιεῖν ὄν  
 βούλοιο· σὲ δὲ νῦν ὀρῶ τὴν τε Κύρου δύναμιν καὶ χώραν ἔχοντα  
 καὶ τὴν σαυτοῦ χώραν σῶζοντα, τὴν δὲ βασιλέως δύναμιν, ἣ Κύρος



συνουσίαις μάλιστα παύεσθαι ἤκω καὶ διδάσκειν σε βούλομαι ὡς σὺ  
 ἡμῖν οὐκ ὀρθῶς |disbelieve πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ καὶ μέγιστον οἱ θεῶν  
 ἡμᾶς ὄρκοι κωλύουσι πολεμίους εἶναι ἀλλήλοις· ὅστις δὲ τούτων  
 σύνοιδεν αὐτῷ παρημεληκῶς, τοῦτον ἐγὼ οὐποτ' ἂν εὐδαιμονίσαιμι.  
 τὸν γὰρ θεῶν πόλεμον οὐκ οἶδα οὐτ' ἀπὸ ποίου ἂν |τάχος?: ὡ speed ; or  
 |ταχύς?: fast  
 ὅποι ἂν τις φεύγων |avoid, es-τ' εἰς ποῖον ἂν σκότος ἀποδραίη  
 |cape, go  
 οὐθ' ὅπως ἂν εἰς ἐχθρῶν |free χωρίον ἀποσταίη. πάντη γὰρ πάντα τοῖς  
 θεοῖς ὕποχα καὶ πάντων ἴσον οἱ θεοὶ κρατοῦσι. περὶ μὲν δὴ τῶν  
 θεῶν τε καὶ τῶν ὄρκων οὕτω γιγνώσκω, παρ' οὓς ἡμεῖς τὴν |friendship  
 |hearken, mark θέμεθα· τῶν δ' ἀνθρωπίνων σὲ ἐγὼ ἐν τῷ παρόντι  
 νομίζω μέγιστον εἶναι ἡμῖν ἀγαθόν. σὺν μὲν γὰρ σοὶ πᾶσα μὲν  
 ὁδὸς εὐπορος, πᾶς δὲ ποταμὸς |crossable, τῶν τε ἐπιτηδείων οὐκ  
 |fordable  
 |difficulty, ὡ  
 |bottleneck ἰ δὲ σοῦ πᾶσα μὲν διὰ σκότους ἢ ὁδός· οὐδὲν γὰρ αὐτῆς  
 |ἀπιστέω?: disbelieve ; or ἐφίστήμι?: stand ; δὲ ὄχλος φοβερός,  
 |ready, take a stand ; or ἐπίσταμαι?: know  
 φοβερώτατον δ' ἐρημία· |full γὰρ πολλῆς |difficulty, ὡ  
 |bottleneck  
 δὴ καὶ μανέντες σε κατακτεínaμεν, ἄλλο τι ἂν ἢ τὸν εὐεργέτην  
 κατακτείναντες πρὸς βασιλέα τὸν μέγιστον ἔφεδρον ἀγωνιζόμεθα;  
 ὅσων δὲ δὴ καὶ οἶων ἂν ἐλπιδῶν ἐμαυτὸν |steal, take . εἰ σέ τι κακὸν  
 ἐπιχειρήσαιμι ποιεῖν, ταῦτα λέξω. ἐγὼ γὰρ Κύρον ἐπεθύμησά μοι  
 φίλον γενέσθαι, νομίζων τῶν τότε ἰκανώτατον εἶναι εὐ ποιεῖν ὄν  
 βούλοιο· σὲ δὲ νῦν ὀρώ τὴν τε Κύρου δύναμιν καὶ χώραν ἔχοντα  
 καὶ τὴν σαυτοῦ χώραν σφάζοντα, τὴν δὲ βασιλέως δύναμιν, ἣ Κῦρος

I have come to you under a conviction that such misunderstandings may best be put a stop to by personal intercourse, and I wish to instruct you plainly that you are wrong in mistrusting us. The first and weightiest reason is that the oaths, which we took in the sight of heaven, are a barrier to mutual hostility. I envy not the man whose conscience tells him that he has disregarded these! For in a war with heaven, by what swiftness of foot can a man escape?— in what quarter find refuge?— in what darkness slink away and be hid?— to what strong fortress scale and be out of reach? Are not all things in all ways subject to the gods? is not their lordship over all alike outspread? As touching the gods, therefore, and our oaths, that is how I view this matter. To their safe keeping we consigned the friendship which we solemnly contracted. But turning to matters human, you I look upon as our greatest blessing in this present time. With you every path is plain to us, every river passable, and of provisions we shall know no stint. But without you, all our way is through darkness; for we know nothing concerning it, every river will be an obstacle, each multitude a terror; but, worst terror of all, the vast wilderness, so full of endless perplexity. Nay, if in a fit of madness we murdered you, what then? in slaying our benefactor should we not have challenged to enter the lists against us a more formidable antagonist in the king himself? Let me tell you, how many high hopes I should rob myself of, were I to take in hand to do you mischief.

“I coveted the friendship of Cyrus; I believed him to be abler than any man of his day to benefit those whom he chose; but to-day I look and, behold, it is you who are in his place; the power which belonged to Cyrus and his territory are yours now. You have them, and your own satrapy besides, safe

*vocabulary*

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἀναστρέφω** act: overturn; mid: find oneself in  
**ἀπαμείβομαι** answer  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι, ὀλλυμι  
**ἀφοράω** look away, at  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about  
**ἔθνος** -εος (n, 3) tribe, company, flock ~ethnic  
**ἐλπίς** -δος (f) hope ~voluptuary  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔραμαι** love  
**ἔρομαι** ask, search through; also ἀνέρομαι, εἴρομαι, ἐξείρομαι, ἐξέρομαι  
**ἐρωέω** (act) back off; (mid, rare) drive back; spurt  
**ἡδέως** pleasantly  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**ἡώς** ἡοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also

**ἵπποχάρομη**  
**μαίνομαι** be berserk ~maenad  
**μανθάνω** learn, be trained ~math  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οὔομαι, ὄομαι  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**παρόω** maim; also πηρόω  
**παύω** stop something ~pause  
**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (πούς)  
**πεῖσα** obedience, subjection  
**πλήθος** -υς (3) numerical superiority  
**πόα** ποίης grass  
**ποῖος** what kind  
**πότερος** which, whichever of two  
**σώζω** save  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**ὕμέτερος** yours  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**χάρις** -τος (f) grace ~eucharist  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**ὥδε** thus

πολεμία ἐχρήτο, σοὶ ταύτην ζύμμαχον οὔσαν. τούτων δὲ τοιούτων ὄντων τίς οὔτω μαίνεται ὅστις οὐ βούλεται σοὶ φίλος εἶναι; ἀλλὰ μὴν ἐρῶ γὰρ καὶ ταῦτα ἐξ ὧν ἔχω ἐλπίδας καὶ σὲ βουλήσεσθαι φίλον ἡμῖν εἶναι. οἶδα μὲν γὰρ ὑμῖν Μυσοὺς λυπηροὺς ὄντας, οὓς νομίζω ἂν σὺν τῇ παρουσίᾳ δυνάμει ταπεινοὺς ὑμῖν παρασχεῖν· οἶδα δὲ καὶ Πισίδας· ἀκούω δὲ καὶ ἄλλα ἔθνη πολλὰ τοιαῦτα εἶναι, ἃ οἶμαι ἂν παῦσαι ἐνοχλοῦντα ἀεὶ τῇ ὑμετέρα εὐδαιμονία. Αἰγυπτίους δέ, οἷς μάλιστα ὑμᾶς γινώσκω τεθυμωμένους, οὐχ ὀρῶ ποῖα δυνάμει συμμάχῳ χρησάμενοι μᾶλλον ἂν κολάσαισθε τῆς νῦν σὺν ἐμοὶ οὔσης. ἀλλὰ μὴν ἔν γε τοῖς πέριξ οἰκοῦσι σὺ εἰ μὲν βούλοιο φίλος ὡς μέγιστος ἂν εἴης, εἰ δὲ τίς σε λυποίῃ, ὡς δεσπότης ἂν ἀναστρέφοιο ἔχων ἡμᾶς ὑπηρέτας, οἳ σοὶ οὐκ ἂν μισθοῦ ἕνεκα ὑπηρετοῦμεν ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς χάριτος ἣν σωθέντες ὑπὸ σοῦ σοὶ ἂν ἔχοιμεν δικαίως. ἐμοὶ μὲν ταῦτα πάντα ἐνθυμουμένῳ οὔτω δοκεῖ θαυμαστὸν εἶναι τὸ σὲ ἡμῖν ἀπιστεῖν ὥστε καὶ ἦδιστ' ἂν ἀκούσαμεν τὸ ὄνομα τίς οὔτως ἐστὶ δεινὸς λέγειν ὥστε σε πείσαι λέγων ὡς ἡμεῖς σοὶ ἐπιβουλεύομεν. Κλέαρχος μὲν οὖν τοσαῦτα εἶπε· Τισσαφέρνης δὲ ᾧδε ἀπημείφθη.

Ἄλλ' ἦδομαι μὲν, ᾧ Κλέαρχε, ἀκούων σου φρονίμους λόγους· ταῦτα γὰρ γινώσκων εἴ τι ἐμοὶ κακὸν βουλεύεις, ἅμα ἂν μοι δοκεῖς καὶ σαυτῷ κακόνους εἶναι. ὡς δ' ἂν μάθῃς ὅτι οὐδ' ἂν ὑμεῖς δικαίως οὔτε βασιλεῖ οὔτ' ἐμοὶ ἀπιστοίητε, ἀντάκουσον. εἰ γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐβουλόμεθα ἀπολέσαι, πότερά σοι δοκοῦμεν ἰπέων πλήθους ἀπορεῖν ἢ πεζῶν

πολεμιά ἐχρήτο, σοὶ ταύτην ξύμμαχον οὔσαν. τούτων δὲ τοιούτων ὄντων τίς οὔτω |be berserk τις οὐ βούλεται σοὶ φίλος εἶναι; ἀλλὰ μὴν |ἔρομαι?: love ; or ἔρομαι?: ask, search through ; or ἐρώέω?: (act) back off; (mid, rare) drive back; spurt ; or εἶρω?: declare; (pf) string together φίλον ἡμῖν εἶναι. οἶδα μὲν γὰρ ὑμῖν Μυσοῦς Λυπηροῦς ὄντας, οὐς νομίζω ἂν σὺν τῇ παρούσῃ δυνάμει ταπεινοὺς ὑμῖν παρασχέιν· οἶδα δὲ καὶ Πισίδας· ἀκούω δὲ καὶ ἄλλα ἔθνη πολλὰ τοιαῦτα εἶναι, ἃ οἶμαι ἂν παῦσαι ἐνοχλοῦντα αἰὲ τῇ ὑμετέρα εὐδαιμονία. Αἰγυπτίους δέ, οἷς μάλιστα ὑμᾶς γινγνώσκω τεθυμωμένους, οὐχ ὄρω |πόα?: grás ; or ποῖος?: what kind συμμάχῳ χρησάμενοι μᾶλλον ἂν κολάσαισθε τῆς νῦν σὺν ἐμοὶ οὔσης. ἀλλὰ μὴν ἔν γε τοῖς περίξ οἰκοῦσι σὺ εἰ μὲν βούλοιο φίλος ὡς μέγιστος ἂν εἴης, εἰ δὲ τίς σε λυποίῃ, ὡς δεσπότης ἂν ἀναστρέφοιο ἔχων ἡμᾶς ὑπηρετάς, οἳ σοι οὐκ ἂν μισθοῦ ἔνεκα ὑπηρετοῦμεν ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς χάριτος ἣν σωθέντες ὑπὸ σοῦ σοὶ ἂν ἔχοιμεν δικαίως. ἐμοὶ μὲν ταῦτα πάντα ἐνθυμουμένῳ οὔτω δοκεῖ θαυμαστὸν εἶναι τὸ σὲ ἡμῖν |disbelieve ὥστε καὶ |ἡδέως?: pleasantly τὸ ὄνομα τίς οὔτως ἐστὶ δεινὸς λέγειν ; or ἡδύς?: sweet ὥστε σε |πεῖσα?: obedience, subjec-|plot, plan, harm τῷ λῆαρχος μὲν οὖν tion ; or πάσχω?: suffer ; τοςαὔτα |or πείθω?: persuade δὲ ὠδὲ ἀπημείφθη.

Ἄλλ' ἡδομαι μὲν, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀκούων σου φρονίμους λόγους· ταῦτα γὰρ γινγνώσκων εἴ τι ἐμοὶ κακὸν βουλευοῖς, ἅμα ἂν μοι δοκεῖς καὶ σαυτῷ κακόνους εἶναι. ὡς δ' ἂν μάθῃς ὅτι οὐδ' ἂν ὑμεῖς δικαίως οὔτε βασιλεῖ οὔτ' ἐμοὶ |disbelieve ἀντάκουσον. εἰ γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐβουλόμεθα ἀπολέσαι, |which, δοκοῦμεν ἱππέων πλήθους ἀπορεῖν ἢ |πέξα?: pole end ; or πεζός?: on whichever |foot; footsoldier

and sound; while the king's power, which was a thorn in the side of Cyrus, is your support. This being so, it would be madness not to wish to be your friend. But I will go further and state to you the reasons of my confidence, that you on your side will desire our friendship. I know that the Mysians are a cause of trouble to you, and I flatter myself that with my present force I could render them humbly obedient to you. This applies to the Pisidians also; and I am told there are many other such tribes besides. I think I can deal with them all; they shall cease from being a constant disturbance to your peace and prosperity. Then there are the Egyptians. I know your anger against them to-day is very great. Nor can I see what better force you will find to help you in chastising them than this which marches at my back to-day. Again, if you seek the friendship of any of your neighbours round, there shall be no friend so great as you; if any one annoys you, with us as your faithful servitors you shall belord it over him; and such service we will render you, not as hirelings merely for pay's sake, but for the gratitude which we shall rightly feel to you, to whom we owe our lives. As I dwell on these matters, I confess, the idea of your feeling mistrust of us is so astonishing, that I would give much to discover the name of the man, who is so clever of speech that he can persuade you that we harbour designs against you." Clearchus ended, and Tissaphernes responded thus—

"I am glad, Clearchus, to listen to your sensible remarks; for with the sentiments you hold, if you were to devise any mischief against me, it could only be out of malevolence to yourself. But if you imagine that you, on your side, have any better reason to mistrust the king and me, than we you, listen to me in turn, and I will undeceive you. I ask you, does

*vocabulary*

**αἰσχρός** shameful  
**αἷτιος** guilty ~etiology; also αἰτίος  
**ἀμήχανος** unremediable, helpless  
 (μῆχος)  
**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι,  
 ὀλλυμι  
**βλάπτω** break, make fail  
**διό** because of which  
**ἐννυμι** clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔρω** -τος (m) love, desire  
**εὐεργεσία** good deed, public service  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θεά** (2) goddess ~theology  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**ἰσχυρός** strong, forceful, violent  
**καρπός** wrist; fruit, grain  
**καταβαίνω** go down  
**κατακαίω** burn down  
**κίνδυνος** (ὑ) danger

**κρείσσων** more powerful  
**λιμός** (m/f) famine  
**ξενικός** strange, foreign  
**ὀπόσος** as/how many/great  
**ὄρνημι** set upon, arouse ~hormone;  
 also ὑπόρνημι  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**παντάπασι** altogether; yes, certainly  
**πάνυ** altogether, very  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πιστός** faithful (πεῖθω)  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also  
 πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**πόνος** toil, suffering  
**πόρος** way, bridge ~fare  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**προκαταλαμβάνω** seize beforehand  
**πώς** how? why?  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**τρόπος** (m/n) turn; manner, kind,  
 fashion  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

ἢ ὀπλίσεως ἐν ἧ ὑμᾶς μὲν βλάπτειν ἱκανοὶ εἶμεν ἂν, ἀντιπᾶσχειν δὲ οὐδεὶς κίνδυνος; ἀλλὰ χωρίων ἐπιτηδεῖων ὑμῖν ἐπιτίθεσθαι ἀπορεῖν ἂν σοι δοκοῦμεν; οὐ τοσαῦτα μὲν πεδία ἃ ὑμεῖς φίλια ὄντα σὺν πολλῶ πόνῳ διαπορεύεσθε, τοσαῦτα δὲ ὄρη ὀράτε ὑμῖν ὄντα πορευτέα, ἃ ἡμῖν ἕξεστι προκαταλαβοῦσιν ἄπορα ὑμῖν παρέχειν, τοσοῦτοι δ' εἰσὶ ποταμοὶ ἐφ' ὧν ἕξεστιν ἡμῖν ταμιεύεσθαι ὁπόσοις ἂν ὑμῶν βουλώμεθα μάχεσθαι; εἰσὶ δ' αὐτῶν οὐς οὐδ' ἂν παντάπασι διαβαίητε, εἰ μὴ ἡμεῖς ὑμᾶς διαπορεύοιμεν. εἰ δ' ἐν πᾶσι τούτοις ἠττήμεθα, ἀλλὰ τό γέ τοι πῦρ κρεῖττον τοῦ καρποῦ ἐστίν· ὃν ἡμεῖς δυναίμεθ' ἂν κατακαύσαντες λιμὸν ὑμῖν ἀντιτάξαι, ᾧ ὑμεῖς οὐδ' εἰ πάνυ ἀγαθὸ εἶητε μάχεσθαι ἂν δύναισθε. πῶς ἂν οὖν ἔχοντες τοσοῦτους πόρους πρὸς τὸ ὑμῖν πολεμεῖν, καὶ τούτων μηδένα ἡμῖν ἐπικίνδυνον, ἕπειτα ἐκ τούτων πάντων τοῦτον ἂν τὸν τρόπον ἐξελοίμεθα ὃς μόνος μὲν πρὸς θεῶν ἀσεβῆς, μόνος δὲ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων αἰσχροῦς; παντάπασι δὲ ἀπόρων ἐστὶ καὶ ἀμηχάνων καὶ ἐν ἀνάγκῃ ἐχομένων, καὶ τούτων πονηρῶν, οἵτινες ἐθέλουσι δι' ἐπιπορκίας τε πρὸς θεοὺς καὶ ἀπιστίας πρὸς ἀνθρώπους πράττειν τι. οὐχ οὕτως ἡμεῖς, ὦ Κλέαρχε, οὔτε ἀλόγιστοι οὔτε ἠλίθιοι ἐσμεν. ἀλλὰ τί δὴ ὑμᾶς ἕξον ἀπολέσαι οὐκ ἐπὶ τοῦτο ἠλθομεν; εὐ ἴσθι ὅτι ὁ ἐμὸς ἔρωσ τούτου αἴτιος τὸ τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν ἐμὲ πιστὸν γενέσθαι, καὶ ᾧ Κῦρος ἀνέβη ξενικῶ διὰ μισθοδοσίας πιστεύων τούτῳ ἐμὲ καταβῆναι δι' εὐεργεσίαν ἰσχυρόν. ὅσα δ' ἐμοὶ χρήσιμοι ὑμεῖς ἐστε τὰ μὲν καὶ σὺ εἶπας, τὸ δὲ μέγιστον ἐγὼ οἶδα· τὴν



ἢ ὀπλίσεως ἐν ἧ ὑμᾶς μὲν βλέπτειν ἱκανοὶ εἶμεν ἄν, ἀντιπάσχειν δὲ οὐδεὶς κίνδυνος; ἀλλὰ χωρίων ἐπιτηδείων ὑμῖν ἐπιτίθεσθαι ἀπορεῖν ἄν σοι δοκοῦμεν; οὐ τοσαῦτα μὲν πεδία ἃ ὑμεῖς φίλια ὄντα σὺν πολλῶ πόνῳ διαπορεύεσθε, τοσαῦτα δὲ ὄρη ὄρατε ὑμῖν ὄντα πορευτέα, ἃ ἡμῖν |go |seize beforehand ἄπορα ὑμῖν παρέχειν, τοσοῦτοι δ' εἰσὶ ποταμοὶ ἐφ' ὧν |go forth, ἡν ταμειέεσθαι |as/how many/great λώμεθα μάχεσθαι; εἰσὶ δ' αὐτῶν οὓς οὐδ' ἂν παντάπασι διαβαίητε, εἰ μὴ ἡμεῖς ὑμᾶς διαπορεύοιμεν. εἰ δ' ἐν πᾶσι τούτοις ἠττήμεθα, ἀλλὰ τό γέ τοι πῦρ κρείττον τοῦ καρποῦ ἐστίν· ὃν ἡμεῖς |enter, put ὄν, |strip off |burn down λιμὸν ὑμῖν ἀντιτάξαι, ᾧ ὑμεῖς οὐδ' εἰ πάνυ ἀγαθοὶ εἶητε μάχεσθαι ἂν |enter, put on, ἢ ἂν οὖν ἔχοντες τοσοῦτους |way, bridge |strip off πρὸς τὸ ὑμῖν πολεμεῖν, καὶ τούτων μηδένα ἡμῖν ἐπικίνδυνον, ἔπειτα ἐκ τούτων πάντων τούτον ἂν τὸν τρόπον ἐξελοίμεθα ὃς μόνος μὲν πρὸς θεῶν ἀσεβήσ, μόνος δὲ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων αἰσχροῦς; παντάπασι δὲ ἀπόρων ἐστὶ καὶ |unremedia- |ble, helpless ἢ ἐν ἀνάγκῃ ἐχομένων, καὶ τούτων πονηρῶν, οἵτινες ἐθέλουσι δι' ἐπιπορκίας τε πρὸς θεοὺς καὶ ἀπιστίας πρὸς ἀνθρώπους πράττειν τι. οὐχ οὕτως ἡμεῖς, ᾧ Κλέαρχε, οὔτε ἀλόγιστοι οὔτε ἠλίθιοι ἐσμεν. ἀλλὰ τί δὴ ὑμᾶς |go forth ἰέσαι οὐκ ἐπὶ τοῦτο |ἄλθομαι?: ἕ become whole ; ἔρωζ?: love, desire ; or ἐρώέω?: (act) back off; |or ἔρχομαι?: go, come |(mid, rare) drive back; spurt ἐμὲ πιστὸν γενέσθαι, καὶ ᾧ Κύρος ἀνέβη |strange, ἢ ἀ μισθοδοσίας |foreign πιστεύων τούτῳ ἐμὲ καταβῆναι δι' |good deed, ὑρόν. ὅσα δ' ἐμοὶ |public service χρήσιμοι ὑμεῖς ἐστε τὰ μὲν καὶ σὺ εἶπας, τὸ δὲ μέγιστον ἐγὼ οἶδα· τὴν

it seem to you that we lack the means, if we had the will, to destroy you? have we not horsemen enough, or infantry, or whatever other arm you like, whereby we may be able to injure you, without risk of suffering in return? or, possibly, do we seem to you to lack the physical surroundings suitable for attacking you? Do you not see all these great plains, which you find it hard enough to traverse even when they are friendly? and all yonder great mountain chains left for you to cross, which we can at any time occupy in advance and render impassable? and all those rivers, on whose banks we can deal craftily by you, checking and controlling and choosing the right number of you whom we care to fight! Nay, there are some which you will not be able to cross at all, unless we transport you to the other side.

“And if at all these points we were worsted, yet ‘fire,’ as they say, ‘is stronger than the fruit of the field’: we can burn it down and call up famine in arms against you; against which you, for all your bravery, will never be able to contend. Why then, with all these avenues of attack, this machinery of war, open to us, not one of which can be turned against ourselves, why should we select from among them all that method, which alone in the sight of God is impious and of man abominable? Surely it belongs to people altogether without resources, who are helplessly struggling in the toils of fate, and are villains to boot, to seek accomplishment of their desires by perjury to heaven and faithlessness to their fellows. We are not so unreasoning, Clearchus, nor so foolish.

“Why, when we had it in our power to destroy you, did we not proceed to do it? Know well that the cause of this was nothing less than my passion to prove myself faithful to the Hellenes, and that, as Cyrus went up, relying on a foreign force attracted by payment, I in

*vocabulary*

ἄγνουμι break

ἄξιος worthy ~axiom

ἀπαγγέλλω tell about

αὖ again, then again; next ~after

γνώμη sign, mind, will, decision

δῆλος visible, conspicuous

διαβάλλω throw across; slander

ἔξιμι go forth (εἶμι)

ἐπιβουλεύω plot, plan, harm

ἔπομαι follow, support, chase ~sequel

ἔσχατος farthest, last

ἴσος equal; also εἶση

καρδία heart ~cardiac; also καρδιά,

κραδίη

κεφαλή head; height ~gable

ὅθεν whence

οἶομαι suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,

οἶομαι

ὀρθός upright ~orthogonal

πάνυ altogether, very

πειράζω test a person

πειράω try, test ~empirical; also

πειρητίζω

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army

στρατιά army

στρατιώτης (m, 1) soldier, mercenary

τιμωρέω take vengeance

τῷ so, therefore; in that case

ὑπάρχω start, lead, set an example

ὑποπτεύω guess, observe, be

suspicious of

ὑστεραίος the next; later

φιλία friendship

φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics

χέω pour, scatter; also καταχέω

χρή it is necessary, must, should

~chresard

μὲν γὰρ ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ τιάραν βασιλεῖ μόνῳ ἔξεστω ὀρθὴν ἔχειν, τὴν δ' ἐπὶ τῇ καρδίᾳ ἴσως ἂν ὑμῶν παρόντων καὶ ἕτερος εὐπετώσ ἔχοι.

Ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἔδοξε τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἀληθῆ λέγειν· καὶ εἶπεν· Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη, οἷτινες τοιούτων ἡμῖν εἰς φιλίαν ὑπαρχόντων πειρῶνται διαβάλλοντες ποιῆσαι πολεμίους ἡμᾶς ἄξιοί εἰσι τὰ ἔσχατα παθεῖν; Καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν γε, ἔφη ὁ Τισσαφέρνης, εἰ βούλεσθέ μοι οἷ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἐλθεῖν, ἐν τῷ ἐμφανεῖ λέξω τοὺς πρὸς ἐμὲ λέγοντας ὡς σὺ ἐμοὶ ἐπιβουλεύεις καὶ τῇ σὺν ἐμοὶ στρατιᾷ. Ἐγὼ δέ, ἔφη ὁ Κλεάρχος, ἄξω πάντας, καὶ σοὶ αὐτὸ δηλώσω ὅθεν ἐγὼ περὶ σοῦ ἀκούω. ἐκ τούτων δὴ τῶν λόγων ὁ Τισσαφέρνης φιλοφρονούμενος τότε μὲν μένειν τε αὐτὸν ἐκέλευε καὶ σύνδειπνον ἐποιήσατο. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Κλεάρχος ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον δῆλός τ' ἦν πάνυ φιλικῶς οἰόμενος διακειῖσθαι τῷ Τισσαφέρνει καὶ ἂ ἐλεγεν ἐκεῖνος ἀπήγγελλεν, ἔφη τε χρῆναι ἰέναι παρὰ Τισσαφέρνην οὓς ἐκέλευεν, καὶ οἷ ἂν ἐλεγχθῶσι διαβάλλοντες τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ὡς προδότας αὐτοὺς καὶ κακόνους τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ὄντας τιμωρηθῆναι. ὑπώπτευε δὲ εἶναι τὸν διαβάλλοντα Μένωνα, εἰδὼς αὐτὸν καὶ συγγεγεννημένον Τισσαφέρνει μετ' Ἀριαίου καὶ στασιάζοντα αὐτῷ καὶ ἐπιβουλεύοντα, ὅπως τὸ στράτευμα ἅπαν πρὸς αὐτὸν λαβὼν φίλος ἦ Τισσαφέρνει. ἐβούλετο δὲ καὶ Κλεάρχος ἅπαν τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἔχειν τὴν γνώμην καὶ τοὺς παραλυποῦντας ἐκποδῶν εἶναι. τῶν δὲ στρατιωτῶν ἀντέλεγον τινες

μὲν γὰρ ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ τιάραν βασιλεῖ μόνῳ |go forth<sup>1</sup>, ῥθὴν ἔχειν, τὴν δ' ἐπὶ τῇ καρδίᾳ ἴσως ἂν ὑμῶν παρόντων καὶ ἕτερος εὐπετώσ ἔχοι.

Ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἔδοξε τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἀληθῆ λέγειν· καὶ εἶπεν· Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη, οἷτινες τοιούτων ἡμῖν εἰς |friendship ρχόντων πειρῶνται

|throw ποιῆσαι πολεμίους ἡμᾶς ἄξιοί εἰσι τὰ ἔσχατα παθεῖν; |across; |slander<sup>2</sup> ὠ μὲν γε, ἔφη ὁ Τισσαφέρνης, εἰ βούλεσθέ μοι οἷ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἐλθεῖν, ἐν τῷ ἐμφανεί λέξω τοὺς πρὸς ἐμὲ λέγοντας ὡς σὺ ἐμοὶ |plot, plan, harm<sup>3</sup> τῇ σὺν ἐμοὶ στρατιᾷ.

Ἐγὼ δέ, ἔφη ὁ Κλεάρχος, |ἄγνωμι?: break<sup>4</sup>; or ἰ αὖ δηλώσω ὅθεν ἐγὼ περὶ σοῦ ἀκούω. ἐκ τούτων δὴ τῶν λόγων ὁ Τισσαφέρνης

φιλοφρονούμενος τότε μὲν μένειν τε αὐτὸν ἐκέλευε καὶ σὺνδειπνον ἐποιήσατο. τῇ δὲ |the next; later<sup>5</sup> ἄρχος ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον

δηλός τ' ἦν πάνυ φιλικῶς οἰόμενος διακεῖσθαι τῷ Τισσαφέρνει καὶ ἂ ἔλεγεν ἐκεῖνος ἀπήγγελεν, ἔφη τε χρῆναι ἰέναι παρὰ

Τισσαφέρνην οὗς ἐκέλευεν, καὶ οἱ ἂν ἐλεγχθῶσι |throw |across; |slander<sup>6</sup> τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ὡς προδότας αὐτοὺς καὶ κακόνους ἡλλησιν

ὄντας τιμωρηθῆναι. |guess, observe, be suspicious of<sup>7</sup> |throw |across; |slander<sup>8</sup> Μένωνα, εἰδὼς αὐτὸν καὶ συγγεγενημένον Τισσαφέ

στασιάζοντα αὐτῷ καὶ |plot, plan, harm<sup>9</sup> ἴπως τὸ στράτευμα ἅπαν πρὸς αὐτὸν λαβὼν φίλος ἦ Τισσαφέρνει. ἐβούλετο δὲ καὶ Κλεάρχος

ἅπαν τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἔχειν τὴν γνώμην καὶ τοὺς παραλυποῦντας ἐκποδῶν εἶναι. τῶν δὲ στρατιωτῶν ἀντέλεγόν τινες

turn might go down strong in the same through service rendered. Various ways in which you Hellenes may be useful to me you yourself have mentioned, but there is one still greater. It is the great king's privilege alone to wear the tiara upright upon his head, yet in your presence it may be given to another mortal to wear it upright, here, upon his heart."

Throughout this speech he seemed to Clearchus to be speaking the truth, and he rejoined: "Then are not those worthy of the worst penalties who, in spite of all that exists to cement our friendship, endeavour by slander to make us enemies?" "Even so," replied Tissaphernes, "and if your generals and captains care to come in some open and public way, I will name to you those who tell me that you are plotting against me and the army under me." "Good," replied Clearchus. "I will bring all, and I will show you, on my side, the source from which I derive my information concerning you."

After this conversation Tissaphernes, with kindest expression, invited Clearchus to remain with him at the time, and entertained him at dinner. Next day Clearchus returned to the camp, and made no secret of his persuasion that he at any rate stood high in the affections of Tissaphernes, and he reported what he had said, insisting that those invited ought to go to Tissaphernes, and that any Hellene convicted of calumnious language ought to be punished, not only as traitors themselves, but as disaffected to their fellow-countrymen. The slanderer and traducer was Menon; so, at any rate, he suspected, because he knew that he had had meetings with Tissaphernes whilst he was with Ariaeus, and was factiously opposed to himself, plotting how to win over the whole army to him, as a means of winning the good graces of Tissaphernes. But Clearchus wanted the entire army to give its mind to

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
**αἰίδω** sing; also αἰοδιάω  
**ἄλθομαι** become whole, sound  
**αὐτίκα** at once  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**γαστήρ** -έρος (f) belly ~gastric  
**διακόσιοι** two hundred  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**εἰκός** οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
**εἴκοσι** twenty  
**εἶσω** into; also ἔσω  
**ἐκτείνω** stretch out ~tend  
**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also  
**ἐλαστρέω**  
**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved  
**ἐνδον** in the house of; within  
**ἐντερον** guts ~entrails  
**ἐντυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also τυγχάνω  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐρμηνεύς** (m) interpreter  
**ἦγω** to have come

**θαυμάζω** marvel ~theater; also  
 ἀποθαυμάζω  
**θέω** run, run for  
**θύρα** door ~door  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἵππιοχάρμης  
**ἰσχυρός** strong, forceful, violent  
**κτείνω** kill  
**μηδέ** and not; not even  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**πιστός** faithful (πείθω)  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τριακόσιοι** three hundred  
**ὑστερον** later  
**ὑστερος** later, last  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

αὐτῷ μὴ ἰέναι πάντας τοὺς λοχαγοὺς καὶ στρατηγοὺς μηδὲ πιστεῦναι Τισσαφέρνει. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἰσχυρῶς κατέτεινεν, ἕστε διεπράξατο πέντε μὲν στρατηγοὺς ἰέναι, εἴκοσι δὲ λοχαγοὺς· συνηκολούθησαν δὲ ὡς εἰς ἀγορὰν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν ὡς διακόσιοι.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ θύραις ταῖς Τισσαφέρνους, οἱ μὲν στρατηγοὶ παρεκλήθησαν εἰσω, Πρόξενος Βοιώτιος, Μένων Θετταλός, Ἀγίας Ἀρκάς, Κλέαρχος Λάκων, Σωκράτης Ἀχαιοός· οἱ δὲ λοχαγοὶ ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ἔμενον. οὐ πολλῶ δὲ ὕστερον ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ σημείου οἱ τ' ἔνδον ξυνελαμβάνοντο καὶ οἱ ἔξω κατεκόπησαν. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τῶν βαρβάρων τινὲς ἰππέων διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐλαύνοντες ᾤτινι ἐντυγχάνοιεν Ἑλληνι ἢ δούλῳ ἢ ἐλευθέρῳ πάντας ἔκτεινον. οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες τὴν τε ἰππασίαν ἐθαύμαζον ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ὀρώντες καὶ ὅ τι ἐποιοῦν ἠμφεγνόουν, πρὶν Νίκαρχος Ἀρκὰς ἦκε φεύγων τετρωμένος εἰς τὴν γαστέρα καὶ τὰ ἔντερα ἐν ταῖς χερσὶν ἔχων, καὶ εἶπε πάντα τὰ γεγενημένα. ἐκ τούτου δὴ οἱ Ἑλληνες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα πάντες ἐκπεπληγμένοι καὶ νομίζοντες αὐτίκα ἦξιεν αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. οἱ δὲ πάντες μὲν οὐκ ἦλθον, Ἀριαῖος δὲ καὶ Ἀρτάοζος καὶ Μιθραδάτης, οἱ ἦσαν Κύρῳ πιστότατοι· ὁ δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐρμηνεὺς ἔφη καὶ τὸν Τισσαφέρνους ἀδελφὸν σὺν αὐτοῖς ὄραν καὶ γινώσκειν· ξυνηκολούθουν δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι Περσῶν τεθωρακισμένοι εἰς τριακοσίους. οὗτοι ἐπεὶ ἐγγὺς ἦσαν, προσελθεῖν ἐκέλευον εἴ τις εἴη τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγός ἢ λοχαγός, ἵνα



αὐτῷ μὴ ἰέναι πάντας τοὺς λοχαγοὺς καὶ στρατηγούς μηδὲ πιστεύειν Τισσαφέρνει. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἰσχυρῶς κατέτεινεν, ἔστε διεπράξατο πέντε μὲν στρατηγούς ἰέναι, εἴκοσι δὲ λοχαγούς· συνηκολούθησαν δὲ ὡς εἰς ἀγορὰν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν ὡς διακόσιοι.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ θύραις ταῖς Τισσαφέρνους, οἱ μὲν στρατηγοὶ παρεκλήθησαν εἴσω, Πρόξενος Βοιώτιος, Μένων Θετταλός, Ἁγίας Ἀρκάς, Κλέαρχος Λάκων, Σωκράτης Ἀχαιοῦ· οἱ δὲ λοχαγοὶ ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ἔμενον. οὐ πολλῷ δὲ ὕστερον ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ σημείου οἱ τ' ἔνδον ξυνελαμβάνοντο καὶ οἱ ἔξω κατεκόπησαν. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τῶν βαρβάρων τινὲς ἰπέων διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐλαύνοντες ᾤτι

|meet, find, obtain; succeed, ὦ ἢ ἐλευθέρω πάντας |ἐκτείνω?: stretch out ; or  
|happen, happen to exist |κτείνω?: kill

Ἕλληνες τὴν τε ἰππασίαν ἐθαύμαζον ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ὄρώντες καὶ ὅ τι ἐποίουν ἠμφεγνούν, πρὶν Νίκαρχος Ἀρκὰς ἦκε φεύγων τετραμένος εἰς τὴν γαστέρα καὶ τὰ |guts ἐν ταῖς χερσὶν ἔχων, καὶ εἶπε πάντα τὰ γεγενημένα. ἐκ τούτου δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔθειον

ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα πάντες ἐκπεπληγμένοι καὶ νομίζοντες αὐτίκα ἦξειν

αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. οἱ δὲ πάντες μὲν οὐκ |ἄλθομαι?: become whole ;  
|or ἔρχομαι?: go, come

δὲ καὶ Ἀρτάοζος καὶ Μιθραδάτης, οἱ ἦσαν Κύρω πιστότατοι· ὁ δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων |interpreter ἦ καὶ τὸν Τισσαφέρνους ἀδελφὸν σὺν αὐτοῖς ὄραν καὶ γινώσκειν· ξυνηκολούθουν δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι Περσῶν τεθωρακισμένοι εἰς τριακοσίους. οὗτοι ἐπεὶ ἐγγὺς ἦσαν, προσελθεῖν ἐκέλευον εἴ τις εἴη τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγὸς ἢ λοχαγός, ἵνα

no one else, and that refractory people should be put out of the way. Some of the soldiers protested: the captains and generals had better not all go; it was better not to put too much confidence in Tissaphernes. But Clearchus insisted so strongly that finally it was arranged for five generals to go and twenty captains. These were accompanied by about two hundred of the other soldiers, who took the opportunity of marketing.

On arrival at the doors of Tissaphernes's quarters the generals were summoned inside. They were Proxenus the Boeotian, Menon the Thessalian, Agias the Arcadian, Clearchus the Laconian, and Socrates the Achaean; while the captains remained at the doors. Not long after that, at one and the same signal, those within were seized and those without cut down; after which some of the barbarian horsemen galloped over the plain, killing every Hellene they encountered, bond or free. The Hellenes, as they looked from the camp, viewed that strange horsemanship with surprise, and could not explain to themselves what it all meant, until Nicarchus the Arcadian came tearing along for bare life with a wound in the belly, and clutching his protruding entrails in his hands. He told them all that had happened. Instantly the Hellenes ran to their arms, one and all, in utter consternation, and fully expecting that the enemy would instantly be down upon the camp. However, they did not all come; only Ariaeus came, and Artaozus and Mithridates, who were Cyrus's most faithful friends; but the interpreter of the Hellenes said he saw and recognised the brother of Tissaphernes also with them. They had at their back other Persians also, armed with cuirasses, as many as three hundred. As soon as they were within a short distance, they bade any general or captain of the Hellenes who might be there to approach and hear a message from the king. After this,

*vocabulary*

ἄημι blow  
 αἰσχύνω spoil, disgrace  
 ἀπαγγέλλω tell about  
 ἀπαιτέω demand to have returned  
 ἄπειμι be absent, go away, return  
 ἀποκρίνω (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
 ἀπόλλυμι destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι, ὀλλυμι  
 αὐτοῦ here, there  
 αὖω ignite; shout  
 βασιλεύω be king  
 δίκη justice  
 ἐάω let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about  
 ἔννυμι clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest  
 ἐπειδή after; because; also ἐπεὶ  
 ἐπιβουλεύω plot, plan, harm  
 ἐπιβουλή a plot, scheme  
 ἐπιορκέω swear falsely  
 ἔπομαι follow, support, chase ~sequel  
 ἐχθρός hated, distasteful ~external  
 ἡμέτερος our, my  
 ἠώς ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene

θνήσκω die ~euthanasia; also ἀποθνήσκω  
 κώμη village  
 λύω loosen, free, ransom ~loose  
 μαθάνω learn, be trained ~math  
 ὄμνυμι swear  
 ὄον type of fruit  
 ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ὄρκος oath ~orc  
 προδίδωμι betray  
 πρόξενος doing certain public duties  
 πρόσθεν before (time, space)  
 σπονδή libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
 τιμή honor, value  
 τυγχάνω meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also ἐντυγχάνω  
 τῷ so, therefore; in that case  
 ὑμέτερος yours  
 φανερός visible, conspicuous  
 φιλέω love ~philanthropy  
 φυλάσσω guard, be on guard ~phylactery  
 χέω pour, scatter; also καταχέω

ἀπαγγείλωσι τὰ παρὰ βασιλέως. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐξήλθον φυλαττόμενοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὶ μὲν Κλεάνωρ Ὀρχομένιος καὶ Σοφαίνετος Στυμφάλιος, ξὺν αὐτοῖς δὲ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, ὅπως μάθοι τὰ περὶ Προξένου· Χειρίσοφος δὲ ἐτύγχανεν ἀπὼν ἐν κώμῃ τινὶ ξὺν ἄλλοις ἐπισιτιζόμενοις. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔστησαν εἰς ἐπήκοον, εἶπεν Ἀριαῖος τάδε. Κλέαρχος μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ ἐπιορκῶν τε ἐφάνη καὶ τὰς σπονδὰς λύων, ἔχει τὴν δίκην καὶ τέθνηκε, Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μένων, ὅτι κατήγγειλαν αὐτοῦ τὴν ἐπιβουλὴν, ἐν μεγάλῃ τιμῇ εἰσιν. ὑμᾶς δὲ βασιλεὺς τὰ ὄπλα ἀπαιτεῖ· αὐτοῦ γὰρ εἶναί φησιν, ἐπεὶπερ Κύρου ἦσαν τοῦ ἐκείνου δούλου. πρὸς ταῦτα ἀπεκρίναντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἔλεγε δὲ Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος· ὦ κάκιστε ἀνθρώπων Ἀριαῖε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ὅσοι ἦτε Κύρου φίλοι, οὐκ αἰσχύνεσθε οὔτε θεοὺς οὔτ' ἀνθρώπους, οἷτινες ὁμόσαντες ἡμῖν τοὺς αὐτοὺς φίλους καὶ ἐχθροὺς νομιεῖν, προδόντες ἡμᾶς σὺν Τισσαφέρνει τῶ ἀθεωτάτῳ τε καὶ πανουργοτάτῳ τούς τε ἄνδρας αὐτοὺς οἷς ὤμνυτε ἀπολωλέκατε καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἡμᾶς προδεδωκότες ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ἔρχεσθε; ὁ δὲ Ἀριαῖος εἶπε· Κλέαρχος γὰρ πρόσθεν ἐπιβουλεύων φανερὸς ἐγένετο Τισσαφέρνει τε καὶ Ὀρόντα, καὶ πᾶσιν ἡμῖν τοῖς ξὺν τούτοις. ἐπὶ τούτοις Ξενοφῶν τάδε εἶπε. Κλέαρχος μὲν τοίνυν εἰ παρὰ τοὺς ὄρκους ἔλυε τὰς σπονδὰς, τὴν δίκην ἔχει· δίκαιον γὰρ ἀπόλλυσθαι τοὺς ἐπιορκοῦντας· Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μένων ἐπεὶπερ εἰσὶν ὑμέτεροι μὲν εὐεργέται, ἡμέτεροι δὲ στρατηγοί, πέμψατε αὐτοὺς

ἀπαγγείλωσι τὰ παρὰ βασιλέως. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐξήλθον φυλαττόμενοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὶ μὲν Κλεάνωρ Ὀρχομένιος καὶ Σοφαίνετος Στυμφάλιος, ξὺν αὐτοῖς δὲ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, ὅπως μάθοι τὰ περὶ Πρόξενου· Χειρίσοφος δὲ ἐτύγχανεν ἀπάν ἐν **|village** καὶ ξὺν ἄλλοις ἐπισιτιζομένοις. **|after;** ἔστησαν εἰς ἐπήκοον, εἶπεν Ἀριαῖος **|because** τὰδε. Κλέαρχος μὲν, ὡ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ ἐπιορκῶν τε ἐφάνη καὶ τὰς σπονδὰς λύων, ἔχει τὴν δίκην καὶ **|die**. Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μένων, ὅτι κατήγγειλαν αὐτοῦ τὴν **|a plot, scheme**, ἐγάλη τιμῇ εἰσιν. ὑμᾶς δὲ βασιλεὺς τὰ ὅπλα **|demand** ἡμῶν γὰρ εἶναί φησιν, ἐπεὶπερ Κύρου ἦσαν τοῦ ἐκείνου δοῦλοῦ **|to have returned** ταῦτα ἀπεκρίναντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἔλεγε δὲ Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος· **|type of fruit** ἰθρῶπων Ἀριαῖε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ὅσοι ἦτε Κύρου φίλοι, οὐκ αἰσχύνεσθε οὔτε θεοὺς οὔτ' ἀνθρώπους, οἵτινες ὁμόσαντες ἡμῖν τοὺς αὐτοὺς φίλους καὶ ἐχθροὺς νομεῖν, προδόντες ἡμᾶς σὺν Τισσαφέρνει τῷ ἀθεωτάτῳ τε καὶ πανουργοτάτῳ τούς τε ἄνδρας αὐτοὺς οἷς ὤμνυτε ἀπολωλέκατε καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἡμᾶς **|betray** ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ἔρχεσθε; ὁ δὲ Ἀριαῖος εἶπε· Κλέαρχος γὰρ πρόσθεν **|plot, plan, harm** φανερὸς ἐγένετο Τισσαφέρνει τε καὶ Ὀρόντα, καὶ πᾶσι ἡμῖν τοῖς ξὺν τούτοις. ἐπὶ τούτοις Ξενοφῶν τὰδε εἶπε. Κλέαρχος μὲν τοίνυν εἰ παρὰ τοὺς ὅρκους ἔλυε τὰς σπονδὰς, τὴν δίκην ἔχει· δίκαιον γὰρ ἀπόλλυσθαι τοὺς **|swear falsely**. Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μένων ἐπεὶπερ εἰσὶν ὑμέτεροι μὲν εὐεργέται, ἡμέτεροι δὲ στρατηγοί, πέμψατε αὐτοὺς

two Hellene generals went out with all precaution. These were Cleanor the Orchomenian, and Sophaenetus the Stymphalion, attended by Xenophon the Athenian, who went to learn news of Proxenus. Cheirisophus was at the time away in a village with a party gathering provisions. As soon as they had halted within earshot, Ariaeus said: "Hellenes, Clearchus being shown to have committed perjury and to have broken the truce, has suffered the penalty, and he is dead; but Proxenus and Menon, in return for having given information of his treachery, are in high esteem and honour. As to yourselves, the king demands your arms. He claims them as his, since they belonged to Cyrus, who was his slave." To this the Hellenes made answer by the mouth of Cleanor of Orchomenus, their spokesman, who said, addressing Ariaeus: "Thou villain, Ariaeus, and you the rest of you, who were Cyrus's friends, have you no shame before God or man, first to swear to us that you have the same friends and the same enemies as we ourselves, and then to turn and betray us, making common cause with Tissaphernes, that most impious and villainous of men? With him you have murdered the very men to whom you gave your solemn word and oath, and to the rest of us turned traitors; and, having so done, you join hand with our enemies to come against us." Ariaeus answered: "There is no doubt but that Clearchus has been known for some time to harbour designs against Tissaphernes and Orontas, and all of us who side with them." Taking up this assertion, Xenophon said: "Well, then, granting that Clearchus broke the truce contrary to our oaths, he has his deserts, for perjurers deserve to perish; but where are Proxenus and Menon, our generals and your good friends and benefactors, as you admit? Send them back to us. Surely, just because they

*vocabulary*

**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**ἀμφοτέρος** both ~amphora  
**ἀνάγω** lead up, set sail  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
**ἀποστρέφω** turn back  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βέλτιστος** best, noblest  
**γράφω** scratch, incise ~photograph  
**δεῦρο** here, come here!  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διαγίγνομαι** go through, pass  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
**δόξα** what one expects ~doxology  
**εἰρήνη** peace  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεὶ  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔσχατος** farthest, last  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**κεφαλή** head; height ~gable

**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**μυρίος** immense, myriad ~myriad  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὅποῖος** whatever kind  
**οὐκέτι** no more  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also **πειρητίζω**  
**πλέος** full; also **πλεῖος**, **πλέως**  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also **πολεμίζω**, **πτολεμίζω**  
**πολεμόω** make an enemy of  
**πως** somehow  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble  
**τελευτάω** bring about, finish  
**τελέω** fulfill; pf pass: be feasible  
**τέλος** -υς (n, 3) end; military post  
**τρέπω** divert ~trophy  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape  
**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions

δεῦρο· δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι φίλοι γε ὄντες ἀμφοτέροις πειράσσονται καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ἡμῖν τὰ βέλτιστα συμβουλευσαί. πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ βάρβαροι πολὺν χρόνον διαλεχθέντες ἀλλήλοις ἀπήλθον οὐδὲν ἀποκρινάμενοι.

## 2.6

Οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατηγοὶ οὕτω ληφθέντες ἀνήχθησαν ὡς βασιλέα καὶ ἀποτμηθέντες τὰς κεφαλὰς ἐτελεύτησαν, εἰς μὲν αὐτῶν Κλέαρχος ὁμολογουμένως ἐκ πάντων τῶν ἐμπείρων αὐτοῦ ἐχόντων δόξας γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ καὶ πολεμικὸς καὶ φιλοπόλεμος ἐσχάτως. καὶ γὰρ δὴ ἕως μὲν πόλεμος ἦν τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις πρὸς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους παρέμενεν, ἐπειδὴ δὲ εἰρήνη ἐγένετο, πείσας τὴν αὐτοῦ πόλιν ὡς οἱ Θρᾶκες ἀδικοῦσι τοὺς Ἕλληνας καὶ διαπραξάμενος ὡς ἐδύνατο παρὰ τῶν ἐφόρων ἐξέπλει ὡς πολεμίσων τοῖς ὑπὲρ Χερρονήσου καὶ Περίνθου Θραξίν. ἐπεὶ δὲ μεταγρόντες πως οἱ ἔφοροι ἤδη ἔξω ὄντος ἀποστρέφειν αὐτὸν ἐπειρῶντο ἐξ Ἴσθμοῦ, ἐνταῦθα οὐκέτι πείθεται, ἀλλ' ὄχρητο πλέων εἰς Ἑλλάσποντον. ἐκ τούτου καὶ ἐθανατώθη ὑπὸ τῶν ἐν Σπάρτῃ τελεῶν ὡς ἀπειθῶν. ἤδη δὲ φυγὰς ὦν ἔρχεται πρὸς Κῦρον, καὶ ὁποίοις μὲν λόγοις ἔπεισε Κῦρον ἄλλη γέγραπται, δίδωσι δὲ αὐτῷ Κῦρος μυρίους δαρεικούς· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν οὐκ ἐπὶ ῥαθυμίαν ἐτρέπετο, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων συλλέξας στράτευμα ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θραξί, καὶ μάχῃ τε ἐνίκησε καὶ ἀπὸ τούτου δὴ ἔφερε καὶ ἤγε τούτους καὶ πολεμῶν διεγένετο μέχρι Κῦρος ἐδείθη τοῦ



δεῦρο· δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι φίλοι γε ὄντες ἀμφοτέροις πειράσσονται καὶ ὑμῖν  
καὶ ἡμῖν τὰ <sup>|best,</sup> ξυμβουλευσαι. πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ βάρβαροι πολὺν  
<sup>|noblest</sup>  
χρόνον διαλεχθέντες ἀλλήλοις ἀπῆλθον οὐδὲν ἀποκρινάμενοι.

## 2.6

Οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατηγοὶ οὕτω ληφθέντες ἀνήχθησαν ὡς βασιλέα καὶ  
<sup>|cut off, sever</sup> τὰς κεφαλὰς ἐτελεύτησαν, εἷς μὲν αὐτῶν Κλέαρχος  
ὁμολογουμένως ἐκ πάντων τῶν ἐμπείρων αὐτοῦ ἐχόντων δόξας  
γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ καὶ πολεμικὸς καὶ <sup>|war-loving</sup> ἐσχάτως. καὶ γὰρ  
δὴ ἔως μὲν πόλεμος ἦν τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις πρὸς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους  
<sup>|stay with</sup> . <sup>|after;</sup> εἰρήνην ἐγένετο, <sup>|πεισσα?:</sup> ὀbediēnce, ḷ subjection ; or  
<sup>|because</sup> <sup>|πάσχω?:</sup> suffer ; or <sup>|πειθω?:</sup> persuade  
οἱ Θραῖκες ἀδικοῦσι τοὺς Ἑλλήνας καὶ διαπραξάμενος ὡς <sup>|enter, put on, strip</sup>  
<sup>|off</sup>  
παρὰ τῶν ἐφόρων ἐξέπλει ὡς πολεμῆσιν τοῖς ὑπὲρ Χερρονήσου καὶ  
Περίνθου Θραξίν. ἐπεὶ δὲ μεταγρόντες πως οἱ ἔφοροι ἤδη ἔξω ὄντος  
ἀποστρέφειν αὐτὸν ἐπειρῶντο ἐξ Ἴσθμοῦ, ἐνταῦθα οὐκέτι πείθεται,  
ἀλλ' ὄχρετο πλέων εἰς Ἑλλάσποντον. ἐκ τούτου καὶ ἐθανατώθη ὑπὸ  
τῶν ἐν Σπάρτῃ τελῶν ὡς ἀπειθῶν. ἤδη δὲ <sup>|φυγὰς?:</sup> exīle, refugeē ; or <sup>|φυγή?:</sup>  
<sup>|flight, means of escape</sup>  
Κῦρον, καὶ <sup>|whatever kind</sup> . <sup>|</sup> ἡς ἔπεισε Κῦρον ἄλλη γέγραπται, <sup>|δίδωμι?:</sup> should;  
<sup>|bind; need, fail ;</sup>  
δὲ αὐτῷ Κῦρος μυρίους δαρεικούς· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν οὐκ ἐπὶ ῥά <sup>|οἱ δίδωμι?:</sup> give;  
<sup>|permit</sup>  
ἐτράπετο, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων <sup>|collect,</sup> στρατεύμα  
<sup>|assemble</sup>  
ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θραξί, καὶ μάχῃ τε ἐνίκησε καὶ ἀπὸ τούτου δὴ ἔφερε  
καὶ ἦγε τούτους καὶ πολεμῶν <sup>|go through, pass</sup> ἕως ἐδεήθη τοῦ

are friends of both parties, they will try to give us the best advice for you and for us.”

At this, the Asiatics stood discussing with one another for a long while, and then they went away without vouchsafing a word.

## 2.6

The generals who were thus seized were taken up to the king and there decapitated. The first of these, Clearchus, was a thorough soldier, and a true lover of fighting. This is the testimony of all who knew him intimately. As long as the war between the Lacedaemonians and Athenians lasted, he could find occupation at home; but after the peace, he persuaded his own city that the Thracians were injuring the Hellenes, and having secured his object, set sail, empowered by the ephorate to make war upon the Thracians north of the Chersonese and Perinthus. But he had no sooner fairly started than, for some reason or other, the ephors changed their minds, and endeavoured to bring him back again from the isthmus. Thereupon he refused further obedience, and went off with sails set for the Hellespont. In consequence he was condemned to death by the Spartan authorities for disobedience to orders; and now, finding himself an exile, he came to Cyrus. Working on the feelings of that prince, in language described elsewhere, he received from his entertainer a present of ten thousand darics. Having got this money, he did not sink into a life of ease and indolence, but collected an army with it, carried on war against the Thracians, and conquered them in battle, and from that date onwards harried and plundered them with war incessantly, until Cyrus wanted his army; whereupon he at once went off, in hopes of finding another sphere of warfare in his company.

These, I take it, were the characteristic acts of a man whose affections are set on warfare. When it is open to him to enjoy peace with honour, no shame,

*vocabulary*

**ἀγέομαι** go before, lead ~hegemony;  
also ἡγέομαι  
**αἰσχύνω** spoil, disgrace  
**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
needing ~Sp.~sin  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general,  
governor  
**ἄ** again, then again; next ~after  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**γνώμη** sign, mind, will, decision  
**δυνατός** powerful, possible  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
not worry about  
**ἔδω** eat ~eat  
**ἔζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit  
up; also καθέζετο, καθέζομαι, καθέζω  
**εἰρήνη** peace  
**ἐμποιέω** make inside of  
**ἐνίοτε** sometimes  
**ἐννυμι** clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἤμερος** domesticated  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit

**ἰσχυρός** strong, forceful, violent  
**μείων** less, smaller  
**ὄργή** urge, impulse; anger  
**ὄφελος** (n, 3) a use, a help  
**παρώω** maim; also πηρώω  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also  
πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**πονέω** work; be busy  
**πρόσωπον** face ~prosopagnosia  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τρόπος** (m/n) turn; manner, kind,  
fashion  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**φιλοπόλεμος** war-loving  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch; also  
φυλακεύς  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard  
~phylactery  
**φωνέω** sound, speak ~megaphone  
**φωνή** sound; voice ~megaphone  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**χοῦμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions

στρατεύματος· τότε δὲ ἀπήλθεν ὡς ξὺν ἐκείνῳ αὐτῷ πολεμίων. ταῦτα οὖν φιλοπολέμου μοι δοκεῖ ἀνδρὸς ἔργα εἶναι, ὅστις ἐξὸν μὲν εἰρήνην ἄγειν ἄνευ αἰσχύνῃς καὶ βλάβῃς αἰρεῖται πολεμεῖν, ἐξὸν δὲ ῥάθυμῶν βούλεται πονεῖν ὥστε πολεμεῖν, ἐξὸν δὲ χρήματα ἔχειν ἀκινδύνως αἰρεῖται πολεμῶν μείονα ταῦτα ποιεῖν· ἐκεῖνος δὲ ὥσπερ εἰς παιδικὰ ἢ εἰς ἄλλην τιὰ ἡδονὴν ἤθελε δαπανᾶν εἰς πόλεμον. οὕτω μὲν φιλοπόλεμος ἦν· πολεμικὸς δὲ αὐτῷ ἐδόκει εἶναι ὅτι φιλοκίνδυνός τε ἦν καὶ ἡμέρας καὶ νυκτὸς ἄγων ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς φρόνιμος, ὡς οἱ παρόντες πανταχοῦ πάντες ὁμολογοῦν. καὶ ἀρχικὸς δ' ἐλέγετο εἶναι ὡς δυνατὸν ἐκ τοῦ τοιοῦτου τρόπου οἶον κάκεινος εἶχεν. ἱκανὸς μὲν γὰρ ὡς τις καὶ ἄλλος φροντίζειν ἦν ὅπως ἔχοι ἢ στρατιὰ αὐτῷ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια καὶ παρασκευάζειν ταῦτα, ἱκανὸς δὲ καὶ ἐμποῦῃσαι τοῖς παροῦσιν ὡς πειστέον εἶναι Κλεάρχῳ. τοῦτο δ' ἐποίει ἐκ τοῦ χαλεπὸς εἶναι· καὶ γὰρ ὀρᾶν στυγνὸς ἦν καὶ τῇ φωνῇ τραχὺς, ἐκόλαζέ τε ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ ὀργῇ ἐνίοτε, ὡς καὶ αὐτῷ μεταμέλειν ἔσθ' ὅτε. καὶ γνώμη δ' ἐκόλαζεν· ἀκολάστου γὰρ στρατεύματος οὐδὲν ἡγείτο ὄφελος εἶναι, ἀλλὰ καὶ λέγειν αὐτὸν ἔφασαν ὡς δέοι τὸν στρατιώτην φοβεῖσθαι μᾶλλον τὸν ἄρχοντα ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους, εἰ μέλλοι ἢ φυλακὰς φυλάζειν ἢ φίλων ἀφέξεσθαι ἢ ἀπροφασίστως ἰέναι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. ἐν μὲν οὖν τοῖς δεινοῖς ἤθελον αὐτοῦ ἀκούειν σφόδρα καὶ οὐκ ἄλλον ἠροῦντο οἱ στρατιῶται· καὶ γὰρ τὸ στυγνὸν τότε φαιδρὸν αὐτοῦ ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις προσώποις ἔφασαν φαίνεσθαι

στρατεύματος· τότε δὲ ἀπῆλθεν ὡς ξὺν ἐκείνῳ αὐτῷ πολεμήσων. ταῦτα οὖν **|war-loving** μοι δοκεῖ ἀνδρὸς ἔργα εἶναι, ὅστις **|go forth** εἰρήνην ἄγειν ἄνευ αἰσχύνης καὶ βλάβης αἰρεῖται πολεμεῖν, **|go forth** ἁθρομῶν βούλεται πονεῖν ὥστε πολεμεῖν, **|go forth** ἁθρομῶν αἰρεῖται πολεμῶν **|less, smaller** αὐτὰ ποιεῖν· ἐκεῖνος δὲ ὥσπερ εἰς παιδικὰ ἢ εἰς ἄλλην τινα ἡδονὴν ἠθέλε δαπανᾶν εἰς πόλεμον. οὕτω μὲν **|war-loving** ἦν· πολεμικὸς δὲ αὐτῷ ταύτῃ ἐδόκει εἶναι ὅτι φιλοκίνδυνός τε ἦν καὶ ἡμέρας καὶ νυκτὸς ἄγων ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς φρόνιμος, ὡς οἱ παρόντες πανταχοῦ πάντες ὁμολόγουν. καὶ ἀρχικὸς δ' ἐλέγετο εἶναι ὡς δυνατὸν ἐκ τοῦ τοιούτου τρόπου οἶον κάκεινος εἶχεν. ἱκανὸς μὲν γὰρ ὡς τις καὶ ἄλλος φροντίζειν ἦν ὅπως ἔχοι ἢ στρατιὰ αὐτῷ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια καὶ παρασκευάζειν ταῦτα, ἱκανὸς δὲ καὶ **|make inside of** παροῦσιν ὡς πειστέον εἶη Κλεάρχῳ. τοῦτο δ' ἐποίει ἐκ τοῦ χαλεπὸς εἶναι· καὶ γὰρ ὄραν στυγνὸς ἦν καὶ τῇ φωνῇ τραχύς, ἐκόλαζε τε ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ ὀργῇ **|sometimes** καὶ αὐτῷ μεταμέλειν ἔσθ' ὅτε. καὶ γνώμη δ' ἐκόλαζεν· ἀκολάστου γὰρ στρατεύματος οὐδὲν **|go before,** **|a use, a help** ἀλλὰ καὶ λέγειν αὐτὸν ἔφασαν ὡς δεοῖ τὸν στρατὸν **|lead** αὐτὴν φοβεῖσθαι μᾶλλον τὸν ἄρχοντα ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους, εἰ μέλλοι ἢ φυλακὰς φυλάξειν ἢ φίλων ἀφέξεσθαι ἢ ἀπροφασίστως ἰέναι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. ἐν μὲν οὖν τοῖς δεινοῖς ἠθέλον αὐτοῦ ἀκούειν σφόδρα καὶ οὐκ ἄλλον ἠροῦντο οἱ στρατιῶται· καὶ γὰρ τὸ στυγνὸν τότε φαιδρὸν αὐτοῦ ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις προσώποις ἔφασαν φαίνεσθαι

no injury attached, still he prefers war; when he may live at home at ease, he insists on toil, if only it may end in fighting; when it is given to him to keep his riches without risk, he would rather lessen his fortune by the pastime of battle. To put it briefly, war was his mistress; just as another man will spend his fortune on a favourite, or to gratify some pleasure, so he chose to squander his substance on soldiering.

But if the life of a soldier was a passion with him, he was none the less a soldier born, as herein appears; danger was a delight to him; he courted it, attacking the enemy by night or by day; and in difficulties he did not lose his head, as all who ever served in a campaign with him would with one consent allow. A good soldier! the question arises, Was he equally good as a commander? It must be admitted that, as far as was compatible with his quality of temper, he was; none more so. Capable to a singular degree of devising how his army was to get supplies, and of actually getting them, he was also capable of impressing upon those about him that Clearchus must be obeyed; and that he brought about by the very hardness of his nature. With a scowling expression and a harshly-grating voice, he chastised with severity, and at times with such fury, that he was sorry afterwards himself for what he had done. Yet it was not without purpose that he applied the whip; he had a theory that there was no good to be got out of an unchastened army. A saying of his is recorded to the effect that the soldier who is to mount guard and keep his hands off his friends, and be ready to dash without a moment's hesitation against the foe— must fear his commander more than the enemy. Accordingly, in any strait, this was the man whom the soldiers were eager to obey, and they would have no other in his place. The cloud which lay upon his brow, at those times lit up with brightness; his face became radiant, and the old sternness was so charged with vigour and knitted strength to meet the foe, that it savoured of salvation, not of cruelty. But when the pinch of

*vocabulary*

**ἄλθομαι** become whole, sound  
**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp.~sin  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail  
**ἀργύριον** small coin  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**αὖ** again, then again; next ~after  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also ἀφήκω  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of  
**ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics  
**ἔτης** (m, 1) fellow townsman?  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also ἰθύς  
**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat  
**θαρσαλέος** bold, over-bold  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**κατέχω** hold down; cover; also

*κατασχεθεῖν*

**κτάομαι** acquire, possess (κτῆμα)  
**κτείνω** kill  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι, οἴομαι  
**οὐκέτι** no more  
**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow  
**πεντήκοντα** fifty  
**πράξις** -εως (f/m/n) result, business  
**πρόξενος** doing certain public duties  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συγγίγνομαι** associate with, meet, have sex  
**τελευτάω** bring about, finish  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φιλία** friendship  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**ὠμός** raw

καὶ τὸ χαλεπὸν ἐρρωμένον πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους ἐδόκει εἶναι, ὥστε σωτήριον, οὐκέτι χαλεπὸν ἐφαίνετο· ὅτε δ' ἔξω τοῦ δεινοῦ γένοιτο καὶ ἐξείη πρὸς ἄλλον ἀρξομένους ἀπιέναι, πολλοὶ αὐτὸν ἀπέλειπον· τὸ γὰρ ἐπίχαρι οὐκ εἶχεν, ἀλλ' αἰὲ χαλεπὸς ἦν καὶ ὠμός· ὥστε διέκειντο πρὸς αὐτὸν οἱ στρατιῶται ὥσπερ παῖδες πρὸς διδάσκαλον. καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲν φιλία μὲν καὶ εὐνοία ἐπομένους οὐδέποτε εἶχεν· οἴτινες δὲ ἢ ὑπὸ πόλεως τεταγμένοι ἢ ὑπὸ τοῦ δεῖσθαι ἢ ἄλλῃ τινὶ ἀνάγκῃ κατεχόμενοι παρέησαν αὐτῷ, σφόδρα πειθόμενοι ἐχρήτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄρξαιτο νικᾶν ξὺν αὐτῷ τοὺς πολεμίους, ἤδη μεγάλα ἦν τὰ χρησίμους ποιούντα εἶναι τοὺς ξὺν αὐτῷ στρατιώτας· τό τε γὰρ πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους θαρραλέως ἔχειν παρῆν καὶ τὸ τὴν παρ' ἐκείνου τιμωρίαν φοβεῖσθαι εὐτάκτους ἐποίει. τοιοῦτος μὲν δὴ ἄρχων ἦν· ἄρχεσθαι δὲ ὑπὸ ἄλλων οὐ μάλα ἐθέλειν ἐλέγετο. ἦν δὲ ὅτε ἐτελεύτα ἀμφὶ τὰ πεντήκοντα ἔτη.

Πρόξενος δὲ ὁ Βοιωτίος εὐθὺς μὲν μειράκιον ὦν ἐπεθύμει γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ τὰ μεγάλα πράττειν ἰκανός· καὶ διὰ ταύτην τὴν ἐπιθυμίαν ἔδωκε Γοργία ἀργύριον τῷ Λεοντίῳ. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνεγένετο ἐκείνῳ, ἰκανὸς νομίσας ἤδη εἶναι καὶ ἄρχειν καὶ φίλος ὦν τοῖς πρώτοις μὴ ἠττᾶσθαι εὐεργετῶν, ἦλθεν εἰς ταύτας τὰς σὺν Κύρῳ πράξεις· καὶ ᾤετο κτήσεσθαι ἐκ τούτων ὄνομα μέγα καὶ δύναμιν μεγάλην καὶ χρήματα πολλά· τοσοῦτων δ' ἐπιθυμῶν σφόδρα ἔνδηλον αὐτῷ καὶ τοῦτο εἶχεν, ὅτι τούτων οὐδὲν ἂν θέλοι κτᾶσθαι μετὰ ἀδικίας, ἀλλὰ σὺν τῷ δικαίῳ καὶ καλῷ ᾤετο δεῖν τούτων τυγχάνειν, ἄνευ δὲ τούτων



καὶ τὸ χαλεπὸν ἐρρωμένον πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους ἐδόκει εἶναι, ὥστε  
 σωτήριον, οὐκέτι χαλεπὸν ἐφαίνετο· ὅτε δ' ἕξω τοῦ δεινοῦ γένοιτο  
 καὶ ἔξειμι?: go forth ; ὄρ, ἐξίημι?: τίεναι, πολλοὶ αὐτὸν |leave τὸ  
 |send forth, allow forth |behind,  
 γὰρ ἐπίχαρι οὐκ εἶχεν, ἀλλ' αἰὲ χαλεπὸς ἦν καὶ |raw |fail ἐδιέκειντο  
 πρὸς αὐτὸν οἱ στρατιῶται ὥσπερ παῖδες πρὸς διδάσκαλον. καὶ γὰρ  
 οὐν |friendship αἰ εὐνοία ἐπομένους οὐδέποτε εἶχεν· οἵτινες δὲ ἢ ὑπὸ  
 πόλεως τεταγμένοι ἢ ὑπὸ τοῦ δεῖσθαι ἢ ἄλλη τινὶ ἀνάγκῃ κατεχόμενοι  
 παρείσαν αὐτῷ, σφόδρα πειθομένοις ἐχρήτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄρξαιντο νικᾶν  
 ζῆν αὐτῷ τοὺς πολεμίους, ἤδη μεγάλα ἦν τὰ χρησίμους ποιοῦντα  
 εἶναι τοὺς ζῆν αὐτῷ στρατιώτας· τό τε γὰρ πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους  
 |bold ἔχειν παρῆν καὶ τὸ τὴν παρ' ἐκείνου τιμωρίαν φοβεῖσθαι  
 εὐτάκτους ἐποίει. τοιοῦτος μὲν δὴ ἄρχων ἦν· ἄρχεσθαι δὲ ὑπὸ ἄλλων  
 οὐ μάλα ἐθέλειν ἐλέγετο. ἦν δὲ ὅτε ἐτελεύτα ἀμφὶ τὰ πενήκοντα ἔτης?: fellow  
 Πρὸξενος δὲ ὁ Βοιωτίος εὐθὺς μὲν μειράκιον ἂν ἐπεθύμει γενέσθαι ; or ἔτος?: year  
 ἀνὴρ τὰ μεγάλα πράττειν ἰκανός· καὶ διὰ ταύτην τὴν ἐπιθυμία? ; or τίθημι?:  
 ἔδωκε Γοργία ἀργύριον τῷ Λεοντίνῳ. ἐπεὶ δὲ |associate with, ρ, |meet, have sex  
 ἰκανὸς νομίσας ἤδη εἶναι καὶ ἄρχειν καὶ φίλος ἂν τοῖς πρώτοις μὴ  
 |(pass) be weaker, |beἄλλομαι?: become whole Κύρω πράξεις· καὶ  
 |overcome; (active) de-; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come  
 |feato κτήσεσθαι ἐκ τούτων ὄνομα μέγα καὶ δύναμιν μεγάλην καὶ  
 χρήματα πολλὰ· τοσούτων δ' ἐπιθυμῶν σφόδρα ἔνδηλον αὐ καὶ τοῦτο  
 εἶχεν, ὅτι τούτων οὐδὲν ἂν θέλοι κτᾶσθαι μετὰ ἀδικίας, ἀλλὰ σὺν  
 τῷ δικαίῳ καὶ καλῷ ᾤετο δεῖν τούτων τυγχάνειν, ἄνευ δὲ τούτων

danger was past, and it was open to them to go and taste subordination under some other officer, many forsook him. So lacking in grace of manner was he; but was ever harsh and savage, so that the feeling of the soldiers towards him was that of schoolboys to a master. In other words, though it was not his good fortune ever to have followers inspired solely by friendship or goodwill, yet those who found themselves under him, either by State appointment or through want, or other arch necessity, yielded him implicit obedience. From the moment that he led them to victory, the elements which went to make his soldiers efficient were numerous enough. There was the feeling of confidence in facing the foe, which never left them, and there was the dread of punishment at his hands to keep them orderly. In this way and to this extent he knew how to rule; but to play a subordinate part himself he had no great taste; so, at any rate, it was said. At the time of his death he must have been about fifty years of age.

Proxenus, the Boeotian, was of a different temperament. It had been the dream of his boyhood to become a man capable of great achievements. In obedience to this passionate desire it was, that he paid his fee to Gorgias of Leontini. After enjoying that teacher's society, he flattered himself that he must be at once qualified to rule; and while he was on friendly terms with the leaders of the age, he was not to be outdone in reciprocity of service. In this mood he threw himself into the projects of Cyrus, and in return expected to derive from this essay the reward of a great name, large power, and wide wealth. But for all that he pitched his hopes so high, it was none the less evident that he would refuse to gain any of the ends he set before him wrongfully. Righteously and honourably he would obtain them, if he might, or else forego them. As a commander he had the art of leading gentlemen, but he failed to inspire adequately either respect for himself or fear in the soldiers under him. Indeed, he showed a more delicate regard for his soldiers than his subordinates for him, and he was indisputably more apprehensive

*vocabulary*

**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**αἰδέομαι** respect, be ashamed  
**αἰδώς** -οῦς (f) awe, shame, respect;  
 genitals  
**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**αἰσχύνω** spoil, disgrace  
**ἀπεχθάνομαι** become hated ~external  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve  
**ἄπλος** onefold, worn single ~haploid  
**ἀρκέω** ward off, defend; suffice  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διαλέγω** go through, debate  
**δίκη** justice  
**δυνατός** powerful, possible  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐμποιέω** make inside of  
**ἐπαινέω** concur, concur with  
**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm  
**ἐπιορκέω** swear falsely  
**ἐπίορκος** falsely, perjuring  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔτεός** true  
**ἔτης** (m, 1) fellow townsman?

**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**ἰσχυρός** strong, forceful, violent  
**κάλως** halyard  
**κτῆμα** (n, 3) possession  
**μέντοι** however  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,  
 οἶομαι  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**σύνειμι** be with (+dat.)  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τιμάω** honor, exalt  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φόβος** fear, rout, panic ~phobia  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard  
 ~phylactery  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear  
**ψεύδω** middle: to lie

μή. ἄρχειν δὲ καλῶν μὲν καὶ ἀγαθῶν δυνατὸς ἦν· οὐ μέντοι οὐτ' αἰδῶ τοῖς στρατιώταις ἑαυτοῦ οὔτε φόβον ἱκανὸς ἐμποιῆσαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡσχύνετο μᾶλλον τοὺς στρατιώτας ἢ οἱ ἀρχόμενοι ἐκείνων· καὶ φοβούμενος μᾶλλον ἦν φανερὸς τὸ ἀπεχθάνεσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις ἢ οἱ στρατιῶται τὸ ἀπιστεῖν ἐκείνῳ. ᾤετο δὲ ἀρκεῖν πρὸς τὸ ἀρχικὸν εἶναι καὶ δοκεῖν τὸν μὲν καλῶς ποιῶντα ἐπαινεῖν, τὸν δὲ ἀδικοῦντα μὴ ἐπαινεῖν. τοιγαροῦν αὐτῷ οἱ μὲν καλοὶ τε καὶ ἀγαθοὶ τῶν συνόντων εὖνοι ἦσαν, οἱ δὲ ἄδικοι ἐπεβούλευον ὡς εὐμεταχειρίστῳ ὄντι. ὅτε δὲ ἀπέθνησκεν ἦν ἑτῶν ὡς τριάκοντα.

Μένων δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς δῆλος ἦν ἐπιθυμῶν μὲν πλουτεῖν ἰσχυρῶς, ἐπιθυμῶν δὲ ἄρχειν, ὅπως πλείω λαμβάνοι, ἐπιθυμῶν δὲ τιμᾶσθαι, ἵνα πλείω κερδαῖνοι· φίλος τε ἐβούλετο εἶναι τοῖς μέγιστα δυναμένοις, ἵνα ἀδικῶν μὴ διδοίη δίκην. ἐπὶ δὲ τὸ κατεργάζεσθαι ὧν ἐπιθυμοῖη συντομωτάτην ᾤετο ὁδὸν εἶναι διὰ τοῦ ἐπιорκεῖν τε καὶ ψεύδεσθαι καὶ ἔξαπατᾶν, τὸ δ' ἀπλοῦν καὶ ἀληθὲς τὸ αὐτὸ τῷ ἡλιθίῳ εἶναι. στέργων δὲ φανερὸς μὲν ἦν οὐδένα, ὅτῳ δὲ φαίη φίλος εἶναι, τούτῳ ἔνδηλος ἐγίγνετο ἐπιβουλεύων. καὶ πολεμίου μὲν οὐδενὸς κατεγέλα, τῶν δὲ συνόντων πάντων ὡς καταγελῶν αἰεὶ διελέγετο. καὶ τοῖς μὲν τῶν πολεμίων κτήμασιν οὐκ ἐπεβούλευε· χαλεπὸν γὰρ ᾤετο εἶναι τὰ τῶν φυλαττομένων λαμβάνειν· τὰ δὲ τῶν φίλων μόνος ᾤετο εἶδέναι ῥᾶστον ὃν ἀφύλακτα λαμβάνειν. καὶ ὅσους μὲν αἰσθάνοιτο ἐπιόρκους καὶ ἀδίκους ὡς εὖ ὀπλισμένους ἐφοβεῖτο, τοῖς δὲ ὁμοίοις

μή. ἄρχειν δὲ καλῶν μὲν καὶ ἀγαθῶν δυνατὸς ἦν· οὐ μέντοι οὐτ' αἰδῶ τοῖς στρατιώταις ἑαυτοῦ οὔτε φόβον ἰκανὸς |make inside`of` καὶ ἡσχύνετο μᾶλλον τοὺς στρατιώτας ἢ οἱ ἀρχόμενοι ἐκείνον· καὶ φοβούμενος μᾶλλον ἦν φανερὸς τὸ |become hated τοῖς στρατιώταις ἢ οἱ στρατιῶται τὸ |disbelieve` :είνω. ᾤετο δὲ |ward off, ὃς τὸ ἀρχικὸν εἶναι καὶ δοκεῖν τὸν μὲν καλῶς ποιοῦντα ἐπαινεῖν, τὸν δὲ ἀδικοῦντα μὴ ἐπαινεῖν. τοιγαροῦν αὐτῷ οἱ μὲν καλοὶ τε καὶ ἀγαθοὶ τῶν συνόντων εὖνοι ἦσαν, οἱ δὲ ἄδικοι |plot, plan, harm ἰμεταχειρίστω ὄντι. ὅτε δὲ ἀπέθνησκεν ἦν |ἐτεός?: true` ; or ἔτης?: fellow |townsman? ; or ἔτος?: year

Μένων δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς δῆλος ἦν ἐπιθυμῶν μὲν πλουτεῖν ἰσχυρῶς, ἐπιθυμῶν δὲ ἄρχειν, ὅπως πλείω λαμβάνοι, ἐπιθυμῶν δὲ τιμᾶσθαι, ἵνα πλείω κερδαίνοι· φίλος τε ἐβούλετο εἶναι τοῖς μέγιστα δυναμένοις, ἵνα ἀδικῶν μὴ διδοίη δίκην. ἐπὶ δὲ τὸ κατεργάζεσθαι ὧν ἐπιθυμοῖη συντομωτάτην ᾤετο ὁδὸν εἶναι διὰ τοῦ |swear τε καὶ ψεῦδεσθαι |falsely καὶ ἔξαπατᾶν, τὸ δ' |onefold, worn`single ἰ αὐτὸ τῷ ἡλιθίῳ εἶναι. στέργων δὲ φανερὸς μὲν ἦν οὐδένα, ὅτῳ δὲ φαίη φίλος εἶναι, τούτῳ ἔνδηλος ἐγίνετο |plot, plan, harm ἰ πολέμιου μὲν οὐδενὸς κατεγέλα, τῶν δὲ συνόντων πάντων ὡς καταγελῶν αἰεὶ διελέγετο. καὶ τοῖς μὲν τῶν πολεμίων κτήμασιν οὐκ |plot, plan, harm τὸν γὰρ ᾤετο εἶναι τὰ τῶν φυλαττομένων λαμβάνειν· τὰ δὲ τῶν φίλων μόνος ᾤετο εἰδέναι ῥᾶστον ὃν ἀφύλακτα λαμβάνειν. καὶ ὅσους μὲν αἰσθάνοιτο |falsely, καὶ ἀδίκους ὡς εἰ ὀπλισμένους ἐφοβεῖτο, τοῖς δὲ ὁσίοις |perjuring

of incurring their hatred than they were of losing their fidelity. The one thing needful to real and recognised generalship was, he thought, to praise the virtuous and to withhold praise from the evildoer. It can be easily understood, then, that of those who were brought in contact with him, the good and noble indeed were his well-wishers; but he laid himself open to the machinations of the base, who looked upon him as a person to be dealt with as they liked. At the time of his death he was only thirty years of age.

As to Menon the Thessalian, the mainspring of his action was obvious; what he sought after insatiably was wealth. Rule he sought after only as a stepping-stone to larger spoils. Honours and high estate he craved for simply that he might extend the area of his gains; and if he studied to be on friendly terms with the powerful, it was in order that he might commit wrong with impunity. The shortest road to the achievement of his desires lay, he thought, through false swearing, lying, and cheating; for in his vocabulary simplicity and truth were synonyms of folly. Natural affection he clearly entertained for nobody. If he called a man his friend it might be looked upon as certain that he was bent on ensnaring him. Laughter at an enemy he considered out of place, but his whole conversation turned upon the ridicule of his associates. In like manner, the possessions of his foes were secure from his designs, since it was no easy task, he thought, to steal from people on their guard; but it was his particular good fortune to have discovered how easy it is to rob a friend in the midst of his security. If it were a perjured person or a wrongdoer, he dreaded him as well armed and intrenched; but the honourable and the truth-loving he tried to practise on, regarding them as weaklings devoid of manhood. And as other men pride themselves on piety and truth and righteousness, so Menon prided himself on a capacity for fraud, on the fabrication of lies, on the mockery and scorn of friends. The man who was not a rogue he ever looked upon as only half educated.

*vocabulary*

**ἀγάλλω** exalt; mp: exult in; also  
 ἐπαγάλλομαι, ἐπαγλαίζω  
**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**ἀλήθεια** truth  
**ἀνδάνω** please ~hedonism  
**ἀξιόω** consider worthy, fitting  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι,  
 ὀλλυμι  
**ἀποτέμνω** cut off, sever  
**ἀσκέω** work on  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**διαβάλλω** throw across; slander  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐνιαυτός** cycle of a year  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ῶ) display, exhibit  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐεργεσία** good deed, public service  
**ζωή** ζόης life  
**ζωός** alive ~zoo; also ζώς  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θεραπεύω** help, serve  
**θνήσκω** die ~euthanasia; also  
 ἐκθνήσκω

**καταλέγω** relate in detail; mp: lie  
 down (λέγω)  
**κεφαλή** head; height ~gable  
**κτάομαι** acquire, possess (κτῆμα)  
**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive  
 ~mechanism  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ξένος** guest-friend, host, stranger  
 ~xenophobe  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,  
 οἴομαι  
**ὁπότε** when; also ὀπότε  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also  
 πειρητίζω  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
 campaign  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τελευτή** conclusion, fulfilment  
**τιμάω** honor, exalt  
**τιμωρέω** take vengeance  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φιλία** friendship  
**ψεύδω** middle: to lie

καὶ ἀλήθειαν ἀσκοῦσιν ὡς ἀνάνδρους ἐπειράτο χρῆσθαι. ὥσπερ δέ τις ἀγάλλεται ἐπὶ θεοσεβείᾳ καὶ ἀληθείᾳ καὶ δικαιοσύνητι, οὕτω Μένων ἠγάλλετο τῷ ἐξαπατᾶν δύνασθαι, τῷ πλάσασθαι ψεύδη, τῷ φίλους διαγελᾶν· τὸν δὲ μὴ πανοῦργον τῶν ἀπαιδευτῶν ἀεὶ ἐνόμιζεν εἶναι. καὶ παρ' οἷς μὲν ἐπεχείρει πρωτεύειν φιλία, διαβάλλων τοὺς πρώτους τοῦτο ᾗετο δεῖν κτήσασθαι. τὸ δὲ πειθομένους τοὺς στρατιώτας παρέχεσθαι ἐκ τοῦ συναδικεῖν αὐτοῖς ἐμηχανᾶτο. τιμᾶσθαι δὲ καὶ θεραπεύεσθαι ἡξίου ἐπιδεικνύμενος ὅτι πλείστα δύναίτο καὶ ἐθέλοι ἂν ἀδικεῖν. εὐεργεσίαν δὲ κατέλεγεν, ὅποτε τις αὐτοῦ ἀφίσταίτο, ὅτι χρώμενος αὐτῷ οὐκ ἀπώλεσεν αὐτόν. καὶ τὰ μὲν δὴ ἀφανῆ ἔξεστι περὶ αὐτοῦ ψεύδεσθαι, ἃ δὲ πάντες ἴσασι τάδ' ἐστί. παρὰ Ἄριστίππου μὲν ἔτι ὠραῖος ὢν στρατηγεῖν διεπράξατο τῶν ξένων, Ἄριαίῳ δὲ βαρβάρῳ ὄντι, ὅτι μειρακίους καλοῖς ἦδετο, οἰκειότατος ἔτι ὠραῖος ὢν ἐγένετο, αὐτὸς δὲ παιδικὰ εἶχε Θαρύπαν ἀγένης ὢν γενειῶντα. ἀποθνησκόντων δὲ τῶν συστρατήγων ὅτι ἐστράτευσαν ἐπὶ βασιλέα ξὺν Κύρῳ, ταῦτα πεπονηκῶς οὐκ ἀπέθανε, μετὰ δὲ τὸν τῶν ἄλλων θάνατον στρατηγῶν τιμωρηθεὶς ὑπὸ βασιλέως ἀπέθανεν, οὐχ ὥσπερ Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ ἀποτμηθέντες τὰς κεφαλὰς, ὅσπερ τάχιστος θάνατος δοκεῖ εἶναι, ἀλλὰ ζῶν αἰκισθεὶς ἐνιαυτὸν ὡς πονηρὸς λέγεται τῆς τελευταίας τυχεῖν.

Ἄγιας δὲ ὁ Ἄρκας καὶ Σωκράτης ὁ Ἄχαιὸς καὶ τούτῳ ἀπεθανέτην. τούτων δὲ οὐθ' ὡς ἐν πολέμῳ κακῶν οὐδεὶς



καὶ ἀλήθειαν |work on ὡς ἀνάνδροις ἐπειρᾶτο χρῆσθαι. ὡσπερ δέ  
 τις |exult in ἐπὶ θεοσεβείᾳ καὶ ἀληθείᾳ καὶ δικαιοσύνῃ, οὕτω Μένων  
 |exult in τῷ ἔξαπατᾶν δύνασθαι, τῷ πλάσασθαι ψεύδη, τῷ φίλους  
 διαγελᾶν· τὸν δὲ μὴ πανούργον τῶν ἀπαιδευτῶν αἰὲ ἐνόμιζεν εἶναι.  
 καὶ παρ' οἷς μὲν ἐπεχείρει πρωτεύειν |friend-throw οὓς πρώτους  
 τοῦτο ᾤετο δεῖν κτήσασθαι. τὸ δὲ πειθᾶ |ship |across; |slander τοὺς στρατιώτας  
 παρέχεσθαι ἐκ τοῦ συναδικεῖν αὐτοῖς |build, |contrive τιμᾶσθαι δὲ καὶ  
 θεραπεύεσθαι ἡξίου ἐπιδεικνύμενος ὅτι πλείστα |enter, put on, ἠέλοι  
 ἂν ἀδικεῖν. |good deed, |public service κατέλεγεν, ὅποτε τις αὐτοῦ ἀφίστατο,  
 ὅτι χρώμενος αὐτῷ οὐκ ἀπώλεσεν αὐτόν. καὶ τὰ μὲν δὴ ἀφανῆ  
 |go forth ρὶ αὐτοῦ ψεύδεσθαι, ἃ δὲ πάντες ἴσασι τὰδ' ἐστί. παρὰ  
 Ἀριστίππου μὲν ἔτι ὠραῖος ὢν στρατηγεῖν διεπράξατο τῶν ξένων,  
 Ἀριαίῳ δὲ βαρβάρῳ ὄντι, ὅτι μειρακίοις καλοῖς |please οἰκειότατος  
 ἔτι ὠραῖος ὢν ἐγένετο, αὐτὸς δὲ παιδικὰ εἶχε Θαρύπαν ἀγένειος ὢν  
 |become a man θνησκόντων δὲ τῶν συστρατήγων ὅτι ἐστράτευσαν  
 ἐπὶ βασιλέᾳ ξὺν Κύρῳ, |identical τοιηκῶς οὐκ ἀπέθανε, μετὰ δὲ τὸν  
 τῶν ἄλλων θάνατον στρατηγῶν τιμωρηθεὶς ὑπὸ βασιλέως ἀπέθανεν,  
 οὐχ ὡσπερ Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ |cut off, sever τὰς  
 κεφαλὰς, ὅσπερ τάχιστος θάνατος δοκεῖ εἶναι, ἀλλὰ ζῶν αἰκισθεὶς  
 ἐνιαυτὸν ὡς πονηρὸς λέγεται τῆς |conclusion, ..εἶν.  
 |fulfilment  
 Ἄγιας δὲ ὁ Ἄρκας καὶ Σωκράτης ὁ Ἀχαιοὺς καὶ τούτῳ  
 ἀπεθανέτην. τούτων δὲ οὐθ' ὡς ἐν πολέμῳ κακῶν οὐδεὶς

Did he aspire to the first place in another man's friendship, he set about his object by slandering those who stood nearest to him in affection. He contrived to secure the obedience of his soldiers by making himself an accomplice in their misdeeds, and the fluency with which he vaunted his own capacity and readiness for enormous guilt was a sufficient title to be honoured and courted by them. Or if any one stood aloof from him, he set it down as a meritorious act of kindness on his part that during their intercourse he had not robbed him of existence.

As to certain obscure charges brought against his character, these may certainly be fabrications. I confine myself to the following facts, which are known to all. He was in the bloom of youth when he procured from Aristippus the command of his mercenaries; he had not yet lost that bloom when he became exceedingly intimate with Ariaeus, a barbarian, whose liking for fair young men was the explanation; and before he had grown a beard himself, he had contracted a similar relationship with a bearded favourite named Tharypas. When his fellow-generals were put to death on the plea that they had marched with Cyrus against the king, he alone, although he had shared their conduct, was exempted from their fate. But after their deaths the vengeance of the king fell upon him, and he was put to death, not like Clearchus and the others by what would appear to be the speediest of deaths— decapitation— but, as report says, he lived for a year in pain and disgrace and died the death of a felon.

Agias the Arcadian and Socrates the Achaean were both among the sufferers who were put to death. To the credit, be it said, of both, no one ever derided either as cowardly in war: no one ever had a fault to find with either on the score of friendship. They were both about thirty-five years of age.

### 3

Account, not only of the doings of the Hellenes during the advance

of Cyrus till



*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
**ἄθυμος** having low morale  
**ἄμφω** both ~amphora  
**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**ἀνάβασις** -ος (f) going up, mounting, going inland  
**ἀνακαίω** light (a fire)  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι, ὀλλυμι  
**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck  
**βάβαρος** non-Greek  
**γενεά** birth, race ~genus; also γενεή  
**γεύω** taste ~gusto  
**διείργω** keep apart  
**ἔθνος** -εος (n, 3) tribe, company, flock ~ethnic  
**ἔτης** (m, 1) fellow townsman?  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide, chief  
**θύρα** door ~door  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also ἵππιοχάρμης  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**λείπω** leave something; depart ~eclipse; also λιπάω

**μείων** less, smaller  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**μυρίος** immense, myriad ~myriad  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**πάντη** everywhere  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**σίτος** (m/n) grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters; also σταδία  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συνέπομαι** go along with  
**τελευτάω** bring about, finish  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φιλία** friendship

κατεγέλα οὐτ' εἰς φιλίαν αὐτοὺς ἐμέμφετο. ἦστην δὲ ἄμφω ἀμφὶ τὰ πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα ἔτη ἀπὸ γενεᾶς.

## 3

## 3.1

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ Κύρου ἀναβάσει οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπραξαν μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα ἐπεὶ Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησεν ἐγένετο ἀπίοντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων σὺν Τισσαφέρνει ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ συνειλημμένοι ἦσαν καὶ τῶν λοχαγῶν καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἱ συνεπόμενοι ἀπωλώλεσαν, ἐν πολλῇ δὴ ἀπορία ἦσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐννοοῦμενοι ὅτι ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις ἦσαν, κύκλω δὲ αὐτοῖς πάντῃ πολλὰ καὶ ἔθνη καὶ πόλεις πολέμια ἦσαν, ἀγορὰν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔτι παρέξειν ἔμελλεν, ἀπείχον δὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐ μείον ἢ μύρια στάδια, ἡγεμῶν δ' οὐδεὶς τῆς ὁδοῦ ἦν, ποταμοὶ δὲ διείργον ἀδιάβατοι ἐν μέσῳ τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ, προυδεδώκεσαν δὲ αὐτοὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες βάρβαροι, μόνοι δὲ καταλειμμένοι ἦσαν οὐδὲ ἰππέα οὐδένα σύμμαχον ἔχοντες, ὥστε εὐδηλον ἦν ὅτι νικῶντες μὲν οὐδένα ἂν κατακάνοιεν, ἡττηθέντων δὲ αὐτῶν οὐδεὶς ἂν λειφθείη· ταῦτ' ἐννοοῦμενοι καὶ ἀθύμως ἔχοντες ὀλίγοι μὲν αὐτῶν εἰς τὴν ἐσπέραν σίτου ἐγέυσαντο, ὀλίγοι δὲ πῦρ ἀνέκαυσαν, ἐπὶ

κατεγέλα οὐτ' εἰς |friendship ὕς ἐμέμφετο. ἦσθην δὲ ἄμφω ἀμφὶ τὰ  
 πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα |ἔτης?: fellow townsman? ; or ἔτος?: year ; or τίθημι?: put;  
 |cause; endow; cause to be, make

3

### 3.1

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ Κύρου |going up, mount- ηνες ἔπραξαν μέχρι  
 |ing, going inland  
 τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα ἐπεὶ Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησεν ἐγένετο ἀπιόντων τῶν  
 Ἑλλήνων σὺν Τισσαφέρνει ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ  
 δεδήλωται.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ συνειλημμένοι ἦσαν καὶ τῶν λοχαγῶν καὶ τῶν  
 στρατιωτῶν οἱ |go along with ὠλώλεσαν, ἐν πολλῇ δὴ |difficulty,  
 |bottleneck  
 οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐννοούμενοι ὅτι ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις ἦσαν, |circle,  
 |wheel  
 δὲ αὐτοῖς πάντῃ πολλὰ καὶ ἔθνη καὶ πόλεις πολέμια ἦσαν, ἀγορὰν  
 δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔτι παρέξεν ἔμελλεν, ἀπείχον δὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐ |less, ἄ  
 |smaller  
 μύρια |στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also masc) ; ἢ στάδιος?: (adj) standing upright,  
 |firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
 ἀδιάβατοι ἐν μέσῳ τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ, προυδεδώκεσαν δὲ αὐτοῖς  
 καὶ οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες βάρβαροι, μόνον δὲ καταλελειμμένοι  
 ἦσαν οὐδὲ ἵππεια οὐδένα σύμμαχον ἔχοντες, ὥστε εὐδηλον ἦν ὅτι  
 νικῶντες μὲν οὐδένα ἂν κατακάνοιεν, ἡττηθέντων δὲ αὐτῶν οὐδεὶς  
 ἂν λειφθείη· ταῦτ' ἐννοούμενοι καὶ |having low morale', οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν  
 εἰς τὴν ἑσπέραν σίτου ἐγέυσαντο, ὀλίγοι δὲ πῦρ |light (a fire) ἔπι

the date of the battle, but of the incidents which befell them after Cyrus' death at the commencement of the retreat, while in company with Tissaphernes during the truce.)

### 3.1

After the generals had been seized, and the captains and soldiers who formed their escort had been killed, the Hellenes lay in deep perplexity— a prey to painful reflections. Here were they at the king's gates, and on every side environing them were many hostile cities and tribes of men. Who was there now to furnish them with a market? Separated from Hellas by more than a thousand miles, they had not even a guide to point the way. Impassable rivers lay athwart their homeward route, and hemmed them in. Betrayed even by the Asiatics, at whose side they had marched with Cyrus to the attack, they were left in isolation. Without a single mounted trooper to aid them in pursuit: was it not perfectly plain that if they won a battle, their enemies would escape to a man, but if they were beaten themselves, not one soul of them would survive?

Haunted by such thoughts, and with hearts full of despair, but few of them tasted food that evening; but few of them kindled even a fire, and many never came into camp at all that night, but took their rest where each chanced to be. They could not close their eyes for very pain and yearning after their fatherlands or their parents, the wife or child whom they never expected to look upon again. Such was



*vocabulary*

<b>αἶρω</b> raise, win ~aorta; also ἀείρω	~xenophobe
<b>αἰτιάομαι</b> blame	<b>ὄδος</b> (f) threshold, road, journey
<b>ἀναγιγνώσκω</b> recognize	~odometer; also οὐδός
<b>ἀναίρέω</b> take up	<b>οἴκοθεν</b> from home
<b>ἀναπαύω</b> cause to cease	<b>ὄπλον</b> tool, weapon, ship's tackle
<b>ἀρόω</b> plow ~arable	<b>ὅπου</b> where
<b>ἀρχαῖος</b> ancient, from the beginning	<b>πατρίς</b> -δος fatherland
<b>ἔδω</b> eat ~eat	<b>ποθέω</b> miss, long for, notice an absence; lose
<b>ἔπομαι</b> follow, support, chase ~sequel	<b>πόθος</b> longing, regret ~bid; also ποθή
<b>ἔρομαι</b> ask, search through; also	<b>πορεύω</b> carry
ἀνέρομαι, εἶρομαι, ἐξείρομαι, ἐξέρομαι	<b>πότερος</b> which, whichever of two
<b>ἔρωτάω</b> ask about something	<b>πρόθυμος</b> willing, eager
<b>εὐχομαι</b> declare, boast; pray (εὐχος)	<b>προίημι</b> send forth, abandon
<b>ἠώς ἠοῦς</b> (f) dawn ~Eocene	<b>πυνθάνομαι</b> learn, inquire, (+gen) hear of ~buddha; also πεύθομαι
<b>θεά</b> (2) goddess ~theology	<b>στρατιά</b> army
<b>θεάομαι</b> look at, behold, consider	<b>στρατιώτης</b> (m, 1) soldier, mercenary
~theater; also θάομαι, θηέομαι	<b>συμβουλευώ</b> give advice; (mid) consult
<b>θύω</b> rush; sacrifice	<b>συμπολεμέω</b> join in war
<b>καθεύδω</b> lie down	<b>σώζω</b> save
<b>κρείσσω</b> more powerful	<b>τυγχάνω</b> meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also
<b>κρίνω</b> sift, separate, choose ~critic	ἐντυγχάνω
<b>λύπη</b> distress	<b>τῷ</b> so, therefore; in that case
<b>μέντοι</b> however	<b>φιλέω</b> love ~philanthropy
<b>μεταπέμπω</b> send; (mid) summon	<b>φύω</b> produce, beget; clasp ~physics
<b>νομίζω</b> consider customary	
<b>ξένος</b> guest-friend, host, stranger	

δὲ τὰ ὄπλα πολλοὶ οὐκ ἦλθον ταύτην τὴν νύκτα, ἀνεπαύοντο δὲ ὅπου ἐτύγχανον ἕκαστος, οὐ δυνάμενοι καθέυδειν ὑπὸ λύπης καὶ πόθου πατρίδων, γονέων, γυναικῶν, παιδῶν, οὓς οὐποτ' ἐνόμιζον ἔτι ὄψεσθαι. οὕτω μὲν δὴ διακείμενοι πάντες ἀνεπαύοντο.

Ἦν δέ τις ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς οὔτε στρατηγὸς οὔτε λοχαγὸς οὔτε στρατιώτης ὢν συνηκολούθει, ἀλλὰ Πρόξενος αὐτὸν μετεπέμψατο οἴκοθεν ξένος ὢν ἀρχαῖος· ὑπισχνεῖτο δὲ αὐτῷ, εἰ ἔλθοι, φίλον αὐτὸν Κύρω ποιήσειν, ὃν αὐτὸς ἔφη κρείττω ἑαυτῷ νομίζειν τῆς πατρίδος. ὁ μέντοι Ξενοφῶν ἀναγνοὺς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἀνακοινοῦται Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθηναίῳ περὶ τῆς πορείας. καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ὑποπτέυσας μὴ τι πρὸς τῆς πόλεως ὑπαίτιον εἶη Κύρω φίλον γενέσθαι, ὅτι ἐδόκει ὁ Κύρος προθύμως τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας συμπολεμῆσαι, συμβουλεύει τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ἐλθόντα εἰς Δελφοὺς ἀνακοινῶσαι τῷ θεῷ περὶ τῆς πορείας. ἐλθὼν δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐπήρετο τὸν Ἀπόλλω τίνι ἂν θεῶν θύων καὶ εὐχόμενος κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα ἔλθοι τὴν ὁδὸν ἣν ἐπινοεῖ καὶ καλῶς πράξας σωθεῖη. καὶ ἀνεῖλεν αὐτῷ ὁ Ἀπόλλων θεοῖς οἷς ἔδει θύειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάλιν ἦλθε, λέγει τὴν μαντείαν τῷ Σωκράτει. ὁ δ' ἀκούσας ἠτιᾶτο αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐ τοῦτο πρῶτον ἠρώτα πότερον λῶον εἶη αὐτῷ πορεύεσθαι ἢ μένειν, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κρίνας ἰτέον εἶναι τοῦτ' ἐπυρθάνετο ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα πορευθεῖη. ἐπεὶ μέντοι οὕτως ἦρου, ταῦτ', ἔφη, χρὴ ποιεῖν ὅσα ὁ θεὸς ἐκέλευσεν. ὁ μὲν δὴ Ξενοφῶν οὕτω θυσάμενος

δὲ τὰ ὄπλα πολλοὶ οὐκ ἄλθομαι?: become whole ;|cause to cease`  
 or ἔρχομαι?: go, come  
 ὅπου ἐτύγχανον ἕκαστος, οὐ δυνάμενοι καθεῦδειν ὑπὸ |distress αἰ

|πόθος?: longing,|progeny, υναικῶν, παίδων, οὓς οὔποτ' ἐνόμιζον ἐπι  
 regret ; or  
 |ποθέω?: οὔτ' miss, δὴ διακείμενοι πάντες |cause to cease  
 long for, notice  
 an absence; lose

Ἦν δέ τις ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς οὔτε στρατηγὸς  
 οὔτε λοχαγὸς οὔτε στρατιώτης ὢν συνηκολούθει, ἀλλὰ Πρόξενος

αὐτὸν |send; (mid)|from home ; ὢν |ancient, from, νεῖτο δὲ αὐτῷ,  
 |summon the beginning

εἰ ἔλθοι, φίλον αὐτὸν Κύρω ποιήσῃ, ὃν αὐτὸς ἔφη κρείττω ἑαυτῷ  
 νομίζειν τῆς πατρίδος. ὁ μέντοι Ξενοφῶν |recognize ἤν ἐπιστολὴν

ἀνακοινοῦται Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθηναίῳ περὶ τῆς πορείας. καὶ ὁ  
 Σωκράτης |guess, observe, be πρὸς τῆς πόλεως ὑπαίτιον εἶη Κύρω  
 |suspicious of

φίλον γενέσθαι, ὅτι ἐδόκει ὁ Κῦρος προθύμως τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις  
 ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας |join in war |give advice; Ξενοφῶντι ἐλθόντα  
 (mid) consult

εἰς Δελφοὺς ἀνακοινῶσαι τῷ θεῷ περὶ τῆς πορείας. ἐλθὼν δ' ὁ  
 Ξενοφῶν ἐπήρετο τὸν Ἀπόλλω τίνι ἂν θεῶν |θύον?: kind of tree ; or θύω?:  
 |rush; sacrifice

κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα ἔλθοι τὴν ὁδὸν ἣν ἐπινοεῖ καὶ καλῶς πράξας  
 σωθείη. καὶ ἀνείλεν αὐτῷ ὁ Ἀπόλλων θεοῖς οἷς ἔδει θύειν. ἐπεὶ

δὲ πάλιν ἄλθομαι?: become whole τῷ Σωκράτει. ὁ δ' ἄκέομαι?: heal, fix  
 ; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come  
 |blame αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐ τοῦτο πρῶτον ἠρώτα |which, ἵον |listen τῷ  
 |whichever

πορεύεσθαι ἢ μένειν, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κρίνας ἰτέον εἶναι τοῦτ' ἐπυνθάνετο  
 ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα πορευθείη. ἐπεὶ μέντοι οὕτως ἤρου, ταῦτ', ἔφη,

χρὴ ποιεῖν ὅσα ὁ θεὸς ἐκέλευσεν. ὁ μὲν δὴ Ξενοφῶν οὕτω θυσάμενος

the plight in which each and all tried to seek repose.

Now there was in that host a certain man, an Athenian, Xenophon, who had accompanied Cyrus, neither as a general, nor as an officer, nor yet as a private soldier, but simply on the invitation of an old friend, Proxenus. This old friend had sent to fetch him from home, promising, if he would come, to introduce him to Cyrus, "whom," said Proxenus, "I consider to be worth my fatherland and more to me."

Xenophon having read the letter, consulted Socrates the Athenian, whether he should accept or refuse the invitation. Socrates, who had a suspicion that the State of Athens might in some way look askance at my friendship with Cyrus, whose zealous co-operation with the Lacedaemonians against Athens in the war was not forgotten, advised Xenophon to go to Delphi and there to consult the god as to the desirability of such a journey. Xenophon went and put the question to Apollo, to which of the gods he must pray and do sacrifice, so that he might best accomplish his intended journey and return in safety, with good fortune. Then Apollo answered him: "To such and such gods must thou do sacrifice," and when he had returned home he reported to Socrates the oracle. But he, when he heard, blamed Xenophon that he had not, in the first instance, inquired of the god, whether it were better for him to go or to stay, but had taken on himself to settle that point affirmatively, by inquiring straightway, how he might best perform the journey. "Since, however," continued Socrates, "you did so put the question, you should do what the god enjoined." Thus, and without further ado, Xenophon offered sacrifice to those whom the god had named, and set sail on his voyage. He overtook Proxenus and Cyrus at Sardis, when they were just ready to start on the march up

*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*

**ἀέκων** unwilling

**αἰδέομαι** respect, be ashamed

**ἀναιρέω** take up

**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, out to sea

**ἀποπέμπω** send away

**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck

**βροντή** thunder ~brontosaurus

**διό** because of which

**εἰκός** οἰκότης (n, 3) likely

**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack

**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat

**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)

**ἐπειδάν** when

**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel

**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also

*ιθύς*

**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene

**καθεύδω** lie down

**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake

**κίνδυνος** (ῶ) danger

**κρίνω** sift, separate, choose ~critic

**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle

**λαγχάνω** be allotted; (esp. *λελα-*

*forms*) allot; receive

**λάμπω** shine ~lamp

**λήγω** cease ~lax

**λυπέω** annoy, distress

**μέντοι** however

**μικρός** small; also *σμικρός*

**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey

~odometer; also *οὐδός*

**ἔμως** anyway, nevertheless

**ὅποῖος** whatever kind

**ὀρμή** pressure, assault, order

**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey

~odometer; also *ὁδός*

**πλήν** except

**πονέω** work; be busy

**πόνος** toil, suffering

**προίημι** send forth, abandon

**σαφής** clear, understandable

**στόλος** expedition

**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign

**συνίστημι** unite; confront in battle

**ὑπνος** a sleep; also *ὑπνον*

**φάος** (n, 3) light; salvation; (pl) eyes

~photon; also *φώς*

**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia

**χώρα** place

οἷς ἀνείλεν ὁ θεὸς ἐξέπλει, καὶ καταλαμβάνει ἐν Σάρδεσι Πρόξενον καὶ Κῦρον μέλλοντας ἤδη ὁρμᾶν τὴν ἄνω ὁδόν, καὶ συνεστάθη Κύρω. προθυμουμένου δὲ τοῦ Προξένου καὶ ὁ Κῦρος συμπροθυμείτο μείναι αὐτόν, εἶπε δὲ ὅτι ἐπειδὴν τάχιστα ἡ στρατεία λήξει, εὐθὺς ἀποπέμψει αὐτόν. ἐλέγετο δὲ ὁ στόλος εἶναι εἰς Πισίδας. ἐστρατεύετο μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐξαπατηθεῖς— οὐχ ὑπὸ Προξένου· οὐ γὰρ ἤδει τὴν ἐπὶ βασιλέα ὁρμὴν οὐδὲ ἄλλος οὐδεὶς τῶν Ἑλλήνων πλὴν Κλεάρχου· ἐπεὶ μέντοι εἰς Κιλικίαν ἦλθον, σαφὲς πᾶσιν ἤδη ἐδόκει εἶναι ὅτι ὁ στόλος εἶη ἐπὶ βασιλέα. φοβούμενοι δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ ἄκοντες ὅμως οἱ πολλοὶ δι' αἰσχύνην καὶ ἀλλήλων καὶ Κύρου συνηκολούθησαν· ὧν εἷς καὶ Ξενοφῶν ἦν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπορία ἦν, ἐλυπείτο μὲν σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις καὶ οὐκ ἐδύνατο καθεύδειν· μικρὸν δ' ὕπνου λαχὼν εἶδεν ὄναρ. ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ βροντῆς γενομένης σκηπτὸς πεσεῖν εἰς τὴν πατρῴαν οἰκίαν, καὶ ἐκ τούτου λάμπεσθαι πᾶσα. περίφοβος δ' εὐθὺς ἀνηγέρθη, καὶ τὸ ὄναρ τῇ μὲν ἔκρινεν ἀγαθόν, ὅτι ἐν πόνοις ὦν καὶ κινδύνοις φῶς μέγα ἐκ Διὸς ἰδεῖν ἔδοξε· τῇ δὲ καὶ ἐφοβείτο, ὅτι ἀπὸ Διὸς μὲν βασιλέως τὸ ὄναρ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ εἶναι, κύκλω δὲ ἐδόκει λάμπεσθαι τὸ πῦρ, μὴ οὐ δύναίτο ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐξελθεῖν τῆς βασιλέως, ἀλλ' εἴργοιτο πάντοθεν ὑπὸ τινῶν ἀποριῶν. ὁποῖόν τι μὲν δὴ ἐστὶ τὸ τοιοῦτον ὄναρ ἰδεῖν ἔξεστι σκοπεῖν ἐκ τῶν συμβάντων μετὰ τὸ ὄναρ. γίγνεται γὰρ τάδε. εὐθὺς ἐπειδὴ ἀνηγέρθη πρῶτον μὲν ἔννοια αὐτῷ ἐμπίπτει· τί κατάκειμαι; ἡ δὲ νύξ προβαίνει· ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ εἰκὸς τοὺς πολεμίους

οἷς ἀνεΐλεν ὁ θεὸς ἐξέπλει, καὶ καταλαμβάνει ἐν Σάρδεσι Πρόξενον  
καὶ Κύρον μέλλοντας ἤδη ὁρμᾶν τὴν |accomplish, pass, waste; Κύρω.  
|upwards, out to sea  
προθυμουμένου δὲ τοῦ Προξένου καὶ ὁ Κύρος συμπροθυμεῖτο μείναι  
αὐτόν, εἶπε δὲ ὅτι |when τάχιστα ἢ στρατεία |λήγω?: 'cease ; ὅρ'λάσκω?: cry,  
|crack, ring  
αὐτόν. ἐλέγετο δὲ ὁ στόλος εἶναι εἰς Πισίδας. ἐστρατεύετο μὲν δὴ  
οὕτως ἐξαπατηθεῖς— οὐχ ὑπὸ Προξένου· οὐ γὰρ ἤδει τὴν ἐπὶ βασιλέα  
ὁρμὴν οὐδὲ ἄλλος οὐδεὶς τῶν Ἑλλήνων πλὴν Κλεάρχου· ἐπεὶ μέντοι  
εἰς Κιλικίαν |ἄλθομαι?: become whole ἐδόκει εἶναι ὅτι ὁ στόλος εἶη  
|; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come  
ἐπὶ βασιλέα. φοβούμενοι δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ ἄκοντες ὅμως οἱ πολλοὶ  
δι' αἰσχύνην καὶ ἀλλήλων καὶ Κύρου συνηκολούθησαν· ὧν εἷς καὶ  
Ξενοφῶν ἦν. ἐπεὶ δὲ |difficulty, ἔντυπειτο μὲν σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις καὶ οὐκ  
|bottleneck  
|enter, put on, ἴδεν· μικρὸν δ' ὕπνου |be allotted; |dream ὄδοξεν αὐτῷ  
|strip off (esp. λελα-  
|βροντῆς γενομένης σκηπτὸς πεσεῖν |forms) |allot; ἤσαν οἰκίαν, καὶ ἐκ  
|receive  
τούτου |shine πᾶσα. περίφοβος δ' εὐθὺς |awaken καὶ τὸ |dream  
τῇ μὲν ἔκρινεν ἀγαθόν, ὅτι ἐν πόνοις ὧν καὶ κινδύνοις φῶς μέγα ἐκ  
Διὸς ἰδεῖν ἔδοξε· τῇ δὲ καὶ ἐφοβεῖτο, ὅτι ἀπὸ Διὸς μὲν βασιλέως τὸ  
|dream ὄκει αὐτῷ εἶναι, |circle, δὲ ἐδόκει |shine τὸ πῦρ, μὴ οὐ  
|wheel  
|enter, put on, ἰχώρας ἐξελεῖν τῆς βασιλέως, ἀλλ' εἴργετο |from all directions  
|strip off  
ὑπὸ τιῶν |difficulty, |whatever kind ἢ ἐστὶ τὸ τοιοῦτον |dream ἔϊν  
|bottleneck  
|go forth ἰοπεῖν ἐκ τῶν συμβάντων μετὰ τὸ |dream γίγνεται γὰρ  
τάδε. εὐθὺς |after; |awaken πρῶτον μὲν ἔννοια αὐτῷ |fall into; attack  
|because  
κατάκειμαι; ἢ δὲ νύξ |surpass ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ εἰκὸς τοὺς πολεμίους

country, and was at once introduced to Cyrus. Proxenus eagerly pressed him to stop— a request which Cyrus with like ardour supported, adding that as soon as the campaign was over he would send him home. The campaign referred to was understood to be against the Pisidians. That is how Xenophon came to join the expedition, deceived indeed, though not by Proxenus, who was equally in the dark with the rest of the Hellenes, not counting Clearchus, as to the intended attack upon the king. Then, though the majority were in apprehension of the journey, which was not at all to their minds, yet, for very shame of one another and Cyrus, they continued to follow him, and with the rest went Xenophon.

And now in this season of perplexity, he too, with the rest, was in sore distress, and could not sleep; but anon, getting a snatch of sleep, he had a dream. It seemed to him in a vision that there was a storm of thunder and lightning, and a bolt fell on his father's house, and thereupon the house was all in a blaze. He sprung up in terror, and pondering the matter, decided that in part the dream was good: in that he had seen a great light from Zeus, whilst in the midst of toil and danger. But partly too he feared it, for evidently it had come from Zeus the king. And the fire kindled all around— what could that mean but that he was hemmed in by various perplexities, and so could not escape from the country of the king? The full meaning, however, is to be discovered from what happened after the dream.

This is what took place. As soon as he was fully awake, the first clear thought which came into his head was, *Why am I lying here?* The night advances; with the day, it is like enough, the enemy will be upon us. If we are to fall into the hands of the king, what is left us but to face the most horrible of sights, and to suffer the most fearful pains, and then to die,



*vocabulary***ἄημι** blow**ἀήρ** ἠέρος (m/f) mist, air ~air**αἶρω** raise, win ~aorta; also ἀείρω**ἀμύνω** ward off; defend (+dat, gen);  
also ἀπαμύνω**ἀναμένω** wait for**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse**ἀντί** for, equivalent to**ἀποτέμνω** cut off, sever**ἄρα** interrogative pcl**ἄρά** bane, harm; prayer; also ἄρη, ἄρος**ἄρονός** (m/f, 3) lamb, sheep; wool**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**ἐκφαίνω** bring to light**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel**ἔσχατος** farthest, last**ἐφοράω** look upon**ἦκω** to have come**ἡλικία** time of life, contemporaries**ἡσυχία** peace and quiet**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene**καθεύδω** lie down**κατακείω** go to rest**κεφαλή** head; height ~gable**νομίζω** consider customary**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οὔομαι,  
οἶομαι**οὔομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,  
οἶομαι**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
~odometer; also ὀδός**παρέχω** furnish**παύω** stop something ~pause**ποῖος** what kind**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also

πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω

**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until**προδίδωμι** betray**προίημι** send forth, abandon**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
campaign**συγκαλέω** call together**ὕβριζω** insult, treat outrageously**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia**φόβος** fear, rout, panic ~phobia**χαλεπός** hard to bear**χείρων** worse, more base

ἤξιεν. εἰ δὲ γενησόμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλεί, τί ἐμποδῶν μὴ οὐχὶ πάντα μὲν τὰ χαλεπώτατα ἐπιδόντας, πάντα δὲ τὰ δεινότατα παθόντας ὑβριζομένους ἀποθανεῖν; ὅπως δ' ἀμυνούμεθα οὐδεὶς παρασκευάζεται οὐδὲ ἐπιμελεῖται, ἀλλὰ κατακείμεθα ὥσπερ ἐξὸν ἡσυχίαν ἄγειν. ἐγὼ οὖν τὸν ἐκ ποίας πόλεως στρατηγὸν προσδοκῶ ταῦτα πράξειν; ποίαν δ' ἡλικίαν ἐμαυτῷ ἐλθεῖν ἀναμείνω; οὐ γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἔτι πρεσβύτερος ἔσομαι, ἐὰν τήμερον προδῶ ἐμαυτὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις. ἐκ τούτου ἀνίσταται καὶ συγκαλεῖ τοὺς Προξένου πρῶτον λοχαγούς. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνήλθον, ἔλεξεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες λοχαγοί, οὔτε καθεῦδειν δύναμαι, ὥσπερ οἶμαι οὐδ' ὑμεῖς, οὔτε κατακεῖσθαι ἔτι, ὁρῶν ἐν οἴοις ἐσμέν. οἱ μὲν γὰρ πολέμιοι δηλὸν ὅτι οὐ πρότερον πρὸς ἡμᾶς τὸν πόλεμον ἐξέφεησαν πρὶν ἐνόμισαν καλῶς τὰ ἑαυτῶν παρασκευάσασθαι, ἡμῶν δ' οὐδεὶς οὐδὲν ἀντεπιμελεῖται ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιούμεθα. καὶ μὴν εἰ ὑφησόμεθα καὶ ἐπὶ βασιλεί γενησόμεθα, τί οἰόμεθα πείσεσθαι; ὃς καὶ τοῦ ὁμομητρίου ἀδελφοῦ καὶ τεθνηκότος ἤδη ἀποτεμῶν τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ τὴν χεῖρα ἀνεσταύρωσεν· ἡμᾶς δέ, οἷς κηδεμῶν μὲν οὐδεὶς πάρεστιν, ἐστρατεύσαμεν δὲ ἐπ' αὐτὸν ὡς δούλον ἀντὶ βασιλείως ποιήσοντες καὶ ἀποκτενοῦντες εἰ δυναίμεθα, τί ἂν οἰόμεθα παθεῖν; ἄρ' οὐκ ἂν ἐπὶ πᾶν ἔλθοι ὡς ἡμᾶς τὰ ἔσχατα αἰκισάμενος πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις φόβον παράσχοι τοῦ στρατεῦσαί ποτε ἐπ' αὐτόν; ἀλλ' ὅπως τοι μὴ ἐπ' ἐκείνῳ γενησόμεθα πάντα ποιητέον. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν ἔστε μὲν αἱ σπονδαὶ ἦσαν οὔποτε ἐπανόμην ἡμᾶς μὲν οἰκτίρων,

ἤξευ. εἰ δὲ γενησόμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ, τί ἐμποδῶν μὴ οὐχὶ πάντα  
 μὲν τὰ χαλεπώτατα |look upon πάντα δὲ τὰ δεινότερα παθόντας  
 ὑβρίζομένους ἀποθανεῖν; ὅπως δ' ἀμννούμεθα οὐδείς παρασκευάζεται  
 οὐδὲ ἐπιμελεῖται, ἀλλὰ κατακέιμεθα ὥσπερ |go |peace and quiet', ὡ  
 οὐν τὸν ἐκ |πόα?: grass ; or τηγὸν προσδοκῶ ταῦτα πράξεν; |πόα?: grass ;  
 δ' ἡλικίαν ἐμαντῶ ἐλθεῖν |ποιός?: what kind or ποῖος?: what  
 |wait for . οὐ γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἔτι πρᾶσι |kinds  
 ἔσομαι, ἐὰν τήμερον προδῶ ἐμαντὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις. ἐκ τούτου  
 ἀνίσταται καὶ |call together ` Προξένου πρῶτον λοχαγούς. ἐπεὶ δὲ  
 συνήλθον, ἔλεξεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες λοχαγοί, οὔτε καθεύδειν δύναμαι,  
 ὥσπερ οἶμαι οὐδ' ὑμεῖς, οὔτε |go to rest ἔτι, ὀρών ἐν οἷοις ἐσμέν.  
 οἱ μὲν γὰρ πολέμοι δηλὸν ὅτι οὐ πρότερον πρὸς ἡμᾶς τὸν πόλεμον  
 |bring to light ἐνόμισαν καλῶς τὰ ἑαυτῶν παρασκευάσασθαι, ἡμῶν δ'  
 οὐδείς οὐδὲν ἀντεπιμελεῖται ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιούμεθα. καὶ μὴν  
 εἰ ὑψησόμεθα καὶ ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ γενησόμεθα, τί οἰόμεθα πείσεσθαι; ὅς καὶ  
 τοῦ ὀμομητρίου ἀδελφοῦ καὶ |die ἤδη |cut off, sever, κεφαλὴν  
 καὶ τὴν χεῖρα ἀνεσταύρωσεν· ἡμᾶς δέ, οἷς |mourner μὲν οὐδείς  
 πάρεστιν, ἐστρατεύσαμεν δὲ ἐπ' αὐτὸν ὡς δοῦλον ἀντὶ βασιλείως  
 ποιήσοντες καὶ ἀποκτενοῦντες εἰ |enter, put on, ἂν οἰόμεθα παθεῖν;  
 |strip off  
 ἄρ' οὐκ ἂν ἐπὶ πᾶν ἔλθοι ὡς ἡμᾶς τὰ ἔσχατα αἰκισάμενος πᾶσιν  
 ἀνθρώποις φόβον παράσχοι τοῦ στρατεύσαι ποτε ἐπ' αὐτόν; ἀλλ'  
 ὅπως τοι μὴ ἐπ' ἐκείνῳ γενησόμεθα πάντα |to be made, done` οὐν  
 ἔστε μὲν αἱ σπονδαὶ ἦσαν οὔποτε ἐπαυόμην ἡμᾶς μὲν οἰκτίρων,

insulted, an ignominious death? To defend ourselves— to ward off that fate— not a hand stirs: no one is preparing, none cares; but here we lie, as though it were time to rest and take our ease. I too! what am I waiting for? a general to undertake the work? and from what city? am I waiting till I am older myself and of riper age? older I shall never be, if to-day I betray myself to my enemies.

Thereupon he got up, and called together first Proxenus's officers; and when they were met, he said: "Sleep, sirs, I cannot, nor can you, I fancy, nor lie here longer, when I see in what straits we are. Our enemy, we may be sure, did not open war upon us till he felt he had everything amply ready; yet none of us shows a corresponding anxiety to enter the lists of battle in the bravest style.

"And yet, if we yield ourselves and fall into the king's power, need we ask what our fate will be? This man, who, when his own brother, the son of the same parents, was dead, was not content with that, but severed head and hand from the body, and nailed them to a cross. We, then, who have not even the tie of blood in our favour, but who marched against him, meaning to make a slave of him instead of a king— and to slay him if we could: what is likely to be our fate at his hands? Will he not go all lengths so that, by inflicting on us the extreme of ignominy and torture, he may rouse in the rest of mankind a terror of ever marching against him any more? There is no question but that our business is to avoid by all means getting into his clutches.

"For my part, all the while the truce lasted, I never

*vocabulary*

**ἄγων** -ος (m, 3) gathering place (ἄγω)  
**ἄθλον** prize; also ἀέθλιον, ἀέθλιος,  
 ἄεθλον  
**αἰδέομαι** respect, be ashamed  
**ἄλλως** otherwise  
**ἀμείνων** better  
**ἀναμένω** wait for  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain  
**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence  
**αὖ** again, then again; next ~after  
**ἔαω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**εἰκός** οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
**εἰλύω** crouch, curl, wrap ~helix  
**ἔξεστι** it is allowed/possible  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics  
**ἔσθής** -τος (f, 3) clothes  
**ἡμέτερος** our, my  
**θεά** (2) goddess ~theology  
**θεράπων** (m, 3) helper, henchman,  
 servant ~therapy  
**θνητός** mortal  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**ἴσος** equal; also ἔιση

**κατέχω** hold down; cover; also  
 κατασχεθεῖν  
**κεῖμαι** lie  
**λύω** loosen, free, ransom ~loose  
**μέντοι** however  
**μέτεμι** be among, go, follow  
**νίκη** victory ~Nike  
**ὁπότε** when; also ὀπότε  
**ὀπότερος** which of two, either of two  
**ὄρκος** oath ~orc  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also  
 πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**πόνος** toil, suffering  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**πως** somehow  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**σῶμα** -τος (n, 3) corpse ~somatic  
**ὑβρις** -ος (f) pride, insolence, outrage  
**ὑποψία** suspicion  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**χρυσός** gold  
**χώρα** place  
**ψυχή** soul ~psychology  
**ώθέω** push

βασιλέα δὲ καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ μακαρίζων, διαθεώμενος αὐτῶν ὅσην  
 μὲν χώραν καὶ οἶαν ἔχοιεν, ὡς δὲ ἄφθονα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ὅσους δὲ  
 θεράποντας, ὅσα δὲ κτήνη, χρυσὸν δέ, ἐσθήτα δέ· τὰ δ' αὖ τῶν  
 στρατιωτῶν ὅποτε ἐνθυμοίμην, ὅτι τῶν μὲν ἀγαθῶν τούτων οὐδενὸς  
 ἡμῖν μετεΐη, εἰ μὴ πριαίμεθα, ὅτου δ' ὠνησόμεθα ἦδειν ἔτι ὀλίγους  
 ἔχοντας, ἄλλως δέ πως πορίζεσθαι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἢ ὠνουμένους ὄρκους  
 ἦδη κατέχοντας ἡμᾶς· ταῦτ' οὖν λογιζόμενος ἐνίοτε τὰς σπονδὰς  
 μᾶλλον ἐφοβούμην ἢ νῦν τὸν πόλεμον. ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἐκεῖνοι ἔλυσαν  
 τὰς σπονδὰς, λελύσθαι μοι δοκεῖ καὶ ἡ ἐκείνων ὕβρις καὶ ἡ ἡμετέρα  
 ὑποψία. ἐν μέσῳ γὰρ ἦδη κείται ταῦτα τὰ ἀγαθὰ ἄθλα ὁπότεροι  
 ἂν ἡμῶν ἄνδρες ἀμείνονες ὦσιν, ἀγωνοθέται δ' οἱ θεοὶ εἰσιν, οἱ σὺν  
 ἡμῖν, ὡς τὸ εἰκόσ, ἔσονται. οὗτοι μὲν γὰρ αὐτοὺς ἐπιωρκήκασιν·  
 ἡμεῖς δὲ πολλὰ ὀρώντες ἀγαθὰ στερρῶς αὐτῶν ἀπειχόμεθα διὰ τοὺς  
 τῶν θεῶν ὄρκους· ὥστε ἐξεῖναί μοι δοκεῖ ἵεναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἀγῶνα πολὺν  
 σὺν φρονήματι μείζονι ἢ τούτοις. ἔτι δ' ἔχομεν σώματα ἰκανώτερα  
 τούτων καὶ ψυχῆ καὶ θάλλη καὶ πόνους φέρειν· ἔχομεν δὲ καὶ ψυχὰς  
 σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμείονας· οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες καὶ τρωτοὶ καὶ θνητοὶ μᾶλλον  
 ἡμῶν, ἦν οἱ θεοὶ ὥσπερ τὸ πρόσθεν νίκην ἡμῖν διδώσιν. ἀλλ' ἴσως  
 γὰρ καὶ ἄλλοι ταῦτ' ἐνθυμοῦνται, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν μὴ ἀναμένωμεν  
 ἄλλους ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ἐλθεῖν παρακαλοῦντας ἐπὶ τὰ κάλλιστα ἔργα, ἀλλ'  
 ἡμεῖς ἄρξωμεν τοῦ ἐξορμηῆσαι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρετὴν· φάνητε  
 τῶν λοχαγῶν ἄριστοι καὶ τῶν στρατηγῶν ἀξιοστρατηγότεροι.

βασιλέα δὲ καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ |congratulate` αθεώμενος αὐτῶν ὅσην  
 μὲν χώραν καὶ οἶαν ἔχοιεν, ὡς δὲ ἄφθονα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ὅσους δὲ  
 θεράποντας, ὅσα δὲ κτήνη, χρυσὸν δέ, |clothes δέ· τὰ δ' αὖ τῶν  
 στρατιωτῶν ὁπότε ἐνθυμοίμην, ὅτι τῶν μὲν ἀγαθῶν τούτων οὐδενὸς  
 ἡμῖν |be among` ἢ πριαίμεθα, ὅτου δ' ὠνησόμεθα ἦδεν ἔτι ὀλίγους  
 ἔχοντας, ἄλλως δὲ πῶς πορίζεσθαι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἢ ἄνουμένους ὄρκους  
 ἦδη κατέχοντας ἡμᾶς· ταῦτ' οὖν λογιζόμενος |sometimes` σπονδὰς  
 μᾶλλον ἐφοβούμην ἢ νῦν τὸν πόλεμον. ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἐκείνοι |εἰλύω?: curl ; or  
 τὰς σπονδὰς, λελύσθαι μοι δοκεῖ καὶ ἡ ἐκείνων ὕβρις καὶ ἡ ἡμετέρα |λύω?: release  
 |suspicion` ἢ μέσῳ γὰρ ἦδη κεῖται ταῦτα τὰ ἀγαθὰ ἄθλα |which of two, either  
 ἂν ἡμῶν ἄνδρες ἀμείνονες ὦσιν, ἀγωνοθέται δ' οἱ θεοὶ εἰσιν, οἱ σὺν |of two  
 ἡμῖν, ὡς τὸ εἰκός, ἔσονται. οὗτοι μὲν γὰρ αὐτοὺς ἐπιωρκήκασιν·  
 ἡμεῖς δὲ πολλὰ ὀρώντες ἀγαθὰ στερρῶς αὐτῶν ἀπειχόμεθα διὰ τοὺς  
 τῶν θεῶν ὄρκους· ὥστε ἐξεῖναί μοι δοκεῖ ἵεναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἀγῶνα πολὺ  
 σὺν φρονήματι μείζονι ἢ τούτοις. ἔτι δ' ἔχομεν σώματα ἰκανώτερα  
 τούτων καὶ |breathe, `to warm` ἢ πόνους φέρειν· ἔχομεν δὲ καὶ ψυχὰς  
 |blow  
 σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμείνονας· οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες καὶ |vulnerable` θνητοὶ μᾶλλον  
 ἡμῶν, ἣν οἱ θεοὶ ὥσπερ τὸ πρόσθεν νίκην ἡμῖν |δίδημι?: should; bind; need,  
 γὰρ καὶ ἄλλοι |identical` ἑυμοῦνται, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν μὴ |wait for  
 αἰετῶν ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ἐλθεῖν παρακαλοῦντας ἐπὶ τὰ κάλλιστα ἔργα, ἀλλ'  
 ἡμεῖς ἄρξωμεν τοῦ |veer off course` ἢ ἄλλους ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρετὴν· φάνητε  
 τῶν λοχαγῶν ἄριστοι καὶ τῶν στρατηγῶν ἀξιοστρατηγότεροι.

ceased pitying ourselves and congratulating the king and those with him, as, like a helpless spectator, I surveyed the extent and quality of their territory, the plenteousness of their provisions, the multitude of their dependants, their cattle, their gold, and their apparel. And then to turn and ponder the condition of our soldiers, without part or lot in these good things, except we bought it; few, I knew, had any longer the wherewithal to buy, and yet our oath held us down, so that we could not provide ourselves otherwise than by purchase. I say, as I reasoned thus, there were times when I dreaded the truce more than I now dread war.

“Now, however, that they have abruptly ended the truce, there is an end also to their own insolence and to our suspicion. All these good things of theirs are now set as prizes for the combatants. To whichever of us shall prove the better men, will they fall as guerdons; and the gods themselves are the judges of the strife. The gods, who full surely will be on our side, seeing it is our enemies who have taken their names falsely; whilst we, with much to lure us, yet for our oath’s sake, and the gods who were our witnesses, sternly held aloof. So that, it seems to me, we have a right to enter upon this contest with much more heart than our foes; and further, we are possessed of bodies more capable than theirs of bearing cold and heat and labour; souls too we have, by the help of heaven, better and braver; nay, the men themselves are more vulnerable, more mortal, than ourselves, if so be the gods vouchsafe to give us victory once again.

“Howbeit, for I doubt not elsewhere similar reflections are being made, whatsoever betide, let us not, in heaven’s name, wait for others to come and challenge us to noble deeds; let us rather take the lead in stimulating the rest to valour. Show yourselves to be the bravest of officers, and among generals, the worthiest to command. For



*vocabulary*

**ἄλθομαι** become whole, sound  
**ἄλλως** otherwise  
**ἀνατίθημι** reproach  
**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp.~sin  
**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck  
**ἄϛ** again, then again; next ~after  
**ἀφαιρέω** take away  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω, ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of  
**ἔραμαι** love  
**ἐρύκω** hold back; also ἐρυκανάω  
**ἐρώέω** (act) back off; (mid, rare) drive back; spurt  
**ἡλικία** time of life, contemporaries  
**καταισχύνω** act disgracefully  
**κεντέω** whip, goad  
**μέντοι** however  
**μεταξύ** between  
**μήτε** neither...nor...  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οἴομαι,  
 οἴομαι  
**ὄον** type of fruit

**ὄπλομαι** get ready, prepare  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὀδός  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πατρίς** -δος fatherland  
**πεῖσα** obedience, subjection  
**πλήν** except  
**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian  
**πως** somehow  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**ταυτός** identical  
**τεύχω** make, cause; pass: happen; pass pf: be, become; pass pf ppl: well made  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τλήμων** steadfast, enduring (τλάω); also τλητός  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also ἐντυγχάνω  
**ὕβριζω** insult, treat outrageously  
**ὕπολαμβάνω** take under one's support, seize; speak up  
**φρονέω** think, be wise ~phrenology  
**φωνέω** sound, speak ~megaphone  
**φωνή** sound; voice ~megaphone  
**ὥδε** thus

καγὼ δέ, εἰ μὲν ὑμεῖς ἐθέλετε ἐξορμᾶν ἐπὶ ταῦτα, ἔπεισθαι ὑμῖν βούλομαι, εἰ δ' ὑμεῖς τάττετ' ἐμὲ ἠγεῖσθαι, οὐδὲν προφασίζομαι τὴν ἡλικίαν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀκμάζειν ἠγοῦμαι ἐρύκειν ἀπ' ἑμαυτοῦ τὰ κακά.

Ὁ μὲν ταῦτ' ἔλεξεν, οἱ δὲ ἀρχηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ἠγεῖσθαι ἐκέλευον πάντες, πλὴν Ἀπολλωνίδης τις ἦν βοιωτιάζων τῇ φωνῇ· οὗτος δ' εἶπεν ὅτι φλυαροίη ὅστις λέγει ἄλλως πως σωτηρίας ἂν τυχεῖν ἢ βασιλέα πείσας, εἰ δύναίτο, καὶ ἅμα ἤρχετο λέγειν τὰς ἀπορίας. ὁ μέντοι Ξενοφῶν μεταξὺ ὑπολαβὼν ἔλεξεν ὧδε. ὦ θαυμασιώτατε ἄνθρωπε, σύγε οὐδὲ ὀρώων γιγνώσκεις οὐδὲ ἀκούων μέμνησαι. ἐν ταῦτῳ γε μέντοι ἦσθα τούτοις ὅτε βασιλεύς, ἐπεὶ Κῦρος ἀπέθανε, μέγα φρονήσας ἐπὶ τούτῳ πέμπων ἐκέλευε παραδιδόναι τὰ ὄπλα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμεῖς οὐ παραδόντες, ἀλλ' ἐξοπλισάμενοι ἐλθόντες παρεσκηγήσαμεν αὐτῷ, τί οὐκ ἐποίησε πρέσβεις πέμπων καὶ σπονδὰς αἰτῶν καὶ παρέχων τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἔστε σπονδῶν ἔτυχεν; ἐπεὶ δ' αὖ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, ὥσπερ δὴ σὺ κελεύεις, εἰς λόγους αὐτοῖς ἄνευ ὀπλων ἦλθον πιστεύσαντες ταῖς σπονδαῖς, οὐ νῦν ἐκεῖνοι παιδιόμενοι, κεντούμενοι, ὑβριζόμενοι οὐδὲ ἀποθανεῖν οἱ τλήμονες δύνανται, καὶ μάλ' οἶμαι ἐρῶντες τούτου; ἂ σὺ πάντα εἰδὼς τοὺς μὲν ἀμύνασθαι κελεύοντας φλυαρεῖν φῆς, πείθειν δὲ πάλιν κελεύεις ἰόντας; ἐμοί, ὦ ἄνδρες, δοκεῖ τὸν ἄνθρωπον τοῦτον μήτε προσίεσθαι εἰς ταῦτ' ἢ μὴν αὐτοῖς ἀφελομένους τε τὴν λοχαγίαν σκευὴ ἀναθέντας ὡς τοιούτῳ χρῆσθαι. οὗτος γὰρ καὶ τὴν πατρίδα καταισχύνει καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν

καγὰρ δέ, εἰ μὲν ὑμεῖς ἐθέλετε ἐξορμᾶν ἐπὶ ταῦτα, ἔπεισθαι ὑμῖν βούλομαι, εἰ δ' ὑμεῖς τάττετ' ἐμὲ ἡγεῖσθαι, οὐδὲν προφασίζομαι τὴν ἡλικίαν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀκμάζειν ἡγοῦμαι ἐρύκειν ἀπ' ἑμαντοῦ τὰ κακά.

Ὁ μὲν ταῦτ' ἔλεξεν, οἱ δὲ ἀρχηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ἡγεῖσθαι ἐκέλευον πάντες, πλὴν Ἀπολλωνίδης τις ἦν βοιωτιάζων τῇ φωνῇ· οὗτος δ' εἶπεν ὅτι φλυαροίη ὅστις λέγει ἄλλως πως σωτηρίας ἂν

τυχεῖν ἢ βασιλέα **πεισα?:** enter, put on, ἅμα ἤρχετο λέγειν τὰς **obedience, strip off**  
**difficulty, μέντοι;** **subjection;** μεταξὺ ὑπολαβῶν ἔλεξεν ὡδε. **type of fruit**  
**bottleneck** **or πάσχω?:**  
 θαυμασιώτατε ἄνθρωποι, οὐδὲ ὁρῶν γινώσκεις οὐδὲ ἀκούων **suffer ; or**  
 μέμνησαι. ἐν **πειθῶ?:** **persuade** μὲν οἱ ἦσθα τούτοις ὅτε βασιλεὺς, ἐπεὶ Κῦρος

ἀπέθανε, μέγα φρονήσας ἐπὶ τούτῳ πέμπων ἐκέλευε παραδιδόναι τὰ ὅπλα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμεῖς οὐ παραδόντες, ἀλλ' ἐξοπλισάμενοι ἐλθόντες παρεσκηνήσαμεν αὐτῷ, τί οὐκ ἐποίησε πρέσβεις πέμπων καὶ σπονδὰς αἰτῶν καὶ παρέχων τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἔστε σπονδῶν ἔτυχεν; ἐπεὶ δ' αὐτοὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, ὥσπερ δὴ σὺ κελεύεις, εἰς λόγους αὐτοῖς ἄνευ

ὄπλων **ἄλθομαι?:** become whole **σπονδαῖς, οὐ νῦν ἐκείνοι παιόμενοι,**  
**;** **or ἔρχομαι?:** go, come  
**whip, goad** ὑβρίζόμενοι οὐδὲ ἀποθανεῖν οἱ **steadfast** δύνανται, καὶ μάλ' οἶμαι **ἔραμαι?:** love ; **ὦ ἐρώέω?:** (act) back `s μὲν ἀμύνασθαι **off; (mid, rare) drive back; spurt**

κελεύοντας φλυαρεῖν φῆς, πείθειν δὲ πάλιν κελεύεις ἰόντας; ἐμοί, ὦ ἄνδρες, δοκεῖ τὸν ἄνθρωπον τοῦτον μήτε προσέεσθαι εἰς ταυτὸ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς ἀφελομένους τε τὴν **rank of major, reproach** ὡς τοιούτῳ **captain**  
 χρῆσθαι. οὗτος γὰρ καὶ τὴν πατρίδα **act disgracefully** γάσαν τὴν

myself, if you choose to start forwards on this quest, I will follow; or, if you bid me lead you, my age shall be no excuse to stand between me and your orders. At least I am of full age, I take it, to avert misfortune from my own head.”

Such were the speaker’s words; and the officers, when they heard, all, with one exception, called upon him to put himself at their head. This was a certain Apollonides there present, who spoke in the Boeotian dialect. This man’s opinion was that it was mere nonsense for any one to pretend they could obtain safety otherwise than by an appeal to the king, if he had skill to enforce it; and at the same time he began to dilate on the difficulties. But Xenophon cut him short. “O most marvellous of men! though you have eyes to see, you do not perceive; though you have ears to hear, you do not recollect. You were present with the rest of us now here when, after the death of Cyrus, the king, vaunting himself on that occurrence, sent dictatorially to bid us lay down our arms. But when we, instead of giving up our arms, put them on and went and pitched our camp near him, his manner changed. It is hard to say what he did not do, he was so at his wit’s end, sending us embassies and begging for a truce, and furnishing provisions the while, until he had got it. Or to take the contrary instance, when just now, acting precisely on your principles, our generals and captains went, trusting to the truce, unarmed to a conference with them, what came of it? what is happening at this instant? Beaten, goaded with pricks, insulted, poor souls, they cannot even die: though death, I ween, would be very sweet. And you, who know all this, how can you say that it

*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*

**ἄθυμος** having low morale

**ἀμφότερος** both ~amphora

**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off

**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve

**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also *ἐξόλλυμι*,  
*ὄλλυμι*

**αὔ** again, then again; next ~after

**βάβαρος** non-Greek

**βασιλεύω** be king

**βουλεύω** to deliberate ~volunteer

**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous

**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also *δύω*,

*ἐξαποδύνω*

**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also *δύνω*,

*ἐξαποδύνω*

**ἑκατόν** hundred

**ἐνταῦθα** thither

**ἐντεῦθεν** thence

**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm

**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand

**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel

**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand

**καθέζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit

down, sit up; also *ἔζομαι*, *καθέζετο*,  
*καθέζω*

**μῆποτε** absolutely never

**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also *οἴομαι*,  
*οἶομαι*

**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone

**ὄπλομαι** get ready, prepare

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

**ὀπόθεν** whence

**ὅπου** where

**οὔς** ὠτός (n) ear

**ποιητέος** to be made, done

**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian

**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)

**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary

**συλλαμβάνω** arrest, capture

**σχεδόν** near, approximately at  
~ischemia

**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement

**τάσσω** arrange

**τοσοῦτος** so much

**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's  
support, seize; speak up

**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

**ὥδε** thus

Ἑλλάδα, ὅτι Ἕλληνας ὡς τοιοῦτός ἐστιν. ἐντεῦθεν ὑπολαβὼν Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος εἶπεν· Ἄλλὰ τούτω γε οὔτε τῆς Βοιωτίας προσήκει οὐδὲν οὔτε τῆς Ἑλλάδος παντάπασιν, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν εἶδον ὥσπερ Ἄνδρην ἀμφότερα τὰ ὄψα τετραυπημένον. καὶ εἶχεν οὕτως. τοῦτον μὲν οὖν ἀπήλασαν· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι παρὰ τὰς τάξεις ἰόντες, ὅπου μὲν στρατηγὸς σῶος εἶη, τὸν στρατηγὸν παρεκάλουν, ὅπῃθεν δὲ οἴχοιτο, τὸν ὑποστράτηγον, ὅπου δ' αὖ λοχαγὸς σῶος εἶη, τὸν λοχαγόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντες συνῆλθον, εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν τῶν ὅπλων ἐκαθέζοντο· καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ συνελθόντες στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀμφὶ τοὺς ἑκατόν. ὅτε δὲ ταῦτα ἦν σχεδὸν μέσαι ἦσαν νύκτες. ἐνταῦθα Ἰερώνυμος Ἡλείος πρεσβύτατος ὢν τῶν Προξένου λοχαγῶν ἤρχετο λέγειν ὧδε. Ἡμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, ὁρώσι τὰ παρόντα ἔδοξε καὶ αὐτοῖς συνελθεῖν καὶ ὑμᾶς παρακαλέσαι, ὅπως βουλευσαίμεθα εἴ τι δυναίμεθα ἀγαθόν. λέξον δ', ἔφη, καὶ σύ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἄπερ καὶ πρὸς ἡμᾶς. ἐκ τούτου λέγει τάδε Ξενοφῶν. Ἄλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ πάντες ἐπιστάμεθα, ὅτι βασιλεὺς καὶ Τισσαφέρνης οὓς μὲν ἐδυνήθησαν συνειλήφασιν ἡμῶν, τοῖς δ' ἄλλοις δῆλον ὅτι ἐπιβουλεύουσιν, ὡς, ἦν δύνωνται, ἀπολέσωσιν. ἡμῖν δέ γε οἶμαι πάντα ποιητέα ὡς μήποτε ἐπὶ τοῖς βαρβάροις γενώμεθα, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐκείνοι ἐφ' ἡμῖν. εἶ τοίνυν ἐπίστασθε ὅτι ὑμεῖς τοσοῦτοι ὄντες ὅσοι νῦν συνεληλύθατε μέγιστον ἔχετε καιρόν. οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται οὗτοι πάντες πρὸς ὑμᾶς βλέπουσι, κὰν μὲν ὑμᾶς ὁρώσιν ἀθύμους, πάντες κακοὶ ἔσονται, ἦν δὲ ὑμεῖς αὐτοὶ

Ἑλλάδα, ὅτι Ἕλληνας ὡς τοιοῦτός ἐστιν. ἐντεῦθεν ὑπολαβὼν Ἀγασίας  
 Στυμφάλιος εἶπεν· Ἄλλὰ τούτῳ γε οὔτε τῆς Βοιωτίας προσήκει  
 οὐδὲν οὔτε τῆς Ἑλλάδος παντάπασιν, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν εἶδον ὥσπερ  
 Λυδὸν ἀμφοτέρω τὰ ὦτα τετρυπημένον. καὶ εἶχεν οὕτως. τοῦτον  
 μὲν οὖν |**expel, ex-** δὲ ἄλλοι παρὰ τὰς τάξεις ἰόντες, ὅπου μὲν  
 |**clude, ward**  
 στρατηγὸς |**off** σῶφος εἶη, τὸν στρατηγὸν παρεκάλουν. |**whence** ἔοιχοιτο,  
 τὸν ὑποστράτηγον, ὅπου δ' αὖ λοχαγὸς σῶφος εἶη, τὸν λοχαγόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ  
 πάντες συνῆλθον, εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν τῶν ὀπλων |**act: set, seat; pass: το**  
 οἱ συνελθόντες στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀμφὶ τοὺς ἑκατόν. ὅτε δὲ  
 ταῦτα ἦν σχεδὸν μέσαι ἦσαν νύκτες. ἐνταῦθα Ἰερώνυμος Ἥλειος  
 πρεσβύτατος ὢν τῶν Προξένου λοχαγῶν ἤρχετο λέγειν ὧδε. Ἡμῖν,  
 ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, ὀρώσι τὰ παρόντα ἔδοξε καὶ αὐτοῖς  
 συνελθεῖν καὶ ὑμᾶς παρακαλέσαι, ὅπως βουλευσάμεθα εἴ τι |**enter, put on,**  
 ἀγαθόν. λέξον δ', ἔφη, καὶ σύ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἅπερ καὶ πρὸς ἡμᾶς. ἐκ  
 τούτου λέγει τάδε Ξενοφῶν. Ἄλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ πάντες |**strip off**  
 ὅτι βασιλεὺς καὶ Τισσαφέρνης οὓς μὲν ἐδυνήθησαν σ |**ἀπιστέω?: disbelieve ;**  
 |**or ἐφίστημι?: stand**  
 ἡμῶν, τοῖς δ' ἄλλοις δῆλον ὅτι |**ready, take a stand ; or**  
 |**ἐπίσταμαι?: know**  
 ἡμῶν, τοῖς δ' ἄλλοις δῆλον ὅτι |**plot, plan, harm** ἴς, ἣν δύνωνται,  
 ἀπολέσωσιν. ἡμῖν δέ γε οἶμαι πάντα |**to be made, absolutely** τοῖς  
 |**done** |**never**  
 βαρβάρους γενώμεθα, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐκεῖνοι ἐφ' ἡμῖν. εὖ τοίνυν  
 |**ἀπιστέω?: disbelieve ; ὁρ ἐφίστημι?: stand** νεληλύθατε μέγιστον  
 |**ready, take a stand ; or ἐπίσταμαι?: know**  
 ἐχετε καιρόν. οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται οὗτοι πάντες πρὸς ὑμᾶς βλέπουσι,  
 κὰν μὲν ὑμᾶς ὀρώσιν |**having low morale** ἵ ἔσονται, ἣν δὲ ὑμεῖς αὐτοί

is mere nonsense to talk of self-defence? how can you bid us go again and try the arts of persuasion? In my opinion, sirs, we ought not to admit this fellow to the same rank with ourselves; rather ought we to deprive him of his captaincy, and load him with packs and treat him as such. The man is a disgrace to his own fatherland and the whole of Hellas, that, being a Hellene, he is what he is.”

Here Agasias the Stymphalian broke in, exclaiming: “Nay, this fellow has no connection either with Boeotia or with Hellas, none whatever. I have noted both his ears bored like a Lydian’s.” And so it was. Him then they banished. But the rest visited the ranks, and wherever a general was left, they summoned the general; where he was gone, the lieutenant-general; and where again the captain alone was left, the captain. As soon as they were all met, they seated themselves in front of the place d’armes: the assembled generals and officers, numbering about a hundred. It was nearly midnight when this took place.

Thereupon Hieronymous the Eleian, the eldest of Proxenus’s captains, commenced speaking as follows: “Generals and captains, it seemed right to us, in view of the present crisis, ourselves to assemble and to summon you, that we might advise upon some practicable course. Would you, Xenophon, repeat what you said to us?”

Thereupon Xenophon spoke as follows: “We all know only too well, that the king and Tissaphernes have seized as many of us as they could, and it is clear they are plotting to destroy the rest of us if they can. Our business is plain: it is to do all we can to avoid getting into the power of the barbarians; rather, if we can, we will get them into our power. Rely upon this then, all you who are here assembled, now is your great opportunity. The soldiers outside have their eyes fixed



*vocabulary*

**ἄημι** blow  
**ἄθυμος** having low morale  
**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**ἀμείνων** better  
**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp.~sin  
**ἀντί** for, equivalent to  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι, ὀλλυμι  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**αὖω** ignite; shout  
**γνώμη** sign, mind, will, decision  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about  
**εἰρήνη** peace  
**εἴτε** if, whenever  
**ἐπειδάν** when  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ἥμερος** domesticated  
**ἴσος** equal; also ἔιση

**καθίστημι** set down, land  
**νίκη** victory ~Nike  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οὔμαι, οἶομαι  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι, οἶομαι  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὀπότερος** which of two, either of two  
**πάνυ** altogether, very  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also πειρητίζω  
**πλήθος** -υς (3) numerical superiority  
**πού** no doubt; somewhere/how  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble  
**τιμή** honor, value  
**τρέπω** divert ~trophy  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch; also φυλακεύς  
**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**ψυχή** soul ~psychology  
**ώφελέω** help, be useful

τε παρασκευαζόμενοι φανεροὶ ἦτε ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους  
 παρακαλήτε, εὖ ἴστε ὅτι ἔψονται ὑμῖν καὶ πειράσσονται μιμείσθαι.  
 ἴσως δέ τοι καὶ δίκαιόν ἐστιν ὑμᾶς διαφέρειν τι τούτων. ὑμεῖς γάρ  
 ἐστε στρατηγοί, ὑμεῖς ταξίαρχοι καὶ λοχαγοί· καὶ ὅτε εἰρήνη ἦν,  
 ὑμεῖς καὶ χρήμασι καὶ τιμαῖς τούτων ἐπλεονεκτεῖτε· καὶ νῦν τοῖνυν  
 ἐπεὶ πόλεμός ἐστιν, ἀξιούν δει ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς ἀμείνους τε τοῦ πλήθους  
 εἶναι καὶ προβουλεύειν τούτων καὶ προπονεῖν, ἦν που δέη. καὶ  
 νῦν πρῶτον μὲν οἶομαι ἂν ὑμᾶς μέγα ὠφελῆσαι τὸ στράτευμα, εἰ  
 ἐπιμεληθείητε ὅπως ἀντὶ τῶν ἀπολωλότων ὡς τάχιστα στρατηγοὶ  
 καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀντικατασταθῶσι. ἄνευ γὰρ ἀρχόντων οὐδὲν ἂν οὔτε  
 καλὸν οὔτε ἀγαθὸν γένοιτο ὡς μὲν συνελόντι εἰπεῖν οὐδαμοῦ, ἐν δὲ  
 δὴ τοῖς πολεμικοῖς παντάπασιν. ἡ μὲν γὰρ εὐταξία σῆζεν δοκεῖ,  
 ἡ δὲ ἀταξία πολλοὺς ἤδη ἀπολώλεκεν. ἐπειδὴν δὲ καταστήσησθε  
 τοὺς ἄρχοντας ὅσους δεῖ, ἦν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτας συλλέγητε  
 καὶ παραθαρρύνητε, οἶμαι ἂν ὑμᾶς πάνν ἐν καιρῷ ποιῆσαι. νῦν  
 γὰρ ἴσως καὶ ὑμεῖς αἰσθάνεσθε ὡς ἀθύμως μὲν ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα,  
 ἀθύμως δὲ πρὸς τὰς φυλακάς· ὥστε οὕτω γ' ἐχόντων οὐκ οἶδα ὅ  
 τι ἂν τις χρήσαιτο αὐτοῖς, εἴτε νυκτὸς δέοι εἴτε καὶ ἡμέρας. ἦν  
 δέ τις αὐτῶν τρέψῃ τὰς γνώμας, ὡς μὴ τοῦτο μόνον ἐννοῶνται,  
 τί πείσονται, ἀλλὰ καὶ τί ποιήσουσι, πολὺ εὐθυμότεροι ἔσονται.  
 ἐπίστασθε γὰρ δὴ ὅτι οὔτε πλήθός ἐστιν οὔτε ἰσχύς ἢ ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ  
 τὰς νίκας ποιούσα, ἀλλ' ὁπότεροι ἂν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ταῖς ψυχαῖς

τε παρασκευαζόμενοι φανεροὶ ἦτε ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους  
 παρακαλήτε, εἶ ἴστε ὅτι ἔψονται ὑμῖν καὶ πειράσονται μμεῖσθαι.  
 ἴσως δέ τοι καὶ δίκαιόν ἐστιν ὑμᾶς διαφέρειν τι τούτων. ὑμεῖς γάρ  
 ἔστε στρατηγοί, ὑμεῖς ταξίαρχοι καὶ λοχαγοί· καὶ ὅτε εἰρήνη ἦν,  
 ὑμεῖς καὶ χρήμασι καὶ τιμαῖς τούτων ἐπλεονεκτεῖτε· καὶ νῦν τοίνυν  
 ἐπεὶ πόλεμός ἐστιν, ἀξιοῦν δεῖ ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς ἀμείνους τε τοῦ πλήθους  
 εἶναι καὶ προβουλεύειν τούτων καὶ προπονεῖν, ἣν που δέη. καὶ  
 νῦν πρῶτον μὲν οἶομαι ἂν ὑμᾶς μέγα ὠφελῆσαι τὸ στράτευμα, εἰ  
 ἐπιμεληθεῖτε ὅπως ἀντὶ τῶν ἀπολωλότων ὡς τάχιστα στρατηγοὶ  
 καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀντικατασταθῶσι. ἄνευ γὰρ ἀρχόντων οὐδὲν ἂν οὔτε  
 καλὸν οὔτε ἀγαθὸν γένοιτο ὡς μὲν |put together, crush` ἱμοῦ, ἐν δὲ  
 δὴ τοῖς πολεμικοῖς παντάπασιν. ἡ μὲν γὰρ |good order` ἰω δοκεῖ,  
 ἡ δὲ ἀταξία πολλοὺς ἤδη ἀπολώλεκεν. |when δὲ καταστήσησθε  
 τοὺς ἄρχοντας ὅσους δεῖ, ἦν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτας |collect,  
 καὶ παραθαρρήνητε, οἶμαι ἂν ὑμᾶς πάννυ ἐν καιρῷ ποιῆσαι. νῦν  
 γὰρ ἴσως καὶ ὑμεῖς αἰσθάνεσθε ὡς |having low morale |ἄλλθομαι?: become whole ; or  
 |having low morale` : φυλακάς· ὥστε οὕτω γ' ἐχόντων οὐκ οἶδα ὅ  
 τι ἂν τις χρήσαιτο αὐτοῖς, εἴτε νυκτὸς δέοι εἴτε καὶ ἡμέρας. ἦν  
 δέ τις αὐτῶν τρέψῃ τὰς γνώμας, ὡς μὴ τοῦτο μόνον ἐννοῶνται,  
 τί πείσονται, ἀλλὰ καὶ τί ποιήσουσι, πολὺ εὐθυμότεροι ἔσονται.  
 |ἀπιστέω?: disbelieve ; or ἐφίστημι?: stand ἑχὺς ἢ ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ  
 ready, take a stand ; or ἐπίσταμαι?: know  
 τὰς νίκας ποιούσα, ἀλλ' |which of two, ἢ τοῖς θεοῖς ταῖς ψυχαῖς  
 |either of two

upon you; if they think that you are faint-hearted, they will turn cowards; but if you show them that you are making your own preparations to attack the enemy, and setting an example to the rest— follow you, be assured, they will: imitate you they will. May be, it is but right and fair that you should somewhat excel them, for you are generals, you are commanders of brigades or regiments; and if, while it was peace, you had the advantage in wealth and position, so now, when it is war, you are expected to rise superior to the common herd—to think for them, to toil for them, whenever there be need.

“At this very moment you would confer a great boon on the army, if you made it your business to appoint generals and officers to fill the places of those that are lost. For without leaders nothing good or noble, to put it concisely, was ever wrought anywhere; and in military matters this is absolutely true; for if discipline is held to be of saving virtue, the want of it has been the ruin of many ere now. Well, then! when you have appointed all the commanders necessary, it would only be opportune, I take it, if you were to summon the rest of the soldiers and speak some words of encouragement. Even now, I daresay you noticed yourselves the crestfallen air with which they came into camp, the despondency with which they fell to picket duty, so that, unless there is a change for the better, I do not know for what service they will be fit; whether by night, if need were, or even by day. The thing is to get them to turn their thoughts to what they mean to do, instead of to what they are likely to suffer. Do that, and their spirits will soon revive wonderfully. You know, I need hardly remind you, it is not numbers or strength that gives victory in war; but, heaven helping them, to one or other of two

*vocabulary*

ἄγε lead, bring  
 ἄγνυμι break  
 ἄημι blow  
 αἰσχρός shameful  
 ἄλλομαι to jump ~sally  
 ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery  
 (ἀνάγκη)  
 ἀνίστημι stand up; arouse  
 ἀντί for, equivalent to  
 ἀντίος opposite, facing  
 ἀπέρχομαι go away, depart  
 ἄρχων -οντος (m, 3) leader, general,  
 governor  
 ἀφικνέομαι arrive  
 γῆρας -ος (n, 3) old age  
 δέος -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
 δέχομαι accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
 διάγω ferry across  
 ἕζομαι act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit  
 up; also καθέζετο, καθέζομαι, καθέζω  
 ἐκεῖ there  
 ἔξιμι go forth (εἶμι)

ἐπαινέω concur, concur with  
 ἔπομαι follow, support, chase ~sequel  
 ζέω boil ~eczema  
 ζῶ live ~zoo; also ζάω, ζώω  
 ζώννυμι gird  
 ἦκω to have come  
 ἠώς ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
 θνήσκω die ~euthanasia; also  
 ἐκθνήσκω  
 κεῖμαι lie  
 κῆρυξ -κος (m) henchman, functionary  
 ὀπόσος as/how many/great  
 παρίστημι stand, be present  
 παύω stop something ~pause  
 πλεῖστος most numerous  
 πρόσθεν before (time, space)  
 πως somehow  
 στρατιώτης (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
 συγκαλέω call together  
 τοσοῦτος so much  
 τρόπος (m/n) turn; manner, kind,  
 fashion  
 φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics

ἐρρωμενέστεροι ἴωσιν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, τούτους ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ οἱ ἀντίοι οὐ δέχονται. ἐντεθύμημαι δ' ἔγωγε, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ τοῦτο, ὅτι ὅποσοι μὲν μαστεύουσι ζῆν ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς, οὗτοι μὲν κακῶς τε καὶ αἰσχρῶς ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ἀποθνήσκουσιν, ὅποσοι δὲ τὸν μὲν θάνατον ἐγνώκασιν πᾶσι κοινὸν εἶναι καὶ ἀναγκαῖον ἀνθρώποις, περὶ δὲ τοῦ καλῶς ἀποθνήσκειν ἀγωνίζονται, τούτους ὀρῶ μᾶλλον πως εἰς τὸ γῆρας ἀφικνουμένους καὶ ἕως ἂν ζῶσιν εὐδαιμονέστερον διάγοντας. ἂ καὶ ὑμᾶς δεῖ νῦν καταμαθόντας ἐν τοιούτῳ γὰρ καιρῷ εἶσμεν αὐτούς τε ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς εἶναι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους παρακαλεῖν. ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον εἶπε Χειρίσοφος· Ἄλλὰ πρόσθεν μὲν, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, τοσοῦτον μόνον σε ἐγίνωσκον ὅσον ἤκουον Ἀθηναῖον εἶναι, νῦν δὲ καὶ ἐπαιῶ σε ἐφ' οἷς λέγεις τε καὶ πράττεις καὶ βουλοίμην ἂν ὅτι πλείστους εἶναι τοιούτους· κοινὸν γὰρ ἂν εἶη τὸ ἀγαθόν. καὶ νῦν, ἔφη, μὴ μέλλωμεν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀλλ' ἀπελθόντες ἤδη αἰρεῖσθε οἱ δεόμενοι ἄρχοντας, καὶ ἐλόμενοι ἦκετε εἰς τὸ μέσον τοῦ στρατοπέδου καὶ τοὺς αἰρεθέντας ἄγετε· ἔπειτ' ἐκεῖ συγκαλοῦμεν τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτας. παρέστω δ' ἡμῖν, ἔφη, καὶ Τολμίδης ὁ κῆρυξ. καὶ ἅμα ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἀνέστη, ὡς μὴ μέλλοιτο ἀλλὰ περαίνοιτο τὰ δέοντα. ἐκ τούτου ἠρέθησαν ἄρχοντες ἀντὶ μὲν Κλεάρχου Τιμασιῶν Δαρδανεύς, ἀντὶ δὲ Σωκράτους Ξανθικῆς Ἀχαιοῦς, ἀντὶ δὲ Ἀγίου Κλεάνωρ Ἀρκάς, ἀντὶ δὲ Μένωνος Φιλήσιος Ἀχαιοῦς, ἀντὶ δὲ Προξένου Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος.

ἔρρωμένεστεροι ἴωσι ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, τούτους ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ  
 οἱ ἀντίοι οὐ δέχονται. ἐντεθύμημαι δ' ἔγωγε, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ τοῦτο,  
 ὅτι **|as/how many/great** σι ζῆν ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς,  
 οὔτοι μὲν κακῶς τε καὶ αἰσχρῶς ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ἀποθνήσκουσιν,  
**|as/how many/great** ἴατον ἐγνώκασι πᾶσι κοινὸν εἶναι καὶ ἀναγκαῖον  
 ἀνθρώποις, περὶ δὲ τοῦ καλῶς ἀποθνήσκειν ἀγωνίζονται, τούτους  
 ὀρῶ μᾶλλον πως εἰς τὸ γῆρας ἀφικνουμένους καὶ ἕως ἂν ζῶσιν  
 εὐδαιμονέστερον **|ferry** ἄ καὶ ὑμᾶς δεῖ νῦν καταμαθόντας ἐν  
 τοιούτῳ γὰρ καιρῷ ἔσμεν αὐτούς τε ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς εἶναι καὶ τοὺς  
 ἄλλους παρακαλεῖν. ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον  
 εἶπε Χειρίσοφος· Ἄλλὰ πρόσθεν μὲν, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, τοσοῦτον μόνον  
 σε ἐγὶ γνωσκον ὅσον ἤκουον Ἀθηναῖον εἶναι, νῦν δὲ καὶ ἐπαινῶ σε  
 ἐφ' οἷς λέγεις τε καὶ πράττεις καὶ βουλοίμην ἂν ὅτι πλείστους  
 εἶναι τοιούτους· κοινὸν γὰρ ἂν εἴη τὸ ἀγαθόν. καὶ νῦν, ἔφη, μὴ  
 μέλλωμεν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀλλ' ἀπελθόντες ἤδη αἰρείσθε οἱ δεόμενοι  
 ἄρχοντας, καὶ ἐλόμενοι ἦκετε εἰς τὸ μέσον τοῦ στρατοπέδου καὶ τοὺς  
 αἰρεθέντας **|ἀγε?:** ἴ lead, **|ἔξομαι** together τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτας.  
 παρέστω δ' **|ἄγω?:** ἔφ lead, **|οἴμι** ἰαμίδης ὁ κῆρυξ. καὶ ἅμα ταῦτ' εἰπὼν  
 ἀνέστη, ὡς **|ἄγωμι?:** λοιπὸν **|ἔκει?:** ἀ περαίνοιτο τὰ δέοντα. ἐκ τούτου  
**|break** there  
 ἠρέθησαν ἄρχοντες ἀντὶ **|ἔορ** Κλεάρχου Τιμασίων Δαρδανεύς, ἀντὶ δὲ  
 Σωκράτους Ξανθικλῆς **|ἔορ** Ἀχαιοῦς, ἀντὶ δὲ Ἀγίου Κλεάνωρ Ἀρκάς, ἀντὶ  
 δὲ Μένωνος Φιλῆσιος Ἀχαιοῦς, ἀντὶ δὲ Προξένου Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος.

combatants it is given to dash with stouter hearts to meet the foe, and such onset, in nine cases out of ten, those others refuse to meet. This observation, also, I have laid to heart, that they, who in matters of war seek in all ways to save their lives, are just they who, as a rule, die dishonourably; whereas they who, recognising that death is the common lot and destiny of all men, strive hard to die nobly: these more frequently, as I observe, do after all attain to old age, or, at any rate, while life lasts, they spend their days more happily. This lesson let all lay to heart this day, for we are just at such a crisis of our fate. Now is the season to be brave ourselves, and to stimulate the rest by our example.”

With these words he ceased; and after him, Cheirisophus said: “Xenophon, hitherto I knew only so much of you as that you were, I heard, an Athenian, but now I must commend you for your words and for your conduct. I hope that there may be many more like you, for it would prove a public blessing.” Then turning to the officers: “And now,” said he, “let us waste no time; retire at once, I beg you, and choose leaders where you need them. After you have made your elections, come back to the middle of the camp, and bring the newly appointed officers. After that, we will there summon a general meeting of the soldiers. Let Tolmides, the herald,” he added, “be in attendance.” With these words on his lips he got up, in order that what was needful might be done at once without delay. After this the generals were chosen. These were Timasion the Dardanian, in place of Clearchus; Xanthicles, an Achaean, in place of Socrates; Cleanor, an Arcadian, in place of Agias; Philesius, an Achaean, in place of Menon; and in place of Proxenus, Xenophon the Athenian.



*vocabulary***αἰδέομαι** respect, be ashamed**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι,

ὄλλυμι

**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor**γείτων** -ονος (m, 3) neighbor**δεξιὰ** right-hand**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω,

ἐξαποδύνω

**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat**ἐχθρός** hated, distasteful ~external**ζῶ** live ~zoo; also ζάω, ζώω**ἦκω** to have come**ἥμερος** domesticated**καθίστημι** set down, land**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike**ξένιος** of hospitality**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,

οἶτομαι

**ὀμνυμι** swear**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless**ὅποτε** when; also ὅπποτε**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey

~odometer; also ὀδός

**πειράζω** test a person**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also

πειρητίζω

**πιστός** faithful (πείθω)**πλεῖστος** most numerous**προδίδωμι** betray**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**στερέω** steal, take**στρατηγέω** be a general**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary**συγκαλέω** call together**συλλαμβάνω** arrest, capture**σχεδόν** near, approximately at

~ischemia

**σώζω** save**τελέθω** turn out, come around**ὑποφαίνω** pull out from under**ὑποχείριος** under one's hand**ὑφίημι** to lower**χαλεπός** hard to bear**ὥδε** thus

## 3.2

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤρηντο, ἡμέρα τε σχεδὸν ὑπέβαινε καὶ εἰς τὸ μέσον ἦκον οἱ ἄρχοντες, καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς προφυλακὰς καταστήσαντας συγκαλεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται συνήλθον, ἀνέστη πρῶτος μὲν Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, χαλεπὰ μὲν τὰ παρόντα, ὅποτε ἀνδρῶν στρατηγῶν τοιούτων στερόμεθα καὶ λοχαγῶν καὶ στρατιωτῶν, πρὸς δ' ἔτι καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Ἄριαϊον οἱ πρόσθεν σύμμαχοι ὄντες προδεδώκασιν ἡμᾶς· ὅμως δὲ δεῖ ἐκ τῶν παρόντων ἀνδρας ἀγαθοὺς τελέθειν καὶ μὴ ὑφίεσθαι, ἀλλὰ πειρᾶσθαι ὅπως, ἦν μὲν δυνώμεθα, καλῶς νικῶντες σφζώμεθα· εἰ δὲ μὴ, ἀλλὰ καλῶς γε ἀποθνήσκωμεν, ὑποχείριοι δὲ μηδέποτε γενώμεθα ζῶντες τοῖς πολεμίοις. οἴομαι γὰρ ἂν ἡμᾶς τοιαῦτα παθεῖν οἶα τοὺς ἐχθροὺς οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσειαν. ἐπὶ τούτῳ Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Ἄλλ' ὀρᾶτε μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, τὴν βασιλέως ἐπιτοκίαν καὶ ἀσέβειαν, ὀρᾶτε δὲ τὴν Τισσαφέρνους ἀπιστίαν, ὅστις λέγων ὡς γείτων τε εἶη τῆς Ἑλλάδος καὶ περὶ πλείστου ἂν ποιήσαιτο σῶσαι ἡμᾶς, καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις αὐτὸς ὁμόσας ἡμῖν, αὐτὸς δεξιὰς δούς, αὐτὸς ἑξαπατήσας συνέλαβε τοὺς στρατηγούς, καὶ οὐδὲ Δία ξένιον ἠδέσθη, ἀλλὰ Κλεάρχῳ καὶ ὁμοτράπεζος γενόμενος αὐτοῖς τούτοις ἑξαπατήσας τοὺς ἀνδρας ἀπολώλεκεν. Ἄριαϊός δέ, ὃν ἡμεῖς ἠθέλομεν βασιλέα καθιστάναι, καὶ ἐδώκαμεν καὶ ἐλάβομεν πιστὰ μὴ προδώσειν

### 3.2

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤρηντο, ἡμέρα τε σχεδὸν |pull out from under, ἕσον ἦκον οἱ ἄρχοντες, καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς προφυλακὰς καταστήσαντας |call together τοὺς στρατιώτας. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται συνήλθον, ἀνέστη πρῶτος μὲν Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, χαλεπὰ μὲν τὰ παρόντα, ὅποτε ἀνδρῶν στρατηγῶν τοιούτων |steal, take καὶ λοχαγῶν καὶ στρατιωτῶν, πρὸς δ' ἔτι καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Ἀριαῖον οἱ πρόσθεν σύμμαχοι ὄντες |betray ἡμᾶς· ὅμως δὲ δεῖ ἐκ τῶν παρόντων ἀνδρας ἀγαθοὺς |turn out :αὶ μὴ |to lower ἀλλὰ πειρᾶσθαι ὅπως, ἦν μὲν δυνώμεθα, καλῶς νικῶντες σφζώμεθα· εἰ δὲ μὴ, ἀλλὰ καλῶς γε ἀποθνήσκωμεν, |under one's hand ἔτοτε γενώμεθα |live τοῖς πολεμίοις. οἶομαι γὰρ ἂν ἡμᾶς τοιαῦτα παθεῖν οἶα τοὺς ἐχθροὺς οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσειαν. ἐπὶ τούτῳ Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Ἄλλ' ὁρᾶτε μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, τὴν βασιλεύς ἐπιτορκίαν καὶ ἀσέβειαν, ὁρᾶτε δὲ τὴν Τισσαφέρους ἀπιστίαν, ὅστις λέγων ὡς |neighbor εἶη τῆς Ἑλλάδος καὶ περὶ πλείστου ἂν ποιήσαιτο σῶσαι ἡμᾶς, καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις αὐτὸς ὁμόσας ἡμῖν, αὐτὸς |δεξιᾶ?: right-hand ; or |δεξιός?: right-hand αὐτὸς ἐξαπατήσας συνέλαβε τοὺς στρατηγούς, καὶ οὐδὲ Δία |of hospitality ἠδέσθη, ἀλλὰ Κλεάρχῳ καὶ ὁμοτράπεζος γενόμενος αὐτοῖς τούτοις ἐξαπατήσας τοὺς ἀνδρας ἀπολώλεκεν. Ἀριαῖος δέ, ὃν ἡμεῖς ἠθέλομεν βασιλέα καθιστάναι, καὶ ἐδώκαμεν καὶ ἐλάβομεν πιστὰ μὴ |betray

### 3.2

By the time the new generals had been chosen, the first faint glimmer of dawn had hardly commenced, as they met in the centre of the camp, and resolved to post an advance guard and to call a general meeting of the soldiers. Now, when these had come together, Cheirisophus the Lacedaemonian first rose and spoke as follows: “Fellow-soldiers, the present posture of affairs is not pleasant, seeing that we are robbed of so many generals and captains and soldiers; and more than that, our former allies, Ariaeus and his men, have betrayed us; still, we must rise above our circumstances to prove ourselves brave men, and not give in, but try to save ourselves by glorious victory if we can; or, if not, at least to die gloriously, and never, while we have breath in our bodies, fall into the hands of our enemies. In which latter case, I fear, we shall suffer things, which I pray the gods may visit rather upon those we hate.”

At this point Cleanor the Ochomenian stood up and spoke as follows: “You see, men, the perjury and the impiety of the king. You see the faithlessness of Tissaphernes, professing that he was next-door neighbour to Hellas, and would give a good deal to save us, in confirmation of which he took an oath to us himself, he gave us the pledge of his right hand, and then, with a lie upon his lips, this same man turned round and arrested our generals. He had no reverence even for Zeus, the god of strangers; but, after entertaining Clearchus at his own board as a friend, he used his hospitality to delude and decoy his victims. And Ariaeus, whom we offered to make king, with whom we exchanged pledges not to betray each other, even this man, without a particle of fear of the gods, or respect for Cyrus in his grave, though he

*vocabulary*

**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἀξιόω** consider worthy, fitting  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**ἀφίστημι** stand apart; exact payment  
**βάβαρος** non-Greek  
**δέιδω** to fear ~Deimos  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**δίκη** justice  
**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω, ἐξαποδύνω  
**εἴτε** if, whenever  
**ἐλπίς** -δος (f) hope ~voluptuary  
**ἐννυμι** clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest  
**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater; also θάομαι, θήομαι  
**κόσμος** order; adornment ~cosmos  
**κράτιστος** best  
**μέντοι** however

**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**νίκη** victory ~Nike  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οὔομαι, οἶομαι  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὅπου** where  
**ὀρθός** upright ~orthogonal  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also πειρητίζω  
**πίστις** -εως (f) faith; treaty, proof, credit  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τελευταίω** bring about, finish  
**τιμάω** honor, exalt  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**χώρα** place  
**ὧδε** thus

ἀλλήλους, καὶ οὗτος οὔτε τοὺς θεοὺς δείσας οὔτε Κύρον τεθνηκότα αἰδεσθεῖς, τιμώμενος μάλιστα ὑπὸ Κύρου ζώντος νῦν πρὸς τοὺς ἐκείνου ἐχθίστους ἀποστάς ἡμᾶς τοὺς Κύρου φίλους κακῶς ποιεῖν πειράται. ἀλλὰ τούτους μὲν οἱ θεοὶ ἀποτείσονται· ἡμᾶς δὲ δεῖ ταῦτα ὀρώντας μήποτε ἐξαπατηθῆναι ἔτι ὑπὸ τούτων, ἀλλὰ μαχομένους ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα κράτιστα τοῦτο ὃ τι ἂν δοκῇ τοῖς θεοῖς πάσχειν.

Ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἀνίσταται ἐσταλμένος ἐπὶ πόλεμον ὡς ἐδύνατο κάλλιστα, νομίζων, εἴτε νίκην διδοῖεν οἱ θεοί, τὸν κάλλιστον κόσμον τῷ νικᾶν πρόπειν, εἴτε τελευτᾶν δέοι, ὀρθῶς ἔχειν τῶν καλλίστων ἑαυτὸν ἀξιόσαντα ἐν τούτοις τῆς τελευτῆς τυγχάνειν· τοῦ λόγου δὲ ἤρχετο ὧδε. Τὴν μὲν τῶν βαρβάρων ἐπιορκίαν τε καὶ ἀπιστίαν λέγει μὲν Κλεάνωρ, ἐπίστασθε δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς οἶμαι. εἰ μὲν οὖν βουλόμεθα πάλιν αὐτοῖς διὰ φιλίας ἰέναι, ἀνάγκη ἡμᾶς πολλὴν ἀθυμίαν ἔχειν, ὀρώντας καὶ τοὺς στρατηγούς, οἳ διὰ πίστεως αὐτοῖς ἑαυτοὺς ἐνεχείρισαν, οἷα πεπόνθασιν· εἰ μέντοι διανοούμεθα σὺν τοῖς ὄπλοις ὧν τε πεποιήκασι δίκην ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν διὰ παντὸς πολέμου αὐτοῖς ἰέναι, σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς πολλὰ ἡμῖν καὶ καλαὶ ἐλπίδες εἰσὶ σωτηρίας. τοῦτο δὲ λέγοντος αὐτοῦ πτάρνυται τις· ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ στρατιῶται πάντες μιᾷ ὀρμῇ προσεκύνησαν τὸν θεόν, καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε· Δοκεῖ μοι, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐπεὶ περὶ σωτηρίας ἡμῶν λεγόντων οἰωνὸς τοῦ Διὸς τοῦ σωτῆρος ἐφάνη, εὔξασθαι τῷ θεῷ τούτῳ θύσειν σωτήρια ὅπου ἂν πρῶτον εἰς φιλίαν χώραν ἀφικώμεθα,

ἀλλήλους, καὶ οὗτος οὔτε τοὺς θεοὺς δείσας οὔτε Κύρον |die  
 αἰδεσθείς, τιμώμενος μάλιστα ὑπὸ Κύρου |live νῦν πρὸς τοὺς  
 ἐκείνου |most hated' τοιστὰς ἡμᾶς τοὺς Κύρου φίλους κακῶς ποιεῖν  
 πειρᾶται. ἀλλὰ τούτους μὲν οἱ θεοὶ |pay back ἡμᾶς δὲ δεῖ ταῦτα  
 ὁρῶντας |absolutely πατηθῆναι ἔτι ὑπὸ τούτων, ἀλλὰ μαχομένους ὡς  
 |never  
 ἂν δυνώμεθα κράτιστα τοῦτο ὅ τι ἂν δοκῇ τοῖς θεοῖς πάσχειν.

Ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἀνίσταται ἐσταλμένος ἐπὶ πόλεμον ὡς |enter, put on, strip  
 |off  
 κάλλιστα, νομίζων, εἴτε νύκην |δίδημι?: 'should; bind; need, fail ; or δίδωμι?:  
 |give; permit  
 τῷ νικᾶν |be conspicu- ελευτᾶν δέοι, ὀρθῶς ἔχειν τῶν καλλίστων  
 |ous, premi-  
 ἑαυτὸν ἀξ|nentντα ἐν τούτοις τῆς |conclusion, , χάνειν' τοῦ λόγου δὲ  
 |fulfilment  
 ἤρχετο ᾧδε. Τὴν μὲν τῶν βαρβάρων ἐπιορκίαν τε καὶ ἀπιστίαν  
 λέγει μὲν Κλεάνωρ, |ἀπιστέω?: 'disbelieve ; or ἐπίστημι?: 'stand ready, take a  
 |stand ; or ἐπίσταμαι?: know  
 βουλόμεθα πάλιν αὐτοῖς διὰ |φιλία?: 'friendship ; or ἵς πολλὴν  
 |φίλος?: friend; beloved  
 ἀθυμίαν ἔχειν, ὁρῶντας καὶ τοὺς στρατηγούς, οἱ διὰ πίστεως αὐτοῖς  
 ἑαυτοὺς ἐνεχείρισαν, οἷα πεπόνθασιν· εἰ μέντοι διανοούμεθα σὺν τοῖς  
 ὄπλοις ὧν τε πεποιήκασιν δίκην ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν διὰ  
 παντὸς πολέμου αὐτοῖς ἰέναι, σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς πολλὰ ἡμῖν καὶ καλά  
 ἐλπίδες εἰσὶ σωτηρίας. τοῦτο δὲ λέγοντος αὐτοῦ πᾶρρυται τις·  
 ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ στρατιῶται πάντες μιᾷ ὀρμῇ προσεκύνησαν τὸν  
 θεόν, καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε· Δοκεῖ μοι, ᾧ ἄνδρες, ἐπεὶ περὶ σωτηρίας  
 ἡμῶν λεγόντων |vulture, νῦ Διὸς τοῦ σωτήρος ἐφάνη, εὔξασθαι τῷ θεῷ  
 |eagle,  
 τούτῳ θύσειν σα|omen ὅπου ἂν πρώτον εἰς |friendship ἰν ἀφικώμεθα,

was most honoured by Cyrus in lifetime, even he has turned aside to the worst foes of Cyrus, and is doing his best to injure the dead man's friends. Them may the gods requite as they deserve! But we, with these things before our eyes, will not any more be cheated and cajoled by them; we will make the best fight we can, and having made it, whatever the gods think fit to send, we will accept."

After him Xenophon arose; he was arrayed for war in his bravest apparel: "For," said he to himself, "if the gods grant victory, the finest attire will match with victory best; or if I must needs die, then for one who has aspired to the noblest, it is well there should be some outward correspondence between his expectation and his end." He began his speech as follows: "Cleanor has spoken of the perjury and faithlessness of the barbarians, and you yourselves know them only too well, I fancy. If then we are minded to enter a second time into terms of friendship with them, with the experience of what our generals, who in all confidence entrusted themselves to their power, have suffered, reason would we should feel deep despondency. If, on the other hand, we purpose to take our good swords in our hands and to inflict punishment on them for what they have done, and from this time forward will be on terms of downright war with them, then, God helping, we have many a bright hope of safety." The words were scarcely spoken when someone sneezed, and with one impulse the soldiers bowed in worship; and Xenophon proceeded: "I propose, sirs, since, even as we spoke of safety, an omen from Zeus the Saviour has appeared, we vow a vow to sacrifice to the Saviour thank-offerings for safe deliverance, wheresoever first we reach a friendly country; and let us couple with that vow another of individual assent, that we will offer to the rest of the gods 'according to our ability.' Let all those who are in favour of this proposal hold up their hands." They all



*vocabulary*

**ἀγείρω** gather ~agora; also ἀγυρτάζω  
**ἄλθομαι** become whole, sound  
**ἀναμιμνήσκω** (+2 acc) remind  
 someone  
**γέη** earth; a country ~geography; also  
 γῆ  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**εἰκός** οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
**ἐλπίς** -δος (f) hope ~voluptuary  
**ἐναντίος** opposite, facing, meeting  
**ἐνιαυτός** cycle of a year  
**εὐχομαι** declare, boast; pray (εὐχος)  
**ἡμέτερος** our, my  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θεά** (2) goddess ~theology  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater; also θάομαι, θηέομαι  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**κάλως** halyard  
**κίνδυνος** (ὑ) danger  
**λύω** loosen, free, ransom ~loose

**μικρός** small; also σμικρός  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**ὀπόσος** as/how many/great  
**ὄρκος** oath ~orc  
**πάνυ** altogether, very  
**πεντακόσιοι** 500  
**πρόγονος** first-born lamb  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**στόλος** expedition  
**στρατιά** army  
**τολμάω** dare (τλάω)  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**ὔστερον** later  
**ὔστερος** later, last  
**ὑφίστημι** promise, undertake  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χειρών** worse, more base  
**χίμαιρα** she-goat ~chimera  
**ὥδε** thus  
**ώθέω** push

συνεπέυξασθαι δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς θύσειν κατὰ δύναμιν. καὶ ὅτω  
 δοκεῖ ταῦτ', ἔφη, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. καὶ ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. ἐκ  
 τούτου ἠϋξάντο καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ τῶν θεῶν καλῶς εἶχεν,  
 ἤρχετο πάλιν ὠδε. Ἐτύγγανον λέγων ὅτι πολλαὶ καὶ καλαὶ ἐλπίδες  
 ἡμῖν εἶεν σωτηρίας. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἡμεῖς μὲν ἐμπεδοῦμεν τοὺς τῶν  
 θεῶν ὄρκους, οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ἐπιωρκήκασί τε καὶ τὰς σπονδὰς παρὰ  
 τοὺς ὄρκους λελύκασιν. οὕτω δ' ἐχόντων εἰκὸς τοῖς μὲν πολεμίοις  
 ἐναντίους εἶναι τοὺς θεοὺς, ἡμῖν δὲ συμμάχους, οἵπερ ἱκανοὶ εἶσι καὶ  
 τοὺς μεγάλους ταχὺ μικροὺς ποιεῖν καὶ τοὺς μικροὺς κἂν ἐν δεινοῖς  
 ὧσι σῆζεν εὐπετώσ, ὅταν βούλωνται. ἔπειτα δὲ ἀναμνήσω γὰρ  
 ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς τῶν προγόνων τῶν ἡμετέρων κινδύνους, ἵνα εἰδῆτε  
 ὡς ἀγαθοῖς τε ὑμῖν προσήκει εἶναι σῆζονταί τε σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ  
 ἐκ πάνυ δεινῶν οἱ ἀγαθοί. ἐλθόντων μὲν γὰρ Περσῶν καὶ τῶν σὺν  
 αὐτοῖς παμπληθεὶ στόλῳ ὡς ἀφανιούντων τὰς Ἀθήνας, ὑποστῆναι  
 αὐτοὶ Ἀθηναῖοι τολμήσαντες ἐνίκησαν αὐτούς. καὶ εὐξάμενοι τῇ  
 Ἀρτέμιδι ὀπόσους κατακάνοιεν τῶν πολεμίων τοσαύτας χιμαῖρας  
 καταθύσειν τῇ θεῷ, ἐπεὶ οὐκ εἶχον ἱκανὰς εὐρεῖν, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς  
 κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν πεντακοσίας θύειν, καὶ ἔτι νῦν ἀποθύουσιν. ἔπειτα  
 ὅτε Ξέρξης ὕστερον ἀγείρας τὴν ἀναρίθμητον στρατιὰν ἦλθεν ἐπὶ  
 τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ τότε ἐνίκων οἱ ἡμέτεροι πρόγονοι τοὺς τούτων  
 προγόνους καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν. ὧν ἔστι μὲν τεκμήρια  
 ὄραν τὰ τρόπαια, μέγιστον δὲ μαρτύριον ἡ ἐλευθερία τῶν πόλεων

συνεπέυξασθαι δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς θύσειν κατὰ δύναμιν. καὶ ὅταν  
 δοκεῖ ταῦτ', ἔφη, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. καὶ ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. ἐκ  
 τούτου ἠῦξαντο καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ τῶν θεῶν καλῶς εἶχεν,  
 ἤρχετο πάλιν ᾧδε. Ἐτύγχανον λέγων ὅτι πολλὰ καὶ καλαὶ ἐλπίδες  
 ἡμῖν εἶεν σωτηρίας. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἡμεῖς μὲν ἐμπεδοῦμεν τοὺς τῶν  
 θεῶν ὄρκους, οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ἐπιωρκήκασι τε καὶ τὰς σπονδὰς παρὰ  
 τοὺς ὄρκους λελύκασιν. οὕτω δ' ἐχόντων εἰκὸς τοῖς μὲν πολεμίοις  
 ἐναντίους εἶναι τοὺς θεοὺς, ἡμῖν δὲ συμμάχους, οἷπερ ἱκανοὶ εἰσι καὶ  
 τοὺς μεγάλους ταχὺ μικροὺς ποιεῖν καὶ τοὺς μικροὺς κὰν ἐν δεινοῖς  
 ᾧσι σῆζεν εὐπετῶς, ὅταν βούλωνται. ἔπειτα δὲ ἀναμνήσω γὰρ  
 ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς τῶν **|first-born lamb** ἡμετέρων κινδύνους, ἵνα εἰδῆτε  
 ὡς ἀγαθοῖς τε ὑμῖν προσήκει εἶναι σῆζονται τε σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ  
 ἐκ πάνυ δεινῶν οἱ ἀγαθοί. ἐλθόντων μὲν γὰρ Περσῶν καὶ τῶν σὺν  
 αὐτοῖς παμπληθεὶ στόλῳ ὡς ἀφανιούντων τὰς Ἀθήνας, **|promise,**  
 αὐτοὶ Ἀθηναῖοι τολμήσαντες ἐνίκησαν αὐτούς. καὶ εὐξάμενοι τῇ  
 Ἀρτέμιδι **|as/how many/great** ν τῶν πολεμίων τοσαύτας **|she-goat**  
 καταθύσειν τῇ θεῷ, ἐπεὶ οὐκ εἶχον ἱκανὰς εὐρεῖν, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς  
 κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν **|500** θύειν, καὶ ἔτι νῦν ἀποθύουσιν. ἔπειτα  
 ὅτε Ξέρξης ὕστερον ἀγείρας τὴν ἀναρίθμητον στρατιὰν **|ἄλθομαι?:** become  
 τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ τότε ἐνίκων οἱ ἡμέτεροι **|first-born lamb** **|go, come** **|ἔρχομαι?:**  
**|first-born lamb** ἀτὰ **|earth; a country** ἄτταν. ὧν ἔστι μὲν τεκμήρια  
 ὁρᾶν τὰ τρόπαια, μέγιστον δὲ μαρτύριον ἡ ἐλευθερία τῶν πόλεων

held up their hands, and there and then they vowed a vow and chanted the battle hymn. But as soon as these sacred matters were duly ended, he began once more thus: “I was saying that many and bright are the hopes we have of safety. First of all, we it is who confirm and ratify the oaths we take by heaven, but our enemies have taken false oaths and broken the truce, contrary to their solemn word. This being so, it is but natural that the gods should be opposed to our enemies, but with ourselves allied; the gods, who are able to make the great ones quickly small, and out of sore perplexity can save the little ones with ease, what time it pleases them. In the next place, let me recall to your minds the dangers of our own forefathers, that you may see and know that bravery is your heirloom, and that by the aid of the gods brave men are rescued even out of the midst of sorest straits.” So was it when the Persians came, and their attendant hosts, with a very great armament, to wipe out Athens from the face of the earth— the men of Athens had the heart to withstand them and conquered them. Then they vowed to Artemis that for every man they slew of the enemy, they would sacrifice to the goddess goats so many; and when they could not find sufficient for the slain, they resolved to offer yearly five hundred; and to this day they perform that sacrifice. And at a somewhat later date, when Xerxes assembled his countless hosts and marched upon Hellas, then too our fathers conquered the forefathers of our foes by land and by sea.

“And proofs of these things are yet to be seen in trophies; but the greatest witness of all is the freedom of our cities— the liberty of that land in which you were born and bred. For you call no man master or lord; you bow your heads to none save to the gods alone. Such were your forefathers, and their sons are ye. Think not I am going

*vocabulary*

**ἄγαμαι** admire; begrudge; also  
**ἀγαίομαι**  
**ἄγων** -ος (m, 3) gathering place (ἄγω)  
**ἄημι** blow  
**ἀμείνων** better  
**αὖ** ignite; shout  
**βασιλεία** kingdom  
**βασίλεια** noblewoman; also **βασίλη**  
**γόος** crying, wailing  
**δάκνω** bite  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**ἐννυμι** clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest  
**ἔραμαι** love  
**ἔρομαι** ask, search through; also  
**ἀνέρομαι, εἴρομαι, ἐξείρομαι, ἐξέρομαι**  
**ἥμερος** domesticated  
**ἡμέτερος** our, my  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θαρσαλέος** bold, over-bold  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
**ἱππιοχάρμης**  
**καταισχύνω** act disgracefully  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon;

also **καταλείπω**  
**κρείσσων** more powerful  
**μείων** less, smaller  
**μέντοι** however  
**μηδέ** and not; not even  
**μυρίος** immense, myriad ~myriad  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὅποτε** when; also **ὄπποτε**  
**πείρω** pierce, run through ~pierce  
**πλήθος** -ος (3) numerical superiority  
**πρέπω** be conspicuous, preeminent  
 ~refurbish  
**πρόγονος** first-born lamb  
**πρόθυμος** willing, eager  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**πώποτε** never  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τολμάω** dare (τλάω)  
**τρέφω** nurture; solidify ~atrophy  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὕμετερος** yours  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also **καταχέω**

ἐν αἷς ὑμεῖς ἐγένεσθε καὶ ἐτράφητε· οὐδένα γὰρ ἄνθρωπον δεσπότην  
 ἀλλὰ τοὺς θεοὺς προσκυνεῖτε. τοιούτων μὲν ἔστε προγόνων, οὐ μὲν  
 δὴ τοῦτό γε ἐρῶ ὡς ὑμεῖς καταισχύνετε αὐτούς· ἀλλ' οὐ πολλὰ ἡμέραι  
 ἀφ' οὗ ἀντιταξάμενοι τούτοις τοῖς ἐκείνων ἐκγόνοις πολλαπλασίου  
 ὑμῶν αὐτῶν ἐνικᾶτε σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. καὶ τότε μὲν δὴ περὶ τῆς  
 Κύρου βασιλείας ἄνδρες ἦτε ἀγαθοί· νῦν δ' ὅποτε περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας  
 σωτηρίας ὁ ἀγὼν ἔστι, πολὺν δῆπου ὑμᾶς προσήκει καὶ ἀμείνονας  
 καὶ προθυμότερους εἶναι. ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ θαρραλεωτέρους νῦν πρέπει  
 εἶναι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. τότε μὲν γὰρ ἄπειροι ὄντες αὐτῶν τὸ  
 δὲ πλῆθος ἄμετρον ὀρώντες, ὅμως ἐτολμήσατε σὺν τῷ πατρὶφι  
 φρονήματι ἰέναι εἰς αὐτούς· νῦν δὲ ὅποτε καὶ πείραν ἤδη ἔχετε αὐτῶν  
 ὅτι οὐ θέλουσι καὶ πολλαπλάσιοι ὄντες μὴ δέχεσθαι ὑμᾶς, τί ἔτι  
 ὑμῖν προσήκει τούτους φοβεῖσθαι; μὴδὲ μέντοι τοῦτο μείον δόξητε  
 ἔχειν ὅτι οἱ Κύριοι πρόσθεν σὺν ἡμῖν ταττόμενοι νῦν ἀφεστήκασιν.  
 ἔτι γὰρ οὗτοι κακίονές εἰσι τῶν ὑφ' ἡμῶν ἠττημένων· ἔφυγον γοῦν  
 πρὸς ἐκείνους καταλιπόντες ἡμᾶς. τοὺς δ' ἐθέλοντας φυγῆς ἄρχειν  
 πολὺ κρεῖττον σὺν τοῖς πολεμίσι ταττομένους ἢ ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ τάξει  
 ὄρᾶν. εἰ δέ τις ὑμῶν ἀθυμῆ ὅτι ἡμῖν μὲν οὐκ εἰσὶν ἵππεῖς, τοῖς δὲ  
 πολεμίσι πολλοὶ πάρεισιν, ἐνθυμήθητε ὅτι οἱ μύριοι ἵππεῖς οὐδὲν  
 ἄλλο ἢ μύριοι εἰσὶν ἄνθρωποι· ὑπὸ μὲν γὰρ ἵππου ἐν μάχῃ οὐδεὶς  
 πώποτε οὔτε δηχθεὶς οὔτε λακτισθεὶς ἀπέθανεν, οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν  
 οἱ ποιῶντες ὅ τι ἂν ἐν ταῖς μάχαις γίγνηται. οὐκοῦν τῶν ἵππέων

ἐν αἷς ὑμεῖς ἐγένεσθε καὶ ἐτράφητε· οὐδένα γὰρ ἀνθρωπον δεσπότην  
 ἀλλὰ τοὺς θεοὺς προσκυνεῖτε. τοιούτων μὲν ἐστε **|first-born lamb** ἔν  
 δὴ τοῦτό γε **ἔρωμαι?;** **act disgracefully** ἴως· ἀλλ' οὐ πολλαὶ ἡμέραι  
 ἀφ' οὗ ἀντι**ἔρωμαι?;** **love ; or** τούτοις τοῖς ἐκείνων **|offspring** ὀλλαπλασίουσ  
 ὑμῶν αὐτὰ **ask, search** διήκουσιν τοῖς θεοῖς. καὶ τότε μὲν δὴ περὶ τῆς  
 Κύρου βασι**through** **or ἐρωέω?;** **(act) back** ἤτε ἀγαθοί· νῦν δ' ὅποτε περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας  
 σωτηρίας **off;** **(mid,** ἀντι**rare)** ἀντι**drive** πολὺ δῆπου ὑμᾶς προσήκει καὶ ἀμείονας  
 καὶ προθυμ**back; spurt**τέρους εἶναι. ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ **bold** νῦν **be conspicuous,**  
 εἶναι πρὸς **declare;** **(pf) string** τῶν πολεμίουσ. τότε μὲν γὰρ ἄπειροι ὄντες αὐτῶν τὸ  
 δὲ πλήθος ἄμετρον ὀρῶντες, ὅμως ἐτολμήσατε σὺν τῷ πατρίῳ  
 φρονήματι ἰέναι εἰς αὐτούς· νῦν δὲ ὅποτε καὶ πείραν ἤδη ἔχετε αὐτῶν  
 ὅτι οὐ θέλουσι καὶ πολλαπλάσιοι ὄντες μὴ δέχεσθαι ὑμᾶς, τί ἔτι  
 ὑμῖν προσήκει τούτους φοβεῖσθαι; μὴδὲ μέντοι τοῦτο **less,** ἔξῃτε  
 ἔχειν ὅτι οἱ Κύρειοι πρόσθεν σὺν ἡμῖν ταπτόμενοι νῦν ἀφεστήκασιν.  
 ἔτι γὰρ οὗτοι κακίονές εἰσι τῶν ὑφ' ἡμῶν ἡττημένων· ἔφυγον γοῦν  
 πρὸς ἐκείνους καταλιπόντες ἡμᾶς. τοὺς δ' ἐθέλοντας φυγῆς ἄρχει  
 πολὺ κρεῖττον σὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις ταπτομένους ἢ ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρῃ τάξει  
 ὀρᾶν. εἰ δέ τις ὑμῶν ἀθυμεῖ ὅτι ἡμῖν μὲν οὐκ εἰσὶν ἰππεῖς, τοῖς δὲ  
 πολεμίοις πολλοὶ πάρεισιν, ἐνθυμήθητε ὅτι οἱ μύριοι ἰππεῖς οὐδὲν  
 ἄλλο ἢ μύριοι εἰσιν ἀνθρωποι· ὑπὸ μὲν γὰρ ἵππου ἐν μάχῃ οὐδεὶς  
**|never** οὔτε **|bite** οὔτε **|kick** ἀπέθανεν, οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν  
 οἱ ποιοῦντες ὅ τι ἂν ἐν ταῖς μάχαις γίγνηται. οὐκοῦν τῶν ἰπέων

to say that you put to shame in any way your ancestry— far from it. Not many days since, you too were drawn up in battle face to face with these true descendants of their ancestors, and by the help of heaven you conquered them, though they many times outnumbered you. At that time, it was to win a throne for Cyrus that you showed your bravery; to-day, when the struggle is for your own salvation, what is more natural than that you should show yourselves braver and more zealous still. Nay, it is very meet and right that you should be more undaunted still to-day to face the foe. The other day, though you had not tested them, and before your eyes lay their immeasurable host, you had the heart to go against them with the spirit of your fathers. To-day you have made trial of them, and knowing that, however many times your number, they do not care to await your onset, what concern have you now to be afraid of them?

“Nor let any one suppose that herein is a point of weakness, in that Cyrus’s troops, who before were drawn up by your side, have now deserted us, for they are even worse cowards still than those we worsted. At any rate they have deserted us, and sought refuge with them. Leaders of the forlorn hope of flight— far better is it to have them brigaded with the enemy than shoulder to shoulder in our ranks. But if any of you is out of heart to think that we have no cavalry, while the enemy have many squadrons to command, lay to heart this doctrine, that ten thousand horse only equal ten thousand men upon their backs, neither less nor more. Did any one ever die in battle from the bite or kick of a horse? It is the men, the real swordsmen, who do whatever is done in battles. In fact we, on our stout shanks, are better mounted than those cavalry fellows; there they hang on to their horses’ necks in mortal dread, not only of us, but of falling off; while we, well planted upon earth, can deal far heavier blows to our assailants, and aim more steadily at who we will. There



*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
**αἰίρω** raise, win ~aorta; also αἴρω  
**ἀέκων** unwilling  
**ἀμαρτάνω** miss, fail, lose; sin; also  
 ἀφαμαρτάνω, ἤμβροτον, ἀπήμβροτον  
**ἀργύριον** small coin  
**ἀσφαλής** going ahead, standing firm  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**γόνυ** γουνός (n, 3) knee ~polygon  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat  
**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart; also θαρρέω  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἵππιοχάρμης  
**ἰσχυρός** strong, forceful, violent  
**κρατέω** rule ~democracy  
**κρείσσω** more powerful

**μέτρον** measure ~metric  
**μηδέ** and not; not even  
**μητε** neither...nor...  
**μικρός** small; also σμικρός  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**οὐκέτι** no more  
**παίζω** play  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πηγή** waters, headwaters  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πότερος** which, whichever of two  
**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch  
 ~skeptical  
**σῶμα** -τος (n, 3) corpse ~somatic  
**τεύχω** make, cause; pass: happen; pass  
 pf: be, become; pass pf ppl: well made  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**χώρα** place  
**ψυχή** soul ~psychology  
**ώθέω** push

πολὺ ἡμεῖς ἐπ' ἀσφαλεστέρου ὀχήματός ἐσμεν· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἐφ' ἵππων κρέμανται φοβούμενοι οὐχ ἡμᾶς μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ καταπεσεῖν· ἡμεῖς δ' ἐπὶ γῆς βεβηκότες πολὺ μὲν ἰσχυρότερον παῖσομεν, ἢν τις προσίῃ, πολὺ δὲ μᾶλλον ὅτου ἂν βουλώμεθα τευξόμεθα. ἐνὶ δὲ μόνῳ προέχουσιν οἱ ἵππεῖς ἡμᾶς· φεύγειν αὐτοῖς ἀσφαλέστερόν ἐστιν ἢ ἡμῖν. εἰ δὲ δὴ τὰς μὲν μάχας θαρρεῖτε, ὅτι δὲ οὐκέτι ὑμῖν Τισσαφέρνης ἡγήσεται οὐδὲ βασιλεὺς ἀγορὰν παρέξει, τοῦτο ἄχθεσθε, σκέψασθε πότερον κρεῖττον Τισσαφέρνην ἡγεμόνα ἔχειν, ὃς ἐπιβουλεύων ἡμῖν φανερός ἐστιν, ἢ οὓς ἂν ἡμεῖς ἄνδρας λαβόντες ἡγεῖσθαι κελεύωμεν, οἳ εἴσονται ὅτι, ἢν τι περὶ ἡμᾶς ἀμαρτάνωσι, περὶ τὰς ἑαυτῶν ψυχὰς καὶ σώματα ἀμαρτήσονται. τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια πότερον ὠνεῖσθαι κρεῖττον ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἢς οὗτοι παρῆχον μικρὰ μέτρα πολλοῦ ἀργυρίου, μηδὲ τοῦτο ἔτι ἔχοντας, ἢ αὐτοὺς λαμβάνειν ἢνπερ κρατῶμεν, μέτρῳ χρωμένους ὅπόσῳ ἂν ἕκαστος βούληται. εἰ δὲ ταῦτα μὲν γινώσκετε ὅτι κρεῖττονα, τοὺς δὲ ποταμοὺς ἄπορον νομίζετε εἶναι καὶ μεγάλως ἡγεῖσθε ἐξαπατηθῆναι διαβάντες, σκέψασθε εἰ ἄρα τοῦτο καὶ μωρότατον πεποιήκασιν οἱ βάρβαροι. πάντες γὰρ ποταμοί, ἢν καὶ πρόσω τῶν πηγῶν ἄποροι ᾧσι, προσιοῦσι πρὸς τὰς πηγὰς διαβατοὶ γίνονται οὐδὲ τὸ γόνυ βρέχοντες. εἰ δὲ μήθ' οἱ ποταμοὶ διήσουσιν ἡγεμῶν τε μηδεὶς ἡμῖν φανεῖται, οὐδ' ὡς ἡμῖν γε ἀθυμητέον. ἐπιστάμεθα γὰρ Μυσοὺς, οὓς οὐκ ἂν ἡμῶν φαίμεν βελτίους εἶναι, ὅτι βασιλέως ἄκοντος ἐν βασιλέως χώρα πολλὰς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας καὶ

πολὺ ἡμεῖς ἐπ' ἀσφαλεστέρου ὀχήματός ἐσμεν· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἐφ' ἵππων

|hang φοβούμενοι οὐχ ἡμᾶς μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ |fall down

ἡμεῖς δ' ἐπὶ |earth; a country λὺ μὲν ἰσχυρότερον |play ἦν τις

προσίη, πολὺ δὲ μάλλον ὅτου ἂν βουλώμεθα τευξόμεθα. ἐνὶ δὲ μόνῳ

|be ahead, οἱ ἵππεῖς ἡμᾶς· φεύγειν αὐτοῖς ἀσφαλεστέρον ἐστὶν ἢ  
|have before

ἡμῖν. εἰ δὲ δὴ τὰς μὲν μάχας θαρρεῖτε, ὅτι δὲ οὐκέτι ὑμῖν Τισσαφέρνης

ἡγήσεται οὐδὲ βασιλεὺς ἀγορὰν παρέξει, τοῦτο |be bur-|look, look at, watch  
|dened

|which, , εἶπτον Τισσαφέρνην ἡγεμόνα ἔχειν, ὃν |what, plan, harm

|whichever

φανερὸς ἐστίν, ἢ οὓς ἂν ἡμεῖς ἄνδρας λαβόντες ἡγεῖσθαι κελεύωμεν, οἱ

εἴσονται ὅτι, ἦν τι περὶ ἡμᾶς ἀμαρτάνωσι, περὶ τὰς ἐαυτῶν ψυχὰς καὶ

σώματα ἀμαρτήσονται. τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια |which, ' εἶσθαι κρείττον  
|whichever

ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἧς οὗτοι παρείχον μικρὰ μέτρα πολλοῦ ἀργυρίου,

μηδὲ τοῦτο ἔτι ἔχοντας, ἢ αὐτοὺς λαμβάνειν ἢ ἡπερ κρατῶμεν,

μέτρῳ χρωμένους |as/how many/great βούληται. εἰ δὲ ταῦτα μὲν

γιγνώσκετε ὅτι κρείττονα, τοὺς δὲ ποταμοὺς ἄπορον νομίζετε εἶναι

καὶ μεγάλως ἡγεῖσθε ἐξαπατηθῆναι |pass over, |look, look at, watch  
|cross

καὶ μωρότατον πεποιήκασιν οἱ βάρβαροι. πάντες γὰρ ποταμοί,

ἦν καὶ |forward, in πηγῶν ἄποροι ὄσι, προσιούσι πρὸς τὰς πηγὰς  
|the future

|crossable, ἴγνονται οὐδὲ τὸ γόνυ |soak εἰ δὲ μήθ' οἱ ποταμοὶ

|fordable

διήσουσιν ἡγεμῶν τε μηδεὶς ἡμῖν φανέται, οὐδ' ὡς ἡμῖν γε ἀθυμητέον.

|ἀπιστέω?: disbelieve ; or ἐπίστημι?: stand, μὲν βελτίους εἶναι, ὅτι  
|ready, take a stand ; or ἐπίσταμαι?: know

βασιλέως ἄκοντος ἐν βασιλέως χώρα πολλὰς τε καὶ |blessed with a  
|good genius

is one point, I admit, in which their cavalry have the whip-hand of us; it is safer for them than it is for us to run away.

“May be, however, you are in good heart about the fighting, but annoyed to think that Tissaphernes will not guide us any more, and that the king will not furnish us with a market any longer. Now, consider, is it better for us to have a guide like Tissaphernes, whom we know to be plotting against us, or to take our chance of the stray people whom we catch and compel to guide us, who will know that any mistake made in leading us will be a sad mistake for their own lives? Again, is it better to be buying provisions in a market of their providing, in scant measure and at high prices, without even the money to pay for them any longer; or, by right of conquest, to help ourselves, applying such measure as suits our fancy best?

“Or again, perhaps you admit that our present position is not without its advantages, but you feel sure that the rivers are a difficulty, and think that you were never more taken in than when you crossed them; if so, consider whether, after all, this is not perhaps the most foolish thing which the barbarians have done. No river is impassable throughout; whatever difficulties it may present at some distance from its source, you need only make your way up to the springhead, and there you may cross it without wetting more than your ankles. But, granted that the rivers do bar our passage, and that guides are not forthcoming, what care we? We need feel no alarm for all that. We have heard of the Mysians, a people whom we certainly cannot admit to be better than ourselves; and yet they inhabit numbers of large and prosperous cities in the king’s own country without asking leave. The Pisidians are an equally good instance, or the Lycaonians. We have seen with our own eyes how they fare: seizing fortresses down in the plains, and reaping the fruits of these men’s territory. As to

*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀσφαλῆς** going ahead, standing firm  
**αὖ** again, then again; next ~after  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
*ἀφήκω*  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**δείδω** to fear ~Deimos  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**ἐκεῖ** there  
**ἐκπέμπω** send forth  
**ἐνθάδε** here, hither  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake  
**κεῖμαι** lie  
**κομίζω** take; attend to; also *κομέω*  
**κρατέω** rule ~democracy  
**κράτιστος** best

**μανθάνω** learn, be trained ~math  
**ὄδος** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also *οὐδός*  
**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἴκοι** at home  
**ὅπη** wherever, however  
**ὄχλος** mob, crowd  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**παρθένος** (f) girl, virgin ~Parthenon;  
 also *παρθενική*  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also  
*πειρητίζω*  
**πορεύω** carry  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**σκηνή** tent, booth  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιά** army  
**συμφέρω** bring together (*φέρω*)  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χρή** it is necessary, must, should  
 ~chresard  
**χώρα** place

μεγάλας πόλεις οἰκοῦσιν, ἐπιστάμεθα δὲ Πισίδας ὡσαύτως, Λυκάονας  
 δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ εἶδομεν ὅτι ἐν τοῖς πεδίοις τὰ ἐρυμνὰ καταλαβόντες  
 τὴν τούτων χώραν καρποῦνται· καὶ ἡμᾶς δ' ἂν ἔφην ἔγωγε χρῆναι  
 μῆπω φανεροὺς εἶναι οἴκαδε ὠρμημένους, ἀλλὰ κατασκευάζεσθαι ὡς  
 αὐτοῦ οἰκήσοντας. οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι καὶ Μυσοῖς βασιλεὺς πολλοὺς μὲν  
 ἡγεμόνας ἂν δοίη, πολλοὺς δ' ἂν ὀμήρους τοῦ ἀδόλως ἐκπέμψειν, καὶ  
 ὁδοποιήσεί γ' ἂν αὐτοῖς καὶ εἰ σὺν τεθρίπποις βούλουτο ἀπιέναι.  
 καὶ ἡμῶν γ' ἂν οἶδ' ὅτι τρισάσμενος ταῦτ' ἐποίει, εἰ ἑώρα ἡμᾶς μένειν  
 κατασκευαζομένων. ἀλλὰ γὰρ δέδοικα μὴ, ἂν ἅπαξ μάθωμεν ἀργοὶ  
 ζῆν καὶ ἐν ἀφθόνοις βιοτεύειν, καὶ Μήδων δὲ καὶ Περσῶν καλαῖς  
 καὶ μεγάλας γυναιξὶ καὶ παρθένοις ὀμιλεῖν, μὴ ὥσπερ οἱ λωτοφάγοι  
 ἐπιλαθόμεθα τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ. δοκεῖ οὖν μοι εἰκὸς καὶ δίκαιον εἶναι  
 πρῶτον εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ πρὸς τοὺς οἰκείους πειρᾶσθαι ἀφικνεῖσθαι  
 καὶ ἐπιδείξει τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ὅτι ἐκόντες πένονται, ἔξὸν αὐτοῖς τοὺς  
 νῦν οἴκοι σκληρῶς ἐκεῖ πολιτεύοντας ἐνθάδε κομισαμένους πλουσίους  
 ὀρᾶν. ἀλλὰ γάρ, ὦ ἄνδρες, πάντα ταῦτα τὰγαθὰ δῆλον ὅτι τῶν  
 κρατούντων ἐστί· τοῦτο δὴ δεῖ λέγειν, ὅπως ἂν πορευοίμεθά τε ὡς  
 ἀσφαλέστατα καὶ εἰ μάχεσθαι δεοί ὡς κράτιστα μαχοίμεθα. πρῶτον  
 μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι κατακαῦσαι τὰς ἀμάξας ἃς ἔχομεν, ἵνα  
 μὴ τὰ ζεύγη ἡμῶν στρατηγῆ, ἀλλὰ πορευόμεθα ὅπη ἂν τῇ στρατιᾷ  
 συμφέρη· ἔπειτα καὶ τὰς σκηναὶς συγκατακαῦσαι. αὐταὶ γὰρ αὐτὸ ὄχλον  
 μὲν παρέχουσιν ἄγειν, συνωφελοῦσι δ' οὐδὲν οὔτε εἰς τὸ μάχεσθαι οὔτ'

μεγάλας πόλεις οἰκοῦσιν, |ἀπιστέω?: disbelieve ; ὁρ ἐρίστημι?: stand ready, take  
 δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ εἶδομεν ὅτι ἐν τοῖς πεδίοις τὰ |a stand ; or ἐπίσταμαι?: know  
 τὴν τούτων χώραν καρποῦνται· καὶ ἡμᾶς δ' |fortified, λαβόντες  
 μήπω φανεροὺς εἶναι οἴκαδε ὠρμημένους, ἀλλὰ κατασκευάζεσθαι ὡς  
 αὐτοῦ οἰκήσοντας. οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι καὶ Μυσοῖς βασιλεὺς πολλοὺς μὲν  
 ἡγεμόνας ἂν δοίη, πολλοὺς δ' ἂν ὀμήρους τοῦ ἀδόλως ἐκπέμψειν, καὶ  
 ὁδοποιήσειέ γ' ἂν αὐτοῖς καὶ εἰ σὺν τεθρίπποις βούλουτο ἀπιέναι.  
 καὶ ἡμῶν γ' ἂν οἶδ' ὅτι τρισάσμενος ταῦτ' ἐποίει, εἰ ἑώρα ἡμᾶς μένειν  
 κατασκευαζομένους. ἀλλὰ γὰρ δέδοικα μή, ἂν |once μάθωμεν |glistening,  
 ζῆν καὶ ἐν ἀφθόνοις βιοτεύειν, καὶ Μήδων δὲ καὶ Περσῶν καλαῖς  
 καὶ μεγάλας γυναιξὶ καὶ παρθένους |associate with |swift  
 ἐπιλαθώμεθα τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ. δοκεῖ οὖν μοι εἰκὸς καὶ δίκαιον εἶναι  
 πρῶτον εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ πρὸς τοὺς οἰκείους πειρᾶσθαι ἀφικνεῖσθαι  
 καὶ ἐπιδείξει τοῖς Ἕλλησι ὅτι ἐκόντες |be busy|go forth ἵς τοὺς  
 νῦν οἴκοι σκληρῶς |work at  
 ὄραν. ἀλλὰ γάρ, ὡ ἄνδρες, πάντα ταῦτα τάγαθὰ δῆλον ὅτι τῶν  
 κρατούντων ἐστί· τοῦτο δὴ δεῖ λέγειν, ὅπως ἂν πορευοίμεθα τε ὡς  
 ἀσφαλέστατα καὶ εἰ μάχεσθαι δεοί ὡς κράτιστα μαχοίμεθα. πρῶτον  
 μὲν τοῖνυν, ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι |burn down τὰς ἀμάξας ἅς ἔχομεν, ἵνα  
 μὴ τὰ |ζευγος?: team ; ὁρ ἀλλὰ πορευώμεθα ὅπῃ ἂν τῇ στρατιᾷ  
 |ζεύγυμι?: yoke, join  
 συμφέρη· ἔπειτα καὶ τὰς σκηνὰς συγκατακαῦσαι. αὐταὶ γὰρ αὐτὸ ὄχλον  
 μὲν παρέχουσιν ἄγειν, συνωφελοῦσι δ' οὐδὲν οὔτε εἰς τὸ μάχεσθαι οὔτ'

us, I go so far as to assert, we ought never to have let it be seen that we were bent on getting home: at any rate, not so soon; we should have begun stocking and furnishing ourselves, as if we fully meant to settle down for life somewhere or other hereabouts. I am sure that the king would be thrice glad to give the Mysians as many guides as they like, or as many hostages as they care to demand, in return for a safe conduct out of his country; he would make carriage roads for them, and if they preferred to take their departure in coaches and four, he would not say them nay. So too, I am sure, he would be only too glad to accommodate us in the same way, if he saw us preparing to settle down here. But, perhaps, it is just as well that we did not stop; for I fear, if once we learn to live in idleness and to batten in luxury and dalliance with these tall and handsome Median and Persian women and maidens, we shall be like the Lotus-eaters, and forget the road home altogether.

“It seems to me that it is only right, in the first instance, to make an effort to return to Hellas and to revisit our hearths and homes, if only to prove to other Hellenes that it is their own faults if they are poor and needy, seeing it is in their power to give to those now living a pauper life at home a free passage hither, and convert them into well to do burghers at once. Now, sirs, is it not clear that all these good things belong to whoever has strength to hold them?

“Let us look another matter in the face. How are we to march most safely? or where blows are needed, how are we to fight to the best advantage? That is the question.

“The first thing which I recommend is to burn the wagons we have got, so that we may be free to march wherever the army needs, and not, practically, make our baggage train our general. And, next, we should throw our tents



*vocabulary*

**ἄημι** blow

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured

**ἀλλότριος** someone else's; alien

**ἀντί** for, equivalent to

**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve

**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι, ὄλλυμι

**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor

**αὐτίκα** at once

**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos

**διδάσκω** teach ~didactic

**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about

**ἐκφέρω** carry off

**ἐντυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also τυγχάνω

**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand

**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable

**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel

**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand

**ἥμερος** domesticated

**ἡμέτερος** our, my

**ιδιώτης** -ου (m, 1) private, not public

**ικανός** sufficient; competent, fit

**ικάνω** reach, arrive at

**ἴσος** equal; also εἶση

**κακώω** harm, disfigure

**κρατέω** rule ~democracy

**μυρίος** immense, myriad ~myriad

**νομίζω** consider customary

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

**περιγίγνομαι** surpass

**πλεῖστος** most numerous

**πλήν** except

**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also

πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω

**πολεμόω** make an enemy of

**ποτός** potable

**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until

**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)

**σίτος** (m/n) grain, bread, food

~parasite

**στρατηγέω** be a general

**συλλαμβάνω** arrest, capture

**τολμάω** dare (τλάω)

**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case

**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω

**ψηφίζω** count, vote

**ώθέω** push

**ώρα** season, time ~horoscope

εἰς τὸ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχειν. ἔτι δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων σκευῶν τὰ περιττὰ ἀπαλλάξωμεν πλὴν ὅσα πολέμου ἔνεκεν ἢ σίτων ἢ ποτῶν ἔχομεν, ἵνα ὡς πλείστοι μὲν ἡμῶν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις ὦσιν, ὡς ἐλάχιστοι δὲ σκευοφορῶσι. κρατουμένων μὲν γὰρ ἐπίστασθε ὅτι πάντα ἀλλότρια· ἦν δὲ κρατῶμεν, καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους δεῖ σκευοφόρους ἡμετέρους νομίζειν. λοιπὸν μοι εἰπεῖν ὅπερ καὶ μέγιστον νομίζω εἶναι. ὁρᾶτε γὰρ καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ὅτι οὐ πρόσθεν ἐξενεγκεῖν ἐτόλμησαν πρὸς ἡμᾶς πόλεμον πρὶν τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἡμῶν συνέλαβον, νομίζοντες ὄντων μὲν τῶν ἀρχόντων καὶ ἡμῶν πειθομένων ἱκανοὺς εἶναι ἡμᾶς περιγενέσθαι τῷ πολέμῳ, λαβόντες δὲ τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἀναρχία ἂν καὶ ἀταξία ἐνόμιζον ἡμᾶς ἀπολέσθαι. δεῖ οὖν πολὺ μὲν τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἐπιμελεστεροὺς γενέσθαι τοὺς νῦν τῶν πρόσθεν, πολὺ δὲ τοὺς ἀρχομένους εὐτακτοτέρους καὶ πειθομένους μᾶλλον τοῖς ἄρχουσι νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν· ἦν δέ τις ἀπειθῆ, ἦν ψηφίσασθαι τὸν αἰεὶ ὑμῶν ἐντυγχάνοντα σὺν τῷ ἄρχοντι κολάζειν· οὕτως οἱ πολέμοι πλείστον ἐψευσμένοι ἔσονται· τῆδε γὰρ τῆ ἡμέρα μυρίους ὄψονται ἀνθ' ἑνὸς Κλεάρχους τοὺς οὐδενὶ ἐπιτρέψοντας κακῶ εἶναι. ἀλλὰ γὰρ καὶ περαίνειν ἤδη ὥρα· ἴσως γὰρ οἱ πολέμοι αὐτίκα παρέσονται. ὅτω οὖν ταῦτα δοκεῖ καλῶς ἔχειν, ἐπικυρωσάτω ὡς τάχιστα, ἵνα ἔργῳ περαίνηται. εἰ δέ τι ἄλλο βέλτιον ἢ ταύτῃ, τολμάτω καὶ ὁ ἰδιώτης διδάσκειν· πάντες γὰρ κουνῆς σωτηρίας δεόμεθα.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' εἰ μὲν τινος ἄλλου δεῖ πρὸς

εἰς τὸ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχειν. ἔτι δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων σκευῶν τὰ περιττὰ ἀπαλλάξωμεν πλὴν ὅσα πολέμου ἔνεκεν ἢ σίτων ἢ **ποτή?: flight? ; or ποτός?: potable** ἵνα ὡς πλείστοι μὲν ἡμῶν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις ὦσιν, ὡς ἐλάχιστοι δὲ σκευοφορῶσι. κρατουμένων μὲν γὰρ **ἀπιστέω?: "disbelieve" ; ὁρ' ἐφίστημι?: stand ready, take a stand ; or ἐπίσταμαι?: know** ἦν δὲ κρατῶμεν, καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους δεῖ σκευοφόρους ἡμετέρους νομίζειν. λοιπὸν μοι εἰπεῖν ὅπερ καὶ μέγιστον νομίζω εἶναι. ὁρᾶτε γὰρ καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ὅτι οὐ πρόσθεν ἐξενεγκεῖν ἐτόλμησαν πρὸς ἡμᾶς πόλεμον πρὶν τοὺς στρατηγούς ἡμῶν συνέλαβον, νομίζοντες ὄντων μὲν τῶν ἀρχόντων καὶ ἡμῶν πειθομένων ἱκανοὺς εἶναι ἡμᾶς **|surpass** τῷ πολέμῳ, λαβόντες δὲ τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἀναρχία ἂν καὶ ἀταξία ἐνόμιζον ἡμᾶς ἀπολέσθαι. δεῖ οὖν πολὺ μὲν τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἐπιμελεστέροισιν γενέσθαι τοὺς νῦν τῶν πρόσθεν, πολὺ δὲ τοὺς ἀρχομένους εὐτακτοτέρους καὶ πειθομένους μᾶλλον τοῖς ἄρχουσι νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν· ἦν δέ τις ἀπειθῆ, ἦν ψηφίσασθαι τὸν αἰεὶ ὑμῶν **|meet, find, obtain; succeed, ι κολάζειν· οὕτως οἱ πολέμοι πλείστον |happen, happen to exist** εἴψουσιν· τῆδε γὰρ τῆ ἡμέρᾳ μυρίους ὄψονται **ἄημι?: "blow" ; or ἄντι?: for, equivalent** Κλεάρχους τοὺς οὐδενὶ ἐπιτρέψοντας κακῶ εἶναι. ἀλλὰ **το** ἄρ καὶ περαίνειν ἤδη ὥρα· ἴσως γὰρ οἱ πολέμοι αὐτίκα παρέσονται. ὅτω οὖν ταῦτα δοκεῖ καλῶς ἔχειν, ἐπικυρωσάτω ὡς τάχιστα, ἵνα ἔργῳ περαίνηται. εἰ δέ τι ἄλλο βέλτιον ἢ ταῦτη, τολμάτω καὶ ὁ **|private, not public** διδάσκειν· πάντες γὰρ κοινῆς σωτηρίας δεόμεθα.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' εἰ μὲν τινος ἄλλου δεῖ πρὸς

into the bonfire also: for these again are only a trouble to carry, and do not contribute one grain of good either for fighting or getting provisions. Further, let us get rid of all superfluous baggage, save only what we require for the sake of war, or meat and drink, so that as many of us as possible may be under arms, and as few as possible doing portorage. I need not remind you that, in case of defeat, the owners' goods are not their own; but if we master our foes, we will make them our baggage bearers.

“It only rests for me to name the one thing which I look upon as the greatest of all. You see, the enemy did not dare to bring war to bear upon us until they had first seized our generals; they felt that whilst our rulers were there, and we obeyed them, they were no match for us in war; but having got hold of them, they fully expected that the consequent confusion and anarchy would prove fatal to us. What follows? This: Officers and leaders ought to be more vigilant ever than their predecessors; subordinates still more orderly and obedient to those in command now than even they were to those who are gone. And you should pass a resolution that, in case of insubordination, any one who stands by is to aid the officer in chastising the offender. So the enemy will be mightily deceived; for on this day they will behold ten thousand Clearchuses instead of one, who will not suffer one man to play the coward. And now it is high time I brought my remarks to an end, for may be the enemy will be here anon. Let those who are in favour of these proposals confirm them with all speed, that they may be realised in fact; or if any other course seem better, let not any one, even though he be a private soldier, shrink from proposing it. Our common safety is our common need.”

After this Cheirisophus spoke. He said: “If there is anything else

*vocabulary*

ἄλλως otherwise  
 ἀνίστημι stand up; arouse  
 ἄπειμι be absent, go away, return  
 ἀπέχω ward off, drive off, refrain  
 ἀποδείκνυμι (ῶ) show, point out;  
 (mid) declare  
 ἀσφαλῆς going ahead, standing firm  
 αὐτίκα at once  
 βουλευώ to deliberate ~volunteer  
 δειλός wretched, poor, cowardly  
 ~Deimos; also δειλος  
 δέος -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
 δῆλος visible, conspicuous  
 διώκω chase  
 δύω enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
 εἰκός οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
 εἴκοσι twenty  
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable  
 ἔπομαι follow, support, chase ~sequel  
 εὐθύς straight; course ~justice; also  
 ἰθύς  
 ἦκω to have come  
 ἦώς ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
 θαυμάζω marvel ~theater; also  
 ἀποθαυμάζω

ἴσος equal; also ἔϊση  
 κοσμέω marshal, array  
 κράτιστος best  
 κύων κυνός (m/f, 3) dog ~hound  
 κώμη village  
 νέος young; neuter: recently ~neon  
 ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ὅποτε when; also ὀπότε  
 ὅπου where  
 ὄχλος mob, crowd  
 πειράζω test a person  
 πειρώ try, test ~empirical; also  
 πειρητίζω  
 πλέος full; also πλεῖος, πλέως  
 πλευρά rib  
 πλέω sail, float ~float  
 πορεύω carry  
 πρέσβυς elder ~Presbyterian  
 πρόσθεν before (time, space)  
 στάδιον (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
 masc)  
 τάξις -εως (f) arrangement  
 τῷ so, therefore; in that case  
 φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
 χείρων worse, more base  
 ψηφίζω count, vote

τούτοις οἷς λέγει Ξενοφῶν, καὶ αὐτίκα ἐξέσται ποιεῖν· ἃ δὲ νῦν εἶρηκε δοκεῖ μοι ὡς τάχιστα ψηφίσασθαι ἄριστον εἶναι· καὶ ὅτω δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. ἀνέτειναν πάντες. ἀναστὰς δὲ πάλιν εἶπε Ξενοφῶν· ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀκούσατε ὧν προσδοκεῖ μοι δῆλον ὅτι πορεύεσθαι ἡμᾶς δεῖ ὅπου ἕξομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· ἀκούω δὲ κόμας εἶναι καλὰς οὐ πλέον ἑκοσι σταδίων ἀπεχούσας· οὐκ ἂν οὖν θαυμάζομεν εἰ οἱ πολέμοι, ὥσπερ οἱ δειλοὶ κύνες τοὺς μὲν παριόντας διώκουσί τε καὶ δάκνουσιν, ἢν δύνωνται, τοὺς δὲ διώκοντας φεύγουσιν, εἰ καὶ αὐτοὶ ἡμῖν ἀπιούσιν ἐπακολουθοῖεν. ἴσως οὖν ἀσφαλέστερον ἡμῖν πορεύεσθαι πλαίσιον ποιησαμένους τῶν ὄπλων, ἵνα τὰ σκευοφόρα καὶ ὁ πολὺς ὄχλος ἐν ἀσφαλεστέρῳ εἴη. εἰ οὖν νῦν ἀποδειχθεῖη τίνας χρῆ ἡγεῖσθαι τοῦ πλαισίου καὶ τὰ πρόσθεν κοσμεῖν καὶ τίνας ἐπὶ τῶν πλευρῶν ἑκατέρων εἶναι, τίνας δ' ὀπισθοφυλακεῖν, οὐκ ἂν ὁπότε οἱ πολέμοι ἔλθοιεν βουλευέσθαι ἡμᾶς δέοι, ἀλλὰ χρῆμεθα ἂν εὐθὺς τοῖς τεταγμένοις. εἰ μὲν οὖν ἄλλο τις βέλτιον ὄρᾳ, ἄλλως ἐχέτω· εἰ δὲ μή, Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγοῖτο, ἐπειδὴ καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιος ἐστὶ· τῶν δὲ πλευρῶν ἑκατέρων δύο τῶ πρεσβυτάτῳ στρατηγῷ ἐπιμελοίσθην· ὀπισθοφυλακοῖμεν δ' ἡμεῖς οἱ νεώτατοι ἐγὼ καὶ Τιμασίων τὸ νῦν εἶναι. τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν πειρώμενοι ταύτης τῆς τάξεως βουλευσόμεθα ὅ τι ἂν αἰεὶ κράτιστον δοκῆ εἶναι. εἰ δὲ τις ἄλλο ὄρᾳ βέλτιον, λεξάτω. ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν, εἶπεν· Ὅτω δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. ἔδοξε ταῦτα. Νῦν τοίνυν, ἔφη,

τούτοις οἷς λέγει Ξενοφῶν, καὶ αὐτίκα |go forth τοιῶν· ἃ δὲ νῦν  
 εἶρηκε δοκεῖ μοι ὡς τάχιστα ψηφίσασθαι ἄριστον εἶναι· καὶ ὅτῳ  
 δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. ἀνέτειναν πάντες. ἀναστὰς  
 δὲ πάλιν εἶπε Ξενοφῶν· |type of fruit ῥκούσατε ὦν προσδοκεῖ μοι.  
 δῆλον ὅτι πορεύεσθαι ἡμᾶς δεῖ ὅπου ἕξομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· ἀκούω  
 δὲ |village εἶναι καλὰς οὐ πλέον εἴκοσι |στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also masc)  
 ἂν οὖν θαυμάζοιμεν εἰ οἱ πολέμοι, ὥσπερ |firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
 παριόντας διώκουσί τε καὶ |bite ἣν δύνωνται, τοὺς δὲ διώκοντας  
 φεύγουσιν, εἰ καὶ αὐτοὶ ἡμῖν ἀπιούσιν ἐπακολουθοῖεν. ἴσως οὖν  
 ἀσφαλέστερον ἡμῖν πορεύεσθαι πλαίσιον ποιησαμένους τῶν ὄπλων,  
 ἵνα τὰ σκευοφόρα καὶ ὁ πολὺς ὄχλος ἐν ἀσφαλεστέρω εἴῃ. εἰ οὖν νῦν  
 ἀποδειχθεῖη τίνας χρῆ ἡγεῖσθαι τοῦ πλαισίου καὶ τὰ πρόσθεν κοσμεῖν  
 καὶ τίνας ἐπὶ τῶν |rib ἑκατέρων εἶναι, τίνας δ' ὀπισθοφυλακεῖν,  
 οὐκ ἂν ὁπότε οἱ πολέμοι ἔλθοιεν βουλευέσθαι ἡμᾶς δέοι, ἀλλὰ  
 χρῆμαθα ἂν εὐθὺς τοῖς τεταγμένοις. εἰ μὲν οὖν ἄλλο τις βέλτιον  
 ὄρᾱ, ἄλλως ἐχέτω· εἰ δὲ μὴ, Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγοῖτο, |after; αἰ  
 |because  
 Λακεδαιμόνιός ἐστι· τῶν δὲ |rib ἑκατέρων δύο τῶ πρεσβυτάτω  
 στρατηγῶ ἐπιμελοίσθην· ὀπισθοφυλακοῖμεν δ' ἡμεῖς οἱ νεώτατοι ἐγὼ  
 καὶ Τιμασίων τὸ νῦν εἶναι. τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν πειρώμενοι ταύτης τῆς  
 τάξεως βουλευσόμεθα ὅ τι ἂν αἰεὶ κρᾶτιστον δοκῆ εἶναι. εἰ δὲ τις  
 ἄλλο ὄρᾱ βέλτιον, λεξάτω. ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν, εἶπεν· Ὅτῳ  
 δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. ἔδοξε ταῦτα. Νῦν τοίνυν, ἔφη,

to be done, beyond what Xenophon has mentioned, we shall be able to carry it out presently; but with regard to what he has already proposed, it seems to me the best course to vote upon the matters at once. Those who are in favour of Xenophon's proposals, hold up their hands." They all held them up. Xenophon rose again and said: "Listen, sirs, while I tell you what I think we have need of besides. It is clear that we must march where we can get provisions. Now, I am told there are some splendid villages not more than two miles and a half distant. I should not be surprised, then, if the enemy were to hang on our heels and dog us as we retire, like cowardly curs which rush out at the passer-by and bite him if they can, but when you turn upon them they run away. Such will be their tactics, I take it. It may be safer, then, to march in a hollow square, so as to place the baggage animals and our mob of sutlers in greater security. It will save time to make the appointments at once, and to settle who leads the square and directs the vanguard; who will take command of the two flanks, and who of the rearguard; so that, when the enemy appears, we shall not need to deliberate, but can at once set in motion the machinery in existence.

"If any one has any better plan, we need not adopt mine; but if not, suppose Cheirisophus takes the lead, as he is a Lacedaemonian, and the two eldest generals take in charge the two wings respectively, whilst Timasion and I, the two youngest, will for the present guard the rear. For the rest, we can but make experiment of this arrangement, and alter it with deliberation, as from time to time any improvement suggests itself. If any one has a better plan to propose, let him do so."... No dissentient voice was heard. Accordingly he said: "Those in favour of this resolution, hold up their hands." The resolution was carried. "And now," said he, "it would be well to separate and



*vocabulary*

**ἄλλως** otherwise  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve  
**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
**ἀφήμι** throw, release, use up; also ἀφήγω  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**διάγω** ferry across  
**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω, ἐξαποδύνω  
**εἶάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about  
**ἐνθάδε** here, hither  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ζέω** boil ~eczema  
**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat  
**θεράπων** (m, 3) helper, henchman, servant ~therapy

**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also ἵππιοχάρμης  
**κατακαίω** burn down  
**κρατέω** rule ~democracy  
**νέος** young; neuter: recently ~neon  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**νόος** mind, intention ~paranoia  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also πειρητίζω  
**πείρω** pierce, run through ~pierce  
**πιστός** faithful (πείθω)  
**σκηνή** tent, booth  
**στόλος** expedition  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also ἐντυγχάνω  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**φόβος** fear, rout, panic ~phobia  
**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**χώρα** place  
**ὥδε** thus

ἀπιόντας ποιεῖν δεῖ τὰ δεδογμένα. καὶ ὅστις τε ὑμῶν τοὺς οἰκίους ἐπιθυμεῖ ἰδεῖν, μεμνήσθω ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς εἶναι· οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἄλλως τούτου τυχεῖν· ὅστις τε ζῆν ἐπιθυμεῖ, πειράσθω νικᾶν· τῶν μὲν γὰρ νικῶντων τὸ καίνειν, τῶν δὲ ἠττωμένων τὸ ἀποθνήσκειν ἐστί· καὶ εἴ τις δὲ χρημάτων ἐπιθυμεῖ, κρατεῖν πειράσθω· τῶν γὰρ νικῶντων ἐστὶ καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν σῆζειν καὶ τὰ τῶν ἠττωμένων λαμβάνειν.

### 3.3

Τούτων λεχθέντων ἀνέστησαν καὶ ἀπελθόντες κατέκαιον τὰς ἀμάξας καὶ τὰς σκηνάς, τῶν δὲ περιπτῶν ὅτου μὲν δέοιτό τις μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα εἰς τὸ πῦρ ἐρρίπτουν. ταῦτα ποιήσαντες ἠριστοποιοῦντο. ἀριστοποιουμένων δὲ αὐτῶν ἔρχεται Μιθραδάτης σὺν ἱππεύσιν ὡς τριάκοντα, καὶ καλεσάμενος τοὺς στρατηγούς εἰς ἐπήκοον λέγει ὧδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, καὶ Κύρω πιστὸς ἦν, ὡς ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε, καὶ νῦν ὑμῖν εὐνους· καὶ ἐνθάδε δ' εἰμὶ σὺν πολλῶ φόβῳ διάγων. εἰ οὖν ὀρήην ὑμᾶς σωτήριόν τι βουλευομένους, ἔλθοιμι ἂν πρὸς ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς θεράποντας πάντας ἔχων. λέξατε οὖν πρὸς με τί ἐν νῶ ἔχετε ὡς φίλον τε καὶ εὐνουν καὶ βουλόμενον κοινῇ σὺν ὑμῖν τὸν στόλον ποιεῖσθαι. βουλευομένοις τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξεν ἀποκρίνασθαι τάδε· καὶ ἔλεγε Χειρίσοφος· Ἡμῖν δοκεῖ, εἰ μὲν τις ἐᾷ ἡμᾶς ἀπιεῖναι οἴκαδε, διαπορεύεσθαι τὴν χώραν ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα ἀσυνέστατα· ἦν δὲ τις ἡμᾶς τῆς ὁδοῦ

ἀπιόντας ποιεῖν δεῖ τὰ δεδογμένα. καὶ ὅστις τε ὑμῶν τοὺς οἰκείους ἐπιθυμῆ ἰδεῖν, μεμνήσθω ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς εἶναι· οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἄλλως τούτου τυχεῖν· ὅστις τε ζῆν ἐπιθυμῆ, πειράσθω νικᾶν· τῶν μὲν γὰρ νικῶντων τὸ καίνειν, τῶν δὲ **|(pass) be weaker, be over-  
come; (active) defeat** ἢ ἐστί· καὶ εἴ τις δὲ χρημάτων ἐπιθυμῆ, κρατεῖν πειράσθω· τῶν γὰρ νικῶντων ἐστὶ καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν σῆζειν καὶ τὰ τῶν **|(pass) be weaker, be over-  
come; (active) defeat**

### 3.3

Τούτων λεχθέντων ἀνέστησαν καὶ ἀπελθόντες **burn down** ἡ ἀμάξας καὶ τὰς σκηνάς, τῶν δὲ περιττῶν ὅτου μὲν δέοιτό τις μετεδίδουσαν ἀλλήλοις, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα εἰς τὸ πῦρ ἐρρίπτουν. ταῦτα ποιήσαντες ἠριστοποιοῦντο. ἀριστοποιουμένων δὲ αὐτῶν ἔρχεται Μιθραδάτης σὺν ἱππεῦσιν ὡς τριάκοντα, καὶ καλεσάμενος τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἰς ἐπήκοον λέγει ὧδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, καὶ Κύρω πιστὸς ἦν, ὡς ὑμεῖς **ἀπιστέω?: disbelieve ; ἢ ἐφίστημι?: stand ready, take a stand ; ἢ ἐπίσταμαι?: know** δ' εἰμὶ σὺν πολλῷ φόβῳ **ferry** εἰ σὺν ὀρήγῃ ὑμᾶς σωτήριόν τι **across** βουλευομένους, ἔλθοιμι ἂν πρὸς ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς θεράποντας πάντας ἔχων. λέξατε σὺν πρὸς με τί ἐν νῶ ἔχετε ὡς φίλον τε καὶ εὔνου καὶ βουλόμενον κοινῇ σὺν ὑμῖν τὸν στόλον ποιεῖσθαι. βουλευομένοις τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξεν ἀποκρίνασθαι τάδε· καὶ ἔλεγε Χειρίσοφος· Ἡμῖν δοκεῖ, εἰ μὲν τις ἐὰν ἡμᾶς ἀπιέναι οὔκαδε, διαπορεύεσθαι τὴν χώραν ὡς ἂν δυνάμεθα ἀσινέστατα· ἦν δὲ τις ἡμᾶς τῆς ὁδοῦ

carry out what we have decreed. If any of you has set his heart on seeing his friends again, let him remember to prove himself a man; there is no other way to achieve his heart's wish. Or is mere living an object with any of you, strive to conquer; if to slay is the privilege of victory, to die is the doom of the defeated. Or perhaps to gain money and wealth is your ambition, strive again for mastery; have not conquerors the double gain of keeping what is their own, whilst they seize the possessions of the vanquished?"

### 3.3

The speaking was ended; they got up and retired; then they burnt the wagons and the tents, and after sharing with one another what each needed out of their various superfluities, they threw the remnant into the fire. Having done that, they proceeded to make their breakfasts. While they were breakfasting, Mithridates came with about thirty horsemen, and summoning the generals within earshot, he thus addressed them: "Men of Hellas, I have been faithful to Cyrus, as you know well, and to-day I am your well-wisher; indeed, I am here spending my days in great fear: if then I could see any salutary course in prospect, I should be disposed to join you with all my retainers. Please inform me, then, as to what you propose, regarding me as your friend and well-wisher, anxious only to pursue his march in your company." The generals held council, and resolved to give the following answer, Cheirisophus acting as spokesman: "We have resolved to make our way through the country, inflicting the least possible damage, provided we are allowed a free passage homewards; but if any one tries to hinder us, he will have to fight it out with us, and we shall bring all the force in our power to bear." Thereat Mithridates set himself to prove to them

*vocabulary*

**ἀείδω** sing; also ἀοιδιάω  
**ἀέκων** unwilling  
**ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at  
**ἄκων** (3) javelin ~acme  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**διακόσιοι** two hundred  
**διαφθείρω** destroy; pf.: to be beside oneself  
**διδάσκω** teach ~didactic  
**διώκω** chase  
**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω, ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἔάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**εἰκός οἰκότος** (n, 3) likely  
**εἴκοσι** twenty  
**εἶσω** into; also ἔσω  
**ἐλαφρός** nimble; light ~elevator  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἐξαπίνης** suddenly  
**ἐξικνέομαι** arrive at (ικνέομαι)  
**εὖζωνος** well-girded  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also ἵππιοχάρμης  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake

**κράτιστος** best  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὄχλος** mob, crowd  
**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (πούς)  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also *πειρητίζω*  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πίστις** -εως (f) faith; treaty, proof, credit  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also *πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω*  
**πορεύω** carry  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**σώζω** save  
**τετρακόσιοι** 400  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at  
**τοξότης** (m, 1) archer  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also *ἐντυγχάνω*  
**φιλός** naked, bare ~epsilon

ἀποκωλύη, διαπολεμείν τούτω ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα κράτιστα. ἐκ τούτου ἐπειρᾶτο Μιθραδάτης διδάσκειν ὡς ἄπορον εἶη βασιλέως ἄκοντος σωθῆναι. ἔνθα δὴ ἐγγνώσκετο ὅτι ὑπόπεμπτος εἶη· καὶ γὰρ τῶν Τισσαφέρους τις οἰκείων παρηκολουθήκει πίστεως ἔνεκα. καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἐδόκει τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βέλτιον εἶναι δόγμα ποιήσασθαι τὸν πόλεμον ἀκήρυκτον εἶναι ἔστ' ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ εἶεν· διέφθειρον γὰρ προσιώντες τοὺς στρατιώτας, καὶ ἓνα γε λοχαγὸν διέφθειραν Νίκαρχον Ἀρκάδα, καὶ ᾤχετο ἀπιὼν νυκτὸς σὺν ἀνθρώποις ὡς εἴκοσι.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀριστήσαντες καὶ διαβάντες τὸν Ζαπάταν ποταμὸν ἐπορεύοντο τεταγμένοι τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ ἔχοντες. οὐ πολὺ δὲ προεληλυθότων αὐτῶν ἐπιφαίνεται πάλιν ὁ Μιθραδάτης, ἰππέας ἔχων ὡς διακοσίους καὶ τοξότας καὶ σφενδονήτας εἰς τετρακοσίους μάλα ἐλαφροὺς καὶ εὐζώνους. καὶ προσῆει μὲν ὡς φίλος ὢν πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο, ἐξαπίνης οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν ἐτόξευον καὶ ἰππεῖς καὶ πεζοί, οἱ δ' ἐσφενδόνων καὶ ἐτίρωσκον. οἱ δὲ ὀπισθοφύλακες τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔπασχον μὲν κακῶς, ἀντεποιοῦν δ' οὐδέν· οἱ τε γὰρ Κρήτες βραχύτερα τῶν Περσῶν ἐτόξευον καὶ ἅμα ψιλοὶ ὄντες εἴσω τῶν ὀπλων κατεκέκλειντο, οἱ δὲ ἀκοντιστὰὶ βραχύτερα ἠκόντιζον ἢ ὡς ἐξικνεῖσθαι τῶν σφενδονητῶν. ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶντι ἐδόκει διωκτέον εἶναι· καὶ ἐδίωκον τῶν ὀπλιτῶν καὶ τῶν πελταστῶν οἱ ἔτυχον σὺν αὐτῷ ὀπισθοφυλακοῦντες· διώκοντες δὲ οὐδένα κατελάμβανον τῶν

ἀποκωλύη, διαπολεμεῖν τούτω ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα κράτιστα. ἐκ τούτου ἐπειράτο Μιθραδάτης διδάσκειν ὡς ἄπορον εἶη βασιλέως ἄκοντος σωθῆναι. ἔνθα δὴ ἐγινώσκετο ὅτι ὑπόπεμπτος εἶη· καὶ γὰρ τῶν Τισσαφέρνους τις οἰκείων παρηκολουθήκει πίστεως ἔνεκα. καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἐδόκει τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βέλτιον εἶναι δόγμα ποιήσασθαι τὸν πόλεμον ἀκήρυκτον εἶναι ἔστ' ἐν τῇ πολεμῖα εἶεν· διέφθειρον γὰρ προσιόντες τοὺς στρατιώτας, καὶ ἕνα γε λοχαγὸν διέφθειραν Νίκαρχον Ἀρκάδα, καὶ ἄρχετο ἀπιῶν νυκτὸς σὺν ἀνθρώποις ὡς εἴκοσι.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀριστήσαντες καὶ |pass over, cross<sup>77</sup> ἀπάταν ποταμὸν ἐπορεύοντο τεταγμένοι τὰ |beast of burden ἔν ὄχλον ἐν μέσφῃ ἔχοντες. οὐ πολὺ δὲ προεληλυθότων αὐτῶν ἐπιφαίνεται πάλιν ὁ Μιθραδάτης, ἰπέεας ἔχων ὡς διακοσίους καὶ |archer καὶ σφενδονήτας εἰς |400 μάλα |nimble; καὶ |well-girded καὶ |light προσήει μὲν ὡς φίλος ὢν πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο, |suddenly ἢ μὲν αὐτῶν |shoot an arrow at ᾧ; καὶ πεζοί, οἱ δ' ἐσφενδόνων καὶ |wound, οἱ δὲ ὀπισθοφύλακες τῶν |bring to Ἑλλήνων ἔπασχον μὲν κ|grief, ἀντεποιοῦν δ' οὐδέν· οἳ τε γὰρ Κρήτες βραχύτερα τῶν Περσῶν |shoot an arrow at |naked, bare ἕσω τῶν ὄπλων κατεκέκλειντο, οἱ δὲ |spearman βραχύτερα ἠκόντιζον ἢ ὡς |arrive at τῶν σφενδονητῶν. ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶντι ἐδόκει διωκτέον εἶναι· καὶ ἐδίωκον τῶν ὀπλιτῶν καὶ τῶν |light troops οἳ ἔτυχον σὺν αὐτῷ ὀπισθοφυλακοῦντες· διώκοντες δὲ οὐδένα κατελάμβανον τῶν

that their deliverance, except with the king's good pleasure, was hopeless. Then the meaning of his mission was plain. He was an agent in disguise; in fact, a relation of Tissaphernes was in attendance to keep a check on his loyalty. After that, the generals resolved that it would be better to proclaim open war, without truce or herald, as long as they were in the enemy's country; for they used to come and corrupt the soldiers, and they were even successful with one officer—Nicarchus, an Arcadian, who went off in the night with about twenty men.

After this, they breakfasted and crossed the river Zapatas, marching in regular order, with the beasts and mob of the army in the middle. They had not advanced far on their route when Mithridates made his appearance again, with about a couple of hundred horsemen at his back, and bowmen and slingers twice as many, as nimble fellows as a man might hope to see. He approached the Hellenes as if he were friendly; but when they had got fairly to close quarters, all of a sudden some of them, whether mounted or on foot, began shooting with their bows and arrows, and another set with slings, wounding the men. The rearguard of the Hellenes suffered for a while severely without being able to retaliate, for the Cretans had a shorter range than the Persians, and at the same time, being light-armed troops, they lay cooped up within the ranks of the heavy infantry, while the javelin men again did not shoot far enough to reach the enemy's slingers. This being so, Xenophon thought there was nothing for it but to charge, and charge they did; some of the heavy and light infantry, who were guarding the rear, with him; but for all their charging they did not catch a single man.

The dearth of cavalry



*vocabulary*

**αἰτιάομαι** blame  
**ἀκέομαι** heal, fix  
**ἄλθομαι** become whole, sound  
**ἀναχωρέω** return, retreat  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βλάπτω** break, make fail  
**δείλη** afternoon ~diem  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**διώκω** chase  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἔδω** eat ~eat  
**εἰκός** οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
**εἴκοσι** twenty  
**ἐξικνέομαι** arrive at (ικνέομαι)  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεὶ  
**ἔργω** bound, fend off; do; also  
 ἐργαθεῖν  
**ἥμερος** domesticated  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἵππιοχάρμης  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake  
**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)

there is a danger that  
**κώμη** village  
**ὄλος** complete, generally, actually  
**ὀπόσος** as/how many/great  
**ὀρθός** upright ~orthogonal  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (πούς)  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**πλέω** full; also πλεῖος, πλέως  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
 masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters; also σταδίη  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**τιτρώσκω** wound, bring to grief  
 ~trauma; also τρώω  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χάρις** -τος (f) grace ~eucharist  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

πολεμίῳν. οὔτε γὰρ ἰππεῖς ἦσαν τοῖς Ἑλλησιν οὔτε οἱ πεζοὶ τοὺς πεζοὺς ἐκ πολλοῦ φεύγοντας ἐδύναντο καταλαμβάνειν ἐν ὀλίγῳ χωρίῳ· πολὺ γὰρ οὐχ οἶόν τε ἦν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄλλου στρατεύματος διώκειν· οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἰππεῖς καὶ φεύγοντες ἅμα ἐτίτρωσκον εἰς τοῦπισθεν τοξεύοντες ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων, ὅπόσον δὲ διώξειαν οἱ Ἑλληνες, τοσοῦτον πάλιν ἐπαναχωρεῖν μαχομένους ἔδει. ὥστε τῆς ἡμέρας ὅλης διῆλθον οὐ πλέον πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι σταδίων, ἀλλὰ δεύλης ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς κόμας. ἔνθα δὴ πάλιν ἀθυμία ἦν. καὶ Χειρίσοφος καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν στρατηγῶν Ξενοφῶντα ἠτιῶντο ὅτι ἐδίωκεν ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος καὶ αὐτός τε ἐκινδύνευε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδύνατο βλάπτειν. ἀκούσας δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεγεν ὅτι ὀρθῶς αἰτιῶντο καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ ἔργον αὐτοῖς μαρτυροίη. ἀλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη, ἠναγκάσθην διώκειν, ἐπειδὴ ἐώρων ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ μένειν κακῶς μὲν πάσχοντας, ἀντιποιεῖν δὲ οὐ δυναμένους. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐδιώκομεν, ἀληθῆ, ἔφη, ὑμεῖς λέγετε· κακῶς μὲν γὰρ ποιεῖν οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδυνάμεθα τοὺς πολεμίους, ἀνεχωροῦμεν δὲ παγχαλέπως. τοῖς οὖν θεοῖς χάρις ὅτι οὐ σὺν πολλῇ ῥώμῃ ἀλλὰ σὺν ὀλίγοις ἦλθον, ὥστε βλάψαι μὲν μὴ μεγάλα, δηλῶσαι δὲ ὦν δεόμεθα. νῦν γὰρ οἱ πολέμοι τοξεύουσι καὶ σφενδονῶσιν ὅσον οὔτε οἱ Κρήτες ἀντιτοξεύειν δύνανται οὔτε οἱ ἐκ χειρὸς βάλλοντες ἐξικνεῖσθαι· ὅταν δὲ αὐτοὺς διώκωμεν, πολὺ μὲν οὐχ οἶόν τε χωρίον ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος διώκειν, ἐν ὀλίγῳ δὲ οὐδ'

πολεμίων. οὔτε γὰρ ἵππεις ἦσαν τοῖς Ἑλλησιν οὔτε οἱ πεζοὶ τοὺς πεζοὺς ἐκ πολλοῦ φεύγοντας ἐδύναντο καταλαμβάνειν ἐν ὀλίγῳ χωρίῳ· πολὺ γὰρ οὐχ οἷόν τε ἦν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄλλου στρατεύματος διώκειν· οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἵππεις καὶ φεύγοντες ἅμα **wound, bring to**  
 εἰς τοῦπισθεν **shoot an arrow at** ἕν ἵππων, **as/how many great** οἱ  
 Ἑλληνες, τοσοῦτον πάλιν ἐπαναχωρεῖν μαχομένους ἔδει. ὥστε τῆς  
 ἡμέρας ὅλης διήλθον οὐ πλέον πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι **στάδιον?: 200 afternoon meters (pl)**  
 ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς **village** ἔνθα δὲ πάλιν ἀθυμῶντες **also. masc) κείσοφος or στάδιος?: (adj) standing upright, firm;**  
 καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν στρατηγῶν Ξενοφῶντι **blame** διώκειν ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος καὶ αὐτὸς τε ἐκινδύνευε καὶ **(pl noun) 200 meters** οὐδὲν  
 μᾶλλον **enter, put on, strip off** τεῖν. **ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix ; or γεν ὅτι ὀρθῶς ἀκούω?: hear, listen**  
**blame** καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ ἔργον αὐτοῖς μαρτυροῖη. ἀλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη, ἠναγκάσθην διώκειν, **after; because** ὕρων ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ μένειν κακῶς μὲν  
 πάσχοντας, ἀντιποιεῖν δὲ οὐ δυναμένους. **after; because** ἔδιώκομεν, ἀληθῆ, ἔφη, ὑμεῖς λέγετε· κακῶς μὲν γὰρ ποιεῖν οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδυνάμεθα  
 τοὺς πολεμίους, ἀνεχωροῦμεν δὲ παγχαλέπως. τοῖς οὖν θεοῖς χάρις ὅτι οὐ σὺν πολλῇ ράμῃ ἀλλὰ σὺν ὀλίγοις **ἄλθομαι?: become, whole ; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come**  
 μὴ μεγάλα, δηλώσαι δὲ ὧν δεόμεθα. νῦν γὰρ οἱ πολέμοι **shoot an arrow at**  
 καὶ σφενδονῶσιν ὅσον οὔτε οἱ Κρήτες ἀντιτοξεύειν δύνανται οὔτε οἱ ἐκ χειρὸς βάλλοντες **arrive at** ὅταν δὲ αὐτοὺς διώκωμεν, πολὺ μὲν οὐχ οἷόν τε χωρίον ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος διώκειν, ἐν ὀλίγῳ δὲ οὐδ'

told against the Hellenes; nor were their infantry able to overhaul the enemy's infantry, with the long start they had, and considering the shortness of the race, for it was out of the question to pursue them far from the main body of the army. On the other hand, the Asiatic cavalry, even while fleeing, poured volleys of arrows behind their backs, and wounded the pursuers; while the Hellenes must fall back fighting every step of the way they had measured in the pursuit; so that by the end of that day they had not gone much more than three miles; but in the late afternoon they reached the villages.

Here there was a return of the old despondency. Cheirisophus and the eldest of the generals blamed Xenophon for leaving the main body to give chase and endangering himself thereby, while he could not damage the enemy one whit the more. Xenophon admitted that they were right in blaming him: no better proof of that was wanted than the result. "The fact is," he added, "I was driven to pursue; it was too trying to look on and see our men suffer so badly, and be unable to retaliate. However, when we did charge, there is no denying the truth of what you say; we were not a whit more able to injure the enemy, while we had considerable difficulty in beating a retreat ourselves. Thank heaven they did not come upon us in any great force, but were only a handful of men; so that the injury they did us was not large, as it might have been; and at least it has served to show us what we need. At present the enemy shoot and sling beyond our range, so that our Cretan archers are no match for them; our hand-throwers cannot reach as far; and when we pursue, it is not possible to push the pursuit to any great distance from the main body, and within the

*vocabulary*

**ἀργύριον** small coin  
**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic  
**βλάπτω** break, make fail  
**βραχύς** low, short  
**δαίω** light; divide  
**δάω** learn ~didactic  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**διακόσιοι** two hundred  
**διώκω** chase  
**ἐξικνέομαι** arrive at (ικνέομαι)  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
**ἵππιοχάρμης**  
**ἴσος** equal; also ἔ΄ση

**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake  
**λίθεος** made of stone  
**λίθος** (m/f) stone ~monolith; also  
**λιθάς**  
**πάομαι** experience, suffer ~pathos; also πάσχω  
**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (πούς)  
**πεντήκοντα** fifty  
**πλέκω** braid  
**πορεύω** carry  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**σφενδόνη** sling  
**τελέω** fulfill; pf pass: be feasible  
**τόξον** bow ~toxic  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὕστεραῖος** the next; later  
**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

εἰ ταχὺς εἶη πεζὸς πεζὸν ἂν διώκων καταλαμβάνοι ἐκ τόξου ρύματος.  
 ἡμεῖς οὖν εἰ μέλλοιμεν τούτους εἶργειν ὥστε μὴ δύνασθαι βλέπτειν  
 ἡμᾶς πορευομένους, σφενδονητῶν τὴν ταχίστην δεῖ καὶ ἰππέων.  
 ἀκούω δ' εἶναι ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι ἡμῶν Ῥοδίους, ὧν τοὺς πολλοὺς  
 φασιν ἐπίστασθαι σφενδονᾶν, καὶ τὸ βέλος αὐτῶν καὶ διπλάσιον  
 φέρεσθαι τῶν Περσικῶν σφενδονῶν. ἐκεῖνοι γὰρ διὰ τὸ χειροπληθέσι  
 τοῖς λίθοις σφενδονᾶν ἐπὶ βραχὺ ἐξικνούνται, οἱ δὲ Ῥόδιοι καὶ ταῖς  
 μολυβδίσις ἐπίστανται χρῆσθαι. ἦν οὖν αὐτῶν ἐπισκεψώμεθα τίνες  
 πέπανται σφενδόνας, καὶ τούτῳ μὲν δώμεν αὐτῶν ἀργύριον, τῷ δὲ  
 ἄλλας πλέκειν ἐθέλοντι ἄλλο ἀργύριον τελῶμεν, καὶ τῷ σφενδονᾶν  
 ἐν τῷ τεταγμένῳ ἐθέλοντι ἄλλην τινα ἀτέλειαν εὐρίσκωμεν, ἴσως  
 τινὲς φανοῦνται ἱκανοὶ ἡμᾶς ὠφελεῖν. ὁρῶ δὲ ἵππους ὄντας  
 ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι, τοὺς μὲν τινὰς παρ' ἐμοί, τοὺς δὲ τῶν  
 Κλεάρχου καταλελειμμένους, πολλοὺς δὲ καὶ ἄλλους αἰχμαλώτους  
 σκευοφοροῦντας. ἂν οὖν τούτους πάντας ἐκλέξαντες σκευοφόρα μὲν  
 ἀντιδώμεν, τοὺς δὲ ἵππους εἰς ἰππέας κατασκευάσωμεν, ἴσως καὶ  
 οὗτοί τι τοὺς φεύγοντας ἀνιάσουσιν. ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα. καὶ ταύτης  
 τῆς νυκτὸς σφενδονῆται μὲν εἰς διακοσίους ἐγένοντο, ἵπποι δὲ καὶ  
 ἰππεῖς ἐδοκμάσθησαν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ εἰς πενήκοντα, καὶ σπολάδες  
 καὶ θώρακες αὐτοῖς ἐπορίσθησαν, καὶ ἵππαρχος ἐπεστάθη Λύκιος ὁ  
 Πολυστράτου Ἀθηναῖος.

εἰ ταχὺς εἴη πεζὸς πεζὸν ἂν διώκων καταλαμβάνοι ἐκ τόξου  
 ῥύματος. ἡμεῖς οὖν εἰ μέλλοιμεν τούτους εἶργειν ὥστε μὴ δύνασθαι  
 βλέπτειν ἡμᾶς πορευομένους, σφενδονητῶν τὴν ταχίστην δεῖ καὶ  
 ἱππέων. ἀκούω δ' εἶναι ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι ἡμῶν Ῥοδίους, ὧν τοὺς  
 πολλοὺς φασιν ἐπίστασθαι σφενδονᾶν, καὶ τὸ βέλος αὐτῶν καὶ  
 διπλάσιον φέρεσθαι τῶν Περσικῶν |sling

χειροπληθέσι τοῖς |λίθος?: 'made of stone' ; or |arrive at  
 |λίθος?: stone οἱ δὲ  
 Ῥόδιοι καὶ ταῖς μολυβδίσι ἐπίστανται χρῆσθαι. ἦν οὖν αὐτῶν

ἐπισκεψώμεθα τίνες |suffer |sling , καὶ τούτῳ μὲν |δαίω?: light;  
 αὐτῶν ἀργύριον, τῷ δὲ ἄλλας |braid ἐθέλοντι ἄλλο ἀρ |δαίω?: or δάω?:  
 τελῶμεν, καὶ τῷ σφενδονᾶν ἐν τῷ τεταγμένῳ ἐθέλοντι ἄλλῃ |learn; or δέω?:  
 ἀτέλειαν εὐρίσκωμεν, ἴσως τινὲς φανοῦνται ἱκανοὶ ἡμᾶς ὡς |should; bind;  
 ὄρω δὲ ἵππους ὄντας ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι, τοὺς μὲν τινὰς παρ' |need; fail ; or  
 ἐμοί, τοὺς δὲ τῶν Κλεάρχου καταλελειμμένους, πολλοὺς δὲ καὶ  
 ἄλλους αἰχμαλώτους σκευοφοροῦντας. ἂν οὖν τούτους πάντας  
 ἐκλέξαντες σκευοφόρα μὲν ἀντιδῶμεν, τοὺς δὲ ἵππους εἰς ἱππέας  
 κατασκευάσωμεν, ἴσως καὶ οὗτοί τι τοὺς φεύγοντας ἀνιάσουσιν.  
 ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα. καὶ ταύτης τῆς νυκτὸς σφενδονῆται μὲν εἰς  
 διακοσίους ἐγένοντο, ἵπποι δὲ καὶ ἱππεῖς ἐδοκιμάσθησαν τῇ |the next; later

εἰς πεντήκοντα, καὶ σπολάδες καὶ θώρακες αὐτοῖς ἐπορίσθησαν,  
 καὶ ἵππαρχος ἐπεστάθη Λύκιος ὁ Πολυστράτου Ἀθηναῖος.

short distance no foot-soldier, however fleet of foot, could overtake another foot-soldier who has a bow-shot the start of him. If, then, we are to exclude them from all possibility of injuring us as we march, we must get slingers as soon as possible and cavalry. I am told there are in the army some Rhodians, most of whom, they say, know how to sling, and their missile will reach even twice as far as the Persian slings (which, on account of their being loaded with stones as big as one's fist, have a comparatively short range; but the Rhodians are skilled in the use of leaden bullets). Suppose, then, we investigate and find out first of all who among them possess slings, and for these slings offer the owner the money value; and to another, who will plait some more, hand over the money price; and for a third, who will volunteer to be enrolled as a slinger, invent some other sort of privilege, I think we shall soon find people to come forward capable of helping us. There are horses in the army I know; some few with myself, others belonging to Clearchus's stud, and a good many others captured from the enemy, used for carrying baggage. Let us take the pick of these, supplying their places by ordinary baggage animals, and equipping the horses for cavalry. I should not wonder if our troopers gave some annoyance to these fugitives."

These proposals were carried, and that night two hundred slingers were enrolled, and next day as many as fifty horse and horsemen passed muster as duly qualified; buff jackets and cuirasses were provided for them, and a commandant of cavalry appointed to command—Lycius, the son of Polystratus, by name, an Athenian.



*vocabulary*

**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**διώκω** chase  
**ἔδω** eat ~eat  
**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also  
 ἐλαστρέω  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
 ἰθύς  
**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow  
**ζῶς** alive ~zoo; also ζῶς  
**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart; also θαρρέω  
**θέω** run, run for  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἵππιοχάρμης  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake

**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus  
**ὁμόσε** to the same spot  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**πέζα** end of a chariot pole  
**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (πούς)  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**σάλπιγξ** -γος (f/m) trumpet  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
 masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters; also σταδίη  
**σφενδόνη** sling  
**τετρακισχίλιοι** 4000  
**τοξότης** (m, 1) archer  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**ὑπίσχομαι** promise, agree to do; also  
 ὑπισχνέομαι  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**χαράδρα** torrent, gorge  
**χίλιοι** thousand ~kilo-

## 3.4

Μείναντες δὲ ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν τῇ ἄλλῃ ἐπορεύοντο πρωαίτερον ἀναστάντες· χαράδραν γὰρ ἔδει αὐτοὺς διαβῆναι ἐφ' ἣ ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ ἐπιθοῖντο αὐτοῖς διαβαίνουσιν οἱ πολέμοι. διαβεβηκόσι δὲ αὐτοῖς πάλιν φαίνεται Μιθραδάτης, ἔχων ἰππέας χιλίους, τοξότας δὲ καὶ σφενδονήτας εἰς τετρακισχιλίους· τοσοῦτους γὰρ ἤτησε Τισσαφέρην, καὶ ἔλαβεν ὑποσχόμενος, ἂν τούτους λάβῃ, παραδώσει αὐτῷ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καταφρονήσας, ὅτι ἐν τῇ πρόσθεν προσβολῇ ὀλίγους ἔχων ἔπαθε μὲν οὐδέν, πολλὰ δὲ κακὰ ἐνόμιζε ποιῆσαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες διαβεβηκότες ἀπέιχον τῆς χαράδρας ὅσον ὀκτῶ σταδίου, διέβαινε καὶ ὁ Μιθραδάτης ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν. παρήγγελο δὲ τῶν τε πελταστῶν οὓς ἔδει διώκειν καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, καὶ τοῖς ἰππεύσιν εἴρητο θαρροῦσι διώκειν ὡς ἐφευγομένης ἰκανῆς δυνάμεως. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Μιθραδάτης κατειλήφει, καὶ ἤδη σφενδόναι καὶ τοξεύματα ἐξικνοῦντο, ἐσήμηνε τοῖς Ἕλλησι τῇ σάλπιγγι, καὶ εὐθὺς ἔθεον ὁμόσε οἷς εἴρητο καὶ οἱ ἰππεῖς ἤλαυνον· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλ' ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὴν χαράδραν. ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ διώξει τοῖς βαρβάροις τῶν τε πεζῶν ἀπέθανον πολλοὶ καὶ τῶν ἰππέων ἐν τῇ χαράδρᾳ ζωοὶ ἐλήφθησαν εἰς ὀκτωκαίδεκα. τοὺς δὲ ἀποθανόντας αὐτοκέλευστοι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἠκίσαντο, ὡς ὅτι φοβερῶτατον τοῖς πολεμίοις εἶη ὄραν. καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμοι οὕτω πράξαντες ἀπῆλθον, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες

3.4

Μείναντες δὲ ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν τῇ ἄλλῃ ἐπορεύοντο πρωαίτερον ἀναστάντες· torrent, γὰρ ἔδει αὐτοὺς |pass over, cross| ὀβοῦντο μὴ gorge ἐπιθοῖντο αὐτοῖς |pass over, cross| τολέμιοι. |pass over, cross| αὐτοῖς πάλιν φαίνεται Μιθραδάτης, ἔχων ἰππέας χιλίους, |archer| δὲ καὶ σφενδονήτας εἰς 4000 τοσοῦτους γὰρ ἤτησε Τισσαφέρην, καὶ ἔλαβεν |promise, agree to do| ἂν τούτους λάβῃ, παραδώσει αὐτῷ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καταφρονήσας, ὅτι ἐν τῇ πρόσθεν προσβολῇ ὀλίγους ἔχων ἔπαθε μὲν οὐδέν, πολλὰ δὲ κακὰ ἐνόμιζε ποιῆσαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες |pass over, cross| εἶχον τῆς torrent, ὅσον ὀκτῶ |στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also masc)| gorge |pass over, cross| Ἰθραδάτης ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν. παρήγγελε τὸν ὄρθον ὀρθῶς ὅτι ὀρθῶς: (adj) standing upright, firm: (pl noun) 200 meters τε |light troops| οὓς ἔδει διώκειν καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, καὶ τοῖς εἰρητικοῖς εἰρητικοῖς διώκειν ὡς ἐφευμένης ἰκανῆς δυνάμεως. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Μιθραδάτης κατελήφει, καὶ ἤδη |sling| καὶ τοξεύματα ἐξικνούοντο, ἐσήμηνε τοῖς Ἕλλησι τῇ |trumpet| καὶ εὐθύς ἔθειν |to the same spot| καὶ οἱ ἰππεῖς ἤλαυνον· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλ' ἐφευγον ἐπὶ τὴν torrent, ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ διώξει τοῖς βαρβάροις τῶν gorge τε |πέζα?: ῥόλη end `; `or ἢ τῶν ἰππέων ἐν τῇ torrent, ζωὸν πεζός?: on foot; footsoldier| gorge ἐλήφθησαν εἰς ὀκτωκαίδεκα. τοὺς δὲ ἀποθανόντας αὐτοκέλευστοι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἠκίσαντο, ὡς ὅτι φοβερῶτατον τοῖς πολεμίοις εἶη ὄραν. καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμοι οὕτω πράξαντες ἀπῆλθον, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες

### 3.4

That day they remained inactive, but the next they rose earlier than usual, and set out betimes, for they had a ravine to cross, where they feared the enemy might attack them in the act of crossing. When they were across, Mithridates appeared again with one thousand horse, and archers and slingers to the number of four thousand. This whole body he had got by request from Tissaphernes, and in return he undertook to deliver up the Hellenes to Tissaphernes. He had grown contemptuous since his late attack, when, with so small a detachment, he had done, as he thought, a good deal of mischief, without the slightest loss to himself.

When the Hellenes were not only right across, but had got about a mile from the ravine, Mithridates also crossed with his forces. An order had been passed down the lines, what light infantry and what heavy infantry were to take part in the pursuit; and the cavalry were instructed to follow up the pursuit with confidence, as a considerable support was in their rear. So, when Mithridates had come up with them, and they were well within arrow and sling shot, the bugle sounded the signal to the Hellenes; and immediately the detachment under orders rushed to close quarters, and the cavalry charged. There the enemy preferred not to wait, but fled towards the ravine. In this pursuit the Asiatics lost several of their infantry killed, and of their cavalry as many as eighteen were taken prisoners in the ravine. As to those who were slain the Hellenes, acting upon impulse, mutilated their bodies, by way of impressing their enemy with as frightful an image as possible.

So fared the foe and so fell back; but the Hellenes, continuing their march in

*vocabulary*

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι,  
 ὄλλυμι  
**ἀποφεύγω** avoid, escape, go free  
**ἀρχήν** (adv) originally  
**ἀσφαλής** going ahead, standing firm  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**βία** strength, force  
**βροντή** thunder ~brontosaurus  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**εἰκός οἰκότος** (n, 3) likely  
**εἴκοσι** twenty  
**ἑκατόν** hundred  
**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over  
**ἐνοικέω** dwell in  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἕξ** six ~hexagon  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**εὖρος** (n, 3) width; (caps) the east  
 wind  
**ἥλιος** sun; also ἡέλιος  
**ἡμερος** domesticated

**καταπλήσσω** be struck with dismay  
**καταφεύγω** resort to, flee to, appeal to  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**κώμη** village  
**λίθεος** made of stone  
**λίθος** (m/f) stone ~monolith; also  
 λιθάς  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**νεφέλη** cloud, fog ~nebula  
**ξεστός** polished, wrought  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἰκοδομέω** build, build a house  
**παλαιός** old  
**παρασάγγης** (m, 1) Persian unit, ca. 5  
 km  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**πεντήκοντα** fifty  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**πορεύω** carry  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**τείχος** -υς (n, 3) outdoor wall; also  
 τειχίον  
**τρόπος** (m/n) turn; manner, kind,  
 fashion  
**ὑπείμι** be under

ἀσφαλῶς πορευόμενοι τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν  
 Τίγρητα ποταμόν. ἐνταῦθα πόλις ἦν ἐρήμη μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ  
 ἦν Δάρισα· ᾧκουν δ' αὐτὴν τὸ παλαιὸν Μῆδοι. τοῦ δὲ τείχους αὐτῆς  
 ἦν τὸ εὖρος πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι πόδες, ὕψος δ' ἑκατόν· τοῦ δὲ κύκλου ἡ  
 περίοδος δύο παρασάγγαι· ᾧκοδόμητο δὲ πλίνθοις κεραμεαῖς· κρηπὶς  
 δ' ὑπὲρ λιθίνη τὸ ὕψος εἴκοσι ποδῶν. ταύτην βασιλεὺς Περσῶν  
 ὅτε παρὰ Μήδων τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐλάμβανον Πέρσαι πολιορκῶν οὐδενὶ  
 τρόπῳ ἐδύνατο ἐλεῖν· ἥλιον δὲ νεφέλη προκαλύψασα ἠφάνισε μέχρι  
 ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἄνθρωποι, καὶ οὕτως ἐάλω. παρὰ ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἦν  
 πυραμὶς λιθίνη, τὸ μὲν εὖρος ἐνὸς πλέθρου, τὸ δὲ ὕψος δύο πλέθρων.  
 ἐπὶ ταύτης πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἦσαν ἐκ τῶν πλησίον καμῶν  
 ἀποπεφευγότες. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας  
 ἐξ πρὸς τείχος ἔρημον μέγα πρὸς τῇ πόλει κείμενον· ὄνομα δὲ ἦν τῇ  
 πόλει Μέσπιλα· Μῆδοι δ' αὐτὴν ποτε ᾧκουν. ἦν δὲ ἡ μὲν κρηπὶς  
 λίθου ξεστοῦ κογχυλιάτου, τὸ εὖρος πεντήκοντα ποδῶν καὶ τὸ ὕψος  
 πεντήκοντα. ἐπὶ δὲ ταύτῃ ἐπωκοδόμητο πλίνθινον τείχος, τὸ μὲν  
 εὖρος πεντήκοντα ποδῶν, τὸ δὲ ὕψος ἑκατόν· τοῦ δὲ τείχους ἡ  
 περίοδος ἕξ παρασάγγαι. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Μήδεια γυνὴ βασιλέως  
 καταφυγεῖν ὅτε ἀπώλλυσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν ὑπὸ Περσῶν Μῆδοι. ταύτην  
 δὲ τὴν πόλιν πολιορκῶν ὁ Περσῶν βασιλεὺς οὐκ ἐδύνατο οὔτε χρόνῳ  
 ἐλεῖν οὔτε βίᾳ· Ζεὺς δὲ βροντῇ κατέπληξε τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας, καὶ οὕτως  
 ἐάλω.

ἀσφαλῶς πορευόμενοι τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν  
 Τύγρητα ποταμόν. ἐνταῦθα πόλις ἦν ἐρήμη μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ  
 ἦν Λάρισα· ὄκουν δ' αὐτὴν τὸ παλαιὸν Μῆδοι. τοῦ δὲ τείχους αὐτῆς  
 ἦν τὸ 

width; (caps)	ἑξήκοντα πόδες, ὕψος δ' ἑκατόν· τοῦ δὲ	circle,
the east wind		wheel

  
 ἡ περίοδος δύο 

Persian	ᾠκοδόμητο δὲ πλίνθοις κεραμεαῖς·
unit, ca. 5	

  
 κρηπὶς δ' 

be under	ἦν τὸ ὕψος ἑξήκοντα ποδῶν. ταύτην βασιλεὺς
----------	--

  
 Περσῶν ὅτε παρὰ Μήδων τὴν 

(adv) originally	Πέρσαι πολιορκῶν
------------------	------------------

  
 οὐδενὶ τρόπῳ 

enter, put on,	ἤλιον δὲ νεφέλη προκαλύψασα ἠφάνισε
strip off	

  
 μέχρι ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἄνθρωποι, καὶ οὕτως ἔαλω. παρὰ ταύτην  
 τὴν πόλιν ἦν πυραμὶς λιθίνη, τὸ μὲν 

width; (caps)	30 meters or	δὲ
(caps) the	its square	its square

  
 ὕψος δύο 

30 meters or	τὴν ταύτης πολλὰ	εἰς
its square	ἀνδρῶν ἦσαν ἐκ	τῶν πλησίον

village	avoid, es-	. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν
cottage; post	cape, go	

  
 πόλει κείμενοι 

Persian	free ἔξ πρὸς τείχος ἔρημον μέγα πρὸς τῇ
unit, ca. 5	

  
 πόλει κείμενοι 

km	νόμα δὲ ἦν τῇ πόλει Μέσπιλα· Μῆδοι δ' αὐτὴν
----	---

  
 ποτε ὄκουν. ἦν δὲ ἡ μὲν κρηπὶς 

λίθος	πολιτισμένος γυαλιάτου, τὸ
made	

  

width; (caps)	τα ποδῶν καὶ τὸ ὕψος	of πενήκοντα. ἐπὶ δὲ ταύτῃ
the east wind		stone

  
 ἐπ' ᾠκοδόμητο πλίνθινον τείχος, τὸ 

ἦν	width; (caps) τα ποδῶν,
λίθος	the east wind

  
 τὸ δὲ ὕψος ἑκατόν· τοῦ δὲ τείχους 

ἡ περίοδος ἔξ	Persian
	unit, ca. 5

  
 ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Μήδεια γυνὴ βασιλέως 

resort to, flee to,	κατάλλυσαν
apepal to	

  
 τὴν 

(adv) originally	ὦν Μῆδοι. ταύτην δὲ τὴν πόλιν πολιορκῶν
------------------	---

  
 ὁ Περσῶν βασιλεὺς οὐκ 

enter, put on,	χρόνῳ ἐλεῖν οὔτε βία·
strip off	

  
 Ζεὺς δὲ βροντῇ 

be struck	τοὺς	dwell in	. καὶ οὕτως ἔαλω.
with dis-			
may			

safety for the rest of that day, reached the river Tigris. Here they came upon a large deserted city, the name of which was Larissa: a place inhabited by the Medes in days of old; the breadth of its walls was twenty-five feet, and the height of them a hundred, and the circuit of the whole two parasangs. It was built of clay-bricks, supported on a stone basis twenty feet high. This city the king of the Persians besieged, what time the Persians strove to snatch their empire from the Medes, but he could in no wise take it; then a cloud hid the face of the sun and blotted out the light thereof, until the inhabitants were gone out of the city, and so it was taken. By the side of this city there was a stone pyramid in breadth a hundred feet, and in height two hundred feet; in it were many of the barbarians who had fled for refuge from the neighbouring villages.

From this place they marched one stage of six parasangs to a great deserted fortress (which lay over against the city), and the name of that city was Mespila. The Medes once dwelt in it. The basement was made of polished stone full of shells; fifty feet was the breadth of it, and fifty feet the height; and on this basement was reared a wall of brick, the breadth whereof was fifty feet and the height thereof four hundred; and the circuit of the wall was six parasangs. Hither, as the story goes, Medea, the king's wife, betook herself in flight what time the Medes lost their empire at the hands of the Persians. To this city also the king of the Persians laid siege, but could not take it either by length of days or strength of hand. But Zeus sent amazement on the inhabitants thereof, and so it was taken.

From this place they marched one stage— four parasangs. But, while still on this stage, Tissaphernes made his appearance. He



*vocabulary*

**ἄλθομαι** become whole, sound  
**ἄλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἄμαρτάνω** miss, fail, lose; sin; also  
 ἀφάμαρτάνω, ἤμβροτον, ἀπήμβροτον  
**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards,  
 out to sea  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀποχωρέω** go away from, retreat  
**βάββαρος** non-Greek  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic  
**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἤμερος** domesticated  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἵππιοχάρμης  
**καθίστημι** set down, land  
**κώμη** village  
**μακρός** long, tall

**μείων** less, smaller  
**νεῦρον** tendon ~neuro  
**ὄπισθεν** behind, hereafter; also ὄπιθεν  
**ὀπόσος** as/how many/great  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὀδός  
**οὐκέτι** no more  
**πάνυ** altogether, very  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**παρασάγγης** (m, 1) Persian unit, ca. 5  
 km  
**πορεύω** carry  
**ῥάδιος** easy; also ῥάιος  
**σίνομαι** rob, damage  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**σφενδόνη** sling  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τέσσαρες** (3) four  
**τολμάω** dare (τλάω)  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at  
**τόξον** bow ~toxic  
**τοξότης** (m, 1) archer

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας τέτταρας. εἰς τοῦτον δὲ τὸν σταθμὸν Τισσαφέρνης ἐπεφάνη, οὓς τε αὐτὸς ἰππέας ἦλθεν ἔχων καὶ τὴν Ὀρόντα δύναμιν τοῦ τὴν βασιλέως θυγατέρα ἔχοντος καὶ οὓς Κῦρος ἔχων ἀνέβη βαρβάρους καὶ οὓς ὁ βασιλέως ἀδελφὸς ἔχων βασιλεῖ ἐβοήθει, καὶ πρὸς τούτοις ὄσους βασιλεὺς ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ, ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα πάμπλου ἐφάνη. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένετο, τὰς μὲν τῶν τάξεων ὀπισθεν καταστήσας, τὰς δὲ εἰς τὰ πλάγια παραγαγὼν ἐμβαλεῖν μὲν οὐκ ἐτόλμησεν οὐδ' ἐβούλετο διακινδυνεύειν, σφενδονᾶν δὲ παρήγγειλε καὶ τοξεύειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ διαταχθέντες οἱ Ῥόδιοι ἐσφενδόνησαν καὶ οἱ Σκύθαι τοξόται ἐτόξευσαν καὶ οὐδεὶς ἡμάρτανεν ἀνδρός οὐδὲ γὰρ εἰ πάνυ προθυμείτο ράδιον ἦν, καὶ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης μάλα ταχέως ἔξω βελῶν ἀπεχώρει καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι τάξεις ἀπεχώρησαν. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύοντο, οἱ δ' εἶποντο· καὶ οὐκέτι εἰσίνοντο οἱ βάρβαροι τῇ τότε ἀκροβολίσει· μακρότερον γὰρ οἱ τε Ῥόδιοι τῶν Περσῶν ἐσφενδόνων καὶ τῶν τοξοτῶν· μεγάλα δὲ καὶ τόξα τὰ Περσικά ἐστιν· ὥστε χρήσιμα ἦν ὅποσα ἀλίσκοιτο τῶν τοξευμάτων τοῖς Κρησί, καὶ διετέλουν χρώμενοι τοῖς τῶν πολεμίων τοξεύμασι, καὶ ἐμελέτων τοξεύειν ἄνω ἰέντες μακράν. ἠύρίσκετο δὲ καὶ νεῦρα πολλὰ ἐν ταῖς κώμαις καὶ μόλυβδος, ὥστε χρῆσθαι εἰς τὰς σφενδόνας. καὶ ταύτη μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἐπεὶ κατεστρατοπεδεύοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες κώμαις ἐπιτυχόντες, ἀπῆλθον οἱ βάρβαροι μείον ἔχοντες τῇ ἀκροβολίσει·

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν |cottage; post |Persian τέτταρας.  
 εἰς τοῦτον δὲ τὸν |cottage; post ἀφέρνῃς |kmφάνη, οὓς τε αὐτὸς  
 ἰππέας |ἄλλομοί?: become whole ὄντα δύναμιν τοῦ τὴν βασιλέως  
 ; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come  
 θυγατέρα ἔχοντος καὶ οὓς Κῦρος ἔχων ἀνέβη βαρβάρους καὶ οὓς  
 ὁ βασιλέως ἀδελφὸς ἔχων βασιλεῖ ἐβοήθει, καὶ πρὸς τούτοις ὅσους  
 βασιλεὺς ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ, ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα πάμπλου ἐφάνη. ἐπεὶ  
 δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένετο, τὰς μὲν τῶν τάξεων ὀπισθεν καταστήσας, τὰς  
 δὲ εἰς τὰ πλάγια παραγαγὼν ἐμβαλεῖν μὲν οὐκ ἐτόλμησεν οὐδ'  
 ἐβούλετο διακινδυνεύειν, σφενδονᾶν δὲ παρήγγειλε καὶ |shoot an arrow at  
 δὲ διαταχθέντες οἱ Ῥόδιοι ἐσφενδόνησαν καὶ οἱ Σκύθαι |archer  
 ἐτόξευσαν καὶ οὐδεὶς ἡμάρτανεν ἀνδρὸς οὐδὲ γὰρ εἰ πάννυ προυθυμῆτο  
 ῥάδιον ἦν, καὶ ὁ Τισσαφέρνῃς μάλα ταχέως ἔξω βελῶν ἀπεχώρει  
 καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι τάξεις ἀπεχώρησαν. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας οἱ  
 μὲν ἐπορεύοντο, οἱ δ' εἶποντο· καὶ οὐκέτι |rob, damage Ἰάρβαροι  
 τῇ τότε ἀκροβολίσει· μακρότερον γὰρ οἱ τε Ῥόδιοι τῶν Περσῶν  
 ἐσφενδόνων καὶ τῶν |archer μεγάλα δὲ καὶ τόξα τὰ Περσικά ἐστίν·  
 ὥστε χρήσιμα ἦν |as/how many/great ἦν τοξευμάτων τοῖς Κρησί,  
 καὶ διετέλουν χρώμενοι τοῖς τῶν πολεμίων τοξεύμασι, καὶ ἐμελέτων  
 |shoot an|accomplish, pass, waste; ἵρίσκετο δὲ καὶ |tendon ὁλλὰ ἐν  
 |arrow at|upwards, out to sea  
 ταῖς |village καὶ μόλυβδος, ὥστε χρῆσθαι εἰς τὰς |sling καὶ  
 ταύτῃ μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἐπεὶ κατεστρατοπεδεύοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες |village  
 ἐπιτυχόντες, ἀπῆλθον οἱ βάρβαροι |less, ἄροντες τῇ ἀκροβολίσει·  
 |smaller

had with him his own cavalry and a force belonging to Orontas, who had the king's daughter to wife; and there were, moreover, with them the Asiatics whom Cyrus had taken with him on his march up; together with those whom the king's brother had brought as a reinforcement to the king; besides those whom Tissaphernes himself had received as a gift from the king, so that the armament appeared to be very great. When they were close, he halted some of his regiments at the rear and wheeled others into position on either flank, but hesitated to attack, having no mind apparently to run any risks, and contenting himself with an order to his slingers to sling and his archers to shoot. But when the Rhodian slingers and the bowmen, posted at intervals, retaliated, and every shot told (for with the utmost pains to miss it would have been hard to do so under the circumstances), then Tissaphernes with all speed retired out of range, the other regiments following suit; and for the rest of the day the one party advanced and the other followed. But now the Asiatics had ceased to be dangerous with their sharpshooting. For the Rhodians could reach further than the Persian slingers, or, indeed, than most of the bowmen. The Persian bows are of great size, so that the Cretans found the arrows which were picked up serviceable, and persevered in using their enemies' arrows, and practised shooting with them, letting them fly upwards to a great height. There were also plenty of bowstrings found in the villages— and lead, which they turned to account for their slings. As a result of this day, then, the Hellenes chancing upon some villages had no sooner encamped than the barbarians fell back, having had distinctly the worst of it in the skirmishing.

The next day was a day of inaction: they halted and took in supplies, as there was much corn in the villages;

*vocabulary*

**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**αὖ** again, then again; next ~after  
**γεφύρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge; also  
 γέφυρα  
**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge; also  
 γεφύρα  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**διάβασις** -εως (f) crossing, passage  
**διασπάω** tear apart  
**διέχω** pass through  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**ἐκατόν** hundred  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἕξ** six ~hexagon  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act,  
 uncommon) handle, take care of  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ἤμερος** domesticated  
**κενός** empty, vain  
**κεράννυμι** mix ~crater; also  
 ἐπικεράννυμι, κερνάω  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn  
**κεράω** mix in a bowl; also κεραίω

**κώμη** village  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**ὀπότε** when; also ὀπότε  
**ὄρнуμι** set upon, arouse ~hormone;  
 also ὑπόρнуμι  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**πάνυ** altogether, very  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric  
**πλευρά** rib  
**πορεύω** carry  
**σίτος** (m/n) grain, bread, food  
 ~parasite  
**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry  
 ~repudiate  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**ταράσσω** mess things up  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await  
**ὑστεραῖος** the next; later  
**ὑστερος** later, last  
**φθάνω** do first, outstrip

τὴν δ' ἐπιούσαν ἡμέραν ἔμειναν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο· ἦν γὰρ πολὺς σῖτος ἐν ταῖς κώμαις. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, καὶ Τισσαφέρνης εἶπετο ἀκροβολιζόμενος. ἔνθα δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔγνωσαν πλαισίον ἰσόπλευρον ὅτι πονηρὰ τάξις εἴη πολεμίων ἐπομένων. ἀνάγκη γάρ ἐστιν, ἣν συγκύπτῃ τὰ κέρατα τοῦ πλαισίου ἢ ὁδοῦ στενοτέρας οὔσης ἢ ὁρέων ἀναγκαζόντων ἢ γεφύρας, ἐκθλίβεσθαι τοὺς ὀπλίτας καὶ πορεύεσθαι πονήρως ἅμα μὲν πιεζομένους, ἅμα δὲ καὶ ταραττομένους, ὥστε δυσχρήστους εἶναι ἀνάγκη ἀτάκτους ὄντας· ὅταν δ' αὖ διάσχι τὰ κέρατα, ἀνάγκη διασπᾶσθαι τοὺς τότε ἐκθλιβομένους καὶ κενὸν γίνεσθαι τὸ μέσον τῶν κεράτων, καὶ ἀθυμεῖν τοὺς ταῦτα πάσχοντας πολεμίων ἐπομένων. καὶ ὁπότε δέοι γέφυραν διαβαίνειν ἢ ἄλλην τινὰ διάβασιν, ἔσπευδεν ἕκαστος βουλόμενος φθάσαι πρῶτος· καὶ εὐεπίθετον ἦν ἐνταῦθα τοῖς πολεμίοις. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτ' ἔγνωσαν οἱ στρατηγοί, ἐποίησαν ἕξ λόχους ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας, καὶ λοχαγοὺς ἐπέστησαν καὶ ἄλλους πεντηκοντῆρας καὶ ἄλλους ἐνωμοτάρχους. οὗτοι δὲ πορευόμενοι, ὁπότε μὲν συγκύπτει τὰ κέρατα, ὑπέμενον ὕστεροι οἱ λοχαγοί, ὥστε μὴ ἐνοχλεῖν τοῖς κέρασι, τότε δὲ παρήγον ἕξωθεν τῶν κεράτων. ὁπότε δὲ διάσχοιεν αἱ πλευραὶ τοῦ πλαισίου, τὸ μέσον ἂν ἐξεπίπλασαν, εἰ μὲν στενότερον εἴη τὸ διέχον, κατὰ λόχους, εἰ δὲ πλατύτερον, κατὰ πεντηκοστῆς, εἰ δὲ πάνυ πλατύ, κατ' ἐνωμοτίας· ὥστε αἰεὶ ἔκπλεων εἶναι τὸ μέσον. εἰ δὲ καὶ διαβαίνειν

τὴν δ' ἐπιούσαν ἡμέραν ἔμειναν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο· ἦν γὰρ πολλὸς σίτος ἐν ταῖς |village τῇ δὲ |the next; later ἕοντο διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, καὶ Τισσαφέρνης εἶπετο ἀκροβολιζόμενος. ἔνθα δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔγνωσαν πλαίσιον ἰσόπλευρον ὅτι πονηρὰ τάξις εἶη πολεμίων ἐπομένων. ἀνάγκη γάρ ἐστιν, ἦν συγκύπτῃ τὰ κέρατα τοῦ πλαισίου ἢ ὁδοῦ στενοτέρας οὔσης ἢ ὁρέων ἀναγκαζόντων ἢ |dam, dike; bridge ἢ αἰ τοὺς ὀπλίτας καὶ πορεύεσθαι πονήρως ἅμα μὲν πιεζομένους, ἅμα δὲ καὶ |mess things up ὥστε δυσχρήστους εἶναι ἀνάγκη ἀτάκτους ὄντας· ὅταν δ' αὖ |pass through ἴρατα, ἀνάγκη |tear apart τοὺς τότε ἐκθλιβομένους καὶ κενὸν γίγνεσθαι τὸ μέσον τῶν κεράτων, καὶ ἀθυμεῖν τοὺς ταῦτα πάσχοντας πολεμίων ἐπομένων. καὶ ὁπότε δέοι |dam, |pass over, cross ἢ τινὰ |crossing, |dike; |dike; |passage ἔσπευδεν ἕκαστος βουλό|bridge φθάσαι πρῶτος· καὶ εὐεπίθετον ἦν ἐνταῦθα τοῖς πολεμίοις. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτ' ἔγνωσαν οἱ στρατηγοί, ἐποίησαν ἐξ |ambush, ἢ ἕκατὸν ἄνδρας, καὶ λοχαγοὺς ἐπέστησαν καὶ ἄλλους |band, child- |birth κοντήρας καὶ ἄλλους ἐνωμοτάρχους. οὗτοι δὲ πορευόμενοι, ὁπότε μὲν συγκύπτει τὰ κέρατα, ὑπέμενον ὕστεροι οἱ λοχαγοί, ὥστε μὴ ἐνοχλεῖν τοῖς |κεράννουμι?: mix ; ἀρήγον ἔξωθεν |or κέρας?: horn τῶν κεράτων. ὁπότε δὲ διάσχοιεν αἱ |rib τοῦ πλαισίου, τὸ μέσον ἂν ἐξεπίπλασαν, εἰ μὲν στενότερον εἶη τὸ |pass through ἢ |ambush, ἢ ἕκατὸν πλατύτερον, κατὰ πεντηκοστῆς, εἰ δὲ πάνυ πλατὺ, κατ' |band, child- |birth θοτίας· ὥστε αἰεὶ ἔκπλεων εἶναι τὸ μέσον. εἰ δὲ καὶ |pass over, cross

but on the day following, the march was continued through the plain (of the Tigris), and Tissaphernes still hung on their skirts with his skirmishers. And now it was that the Hellenes discovered the defect of marching in a square with an enemy following. As a matter of necessity, whenever the wings of an army so disposed draw together, either where a road narrows, or hills close in, or a bridge has to be crossed, the heavy infantry cannot help being squeezed out of their ranks, and march with difficulty, partly from actual pressure, and partly from the general confusion that ensues. Or, supposing the wings are again extended, the troops have hardly recovered from their former distress before they are pulled asunder, and there is a wide space between the wings, and the men concerned lose confidence in themselves, especially with an enemy close behind. What happened, when a bridge had to be crossed or other passage effected, was, that each unit of the force pressed on in anxiety to get over first, and at these moments it was easy for the enemy to make an attack. The generals accordingly, having recognised the defect, set about curing it. To do so, they made six lochi, or divisions of a hundred men apiece, each of which had its own set of captains and under-officers in command of half and quarter companies. It was the duty of these new companies, during a march, whenever the flanks needed to close in, to fall back to the rear, so as to disencumber the wings. This they did by wheeling clear of them. When the sides of the oblong again extended, they filled up the interstices, if the gap were narrow, by columns of companies, if broader, by columns of half-companies, or, if broader still, by columns of quarter-companies, so that the space between was always filled up. If again it were necessary to effect a passage



*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also *ἄκρα*,  
*ἄκρη*  
**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**ἀνάγω** lead up, set sail  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**δείδω** to fear ~Deimos  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**δεύτερος** second  
**διώκω** chase  
**εἰκός** οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
**εἴσω** into; also *ἔσω*  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἐπιχειρέω** lay hands on  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ἦνίκα** when  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
*ἵππιοχάρμης*  
**καταβαίνω** go down  
**κινέω** set in motion, move, remove  
 ~kinetic  
**κρατέω** rule ~democracy  
**μέρος** -υς (n, 3) part

**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also *οὐδός*  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὀπότε** when; also *ὀπότε*  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**οὐκέτι** no more  
**ὄχλος** mob, crowd  
**παντάπασι** altogether; yes, certainly  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πού** no doubt; somewhere/how  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τέσσαρες** (3) four  
**τρίτος** third  
**τρόπος** (m/n) turn; manner, kind,  
 fashion  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὕψηλός** high  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

τινὰ δέοι διάβασιν ἢ γέφυραν, οὐκ ἐταράττοντο, ἀλλ' ἐν τῷ μέρει οἱ λοχαγοὶ διέβαινον· καὶ εἴ που δέοι τι τῆς φάλαγγος, ἐπιπαρήσαν οὗτοι. τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς τέτταρας. ἡνίκα δὲ τὸν πέμπτον ἐπορεύοντο, εἶδον βασιλείον τι καὶ περὶ αὐτὸ κώμας πολλὰς, τὴν δὲ ὁδὸν πρὸς τὸ χωρίον τοῦτο διὰ γηλόφων ὑψηλῶν γιγνομένην, οἱ καθήκον ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους ὑφ' ᾧ ἦν ἡ κώμη. καὶ εἶδον μὲν τοὺς λόφους ἄσμενοι οἱ Ἕλληνες, ὡς εἰκὸς τῶν πολεμίων ὄντων ἰπέων· ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου ἀνέβησαν ἐπὶ τὸν πρῶτον γήλοφον καὶ κατέβαινον, ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν ἕτερον ἀναβαίνειν, ἐνταῦθα ἐπιγίγνεται οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὑψηλοῦ εἰς τὸ πρανὲς ἔβαλλον, ἐσφενδόνων, ἐτόξευον ὑπὸ μαστίγων, καὶ πολλοὺς ἐτίτρωσκον καὶ ἐκράτησαν τῶν Ἑλλήνων γυμνήτων καὶ κατέκλεισαν αὐτοὺς εἴσω τῶν ὄπλων· ὥστε παντάπασι ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν ἄχρηστοι ἦσαν ἐν τῷ ὄχλῳ ὄντες καὶ οἱ σφενδονῆται καὶ οἱ τοξόται. ἐπεὶ δὲ πιεζόμενοι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπεχείρησαν διώκειν, σχολῇ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον ἀφικνοῦνται ὀπλίται ὄντες, οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ταχὺ ἀπεπήδων. πάλιν δὲ ὁπότε ἀπίοιεν πρὸς τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα ταῦτα ἔπασχον, καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ δευτέρου γηλόφου ταῦτα ἐγίγνετο, ὥστε ἀπὸ τοῦ τρίτου γηλόφου ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς μὴ κινεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας πρὶν ἀπὸ τῆς δεξιᾶς πλευρᾶς τοῦ πλαισίου ἀνήγαγον πελταστὰς πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. ἐπεὶ δ' οὗτοι ἐγένοντο ὑπὲρ τῶν ἐπομένων πολεμίων, οὐκέτι ἐπετίθεντο οἱ πολέμοι τοῖς καταβαίνουσι, δεδοικότες μὴ ἀποτμηθεῖσαν καὶ

τινὰ δέοι |crossing, ἢ |dam, dike;|mess things up` λ' ἐν τῷ μέρει  
 οἱ λοχαγοὶ |passage |bridge  
 οἱ λοχαγοὶ |pass over, cross` που δέοι τι τῆς φάλαγγος, ἐπιπαρήσαν  
 οὔτοι. τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ ἐπορεύθησαν |cottage; post` aras. ἡνίκα δὲ  
 τὸν |fifth ἐπορεύοντο, εἶδον |kingly τι καὶ περὶ αὐτὸ |village  
 πολλές, τὴν δὲ ὁδὸν πρὸς τὸ χωρίον τοῦτο διὰ |hill, ὑψηλῶν  
 γιγνομένην, οἱ |come down, (a day) νυς ὑφ' ᾧ ἦν ἡ |mound |village καὶ εἶδον  
 μὲν τοὺς |to fall, be proper  
 μὲν τοὺς |neck, crest on a Ἕλληνες, ὡς εἰκὸς τῶν πολεμίων ὄντων  
 |helmet, hilltop  
 ἰππέων· ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου ἀνέβησαν ἐπὶ τὸν πρῶτον  
 |hill, καὶ κατέβαινον, ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν ἕτερον ἀναβαίνειν, ἐνταῦθα  
 |mound  
 |succeed οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὑψηλοῦ εἰς τὸ πρηνὲς ἔβαλλον,  
 ἐσφενδόνων, |shoot an` ar-|whip καὶ πολλοὺς |wound, καὶ  
 ἐκράτησαν τῶν Ἑλλήνων γυμνῆτων καὶ κατέκλεισεν |bring to  
 τῶν ὄπλων· ὥστε παντάπασι ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν ἄχρηστοι ἦσαν  
 ἐν τῷ ὄχλῳ ὄντες καὶ οἱ σφενδονῆται καὶ οἱ |archer ἐπεὶ δὲ  
 πιεζόμενοι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπεχείρησαν διώκειν, σχολῆ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ |ἄκρον?: extrem-  
 ἀφικνοῦνται ὀπλίται ὄντες, οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ταχὺ ἀπεπήδων. |the`edge, extreme  
 δὲ ὁπότε ἀπίοιεν πρὸς τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα |identical` ασχον, καὶ  
 ἐπὶ τοῦ δευτέρου |hill, |identical, ἵγνετο, ὥστε ἀπὸ τοῦ τρίτου  
 |mound  
 |hill, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς μὴ κνεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας πρὶν ἀπὸ τῆς  
 |mound  
 δεξιᾶς |trib τοῦ πλαισίου ἀνήγαγον |light πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. ἐπεὶ  
 right- |troops  
 hand` οἱ ἐγένοντο ὑπὲρ τῶν ἐπομένων πολεμίων, οὐκέτι ἐπετίθεντο  
 ; or  
 δεξιᾶς; |μμοι τοῖς καταβαίνουσι, δεδοκότες μὴ ἀποτμηθεῖσαν καὶ  
 right-  
 hand

by bridge or otherwise, there was no confusion, the several companies crossing in turns; or, if the occasion arose to form in line of battle, these companies came up to the front and fell in.

In this way they advanced four stages, but ere the fifth was completed, they came in sight of a palace of some sort, with villages clustered round it; they could further see that the road leading to this place pursued its course over high undulating hillocks, the spur of the mountain range, under which lay the village. These knolls were a welcome sight to the Hellenes, naturally enough, as the enemy were cavalry. However, when they had issued from the plain and ascended the first crest, and were in the act of descending it so as to mount the next, at this juncture the barbarians came upon them. From the high ground down the sheer steep they poured a volley of darts, slingstones, and arrows, which they discharged "under the lash," wounding many, until they got the better of the Hellenic light troops, and drove them for shelter behind the heavy infantry, so that this day that arm was altogether useless, huddling in the mob of sutlers, both slingers and archers alike.

But when the Hellenes, being so pressed, made an attempt to pursue, they could barely scale to the summit, being heavy-armed troops, while the enemy as lightly sprung away; and they suffered similarly in retiring to join the rest of the army. And then, on the second hill, the whole had to be gone through again; so that when it came to the third hillock, they determined not to move the main body of troops from their position until they had brought up a squadron of light infantry from the right flank of the square to a point on the mountain range. When this detachment were once posted above their pursuers, the latter desisted from attacking the main body in its descent, for fear of being cut off and finding themselves between two assailants. Thus the rest

*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*  
**ανάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
*ἀφήκω*  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**διδάσκω** teach ~didactic  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also *εἵνεκα*, *ἐνεκεν*  
**ἐννυμι** clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἑξήκοντα** sixty  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἐπιχειρέω** lay hands on  
**ἦνίκα** when  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ιατρός** physician  
**καθίστημι** set down, land  
**καταβαίνω** go down  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,

overtake  
**κώμη** village  
**λύω** loosen, free, ransom ~loose  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also *οὐδός*  
**οἶνος** wine ~wine  
**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὀρμάω** set in motion, rush at  
 ~hormone  
**ὄρος ὄρεος** (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**περίεμι** be superior to  
**πορεύω** carry  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
 masc)  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**τέταρτος** fourth; also *τέτρατος*  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**χώρα** place  
**ώρα** season, time ~horoscope

ἀμφοτέρωθεν αὐτῶν γένοιτο οἱ πολέμοι. οὕτω τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας πορευόμενοι, οἱ μὲν ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ κατὰ τοὺς γηλόφους, οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὸ ὄρος ἐπιπαριόντες, ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς κώμας· καὶ ἰατροὺς κατέστησαν ὀκτώ· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ τετραμένοι. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ τῶν τετραμένων ἔνεκα καὶ ἅμα ἐπιτήδεια πολλὰ εἶχον, ἄλευρα, οἶνον, κριθὰς ἵπποις συμβεβλημένας πολλὰς. ταῦτα δὲ συνειληγμένα ἦν τῷ σατραπεύοντι τῆς χώρας. τετάρτη δ' ἡμέρα καταβαίνουσιν εἰς τὸ πεδίον. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέλαβεν αὐτοὺς Τισσαφέρνης σὺν τῇ δυνάμει, ἐδίδαξεν αὐτοὺς ἢ ἀνάγκη κατασκηῆσαι οὐ πρῶτον εἶδον κώμην καὶ μὴ πορεύεσθαι ἔτι μαχομένους· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ ἀπόμαχοι, οἳ τε τετραμένοι καὶ οἱ ἐκείνους φέροντες καὶ οἱ τῶν φερόντων τὰ ὄπλα δεξάμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεσκήνησαν καὶ ἐπεχείρησαν αὐτοῖς ἀκροβολίζεσθαι οἱ βάρβαροι πρὸς τὴν κώμην προσιόντες, πολὺ περιῆσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες· πολὺ γὰρ διέφερον ἐκ χώρας ὀρμώντας ἀλέξασθαι ἢ πορευομένους ἐπιούσι τοῖς πολεμίους μάχεσθαι. ἡνίκα δ' ἦν ἤδη δειλὴ, ὥρα ἦν ἀπιέναι τοῖς πολεμίους· οὐποτε γὰρ μείον ἀπεστρατοπεδεύοντο οἱ βάρβαροι τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ ἐξήκοντα σταδίων, φοβούμενοι μὴ τῆς νυκτὸς οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπιθῶνται αὐτοῖς. πονηρὸν γὰρ νυκτός ἐστι στράτευμα Περσικόν. οἳ τε γὰρ ἵπποι αὐτοῖς δέδονται καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ πεποδισμένοι εἰσὶ τοῦ μὴ φεύγειν ἔνεκα εἰ λυθείσαν, ἐάν τέ τις θόρυβος γίγνηται, δεῖ ἐπισιάξει τὸν ἵππον Πέρση ἀνδρὶ καὶ χαλινῶσαι, δεῖ καὶ θωρακισθέντα

|from or on both sides αὐτῶν γένοιτο οἱ πολέμοι. οὕτω τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς  
 ἡμέρας πορευόμενοι, οἱ μὲν ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ κατὰ τοὺς |hill, |mound οἱ δὲ  
 κατὰ τὸ ὄρος ἐπιπαριόντες, ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς |village καὶ |physician  
 κατέστησαν ὀκτώ· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ τετρωμένοι. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν  
 ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ τῶν τετρωμένων ἕνεκα καὶ ἅμα ἐπιτήδεια πολλὰ  
 εἶχον, |flour οἶνον, |barley ἵπποις συμβεβλημένας πολλάς. ταῦτα  
 δὲ συνενηνεγμένα ἦν τῷ σατραπεύοντι τῆς χώρας. τετάρτη δ' ἡμέρα  
 καταβαίνουσιν εἰς τὸ πεδίον. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέλαβεν αὐτοὺς Τισσαφέρνης  
 σὺν τῇ δυνάμει, ἐδίδαξεν αὐτοὺς ἢ ἀνάγκη κατασκηνῆσαι οὐδ' αὖτις  
 εἶδον |village καὶ μὴ πορεύεσθαι ἔτι μαχομένους· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν  
 οἱ ἀπόμαχοι, οἳ τε τετρωμένοι καὶ οἱ ἐκείνους φέροντες καὶ οἱ  
 τῶν φερόντων τὰ ὄπλα δεξάμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεσκήνησαν καὶ  
 ἐπεχείρησαν αὐτοῖς ἀκροβολῆσθαι οἱ βάρβαροι πρὸς τὴν |village  
 προσιόντες, πολὺ |be superior to Ἴλληνες· πολὺ γὰρ διέφερεν ἐκ  
 χώρας ὀρμῶντας |ward off; aid ὀρενομένους ἐπιούσι τοῖς πολεμίοις  
 μάχεσθαι. ἡνίκα δ' ἦν ἡδὴ |afternoon ἦν ἀπιέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις·  
 οὐποτε γὰρ |less, |smaller ἔστρατοπεδεύοντο οἱ βάρβαροι τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ  
 ἐξήκοντα |στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also masc) ; or, στάδιος?: (adj) standing  
 αὐτοῖς. |upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters πονηρὸν γὰρ νυκτός ἐστι στράτευμα Περσικόν. οἳ τε γὰρ  
 ἵπποι αὐτοῖς δέδενται καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ πεποδισμένοι εἰσὶ τοῦ  
 μὴ φεύγειν ἕνεκα εἰ λυθείησαν, ἐάν τις θόρυβος γίγνηται, δεῖ  
 ἐπισιάξει τὸν ἵππον Πέρση ἀνδρὶ καὶ χαλινῶσαι, δεῖ καὶ θωρακισθέντα

of the day they moved on in two divisions: one set keeping to the road by the hillocks, the other marching parallel on the higher level along the mountains; and thus they reached the villages and appointed eight surgeons to attend to the many wounded.

Here they halted three days for the sake of the wounded chiefly, while a further inducement was the plentiful supply of provisions which they found, wheat and wine, and large stores of barley laid up for horses. These supplies had been collected by the ruling satrap of the country. On the fourth day they began their descent into the plain; but when Tissaphernes overtook them, necessity taught them to camp in the first village they caught sight of, and give over the attempt of marching and fighting simultaneously, as so many were hors de combat, being either on the list of wounded themselves, or else engaged in carrying the wounded, or laden with the heavy arms of those so occupied. But when they were once encamped, and the barbarians, advancing upon the village, made an attempt to harass them with their sharp-shooters, the superiority of the Hellenes was pronounced. To sustain a running fight with an enemy constantly attacking was one thing; to keep him at arm's length from a fixed base of action another: and the difference was much in their favour.

But when it was late afternoon, the time had come for the enemy to withdraw, since the habit of the barbarian was never to encamp within seven or eight miles of the Hellenic camp. This he did in apprehension of a night attack, for a Persian army is good for nothing at night. Their horses are haltered, and, as a rule, hobbled as well, to prevent their escaping, as they might if loose; so that, if any alarm occurs, the trooper has to saddle and bridle his horse, and then he must put on his own cuirass, and then mount— all which performances



*vocabulary*

**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀποκόπτω** cut off  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
**ἀφήκω**  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also **εἴνεκα**, **ἐνεκεν**  
**ἑξήκοντα** sixty  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also **ἐπεὶ**  
**ἐπέχω** hold, cover; offer; assail  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**ἐρωτάω** ask about something  
**κατάγω** lead down, make landfall  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon;  
 also **καταλείπω**  
**κηρύσσω** be a henchman, summon  
 people  
**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop  
**λύω** loosen, free, ransom ~loose  
**μεταξύ** between  
**ὀπίσθεν** behind, hereafter; also **ὄπιθεν**  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill

~hormone  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also **ὀδός**  
**οὐρά** tail  
**ὀψέ** late, in evening  
**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πορεύω** carry  
**προσελάυνω** go to, approach  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**πρόσω** forward, in the future; also  
**πόρρω**, **πρόσωθεν**  
**σαφής** clear, understandable  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
 masc)  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**τέταρτος** fourth; also **τέτρατος**  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**τρίτος** third  
**ὑπέιπον** say as preface, premise  
**ὑστεραῖος** the next; later  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear  
**χωρίον** area; downwards  
**ὥρα** season, time ~horoscope

ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον. ταῦτα δὲ πάντα χαλεπὰ νύκτωρ καὶ  
 θορύβου ὄντος. τούτου ἔνεκα πόρρω ἀπεσκήνουν τῶν Ἑλλήνων.  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγίνωσκον αὐτοὺς οἱ Ἕλληνες βουλομένους ἀπιέναι καὶ  
 διαγγελλομένους, ἐκήρυξε τοῖς Ἕλλησι συσκευάζεσθαι ἀκουόντων  
 τῶν πολεμίων. καὶ χρόνον μὲν τινα ἐπέσχον τῆς πορείας οἱ  
 βάρβαροι, ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὀψὲ ἐγίγνετο, ἀπήσαν· οὐ γὰρ ἐδόκει λύειν  
 αὐτοὺς νυκτὸς πορεύεσθαι καὶ κατάγεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.  
 ἐπειδὴ δὲ σαφῶς ἀπιόντας ἤδη ἑώρων οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐπορεύοντο  
 καὶ αὐτοὶ ἀναζεύξαντες καὶ διήλθον ὅσον ἐξήκοντα σταδίου. καὶ  
 γίγνεται τοσοῦτον μεταξὺ τῶν στρατευμάτων ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ  
 οὐκ ἐφάνησαν οἱ πολέμοι οὐδὲ τῇ τρίτῃ, τῇ δὲ τετάρτῃ νυκτὸς  
 προελθόντες καταλαμβάνουσι χωρίον ὑπερδέξιον οἱ βάρβαροι, ἧ  
 ἔμελλον οἱ Ἕλληνες παριέναι, ἀκρωνυχίαν ὄρους, ὑφ' ἣν ἡ κατάβασις  
 ἦν εἰς τὸ πεδίον. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἑώρα Χειρίσοφος προκατειλημμένην τὴν  
 ἀκρωνυχίαν, καλεῖ Ξενοφῶντα ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρᾶς καὶ κελεύει λαβόντα  
 τοὺς πελταστὰς παραγενέσθαι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τοὺς  
 μὲν πελταστὰς οὐκ ἤγεν· ἐπιφαινόμενον γὰρ ἑώρα Τισσαφέρην καὶ  
 τὸ στρατεύμα πᾶν· αὐτὸς δὲ προσελάσας ἠρώτα τί καλεῖς; ὁ δὲ λέγει  
 αὐτῷ· Ἐξεστὶν ὀρᾶν· κατείληπται γὰρ ἡμῖν ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς καταβάσεως  
 λόφος, καὶ οὐκ ἔστι παρελθεῖν, εἰ μὴ τούτους ἀποκόψομεν. ἀλλὰ  
 τί οὐκ ἤγες τοὺς πελταστὰς; ὁ δὲ λέγει ὅτι οὐκ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἔρημα  
 καταλιπεῖν τὰ ὀπισθεν πολεμίων ἐπιφαινομένων. Ἄλλὰ μὴν ὦρα

ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον. ταῦτα δὲ πάντα χαλεπὰ νύκτωρ καὶ  
 θορύβου ὄντος. τούτου ἕνεκα **forward, in the future** κίνησιν τῶν Ἑλλήνων.  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγίνωσκον αὐτοὺς οἷ Ἕλληνας βουλομένους ἀπιέναι καὶ  
 διαγγελλομένους, ἐκήρυξε τοῖς Ἕλλησι συσκευάζεσθαι ἀκούοντων  
 τῶν πολεμίων. καὶ χρόνον μὲν τινα **hold, cover; offer; assail**  
 βάρβαροι, **after; because** ἕτερον ἐγένετο, ἀπῆσαν· οὐ γὰρ ἐδόκει λύειν  
 αὐτοὺς νυκτὸς πορεύεσθαι καὶ **lead down, make land-**  
**after; because** σαφῶς ἀπιόντας ἤδη **fall** ἄρων οἷ Ἕλληνας, ἐπορεύοντο  
 καὶ αὐτοὶ ἀναζεύξαντες καὶ διήλθον ὅσον ἐξήκοντα **στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also masc) ; or στάδιος?: (adj) the standing gate upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters**  
 γίνεται τοσοῦτον μεταξὺ τῶν στρατευμάτων ὅσῳ  
 οὐκ ἐφάνησαν οἱ πολέμοι οὐδὲ τῇ τρίτῃ, τῇ δὲ τετάρτῃ νυκτὸς  
 προελθόντες καταλαμβάνουσι χωρίον ὑπερδέξιον οἷ βάρβαροι, ἧ  
 ἔμελλον οἷ Ἕλληνας **dangle; pass over, allow** ἄνω ὄρους, ὑφ' ἧν ἡ κατάβασις  
 ἦν εἰς τὸ πεδίον. **after; because** ἑώρα Χειρίσοφος προκατειλημμένην τὴν  
 ἀκρωνυχίαν, καλεῖ Ξενοφῶντα ἀπὸ τῆς **tail** καὶ κελεύει λαβόντα  
 τοὺς **light troops** παραγενέσθαι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τοὺς  
 μὲν **light troops** οὐκ ἤγεν· ἐπιφανόμενον γὰρ ἑώρα Τισσαφέρην καὶ  
 τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν· αὐτὸς δὲ **go to, approach** ἔτα τί καλεῖς; ὁ δὲ λέγει  
 αὐτῷ· Ἐξεστὶν ὄραν· κατεῖληπται γὰρ ἡμῖν ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς καταβάσεως  
**neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop** ἄ τι παρελθεῖν, εἰ μὴ τούτους **cut off** ἀλλὰ  
 τί οὐκ ἤγες τοὺς **light troops**· ὁ δὲ λέγει ὅτι οὐκ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἔρημα  
 καταλιπεῖν τὰ ὀπισθεν πολεμίων ἐπιφανομένων. Ἄλλὰ μὴν ἑώρα

are difficult at night and in the midst of confusion. For this reason they always encamped at a distance from the Hellenes.

When the Hellenes perceived that they were preparing to retire, and that the order was being given, the herald's cry, "Pack up for starting," might be heard before the enemy was fairly out of earshot. For a while the Asiatics paused, as if unwilling to be gone; but as night closed in, off they went, for it did not suit their notions of expediency to set off on a march and arrive by night. And now, when the Hellenes saw that they were really and clearly gone, they too broke up their camp and pursued their march till they had traversed seven and a half miles. Thus the distance between the two armies grew to be so great, that the next day the enemy did not appear at all, nor yet on the third day; but on the fourth the barbarians had pushed on by a forced night march and occupied a commanding position on the right, where the Hellenes had to pass. It was a narrow mountain spur overhanging the descent into the plain.

But when Cheirisophus saw that this ridge was occupied, he summoned Xenophon from the rear, bidding him at the same time to bring up peltasts to the front. That Xenophon hesitated to do, for Tissaphernes and his whole army were coming up and were well within sight. Galloping up to the front himself, he asked: "Why do you summon me?" The other answered him: "The reason is plain; look yonder; this crest which overhangs our descent has been occupied. There is no passing, until we have dislodged these fellows; why have you not brought up the light infantry?" Xenophon explained: he had not thought it desirable to leave the rear unprotected, with an enemy appearing in the field of view. "However, it is time," he added, "

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρον** crest, extremity  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also ἄκρα,  
 ἄκρη  
**ἄλλομαι** to jump ~sally  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**δίδημι** should; bind; need, fail; also  
 δέω  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἔάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
 ἰθύς  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**κορυφή** peak, crown  
**κράτιστος** best  
**κραυγή** screaming, shouting  
**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop  
**μακρός** long, tall  
**μένος** -εος (n, 3) mind, spirit, prowess  
 ~mind  
**νέος** young; neuter: recently ~neon

**νοέω** see, think ~paranoia  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ὄδος** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**ὀπότερος** which of two, either of two  
**ὀρμάω** set in motion, rush at  
 ~hormone  
**ὀρμέω** be anchored  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**οὐρά** tail  
**παρελαύνω** pass, outstrip; also  
 παρεξελαύνω  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πονέω** work; be busy  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πῶς** how? why?  
**στόμα** -τος (n, 3) mouth ~stomach  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**συμπέμπω** send with  
**συνέπομαι** go along with  
**τριακόσιοι** three hundred  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπέιπον** say as preface, premise  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χρήζω** need

γ', ἔφη, βουλευέσθαι πῶς τις τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπελᾶ ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου. ἐνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν ὄρᾳ τοῦ ὄρους τὴν κορυφὴν ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἑαυτῶν στρατεύματος οὖσαν, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἔφοδον ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον ἔνθα ἦσαν οἱ πολέμιοι, καὶ λέγει· Κράτιστον, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἡμῖν ἴεσθαι ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον· ἦν γὰρ τοῦτο λάβωμεν, οὐ δυνήσονται μένειν οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ. ἀλλά, εἰ βούλει, μένε ἐπὶ τῷ στρατεύματι, ἐγὼ δ' ἐθέλω πορεύεσθαι· εἰ δὲ χρήξεις, πορεύου ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, ἐγὼ δὲ μενῶ αὐτοῦ. Ἄλλὰ δίδωμί σοι, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, ὁπότερον βούλει ἐλέσθαι. εἰπὼν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ὅτι νεώτερός ἐστιν αἰρείται πορεύεσθαι, κελεύει δὲ οἱ συμπέμψαι ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος ἄνδρας· μακρὸν γὰρ ἦν ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρᾶς λαβεῖν. καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος συμπέμπει τοὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος πελταστάς, ἔλαβε δὲ τοὺς κατὰ μέσον πλαισίου. συνέπεσθαι δ' ἐκέλευσεν αὐτῷ καὶ τοὺς τριακοσίους οὓς αὐτὸς εἶχε τῶν ἐπιλέκτων ἐπὶ τῷ στόματι τοῦ πλαισίου. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο ὡς ἐδύνατο τάχιστα. οἱ δ' ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου πολέμιοι ὡς ἐνόησαν αὐτῶν τὴν πορείαν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, εὐθὺς καὶ αὐτοὶ ὄρμησαν ἀμιλλᾶσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. καὶ ἐνταῦθα πολλὴ μὲν κραυγὴ ἦν τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ στρατεύματος διακελεομένων τοῖς ἑαυτῶν, πολλὴ δὲ κραυγὴ τῶν ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρην τοῖς ἑαυτῶν διακελεομένων. Ξενοφῶν δὲ παρελάνων ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου παρεκελεύετο· Ἄνδρες, νῦν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα νομίζετε ἀμιλλᾶσθαι, νῦν πρὸς τοὺς παῖδας καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας, νῦν ὀλίγον πονήσαντες ἀμαχεῖ τὴν λοιπὴν πορευσόμεθα.

γ', ἔφη, βουλεύεσθαι πῶς τις τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπελῆ ἀπὸ τοῦ |neck, crest on a  
 ἑνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν ὄρα τοῦ ὄρους τὴν κορυφὴν ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἑαυτῶν |helmet, hilltop  
 στρατεύματος οὖσαν, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἔφοδον ἐπὶ τὸν |neck, crest on a helmet,  
 ἦσαν οἱ πολέμοιοι, καὶ λέγει· Κράτιστον, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἡμῖν ἴεσθαι |hilltop  
 ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ |ἄκρον?:` extremity ; `or μεν, οὐ δυνήσονται  
 μένειν οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ. ἀλλὰ, εἰ βούλει, μένε ἐπὶ τῷ στρατεύματι,  
 ἐγὼ δ' ἐθέλω πορεύεσθαι· εἰ δὲ |need πορεύου ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, ἐγὼ  
 δὲ μενῶ αὐτοῦ. Ἀλλὰ |δίδημι?: should; bind; need, fail ;|which of two, either  
 βούλει ἐλέσθαι. εἰπὼν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ὅτι νεώτερός ἐστιν αἰρεῖται |or δίδωμι?: give; permit |of two  
 πορεύεσθαι, κελεῖε δέ οἱ |send with ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος ἄνδρας·  
 μακρὸν γὰρ ἦν ἀπὸ τῆς |tail λαβεῖν. καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος |send with  
 τοὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος |light ἔλαβε δὲ τοὺς κατὰ μέσον  
 πλαισίου. |go along with |troops κέλευσεν αὐτῷ καὶ τοὺς τριακοσίους οὓς  
 αὐτὸς εἶχε τῶν ἐπιλέκτων ἐπὶ τῷ στόματι τοῦ πλαισίου. ἐντεῦθεν  
 ἐπορεύοντο ὡς ἐδύναντο τάχιστα. οἱ δ' ἐπὶ τοῦ |neck, crest on a  
 ὡς ἐνόησαν αὐτῶν τὴν πορείαν ἐπὶ τὸ |ἄκρον?: extremity ; or ἄκρος?: at the  
 ὠρμησαν ἀμυλλᾶσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ |ἄκρον?: extremity ; or ἄκρος?:|edge, extreme |shouting  
 ἦν τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ στρατεύματος διακελενομένων τοῖς ἑαυτῶν, πολλὴ  
 δὲ |screaming, shouting ἄμφι Τισσαφέρην τοῖς ἑαυτῶν διακελενομένων.  
 Ξενοφῶν δὲ |pass, outstrip ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου παρεκελεύετο· Ἄνδρες, νῦν  
 ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα νομίζετε ἀμυλλᾶσθαι, νῦν πρὸς τοὺς παῖδας καὶ τὰς  
 γυναῖκας, νῦν ὀλίγον πονήσαντες ἀμαχεὶ τὴν λοιπὴν πορευοσόμεθα.

to decide how we are to dislodge these fellows from the crest.” At this moment his eye fell on the peak of the mountain, rising immediately above their army, and he could see an approach leading from it to the crest in question where the enemy lay. He exclaimed: “The best thing we can do, Cheirisophus, is to make a dash at the height itself, and with what speed we may. If we take it, the party in command of the road will never be able to stop. If you like, stay in command of the army, and I will go; or, if you prefer, do you go to the mountain, and I will stay here.”—“ I leave it to you,” Cheirisophus answered, “to choose which you like best.” Xenophon remarking, “I am the younger,” elected to go; but he stipulated for a detachment from the front to accompany him, since it was a long way to fetch up troops from the rear. Accordingly Cheirisophus furnished him with the light infantry from the front, reoccupying their place by those from the centre. He also gave him, to form part of the detachment, the three hundred of the picked corps under his own command at the head of the square.

They set out from the low ground with all the haste imaginable. But the enemy in position on the crest no sooner perceived their advance upon the summit of the pass than they themselves set off full tilt in a rival race for the summit too. Hoarse were the shouts of the Hellenic troops as the men cheered their companions forwards, and hoarse the answering shouts from the troops of Tissaphernes, urging on theirs. Xenophon, mounted on his charger, rode beside his men, and roused their ardour the while. “Now for it, brave sirs; bethink you that this race is for Hellas!— now or never!— to find your boys, your wives; one small effort, and the rest of the march we shall pursue in peace, without ever a blow to strike; now for it.” But



*vocabulary*

ἄκρον crest, extremity  
 ἄκρος at the edge, extreme; also ἄκρα,  
 ἄκρη  
 ἀναβαίνω go up, embark  
 ἀνθέω sprout  
 ἀποτρέπω divert from  
 ἀσπίς -δος (f) shield ~spit  
 ἀφαιρέω take away  
 βάρβαρος non-Greek  
 ἐξαπίνης suddenly  
 ἔπομαι follow, support, chase ~sequel  
 ἦνίκα when  
 ἠώς ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
 θώραξ -ηκος (m) corselet; torso  
 ἵππικός of horses  
 ἴσος equal; also ἔσση  
 καθίζω to seat ~sit; also ἴζω, καθιζάνω  
 κάμνω toil, acquire  
 καταβαίνω go down  
 καταλιμπάνω leave behind, abandon;  
 also καταλείπω  
 κείμαι lie  
 κώμη village  
 μεστός full  
 ὁδός (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός

οἴχομαι come, go, leave, be gone  
 ὀπισθεν behind, hereafter; also ὀπιθεν  
 ὀχέω carry; be afflicted with  
 παρίημι dangle; pass over, allow  
 πεδίον plain, sea ~foot  
 πεζός on foot; footsoldier (πούς)  
 πέραν on the other side, across  
 πιέζω press, squeeze ~piezoelectric  
 πλήρης full, complete; (+gen) full of  
 πορεύω carry  
 ποταμός river ~hippopotamus  
 σκεδάννυμι shed, disperse  
 σπεύδω 'push on,' get going, hurry  
 ~repudiate  
 στρατιώτης (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
 στρατοπεδεύω encamp or take up  
 station  
 τάξις -εως (f) arrangement  
 τυγχάνω meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
 τῷ so, therefore; in that case  
 ὑπάγω lead  
 φθάνω do first, outstrip  
 χαλεπός hard to bear  
 ὠθέω push

Σωτηρίδας δὲ ὁ Σικυώνιος εἶπεν· Οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἐσμέν· σὺ μὲν γὰρ ἐφ' ἵππου ὀχῆῃ, ἐγὼ δὲ χαλεπῶς κάμνω τὴν ἀσπίδα φέρων. καὶ ὃς ἀκούσας ταῦτα καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου ὠθείται αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς τάξεως καὶ τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀφελόμενος ὡς ἐδύνατο τάχιστα ἔχων ἐπορεύετο· ἐτύγχανε δὲ καὶ θώρακα ἔχων τὸν ἵππικόν· ὥστ' ἐπιέζετο. καὶ τοῖς μὲν ἔμπροσθεν ὑπάγειν παρεκλεύετο, τοῖς δὲ ὀπισθεν παριέναι μάλιστα ἐπόμενος. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι στρατιῶται παίουσι καὶ βάλλουσι καὶ λοιδοροῦσι τὸν Σωτηρίδαν, ἕστε ἠνάγκασαν λαβόντα τὴν ἀσπίδα πορεύεσθαι. ὁ δὲ ἀναβάς, ἕως μὲν βάσιμα ἦν, ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου ἦγεν, ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄβατα ἦν, καταλιπὼν τὸν ἵππον ἔσπευδε πεζῆ· καὶ φθάνουσιν ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ γενόμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους.

### 3.5

Ἔνθα δὴ οἱ μὲν βάρβαροι στραφέντες ἔφευγον ἢ ἕκαστος ἐδύνατο, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες εἶχον τὸ ἄκρον. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρην καὶ Ἄριαϊον ἀποτραπόμενοι ἄλλην ὁδὸν ὄχοντο. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον καταβάντες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐν κώμῃ μεστῇ πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν. ἦσαν δὲ καὶ ἄλλαι κῶμαι πολλαὶ πλήρεις πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πεδίῳ παρὰ τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν. ἠνίκα δ' ἦν δεῖλη ἐξαπίνης οἱ πολέμοι ἐπιφαίνονται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατέκοψάν τινες τῶν ἐσκεδασμένων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ καθ' ἀρπαγὴν· καὶ γὰρ νομαὶ πολλαὶ βοσκημάτων διαβιβαζόμεναι εἰς τὸ πέραν

Σωτηρίδας δὲ ὁ Σικυώνιος εἶπεν· Οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἐσμέν·  
 σὺ μὲν γὰρ ἐφ' ἵππου |carry; be af- χαλεπῶς κάμνω τὴν ἀσπίδα  
 |flicted with  
 φέρων. καὶ ὃς |ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix ; or ἴσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου |push  
 |ἀκούω?: hear, listen  
 αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς τάξεως καὶ τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀφελόμενος ὡς |enter, put ὄν, τα  
 |strip off  
 ἔχων ἐπορεύετο· ἐτύγχανε δὲ καὶ |corselet; ἔχων τὸν |of horses ἵστ'  
 |torso  
 ἐπιέζετο. καὶ τοῖς μὲν ἔμπροσθεν ὑπάγειν παρεκελεύετο, τοῖς δὲ  
 ὀπισθεν |dangle; pass ; ἐπόμενος. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι στρατιῶται παίουσι καὶ  
 |over, allow  
 βάλλουσι καὶ λαιδοροῦσι τὸν Σωτηρίδαν, ἔστε ἠνάγκασαν λαβόντα  
 τὴν ἀσπίδα πορεύεσθαι. ὁ δὲ ἀναβάς, ἕως μὲν βάσιμα ἦν, ἐπὶ τοῦ  
 ἵππου ἦγεν, ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄβατα ἦν, καταλιπὼν τὸν ἵππον ἔσπευδε πεζῆ.  
 καὶ φθάνουσι ἐπὶ τῷ |ἄκρον?: 'extremity ; `or ἴσας.  
 |ἄκρος?: at the edge, extreme

### 3.5

Ἐνθα δὴ οἱ μὲν βάρβαροι στραφέντες ἔφευγον ἢ ἕκαστος |enter, put on,  
 |strip off  
 οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες εἶχον τὸ |ἄκρον?: 'extremity` ; or φέρνῃν καὶ  
 |ἄκρος?: at the edge, extreme  
 Ἀριαῖον |divert from ἄλλην ὁδὸν ἄχοντο. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον  
 καταβάντες |encamp or ἐν |village |full πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν.  
 |take up sta-  
 ἦσαν δὲ καὶ |τιῶν|λαι |κώμη?: village ; |full, complete; ἀγαθῶν ἐν  
 |or κείμαι?: lie |(+gen) full of  
 τούτῳ τῷ πεδίῳ παρὰ τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν. ἡνίκα δ' ἦν |afternoon  
 |suddenly ἱ πολέμοι ἐπιφαίνονται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων  
 κατέκοψάν τινες τῶν |shed, disperse ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ καθ' ἀρπαγὴν  
 καὶ γὰρ νομαὶ πολλαὶ βοσκημάτων διαβιβαζόμεναι εἰς τὸ |across

Soteridas the Sicyonian said: "We are not on equal terms, Xenophon; you are mounted on a horse; I can hardly get along with my shield to carry;" and he, on hearing the reproach, leapt from his horse. In another instant he had pushed Soteridas from the ranks, snatched from him his shield, and begun marching as quickly as he might under the circumstances, having his horseman's cuirass to carry as well, so that he was sore pressed; but he continued to cheer on the troops: exhorting those in front to lead on and the men toiling behind to follow up. Soteridas was not spared by the rest of the men. They gave him blows, they pelted him, they showered him with abuse, till they compelled him to take back his shield and march on; and the other, remounting, led them on horseback as long as the footing held; but when the ground became too steep, he left his horse and pressed forward on foot, and so they found themselves on the summit before the enemy.

### 3.5

There and then the barbarians turned and fled as best they might, and the Hellenes held the summit, while the troops with Tissaphernes and Ariaeus turned aside and disappeared by another road. The main body with Cheirisophus made its way down into the plain and encamped in a village filled with good things of divers sorts. Nor did this village stand alone; there were others not a few in this plain of the Tigris equally overflowing with plenty. It was now afternoon; and all of a sudden the enemy came in sight on the plain, and succeeded in cutting down some of the Hellenes belonging to parties who were scattered over the flat land in quest of spoil. Indeed, many herds of cattle had been caught whilst being conveyed across to the other side of the river. And now Tissaphernes and his troops made an attempt to burn the villages, and some of the Hellenes were disposed to take the matter deeply to heart, being apprehensive that they might not know where

*vocabulary*

**αἶξ** αἰγός (m/f) goat  
**ἀλλότριος** someone else's; alien  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck  
**ἀφοράω** look away, at  
**βοῦς** βοός (m/f) cow, ox; shield  
 ~bovine  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
**δισχίλιοι** 2000  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐπιχειρέω** lay hands on  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἡμέτερος** our, my  
**ἦνίκα** when  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**καταβαίνω** go down  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon; also *καταλείπω*  
**κώμη** village  
**μηδέ** and not; not even  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**ὄνος** donkey ~onager

**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman  
**ὄρνυμι** set upon, arouse ~hormone; also *ὕπόρνυμι*  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill ~hormone  
**παύω** stop something ~pause  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also *πειρηγίζω*  
**πορεύω** carry  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πού** no doubt; somewhere/how  
**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds; also *πρόβασις*  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender, come in  
**σκηνή** tent, booth  
**σύνειμι** be with (+dat.)  
**τάλαντον** scale, a unit of weight  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τετρακισχίλιοι** 4000  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**ὑπερέχω** be over; protect  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χώρα** place

τοῦ ποταμοῦ κατελήφθησαν. ἐνταῦθα Τισσαφέρνης καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ καίειν ἐπεχείρησαν τὰς κόμας. καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων μάλα ἠθύμησάν τινες, ἐννοούμενοι μὴ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, εἰ καίοιεν, οὐκ ἔχοιεν ὀπόθεν λαμβάνοιεν. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἀπήσαν ἐκ τῆς βοηθείας· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ κατέβη, παρελαύνων τὰς τάξεις ἠνίκα ἀπὸ τῆς βοηθείας ἀπήντησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔλεγεν· Ὅρατε, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, ὑφίεντας τὴν χώραν ἤδη ἡμετέραν εἶναι; ἂ γὰρ ὅτε ἐσπέndonτο διεπράττοντο, μὴ καίειν τὴν βασιλέως χώραν, νῦν αὐτοὶ καίουσιν ὡς ἀλλοτρίαν. ἀλλ' ἐάν που καταλείπωσί γε αὐτοῖς ἐπιτήδεια, ὄψονται καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐνταῦθα πορευομένους. ἀλλ', ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι βοηθεῖν ἐπὶ τοὺς καίοντας ὡς ὑπὲρ τῆς ἡμετέρας. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Οὐκουν ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ· ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡμεῖς, ἔφη, καίωμεν, καὶ οὕτω θᾶττον παύσονται.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς ἦλθον, οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι περὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦσαν, στρατηγοὶ δὲ καὶ λοχαγοὶ συνῆσαν. καὶ ἐνταῦθα πολλὴ ἀπορία ἦν. ἔνθεν μὲν γὰρ ὄρη ἦν ὑπερύψηλα, ἔνθεν δὲ ὁ ποταμὸς τοσοῦτος βάθος ὡς μηδὲ τὰ δόρατα ὑπερέχειν πειρωμένοις τοῦ βάθους. ἀπορουμένοις δ' αὐτοῖς προσελθὼν τις ἀνὴρ Ῥόδιος εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ θέλω, ὦ ἄνδρες, διαβιβάσαι ὑμᾶς κατὰ τετρακισχιλίους ὀπίστας, ἂν ἐμοὶ ὦν δέομαι ὑπηρετήσητε καὶ τάλαντον μισθὸν πορίσητε. ἐρωτώμενος δὲ ὅτου δέοιτο, Ἀσκῶν, ἔφη, δισχιλίων δεῖσθαι· πολλὰ δ' ὀρώ πρόβατα καὶ αἶγας καὶ βοῦς καὶ ὄνους,

τοῦ ποταμοῦ κατελήφθησαν. ἐνταῦθα Τισσαφέρνης καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ  
 καίειν ἐπεχείρησαν τὰς **|village** καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων μάλα ἠθύμισάν  
 τινες, ἐννοούμενοι μὴ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, εἰ καίοιεν, οὐκ ἔχοιεν **|whence**  
 λαμβάνοιεν. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἀπήσαν ἐκ τῆς βοηθείας·  
 ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ κατέβη, **|pass,** τὰς τάξεις ἠνίκα ἀπὸ τῆς  
**|outstrip** βοηθείας ἀπήντησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔλεγεν· Ὅρατε, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες,  
**|to lower** τὴν χώραν ἤδη ἡμετέραν εἶναι; ἃ γὰρ ὅτε ἐσπένδοντο  
 διεπράττοντο, μὴ καίειν τὴν βασιλέως χώραν, νῦν αὐτοὶ καίουσιν ὡς  
 ἀλλοτρίαν. ἀλλ' ἐάν ποῦ καταλείπωσί γε αὐτοῖς ἐπιτήδεια, ὄψινται  
 καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐνταῦθα πορευομένους. ἀλλ', ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι  
 βοηθεῖν ἐπὶ τοὺς καίοντας ὡς ὑπὲρ τῆς ἡμετέρας. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος  
 εἶπεν· Οὐκ οὐκ ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ· ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡμεῖς, ἔφη, καίωμεν, καὶ οὕτω  
 θᾶπτον παύσονται.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς **|ἄλλομαι?: become whole** ἢ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια  
**|; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come** ἦσαν, στρατηγοὶ δὲ καὶ λοχαγοὶ συνῆσαν. καὶ ἐνταῦθα πολλή  
**|difficulty,** ἔθθεν μὲν γὰρ ὄρη ἦν ὑπερύψηλα, ἔθθεν δὲ ὁ ποταμὸς  
**|bottleneck** τοσοῦτος βάθος ὡς μηδὲ τὰ δόρατα **|be over; protect** , μένοις τοῦ  
 βάθους. ἀπορουμένοις δ' αὐτοῖς προσελθὼν τις ἀνὴρ Ῥόδιος  
 εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ θέλω, ὦ ἄνδρες, διαβιβάσαι ὑμᾶς κατὰ **|4000**  
 ὀπίστας, ἂν ἐμοὶ ὦν δέομαι ὑπηρετήσητε καὶ τάλαντον μισθὸν  
 πορίσητε. ἐρωτώμενος δὲ ὅτου δέοιτο, Ἄσκων, ἔφη, **|2000**  
 δεῖσομαι· πολλὰ δ' ὀρῶ πρόβατα καὶ αἰγας καὶ βοῦς καὶ **|donkey**

to get provisions if the enemy burnt the villages.

Cheirisophus and his men were returning from their sally of defence when Xenophon and his party descended, and the latter rode along the ranks as the rescuing party came up, and greeted them thus: "Do you not see, men of Hellas, they admit that the country is now ours; what they stipulated against our doing when they made the treaty, viz. that we were not to fire the king's country, they are now themselves doing— setting fire to it as if it were not their own. But we will be even with them; if they leave provisions for themselves anywhere, there also shall they see us marching;" and, turning to Cheirisophus, he added: "But it strikes me, we should sally forth against these incendiaries and protect our country." Cheirisophus retorted: "That is not quite my view; I say, let us do a little burning ourselves, and they will cease all the quicker."

When they had got back to the villages, while the rest were busy about provisions, the generals and officers met: and here there was deep despondency. For on the one side were exceedingly high mountains; on the other a river of such depth that they failed to reach the bottom with their spears. In the midst of their perplexities, a Rhodian came up with a proposal, as follows: "I am ready, sirs to carry you across, four thousand heavy infantry at a time; if you will furnish me with what I need and give me a talent into the bargain for my pains." When asked, "What shall you need?" he replied: "Two thousand wine-skins. I see there are plenty of sheep and goats and asses. They have only to be flayed, and their skins inflated, and they will readily give us a passage. I shall want also the straps which you use for the baggage animals. With these I shall couple the skins to one another; then I shall moor each skin by attaching stones and letting them down like anchors into the water. Then I shall carry them across, and when I have fastened the links at both ends, I shall place layers of wood on them and a coating of earth on the top of that. You will see in a minute that there's no danger of your drowning, for



every skin will be able to support a couple of men without sinking, and the wood and earth will prevent your slipping off.”

The



*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured

**ἀσκέω** work on

**αὐτίκα** at once

**βασιλεύω** be king

**δεσμός** bond, latch, strap

**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross

**διό** because of which

**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also *δύνω*,

*ἐξαποδύνω*

**ἐλέγχω** to disgrace, shame

**ἐνθεν** thence, whence

**ἐνταῦθα** thither

**ἐξιμι** go forth (*εἶμι*)

**ἐπιβάλλω** throw upon, head for

**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable

**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide

**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel

**ἔργω** bound, fend off; do; also

*ἐργαθεῖν*

**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also

*ἰθύς*

**ἦκω** to have come

**ἦώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene

**θαυμάζω** marvel ~theater; also

*ἀποθαυμάζω*

**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider

~theater; also *θάομαι*, *θέομαι*

**ἔημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet

**ἱππεύς** (m) charioteer; also

*ἱππιοχάρμης*

**καταδύω** enter, sink

**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle

**κώμη** village

**λίθος** (m/f) stone ~monolith; also

*λιθάς*

**νεός** young; neuter: recently ~neon

**νόος** mind, intention ~paranoia

**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic; also *ὀμοῖος*

**ὄρνημι** set upon, arouse ~hormone;

also *ὀρόρνημι*

**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill

~hormone

**παρέχω** furnish

**πέραν** on the other side, across

**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus

**ῥάδιος** easy; also *ῥάιος*

**στρατηγέω** be a general

**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary

**συνάγω** assemble; join in battle

**τρέπω** divert ~trophy

**ῦλη** forest, firewood

**ὑστεραῖος** the next; later

**χώρα** place

ἂ ἀποδαρέντα καὶ φουσηθέντα ῥαδίως ἂν παρέχοι τὴν διάβασιν. δεῖσομαι δὲ καὶ τῶν δεσμῶν οἷς χρῆσθε περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· τούτοις ζεύξας τοὺς ἄσκους πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ὀρμίσας ἕκαστον ἄσκον λίθους ἀρτήσας καὶ ἀφείδω ὥσπερ ἀγκύρας εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ, διαγαγὼν καὶ ἀμφοτέρωθεν δῆσας ἐπιβαλὼ ὕλην καὶ γῆν ἐπιφορήσω· ὅτι μὲν οὖν οὐ καταδύσεσθε αὐτίκα μάλα εἴσεσθε· πᾶς γὰρ ἄσκος δὴ ἄνδρας ἔξει τοῦ μὴ καταδύναι. ὥστε δὲ μὴ ὀλισθάνειν ἢ ὕλη καὶ ἢ γῆ σχήσει. ἀκούσασι ταῦτα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς τὸ μὲν ἐνθύμημα χαρίεν ἐδόκει εἶναι, τὸ δ' ἔργον ἀδύνατον· ἦσαν γὰρ οἱ κωλύσοντες πέραν πολλοὶ ἵππεῖς, οἱ εὐθὺς τοῖς πρώτοις οὐδὲν ἂν ἐπέτρεπον τούτων ποιεῖν. ἐνταῦθα τὴν μὲν ὑστεραίαν ὑπανεχώρουν εἰς τοῦμπαλιν ἢ πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα εἰς τὰς ἀκαύστους κώμας, κατακαύσαντες ἔνθεν ἐξῆσαν· ὥστε οἱ πολέμοι οὐ προσήλαννον, ἀλλὰ ἐθεῶντο καὶ ὅμοιοι ἦσαν θαυμάζειν ὅποι ποτὲ τρέψονται οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ τί ἐν νῶ ἔχοιεν. ἐνταῦθα οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι στρατιῶται ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦσαν· οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ πάλιν συνῆλθον, καὶ συναγαγόντες τοὺς ἐαλωκότας ἤλεγχον τὴν κύκλω πᾶσαν χώραν τίς ἐκάστη εἴη. οἱ δὲ ἔλεγον ὅτι τὰ πρὸς μεσημβρίαν τῆς ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα εἴη καὶ Μηδίαν, δι' ἧσπερ ἦκοιεν, ἢ δὲ πρὸς ἕω ἐπὶ Σοῦσά τε καὶ Ἐκβάτανα φέροι, ἔνθα θερίζειν λέγεται βασιλεύς, ἢ δὲ διαβάντι τὸν ποταμὸν πρὸς ἐσπέραν ἐπὶ Λυδίαν καὶ Ἰωνίαν φέροι, ἢ δὲ διὰ τῶν ὀρέων καὶ πρὸς ἄρκτον τετραμμένη ὅτι εἰς Καρδούχους ἄγοι. τούτους δὲ

ἂ ἀποδάρεῖντα καὶ |blow, puff, blow out` , παρέχοι τὴν |crossing,  
 δειῆσομαι δὲ καὶ τῶν δεσμῶν οἷς χρῆσθε περὶ τὰ |passage  
 |beast of burden` :

|yoke, join` |ἀσκός?: wine skin ; or anchor, ἕκαστον |wine |λίθος?: made of  
 ἀρτήσας καὶ |ἀσκέω?: work on |beach |skin |stone  
 εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ, διαγαγὰ |stone`

|from or on δήσας ἐπιβαλῶ ὕλην καὶ |earth; a country` ἵτι μὲν οὖν  
 |both sides οὐ καταδύσεσθε αὐτίκα μάλα εἴσεσθε· πᾶς γὰρ |wine |δύη?:` anguish ; or  
 ἔξει τοῦ μὴ καταδῦναι. ὥστε δὲ μὴ |slip ἢ ὕλη |skin |δύο?: two ; or δυάω?:  
 σχήσει. ἀκούσασι ταῦτα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς τὸ μὲν ἐνθύμημα |afflict ; or δάω?: a cutter,  
 |put on, strip off  
 |graceful

ἐδόκει εἶναι, τὸ δ' ἔργον ἀδύνατον· ἦσαν γὰρ οἱ κωλύσοντες |across  
 πολλοὶ ἵππεῖς, οἱ εὐθὺς τοῖς πρώτοις οὐδὲν ἂν ἐπέτρεπον τούτων  
 ποιεῖν. ἐνταῦθα τὴν μὲν |the next; later` ἐχώρουν εἰς τοῦμπαλιν ἢ  
 πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα εἰς τὰς ἀκαύστους |village. |burn down` ἔνθεν

|go forth` ὥστε οἱ πολέμοι οὐ |go to, approach` λὰ ἐθεῶντο καὶ ὅμοιοι  
 ἦσαν θαυμάζειν ὅποι ποτὲ τρέψονται οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ τί ἐν νῶ  
 ἔχοιεν. ἐνταῦθα οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι στρατιῶται ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦσαν·  
 οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ πάλιν συνῆλθον, καὶ συναγαγόντες τοὺς ἐαλωκότας

|to disgrace, |circle, πᾶσαν χώραν τίς ἐκάστη εἶη. οἱ δὲ ἔλεγον  
 |shame |wheel  
 ὅτι τὰ πρὸς μεσημβρίαν τῆς ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα εἶη καὶ Μηδίαν, δι'  
 ἧσπερ ἦκοιεν, ἢ δὲ πρὸς ἔω ἐπὶ Σοῦσά τε καὶ Ἐκβάτανα φέροι,  
 ἔνθα θερίζων λέγεται βασιλεύς, ἢ δὲ |pass over, cross` γαμὸν πρὸς  
 ἐσπέραν ἐπὶ Λυδίαν καὶ Ἰωνίαν φέροι, ἢ δὲ διὰ τῶν ὀρέων καὶ  
 πρὸς |bear` τετραμμένη ὅτι εἰς Καρδούχους ἄγοι. τούτους δὲ

generals thought it a pretty invention enough, but its realisation impracticable, for on the other side were masses of cavalry posted and ready to bar the passage; who, to begin with, would not suffer the first detachment of crossers to carry out any item of the programme.

Under these circumstances, the next day they turned right about face, and began retracing their steps in the direction of Babylon to the unburnt villages, having previously set fire to those they left, so that the enemy did not ride up to them, but stood and stared, all agape to see in what direction the Hellenes would betake themselves and what they were minded to do. Here, again, while the rest of the soldiers were busy about provisions, the generals and officers met in council, and after collecting the prisoners together, submitted them to a cross-examination touching the whole country round, the names, and so forth, of each district.

The prisoners informed them that the regions south, through which they had come, belonged to the district towards Babylon and Media; the road east led to Susa and Ecbatana, where the king is said to spend summer and spring; crossing the river, the road west led to Lydia and Ionia; and the part through the mountains facing towards the Great Bear, led, they said, to the Carduchians. They were a people, so said the prisoners, dwelling up on the hills, addicted to war, and not subject to the king; so much so that once, when a royal army one hundred and twenty thousand strong had invaded them, not a man came back, owing to the intricacies of the country. Occasionally, however, they made truce or treaty with the satrap in the plain, and, for the nonce, there would be intercourse: “they will come in and out amongst us,” “and we will go in and out amongst them,” said the captives.

After hearing these statements, the generals seated apart those who claimed to have any special knowledge of the country in any direction; they put them to sit apart without making it clear which particular route they intended to take. Finally the resolution to which they

came was that they must force a passage through the hills into the territory of the Kurds; since, according to what their informants told them, when they had once passed these, they would find themselves in Armenia— the rich and large territory governed by Orontas; and from Armenia, it would be easy to proceed in any direction whatever. Thereupon they offered sacrifice, so as to be ready to start on the march as soon as the right moment appeared to have arrived. Their chief fear was that





*vocabulary*

**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**ἀνάβασις** -ος (f) going up, mounting, going inland  
**ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery (ἀνάγκη)  
**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease  
**ἀπονοστέω** go home  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**δείδω** to fear ~Deimos  
**δειπνέω** eat, dine  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**δώδεκα** twelve ~dodecahedron; also **δυοκαίδεκα**, **δωδέκα**  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also **ἐπεὶ**  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of  
**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἦνίκα** when  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**καθίζω** to seat ~sit; also ἵζω, **καθιζάνω**  
**μέντοι** however

**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**μυριάς** (f, 3) countless, myriad  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**ὁπότε** when; also **ὅπποτε**  
**ὄρнуμι** set upon, arouse ~hormone; also **ὕπόρнуμι**  
**ὄρομαι** keep an eye on  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill ~hormone  
**παραβαίνω** go with  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πορεύω** carry  
**προκαταλαμβάνω** seize beforehand  
**σατράπης** (m, 1) satrap, Persian governor  
**σπένδω** libate (σπονδή); also **ἀποσπένδω**  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιά** army  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπερβολή** a throwing beyond others  
**φάσκω** declare, promise, think  
**χωρίς** separately  
**ὥρα** season, time ~horoscope

ἔφασαν οἰκεῖν ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη καὶ πολεμικοὺς εἶναι, καὶ βασιλέως οὐκ ἀκούειν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐμβαλεῖν ποτε εἰς αὐτοὺς βασιλικὴν στρατιὰν δώδεκα μυριάδας· τούτων δ' οὐδέν' ἀπονοστήσαι διὰ τὴν δυσχωρίαν. ὁπότε μέντοι πρὸς τὸν σατράπην τὸν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ σπεύσαιτο, καὶ ἐπιμυγνύναι σφῶν τε πρὸς ἐκείνους καὶ ἐκείνων πρὸς ἑαυτούς. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐκάθισαν χωρὶς τοὺς ἑκασταχόσε φάσκοντας εἰδέναι, οὐδὲν δῆλον ποιήσαντες ὅποι πορεύεσθαι ἔμελλον. ἔδόκει δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι διὰ τῶν ὁρέων εἰς Καρδούχους ἐμβαλεῖν· τούτους γὰρ διελθόντας ἔφασαν εἰς Ἀρμενίαν ἦξειν, ἧς Ὀρόντας ἦρχε πολλῆς καὶ εὐδαίμονος. ἐντεῦθεν δ' εὐπορον ἔφασαν εἶναι ὅποι τις ἐθέλοι πορεύεσθαι. ἐπὶ τούτοις ἐθύσαντο, ὅπως ἡνίκα καὶ δοκοίη τῆς ὥρας τὴν πορείαν ποιοῦντο· τὴν γὰρ ὑπερβολὴν τῶν ὁρέων ἐδεδοίκεσαν μὴ προκαταληφθεῖη· καὶ παρήγγειλαν, ἐπειδὴ δειπνήσαιεν, συσκευασαμένους πάντας ἀναπαύεσθαι, καὶ ἔπεσθαι ἡνίκ' ἂν τις παραγγέλλῃ.

#### 4

#### 4.1

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει ἐγένετο μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα μετὰ τὴν μάχην ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς ὡς βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες Ἕλληνες ἐποίησαντο, καὶ ὅσα παραβάντος τὰς σπονδὰς βασιλέως

ἔφασαν οἰκεῖν ἀνά τὰ ὄρη καὶ πολεμικοὺς εἶναι, καὶ βασιλέως οὐκ ἀκούειν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐμβαλεῖν ποτε εἰς αὐτοὺς βασιλικὴν στρατιὰν δώδεκα |countless, γούτων δ' οὐδέν' |go home διὰ τὴν δυσχωρίαν. |myriad ὁπότε μέντοι πρὸς τὸν |satrap, Per- ἵ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ |libate sian gover- καὶ ἐπιμιγνύναι σφῶν τε |non ἰς ἐκείνους καὶ ἐκείνων πρὸς ἑαυτοὺς. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐκάθισαν χωρὶς τοὺς ἑκασταχόσε φάσκοντας εἰδέναί, οὐδὲν δῆλον ποιήσαντες ὅποι πορεύεσθαι ἔμελλον. ἐδόκει δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι διὰ τῶν ὁρέων εἰς Καρδούχους ἐμβαλεῖν· τούτους γὰρ διελθόντας ἔφασαν εἰς Ἀρμενίαν ἦξειν, ἧς Ὀρόντας ἦρχε πολλῆς καὶ |blessed with a εὐθεν δ' εὐπορον |good genius ἔφασαν εἶναι ὅποι τις ἐθέλοι πορεύεσθαι. ἐπὶ τούτοις ἐθύσαντο, ὅπως ἡνίκα καὶ δοκοίη τῆς ἄρας τὴν πορείαν ποιοῦντο· τὴν γὰρ |a throw- τῶν ὁρέων ἐδεδοίκεσαν μὴ |seize beforehand καὶ παρήγγει |other; |because δειπνήσαιεν, συσκευασαμένους πάντας |cause to cease αὐτὰ ἔπεισθαι ἡνίκ' ἂν τις παραγγέλλῃ.

## 4

### 4.1

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ |going up, ἰmount- μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα μετὰ |ing, going inland τὴν μάχην ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς ἄς βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες Ἕλληνες ἐποίησαντο, καὶ ὅσα |go with τὰς σπονδὰς βασιλέως

the high pass over the mountains must be occupied in advance: and a general order was issued, that after supper every one should get his kit together for starting, and repose, in readiness to follow as soon as the word of command was given.

#### 4

Given of the incidents of the march up to the battle, and of the occurrences after the battle during the truce which was established between the king and the Hellenes, who marched up with Cyrus, and thirdly, of the fighting to which the Hellenes were exposed, after the king and Tissaphernes had broken the treaty, while a Persian army hung on their rear. Having finally reached a point at which the Tigris was absolutely impassable owing to its depth and breadth, while there was no passage along the bank itself, and the Carduchian hills hung sheer over the river, the generals took the resolution above mentioned of forcing a passage through the mountains. The information derived from the prisoners taken along the way led them to believe that once across the Carduchian mountains they would have the choice either of crossing the Tigris— if they liked to do so— at its sources in Armenia, or of going round them, if so they preferred. Report further said that the sources of the Euphrates also were not far from those of the Tigris, and this is actually the case. The advance into the country of the Carduchians was conducted with a view partly to secrecy, and partly to speed, so as to effect their entry before the enemy could occupy the passes.)

#### 4.1

It was now about the last watch, and enough of the night remained to allow them to cross the valley under cover of darkness; when, at the word of command, they rose and set off on their march, reaching the mountains at daybreak. At this

*vocabulary*

**ἀγέομαι** go before, lead ~hegemony;  
also ἡγέομαι  
**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also ἄκρα,  
ἄκρη  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards,  
out to sea  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔφepω** drive, meet, follow  
**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**ἡνίκα** when  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
overtake  
**κίνδυνος** (ὄ) danger  
**κώμη** village  
**λανθάνω** escape notice; (mp+gen)  
forget ~Lethe; also καταλήθoμαι  
**λείπω** leave something; depart  
~eclipse; also λιπάω  
**μέγεθος** -υς (n, 3) tall, big (person)  
**μυχός** recess, nook

**ὄπισθεν** behind, hereafter; also ὄπιθεν  
**ὄπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
infantryman  
**ὄρnuμι** set upon, arouse ~hormone;  
also ὑπόρnuμι  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
~hormone  
**πάροδος** (f) detour, side way,  
mountain pass  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also  
πειρητίζω  
**πηγή** waters, headwaters  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also  
πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**πορεύω** carry  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**πρόσω** forward, in the future; also  
πόρρω, πρόσωθεν  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπερβάλλω** topple; outthrow  
**φθάνω** do first, outstrip  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch; also  
φυλακεύς  
**ὥδε** thus

καὶ Τισσαφέρνους ἐπολεμήθη πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπακολουθοῦντος τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἔνθα ὁ μὲν Τίγρης ποταμὸς παντάπασιν ἄπορος ἦν διὰ τὸ βάθος καὶ μέγεθος, πάροδος δὲ οὐκ ἦν, ἀλλὰ τὰ Καρδούχεια ὄρη ἀπότομα ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐκρέματο, ἐδόκει δὴ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς διὰ τῶν ὁρέων πορευτέον εἶναι. ἤκουον γὰρ τῶν ἀλίσκομένων ὅτι εἰ διέλθοιεν τὰ Καρδούχεια ὄρη, ἐν τῇ Ἀρμενίᾳ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ, ἦν μὲν βούλωνται, διαβήσονται, ἦν δὲ μὴ βούλωνται, περιάσι. καὶ τοῦ Εὐφράτου δὲ τὰς πηγὰς ἐλέγετο οὐ πρόσω τοῦ Τίγρητος εἶναι, καὶ ἔστιν οὕτως ἔχον. τὴν δ' εἰς τοὺς Καρδούχους ἐμβολὴν ὧδε ποιοῦνται, ἅμα μὲν λαθεῖν πειρώμενοι, ἅμα δὲ φθάσαι πρὶν τοὺς πολεμίους καταλαβεῖν τὰ ἄκρα.

Ἦνίκα δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ τὴν τελευταίαν φυλακὴν καὶ ἐλείπετο τῆς νυκτὸς ὅσον σκοταίους διελθεῖν τὸ πεδίον, τηνικαῦτα ἀναστάντες ἀπὸ παραγγέλσεως πορευόμενοι ἀφικνοῦνται ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. ἔνθα δὴ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἠγάγετο τοῦ στρατεύματος λαβὼν τὸ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν καὶ τοὺς γυμνήτας πάντας, Ξενοφῶν δὲ σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι ὀπλίταις εἶπετο οὐδένα ἔχων γυμνήτα· οὐδεὶς γὰρ κίνδυνος ἐδόκει εἶναι μὴ τις ἄνω πορευομένων ἐκ τοῦ ὀπισθεν ἐπίσποιο. καὶ ἐπὶ μὲν τὸ ἄκρον ἀναβαίνει Χειρίσοφος πρὶν τινας αἰσθέσθαι τῶν πολεμίων· ἔπειτα δ' ὑφηγεῖτο· ἐφείπετο δὲ αἰεὶ τὸ ὑπερβάλλον τοῦ στρατεύματος εἰς τὰς κόμας τὰς ἐν τοῖς ἄγκεσί τε καὶ μυχοῖς τῶν

καὶ Τισσαφέρνους ἐπολεμήθη πρὸς τοὺς Ἑλληνας ἐπακολουθοῦντος τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἔνθα ὁ μὲν Τίγρης ποταμὸς παντάπασιν ἄπορος ἦν διὰ τὸ βάθος καὶ μέγεθος, |detour, side way, ἦν, ἀλλὰ τὰ Καρδούχεια mountain pass ὄρη ἀπότομα ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐκρέματο, ἐδόκει δὴ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς διὰ τῶν ὀρέων πορευτέον εἶναι. ἤκουον γὰρ τῶν ἀλισκομένων ὅτι εἰ διέλθοιεν τὰ Καρδούχεια ὄρη, ἐν τῇ Ἀρμενίᾳ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ, ἦν μὲν βούλωνται, |pass over, cross ἔ μὴ βούλωνται, περιάσι. καὶ τοῦ Εὐφράτου δὲ τὰς πηγὰς ἐλέγετο οὐ |forward, in Τίγρητος εἶναι, καὶ ἔστιν οὕτως ἔχον. τὴν δ' εἰς τοὺς the future Καρδούχους ἐμβολὴν ὧδε ποιοῦνται, ἅμα μὲν λαθεῖν πειρώμενοι, ἅμα δὲ φθάσαι πρὶν τοὺς πολεμίους καταλαβεῖν τὰ |ἄκρις?: hilltop ; or ἄκρον?: extremity ; or ἄκρος?: at the edge, extreme Ἦνικά δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ τὴν τελευταίαν φυλακὴν καὶ ελεῖπετο τῆς νυκτὸς ὅσον σκοταίους διελθεῖν τὸ πεδίον, τηνικαῦτα ἀναστάντες ἀπὸ παραγγέλσεως πορευόμενοι ἀφικνοῦνται ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. ἔνθα δὴ Χειρίσοφος μὲν |go before, lead πτεύματος λαβὼν τὸ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν καὶ τοὺς γυμνήτας πάντας, Ξενοφῶν δὲ σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξιν ὀπλίταις εἶπετο οὐδένα ἔχων γυμνήτα· οὐδεὶς γὰρ κίνδυνος ἐδόκει εἶναι μὴ τις |accomplish, pass, waste; οὐ ὀπισθεν ἐπίσπιτο. καὶ upwards, out to sea ἐπὶ μὲν τὸ |ἄκρον?: extremity ; ; or πρὶν τινος αἰσθέσθαι τῶν ἄκρος?: at the edge, extreme πολεμίων· ἔπειτα δ' ὑφηγείτο· ἐφείπετο δὲ αἰεὶ τὸ |topple; τοῦ outthrow στρατεύματος εἰς τὰς |village τὰς ἐν τοῖς |bend; glen ἢ |recess, nook

stage of the march Cheirisophus, at the head of his own division, with the whole of the light troops, led the van, while Xenophon followed behind with the heavy infantry of the rearguard, but without any light troops, since there seemed to be no danger of pursuit or attack from the rear, while they were making their way up hill. Cheirisophus reached the summit without any of the enemy perceiving him. Then he led on slowly, and the rest of the army followed, wave upon wave, cresting the summit and descending into the villages which nestled in the hollows and recesses of the hills.

Thereupon the Carduchians abandoned their dwelling places, and with their wives and children fled to the mountains; so there was plenty of provisions to be got for the mere trouble of taking, and the homesteads too were well supplied with a copious store of bronze vessels and utensils which the Hellenes kept their hands off, abstaining at the same time from all pursuit of the folk themselves, gently handling them, in hopes that the Carduchians might be willing to give them friendly passage through their country, since they too were enemies of the king: only they helped themselves to such provisions as fell in their way, which indeed was a sheer necessity. But the Carduchians neither gave ear, when they called to them, nor showed any other friendly sign; and now, as the last of the Hellenes descended into the villages from the pass, they were already in the dark, since, owing to the narrowness of the road, the whole day had been spent in the ascent and descent. At that instant a party of the Carduchians, who had collected, made an attack on the hindmost men, killing some



*vocabulary*

**ἄκρον** crest, extremity  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also ἄκρα,  
 ἄκρη  
**ἀνάβασις** -ος (f) going up, mounting,  
 going inland  
**ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery  
 (ἀνάγκη)  
**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἀνδράποδον** (m/n, 3) slave  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἀποκτείνω** kill  
**αὐλίζομαι** be driven home  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
 ἀφήνω  
**διαφθείρω** destroy; pf.: to be beside  
 oneself  
**δίημι** drive off (διώκω); also δίεμαι  
**διώκω** chase  
**δυνατός** powerful, possible  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἥμερος** domesticated  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**καταβαίνω** go down  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon;  
 also καταλείπω

**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)  
 there is a danger that  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**κώμη** village  
**λίθος** (m/f) stone ~monolith; also  
 λιθάς  
**μέντοι** however  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**ὄλος** complete, generally, actually  
**ὄρνυμι** set upon, arouse ~hormone;  
 also ὑπόρνυμι  
**ὄρομαι** keep an eye on  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πυρά** (f/n) pyre ~pyre; also πυρή  
**πως** somehow  
**στενός** narrow  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιά** army  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble  
**σκολαῖος** slow, leisurely  
**ὑπακούω** listen, reply  
**φιλία** friendship  
**χώρα** place

ὀρέων. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ μὲν Καρδοῦχοι ἐκλιπόντες τὰς οἰκίας ἔχοντες καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια πολλὰ ἦν λαμβάνειν, ἦσαν δὲ καὶ χαλκώμασι παμπόλλοις κατεσκευασμένοι αἱ οἰκίαι, ὧν οὐδὲν ἔφερον οἱ Ἕλληνες, οὐδὲ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐδίωκον, ὑποφειδόμενοι, εἴ πως ἐθελήσειαν οἱ Καρδοῦχοι διέναι αὐτοὺς ὡς διὰ φιλίας τῆς χώρας, ἐπεὶ περ βασιλεῖ πολέμοι ἦσαν· τὰ μέντοι ἐπιτήδεια ὅτω τις ἐπιτυγχάνοι ἐλάμβανεν· ἀνάγκη γὰρ ἦν. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι οὔτε καλούντων ὑπήκουον οὔτε ἄλλο φιλικὸν οὐδὲν ἐποίουν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ τελευταῖοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατέβαινον εἰς τὰς κόμας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου ἤδη σκοταῖοι διὰ γὰρ τὸ στενὴν εἶναι τὴν ὁδὸν ὄλην τὴν ἡμέραν ἢ ἀνάβασις αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο καὶ κατάβασις, τότε δὴ συλλεγέντες τινὲς τῶν Καρδούχων τοῖς τελευταίοις ἐπετίθεντο, καὶ ἀπέκτεινάν τινας καὶ λίθοις καὶ τοξεύμασι κατέτρωσαν, ὀλίγοι ὄντες· ἐξ ἀπροσδοκίτου γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἐπέπεσε τὸ Ἑλληνικόν. εἰ μέντοι τότε πλείους συνελέγησαν, ἐκινδύνευσεν ἂν διαφθαρῆναι πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος. καὶ ταύτην μὲν τὴν νύκτα οὕτως ἐν ταῖς κόμαις ἠϋλίσθησαν· οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι πυρὰ πολλὰ ἔκαιον κύκλω ἐπὶ τῶν ὀρέων καὶ συνεώρων ἀλλήλους. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συνελθοῦσι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔδοξε τῶν τε ὑποζυγίων τὰ ἀναγκαῖα καὶ δυνατώτατα ἔχοντας πορεύεσθαι, καταλιπόντας τὰλλα, καὶ ὅσα ἦν νεωστὶ αἰχμάλωτα ἀνδράποδα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ πάντα ἀφείναι. σχολαίαν γὰρ ἐποίουν τὴν πορείαν πολλὰ ὄντα

ὀρέων. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ μὲν Καρδοῦχοι ἐκλιπόντες τὰς οἰκίας ἔχοντες καὶ  
 γυναικας καὶ παῖδας ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια πολλὰ ἦν  
 λαμβάνειν, ἦσαν δὲ καὶ χαλκώμασι παμπόλλοις κατεσκευασμένοι αἱ  
 οἰκίαι, ὧν οὐδὲν ἔφερον οἱ Ἕλληνες, οὐδὲ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐδίωκον,  
 ὑποφειδόμενοι, εἴ πως ἐθελήσειαν οἱ Καρδοῦχοι διένοι αὐτοὺς ὡς  
 διὰ |φιλία?: friendship ; ὁρ βασιλεῖ πολέμοι ἦσαν· τὰ μέντοι  
 |φιλος?: friend; beloved  
 ἐπιτήδεια ὅτῳ τις ἐπιτυγχάνοι ἐλάμβανεν· ἀνάγκη γὰρ ἦν. οἱ  
 δὲ Καρδοῦχοι οὔτε καλούντων ὑπήκουον οὔτε ἄλλο φιλικὸν οὐδὲν  
 ἐποίουν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ τελευταῖοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατέβαινον εἰς τὰς  
 |village ἰπὸ τοῦ |ἄκρον?: extremity ; ὁρ ἄκρος?: narrow ἵναι τὴν ὁδὸν  
 |at the edge, extreme  
 ὄλην τὴν ἡμέραν ἢ |going up, mount- ἰγένετο καὶ κατὰβασις, τότε  
 |ing, going inland  
 δὴ συλλεγόντες τινὲς τῶν Καρδοῦχων τοῖς τελευταίοις ἐπετίθεντο,  
 καὶ ἀπέκτεινάν τινας καὶ |λίθεος?: made of stone πτέρωσαν, ὀλίγοι  
 |; or λίθος?: stone  
 ὄντες· ἐξ ἀπροσδοκίτου γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἐπέπεσε τὸ Ἑλληνικόν. εἰ μέντοι  
 τότε πλείους |collect, ἐκινδύνευσεν ἂν διαφθαρῆναι πολὺ τοῦ  
 |assemble  
 στρατεύματος. καὶ ταύτην μὲν τὴν νύκτα οὕτως ἐν ταῖς |village  
 |be driven home ἔ Καρδοῦχοι |pyre πολλὰ ἔκαιον |circle, ἐπὶ τῶν  
 |wheel  
 ὀρέων καὶ συνεώρων ἀλλήλους. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συνελθοῦσι τοῖς  
 στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔδοξε τῶν τε |beast of burden  
 τὰ ἀναγκαῖα καὶ δυνατώτατα ἔχοντας πορεύεσθαι, καταλιπόντας  
 τὰλλα, καὶ ὅσα ἦν νεωστὶ αἰχμάλωτα |slave ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ  
 πάντα ἀφεῖναι. |slow, leisurely ἐποίουν τὴν πορείαν πολλὰ ὄντα

and wounding others with stones and arrows— though it was quite a small body who attacked. The fact was, the approach of the Hellenic army had taken them by surprise; if, however, they had mustered in larger force at this time, the chances are that a large portion of the army would have been annihilated. As it was, they got into quarters, and bivouacked in the villages that night, while the Carduchians kept many watch-fires blazing in a circle on the mountains, and kept each other in sight all round.

But with the dawn the generals and officers of the Hellenes met and resolved to proceed, taking only the necessary number of stout baggage animals, and leaving the weaklings behind. They resolved further to let go free all the lately-captured slaves in the host; for the pace of the march was necessarily rendered slow by the quantity of animals and prisoners, and the number of non-combatants in attendance on these was excessive, while, with such a crowd of human beings to satisfy, twice the amount of provisions had to be procured and carried. These resolutions passed, they caused a proclamation by herald to be made for their enforcement.

When they had breakfasted and the march recommenced, the generals planted themselves a little to one side in a narrow place, and when they found any of the aforesaid slaves or other property still retained, they confiscated them. The soldiers yielded obedience, except where some smuggler, prompted by desire of a good-looking boy or woman, managed to make off with his prize. During this day they contrived to get along after a fashion, now fighting and now resting. But on the next day they were visited by a

*vocabulary*

**ἀγέομαι** go before, lead ~hegemony;  
 also ἡγέομαι  
**ἄλλοτε** at another time  
**ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery  
 (ἀνάγκη)  
**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease  
**ἀναχάζω** pull back ~heir  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**ἀφαιρέω** take away  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
 ἀφήκω  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διαμπερές** right through  
**δόξα** what one expects ~doxology  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἔδω** eat ~eat  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐπίκειμαι** impose; shut a door  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
 ἰθύς  
**ἥμερος** domesticated  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit

**ἰσχυρός** strong, forceful, violent  
**κεφαλή** head; height ~gable  
**κηρύσσω** be a henchman, summon  
 people  
**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic; also ὁμοιος  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πλευρά** rib  
**πλήν** except  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πράγμα** -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing,  
 affair  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**σπουδή** (f/m) 'pushing,' with difficulty,  
 quickly, seriously; an effort (σπεύδω)  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στενός** narrow  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await  
**ὑστεραῖος** the next; later  
**ὑφίστημι** promise, undertake  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape  
**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα, πολλοὶ δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ τούτοις ὄντες ἀπόμαχοι ἦσαν, διπλάσιά τε ἐπιτήδεια ἔδει πορίζεσθαι καὶ φέρεσθαι πολλῶν τῶν ἀνθρώπων ὄντων. δόξαν δὲ ταῦτα ἐκήρυξαν οὕτω ποιεῖν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀριστήσαντες ἐπορεύοντο, ὑποστήσαντες ἐν τῷ στενῷ οἱ στρατηγοί, εἴ τι εὐρίσκοιεν τῶν εἰρημένων μὴ ἀφειμένον, ἀφηροῦντο, οἱ δ' ἐπέθοντο, πλὴν εἴ τις ἔκλειπεν, οἶον ἢ παιδὸς ἐπιθυμίας ἢ γυναικὸς τῶν εὐπρεπῶν. καὶ ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν οὕτως ἐπορεύθησαν, τὰ μὲν τι μαχόμενοι τὰ δὲ καὶ ἀναπανόμενοι. εἰς δὲ τὴν ὑστεραίαν γίνεται χειμῶν πολὺς, ἀναγκαῖον δ' ἦν πορεύεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἰκανὰ τὰπιτήδεια. καὶ ἤγειτο μὲν Χειρίσοφος, ὠπισθοφυλάκει δὲ Ξενοφῶν. καὶ οἱ πολέμοι ἰσχυρῶς ἐπετίθεντο, καὶ στενῶν ὄντων τῶν χωρίων ἐγγὺς προσιόντες ἐτόξευον καὶ ἐσφενδόνων ὥστε ἠναγκάζοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπιδιώκοντες καὶ πάλιν ἀναχάζοντες σχολῇ πορεύεσθαι· καὶ θαμνὰ παρήγγελλεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ὑπομένειν, ὅτε οἱ πολέμοι ἰσχυρῶς ἐπικέοιτο. ἐνταῦθα ὁ Χειρίσοφος ἄλλοτε μὲν ὅτε παρεγγυῶτο ὑπέμενε, τότε δὲ οὐχ ὑπέμενεν, ἀλλ' ἦγε ταχέως καὶ παρηγγυὰ ἔπεσθαι, ὥστε δῆλον ἦν ὅτι πράγμα τι εἴη· σχολῇ δ' οὐκ ἦν ἰδεῖν παρελθόντι τὸ αἴτιον τῆς σπουδῆς· ὥστε ἢ πορεία ὁμοία φυγῇ ἐγίνετο τοῖς ὠπισθοφύλαξι. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἀποθνήσκει ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς Λακωνικὸς Λεώνυμος τοξευθεὶς διὰ τῆς ἀσπίδος καὶ τῆς σπολάδος εἰς τὰς πλευράς, καὶ Βασίας Ἄρκας διαμπερὲς τὴν κεφαλὴν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ σταθμόν, εὐθὺς ὥσπερ

τὰ **|beast of burden** ἰ αἰχμάλωτα, πολλοὶ δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ τούτοις ὄντες ἀπόμαχοι ἦσαν, διπλάσιά τε ἐπιτήδεια ἔδει πορίζεσθαι καὶ φέρεσθαι πολλῶν τῶν ἀνθρώπων ὄντων. δόξαν δὲ ταῦτα ἐκήρυξαν οὕτω ποιεῖν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀριστήσαντες ἐπορεύοντο, **|promise, undertake** ἐν τῷ **|narrow** ἰ στρατηγοί, εἴ τι εὐρίσκοιεν τῶν εἰρημένων μὴ ἀφεμένον, ἀφηροῦντο, οἱ δ' ἐπέιθοντο, πλὴν εἴ τις ἔκλειψεν, οἷον ἢ παιδὸς ἐπιθυμήσας ἢ γυναικὸς τῶν εὐπρεπῶν. καὶ ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν οὕτως ἐπορεύθησαν, τὰ μὲν τι μαχόμενοι τὰ δὲ καὶ **|cause to cease** εἰς δὲ τὴν **|the next; later** ται χειμῶν πολὺς, ἀναγκαῖον δ' ἦν πορεύεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἰκανὰ τὰπιτήδεια. καὶ **|go before, lead** ἴσοφος, ὠπισθοφυλάκει δὲ Ξενοφῶν. καὶ οἱ πολέμοι ἰσχυρῶς ἐπετίθεντο, καὶ **|narrow** ὄντων τῶν χωρίων ἐγγὺς προσιώντες **|shoot an arrow at** ἰ δόνων· ὥστε ἠναγκάζοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπιδιώκοντες καὶ πάλιν **|pull back** σχολῇ πορεύεσθαι· καὶ θαμνὰ παρήγγελλεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ὑπομένειν, ὅτε οἱ πολέμοι ἰσχυρῶς **|impose; shut a door** ἰ Χειρίσοφος ἄλλοτε μὲν ὅτε παρεγγυῶτο ὑπέμενε, τότε δὲ οὐχ ὑπέμενε, ἀλλ' ἦγε ταχέως καὶ παρηγγυὰ ἔπεσθαι, ὥστε δῆλον ἦν ὅτι πρᾶγμα τι εἴη· σχολῇ δ' οὐκ ἦν ἰδεῖν παρελθόντι τὸ **|guilty** τῆς σπουδῆς· ὥστε ἡ πορεία ὁμοία φυγῇ ἐγίνετο τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἀποθνήσκει ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς Λακωνικὸς Λεώνυμος τοξευθεὶς διὰ τῆς ἀσπίδος καὶ τῆς σπολάδος εἰς τὰς **|rib** καὶ Βασίας Ἀρκὰς **|right through** τὴν κεφαλὴν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ **|cottage; post** ἰ ὥσπερ

great storm, in spite of which they were obliged to continue the march, owing to insufficiency of provisions. Cheirisophus was as usual leading in front, while Xenophon headed the rearguard, when the enemy began a violent and sustained attack. At one narrow place after another they came up quite close, pouring in volleys of arrows and slingstones, so that the Hellenes had no choice but to make sallies in pursuit and then again recoil, making but very little progress. Over and over again Xenophon would send an order to the front to slacken pace, when the enemy were pressing their attack severely. As a rule, when the word was so passed up, Cheirisophus slackened; but sometimes instead of slackening, Cheirisophus quickened, sending down a counter-order to the rear to follow on quickly. It was clear that there was something or other happening, but there was no time to go to the front and discover the cause of the hurry. Under the circumstances the march, at any rate in the rear, became very like a rout, and here a brave man lost his life, Cleonymus the Laconian, shot with an arrow in the ribs right through shield and corselet, as also Basias, an Arcadian, shot clean through the head.

As soon as they reached a halting-place, Xenophon, without more ado, came up to Cheirisophus, and took him to task for not having waited, "whereby," he said, "we were forced to fight and flee at the same moment; and now it has cost us the lives of two fine fellows; they are dead, and we were not able to pick up their bodies or bury them." Cheirisophus answered: "Look up there," pointing as he spoke to



*vocabulary*

**αἰτιάομαι** blame  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also ἄκρα,  
 ἄκρη  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἀναιρέω** take up  
**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer,  
 reject, defend oneself  
**ἀποκτείνω** kill  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**δυνατός** powerful, possible  
**ἐκεῖ** there  
**ἐλέγχω** to disgrace, shame  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐρωτάω** ask about something  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
 ἰθύς  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief  
**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake  
**κεῖμαι** lie  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**ὄρνυμι** set upon, arouse ~hormone;

also ὄπρῳ  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**ὄχλος** mob, crowd  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πράγμα** -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing,  
 affair  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**προσάγω** bring to a place  
**πως** somehow  
**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry  
 ~repudiate  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous  
**φθάνω** do first, outstrip  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φόβος** fear, rout, panic ~phobia  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard  
 ~phylactery  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**χώρα** place  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

εἶχεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον ἠτιᾶτο αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐχ ὑπέμενεν, ἀλλ' ἠναγκάζοντο φεύγοντες ἅμα μάχεσθαι. καὶ νῦν δύο καλῶ τε καὶ ἀγαθῶ ἄνδρε τέθνατον καὶ οὔτε ἀνελέσθαι οὔτε θάψαι ἐδυνάμεθα. ἀποκρίνεται ὁ Χειρίσοφος· Βλέψον, ἕφη, πρὸς τὰ ὄρη καὶ ἰδὲ ὡς ἄβατα πάντα ἐστί· μία δ' αὕτη ὁδὸς ἦν ὄρῳς ὀρθία, καὶ ἐπὶ ταύτῃ ἀνθρώπων ὄρῳν ἕξεστί σοι ὄχλον τοσοῦτον, οἱ κατειληφότες φυλάττουσι τὴν ἔκβασιν. ταῦτ' ἐγὼ ἔσπευδον καὶ διὰ τοῦτό σε οὐχ ὑπέμενον, εἴ πως δυναίμην φθάσαι πρὶν κατειληφθῆαι τὴν ὑπερβολήν· οἱ δ' ἠγεμόνες οὓς ἔχομεν οὐ φασιν εἶναι ἄλλην ὁδόν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν λέγει· Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ ἔχω δύο ἄνδρας. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἡμῶν πράγματα παρεῖχον, ἐνηδρεύσαμεν, ὅπερ ἡμᾶς καὶ ἀναπνεῦσαι ἐποίησε, καὶ ἀπεκτείναι μέν τινος αὐτῶν, καὶ ζῶντας προυθυμήθημεν λαβεῖν αὐτοῦ τούτου ἕνεκα ὅπως ἠγεμόσιν εἰδόσι τὴν χώραν χρῆσαίμεθα.

Καὶ εὐθὺς ἀγαγόντες τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἠλεγχον διαλαβόντες εἴ τινα εἰδεῖεν ἄλλην ὁδὸν ἢ τὴν φανεράν. ὁ μὲν οὖν ἕτερος οὐκ ἔφη μάλα πολλῶν φόβων προσαγομένων· ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδὲν ἀφέλιμον ἔλεγεν, ὀρώντος τοῦ ἐτέρου κατεσφάγη. ὁ δὲ λοιπὸς ἔλεξεν ὅτι οὗτος μὲν οὐ φαίη διὰ ταῦτα εἰδέναί, ὅτι αὐτῷ ἐτύγχανε θυγάτηρ ἐκεῖ παρ' ἀνδρὶ ἐκδεδομένη· αὐτὸς δ' ἔφη ἠγήσασθαι δυνατὴν καὶ ὑποζυγίοις πορεύεσθαι ὁδόν. ἐρωτώμενος δ' εἰ εἴη τι ἐν αὐτῇ δυσπάριτον χωρίον, ἔφη εἶναι ἄκρον ὃ εἰ μὴ τις προκαταλήψοιτο, ἀδύνατον ἔσεσθαι παρελθεῖν. ἐνταῦθα δ' ἐδόκει συγκαλέσαντας

εἶχεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον |blame αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐχ  
 ὑπέμενε, ἀλλ' ἠναγκάζοντο φεύγοντες ἅμα μάχεσθαι. καὶ νῦν δύο  
 καλῶ τε καὶ ἀγαθῶ ἄνδρε τέθνατον καὶ οὔτε ἀνελέσθαι οὔτε θάψαι  
 ἐδυνάμεθα. ἀποκρίνεται ὁ Χειρίσοφος· Βλέψον, ἔφη, πρὸς τὰ ὄρη καὶ  
 ἰδὲ ὡς ἄβαρα πάντα ἐστί· μία δ' αὐτῆ ὁδὸς ἦν ὄρᾱς |shrill καὶ ἐπὶ  
 ταύτῃ ἀνθρώπων ὄρᾱν |go forth ἰ ὄχλον τοσοῦτον, οἳ κατειληφότες  
 φυλάττουσι τὴν |way out ταῦτ' ἐγὼ ἔσπευδον καὶ διὰ τοῦτό σε οὐχ  
 ὑπέμενον, εἴ πως |enter, put on, strip off ται πρὶν κατειληφθαι τὴν |a throw-  
 οἱ δ' ἠγεμόνες οὐς ἔχομεν οὐ φασι εἶναι ἄλλην ὁδόν. ὁ |ing beyond  
 ἄλλῶν  
 λέγει· Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ ἔχω δύο ἄνδρας. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἡμῖν πράγματα παρείχον,  
 ἐνηδρῆσαμεν, ὅπερ ἡμᾶς καὶ |catch one's breath καὶ ἀπεκτείναν  
 τινες αὐτῶν, καὶ |live προθυμήθημεν λαβεῖν αὐτοῦ τούτου ἔνεκα  
 ὅπως ἠγεμόσιν εἰδόσι τὴν χώραν χρησαίμεθα.

Καὶ εὐθὺς ἀγαγόντες τοὺς ἀνθρώπους |to disgrace, shame ἰς εἴ  
 τινα εἰδεῖν ἄλλην ὁδὸν ἢ τὴν φανεράν. ὁ μὲν οὖν ἕτερος οὐκ  
 ἔφη μάλα πολλῶν φόβων προσαγομένων· ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδὲν ὠφέλιμον  
 ἔλεγεν, ὀρώντος τοῦ ἐτέρου κατεσφάγη. ὁ δὲ λοιπὸς ἔλεξεν ὅτι  
 οὗτος μὲν οὐ φαίη διὰ ταῦτα εἰδέναι, ὅτι αὐτῷ ἐτύγχανε θυγάτηρ  
 |ἔξειμι?: 'go forth' ; or ἐκεῖ?: αὐτὸς δ' ἔφη ἠγγήσεσθαι δυνατὴν καὶ  
 |there ; or κείμαι?: lie  
 |beast of burden ἔσθαι ὁδόν. ἐρωτώμενος δ' εἰ εἴη τι ἐν αὐτῇ  
 δυσπάριτον χωρίον, ἔφη εἶναι |ἄκρον?: 'extremity, ; or ἠψίμοιτο,  
 |ἄκρος?: at the edge, extreme  
 ἀδύνατον ἔσεσθαι παρελθεῖν. ἐνταῦθα δ' ἐδοκεῖ |call together

the mountain, “do you see how inaccessible it all is? only this one road, which you see, going straight up, and on it all that crowd of men who have seized and are guarding the single exit. That is why I hastened on, and why I could not wait for you, hoping to be beforehand with them yonder in seizing the pass: the guides we have got say there is no other way.” And Xenophon replied: “But I have got two prisoners also; the enemy annoyed us so much that we laid an ambushade for them, which also gave us time to recover our breaths; we killed some of them, and did our best to catch one or two alive— for this very reason— that we might have guides who knew the country, to depend upon.”

The two were brought up at once and questioned separately: “Did they know of any other road than the one visible?” The first said no; and in spite of all sorts of terrors applied to extract a better answer—“ no,” he persisted. When nothing could be got out of him, he was killed before the eyes of his fellow. This latter then explained: “Yonder man said, he did not know, because he has got a daughter married to a husband in those parts. I can take you,” he added, “by a good road, practicable even for beasts.” And when asked whether there was any point on it difficult to pass, he replied that there was a col which it would be impossible to pass unless it were occupied in advance.

Then it was resolved to summon the officers of the light infantry and some of those of the heavy infantry, and to acquaint them with the state of affairs,

*vocabulary*

**ἀγέομαι** go before, lead ~hegemony;  
also ἡγέομαι  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also ἄκρα,  
ἄκρη  
**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards,  
out to sea  
**ἄξιος** worthy ~axiom  
**δείλη** afternoon ~diem  
**δισχίλιοι** 2000  
**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω,  
ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἔδω** eat ~eat  
**ἐκβαίνω** come forth, disembark  
**ἐκβασίς** (f) way out  
**ἐμέω** vomit ~emetic  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἔψω** boil, be boiling  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide,  
chief  
**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**κατέχω** hold down; cover; also  
κατασχεθεῖν  
**λανθάνω** escape notice; (mp+gen)  
forget ~Lethe; also καταλήθομαι  
**νέα** ship ~navy; also ναῦς, νηῦς

**νέομαι** go; come home ~nostalgia  
**νέος** young; neuter: recently ~neon  
**νέω** spin; swim ~neuro; also νήχω  
**νόος** mind, intention ~paranoia  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
~odometer; also οὐδός  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
infantryman  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**περίεμι** be superior to  
**πλήθος** -ους (3) numerical superiority  
**πορεύω** carry  
**προσέχω** direct a thing to  
**σάλπιγξ** -γος (f/m) trumpet  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
~semaphore  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιά** army  
**συμπορεύομαι** proceed together,  
assemble  
**συντίθημι** hearken, mark  
**ὕφιστημι** promise, undertake  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard  
~phylactery  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χαράδρα** torrent, gorge  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

λοχαγούς καὶ πελταστὰς καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν λέγειν τε τὰ παρόντα καὶ ἐρωτᾶν εἴ τις αὐτῶν ἔστιν ὅστις ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς ἐθέλοι ἂν γενέσθαι καὶ ὑποστὰς ἐθελοντῆς πορεύεσθαι. ὑφίσταται τῶν μὲν ὀπλιτῶν Ἀριστῶνυμος Μεθυδριεὺς Ἄρκας καὶ Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος Ἄρκας, ἀντιστασιάζων δὲ αὐτοῖς Καλλίμαχος Παρράσιος Ἄρκας καὶ οὗτος ἔφη ἐθέλειν πορεύεσθαι προσλαβὼν ἐθελοντὰς ἐκ παντὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος· ἐγὼ γάρ, ἔφη, οἶδα ὅτι ἔψονται πολλοὶ τῶν νέων ἐμοῦ ἡγουμένον. ἐκ τούτου ἐρωτῶσιν εἴ τις καὶ τῶν γυμνήτων ταξίαρχων ἐθέλοι συμπορεύεσθαι. ὑφίσταται Ἀριστεὺς Χίος, ὃς πολλαχοῦ πολλοῦ ἄξιος τῇ στρατιᾷ εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐγένετο.

## 4.2

Καὶ ἦν μὲν δειλίη, οἱ δ' ἐκέλευον αὐτοὺς ἐμφαγόντας πορεύεσθαι. καὶ τὸν ἡγεμόνα δῆσαντες παραδιδόασιν αὐτοῖς, καὶ συντίθενται τὴν μὲν νύκτα, ἦν λάβωσι τὸ ἄκρον, τὸ χωρίον φυλάττειν, ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τῇ σάλπιγγι σημαίνειν· καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἄνω ὄντας ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς κατέχοντας τὴν φανεράν ἐκβασιν, αὐτοὶ δὲ συμβοηθήσειν ἐκβαίνοντες ὡς ἂν δύνωνται τάχιστα. ταῦτα συνθέμενοι οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύοντο πλῆθος ὡς δισχίλιοι· καὶ ὕδωρ πολὺ ἦν ἐξ οὐρανοῦ· Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔχων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἡγείτο πρὸς τὴν φανεράν ἐκβασιν, ὅπως ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ οἱ πολέμοι προσέχιοιεν τὸν νοῦν καὶ ὡς μάλιστα λάθοιεν οἱ περιμόντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ χαράδρᾳ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἦν ἔδει

λοχαγούς καὶ |light troops καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν λέγειν τε τὰ παρόντα  
καὶ ἐρωτᾶν εἴ τις αὐτῶν ἔστιν ὅστις ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς ἐθέλοι ἂν  
γενέσθαι καὶ |promise, undertake ἑλόντῃς πορεύεσθαι. |promise, undertake τῶν μὲν  
ὀπλιτῶν Ἀριστάννυμος Μεθυδριεὺς Ἀρκὰς καὶ Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος  
Ἀρκὰς, ἀντιστασιάζων δὲ αὐτοῖς Καλλίμαχος Παρράσιος Ἀρκὰς καὶ  
οὗτος ἔφη ἐθέλειν πορεύεσθαι προσλαβὼν ἐθελοντὰς ἐκ παντὸς τοῦ  
στρατεύματος· ἐγὼ γάρ, ἔφη, οἶδα ὅτι ἔψονται πολλοὶ τῶν |νέα?: ship ; or  
ἐμοῦ ἡγουμένου. ἐκ τούτου ἐρωτῶσιν εἴ τις καὶ τῶν γυμνῶν |νέος?: young;  
ταξιάρχων ἐθέλοι |proceed together, assemble |promise, undertake Ἀριστέας Χίονος |neuter: recently  
πολλαχοῦ πολλοῦ ἀξίως τῇ στρατιᾷ εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐγένετο. |come home ;  
|or νέω?: spin;  
|swim

## 4.2

Καὶ ἦν μὲν |afternoon ἡμέρας ἐκέλευον αὐτοὺς ἐμφαγόντας πορεύεσθαι.  
καὶ τὸν ἡγεμόνα δῆσαντες παραδιδόασιν αὐτοῖς, καὶ |hearken, mark  
μὲν νύκτα, ἦν λάβωσι τὸ |ἄκρον?: `extremity` ; `or` ἡμέρα δὲ τῇ |ἄκρος?: at the edge, extreme  
ἡμέρα τῇ |trumpet σημαίνει καὶ τοὺς μὲν |accomplish, pass, waste; upwards,  
κατέχοντας τὴν φανεράν |way out αὐτοὶ δὲ συμβοηθήσειν |come forth  
ὡς ἂν δύνωνται τάχιστα. ταῦτα |hearken, mark ἡμέρας ἐπορεύοντο πλῆθος  
ὡς |2000 καὶ ὕδωρ πολὺ ἦν ἐξ οὐρανοῦ· Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔχων τοὺς  
ὀπισθοφύλακας |go before, lead, φανεράν |way out ὅπως ταύτῃ τῇ  
ὁδῷ οἱ πολέμοι προσέχουεν τὸν νοῦν καὶ ὡς μάλιστα λάθοιεν οἱ  
|be superior to εἰ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ |torrent, οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἦν ἔδει  
|gorge

and ask them whether any of them were minded to distinguish themselves, and would step forward as volunteers on an expedition. Two or three heavy infantry soldiers stepped forward at once— two Arcadians, Aristonymus of Methydrum, and Agasias of Stymphalus— and in emulation of these, a third, also an Arcadian, Callimachus from Parrhasia, who said he was ready to go, and would get volunteers from the whole army to join him. “I know,” he added, “there will be no lack of youngsters to follow where I lead.” After that they asked, “Were there any captains of light infantry willing to accompany the expedition?” Aristreas, a Chian, who on several occasions proved his usefulness to the army on such service, volunteered.

## 4.2

It was already late afternoon, when they ordered the storming party to take a snatch of food and set off; then they bound the guide and handed him over to them. The agreement was, that if they succeeded in taking the summit they were to guard the position that night, and at daybreak to give a signal by bugle. At this signal the party on the summit were to attack the enemy in occupation of the visible pass, while the generals with the main body would bring up their succours; making their way up with what speed they might. With this understanding, off they set, two thousand strong; and there was a heavy downpour of rain, but Xenophon, with his rearguard, began advancing to the visible pass, so that the enemy might fix his attention on this road, and the party creeping round might, as much as possible, elude observation. Now when the rearguard, so advancing, had reached a ravine



*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also *ἄκρα*,  
*ἄκρη*  
**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards,  
 out to sea  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**βάβαρος** non-Greek  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**δεῖπνον** meal, food; also *δεῖπνος*  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**διάγω** ferry across  
**διό** because of which  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐλαχύς** small; comp.: less ~light  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
*ἰθύς*  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake  
**κατέχω** hold down; cover; also  
*κατασχεθεῖν*  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**κυλίνδω** roll ~cylinder  
**λανθάνω** escape notice; (mp+gen)  
 forget ~Lethe; also *καταλήθομαι*  
**λείπω** leave something; depart

~eclipse; also *λιπάω*  
**λίθος** (m/f) stone ~monolith; also  
*λιθάς*  
**μέντοι** however  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also *οὐδός*  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also *οἶμαι*,  
*οἴομαι*  
**ὅλος** complete, generally, actually  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also *ὁδός*  
**παύω** stop something ~pause  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also  
*πειρηγίζω*  
**πελάζω** bring/come to, near, into  
 contact with; also *προσπελάζω*, *πιλνάω*  
**περίειμι** be superior to  
**πέτρα** rock, cliff, reef ~petrified  
**πορεύω** carry  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
**σκότος** (m/n) darkness, shadow  
 ~shadow  
**τεκμαίρομαι** ordain, foretell (*τέκμωρ*)  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
*ἐντυγχάνω*  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous  
**φθέγγομαι** make a sound, utter  
**φύλαξ** (m) guard; sentry; also  
*φυλακός*, *φυλακτήρ*

διαβάντας πρὸς τὸ ὄρθιον ἐκβαίνειν, τηρικαῦτα ἐκύλινδον οἱ βάρβαροι  
 ὀλοιπρόχους ἀμαξιαίους καὶ μείζους καὶ ἐλάττους, οἱ φερόμενοι πρὸς  
 τὰς πέτρας παίοντες διεσφενδονῶντο· καὶ παντάπασι οὐδὲ πελάσαι  
 οἷόν τ' ἦν τῇ εἰσόδῳ. ἔνιοι δὲ τῶν λοχαγῶν, εἰ μὴ ταύτῃ δύναιτο,  
 ἄλλῃ ἐπειρῶντο· καὶ ταῦτα ἐποίουν μέχρι σκότος ἐγένετο· ἐπεὶ  
 δὲ ᾤοντο ἀφανεῖς εἶναι ἀπίοντες, τότε ἀπήλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον·  
 ἐτύχανον δὲ καὶ ἀνάριστοι ὄντες αὐτῶν οἱ ὀπισθοφυλακήσαντες. οἱ  
 μέντοι πολέμοι οὐδὲν ἐπαύσαντο δι' ὅλης τῆς νυκτὸς κυλίνδοντες  
 τοὺς λίθους· τεκμαίρεσθαι δ' ἦν τῷ ψόφῳ. οἱ δ' ἔχοντες τὸν  
 ἡγεμόνα κύκλῳ περιμόντες καταλαμβάνουσι τοὺς φύλακας ἀμφὶ πῦρ  
 καθημένους· καὶ τοὺς μὲν κατακαίνοντες τοὺς δὲ καταδιώξαντες  
 αὐτοὶ ἐνταῦθ' ἔμενον ὡς τὸ ἄκρον κατέχοντες. οἱ δ' οὐ κατεῖχον,  
 ἀλλὰ μαστὸς ἦν ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν παρ' ὃν ἦν ἡ στενὴ αὕτη ὁδὸς ἐφ' ἣ  
 ἐκάθηντο οἱ φύλακες. ἔφοδος μέντοι αὐτόθεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους  
 ἦν οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ φανερᾷ ὁδῷ ἐκάθηντο. καὶ τὴν μὲν νύκτα ἐνταῦθα  
 διήγαγον· ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ὑπέφαιεν, ἐπορεύοντο σιγῇ συντεταγμένοι  
 ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· καὶ γὰρ ὀμίχλη ἐγένετο, ὥστ' ἔλαθον ἐγγὺς  
 προσελθόντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον ἀλλήλους, ἢ τε σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγγετο καὶ  
 ἀλαλάξαντες ἔεντο ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλὰ  
 λιπόντες τὴν ὁδὸν φεύγοντες ὀλίγοι ἀπέθνησκον· εὐζωνοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν.  
 οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἀκούσαντες τῆς σάλπιγγος εὐθὺς ἔεντο ἄνω  
 κατὰ τὴν φανερὰν ὁδόν· ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν στρατηγῶν κατὰ ἀτριβεῖς

|pass over, cross |shrill |come forth ,νικαῦτα|roll οἱ βάρβαροι  
 ὀλοιτρόχους ἀμαξιαίους καὶ μείζους καὶ ἐλάττους, οἱ φερόμενοι πρὸς  
 τὰς πέτρας παίοντες διεσφενδονῶντο· καὶ παντάπασιν οὐδὲ πελάσαι  
 οἶόν τ' ἦν τῇ |entrance|be in ἵε τῶν λοχαγῶν, εἰ μὴ ταύτῃ |enter, put on,  
 |strip off  
 ἄλλῃ ἐπειρῶντο· καὶ ταῦτα ἐποίουν μέχρι σκότος ἐγένετο· ἐπεὶ  
 δὲ ᾤοντο ἀφανεῖς εἶναι ἀπίοντες, τότε ἀπῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δειπνον·  
 ἐτύχανον δὲ καὶ ἀνάριστοι ὄντες αὐτῶν οἱ ὀπισθοφυλακίσαντες. οἱ  
 μέντοι πολέμοι οὐδὲν ἐπαύσαντο δι' ὅλης τῆς νυκτὸς |roll  
 τοὺς |λίθος?: |ordain, δ' ἦν τῷ ψόφῳ. οἱ δ' ἔχοντες τὸν  
 |made |foretell  
 ἡγεμό |of stone, |be superior to λαμβάνουσι τοὺς |guard; ἀμφὶ πύρ  
 ; |wheel |sentry  
 καθῆμι |λίθος?: καὶ τοὺς μὲν κατακαίνοντες τοὺς δὲ καταδιώξαντες  
 |stone  
 αὐτοὶ ἐνταῦθ' ἔμενον ὡς τὸ |ἄκρον?: 'extremity'; 'or' κατεῖχον,  
 |ἄκρος?: at the edge, extreme  
 ἀλλὰ |breast ἦν ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν παρ' ὅν ἦν ἡ |narrow ἵτη ὁδὸς ἐφ' ἣ  
 ἐκάθηντο οἱ |guard; ἔφοδος μέντοι |from that place`· πολεμίους  
 |sentry  
 ἦν οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ φανερᾷ ὁδῷ ἐκάθηντο. καὶ τὴν μὲν νύκτα ἐνταῦθα  
 |ferry ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα |pull out from under ἰσιγῆ συντεταγμένοι  
 |across  
 ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· καὶ γὰρ ὀμίχλη ἐγένετο, ὥστ' ἔλαθον ἐγγὺς  
 προσελθόντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον ἀλλήλους, ἣ τε |trumpet |make a sound, utter  
 ἀλαλάξαντες ἴεντο ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλὰ  
 λιπόντες τὴν ὁδὸν φεύγοντες ὀλίγοι ἀπέθνησκον· |well-girded ἦσαν.  
 οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἀκούσαντες τῆς |trumpet εὐθὺς ἴεντο |accomplish,  
 |pass, waste;  
 κατὰ τὴν φανερὰν ὁδόν· ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν στρατηγῶν κατὰ ἀπὸ |upwards, out to  
 |sea

which they must cross in order to strike up the steep, at that instant the barbarians began rolling down great boulders, each a wagon load, some larger, some smaller; against the rocks they crashed and splintered flying like slingstones in every direction— so that it was absolutely out of the question even to approach the entrance of the pass. Some of the officers finding themselves baulked at this point, kept trying other ways, nor did they desist till darkness set in; and then, when they thought they would not be seen retiring, they returned to supper. Some of them who had been on duty in the rearguard had had no breakfast (it so happened). However, the enemy never ceased rolling down their stones all through the night, as was easy to infer from the booming sound.

The party with the guide made a circuit and surprised the enemy's guards seated round their fire, and after killing some, and driving out the rest, took their places, thinking that they were in possession of the height. As a matter of fact they were not, for above them lay a breast-like hill skirted by the narrow road on which they had found the guards seated. Still, from the spot in question there was an approach to the enemy, who were seated on the pass before mentioned.

Here then they passed the night, but at the first glimpse of dawn they marched stealthily and in battle order against the enemy. There was a mist, so that they could get quite close without being observed. But as soon as they caught sight of one another, the trumpet sounded, and with a loud cheer they rushed upon the fellows, who did not wait their coming, but left the road and made off; with the loss of only a few lives however, so nimble were they. Cheirisophus and his men, catching the sound of the bugle, charged up by the well-marked road, while others of the generals pushed their way up by pathless routes,

*vocabulary*

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἀποκόπτω** cut off  
**αὔθις** back, again, moreover ~after  
**βάβαρος** non-Greek  
**δεύτερος** second  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐκβαίνω** come forth, disembark  
**ἐντυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also τυγχάνω  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief  
**ἡμισυς** half ~hemisphere  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon;  
 also καταλείπω  
**κατέχω** hold down; cover; also  
 κατασχεθεῖν  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**λείπω** leave something; depart  
 ~eclipse; also λιπάω

**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**ὅπη** wherever, however  
**ὄπισθεν** behind, hereafter; also ὄπιθεν  
**ὄρθιος** shrill  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow  
**πορεύω** carry  
**προκαταλαμβάνω** seize beforehand  
**προσβάλλω** hit (+acc+dat); mp: heed  
**στενός** narrow  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τέως** meanwhile, for a while  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at  
**τρόπος** (m/n) turn; manner, kind,  
 fashion  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπέιπον** say as preface, premise  
**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden  
**φυγᾶς** -δος (m, 3) exile, refugee  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

ὁδοὺς ἐπορεύοντο ἢ ἔτυχον ἕκαστοι ὄντες, καὶ ἀναβάντες ὡς ἐδύναντο ἀνίμων ἀλλήλους τοῖς δόρασι. καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι συνέμιξαν τοῖς προκαταλαβοῦσι τὸ χωρίον. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔχων τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων τοὺς ἡμίσεις ἐπορεύετο ἥπερ οἱ τὸν ἡγεμόνα ἔχοντες· εὐδωτάτη γὰρ ἦν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις· τοὺς δὲ ἡμίσεις ὄπισθεν τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἔταξε. πορευόμενοι δ' ἐντυγχάνουσι λόφῳ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ κατειλημμένῳ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων, οὓς ἢ ἀποκόψαι ἦν ἀνάγκη ἢ διεξέυχθαι ἀπὸ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων. καὶ αὐτοὶ μὲν ἂν ἐπορεύθησαν ἥπερ οἱ ἄλλοι, τὰ δὲ ὑποζύγια οὐκ ἦν ἄλλη ἢ ταύτη ἐκβῆναι. ἔνθα δὴ παρακελευσάμενοι ἀλλήλοις προσβάλλουσι πρὸς τὸν λόφον ὀρθίους τοῖς λόχοις, οὐ κύκλῳ ἀλλὰ καταλιπόντες ἄφοδον τοῖς πολεμίοις, εἰ βούλονται φεύγειν. καὶ τέως μὲν αὐτοὺς ἀναβαίνοντας ὅπη ἐδύναντο ἕκαστος οἱ βάρβαροι ἐτόξευον καὶ ἔβαλλον, ἐγγὺς δ' οὐ προσίεντο, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ λείπουσι τὸ χωρίον. καὶ τοῦτόν τε παρεληλύθεσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ ἕτερον ὁρώσῃ ἐμπροσθεν λόφον κατεχόμενον ἐπὶ τοῦτον αὐθις ἐδόκει πορεύεσθαι. ἐννοήσας δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν μὴ, εἰ ἔρημον καταλίποι τὸν ἡλωκότα λόφον, καὶ πάλιν λαβόντες οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπιθοῦντο τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις παριούσιν ἐπὶ πολὺ δ' ἦν τὰ ὑποζύγια ἄτε διὰ στενῆς τῆς ὁδοῦ πορευόμενα, καταλείπει ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου λοχαγούς Κηφισόδωρον Κηφισοφώντος Ἀθηναῖον καὶ Ἀμφικράτην Ἀμφιδήμου Ἀθηναῖον καὶ Ἀρχαγόραν Ἀργεῖον φυγάδα, αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν τοῖς λοιποῖς ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν δεύτερον λόφον, καὶ τῷ αὐτῷ τρόπῳ καὶ τοῦτον

ὁδοὺς ἐπορεύοντο ἢ ἔτυχον ἕκαστοι ὄντες, καὶ ἀναβάντες ὡς ἐδύναντο  
 ἀνίμων ἀλλήλους τοῖς δόρασι. καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι συνέμειξαν τοῖς  
 |seize beforehand ὁ χωρίον. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔχων τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων  
 τοὺς ἡμίσεις ἐπορεύετο ἥπερ οἱ τὸν ἡγεμόνα ἔχοντες· εὐοδατῆτη γὰρ  
 ἦν τοῖς |beast of burden δὲ ἡμίσεις ὀπισθεν τῶν |beast of burden  
 πορευόμενοι δ' |meet, find, ob-|neck, crest on a |δοῦ κατελλημμένα  
 ταιν; succeed|helmet, hilltop  
 ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμῶν |happen, |part off ἦν ἀνάγκη ἢ διεξεῦχθαι ἀπὸ  
 |open to exist  
 τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων. καὶ αὐτοὶ μὲν ἂν ἐπορεύθησαν ἥπερ οἱ  
 ἄλλοι, τὰ δὲ |beast of burden, ἄλλη ἢ ταύτη |come forth ἴθα δὲ  
 παρακελευσάμενοι ἀλλήλοις |hit πρὸς τὸν |neck, |shrill  
 (+acc+dat); |crest  
 τοῖς |ambush, |circle, ἀλλὰ |mp: heed |tes ἄφοδον τοῖς |on πολεμῶν, εἰ  
 |band, |wheel  
 βούλῃ |childbirth|γεν. καὶ |meanwhile, οὐς ἀναβαίνοντας |met, ἐδύναντο  
 |for a while |hilltop  
 ἕκαστος οἱ βάρβαροι |shoot an arrow at ἔν, ἐγγὺς δ' οὐ προσίεντο,  
 ἀλλὰ φυγῇ λείπουσι τὸ χωρίον. καὶ τοῦτόν τε παρεληλύθεσαν  
 οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ ἕτερον ὁρώσιν ἔμπροσθεν |neck, crest on a |ν ἐπὶ  
 |helmet, hilltop  
 τοῦτον αὐθις ἐδόκει πορεύεσθαι. ἐννοήσας δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν μῆ, εἰ ἔρημον  
 καταλίπει τὸν ἡλωκότα |neck, crest on a |λαβόντες οἱ πολέμιοι  
 |helmet, hilltop  
 ἐπιθοῖντο τοῖς |beast of burden ἴσιν ἐπὶ πολὺ δ' ἦν τὰ |beast of burden  
 διὰ |narrow ἧς ὁδοῦ πορευόμενα, καταλείπει ἐπὶ τοῦ |neck, crest on a  
 |helmet, hilltop  
 Κηφισόδωρον Κηφισοφῶντος Ἀθηναῖον καὶ Ἀμφικράτην Ἀμφιδήμου  
 Ἀθηναῖον καὶ Ἀρχαγόραν Ἀργεῖον |exile, αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν τοῖς λοιποῖς  
 |refugee  
 ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν δεύτερον |neck, crest on a |ῶ τρόπῳ καὶ τοῦτον  
 |helmet, hilltop

where each division chanced to be; the men mounting as they were best able, and hoisting one another up by means of their spears; and these were the first to unite with the party who had already taken the position by storm. Xenophon, with the rearguard, followed the path which the party with the guide had taken, since it was easiest for the beasts of burthen; one half of his men he had posted in rear of the baggage animals; the other half he had with himself. In their course they encountered a crest above the road, occupied by the enemy, whom they must either dislodge or be themselves cut off from the rest of the Hellenes. The men by themselves could have taken the same route as the rest, but the baggage animals could not mount by any other way than this.

Here then, with shouts of encouragement to each other, they dashed at the hill with their storming columns, not from all sides, but leaving an avenue of escape for the enemy, if he chose to avail himself of it. For a while, as the men scrambled up where each best could, the natives kept up a fire of arrows and darts, yet did not receive them at close quarters, but presently left the position in flight. No sooner, however, were the Hellenes safely past this crest, than they came in sight of another in front of them, also occupied, and deemed it advisable to storm it also. But now it struck Xenophon that if they left the ridge just taken unprotected in their rear, the enemy might re-occupy it and attack the baggage animals as they filed past, presenting a long extended line owing to the narrowness of the road by which they made their way. To obviate this, he left some officers in charge of the ridge—Cephisodorus, son of Cephisophon, an Athenian; Amphicrates, the son of Amphidemus, an Athenian; and Archagoras, an



*vocabulary*

**αείρω** raise, win ~aorta; also *αἴρω*  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also *ἄκρα*,  
*ἄκρη*  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἄλλομαι** to jump ~sally  
**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**ἀποδίδωμι** repay  
**ἀράομαι** pray, vow, invoke  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**δείδω** to fear ~Deimos  
**διαλέγω** go through, debate  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
**διό** because of which  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔργω** bound, fend off; do; also  
*ἐργαθεῖν*  
**ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**θνήσκω** die ~euthanasia; also  
*ἐχθνήσκω*  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**καταβαίνω** go down

**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake  
**κορυφή** peak, crown  
**λείπω** leave something; depart  
 ~eclipse; also *λιπάω*  
**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**μαστός** *μαζοῦ* nipple, breast  
**νεκρός** corpse ~necrotic  
**νέος** young; neuter: recently ~neon  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also *οὐδός*  
**ὄπισθεν** behind, hereafter; also *ὄπιθεν*  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**πέτρα** rock, cliff, reef ~petrified  
**πλήθος** -υς (3) numerical superiority  
**πλήθω** be filled ~plenum  
**πολιορκέω** besiege  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**τρίτος** third  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὕπαγω** lead  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch; also  
*φυλακεύς*  
**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
 ~heir

αίρουσιν. ἔτι δ' αὐτοῖς τρίτος μαστὸς λοιπὸς ἦν πολὺ ὀρθιώτατος ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς ἐπὶ τῷ πυρὶ καταληφθείσης φυλακῆς τῆς νυκτὸς ὑπὸ τῶν ἐθελοντῶν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, λείπουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι ἀμαχητὶ τὸν μαστόν, ὥστε θαυμαστὸν πᾶσι γενέσθαι καὶ ὑπόπτειον δέισαντας αὐτοὺς μὴ κυκλωθέντες πολιορκοῦντο ἀπολιπεῖν. οἱ δ' ἄρα ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου καθορῶντες τὰ ὀπισθεν γιγνόμενα πάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἐχώρουν. καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν σὺν τοῖς νεωτάτοις ἀνέβαινεν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους ἐκέλευσεν ὑπάγειν, ὅπως οἱ τελευταῖοι λόχοι προσμείξαιαν, καὶ προελθόντας κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐν τῷ ὀμαλῷ θέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα εἶπε. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ ἦλθεν Ἀρχαγόρας ὁ Ἀργεῖος πεφευγὼς καὶ λέγει ὡς ἀπεκόπησαν ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου καὶ ὅτι τεθναῖσι Κηφισόδωρος καὶ Ἀμφικράτης καὶ ἄλλοι ὅσοι μὴ ἀλόμενοι κατὰ τῆς πέτρας πρὸς τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἀφίκοντο. ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξάμενοι οἱ βάρβαροι ἦκον ἐπ' ἀντίπορον λόφον τῷ μαστῷ· καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν διελέγετο αὐτοῖς δι' ἑρμηνέως περὶ σπονδῶν καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπήγει. οἱ δὲ ἔφασαν ἀποδώσειν ἐφ' ᾧ μὴ καίειν τὰς οἰκίας. συνωμολόγει ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ τὸ μὲν ἄλλο στράτευμα παρήει, οἱ δὲ ταῦτα διελέγοντο, πάντες οἱ ἐκ τούτου τοῦ τόπου συνερρήσαν· ἐνταῦθα ἴσταντο οἱ πολέμοι. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἤρξαντο καταβαίνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ μαστοῦ πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους ἐνθα τὰ ὄπλα ἔκειντο, ἴεντο δὴ οἱ πολέμοι πολλῷ πλήθει καὶ θορύβῳ· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τῆς κορυφῆς τοῦ

αίρουσιν. ἔτι δ' αὐτοῖς τρίτος |breast λοιπὸς ἦν πολὺ ὀρθιώτατος  
 ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς ἐπὶ τῷ πυρὶ καταληφθείσης φυλακῆς τῆς νυκτὸς ὑπὸ  
 τῶν ἐθελοντῶν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, λείπουσιν  
 οἱ βάρβαροι |without fight a|breast ὥστε θαυμαστὸν πᾶσι γενέσθαι  
 καὶ |guess, observe, be suspicious of| τας αὐτοὺς μὴ κυκλωθέντες πολιορκοῦντο  
 ἀπολιπεῖν. οἱ δ' ἄρα ἀπὸ τοῦ |ἄκρον| took down τὰ ὀπισθεν γιγνόμενα  
 πάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλ|ex-trem-| ἐχώρουν. καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν σὺν  
 τοῖς νεωτάτοις ἀνέβαινεν ἐπὶ τὸν |ἄκρον?| extremity ; ὁρῆευσεν  
 ὑπάγειν, ὅπως οἱ τελευταῖοι |ἄκρος?| at the edge, extreme  
 κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐν τῷ |at the ambush, edge, child-smooth| θῆναι τὰ ὄπλα εἶπε. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ  
 τῷ χρόνῳ |ἄλθομαι?| become whole ; or ἔρχομαι?| : go, come  
 ἀπεκόπησαν ἀπὸ τοῦ |neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop| ἠθῶσι Κηφισόδωρος καὶ  
 Ἀμφικράτης καὶ ἄλλοι ὅσοι μὴ ἀλόμενοι κατὰ τῆς πέτρας πρὸς  
 τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἀφίκοντο. ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξάμενοι οἱ βάρβαροι  
 ἤκον ἐπ' ἀντίπορον |neck, crest|breast καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν διελέγετο  
 αὐτοῖς δι' |interpreter|met, hilltop| ὧν καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς |demand to have returned| γει  
 δὲ ἔφασαν ἀποδώσειν ἐφ' ᾧ μὴ καίειν τὰς οἰκίας. ἀ|returned| γει  
 ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ τὸ μὲν ἄλλο στράτευμα παρήει, οἱ  
 δὲ ταῦτα διελέγοντο, πάντες οἱ ἐκ τούτου τοῦ τόπου συνερρήσαν·  
 ἐνταῦθα ἴσαντο οἱ πολέμιοι. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἤρξαντο καταβαίνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ  
 |breast| πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους ἔνθα τὰ ὄπλα ἔκειντο, ἔεντο δὴ οἱ πολέμιοι  
 πολλῶ πλῆθει καὶ θορύβῳ· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τῆς κορυφῆς τοῦ

Argive exile— while he in person with the rest of the men attacked the second ridge; this they took in the same fashion, only to find that they had still a third knoll left, far the steepest of the three. This was none other than the mamelon mentioned as above the outpost, which had been captured over their fire by the volunteer storming party in the night. But when the Hellenes were close, the natives, to the astonishment of all, without a struggle deserted the knoll. It was conjectured that they had left their position from fear of being encircled and besieged, but the fact was that they, from their higher ground, had been able to see what was going on in the rear, and had all made off in this fashion to attack the rearguard.

So then Xenophon, with the youngest men, scaled up to the top, leaving orders to the rest to march on slowly, so as to allow the hindmost companies to unite with them; they were to advance by the road, and when they reached the level to ground arms. Meanwhile the Argive Archagoras arrived, in full flight, with the announcement that they had been dislodged from the first ridge, and that Cephisodorus and Amphicrates were slain, with a number of others besides, all in fact who had not jumped down the crags and so reached the rearguard. After this achievement the barbarians came to a crest facing the mamelon, and Xenophon held a colloquy with them by means of an interpreter, to negotiate a truce, and demanded back the dead bodies. These they agreed to restore if he would not burn their houses, and to these terms Xenophon agreed. Meanwhile, as the rest of the army filed past, and the colloquy was proceeding, all the people of the place had time to gather gradually, and the enemy formed; and as soon as the Hellenes began to descend from the mamelon to join the others where the troops were halted, on rushed the foe, in full

*vocabulary*

ἄμφω both ~amphora  
 ἀναβαίνω go up, embark  
 ἄνευ away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp.~sin  
 ἄνω accomplish, pass, waste; upwards,  
 out to sea  
 ἀπέρχομαι go away, depart  
 ἀποδίδωμι repay  
 ἀποχωρέω go away from, retreat  
 ἀσπίς -δος (f) shield ~spit  
 αὐτοῦ here, there  
 βάρβαρος non-Greek  
 διαπράσσω travel over, accomplish  
 δυνατός powerful, possible  
 ἐγγύθεν near  
 ἐλαφρός nimble; light ~elevator  
 ἐπιμελέομαι take care of, oversee  
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable  
 ἐπιτίθημι put on, apply  
 ἔπομαι follow, support, chase ~sequel  
 ἡγεμῶν -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief  
 ἠώς ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
 ἰσχυρός strong, forceful, violent  
 καταβαίνω go down  
 κωλύω hinder, prevent  
 λύω loosen, free, ransom ~loose

μαστός μαζοῦ nipple, breast  
 νεκρός corpse ~necrotic  
 νομίζω consider customary  
 ὁδός (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
 οἶνος wine ~wine  
 ὅμοῦ together  
 ὅπη wherever, however  
 ὀπισθεν behind, hereafter; also ὀπιθεν  
 ὀπλίτης (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
 ὀπότε when; also ὀπότε  
 ὄρνωμι set upon, arouse ~hormone;  
 also ὑπόρνωμι  
 ὄρος ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
 παρέχω furnish  
 πειράζω test a person  
 πειράω try, test ~empirical; also  
 πειρητίζω  
 πορεύω carry  
 πράγμα -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing,  
 affair  
 πρό before, forward ~prolog  
 τόξον bow ~toxic  
 ὕστεραῖος the next; later  
 χωρίον area; downwards

μαστοῦ ἀφ' οὗ Ξενοφῶν κατέβαιεν, ἐκυλίνδουν πέτρους· καὶ ἐνὸς  
 μὲν κατέαξαν τὸ σκέλος, Ξενοφῶντα δὲ ὁ ὑπασπιστῆς ἔχων τὴν  
 ἀσπίδα ἀπέλιπεν· Εὐρύλοχος δὲ Λουσιεύς Ἄρκας προσέδραμεν αὐτῷ  
 ὀπλίτης, καὶ πρὸ ἀμφοῖν προβεβλημένος ἀπεχώρει, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι  
 πρὸς τοὺς συντεταγμένους ἀπῆλθον. ἐκ δὲ τούτου πᾶν ὁμοῦ ἐγένετο  
 τὸ Ἑλληνικόν, καὶ ἐσκήνησαν αὐτοῦ ἐν πολλαῖς καὶ καλαῖς οἰκίαις  
 καὶ ἐπιτηδεῖοις δαψιλέσι· καὶ γὰρ οἶνος πολὺς ἦν, ὥστε ἐν λάκκοις  
 κονιατοῖς εἶχον. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος διεπράξαντο ὥστε  
 λαβόντες τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπέδοσαν τὸν ἡγεμόνα· καὶ πάντα ἐποίησαν  
 τοῖς ἀποθανοῦσιν ἐκ τῶν δυνατῶν ὥσπερ νομίζεται ἀνδράσιν ἀγαθοῖς.  
 τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία ἄνευ ἡγεμόνος ἐπορεύοντο· μαχόμενοι δ' οἱ πολέμιοι  
 καὶ ὄπη εἶη στενὸν χωρίον προκαταλαμβάνοντες ἐκώλουν τὰς  
 παρόδους. ὅποτε μὲν οὖν τοὺς πρώτους κωλύοιεν, Ξενοφῶν ὄπισθεν  
 ἐκβαίνων πρὸς τὰ ὄρη ἔλκε τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς ὁδοῦ τοῖς πρώτοις  
 ἀνωτέρω πειρώμενος γίγνεσθαι τῶν κωλούντων, ὅποτε δὲ τοῖς  
 ὄπισθεν ἐπιθοῖντο, Χειρίσοφος ἐκβαίνων καὶ πειρώμενος ἀνωτέρω  
 γίγνεσθαι τῶν κωλούντων ἔλκε τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς παρόδου τοῖς  
 ὄπισθεν· καὶ αἰεὶ οὕτως ἐβοήθουν ἀλλήλοις καὶ ἰσχυρῶς ἀλλήλων  
 ἐπεμέλοντο. ἦν δὲ καὶ ὅποτε αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀναβάσι πολλὰ πράγματα  
 παρέιχον οἱ βάρβαροι πάλιν καταβαίνουσι· ἐλαφροὶ γὰρ ἦσαν  
 ὥστε καὶ ἐγγύθεν φεύγοντες ἀποφεύγειν· οὐδὲν γὰρ εἶχον ἄλλο ἢ  
 τόξα καὶ σφενδόνας. ἄριστοι δὲ καὶ τοξόται ἦσαν· εἶχον δὲ τόξα

|breast ἀφ' οὗ Ξενοφῶν κατέβαινε, ἐκυλίνδουν |rock καὶ ἐνὸς  
 μὲν |break up, |leg Ξενοφῶντα δὲ ὁ ὑπασπιστῆς ἔχων τὴν  
 ἀσπίδα |shatter |leave Εὐρύλοχος δὲ Λουσιεὺς Ἄρκας προσέδραμεν αὐτῷ  
 ὀπίτης |fail αὐτῷ πρὸ ἀμφοῦν προβεβλημένος ἀπεχώρει, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι  
 πρὸς τοὺς συντεταγμένους ἀπῆλθον. ἐκ δὲ τούτου πᾶν ὄμοῦ ἐγένετο  
 τὸ Ἑλληνικόν, καὶ ἐσκήνησαν αὐτοῦ ἐν πολλαῖς καὶ καλαῖς οἰκίαις  
 καὶ ἐπιτηδεῖοις δαψιλέσι· καὶ γὰρ οἶνος πολὺς ἦν, ὥστε ἐν λάκκοις  
 κοινατοῖς εἶχον. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος διεπράξαντο ὥστε  
 λαβόντες τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπέδοσαν τὸν ἡγεμόνα· καὶ πάντα ἐποίησαν  
 τοῖς ἀποθανοῦσιν ἐκ τῶν |δυνατῆς?:" lord, ruler ;" or ἴσιν ἀγαθοῖς.  
 τῇ δὲ |the next; later |δυνατός?: powerful, possible ἡγεμόνος ἐπορεύοντο· μαχόμενοι δ' οἱ πολέμοι  
 καὶ ὄπη εἶη |narrow χωρίον |seize beforehand ἐκάλουν τὰς  
 |detour, side way, μὲν οὖν τοὺς πρώτους κωλύοιεν, Ξενοφῶν ὄπισθεν  
 |mountain pass |come forth ἵος τὰ ὄρη ἔλκε τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς ὁδοῦ τοῖς πρώτοις  
 ἀνωτέρω πειρώμενος γίνεσθαι τῶν κωλούντων, ὅποτε δὲ τοῖς  
 ὄπισθεν ἐπιθοῖντο, Χειρίσοφος |come forth ἢ πειρώμενος ἀνωτέρω  
 γίνεσθαι τῶν κωλούντων ἔλκε τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς |detour, side way, moun-  
 |mountain pass ὄπισθεν· καὶ αἰεὶ οὕτως ἐβοήθουν ἀλλήλοις καὶ ἰσχυρῶς ἀλλήλων  
 ἐπεμέλοντο. ἦν δὲ καὶ ὅποτε αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀναβάσι πολλὰ πράγματα  
 παρεῖχον οἱ βάρβαροι πάλιν καταβαίνουσιν· |nimble; γὰρ ἦσαν  
 ὥστε καὶ |near φεύγοντες |avoid, es- οὐδὲν γὰρ εἶχον ἄλλο ἢ  
 τόξα καὶ |sling ἄριστοι |cape, go |free καὶ |archer ἦσαν· εἶχον δὲ τόξα

force, with hue and cry. They reached the summit of the mamelon from which Xenophon was descending, and began rolling down crags. One man's leg was crushed to pieces. Xenophon was left by his shield-bearer, who carried off his shield, but Eurylochus of Lusias, an Arcadian hoplite, ran up to him, and threw his shield in front to protect both of them; so the two together beat a retreat, and so too the rest, and joined the serried ranks of the main body.

After this the whole Hellenic force united, and took up their quarters there in numerous beautiful dwellings, with an ample store of provisions, for there was wine so plentiful that they had it in cemented cisterns. Xenophon and Cheirisophus arranged to recover the dead, and in return restored the guide; afterwards they did everything for the dead, according to the means at their disposal, with the customary honours paid to good men.

Next day they set off without a guide; and the enemy, by keeping up a continuous battle and occupying in advance every narrow place, obstructed passage after passage. Accordingly, whenever the van was obstructed, Xenophon, from behind, made a dash up the hills and broke the barricade, and freed the vanguard by endeavouring to get above the obstructing enemy. Whenever the rear was the point attacked, Cheirisophus, in the same way, made a detour, and by endeavouring to mount higher than the barricaders, freed the passage for the rear rank; and in this way, turn and turn about, they rescued each other, and paid unflinching attention to their mutual needs. At times it happened that, the relief party having mounted, encountered considerable annoyance in their descent from the barbarians, who were so agile that they allowed them to come up quite close, before they turned back, and still escaped, partly no doubt because the only weapons they had to carry were



*vocabulary*

**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, out to sea  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain  
**ἀριστερός** left-hand  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**αὖ** again, then again; next ~after  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἔλκω** drag, pull, hoist; rape; also ἔλκέω  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἕξ** six ~hexagon  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἑπτά** seven  
**ἡδέως** pleasantly  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also ἵππιοχάρμης  
**κάτω** (+acc) throughout, upon, in accord with; (+gen) down into/through/over/from ~cataract; also κάδ, κατά  
**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down, have sex  
**κώμη** village  
**ὅποτε** when; also ὅπότε  
**ὄρνημι** set upon, arouse ~hormone;

also ὄρνημι  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill ~hormone  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὀδός  
**ὀχθέω** be carried away emotionally  
**ὄχθη** riverbank; any water's edge  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (πούς)  
**πέραν** on the other side, across  
**πλέος** full; also πλεῖος, πλέως  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πονέω** work; be busy  
**πόνος** toil, suffering  
**πορεύω** carry  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πού** no doubt; somewhere/how  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**σύμπας** all together  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at  
**τόξον** bow ~toxic  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**χώρα** place  
**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat) ~heir  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

ἐγγὺς τριπήχη, τὰ δὲ τοξεύματα πλέον ἢ διπήχη· εἶλκον δὲ τὰς νευρὰς ὅποτε τοξεύοιεν πρὸς τὸ κάτω τοῦ τόξου τῷ ἀριστερῷ ποδὶ προσβαίνοντες. τὰ δὲ τοξεύματα ἐχώρει διὰ τῶν ἀσπίδων καὶ διὰ τῶν θωράκων. ἐχρῶντο δὲ αὐτοῖς οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ λάβοιεν, ἀκοντίοις ἐναγκυλῶντες. ἐν τούτοις τοῖς χωρίοις οἱ Κρήτες χρησιμώτατοι ἐγένοντο. ἦρχε δὲ αὐτῶν Στρατοκλῆς Κρής.

### 4.3

Ταύτην δ' αὖ τὴν ἡμέραν ἠγλίσθησαν ἐν ταῖς κόμαις ταῖς ὑπὲρ τοῦ πεδίου παρὰ τὸν Κεντρίτην ποταμόν, εὖρος ὡς δίπλεθρον, ὅς ὀρίζει τὴν Ἀρμενίαν καὶ τὴν τῶν Καρδούχων χώραν. καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐνταῦθα ἀνέπνευσαν ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες πεδίον· ἀπέιχε δὲ τῶν ὀρέων ὁ ποταμὸς ἕξ ἢ ἑπτὰ στάδια τῶν Καρδούχων. τότε μὲν οὖν ἠγλίσθησαν μάλα ἠδέως καὶ τάπιτήδεια ἔχοντες καὶ πολλὰ τῶν παρεληλυθότων πόνων μνημονεύοντες. ἑπτὰ γὰρ ἡμέρας ὅσασπερ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῶν Καρδούχων πάσας μαχόμενοι διετέλεσαν, καὶ ἔπαθον κακὰ ὅσα οὐδὲ τὰ σύμπαντα ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους. ὡς οὖν ἀπηλλαγμένοι τούτων ἠδέως ἐκοιμήθησαν.

Ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὀρώσω ἰππέας που πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐξωπλισμένους ὡς κωλύσοντας διαβαίνειν, πεζοὺς δ' ἐπὶ ταῖς ὄχθαις παρατεταγμένους ἄνω τῶν ἰππέων ὡς κωλύσοντας εἰς τὴν Ἀρμενίαν

ἐγγὺς τριπήχη, τὰ δὲ τοξεύματα πλέον ἢ διπήχη· εἶλκον δὲ τὰς  
 |bowstring 'τε |shoot an arrow at |(+acc) throughout, upon, in accord with; (+gen)  
 |proceed; step on ` δὲ τοξεύματα ἐχώρει διὰ τῶν ἀσπίδων καὶ διὰ τῶν  
 θωράκων. ἐχρῶντο δὲ αὐτοῖς οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ λάβοιεν, ἀκοντίους  
 ἐναγκυλῶντες. ἐν τούτοις τοῖς χωρίοις οἱ Κρήτες χρησιμώτατοι  
 ἐγένοντο. ἦρχε δὲ αὐτῶν Στρατοκλῆς Κρής.

### 4.3

Ταύτην δ' αὖ τὴν ἡμέραν |be driven home ἰς |village ταῖς ὑπὲρ τοῦ  
 πεδίου παρὰ τὸν Κεντρίτην ποταμόν, |width; ' (caps) ἴρον, ὃς ὀρίζει  
 τὴν Ἀρμενίαν καὶ τὴν τῶν Καρδούχων χώραν. καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες  
 ἐνταῦθα |catch one's breath ἰδόντες πεδίον· ἀπέιχε δὲ τῶν ὀρέων ὁ  
 ποταμὸς ἕξ ἢ ἑπτὰ |στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also masc)|be driven home  
 μάλᾳ |pleasantly ἄ|firm; (pl noun)=200 meters τῶν παρεληλυθότων  
 πόνων μνημονεύοντες. ἑπτὰ γὰρ ἡμέρας ὅσασπερ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ  
 τῶν Καρδούχων πάσας μαχόμενοι διετέλεσαν, καὶ ἔπαθον κακὰ  
 ὅσα οὐδὲ τὰ σύμπαντα ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους. ὡς οὖν  
 ἀπηλλαγμένοι τούτων |pleasantly , ἤθησαν.

Ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὀρώσῃ ἰππέας που |across τοῦ ποταμοῦ  
 ἐξωπλισμένους ὡς κωλύσοντας |pass over, cross ` s δ' ἐπὶ ταῖς |ὄχθη?: riverbank  
 παρατεταγμένους |accomplish, pass, waste; ὕσοντας εἰς τὴν Ἄρ |carried away emo-  
 |upwards, out to sea |tionally

bows and slings.

They were, moreover, excellent archers, using bows nearly three cubits long and arrows more than two cubits. When discharging the arrow, they draw the string by getting a purchase with the left foot planted forward on the lower end of the bow. The arrows pierced through shield and cuirass, and the Hellenes, when they got hold of them, used them as javelins, fitting them to their thongs. In these districts the Cretans were highly serviceable. They were under the command of Stratocles, a Cretan.

### 4.3

During this day they bivouacked in the villages which lie above the plain of the river Centrites, which is about two hundred feet broad. It is the frontier river between Armenia and the country of the Carduchians. Here the Hellenes recruited themselves, and the sight of the plain filled them with joy, for the river was but six or seven furlongs distant from the mountains of the Carduchians. For the moment then they bivouacked right happily; they had their provisions, they had also many memories of the labours that were now passed; seeing that the last seven days spent in traversing the country of the Carduchians had been one long continuous battle, which had cost them more suffering than the whole of their troubles at the hands of the king and Tissaphernes put together. As though they were truly quit of them for ever, they laid their heads to rest in sweet content.

But with the morrow's dawn they espied horsemen at a certain point across the river, armed cap a pie, as if they meant to dispute the passage. Infantry, too, drawn up

*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*  
**ἄλκιμος** brave; sturdily made (*ἀλκή*)  
**ἀναχωρέω** return, retreat  
**ἀνδάνω** please ~hedonism  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, out to sea  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain  
**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck  
**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon  
**αὐτόματος** self-willed  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic  
**γυμνός** naked, unarmed  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**ἐκβαίνω** come forth, disembark  
**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved  
**ἐλπίζ** -δος (f) hope ~voluptuary  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἥμερος** domesticated  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**κεφαλή** head; height ~gable  
**λίθος** (m/f) stone ~monolith; also

λιθάς

**λύω** loosen, free, ransom ~loose  
**μακρός** long, tall  
**μαστός** μαζοῦ nipple, breast  
**μιαίνω** stain ~miasma  
**μισθοφόρος** mercenary  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**ὄπισθεν** behind, hereafter; also ὄπιθεν  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὀπόσος** as/how many/great  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill ~hormone  
**ὄχθέω** be carried away emotionally  
**ὄχθη** riverbank; any water's edge  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also *πειρητίζω*  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up station  
**τέσσαρες** (3) four  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also *καταχέω*

ἐκβαίνειν. ἦσαν δ' οὗτοι Ὀρόντα καὶ Ἀρτούχα Ἀρμένιοι καὶ Μάρδοι καὶ Χαλδαῖοι μισθοφόροι. ἐλέγοντο δὲ οἱ Χαλδαῖοι ἐλεύθεροί τε καὶ ἄλκιμοι εἶναι· ὄπλα δ' εἶχον γέρρα μακρὰ καὶ λόγχας. αἱ δὲ ὄχθαι αὐταὶ ἐφ' ὧν παρατεταγμένοι οὗτοι ἦσαν τρία ἢ τέτταρα πλέθρα ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀπέιχον· ὁδὸς δὲ μία ὁρωμένη ἦν ἄγουσα ἄνω ὥσπερ χειροποίητος· ταύτῃ ἐπειρῶντο διαβαίνειν οἱ Ἕλληνες. ἐπεὶ δὲ πειρωμένοις τό τε ὕδωρ ὑπὲρ τῶν μαστῶν ἐφαίνετο, καὶ τραχὺς ἦν ὁ ποταμὸς μεγάλους λίθοις καὶ ὀλισθηροῖς, καὶ οὐτ' ἐν τῷ ὕδατι τὰ ὄπλα ἦν ἔχειν· εἰ δὲ μή, ἤρπαζεν ὁ ποταμὸς· ἐπὶ τε τῆς κεφαλῆς τὰ ὄπλα εἴ τις φέροι, γυμνοὶ ἐγίνοντο πρὸς τὰ τοξεύματα καὶ τᾶλλα βέλη, ἀνεχώρησαν καὶ αὐτοῦ ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν. ἔνθα δὲ αὐτοὶ τὴν πρόσθεν νύκτα ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους ἐώρων τοὺς Καρδούχους πολλοὺς συνειλεγμένους ἐν τοῖς ὄπλοις. ἐνταῦθα δὴ πολλὴ ἀθυμία ἦν τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, ὁρῶσι μὲν τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὴν δυσπορίαν, ὁρῶσι δὲ τοὺς διαβαίνειν κωλύσοντας, ὁρῶσι δὲ τοῖς διαβαίνουσιν ἐπικεισομένους τοὺς Καρδούχους ὀπισθεν. ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα ἔμειναν ἐν πολλῇ ἀπορίᾳ ὄντες. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ὄναρ εἶδεν· ἔδοξεν ἐν πέδαις δεδέσθαι, αὐταὶ δὲ αὐτῷ αὐτόμαται περιρρηγῆναι, ὥστε λυθῆναι καὶ διαβαίνειν ὅποσον ἐβούλετο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὄρθρος ἦν, ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον καὶ λέγει ὅτι ἐλπίδας ἔχει καλῶς ἔσεσθαι, καὶ διηγείται αὐτῷ τὸ ὄναρ. ὁ δὲ ἤδετό τε καὶ ὡς τάχιστα ἕως ὑπέφαιεν ἐθύοντο πάντες παρόντες οἱ στρατηγοί·

|come forth<sup>ς</sup>,σαν δ' οὔτοι Ὀρόντα καὶ Ἀρτούχα Ἀρμένιοι καὶ Μάρδοι  
 καὶ Χαλδαῖοι μισθοφόροι. ἐλέγοντο δὲ οἱ Χαλδαῖοι ἐλεύθεροί τε καὶ  
 ἄλκιμοι εἶναι· ὄπλα δ' εἶχον γέρρα μακρὰ καὶ λόγχας. αἱ δὲ ὄχθη?: riverbank  
 αὐταὶ ἐφ' ὧν παρατεταγμένοι οὔτοι ἦσαν τρία ἢ τέτταρα 30 |camieers or awas  
 ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀπέιχον· ὁδὸς δὲ μία ὀρωμένη ἦν ἄγουσα |square  
 ὡσπερ χειροποίητος· ταύτῃ ἐπειρῶντο |pass over, cross<sup>ς</sup> ληνης. |accomplish,  
 δὲ πειρωμένοις τό τε ὕδωρ ὑπὲρ τῶν |breast<sup>ς</sup> ἐφαίνετο, καὶ τραχὺς  
 ἦν ὁ ποταμὸς μεγάλοις |λίθος?: made of stone αἱ οὐτ' ἐν τῷ ὕδατι τὰ  
 ὄπλα ἦν ἔχειν· εἰ δὲ μή, |carry off, seize<sup>ς</sup> μός· ἐπὶ τε τῆς κεφαλῆς  
 τὰ ὄπλα εἴ τις φέροι, γυμνοὶ ἐγίνοντο πρὸς τὰ τοξεύματα καὶ  
 τὰλλα βέλη, ἀνεχώρησαν καὶ αὐτοῦ |encamp or παρα τὸν  
 ποταμόν. ἔνθα δὲ αὐτοὶ τὴν πρόσθ|take up sta-  
 ἑάρων τοὺς Καρδούχους πολλοὺς συνειλεγμένους ἐν τοῖς ὄπλοις.  
 ἐνταῦθα δὲ πολλὴ ἀθυμία ἦν τοῖς Ἑλλησι, ὀρώσι μὲν τοῦ ποταμοῦ  
 τὴν δυσπορίαν, ὀρώσι δὲ τοὺς |pass over, cross<sup>ς</sup> ὄντας, ὀρώσι δὲ τοῖς  
 |pass over, cross<sup>ς</sup> :εισομένους τοὺς Καρδούχους ὀπισθεν. ταύτην μὲν  
 οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα ἔμειναν ἐν πολλῇ |difficulty,  
 δὲ |dream<sup>ς</sup> ἔδωξεν ἐν |shackles<sup>ς</sup> δέσθαι, αὐταὶ δὲ αὐτῷ |self-willed  
 περιρρηῆναι, ὥστε λυθῆναι καὶ |pass over,as/how many/great<sup>ς</sup> πει  
 δὲ ὄρθρος ἦν, ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον καὶ λέγει ὅτι ἐλπίδας  
 ἔχει καλῶς ἔσεσθαι, καὶ διηγείται αὐτῷ τὸ |dream<sup>ς</sup> ἰ δὲ |please<sup>ς</sup> ε καὶ  
 ὡς τάχιστα ἔως |pull out from<sup>ς</sup> under<sup>ς</sup> ἴτες παρόντες οἱ στρατηγοί·

in line upon the banks above the cavalry, threatened to prevent them debouching into Armenia. These troops were Armenian and Mardian and Chaldaean mercenaries belonging to Orontas and Artuchas. The last of the three, the Chaldaeans, were said to be a free and brave set of people. They were armed with long wicker shields and lances. The banks before named on which they were drawn up were a hundred yards or more distant from the river, and the single road which was visible was one leading upwards and looking like a regular artificially constructed highway. At this point the Hellenes endeavoured to cross, but on their making the attempt the water proved to be more than breast-deep, and the river bed was rough with great slippery stones, and as to holding their arms in the water, it was out of the question—the stream swept them away— or if they tried to carry them over the head, the body was left exposed to the arrows and other missiles; accordingly they turned back and encamped there by the bank of the river.

At the point where they had themselves been last night, up on the mountains, they could see the Carduchians collected in large numbers and under arms. A shadow of deep despair again descended on their souls, whichever way they turned their eyes— in front lay the river so difficult to ford; over, on the other side, a new enemy threatening to bar the passage; on the hills behind, the Carduchians ready to fall upon their rear should they once again attempt to cross. Thus for this day and night they halted, sunk in perplexity. But Xenophon had a dream. In his sleep he thought that he was bound in fetters, but these, of their own accord, fell from off him, so that he was loosed, and could stretch his legs as freely as he wished. So at the first glimpse of daylight he came to Cheirisophus and told him that he had hopes that all things would go well, and related to him his dream.

The other was



*vocabulary*

**αιδέομαι** respect, be ashamed  
**αἰδοῖος** modest, honored  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀσφαλῆς** going ahead, standing firm  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**βρέχω** soak  
**γέρων** -οντος (3) old; old man  
 ~geriatric  
**γυμνός** naked, unarmed  
**δειπνέω** eat, dine  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**δόξα** what one expects ~doxology  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
 ἰθύς  
**εὐχομαι** declare, boast; pray (εὐχος)  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἱερός** (2) holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph;  
 also ἱερόν, ἱερόν, ἱρός  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἵππιοχάρμης  
**καθεύδω** lie down  
**καθήκω** come down, (a day) to fall, be  
 proper  
**κατατίθημι** put down  
**νεύω** nod

**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**ὄπισθεν** behind, hereafter; also ὄπιθεν  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**πέραν** on the other side, across  
**πέτρα** rock, cliff, reef ~petrified  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also  
 πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πόρος** way, bridge ~fare  
**πόρω** aor. give, pf. be fated  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**σπένδω** libate (σπονδή); also  
 ἀποσπένδω  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιά** army  
**συγκαλέω** call together  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case

καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ ἦν εὐθὺς ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου. καὶ ἀπιόντες ἀπὸ τῶν ἱερῶν οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ παρήγγελλον τῇ στρατιᾷ ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι. καὶ ἀριστῶντι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι προσέτρεχον δύο νεανίσκω· ἤδεσαν γὰρ πάντες ὅτι ἐξείη αὐτῷ καὶ ἀριστῶντι καὶ δειπνοῦντι προσελθεῖν καὶ εἰ καθεύδοι ἐπεγείραντα εἰπεῖν, εἴ τίς τι ἔχοι τῶν πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον. καὶ τότε ἔλεγον ὅτι τυγχάνοιεν φρύγανα συλλέγοντες ὡς ἐπὶ πῦρ, κ᾿πειτα κατίδοιεν ἐν τῷ πέραν ἐν πέτραις καθηκούσαις ἐπ' αὐτὸν τὸν ποταμὸν γέροντά τε καὶ γυναικα καὶ παιδίσκακας ὥσπερ μαρσίπους ἱματίων κατατιθεμένους ἐν πέτρᾳ ἀντρώδει. ἰδοῦσι δὲ σφίσι δόξαι ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι διαβῆναι· οὐδὲ γὰρ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἵππεῦσι προσβατὸν εἶναι κατὰ τοῦτο. ἐκδύντες δ' ἔφασαν ἔχοντες τὰ ἐγχειρίδια γυμνοὶ ὡς νευσόμενοι διαβαίνειν· πορευόμενοι δὲ πρόσθεν διαβῆναι πρὶν βρέξαι τὰ αἰδοῖα· καὶ διαβάντες, λαβόντες τὰ ἱμάτια πάλιν ἤκειν. εὐθὺς οὖν Ξενοφῶν αὐτὸς τε ἔσπενδε καὶ τοῖς νεανίσκοις ἐγχεῖν ἐκέλευε καὶ εὔχεσθαι τοῖς φήνασι θεοῖς τά τε ὀνειράτα καὶ τὸν πόρον καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ ἀγαθὰ ἐπιτελέσαι. σπείσας δ' εὐθὺς ἤγε τοὺς νεανίσκους παρὰ τὸν Χειρίσοφον, καὶ διηγοῦνται ταῦτά. ἀκούσας δὲ καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος σπονδὰς ἐποίει. σπείσαντες δὲ τοῖς μὲν ἄλλοις παρήγγελλον συσκευάζεσθαι, αὐτοὶ δὲ συγκαλέσαντες τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἐβουλεύοντο ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα διαβαίειν καὶ τοὺς τε ἔμπροσθεν νικῶεν καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν ὀπισθεν μηδὲν πάσχοιεν κακόν. καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς Χειρίσοφον μὲν ἠγείσθαι καὶ διαβαίνειν ἔχοντα τὸ

καὶ τὰ ἱερά καλὰ ἦν εὐθὺς ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου. καὶ ἀπὸντες ἀπὸ  
 τῶν ἱερῶν οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ παρήγγελλον τῇ στρατιᾷ  
 ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι. καὶ ἀριστῶντι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι προσέτρεχον δύο  
 νεανίσκω· ἤδεσαν γὰρ πάντες ὅτι |ἔξειμι?: 'gō forth'; or ἐξίημι?: 'send forth,  
 |allow forth  
 δειπνοῦντι προσελθεῖν καὶ εἰ καθευδοὶ |ἐπεγείρω?: wake up; ἢ τίς  
 |or ἐπαγείρω?: gather  
 τι ἔχοι τῶν πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον. καὶ τότε ἔλεγον ὅτι τυγχάνοιεν  
 φρύγανα |collect, ὡς ἐπὶ πῦρ, κάπειτα κατίδοιεν ἐν τῷ |across ἴν  
 |assemble  
 πέτραις |come down, (a 'day') ἴν τὸν ποταμὸν γέροντά τε καὶ γυναικα  
 |to fall, be proper  
 καὶ παιδίσκας ὡς περ μαρσίπους ἱματίων κατατιθεμένους ἐν πέτρᾳ  
 ἀνθρώδει. ἰδοῦσι δὲ σφίσι δόξαι ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι |pass over, cross ἴρ τοῖς  
 πολεμίοις ἵππευσι προσβατὸν εἶναι κατὰ τοῦτο. ἐκδύντες δ' ἔφασαν  
 ἔχοντες τὰ ἐγχειρίδια γυμνοὶ ὡς |nod |pass over, cross ὀμνοῖ  
 δὲ πρόσθεν |pass over,|soak τὰ |αἰδοῖον?: 'pass over, cross' τες  
 |cross  
 τὰ ἱμάτια πάλιν ἤκειν. εὐθὺς οὖν |αἰδοῖος?: or  
 |αὐτός τε ἔσπενδε καὶ  
 τοῖς νεανίσκοις |pour into ἔειπε καὶ ἐ |honored  
 ὀνείρατα καὶ τὸν |πῶρος?: way, bridge; or ἴα ἐπιτέλεσαι. |libate δὲ  
 |πῶρω?: give, be fated  
 δ' εὐθὺς ἤγε τοὺς νεανίσκους παρὰ τὸν Χειρίσοφον, καὶ διηγοῦνται  
 |identi- |ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix; or φος σπονδὰς ἐποίει. |libate δὲ  
 |cal |ἀκούω?: hear, listen  
 τοῖς μὲν ἄλλοις παρήγγελλον συσκευάζεσθαι, αὐτοὶ δὲ |call together  
 τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἐβουλεύοντο ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα |pass over, cross ἴ  
 τε ἔμπροσθεν νικῶεν καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν ὀπισθεν μηδὲν πάσχοιεν κακόν.  
 καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς Χειρίσοφον μὲν ἡγείσθαι καὶ |pass over, cross ἴ : τὸ

well pleased, and with the first faint gleam of dawn the generals all were present and did sacrifice; and the victims were favourable in the first essay. Retiring from the sacrifice, the generals and officers issued an order to the troops to take their breakfasts; and while Xenophon was taking his, two young men came running up to him, for every one knew that, breakfasting or supping, he was always accessible, or that even if asleep any one was welcome to awaken him who had anything to say bearing on the business of war. What the two young men had at this time to say was that they had been collecting brushwood for fire, and had presently espied on the opposite side, in among some rocks which came down to the river's brink, an old man and some women and little girls depositing, as it would appear, bags of clothes in a cavernous rock. When they saw them, it struck them that it was safe to cross; in any case the enemy's cavalry could not approach at this point. So they stripped naked, expecting to have to swim for it, and with their long knives in their hands began crossing, but going forward crossed without being wet up to the fork. Once across they captured the clothes, and came back again.

Accordingly Xenophon at once poured out a libation himself, and bade the two young fellows fill the cup and pray to the gods, who showed to him this vision and to them a passage, to bring all other blessings for them to accomplishment. When he had poured out the libation, he at once led the two young men to Cheirisophus, and they repeated to him their story. Cheirisophus, on hearing it, offered libations also, and when they had performed them, they sent a general order to the troops to pack up ready for starting, while they themselves called a meeting of the generals and took counsel how they

*vocabulary*

**ἀγέομαι** go before, lead ~hegemony;  
also ἡγέομαι  
**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards,  
out to sea  
**ἀπολαμβάνω** receive, recover, take  
aside, cut off  
**ἀριστερός** left-hand  
**δείδω** to fear ~Deimos  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**ἔθω** be accustomed, tend to ~ethology  
**ἐμβαίνω** step on, board  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεὶ  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἑταίρα** companion; also ἑταῖρος,  
ἕταρος  
**ἥμισυς** half ~hemisphere  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
~theater; also θάομαι, θηέομαι  
**θέω** run, run for  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
ἵππιοχάρμης  
**κράτος** -εος (n, 3) strength, power;  
victory ~democracy; also κάρτος  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
~odometer; also οὐδός

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὄρнуμι** set upon, arouse ~hormone;  
also ὑπόρнуμι  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
~hormone  
**οὐπω** no longer  
**ὄχθέω** be carried away emotionally  
**ὄχθη** riverbank; any water's edge  
**ὄχλος** mob, crowd  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
recommend, encourage  
**περάω** cross; sell as a slave  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πόρος** way, bridge ~fare  
**πόρω** aor. give, pf. be fated  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**προσποιέω** give over to  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
masc)  
**στεφανώω** set about  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τείνω** stretch, tend ~tense  
**τέσσαρες** (3) four  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await

ἡμῶν τοῦ στρατεύματος, τὸ δ' ἡμῶν ἔτι ὑπομένειν σὺν Ξενοφῶντι, τὰ δὲ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ τούτων διαβαίνειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα καλῶς εἶχεν ἐπορεύοντο· ἡγούντο δ' οἱ νεανίσκοι ἐν ἀριστερᾷ ἔχοντες τὸν ποταμόν· ὁδὸς δὲ ἦν ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν ὡς τέτταρες στάδιοι. πορευομένων δ' αὐτῶν ἀντιπαρήσαν αἱ τάξεις τῶν ἰππέων. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν κατὰ τὴν διάβασιν καὶ τὰς ὄχθας τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα, καὶ αὐτὸς πρῶτος Χειρίσοφος στεφανωσάμενος καὶ ἀποδὺς ἐλάμβανε τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλε, καὶ τοὺς λοχαγοὺς ἐκέλευεν ἄγειν τοὺς λόχους ὀρθίους, τοὺς μὲν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ τοὺς δ' ἐν δεξιᾷ ἑαυτοῦ. καὶ οἱ μὲν μάντις ἐσφαγιάζοντο εἰς τὸν ποταμόν· οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ἐτόξευον καὶ ἐσφενδόνων· ἄλλ' οὐπω ἐξικνούντο· ἐπεὶ δὲ καλὰ ἦν τὰ σφάγια, ἐπαιάνιζον πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται καὶ ἀνηλάλιζον, συνωλόλιζον δὲ καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες ἅπασαι. πολλαὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ἑταῖραι ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἐνέβαινε καὶ οἱ σὺν ἐκείνῳ· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζωνοτάτους ἔθει ἀνὰ κράτος πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν πόρον τὸν κατὰ τὴν ἔκβασιν τὴν εἰς τὰ τῶν Ἀρμενίων ὄρη, προσποιούμενος ταύτῃ διαβὰς ἀποκλείσειν τοὺς παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ἰππέας. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ὀρώντες μὲν τοὺς ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον εὐπετῶς τὸ ὕδωρ περῶντας, ὀρώντες δὲ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα θέοντας εἰς τοῦμπαλι, δείσαντες μὴ ἀποληφθῆισαν φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος ὡς πρὸς τὴν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄνω ἔκβασιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐγένοντο, ἔτεινον ἄνω πρὸς τὸ ὄρος.

ἡμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος, τὸ δ' ἡμισυ ἔτι ὑπομένειν σὺν Ξενοφῶντι,  
 τὰ δὲ **|beast of burden** ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ τούτων **|pass over, cross** δὲ  
 ταῦτα καλῶς εἶχεν ἐπορεύοντο· **|go before, lead** νίσκοι ἐν ἀριστερᾷ  
 ἔχοντες τὸν ποταμόν· ὁδὸς δὲ ἦν ἐπὶ τὴν **|crossing, passage** ὡς τέτταρες

**|στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also masc) ; or στάδιος?: (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters**  
**after;** ἔῃσαν κατὰ τὴν **|crossing,** καὶ τὰς **|ὄχθη?: riverbank ; or ὄχθῆω?: be**  
**because** **|passage** **|carried away emotionally**  
 ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα, καὶ αὐτὸς πρῶτος Χειρίσοφος **|set about**

καὶ **|strip off, dump** εἰς τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλε,  
 καὶ τοὺς λοχαγοὺς ἐκέλευεν ἄγειν τοὺς **|am-bush,** τοὺς μὲν ἐν  
 ἀριστερᾷ τοὺς δ' ἐν **|δεξιᾶ?: right-hand band; see** ἐσφαγιάζοντο  
**|δεξιός?: right-hand child-**  
 εἰς τὸν ποταμόν· οἱ δὲ πολέμοι **|shoot an arrow at** δόνων· ἀλλ'  
 οὐπω ἐξικνούντο· ἐπεὶ δὲ καλὰ ἦν τὰ σφάλγια, ἐπαιάνιζον πάντες οἱ  
 στρατιῶται καὶ ἀνηλάζον, συνωλόλυζον δὲ καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες ἅπασαι.  
 πολλαὶ γὰρ ἦσαν **|companion** ἢ στρατεύματι. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν  
**|step on, board** ἔβη ἐκεῖνον· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων λαβὼν

τοὺς εὐζωνοτάτους ἔθει ἀνὰ κράτος πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν **|πόρος?: way, bridge ; or πόρω?:**  
**|way out** ἦν εἰς τὰ τῶν Ἀρμενίων ὄρη, **|give over to** ταύτῃ **|pass over, cross**  
 ἀποκλείσειν τοὺς παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ἰππέας. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ὀρώντες  
 μὲν τοὺς ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον εὐπετῶς τὸ ὕδωρ **|cross; sell as** ῥῶντες  
**|a slave**  
 δὲ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα θέοντας εἰς τοῦμπαλιν, δείσαντες μὴ

**|receive, recover, take** ἔλαβον ἀνὰ κράτος ὡς πρὸς τὴν τοῦ ποταμοῦ **|accomplish,**  
**|aside, cut off** **|pass, waste;**  
**|way out** ἐπεὶ δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐγένοντο, **|stretch, accomplish, pass, waste, out to**  
**|tend** **|wards, out to sea**

might best effect a passage, so as to overpower the enemy in front without suffering any loss from the men behind. And they resolved that Cheirisophus should lead the van and cross with half the army, the other half still remaining behind under Xenophon, while the baggage animals and the mob of sutlers were to cross between the two divisions.

When all was duly ordered the move began, the young men pioneering them, and keeping the river on their left. It was about four furlongs' march to the crossing, and as they moved along the bank, the squadrons of cavalry kept pace with them on the opposite side.

But when they had reached a point in a line with the ford, and the cliff-like banks of the river, they grounded arms, and first Cheirisophus himself placed a wreath upon his brows, and throwing off his cloak, resumed his arms, passing the order to all the rest to do the same, and bade the captains form their companies in open order in deep columns, some to left and some to right of himself. Meanwhile the soothsayers were slaying a victim over the river, and the enemy were letting fly their arrows and slingstones; but as yet they were out of range. As soon as the victims were favourable, all the soldiers began singing the battle hymn, and with the notes of the paeon mingled the shouting of the men accompanied by the shriller chant of the women, for there were many women in the camp.

So Cheirisophus with his detachment stepped in. But Xenophon, taking the most active-bodied of the rearguard, began running back at full speed to the passage facing the egress into the hills of Armenia, making a feint of crossing at that point to intercept their cavalry on the river bank. The enemy, seeing Cheirisophus's detachment easily crossing the stream, and Xenophon's men racing back, were seized with the fear of being intercepted, and fled at full speed in the direction of the road which emerges from the stream. But when they were come opposite



*vocabulary*

**ἄειδω** sing; also ἄοιδιάω  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also ἄκρα,  
 ἄκρη  
**ἀντίος** opposite, facing  
**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards,  
 out to sea  
**ἄοιδή** song  
**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail  
**ἀποχωρέω** go away from, retreat  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**ἀσφαλής** going ahead, standing firm  
**αὖ** again, then again; next ~after  
**βοάω** shout  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**διώκω** chase  
**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἐπιχειρέω** lay hands on  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔσθής** -τος (f, 3) clothes  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
 ἰθύς  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἵππιοχάρμης  
**καθίστημι** set down, land

**καταβαίνω** go down  
**κατέχω** hold down; cover; also  
 κατασχεθεῖν  
**κράτος** -εος (n, 3) strength, power;  
 victory ~democracy; also κάρτος  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**ὄχθέω** be carried away emotionally  
**ὄχθη** riverbank; any water's edge  
**ὄχλος** mob, crowd  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**πεδῖον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πέραν** on the other side, across  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**στρέφω** turn, veer  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**ὑπολείπω** leave (food, person)  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous

Λύκιος δ' ὁ τὴν τάξιν ἔχων τῶν ἰππέων καὶ Αἰσχίνης ὁ τὴν τάξιν τῶν  
 πελταστῶν τῶν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἐπεὶ ἐώρων ἀνὰ κράτος φεύγοντας,  
 εἶποντο· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐβόων μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, ἀλλὰ συνεκβαίνειν  
 ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. Χειρίσοφος δ' αὖ ἐπεὶ διέβη, τοὺς ἰππέας οὐκ ἐδίωκεν,  
 εὐθύς δὲ κατὰ τὰς προσηκούσας ὄχθας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν ἐξέβαινε  
 ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνω πολεμίους. οἱ δὲ ἄνω, ὀρώντες μὲν τοὺς ἑαυτῶν  
 ἰππέας φεύγοντας, ὀρώντες δ' ὀπλίτας σφίσιν ἐπιόντας, ἐκλείπουσι  
 τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄκρα. Ξενοφῶν δ' ἐπεὶ τὰ πέραν ἐώρα καλῶς  
 γιγνόμενα, ἀπεχώρει τὴν ταχίστην πρὸς τὸ διαβαῖνον στράτευμα· καὶ  
 γὰρ οἱ Καρδοῦχοι φανεροὶ ἤδη ἦσαν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον καταβαίνοντες ὡς  
 ἐπιθησόμενοι τοῖς τελευταίοις. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν τὰ ἄνω κατεῖχε,  
 Λύκιος δὲ σὺν ὀλίγοις ἐπιχειρήσας ἐπιδιώξαι ἔλαβε τῶν σκευοφόρων  
 τὰ ὑπολειπόμενα καὶ μετὰ τούτων ἐσθῆτά τε καλὴν καὶ ἐκπώματα.  
 καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ ὁ ὄχλος ἀκμὴν διέβαινε,  
 Ξενοφῶν δὲ στρέψας πρὸς τοὺς Καρδοῦχους ἀντία τὰ ὄπλα ἔθετο,  
 καὶ παρήγγειλε τοῖς λοχαγοῖς κατ' ἐνωμοτίας ποιήσασθαι ἕκαστον  
 τὸν ἑαυτοῦ λόχον, παρ' ἀσπίδα παραγαγόντας τὴν ἐνωμοτίαν ἐπὶ  
 φάλαγγος· καὶ τοὺς μὲν λοχαγοὺς καὶ τοὺς ἐνωμοτάρχους πρὸς τῶν  
 Καρδοῦχων ἰέναι, οὐραγοὺς δὲ καταστήσασθαι πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ. οἱ  
 δὲ Καρδοῦχοι ὡς ἐώρων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας τοῦ ὄχλου ψιλουμένους  
 καὶ ὀλίγους ἤδη φαινομένους, θᾶπτον δὴ ἐπῆσαν ἀδᾶς τινας ἄδοντες.  
 ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος, ἐπεὶ τὰ παρ' αὐτῷ ἀσφαλῶς εἶχε, πέμπει παρὰ

Λύκιος δ' ὁ τὴν τάξιν ἔχων τῶν ἰππέων καὶ Αἰσχίνης ὁ τὴν τάξιν τῶν  
 |light troops τῶν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἐπεὶ ἐώρων ἀνὰ κράτος φεύγοντας,  
 εἶποντο· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐβόων μὴ |leave behind, ἀλλὰ συνεκβαίνειν  
 |fail  
 ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. Χειρίσοφος δ' αὖ ἐπεὶ |pass over, cross ' ἰς οὐκ ἐδίωκεν,  
 εὐθὺς δὲ κατὰ τὰς προσηκούσας |ἄχθη?: riverbank ; or ἄχθῶ?: be carried away  
 |emotionally  
 ἐπὶ τοὺς |accomplish, pass, waste; accomplish, pass, waste; εἰαυτῶν  
 |upwards, out to sea |upwards, out to sea  
 ἰππέας φεύγοντας, ὀρώντες δ' ὀπλίτας σφίσιν ἐπιόντας, ἐκλείπουσι  
 τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ ποταμοῦ |ἄκρη?: hilltop ; or ἄκρον?: across ἴωρα καλῶς  
 |extremity ; or ἄκρος?: at  
 γιγνόμενα, ἀπεχώρει τὴν ἄκρη τὴν ἐπὶ τὸ |pass over, cross ὑμα· καὶ  
 γὰρ οἱ Καρδοῦχοι φανεροὶ ἤδη ἦσαν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον καταβαίνοντες ὡς  
 ἐπιθησόμενοι τοῖς τελευταίοις. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν τὰ |accomplish, pass, waste;  
 |upwards, out to sea  
 Λύκιος δὲ σὺν ὀλίγοις ἐπιχειρήσας ἐπιδιῶξαι ἔλαβε τῶν σκευοφόρων  
 τὰ |leave (food, person) ἀ τούτων |clothes τε καλὴν καὶ ἐκπάματα.  
 καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ ὁ ὄχλος |edge |pass over, cross  
 Ξενοφῶν δὲ στρέψας πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους |ἀντία?: ὀπposite ἴ; or ἀντίος?: op-  
 |posite, facing ; or ἀντιά?: meet,  
 καὶ παρήγγειλε τοῖς λοχαγοῖς κατ' ἐνωμοτίας |fight, join θαι ἕκαστον  
 τὸν ἑαυτοῦ |ambush, , ' ἰσπίδα παραγαγόντας τὴν ἐνωμοτίαν ἐπὶ  
 |band, child-  
 |birth οὐδὲ μὲν λοχαγοὺς καὶ τοὺς ἐνωμοτάρχους πρὸς τῶν  
 Καρδούχων ἰέναι, οὐραγοὺς δὲ καταστήσασθαι πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ. οἱ  
 δὲ Καρδοῦχοι ὡς ἐώρων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας τοῦ ὄχλου ψιλομένους  
 καὶ ὀλίγους ἤδη φαινομένους, θάπτον δὴ ἐπῆσαν ᾧδὰς τινας ἄδοντες.  
 ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος, ἐπεὶ τὰ παρ' αὐτῷ ἀσφαλῶς εἶχε, πέμπει παρὰ

to it they raced up hill towards their mountains. Then Lycius, who commanded the cavalry, and Aeschines, who was in command of the division of light infantry attached to Cheirisophus, no sooner saw them fleeing so lustily than they were after them, and the soldiers shouted not to fall behind, but to follow them right up to the mountains. Cheirisophus, on getting across, forbore to pursue the cavalry, but advanced by the bluffs which reached to the river to attack the enemy overhead. And these, seeing their own cavalry fleeing, seeing also the heavy infantry advancing upon them, abandoned the heights above the river.

Xenophon, as soon as he saw that things were going well on the other side, fell back with all speed to join the troops engaged in crossing, for by this time the Carduchians were well in sight, descending into the plain to attack their rear.

Cheirisophus was in possession of the higher ground, and Lycius, with his little squadron, in an attempt to follow up the pursuit, had captured some stragglers of their baggage-bearers, and with them some handsome apparel and drinking-cups. The baggage animals of the Hellenes and the mob of non-combatants were just about to cross, when Xenophon turned his troops right about to face the Carduchians. Vis a vis he formed his line, passing the order to the captains each to form his company into sections, and to deploy them into line by the left, the captains of companies and lieutenants in command of sections to advance to meet the Carduchians, while the rear leaders would keep their position facing the river. But when the Carduchians saw the rearguard so stript of the mass, and looking now like a mere handful of men, they advanced all the more quickly, singing certain songs the while. Then, as matters were safe with him, Cheirisophus sent back the peltasts and slingers and archers to join Xenophon, with orders to carry out his instructions. They were in the act of recrossing, when Xenophon, who

*vocabulary*

ἄγγελος (m/f) messenger ~angel  
 αἰσθάνομαι see, learn, find out about  
 ἀκοντιστής (m, 1) spearman  
 ἀναστρέφω act: overturn; mid: find oneself in  
 ἀνθέω sprout  
 ἀσπίς -δος (f) shield ~spit  
 αὐτοῦ here, there  
 δείκνυμι show, point out  
 δέχομαι accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
 διαβαίνω pass over, cross  
 δόρου δουρός (n, 3) spear shaft, plank  
 ~druid  
 δρόμος running, racing ground  
 ἐμβαίνω step on, board  
 ἐναντίος opposite, facing, meeting  
 ἔνθεν thence, whence  
 ἐνταῦθα thither  
 ἐξικνέομαι arrive at (ικνέομαι)  
 ἐπειδάν when  
 ἐπιμελέομαι take care of, oversee  
 ἐπιτρέχω run at, after  
 ἔπομαι follow, support, chase ~sequel  
 ἔρδω do, perform ~ergonomics  
 ἑταῖρα companion; also ἑταῖρος,  
 ἕταρος  
 θρασύς brave, strong

ἱκανός sufficient; competent, fit  
 οἴχομαι come, go, leave, be gone  
 ὀρμάω set in motion, rush at  
 ~hormone  
 ὀρμέω be anchored  
 ὄρнуμι set upon, arouse ~hormone;  
 also ὑπόρнуμι  
 ὄρος ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
 παραγγέλλω transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
 πελταστής (m) light troops  
 πέραν on the other side, across  
 ποταμός river ~hippopotamus  
 προβαίνω surpass, continue  
 πρόσω forward, in the future; also  
 πόρρω, πρόσωθεν  
 σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
 στρέφω turn, veer  
 σφενδόνη sling  
 τάξις -εως (f) arrangement  
 τοξεύω shoot an arrow at  
 τοξότης (m, 1) archer  
 τρέχω run, spin; also τροχάζω,  
 τροχάω, τρωχάω  
 τῷ so, therefore; in that case  
 ὑποζύγιον beast of burden

Ξενοφῶντα τοὺς πελταστὰς καὶ σφενδονήτας καὶ τοξότας καὶ κελεύει ποιεῖν ὅ τι ἂν παραγγέλλῃ. ἰδὼν δ' αὐτοὺς διαβαίνοντας Ξενοφῶν πέμψας ἄγγελον κελεύει αὐτοῦ μείναι ἐπὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ μὴ διαβάντας· ὅταν δ' ἄρξωνται αὐτοὶ διαβαίνειν, ἐναντίους ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν σφῶν ἐμβαίνειν ὡς διαβησομένους, διηγκυλωμένους τοὺς ἀκοντιστὰς καὶ ἐπιβεβλημένους τοὺς τοξότας· μὴ πρόσω δὲ τοῦ ποταμοῦ προβαίνειν. τοῖς δὲ παρ' ἑαυτῶ παρήγγειλεν, ἐπειδὴν σφενδὸν ἔξικνῆται καὶ ἀσπίς ψοφῆ, παιανίσαντας θεῖν εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους, ἐπειδὴν δ' ἀναστρέψωσιν οἱ πολέμοι καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὁ σαλπικτῆς σημήνη τὸ πολεμικόν, ἀναστρέψαντας ἐπὶ δόρυ ἡγείσθαι μὲν τοὺς οὐραγούς, θεῖν δὲ πάντας καὶ διαβαίνειν ὅτι τάχιστα ἢ ἕκαστος τὴν τάξιν εἶχεν, ὡς μὴ ἐμποδίζειν ἀλλήλους· ὅτι οὗτος ἄριστος ἔσοιτο ὃς ἂν πρῶτος ἐν τῷ πέραν γένηται. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι ὀρώντες ὀλίγους ἤδη τοὺς λοιπούς πολλοὶ γὰρ καὶ τῶν μένειν τεταγμένων ὄχοντο ἐπιμελόμενοι οἱ μὲν ὑποζυγίων, οἱ δὲ σκευῶν, οἱ δ' ἑταιρῶν, ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐπέκειντο θρασέως καὶ ἤρχοντο σφενδονῶν καὶ τοξεύειν. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες παιανίσαντες ὤρμησαν δρόμῳ ἐπ' αὐτούς· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο· καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ὀπλισμένοι ὡς μὲν ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσιν ἰκανῶς πρὸς τὸ ἐπιδραμεῖν καὶ φεύγειν, πρὸς δὲ τὸ εἰς χεῖρας δέχεσθαι οὐχ ἰκανῶς. ἐν τούτῳ σημαίνει ὁ σαλπικτῆς· καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμοι ἔφευγον πολὺ ἔτι θάπτον, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες τὰναντία στρέψαντες ἔφευγον διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὅτι τάχιστα. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων οἱ μὲν τινες αἰσθόμενοι πάλιν ἔδραμον ἐπὶ τὸν

Ξενοφῶντα τοὺς |light καὶ σφενδονήτας καὶ |archer καὶ κελεύει  
 ποιεῖν ὅ τι ἂν παραγγέλλῃ. ἰδὼν δ' αὐτοὺς |pass over, cross ἰοφῶν  
 πέμψας ἄγγελον κελεύει αὐτοῦ μέναι ἐπὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ μὴ |pass over, cross  
 ὅταν δ' ἄρξωνται αὐτοὶ |pass over, cross ἰοὺς ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν σφῶν  
 |step on, board|pass over, cross ἰηγκυλωμένους τοὺς |spearman καὶ  
 ἐπιβεβλημένους τοὺς |archer μὴ |forward, in ἰ ποταμοῦ |surpass  
 τοῖς δὲ παρ' ἑαυτῷ παρήγγειλεν, |when |sling |arrive at καὶ  
 ἀσπίς ψοφῆ, παιανίσαντας θεῖν εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους, |when δ'  
 ἀναστρέψωσιν οἱ πολέμοι καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὁ σαλπικτῆς σημήνη  
 τὸ πολεμικόν, ἀναστρέψαντας ἐπὶ δόρυ ἡγεῖσθαι μὲν τοὺς οὐραγούς,  
 θεῖν δὲ πάντας καὶ |pass over, cross ἴχιστα ἢ ἕκαστος τὴν τάξιν εἶχεν,  
 ὡς μὴ ἐμποδίζεω ἀλλήλους· ὅτι οὗτος ἄριστος ἔσοιτο ὃς ἂν πρῶτος ἐν  
 τῷ |across ἴνηται. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι ὀρώωντες ὀλίγους ἤδη τοὺς λοιπούς  
 πολλοὶ γὰρ καὶ τῶν μένειν τεταγμένων ὄχοντο ἐπιμελόμενοι οἱ μὲν  
 |beast of burden ἰ κευῶν, οἱ δ' |companion ἰῦθα δὴ ἐπέκειντο |brave,  
 καὶ ἤρχοντο σφενδονᾶν καὶ |shoot an arrow at ἰ ληνες παιανίσαντες  
 ὄρμησαν |running ἰ τ' αὐτούς· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο· καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν  
 ὀπλισμένοι ὡς μὲν ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσιν ἰκανῶς πρὸς τὸ |run at, after ἰ  
 φεύγειν, πρὸς δὲ τὸ εἰς χεῖρας δέχεσθαι οὐχ ἰκανῶς. ἐν τούτῳ σημαίνει  
 ὁ σαλπικτῆς· καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμοι ἔφευγον πολὺ ἔτι θάπτον, οἱ δὲ  
 Ἐλληνες τὰναντία στρέψαντες ἔφευγον διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὅτι τάχιστα.  
 τῶν δὲ πολεμίῶν οἱ μὲν τινες αἰσθόμενοι πάλιν ἔδραμον ἐπὶ τὸν

saw their intention, sent a messenger across, bidding them wait there at the river's brink without crossing; but as soon as he and his detachment began to cross they were to step in facing him in two flanking divisions right and left of them, as if in the act of crossing; the javelin men with their javelins on the thong, and the bowmen with their arrows on the string; but they were not to advance far into the stream. The order passed to his own men was: "Wait till you are within sling-shot, and the shield rattles, then sound the paean and charge the enemy. As soon as he turns, and the bugle from the river sounds for 'the attack,' you will face about to the right, the rear rank leading, and the whole detachment falling back and crossing the river as quickly as possible, every one preserving his original rank, so as to avoid tramelling one another: the bravest man is he who gets to the other side first."

The Carduchians, seeing that the remnant left was the merest handful (for many even of those whose duty it was to remain had gone off in their anxiety to protect their beasts of burden, or their personal kit, or their mistresses), bore down upon them valorously, and opened fire with slingstones and arrows. But the Hellenes, raising the battle hymn, dashed at them at a run, and they did not await them; armed well enough for mountain warfare, and with a view to sudden attack followed by speedy flight, they were not by any means sufficiently equipped for an engagement at close quarters. At this instant the signal of the bugle was heard. Its notes added wings to the flight of the barbarians, but the Hellenes turned right about in the opposite direction, and betook themselves to the river with what speed they might. Some of the enemy, here a man and there another, perceived, and running back to the river, let fly their arrows and wounded a few; but the



*vocabulary*

**ἀκέομαι** heal, fix  
**ἀναβάλλω** delay; strike up a song  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βασιλείος** kingly  
**δέκα** ten ~decimal  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**διαλέγω** go through, debate  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἥμερος** domesticated  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also ἵππιοχάρμης  
**κεῖμαι** lie  
**κώμη** village  
**λεῖος** smooth  
**μείων** less, smaller  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**ὅποτε** when; also ὀππότε  
**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow

**πεδῖον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**πεντεκαίδεκα** 15  
**πέραν** on the other side, across  
**πηγή** waters, headwaters  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πορεύω** carry  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πρόεμι** to have been before, earlier  
**προπέμπω** send, send ahead  
**προσελαύνω** go to, approach  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender, come in  
**σατράπης** (m, 1) satrap, Persian governor  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**συντάσσω** gather, assemble  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑστερον** later  
**ὑστερος** later, last  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous

ποταμὸν καὶ τοξεύοντες ὀλίγους ἔτρωσαν, οἱ δὲ πολλοὶ καὶ πέραν ὄντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔτι φανεροὶ ἦσαν φεύγοντες. οἱ δὲ ὑπαντήσαντες ἀνδριζόμενοι καὶ προσωτέρω τοῦ καιροῦ προϊόντες ὕστερον τῶν μετὰ Ξενοφῶντος διέβησαν πάλιν· καὶ ἐτρώθησάν τινες καὶ τούτων.

#### 4.4

Ἐπεὶ δὲ διέβησαν, συνταξάμενοι ἀμφὶ μέσον ἡμέρας ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Ἀρμενίας πεδίων ἅπαν καὶ λείους γηλόφους οὐ μείον ἢ πέντε παρασάγγας· οὐ γὰρ ἦσαν ἐγγὺς τοῦ ποταμοῦ κῶμαι διὰ τοὺς πολέμους τοὺς πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους. εἰς δὲ ἦν ἀφίκοντο κόμην μεγάλη τε ἦν καὶ βασιλεῖον εἶχε τῷ σατράπῃ καὶ ἐπὶ ταῖς πλείσταις οἰκίαις τύρσεις ἐπήσαν· ἐπιτήδεια δ' ἦν δαιμιλῆ. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα μέχρι ὑπερήλθον τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Τηλεβόαν ποταμόν. οὗτος δ' ἦν καλὸς μὲν, μέγας δ' οὐ· κῶμαι δὲ πολλαὶ περὶ τὸν ποταμὸν ἦσαν. ὁ δὲ τόπος οὗτος Ἀρμενία ἐκαλεῖτο ἢ πρὸς ἑσπέραν. ὑπαρχος δ' ἦν αὐτῆς Τιρίβαζος, ὁ καὶ βασιλεῖ φίλος γενόμενος, καὶ ὁπότε παρείη, οὐδεὶς ἄλλος βασιλέα ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον ἀνέβαλλεν. οὗτος προσήλασεν ἰππέας ἔχων, καὶ προπέμψας ἑρμηνέα εἶπεν ὅτι βούλοιο διαλεχθῆναι τοῖς ἄρχουσι. τοῖς δὲ στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξεν ἀκοῦσαι· καὶ προσελθόντες εἰς ἐπήκοον ἠρώτων τί θέλει. ὁ δὲ

ποταμὸν καὶ |shoot an arrow, at |wound, . . . δὲ πολλοὶ καὶ |across  
 ὄντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔτι φανεροὶ ἢ |bring to  
 ἰσχυροὶ καὶ ἰσχυροὶ ἦσαν. οἱ δὲ ὑπαντήσαντες |grief  
 ἀνδριζόμενοι καὶ προσωτέρω τοῦ καιροῦ |to have been ἔμπροσθεν τῶν μετὰ  
 Ἐνοφῶντος |pass over, cross καὶ |wound, . . . ἰσχυροὶ καὶ τούτων.  
 ἰσχυροὶ καὶ ἰσχυροὶ ἦσαν. οἱ δὲ ὑπαντήσαντες |bring to  
 ἰσχυροὶ καὶ ἰσχυροὶ ἦσαν. οἱ δὲ ὑπαντήσαντες |grief

4.4

Ἐπεὶ δὲ |pass over, cross ἰσχυροὶ ἀμφὶ μέσον ἡμέρας ἐπορεύθησαν  
 διὰ τῆς Ἀρμενίας πεδίον ἅπαν καὶ |smooth|hill, οὐ |less, ἄλλο  
 πέντε |Persian . . . οὐ γὰρ ἦσαν ἐγγὺς τοῦ ποταμοῦ |mound |smaller  
 τοὺς περὶ τὸν ποταμὸν |unit, ca. 5 |κώμη?: ἴσχυροὶ ἦσαν ; or  
 τοὺς περὶ τὸν ποταμὸν |km τοὺς πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους. εἰς δὲ ἦν ἀφίκοντο |κεῖμαι?: lie  
 |village μεγάλη τε ἦν καὶ |kingly εἶχε τῷ |satrap, Per- ἐπὶ ταῖς  
 πλείσταις οἰκίαις τύρσεις ἐπήσαν· ἐπιτήδεια δὲ |nor|δαφιλή. ἐντεύθεν δ'  
 ἐπορεύθησαν |cottage; post |Persian δέκα μέχρι ὑπερήλθον τὰς  
 πηγὰς τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμῶν |unit, ca. 5 |km ἐντεύθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν |cottage; post  
 τρεῖς |Persian unit,|15 ἐπὶ τὸν Τηλεβόαν ποταμόν. οὗτος  
 δ' ἦν καλὸς μὲν, μέγας δ' οὐ· |ca. 5 km |κώμη?: ἴσχυροὶ ἦσαν ; περὶ τὸν ποταμὸν  
 ἦσαν. ὁ δὲ τόπος οὗτος Ἀρμενία ἐκαλεῖτο ἢ πρὸς ἐσπέραν. |or κεῖμαι?: lie  
 ὑπαρχος δ' ἦν αὐτῆς Τιρίβαζος, ὁ καὶ βασιλεῖ φίλος γενόμενος,  
 καὶ ὁπότε παρέιη, οὐδεὶς ἄλλος βασιλέα ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον |delay; sing  
 οὗτος |go to, approach ἄσ' ἔχων, καὶ |send, send|interpreter ἐν ὅτι  
 βούλοιο διαλεχθῆναι τοῖς ἄρχουσι. τοῖς δὲ στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξεν  
 |ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix ; ὅτι τες εἰς ἐπήκουον ἡρώτων τί θέλει. ὁ δὲ  
 ἀκούω?: hear, listen

maj ority, even when the Hellenes were well across, were still to be seen pursuing their flight. The detachment which came to meet Xenophon's men, carried away by their valour, advanced further than they had need to, and had to cross back again in the rear of Xenophon's men, and of these too a few were wounded.

#### 4.4

The passage effected, they fell into line about mid-day, and marched through Armenian territory, one long plain with smooth rolling hillocks, not less than five parasangs in distance; for owing to the wars of this people with the Carduchians there were no villages near the river. The village eventually reached was large, and possessed a palace belonging to the satrap, and most of the houses were crowned with turrets; provisions were plentiful.

From this village they marched two stages— ten parasangs— until they had surmounted the sources of the river Tigris; and from this point they marched three stages— fifteen parasangs— to the river Teleboas. This was a fine stream, though not large, and there were many villages about it. The district was named Western Armenia. The lieutenant-governor of it was Tiribazus, the king's friend, and whenever the latter paid a visit, he alone had the privilege of mounting the king upon his horse. This officer rode up to the Hellenes with a body of cavalry, and sending forward an interpreter, stated that he desired a colloquy with the leaders. The generals resolved to hear what he had to say; and advancing on their side to within speaking distance, they demanded what he wanted. He replied that he wished to make a treaty with them, in accordance with which he on his side would abstain from injuring the Hellenes, if they would not burn his houses, but merely take such provisions as

*vocabulary*

**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain  
**ἀποκρύπτω** hide away  
**ἀσφαλής** going ahead, standing firm  
**ἀφαιρέω** take away  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βασίλεια** noblewoman; also βασίλη  
**βασίλειος** kingly  
**γυμνός** naked, unarmed  
**δέκα** ten ~decimal  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔωθεν** at first light; also ἤωθεν  
**ιερεῖον ἱρηίου** sacrificial animal  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**κώμη** village  
**μεστός** full  
**μήτε** neither...nor...  
**ξύλον** piece of wood ~xylophone  
**οἶνος** wine ~wine  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**παλαιός** old

**πεδῖον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πεντεκαίδεκα** 15  
**πλήθος -υς (3)** numerical superiority  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πυρά (f/n)** pyre ~pyre; also πυρή  
**σίτος (m/n)** grain, bread, food  
 ~parasite  
**σπένδω** libate (σπονδή); also  
 ἀποσπένδω  
**στάδιον (m/n)** 200 meters (pl also  
 masc)  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στράτευμα -τος (n, 3)** army  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up  
 station  
**συνάγω** assemble; join in battle  
**σχίζω** split ~schism  
**τάξις -εως (f)** arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τάχα** quickly, soon ~tachometer  
**τάχος -υς (n, 3)** speed  
**τολμάω** dare (τλάω)  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**χιών χιόνος (f, 3)** snow

εἶπεν ὅτι σπείσασθαι βούλοιο ἐφ' ᾧ μήτε αὐτὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἀδικεῖν μήτε ἐκείνους καίειν τὰς οἰκίας λαμβάνειν τε τὰπιτήδεια ὅσων δέοιτο. ἔδοξε ταῦτα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ ἐσπείσαντο ἐπὶ τούτοις.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς τρεῖς διὰ πεδίου παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα· καὶ Τιρίβαζος παρηκολούθει ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν ἀπέχων ὡς δέκα σταδίου· καὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς βασιλεία καὶ κόμας περίξ πολλὰς πολλῶν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων μεστάς. στρατοπεδενομένων δ' αὐτῶν γίννεται τῆς νυκτὸς χιῶν πολλή· καὶ ἔωθεν ἔδοξε διασκηνῆσαι τὰς τάξεις καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς κατὰ τὰς κόμας· οὐ γὰρ ἐάρων πολέμιον οὐδένα καὶ ἀσφαλὲς ἐδόκει εἶναι διὰ τὸ πλῆθος τῆς χιόνος. ἐνταῦθα εἶχον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅσα ἐστὶν ἀγαθὰ, ἱερέια, σῖτον, οἶνους παλαιοὺς εὐώδεις, ἀσταφίδας, ὄσπρια παντοδαπά. τῶν δὲ ἀποσκεδαννυμένων τινὲς ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἔλεγον ὅτι κατίδοιεν νύκτωρ πολλὰ πυρὰ φαίνοντα. ἐδόκει δὴ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι διασκηνοῦν, ἀλλὰ συναγαγεῖν τὸ στράτευμα πάλιν. ἐντεῦθεν συνῆλθον· καὶ γὰρ ἐδόκει διαθριάζειν. νυκτερευόντων δ' αὐτῶν ἐνταῦθα ἐπιπίπτει χιῶν ἄπλετος, ὥστε ἀπέκρυψε καὶ τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους κατακειμένους· καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια συνεπόδισεν ἢ χιῶν· καὶ πολλὸς ὄκνος ἦν ἀνίστασθαι· κατακειμένων γὰρ ἀλεινὸν ἦν ἢ χιῶν ἐπιπεπτωκυῖα ὅτω μὴ παραρρυεῖ. ἐπεὶ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐτόλμησε γυμνὸς ἀναστὰς σχίζειν ξύλα, τάχ' ἀναστὰς τις καὶ ἄλλος ἐκείνου ἀφελόμενος ἔσχιζεν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου καὶ ἄλλοι ἀναστάντες πῦρ

εἶπεν ὅτι σπείσασθαι βούλοιο ἐφ' ᾧ μήτε αὐτὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἀδικεῖν μήτε ἐκείνους καίειν τὰς οἰκίας λαμβάνειν τε τὰπιτῆδεια ὅσων δέουτο. ἔδοξε ταῦτα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ libate ἐπὶ τούτοις.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν |cottage; post ἵς διὰ πεδίου |Persian  
 |15 καὶ Τιρίβαζος παρηκολούθει ἔχων τὴν ἐὰ |kmῦ δύναμιν

ἀπέχων ὡς δέκα |στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also |βασίλεια?: ` |village  
 περίξ πολλὰς πολ |στάδιος?: (adj) |noblewoman ;  
 αὐτῶν γίγνεται τῆς νυκτὸς |standing upright |firm; (pl) |noblewoman? δ'  
 |noun) 200 meters |take light |st-

τὰς τάξεις καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς κατὰ τὰς |village οὐ γὰρ ἐώρων  
 πολέμιον οὐδένα καὶ ἀσφαλές ἐδόκει εἶναι διὰ τὸ πλήθος τῆς

|snow ἐνταῦθα εἶχον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅσα ἐστὶν ἀγαθὰ, |sacrificial ν,  
 οἴνους παλαιοὺς |fragrant ἀσταφίδας, ὄσπρια |of every τῶν δὲ  
 |dismiss τινὲς ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου |kind, mani-  
 |fold γον ὅτι κατίδοιν

νύκτωρ πολλὰ |pyre φαίνοντα. ἐδόκει δὴ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς οὐκ  
 ἀσφαλές εἶναι διασκηνοῦν, ἀλλὰ συναγαγεῖν τὸ στράτευμα πάλιν.

ἐντεῦθεν συνῆλθον· καὶ γὰρ ἐδόκει διαθριάζειν. νυκτερευόντων δ'  
 αὐτῶν ἐνταῦθα ἐπιπίπτει |snow ᾗ πλετος, ὥστε |hide away ἵ τὰ ὅπλα

καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους κατακειμένους· καὶ τὰ |beast of burden ᾗ ἵσειν ἡ  
 |snow καὶ πολλὸς |hesitation ᾗ νίστασθαι· κατακειμένων γὰρ ἀλεινὸν

ἦν ἡ |snow ᾗ πιπετωκῦα ὅτω μὴ παραρρνεῖη. ἐπεὶ δὲ Ξενοφῶν  
 ἐτόλμησε γυμνὸς ἀναστὰς |split ξύλα, τάχ' ἀναστὰς τις καὶ ἄλλος

ἐκείνου ἀφελόμενος |split ἐκ δὲ τούτου καὶ ἄλλοι ἀναστάντες πῦρ

they needed. This proposal satisfied the generals, and a treaty was made on the terms suggested.

From this place they marched three stages— fifteen parasangs— through plain country, Tiribazus the while keeping close behind with his own forces more than a mile off. Presently they reached a palace with villages clustered round about it, which were full of supplies in great variety. But while they were encamping in the night, there was a heavy fall of snow, and in the morning it was resolved to billet out the different regiments, with their generals, throughout the villages. There was no enemy in sight, and the proceeding seemed prudent, owing to the quantity of snow. In these quarters they had for provisions all the good things there are— sacrificial beasts, corn, old wines with an exquisite bouquet, dried grapes, and vegetables of all sorts. But some of the stragglers from the camp reported having seen an army, and the blaze of many watchfires in the night. Accordingly the generals concluded that it was not prudent to separate their quarters in this way, and a resolution was passed to bring the troops together again. After that they reunited, the more so that the weather promised to be fine with a clear sky; but while they lay there in open quarters, during the night down came so thick a fall of snow that it completely covered up the stacks of arms and the men themselves lying down. It cramped and crippled the baggage animals; and there was great unreadiness to get up, so gently fell the snow as they lay there warm and comfortable, and formed a blanket, except where it slipped off the sleepers' shoulders; and it was not until Xenophon roused himself to get up, and, without his cloak on, began to split wood, that quickly first one and then another got up, and taking the log away from



*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἀντί** for, equivalent to  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀποσκεδάννυμι** dismiss  
**ἀτασθαλία** recklessness  
**δίδημι** should; bind; need, fail; also  
**δέω**  
**δίκη** justice  
**ἔλαιον** oil, olive oil ~olive  
**ἐμπρήθω** burn up (*πῦρ*); also  
*ἐμπίμπρημι*  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
*ἰθύς*  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon;  
 also *καταλείπω*  
**κραυγή** screaming, shouting

**κώμη** village  
**μισθοφόρος** mercenary  
**ὅσος** as/how many/great  
**ὄρνυμι** set upon, arouse ~hormone;  
 also *ὕπρυνυμι*  
**ὄρομαι** keep an eye on  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**πικρός** sharp, bitter ~picric  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πυρά** (f/n) pyre ~pyre; also *πυρή*  
**σκηνέω** camp  
**σκηνώ** camp  
**στενός** narrow  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συλλαμβάνω** arrest, capture  
**συνάγω** assemble; join in battle  
**τόξον** bow ~toxic  
**ὑπερβολή** a throwing beyond others  
**φαιέτρα** quiver  
**φύλαξ** (m) guard; sentry; also  
*φυλακός, φυλακτήρ*  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χρίω** anoint ~Christ

ἔκαιον καὶ ἐχρίοντο· πολὺ γὰρ ἐνταῦθα ἠύρισκετο χρίμα, ᾧ ἐχρώντο ἀντ' ἐλαίου, σύειον καὶ σησάμιον καὶ ἀμυγδάλινον ἐκ τῶν πικρῶν καὶ τερμίνθινον. ἐκ δὲ τῶν αὐτῶν τούτων καὶ μύρον ἠύρισκετο.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδόκει πάλιν διασκηνητέον εἶναι τὰς κόμας εἰς στέγας. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ στρατιῶται σὺν πολλῇ κραυγῇ καὶ ἡδονῇ ἦσαν ἐπὶ τὰς στέγας καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· ὅσοι δὲ ὅτε τὸ πρότερον ἀπῆσαν τὰς οἰκίας ἐνέπρησαν ὑπὸ ἀτασθαλίας, δίκην ἐδίδοσαν κακῶς σκηνοῦντες. ἐντεῦθεν ἔπεμψαν νυκτὸς Δημοκράτην Τημιτίην ἄνδρας δόντες ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη ἔνθα ἔφασαν οἱ ἀποσκεδαννύμενοι καθορᾶν τὰ πυρά· οὗτος γὰρ ἐδόκει καὶ πρότερον πολλὰ ἤδη ἀληθεύσαι τοιαῦτα, τὰ ὄντα τε ὡς ὄντα καὶ τὰ μὴ ὄντα ὡς οὐκ ὄντα. πορευθεῖς δὲ τὰ μὲν πυρὰ οὐκ ἔφη ἰδεῖν, ἄνδρα δὲ συλλαβῶν ἦκεν ἄγων ἔχοντα τόξον Περσικὸν καὶ φαρέτρην καὶ σάγαριν οἶανπερ καὶ αἱ Ἀμαζόνες ἔχουσιν. ἐρωτώμενος δὲ ποδαπὸς εἶη Πέρσης μὲν ἔφη εἶναι, πορεύεσθαι δ' ἀπὸ τοῦ Τιριβάζου στρατοπέδου, ὅπως ἐπιτήδεια λάβοι. οἱ δὲ ἡρώτων αὐτὸν τὸ στράτευμα ὅπόσον τε εἶη καὶ ἐπὶ τίνι συνειλεγμένον. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι Τιριβάζος εἶη ἔχων τήν τε ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν καὶ μισθοφόρους Χάλυβας καὶ Ταόχους· παρεσκευάσθαι δὲ αὐτὸν ἔφη ὡς ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ ὄρους ἐν τοῖς στενοῖς ἤπερ μοναχῇ εἶη πορεία, ἐνταῦθα ἐπιθησόμενον τοῖς Ἕλλησιν. ἀκούσασι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ταῦτα ἔδοξε τὸ στράτευμα συναγαγεῖν· καὶ εὐθὺς φύλακας καταλιπόντες καὶ στρατηγὸν ἐπὶ τοῖς μένουσι Σοφαίετον Στυμφάλιον ἐπορεύοντο

ἔκαιον καὶ |anoint πολὺ γὰρ ἐνταῦθα ἠύρισκετο χρίμα, ᾧ ἐχρώντο  
 ἀντ' |oil σύειον καὶ σησάμινον καὶ ἀμυγδάλινον ἐκ τῶν |sharp  
 καὶ τερμίνθινον. ἐκ δὲ τῶν αὐτῶν τούτων καὶ μύρον ἠύρισκετο.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδόκει πάλιν διασκηνητέον εἶναι τὰς |village εἰς στέγας.  
 ἔνθα δὴ οἱ στρατιῶται σὺν πολλῇ |screaming, ἠδονῇ ἦσαν ἐπὶ τὰς  
 στέγας καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· ὅσοι δὲ ὅτε τὸ πρότερον ἀπῆσαν τὰς  
 οἰκίας ἐνέπρησαν ὑπὸ |recklessness ἵκην |δίδωμι?: |σκηνέω?: camp ; or  
 ἐντεῦθεν ἔπεμψαν νυκτὸς Δημοκράτην |should; bind; |σκηνόω?: camp  
 τὸν ἐπιτήδεια· ὅσοι δὲ ὅτε τὸ πρότερον ἀπῆσαν τὰς οἰκίας  
 ἐντεῦθεν ἔπεμψαν νυκτὸς Δημοκράτην |need, fail; or  
 τὰ ὄρη ἔνθα ἔφασαν οἱ |dismiss |δίδωμι?: give;  
 |permit ὁρᾶν τὰ |pyre οὗτος  
 γὰρ ἐδόκει καὶ πρότερον πολλὰ ἤδη ἀληθεῦσαι τοιαῦτα, τὰ ὄντα  
 τε ὡς ὄντα καὶ τὰ μὴ ὄντα ὡς οὐκ ὄντα. πορευθεὶς δὲ τὰ μὲν  
 |pyre οὐκ ἔφη ἰδεῖν, ἄνδρα δὲ συλλαβῶν ἦκεν ἄγων ἔχοντα τόξον  
 Περσικὸν καὶ |quiver καὶ σάγαριν οἶανπερ καὶ αἱ Ἀμαζόνες ἔχουσιν.  
 ἐρωτώμενος δὲ ποδαπὸς εἶη Πέρσης μὲν ἔφη εἶναι, πορεύεσθαι δ' ἀπὸ  
 τοῦ Τιριβάζου στρατοπέδου, ὅπως ἐπιτήδεια λάβοι. οἱ δὲ ἠρώτων  
 αὐτὸν τὸ στράτευμα |as/how many/great ἵ τίνι συνειλεγμένον. ὁ δὲ  
 εἶπεν ὅτι Τιριβάζος εἶη ἔχων τήν τε ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν καὶ μισθοφόρους  
 Χάλυβας καὶ Ταόχους· παρεσκευάσθαι δὲ αὐτὸν ἔφη ὡς ἐπὶ τῇ  
 |a throw- ὄρους ἐν τοῖς |narrow ἵπερ μοναχῇ εἶη πορεία, ἐνταῦθα  
 |ing beyond  
 |others ὄμοιον τοῖς Ἑλλησιν. ἀκούσασι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ταῦτα ἔδοξε  
 τὸ στράτευμα συναγαγεῖν· καὶ εὐθὺς |guard; καταλιπόντες καὶ  
 |sentry στρατηγὸν ἐπὶ τοῖς μένουσι Σοφαίνετον Στυμφάλιον ἐπορεύοντο

him, fell to splitting. Thereat the rest followed suit, got up, and began kindling fire and oiling their bodies, for there was a scented unguent to be found there in abundance, which they used instead of oil. It was made from pig's fat, sesame, bitter almonds, and turpentine. There was a sweet oil also to be found, made of the same ingredients.

After this it was resolved that they must again separate their quarters and get under cover in the villages. At this news the soldiers, with much joy and shouting, rushed upon the covered houses and the provisions; but all who in their blind folly had set fire to the houses when they left them before, now paid the penalty in the poor quarters they got. From this place one night they sent off a party under Democrates, a Temenite, up into the mountains, where the stragglers reported having seen watchfires. The leader selected was a man whose judgement might be depended upon to verify the truth of the matter. With a happy gift to distinguish between fact and fiction, he had often been successfully appealed to. He went and reported that he had seen no watchfires, but he had got a man, whom he brought back with him, carrying a Persian bow and quiver, and a sagaris or battleaxe like those worn by the Amazons. When asked "from what country he came," the prisoner answered that he was "a Persian, and was going from the army of Tiribazus to get provisions." They next asked him "how large the army was, and for what object it had been collected." His answer was that "it consisted of Tiribazus at the head of his own forces, and aided by some Chalybian and Taochian mercenaries. Tiribazus had got it together," he added, "meaning to attack the Hellenes on the high mountain pass, in a defile which was the sole passage."

When the generals heard this news, they resolved to collect the troops, and they set off at once, taking the prisoner to act as guide, and leaving

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρον** crest, extremity  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also ἄκρα,  
 ἄκρη  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
 ἀφήκω  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**εἰκός οἰκότος** (n, 3) likely  
**εἴκοσι** twenty  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεὶ  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
 ἰθύς  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief  
**θέω** run, run for  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὅπη** wherever, however  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**ὄρνυμι** set upon, arouse ~hormone;

also ὄπρυνυμι  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὀδός  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πεντεκαίδεκα** 15  
**πηγή** waters, headwaters  
**πορεύω** carry  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πρὶν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier  
**πρόσω** forward, in the future; also  
 πόρρω, πρόσωθεν  
**πύθω** rot ~putrid; also καταπύθω  
**πυνθάνομαι** learn, inquire, (+gen) hear  
 of ~buddha; also πεύθομαι  
**σάλπιγξ** -γος (f/m) trumpet  
**σκηνή** tent, booth  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στενός** narrow  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**ὑπερβάλλω** topple; overthrow  
**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await  
**ὑστεραῖος** the next; later  
**φάσκω** declare, promise, think

ἔχοντες ἡγεμόνα τὸν ἀλόντα ἄνθρωπον. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑπερέβαλλον τὰ ὄρη, οἱ πελτασταὶ προΐοντες καὶ κατιδόντες τὸ στρατόπεδον οὐκ ἔμειναν τοὺς ὀπίστας, ἀλλ' ἀνακραγόντες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἀκούσαντες τὸν θόρυβον οὐχ ὑπέμειναν, ἀλλ' ἔφευγον· ὁμως δὲ καὶ ἀπέθανόν τινες τῶν βαρβάρων καὶ ἵπποι ἤλωσαν εἰς εἴκοσι καὶ ἡ σκητὴ ἢ Τιριβάζου ἐάλω καὶ ἐν αὐτῇ κλίνει ἀργυρόποδες καὶ ἐκπώματα καὶ οἱ ἀρτοκόποι καὶ οἱ οἰνοχόοι φάσκοντες εἶναι. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐπύθοντο ταῦτα οἱ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν στρατηγοί, ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι τὴν ταχίστην ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, μὴ τις ἐπίθεσις γένοιτο τοῖς καταλελειμμένοις. καὶ εὐθὺς ἀνακαλεσάμενοι τῇ σάλπιγγι ἀπῆσαν, καὶ ἀφίκοντο αὐθημερὸν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.

#### 4.5

Τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἐδόκει πορευτέον εἶναι ὅπη δύναιντο τάχιστα πρὶν ἢ συλλεγῆναι τὸ στράτευμα πάλιν καὶ καταλαβεῖν τὰ στενά. συσκευασάμενοι δ' εὐθὺς ἐπορεύοντο διὰ χιόνος πολλῆς ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες πολλούς· καὶ αὐθημερὸν ὑπερβαλόντες τὸ ἄκρον ἐφ' ᾧ ἔμελλεν ἐπιτίθεσθαι Τιριβάζος κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, καὶ διέβαινον αὐτὸν βρεχόμενοι πρὸς τὸν ὀμφαλόν. ἐλέγοντο δ' οὐδὲ πηγαὶ πρόσω εἶναι. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ χιόνος πολλῆς καὶ πεδίου σταθμοὺς τρεῖς

ἔχοντες ἡγεμόνα τὸν ἀλόντα ἄνθρωπον. |after; |topple; τὰ  
 ὅρη, οἱ |light |to have been |because |outthrow  
 |troops |before, earlier  
 ἔμειναν τοὺς ὀπλίτας, ἀλλ' |speak up ἔθειον ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.

οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἀκούσαντες τὸν θόρυβον οὐχ ὑπέμειναν, ἀλλ' ἔφευγον·  
 ὅμως δὲ καὶ ἀπέθανόν τινες τῶν βαρβάρων καὶ ἵπποι ἤλωσαν εἰς  
 εἴκοσι καὶ ἡ σκηνὴ ἡ Τιριβάζου ἐάλω καὶ ἐν αὐτῇ κλίνει ἀργυρόποδες  
 καὶ ἐκπώματα καὶ οἱ ἀρτοκόποι καὶ οἱ |cupbearer' ἴσκοντες εἶναι.

|after; |τύθω?: rot; or |πυνθάνομαι?: στρατηγοί, ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς  
 |because |learn, inquire, (+gen) hear of  
 ἀπίνεαι τὴν ταχίστην ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, μὴ τις ἐπίθεις γένοιτο  
 τοῖς καταλελειμμένοις. καὶ εὐθὺς ἀνακαλεσάμενοι τῇ |trumpet  
 ἀπῆσαν, καὶ ἀφίκοντο αὐθημερὸν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.

### 4.5

Τῇ δ' |the next; |later πορευτέον εἶναι ὅπη |enter, put on, στα πρὶν  
 ἢ συλλεγῆναι τὸ στράτευμα πάλιν καὶ καταλαβεῖν τὰ |narrow  
 συσκευασάμενοι δ' εὐθὺς ἐπορεύοντο διὰ |snow πολλῆς ἡγεμόνας  
 ἔχοντες πολλούς· καὶ αὐθημερὸν |topple; τὸ |ἄκρον?: 'extremity ; or  
 |outthrow |ἄκρος?: at the edge, ex-  
 ἔμελλεν ἐπιτίθεσθαι Τιριβάζος κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο |treme εὐθεν δ'  
 ἐπορεύθησαν |cottage; post |, μους τρεῖς |Persian unit, |15  
 ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, καὶ |pass over, cross' |soak  
 πρὸς τὸν |navel, nub ἐλέγοντο δ' οὐδὲ πηγαὶ |forward, |in i.  
 ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ |snow πολλῆς καὶ πεδίου |cottage; post |s

a garrison behind with Sophaenetus the Stymphalian in command of those who remained in the camp. As soon as they had begun to cross the hills, the light infantry, advancing in front and catching sight of the camp, did not wait for the heavy infantry, but with a loud shout rushed upon the enemy's entrenchment. The natives, hearing the din and clatter, did not care to stop, but took rapidly to their heels. But, for all their expedition, some of them were killed, and as many as twenty horses were captured, with the tent of Tiribazus, and its contents, silver-footed couches and goblets, besides certain persons styling themselves the butlers and bakers. As soon as the generals of the heavy infantry division had learnt the news, they resolved to return to the camp with all speed, for fear of an attack being made on the remnant left behind. The recall was sounded and the retreat commenced; the camp was reached the same day.

## 4.5

The next day it was resolved that they should set off with all possible speed, before the enemy had time to collect and occupy the defile. Having got their kit and baggage together, they at once began their march through deep snow with several guides, and, crossing the high pass the same day on which Tiribazus was to have attacked them, got safely into cantonments. From this point they marched three desert stages— fifteen parassangs— to the river Euphrates, and crossed it in water up to the waist. The sources of the river were reported to be at no great distance. From this place they marched through deep snow over a flat country three stages— fifteen parasangs. The



*vocabulary*

**ἀγνοέω** be ignorant of  
**ἀνδράποδον** (m/n, 3) slave  
**ἄνεμος** wind ~anemometer  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι,  
 ὀλλυμι  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**δάπεδον** floor, prepared ground  
**διαγίγνομαι** go through, pass  
**ἐναντίος** opposite, facing, meeting  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεί  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἦμερος** domesticated  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake  
**κνέφας** -ος (n, 3) dark, dusk  
**κώμη** village  
**λάσχω** cry, crack, ring

**λήγω** cease ~lax  
**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis  
**μετρέω** measure, traverse  
**ξύλον** piece of wood ~xylophone  
**ὄλος** complete, generally, actually  
**ὀφέ** late, in evening  
**πάθος** -υς (n, 3) an experience,  
 passion, condition  
**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo  
**πεντεκαίδεκα** 15  
**περίεμι** be superior to  
**πήγνυμι** stick, set, build ~fang  
**πνέω** breathe, blow ~apnea  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πού** no doubt; somewhere/how  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**πυρός** wheat  
**σαφής** clear, understandable  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
**τρίτος** third  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear

παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα. ὁ δὲ τρίτος ἐγένετο χαλεπὸς καὶ ἄνεμος  
 βορρᾶς ἐναντίος ἔπνει παντάπασιν ἀποκαίων πάντα καὶ πηγνύς  
 τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. ἔνθα δὴ τῶν μάντεών τις εἶπε σφαγιάσασθαι τῷ  
 ἀνέμῳ, καὶ σφαγιάζεται· καὶ πᾶσι δὴ περιφανῶς ἔδοξεν λῆξαι τὸ  
 χαλεπὸν τοῦ πνεύματος. ἦν δὲ τῆς χιόνος τὸ βάθος ὀργυῖα· ὥστε  
 καὶ τῶν ὑποζυγίων καὶ τῶν ἀνδραπόδων πολλὰ ἀπόλετο καὶ τῶν  
 στρατιωτῶν ὡς τριάκοντα. διεγένοντο δὲ τὴν νύκτα πῦρ καίοντες·  
 ξύλα δ' ἦν ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ πολλά· οἱ δὲ ὀψὲ προσιόντες ξύλα οὐκ  
 εἶχον. οἱ οὖν πάλαι ἦγοντες καὶ τὸ πῦρ καίοντες οὐ προσίεσαν  
 πρὸς τὸ πῦρ τοὺς ὀψίζοντας, εἰ μὴ μεταδοίεν αὐτοῖς πυροὺς ἢ ἄλλο  
 τι εἴ τι ἔχοιεν βρωτόν. ἔνθα δὴ μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις ὧν εἶχον  
 ἕκαστοι. ἔνθα δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐκαίετο, διατηκομένης τῆς χιόνος βόθροι  
 ἐγένοντο μεγάλοι ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸ δάπεδον· οὗ δὴ παρῆν μετρεῖν τὸ  
 βάθος τῆς χιόνος. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἡμέραν ὄλην ἐπορεύοντο  
 διὰ χιόνος, καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἐβουλιμίαςαν. Ξενοφῶν δ'  
 ὀπισθοφυλακῶν καὶ καταλαμβάνων τοὺς πίπτοντας τῶν ἀνθρώπων  
 ἠγγόει ὅ τι τὸ πάθος εἶη. ἐπειδὴ δὲ εἶπέ τις αὐτῷ τῶν ἐμπείρων ὅτι  
 σαφῶς βουλιμῶσι κἄν τι φάγωσιν ἀναστήσονται, περιῶν περὶ τὰ  
 ὑποζύγια, εἴ πού τι ὀρήη βρωτόν, διεδίδου καὶ διέπεμπε διδόντας τοὺς  
 δυναμένους περιτρέχειν τοῖς βουλιμῶσιν. ἐπειδὴ δέ τι ἐμφάγοιεν,  
 ἀνίσταντο καὶ ἐπορεύοντο. πορευομένων δὲ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἀμφὶ  
 κνέφας πρὸς κώμην ἀφικνεῖται, καὶ ὑδροφορούσας ἐκ τῆς κώμης πρὸς

|Persian unit,|15 κα. 5 km ο δὲ τρίτος ἐγένετο χαλεπὸς καὶ ἄνεμος  
 βορρᾶς ἐναντίος |breathe, blow σιν ἀποκαίων πάντα καὶ |stick, set, build  
 τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. ἔνθα δὴ τῶν |seer τις εἶπε σφαγιάσασθαι τῷ  
 ἀνέμῳ, καὶ σφαγιάζεται· καὶ πᾶσι δὴ περιφανῶς ἔδοξεν |λήγω?: ` cease ; or  
 χαλεπὸν τοῦ πνεύματος. ἦν δὲ τῆς |snow τὸ βάθος ὄργυ|λόσχω?: cry, crack,  
 καὶ τῶν |beast of burden ὧν |slave πολλὰ ἀπόλετο καὶ τῶν  
 στρατιωτῶν ὡς τριάκοντα. |go through, `pass νύκτα πῦρ καίοντες·  
 ξύλα δ' ἦν ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ πολλά· οἱ δὲ |late προσιόντες ξύλα οὐκ  
 εἶχον. οἱ οὖν πάλαι ἦγοντες καὶ τὸ πῦρ καίοντες οὐ προσίεσαν  
 πρὸς τὸ πῦρ τοὺς ὀψίζοντας, εἰ μὴ μεταδοῖεν αὐτοῖς |wheat ἢ ἄλλο  
 τι εἴ τι ἔχοιεν βρωτόν. ἔνθα δὴ μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις ὧν εἶχον  
 ἕκαστοι. ἔνθα δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐκαίετο, διατηκομένης τῆς |snow |pit, grotto, trench  
 ἐγένοντο μεγάλοι ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸ |floor οὗ δὴ παρῆν |measure, `|  
 βάθος τῆς |snow ἐντεῦθεν δὲ τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἡμέραν ὄλην ἐπορεύοντο  
 διὰ |snow καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἐβουλίμασαν. Ξενοφῶν δ'  
 ὀπισθοφυλακῶν καὶ καταλαμβάνων τοὺς πίπτοντας τῶν ἀνθρώπων  
 ἠγνοεῖ ὅ τι τὸ |an experi-|after; `` εἶπέ τις αὐτῷ τῶν ἐμπείρων ὅτι  
 σαφῶς βουλιμ|ence, pas-|because  
 σιῶν, condi- φάγωσιν ἀναστήσονται, |be superior to `|  
 |beast of burden `ι ὀρήη βρωτόν, διεδίδου καὶ διέπεπε|δίδημι?: should; bind;  
 δυναμένους |run about τοῖς βουλιμῶσι. |after; `|give; permit,  
 ἀνίσταντο καὶ ἐπορεύοντο. πορευομένων δὲ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἀμφὶ  
 |dark, dusk `|village ἰφικνεῖται, καὶ ὑδροφορούσας ἐκ τῆς |village πρὸς

last of these marches was trying, with the north wind blowing in their teeth, drying up everything and benumbing the men. Here one of the seers suggested to them to do sacrifice to Boreas, and sacrifice was done. The effect was obvious to all in the diminished fierceness of the blast. But there was six feet of snow, so that many of the baggage animals and slaves were lost, and about thirty of the men themselves.

They spent the whole night in kindling fire; for there was fortunately no dearth of wood at the halting-place; only those who came late into camp had no wood. Accordingly those who had arrived a good while and had kindled fires were not for allowing these late-comers near the fires, unless they would in return give a share of their corn or of any other victuals they might have. Here then a general exchange of goods was set up. Where the fire was kindled the snow melted, and great trenches formed themselves down to the bare earth, and here it was possible to measure the depth of the snow.

Leaving these quarters, they marched the whole of the next day over snow, and many of the men were afflicted with “boulimia” (or hunger-faintness). Xenophon, who was guarding the rear, came upon some men who had dropt down, and he did not know what ailed them; but some one who was experienced in such matters suggested to him that they had evidently got boulimia; and if they got something to eat, they would revive. Then he went the round of the baggage train, and laying an embargo on any eatables he could see, doled out with his own hands, or sent off other able-bodied agents to distribute to the sufferers, who as soon as they had taken a mouthful got on their legs again and continued the march.

On and on they marched, and about dusk Cheirisophus reached a village, and surprised some women and girls who had come from the village to fetch water at the fountain outside the stockade. These asked them who they

*vocabulary***ἀνάγκη** force, necessity**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp.~sin**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι, ὄλλυμι**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning**αὐτόθι** on the spot**βοεΐη** shield; leather, bovine; also βόειος**βοή** din, a shout**βοῦς βοός** (m/f) cow, ox; shield ~bovine**δάκτυλος** finger, toe**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over**ἐνταῦθα** thither**ἐπειδὴ** after; because; also ἐπεὶ**ἐπιλείπω** fail, not work**ἔρουμα** (n, 3) protection**ἐρωτάω** ask about something**ἡσυχία** peace and quiet**ἱμάς** (m, 3) strap**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake**κινέω** set in motion, move, remove ~kinetic**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down, have sex**κόρη** κόουρας girl**κραίνω** accomplish; (rare) rule**κρήνη** well, spring**λείπω** leave something; depart ~eclipse; also λιπάω**μέλας** (3) dark ~melanin; also μέλαινα**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also οὐδός**ὀφθαλμός** eye**ὄψέ** late, in evening**πλησίος** near, neighboring**πορεύω** carry**πρό** before, forward ~prolog**πυρός** wheat**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up station**τήγω** melt**ὑπόδημα** -τος (n, 3) sandals**ὑπολείπω** leave (food, person)**χιών** χιόνος (f, 3) snow**χωρίον** area; downwards

τῇ κρήνῃ γυναῖκας καὶ κόρας καταλαμβάνει ἔμπροσθεν τοῦ ἐρύματος. αὐταὶ ἡρώτων αὐτοὺς τίνες εἶεν. ὁ δ' ἐρμηνεὺς εἶπε περισσιτὶ ὅτι παρὰ βασιλέως πορεύονται πρὸς τὸν σατράπην. αἱ δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι οὐκ ἐνταῦθα εἶη, ἀλλ' ἀπέχει ὅσον παρασάγγην. οἱ δ', ἐπεὶ οἶψέ ἦν, πρὸς τὸν κώμαρχον συνεισέρχονται εἰς τὸ ἔρυμα σὺν ταῖς ὑδροφόροις. Χειρίσοφος μὲν οὖν καὶ ὅσοι ἐδυνήθησαν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐνταῦθα ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο, τῶν δ' ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν οἱ μὴ δυνάμενοι διατελέσαι τὴν ὁδὸν ἐνκτέρευσαν ἄσιτοι καὶ ἄνευ πυρός· καὶ ἐνταῦθά τινας ἀπώλοντο τῶν στρατιωτῶν. ἐφείποντο δὲ τῶν πολεμίων συνειλεγμένοι τινὲς καὶ τὰ μὴ δυνάμενα τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἤρπαζον καὶ ἀλλήλοις ἐμάχοντο περὶ αὐτῶν. ἐλείποντο δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἱ τε διεφθαρμένοι ὑπὸ τῆς χιόνος τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς οἱ τε ὑπὸ τοῦ ψύχους τοὺς δακτύλους τῶν ποδῶν ἀποσεσηπότες. ἦν δὲ τοῖς μὲν ὀφθαλμοῖς ἐπικούρημα τῆς χιόνος εἴ τις μέλαν τι ἔχων πρὸ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἐπορεύετο, τῶν δὲ ποδῶν εἴ τις κινοῖτο καὶ μηδέποτε ἡσυχίαν ἔχοι καὶ εἰς τὴν νύκτα ὑπολύοιτο· ὅσοι δὲ ὑποδεδεμένοι ἐκοιμῶντο, εἰσεδύοντο εἰς τοὺς πόδας οἱ ἱμάντες καὶ τὰ ὑποδήματα περιεπήγνυντο· καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν, ἐπειδὴ ἐπέλιπε τὰ ἀρχαῖα ὑποδήματα, καρβάτινα πεποιημένοι ἐκ τῶν νεοδάρτων βοῶν. διὰ τὰς τοιαύτας οὖν ἀνάγκας ὑπελείποντό τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν· καὶ ἰδόντες μέλαν τι χωρίον διὰ τὸ ἐκλελοιπέναι αὐτόθι τὴν χιόνα εἵκαζον τετηκέναι καὶ ἐτετήκει διὰ κρήνην τιὰ ἢ πλησίον ἦν ἀτμίζουσα ἐν νάπη.

τῇ |κρήνη?: well, spring ; or καταλαμβάνει ἔμπροσθεν τοῦ |protection  
|κραίνω?: accomplish  
αὐται ἡρώτων αὐτοὺς τίνες εἶεν. ὁ δ' |interpreter ἔπερσιστί ὅτι παρὰ  
βασιλέως πορεύονται πρὸς τὸν |satrap, Per- ἰ δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι  
|sian gover-  
οὐκ ἐνταῦθα εἶη, ἀλλ' ἀπέχει ὅσα |no Persian , οἱ δ', ἐπεὶ |late ἦν,  
|unit, ca. 5  
πρὸς τὸν κόμμαρχον συνεισέρχονται |kmτὸ |protection αἰς ὑδροφόρους.  
Χειρίσοφος μὲν οὖν καὶ ὅσοι ἐδυνήθησαν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐνταῦθα  
|encamp or , τῶν δ' ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν οἱ μὴ δυνάμενοι  
|take up sta-  
|tionελέσαι τὴν ὁδὸν ἐνυκτέρευσαν |not eating ἕνευ πυρός· καὶ ἐνταῦθά  
τινες ἀπώλοντο τῶν στρατιωτῶν. ἐφείποντο δὲ τῶν πολεμίων  
συνειλεγμένοι τινὲς καὶ τὰ μὴ δυνάμενα τῶν |beast of|carry off, seize  
|burden  
καὶ ἀλλήλοις ἐμάχοντο περὶ αὐτῶν. ἐλείποντο δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν  
οἳ τε διεφθαρμένοι ὑπὸ τῆς |snow τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς οἳ τε ὑπὸ τοῦ  
ψύχους τοὺς |finger, toe τῶν ποδῶν ἀποσεσηπότες. ἦν δὲ τοῖς μὲν  
ὀφθαλμοῖς ἐπικούρημα τῆς |snow εἴ τις μέλαν τι ἔχων πρὸ τῶν  
ὀφθαλμῶν ἐπορεύετο, τῶν δὲ ποδῶν εἴ τις κινοῖτο καὶ μηδέποτε  
|peace and quiet ` εἰς τὴν νύκτα |free from ὅσοι δὲ ὑποδεδεμένοι  
ἐκοιμῶντο, εἰσεδύοντο εἰς τοὺς πόδας οἱ |strap καὶ τὰ |sandals  
περιεπήγνυντο· καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν, |after; |fail, not|ancient|sandals  
|because|work |from  
καρβάτιναι πεποιημέναι ἐκ τῶν |newly |βοῶν|the be- as τοιαύτας  
|stripped |ginning  
οὖν ἀνάγκας |leave (food, person)|off στρατιωτῶν· καὶ ἰδόντες μέλαν  
τι χωρίον διὰ τὸ ἐκλελοιπέναι |on the spot|snow εἵκαζον |melt  
καὶ |melt διὰ |well, τινὰ ἢ πλησίον ἦν ἀτμίζουσα ἐν |valley  
|spring

were. The interpreters answered for them in Persian: "They were on their way from the king to the satrap;" in reply to which the women gave them to understand that the satrap was not at home, but was away a parasang farther on. As it was late they entered with the water-carriers within the stockade to visit the headman of the village. Accordingly Cheirisophus and as many of the troops as were able got into cantonments there, while the rest of the soldiers— those namely who were unable to complete the march— had to spend the night out, without food and without fire; under the circumstances some of the men perished.

On the heels of the army hung perpetually bands of the enemy, snatching away disabled baggage animals and fighting with each other over the carcasses. And in its track not seldom were left to their fate disabled soldiers, struck down with snow-blindness or with toes mortified by frostbite. As to the eyes, it was some alleviation against the snow to march with something black before them; for the feet, the only remedy was to keep in motion without stopping for an instant, and to loose the sandal at night. If they went to sleep with the sandals on, the thong worked into the feet, and the sandals were frozen fast to them. This was partly due to the fact that, since their old sandals had failed, they wore untanned brogues made of newly-flayed ox-hides. It was owing to some such dire necessity that a party of men fell out and were left behind, and seeing a black-looking patch of ground where the snow had evidently disappeared, they conjectured it must have been melted; and this was actually so, owing to a spring of some sort which was to be seen steaming up in a dell close by. To this they had turned aside and sat down, and were loth to go a step further. But Xenophon, with his rearguard, perceived them, and begged and implored them by all manner of means not



*vocabulary*

**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease  
**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp.~sin  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail  
**ἀσθενέω** be weak, sick  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**δείδω** to fear ~Deimos  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also τυγχάνω  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἦμερος** domesticated  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**ἰσχυρός** strong, forceful, violent  
**καθίστημι** set down, land  
**κάμνω** toil, acquire  
**κράτιστος** best  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**ὅλος** complete, generally, actually  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey

~odometer; also ὁδός  
**πατέομαι** eat, drink  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**πυρός** wheat  
**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch  
 ~skeptical  
**σκότος** (m/n) darkness, shadow  
 ~shadow  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
 masc)  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τελευτή** conclusion, fulfilment  
**τέσσαρες** (3) four  
**τέχνη** craft, art, plan, contrivance  
 ~technology  
**τρέχω** run, spin; also τροχάζω,  
 τροχάω, τρωχάω  
**ὑποχωρέω** recoil (χώρη)  
**ὑστεραίῳς** the next; later  
**φθέγγομαι** make a sound, utter  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch; also  
 φυλακεύς  
**χαλεπαίνω** be violent, rage

ἐνταῦθ' ἐκτραπόμενοι ἐκάθηγοντο καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν πορεύεσθαι. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔχων ὀπισθοφύλακας ὡς ἦσθετο, ἐδεῖτο αὐτῶν πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ μηχανῇ μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, λέγων ὅτι ἔπονται πολλοὶ πολέμοι συνειλεγμένοι, καὶ τελευτῶν ἐχαλέπαιεν. οἱ δὲ σφάττειν ἐκέλευον· οὐ γὰρ ἂν δύνασθαι πορευθῆναι. ἐνταῦθα ἔδοξε κράτιστον εἶναι τοὺς ἐπομένους πολεμίους φοβῆσαι, εἴ τις δύναιτο, μὴ ἐπίοιεν τοῖς κάμνουσι. καὶ ἦν μὲν σκότος ἤδη, οἱ δὲ προσῆσαν πολλῶ θορύβῳ ἀμφὶ ὧν εἶχον διαφερόμενοι. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, ἅτε ὑγιαίνοντες, ἐξαναστάντες ἔδραμον εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους· οἱ δὲ κάμνοντες ἀνακραγόντες ὅσον ἐδύνατο μέγιστον τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ δόρατα ἔκρουσαν. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι δεῖσαντες ἦκαν ἑαυτοὺς κατὰ τῆς χιόνος εἰς τὴν νάπην, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἔτι οὐδαμοῦ ἐφθέγγετο. καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ εἰπόντες τοῖς ἀσθενοῦσι ὅτι τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἦξουσὶ τινες ἐπ' αὐτούς, πορευόμενοι πρὶν τέτταρα στάδια διελθεῖν ἐντυγχάνουσι ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ ἀναπαυομένοις ἐπὶ τῆς χιόνος τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐγκεκαλυμμένοις, καὶ οὐδὲ φυλακὴ οὐδεμία καθειστήκει· καὶ ἀνίστασαν αὐτούς. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι οἱ ἔμπροσθεν οὐχ ὑποχωροῖεν. ὁ δὲ παριῶν καὶ παραπέμπων τῶν πελταστῶν τοὺς ἰσχυροτάτους ἐκέλευε σκέψασθαι τί εἴη τὸ κωλύον. οἱ δὲ ἀπήγγελλον ὅτι ὄλον οὕτως ἀναπαύοιτο τὸ στράτευμα. ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἠϋλίσθησαν αὐτοῦ ἄνευ πυρὸς καὶ ἀδειπνοί, φυλακὰς οἷας ἐδύνατο καταστησάμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ πρὸς ἡμέραν ἦν,

ἐνταῦθ' ἐκτραπόμενοι ἐκάθηντο καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν πορεύεσθαι. ὁ  
 δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔχων ὀπισθοφύλακας ὡς ἦσθετο, εἶδετο αὐτῶν πάση  
 τέχνη καὶ μηχανῇ μὴ **|leave behind, fail** λέγων ὅτι ἔπονται πολλοὶ  
 πολέμοι συνειλεγμένοι, καὶ **|conclusion, fulfilment** **|be violent, rage** ἔδεδόξατο  
 ἐκέλευον· οὐ γὰρ ἂν δύνασθαι ἐπιτελεῖναι. ἐνταῦθα ἔδοξε κράτιστον  
 εἶναι τοὺς ἐπομένους πολέμους φοβῆσαι, εἴ τις **|enter, put on, strip off**  
 τοῖς κάμνουσι. καὶ ἦν μὲν σκότος ἤδη, οἱ δὲ προσῆσαν πολλῶ  
 θορύβῳ ἀμφὶ ὧν εἶχον διαφερόμενοι. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες,  
 ἅτε ὑγιαίνοντες, ἐξαναστάντες ἔδραμον εἰς τοὺς πολέμους· οἱ δὲ  
 κάμνοντες **|speak up** ὅσον ἐδύναντο μέγιστον τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς  
 τὰ δόρατα ἔκρουσαν. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι δείσαντες ἦκαν ἑαυτοὺς  
 κατὰ τῆς **|snow** εἰς τὴν **|valley** καὶ οὐδεὶς ἔτι οὐδαμῶ **|make a sound, utter**  
 καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ εἰπόντες τοῖς **|be weak, sick**  
 τῇ **|the next; later** ἰτινες ἐπ' αὐτούς, πορευόμενοι πρὶν τέτταρα  
**|στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also)** **|meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist** ἐπὶ τῆς  
**|snow** τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐγκεκαλυμμένοι, καὶ οὐδὲ φυλακὴ οὐδεμία  
**|στάδιοσ?: (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun)** ἀνίστασαν αὐτούς. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι οἱ ἔμπροσθεν  
**|200 meters** ὁ δὲ παριῶν καὶ **|guide past** τῶν **|light troops**  
 τοὺς ἰσχυροτάτους ἐκέλευε **|look, look at, watch** κωλύον. οἱ δὲ  
 ἀπήγγελλον ὅτι ὅλον οὕτως **|cause to cease** στρατεύματα. ἐνταῦθα  
 καὶ οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα **|be driven home** ἠνευ πυρὸς καὶ ἀδειπνοί,  
 φυλακὰς οἷας ἐδύναντο καταστησάμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ πρὸς ἡμέραν ἦν,

to be left behind, telling them that the enemy were after them in large packs pursuing; and he ended by growing angry. They merely bade him put a knife to their throats; not one step farther would they stir. Then it seemed best to frighten the pursuing enemy if possible, and prevent their falling upon the invalids. It was already dusk, and the pursuers were advancing with much noise and hubbub, wrangling and disputing over their spoils. Then all of a sudden the rearguard, in the plenitude of health and strength, sprang up out of their lair and run upon the enemy, whilst those weary wights bawled out as loud as their sick throats could sound, and clashed their spears against their shields; and the enemy in terror hurled themselves through the snow into the dell, and not one of them ever uttered a sound again.

Xenophon and his party, telling the sick folk that next day people would come for them, set off, and before they had gone half a mile they fell in with some soldiers who had laid down to rest on the snow with their cloaks wrapped round them, but never a guard was established, and they made them get up. Their explanation was that those in front would not move on. Passing by this group he sent forward the strongest of his light infantry in advance, with orders to find out what the stoppage was. They reported that the whole army lay reposing in such fashion. That being so, Xenophon's men had nothing for it but to bivouac in the open air also, without fire and supperless, merely posting what pickets they could under the circumstances. But as soon as it drew towards day, Xenophon despatched the youngest of his men to the sick folk behind, with orders to make them get up and force them to proceed. Meanwhile Cheirisophus had sent some of his men quartered in

*vocabulary*

**αἶξ** αἰγός (m/f) goat  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἄλλομαι** to jump ~sally  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἀσθενέω** be weak, sick  
**ἀσφαλῆς** going ahead, standing firm  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
 ἀφήκω  
**βοῦς** βοός (m/f) cow, ox; shield  
 ~bovine  
**γόνυ** γουνός (n, 3) knee ~polygon  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**ἔδω** eat ~eat  
**εἰκός** οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
**εἴκοσι** twenty  
**ἐλαχύς** small; comp.: less ~light  
**ἐνατος** ninth  
**ἐνδον** in the house of; within  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐρύς** wide  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater; also θάομαι, θηέομαι  
**θέω** run, run for  
**καταβαίνω** go down  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,

overtake

**κάτω** (+acc) throughout, upon, in  
 accord with; (+gen) down  
 into/through/over/from ~cataract; also  
 κάδ, κατά  
**κομίζω** take; attend to; also κομέω  
**κώμη** village  
**λαγχάνω** be allotted; (esp. λελα-  
 forms) allot; receive  
**νέος** young; neuter: recently ~neon  
**οἶνος** wine ~wine  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,  
 οἴομαι  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὀπότε** when; also ὀππότε  
**ὄρνις** -θος (m/f) bird ~ornithology;  
 also ὄρνεον  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**πῶς** how? why?  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
 masc)  
**στόμα** -τος (n, 3) mouth ~stomach  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τρέφω** nurture; solidify ~atrophy  
**φρέαρ** -τος (n) well

ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν πέμψας πρὸς τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας τοὺς νεωτάτους ἀναστήσαντας ἐκέλευεν ἀναγκάζειν προΐεναι. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Χειρίσοφος πέμπει τῶν ἐκ τῆς κόμης σκεψομένους πῶς ἔχοιεν οἱ τελευταῖοι. οἱ δὲ ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες τοὺς μὲν ἀσθενοῦντας τούτοις παρέδωσαν κομίζειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ πρὶν εἴκοσι στάδια διεληλυθέναι ἦσαν πρὸς τῇ κόμῃ ἔνθα Χειρίσοφος ἠυλίετο. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, ἔδοξε κατὰ τὰς κόμας ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι τὰς τάξεις σκηνοῦν. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἔμενεν, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι διαλαχόντες ἄς ἐώρων κόμας ἐπορεύοντο ἕκαστοι τοὺς ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες. ἔνθα δὲ Πολυκράτης Ἀθηναῖος λοχαγὸς ἐκέλευσεν ἀφίεναι ἑαυτόν· καὶ λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζώνους, θέων ἐπὶ τὴν κόμην ἦν εἰλήχει Ξενοφῶν καταλαμβάνει πάντας ἔνδον τοὺς κωμήτας καὶ τὸν κωμάρχον, καὶ πῶλους εἰς δασμὸν βασιλεῖ τρεφομένους ἑπτακαίδεκα, καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ κωμάρχου ἐνάτην ἡμέραν γεγαμημένην· ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς λαγῶς ὄχετο θηράσων καὶ οὐχ ἦλω ἐν τῇ κόμῃ. αἱ δ' οἰκίαι ἦσαν κατάγειοι, τὸ μὲν στόμα ὡσπερ φρέατος, κάτω δ' εὐρεῖαι· αἱ δὲ εἴσοδοι τοῖς μὲν ὑποζυγίοις ὀρυκταί, οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι κατέβαινον ἐπὶ κλίμακος. ἐν δὲ ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἶγες, οἶες, βόες, ὄρνιθες, καὶ τὰ ἔκγονα τούτων· τὰ δὲ κτήνη πάντα χιλιῶ ἔνδον ἐτρέφοντο. ἦσαν δὲ καὶ πυροὶ καὶ κριθαὶ καὶ ὄσπρια καὶ οἶνος κριθίνος ἐν κρατῆρσιν. ἐνήσαν δὲ καὶ αὐταὶ αἱ κριθαὶ ἰσοχειλεῖς, καὶ κάλαμοι ἐνέκειντο, οἱ μὲν μείζους οἱ δὲ ἐλάττους, γόνατα οὐκ ἔχοντες· τούτους ἔδει ὅποτε τις

ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν πέμψας πρὸς τοὺς |be weak, sick οὓς νεωτάτους  
 ἀναστήσαντας ἐκέλευεν ἀναγκάζειν προΐεναί. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Χειρίσοφος  
 πέμπει τῶν ἐκ τῆς |village σκειφομένους πῶς ἔχοιεν οἱ τελευταῖοι.  
 οἱ δὲ ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες τοὺς μὲν |be weak, sick οὗτοι παρέδωσαν  
 κομίζειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ πρὶν εἴκοσι

|στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also masc)|village ἔθα Χειρίσοφος |be driven home  
 ; or στάδιος?: (adj) standing up-  
 right, firm, solid, un-  
 200 meters ἔδοξε κατὰ τὰς |village ἀσφαλῆς  
 |meet, have sex

εἶναι τὰς τάξεις σκηνοῦν. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἔμενεν, οἱ  
 δὲ ἄλλοι διαλαχόντες ἄς ἐώρων |village ἐπορεύοντο ἕκαστοι τοὺς  
 ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες. ἔνθα δὴ Πολυκράτης Ἀθηναῖος λοχαγὸς ἐκέλευσεν  
 ἀφίεναί ἑαυτόν· καὶ λαβὼν τοὺς |well-girded θέων ἐπὶ τὴν |village ἦν

|be allotted; (esp. λελα- βάνει πάντα ἔνδον τοὺς κωμήτας καὶ τὸν  
 |forms) allot; receive  
 κωμάρχον, καὶ |foal εἰς |division of a spoil ῥομένους ἑπτακαίδεκα,

καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ κωμάρχου |ἔνατος?: ninth ; εξαμημένην· ὁ δ'  
 |or νάω?: flow  
 ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς λαγῶς ὄχετο θηράσων καὶ οὐχ |ἦλος?: ; |village αἱ δ'

οἰκίαι ἦσαν κατάγειοι, τὸ μὲν στόμα ὡσπερ φ; |ἔατος; (+acc) throughout, upon, in  
 |άλισκοι; |be dug out οἱ δ' |αἱ δ' |entrance εἰς μὲν |beast of |burden οἱ δ' |be |dug out/through/over/from  
 ἐπὶ κλίμακος. ἐν δὲ ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἶγες, |ἄλλομαι?: ὄρνιθες, καὶ  
 τὰ |offspring ὑτων· τὰ δὲ κτήνη πάντα χιλῶ ἔνδον ἐτρέφοντο. ἦσαν

δὲ καὶ |wheat :αἱ |barley καὶ ὄσπρια καὶ οἶνος κρίθινος ἐν κρατῆρσιν.  
 |plant  
 |be in ἔθ' καὶ αὐταὶ αἱ |barley ῥοχειλεῖς, καὶ |reed ἐπέκειντο, οἱ μὲν  
 |plant

μείζους οἱ δὲ ἐλάττους, γόνατα οὐκ ἔχοντες· τούτους ἔδει ὅποτε τις

the village to enquire how they fared in the rear; they were overjoyed to see them, and handed over the sick folk to them to carry into camp, while they themselves continued their march forward, and ere twenty furlongs were past reached the village in which Cheirisophus was quartered. As soon as the two divisions were met, the resolution was come to that it would be safe to billet the regiments throughout the villages; Cheirisophus remained where he was, while the rest drew lots for the villages in sight, and then, with their several detachments, marched off to their respective destinations.

It was here that Polycrates, an Athenian and captain of a company, asked for leave of absence— he wished to be off on a quest of his own; and putting himself at the head of the active men of the division, he ran to the village which had been allotted to Xenophon. He surprised within it the villagers with their headman, and seventeen young horses which were being reared as a tribute for the king, and, last of all, the headman's own daughter, a young bride only eight days wed. Her husband had gone off to chase hares, and so he escaped being taken with the other villagers. The houses were underground structures with an aperture like the mouth of a well by which to enter, but they were broad and spacious below. The entrance for the beasts of burden was dug out, but the human occupants descended by a ladder. In these dwellings were to be found goats and sheep and cattle, and cocks and hens, with their various progeny. The flocks and herds were all reared under cover upon green food. There were stores within of wheat and barley and vegetables, and wine made from barley in great big bowls; the grains of barley malt lay floating in the beverage up to the lip of the vessel, and reeds lay in them, some longer, some shorter, without joints; when you were thirsty you must take one of these into your mouth, and suck. The beverage without admixture of water



*vocabulary*

**ἄκρατος** pure, unmixed ~crater  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἄρτος** bread, loaf  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**βοῦς βοός** (m/f) cow, ox; shield  
 ~bovine  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**ἔδω** eat ~eat  
**ἔθνος** -εος (n, 3) tribe, company, flock  
 ~ethnic  
**ἔλκω** drag, pull, hoist; rape; also ἔλκέω  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐξηγέομαι** lead forth to battle  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart; also θαρρέω  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake  
**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down, have sex  
**κρατήρ** κρητήρος (m) mixing bowl for wine

**κρέας** (n, 3) meat ~creatine  
**κώμη** village  
**ξηρός** dry, the land; also ξερός  
**οἶνος** wine ~wine  
**ὁμοῦ** together  
**ὁπότε** when; also ὀπότε  
**ὅπου** where  
**ὀφθαλμός** eye  
**πάνυ** altogether, very  
**παρατίθηναι** put near, put at risk  
**παρίηναι** dangle; pass over, allow  
**πίνω** drink ~potion  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**στερέω** steal, take  
**στέφανος** ring  
**στεφανώ** set about  
**στόμα** -τος (n, 3) mouth ~stomach  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τέκνον** child ~oxytocin  
**τράπεζα** a table ~trapezoid  
**τρέπω** divert ~trophy  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φράζω** consider ~phrase  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch; also φυλακεύς

διψῆη λαβόντα εἰς τὸ στόμα μύζειν. καὶ πάνν ἄκρατος ἦν, εἰ μὴ τις ὕδωρ ἐπιχέοι· καὶ πάνν ἡδὺ συμμαθόντι τὸ πῶμα ἦν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τὸν ἄρχοντα τῆς κόμης ταύτης σύνδειπνον ἐποιήσατο καὶ θαρρεῖν αὐτὸν ἐκέλευε λέγων ὅτι οὔτε τῶν τέκνων στερήσοιτο τὴν τε οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ ἀντεμπλήσαντες τῶν ἐπιτηδείων ἀπίασιν, ἦν ἀγαθόν τι τῷ στρατεύματι ἐξηγησάμενος φαίνεται ἔστ' ἂν ἐν ἄλλῳ ἔθνει γένωνται. ὁ δὲ ταῦτα ὑπίσχνειτο, καὶ φιλοφρονούμενος οἶνον ἔφρασεν ἔνθα ἦν κατορωρυγμένος. ταύτην μὲν τὴν νύκτα διασκηνήσαντες οὕτως ἐκοιμήθησαν ἐν πᾶσι ἀφθόνοις πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται, ἐν φυλακῇ ἔχοντες τὸν κώμαρχον καὶ τὰ τέκνα αὐτοῦ ὁμοῦ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς. τῇ δ' ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ Ξενοφῶν λαβὼν τὸν κώμαρχον πρὸς Χειρίσοφον ἐπορεύετο· ὅπου δὲ παρίοι κώμην, ἐτρέπετο πρὸς τοὺς ἐν ταῖς κώμαις καὶ κατελάμβανε πανταχοῦ εὐωχουμένους καὶ εὐθυμουμένους, καὶ οὐδαμόθεν ἀφίεσαν πρὶν παραθεῖναι αὐτοῖς ἄριστον· οὐκ ἦν δ' ὅπου οὐ παρετίθεσαν ἐπὶ τὴν αὐτὴν τράπεζαν κρέα ἄρνεα, ἐρίφεια, χοίρεια, μόσχεια, ὀρνίθεια, σὺν πολλοῖς ἄρτοις τοῖς μὲν πυρίνοις τοῖς δὲ κριθίνοις. ὁπότε δὲ τις φιλοφρονούμενός τω βούλοιτο προπιεῖν, εἶλκεν ἐπὶ τὸν κρατῆρα, ἔνθεν ἐπικύψαντα ἔδει ῥοφοῦντα πίνειν ὥσπερ βοῦν. καὶ τῷ κωμάρχῳ ἐδίδοσαν λαμβάνειν ὅ τι βούλοιτο. ὁ δὲ ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν ἐδέχετο, ὅπου δὲ τινα τῶν συγγενῶν ἴδοι, πρὸς ἑαυτὸν αἰεὶ ἐλάμβανεν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθον πρὸς Χειρίσοφον, κατελάμβανον κἀκείνους σκηνοῦντας ἐστεφανωμένους τοῦ ξηροῦ χιλοῦ στεφάνοις,

διήγη λαβόντα εἰς τὸ στόμα μύζειν. καὶ πάνυ |pure ἦν, εἰ μὴ τις ὕδωρ |pour over ἰ πάνυ ἠδὺ συμμαθόντι τὸ |lid, cover ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τὸν ἄρχοντα τῆς |village ταύτης σύνδειπνον ἐποίησατο καὶ θαρρεῖν αὐτὸν ἐκέλευε λέγων ὅτι οὔτε τῶν τέκνων |steal, take τὴν τε οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ ἀντεμπλήσαντες τῶν ἐπιτηδείων ἀπίασιν, ἦν ἀγαθὸν τι τῷ στρατεύματι |lead forth to battle , ἄι ἔστ' ἂν ἐν ἄλλω ἔθνει γένωνται. ὁ δὲ ταῦτα ὑπισχνεῖτο, καὶ φιλοφρονούμενος οἶνον ἔφρασεν ἔνθα ἦν κατορωρυγμένος. ταύτην μὲν τὴν νύκτα διασκηνήσαντες οὕτως ἐκοιμήθησαν ἐν πᾶσιν ἀφθόνοις πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται, ἐν φυλακῇ ἔχοντες τὸν κώμαρχον καὶ τὰ τέκνα αὐτοῦ ὁμοῦ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς. τῇ δ' ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ Ξενοφῶν λαβὼν τὸν κώμαρχον πρὸς Χειρίσοφον ἐπορεύετο· ὅπου δὲ παρίοι |village ἐτρέπετο πρὸς τοὺς ἐν ταῖς |village καὶ κατελάμβανε πανταχοῦ εὐωχομένους καὶ εὐθυμουμένους, καὶ οὐδαμῶθεν ἀφίεσαν πρὶν παραθεῖναι αὐτοῖς ἄριστον· οὐκ ἦν δ' ὅπου οὐ παρετίθεσαν ἐπὶ τὴν αὐτὴν τράπεζαν κρέα ἄρνια, ἐρίφεια, |pork μόσχεια, ὀρνίθια, σὺν πολλοῖς ἄρτοις τοῖς μὲν πυρίνοις τοῖς δὲ κριθίνοις. ὁπότε δὲ τις φιλοφρονούμενός τω βούλοιο προπιεῖν, εἶλκεν ἐπὶ τὸν |mixing bowl for wine ἄντα ἔδει ῥοφούντα πίνειν ὥσπερ βοῦν. καὶ τῷ κωμάρχῳ |δίδημι?: should; bind; need; fail ; or δίδωμι?: give; permit ὁ δὲ ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν ἐδέχετο, ὅπου δέ τινα τῶν συγγενῶν ἴδοι, πρὸς ἑαυτὸν αἰεὶ ἐλάμβανεν. ἐπεὶ δ' |ἄλθομαι?: become whole τελάμβανον ; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come κάκείνους |σκηνέω?: camp ἀνωμένους τοῦ |dry, the land |στέφανος?: ring ; or ; or σκηνώ?: ; στεφανόω?: set about camp

was very strong, and of a delicious flavour to certain palates, but the taste must be acquired.

Xenophon made the headman of the village his guest at supper, and bade him keep a good heart; so far from robbing him of his children, they would fill his house full of good things in return for what they took before they went away; only he must set them an example, and discover some blessing or other for the army, until they found themselves with another tribe. To this he readily assented, and with the utmost cordiality showed them the cellar where the wine was buried. For this night then, having taken up their several quarters as described, they slumbered in the midst of plenty, one and all, with the headman under watch and ward, and his children with him safe in sight.

But on the following day Xenophon took the headman and set off to Cheirisophus, making a round of the villages, and at each place turning in to visit the different parties. Everywhere alike he found them faring sumptuously and merry-making. There was not a single village where they did not insist on setting a breakfast before them, and on the same table were spread half a dozen dishes at least, lamb, kid, pork, veal, fowls, with various sorts of bread, some of wheat and some of barley. When, as an act of courtesy, any one wished to drink his neighbour's health, he would drag him to the big bowl, and when there, he must duck his head and take a long pull, drinking like an ox. The headman, they insisted everywhere, must accept as a present whatever he liked to have. But he would accept nothing, except where he espied any of his relations, when he made a point of taking them off, him or her, with himself.

When they reached Cheirisophus they found a similar scene. There too the men were feasting in their quarters, garlanded with whisps of hay and dry grass, and Armenian boys were

*vocabulary*

**ἄγνυμι** break  
**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp.~sin  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**βαρβαρικός** non-Greek  
**γαστήρ** -έρος (f) belly ~gastric  
**δασμός** division of a spoil  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**διδάσκω** teach ~didactic  
**δίδημι** should; bind; need, fail; also δέω  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐρμηνεύς** (m) interpreter  
**ἐρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide, chief  
**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**ἱερός** (2) holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph; also ἱερή, ἱερόν, ἱρός  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also ἵππιοχάρμης  
**καταδύω** enter, sink  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon;

also **καταλείπω**  
**μείων** less, smaller  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**ὄγδοος** eighth  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**παλαιός** old  
**πλήν** except  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**πῶλος** (m/f, 2) foal  
**στολή** equipment, gear  
**τρέφω** nurture; solidify ~atrophy  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden  
**φράζω** consider ~phrase  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard ~phylactery  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χιών** χιόνος (f, 3) snow  
**χώρα** place  
**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat) ~heir

καὶ διακονοῦντας Ἀρμενίους παῖδας σὺν ταῖς βαρβαρικαῖς στολαῖς· τοῖς παισὶν ἐδείκνυσαν ὥσπερ ἐνεοῖς ὅ τι δέοι ποιεῖν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀλλήλους ἐφιλοφρονήσαντο Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν, κοινῇ δὲ ἀνηρώτων τὸν κώμαρχον διὰ τοῦ περσιζόντος ἐρμηνέως τίς εἴη ἡ χώρα. ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι Ἀρμενία. καὶ πάλιν ἠρώτων τίνι οἱ ἵπποι τρέφονται. ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι βασιλεῖ δασμός· τὴν δὲ πλησίον χώραν ἔφη εἶναι Χάλυβας, καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἔφραζεν ἢ εἴη. καὶ αὐτὸν τότε μὲν ὄχρητο ἄγων ὁ Ξενοφῶν πρὸς τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ οἰκέτας, καὶ ἵππον ὃν εἰλήφει παλαιότερον δίδωσι τῷ κωμάρχῳ ἀναθρέψαντι καταθῆσαι, ὅτι ἤκουεν αὐτὸν ἱερὸν εἶναι τοῦ Ἥλιου, δεδιὼς μὴ ἀποθάνῃ· ἐκεκάκωτο γὰρ ὑπὸ τῆς πορείας· αὐτὸς δὲ τῶν πῶλων λαμβάνει, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν καὶ λοχαγῶν ἔδωκεν ἑκάστῳ πῶλον. ἦσαν δ' οἱ ταύτῃ ἵπποι μείονες μὲν τῶν Περσικῶν, θυμοειδέστεροι δὲ πολὺ. ἐνταῦθα δὴ καὶ διδάσκει ὁ κώμαρχος περὶ τοὺς πόδας τῶν ἵππων καὶ τῶν ὑποζυγίων σακία περιειλεῖν, ὅταν διὰ τῆς χιόνος ἄγωσιν· ἄνευ γὰρ τῶν σακίων κατεδύοντο μέχρι τῆς γαστροῦς.

## 4.6

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ἦν ὀγδόη, τὸν μὲν ἡγεμόνα παραδίδωσι Χειρισόφῳ, τοὺς δὲ οἰκέτας καταλείπει τῷ κωμάρχῳ, πλὴν τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ ἄρτι ἠβάσκοντος· τοῦτον δὲ Πλεισθένει Ἀμφιπολίτῃ δίδωσι φυλάττειν, ὅπως εἰ καλῶς ἠγήσοιτο, ἔχων καὶ τοῦτον ἀπίοι. καὶ εἰς τὴν

καὶ διακονοῦντας Ἀρμενίους παῖδας σὺν ταῖς |non-Greek |equipment, gear  
 τοῖς παισὶν ἐδείκνυσαν ὥσπερ ἐνεοῖς ὅ τι δέοι ποιεῖν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀλλήλους  
 ἐφιλοφρονήσαντο Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν, κοινῇ δὴ ἀνηρώτων τὸν  
 κόμαρχον διὰ τοῦ περισίζοντος |interpreter ἰς εἴη ἢ χώρα. ὁ δ'  
 ἔλεγεν ὅτι Ἀρμενία. καὶ πάλιν ἠρώτων τίνοι οἱ ἵπποι τρέφονται.  
 ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι βασιλεῖ |division of a spoil ῆσιόν χώραν ἔφη εἶναι  
 Χάλυβας, καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἔφραζεν ἢ εἴη. καὶ αὐτὸν τότε μὲν ὄχετο  
 ἄγων ὁ Ξενοφῶν πρὸς τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ οἰκέτας, καὶ ἵππον ὃν εὐλήφει  
 παλαιότερον |δίδομι?: should; bind; need; fail καταθύσαι, ὅτι ἤκουεν  
 αὐτὸν ἱερὸν εἶναι τοῦ Ἥλιου, δεδιὼς μὴ ἀποθάνη· ἐκεκἀκωτο γὰρ  
 ὑπὸ τῆς πορείας· αὐτὸς δὲ τῶν |foal λαμβάνει, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων  
 στρατηγῶν καὶ λοχαγῶν ἔδωκεν ἐκάστῳ |foal ἦσαν δ' οἱ ταύτη  
 ἵπποι |less, , μὲν τῶν Περσικῶν, θυμοειδέστεροι δὲ πολὺ. ἐνταῦθα  
 δὴ καὶ διδάσκει ὁ κόμαρχος περὶ τοὺς πόδας τῶν ἵππων καὶ τῶν  
 |beast of burden περιειλεῖν, ὅταν διὰ τῆς |snow ἄγωσιν· ἄνευ γὰρ  
 τῶν σακίων κατεδύοντο μέχρι τῆς γαστροῦς.

#### 4.6

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ἦν |eighth τὸν μὲν ἠγεμόνα παρα|δίδομι?:<sup>στ</sup> should; bind; need,  
 τοὺς δὲ οἰκέτας καταλείπει τῷ κωμάρχῳ, πλὴν τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ ἄρτι  
 ἠβάσκοντος· τοῦτον δὲ Πλεισθένηι Ἀμφιπολίτῃ δίδωσι φυλάττειν,  
 ὅπως εἰ καλῶς ἠγήσοιτο, ἔχων καὶ τοῦτον ἀπίοι. καὶ εἰς τὴν

playing the part of waiters in barbaric costumes, only they had to point out by gesture to the boys what they were to do, like deaf and dumb. After the first formalities, when Cheirisophus and Xenophon had greeted one another like bosom friends, they interrogated the headman in common by means of the Persian-speaking interpreter. "What was the country?" they asked: he replied, "Armenia." And again, "For whom are the horses being bred?" "They are tribute for the king," he replied. "And the neighbouring country?" "Is the land of the Chalybes," he said; and he described the road which led to it. So for the present Xenophon went off, taking the headman back with him to his household and friends. He also made him a present of an oldish horse which he had got; he had heard that the headman was a priest of the sun, and so he could fatten up the beast and sacrifice him; otherwise he was afraid it might die outright, for it had been injured by the long marching. For himself he took his pick of the colts, and gave a colt apiece to each of his fellow-generals and officers. The horses here were smaller than the Persian horses, but much more spirited. It was here too that their friend the headman explained to them, how they should wrap small bags or sacks around the feet of the horses and other cattle when marching through the snow, for without such precautions the creatures sank up to their bellies.

## 4.6

When a week had passed, on the eighth day Xenophon delivered over the guide (that is to say, the village headman) to Cheirisophus. He left the headman's household safe behind in the village, with the exception of his son, a lad in the bloom of youth. This boy was entrusted to Episthenes of Amphipolis to guard; if the headman proved himself



*vocabulary*

**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain  
**αὔριον** tomorrow  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**δέκα** ten ~decimal  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**εἴτε** if, whenever  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐπτά** seven  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief  
**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon;  
 also καταλείπω  
**κατέχω** hold down; cover; also  
 κατασχεθεῖν  
**κείρω** shave, sever, raze; devour, use  
 up  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn  
**κομίζω** take; attend to; also κομέω  
**κώμη** village  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone

**παίζω** play  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**παύω** stop something ~pause  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**πιστός** faithful (πείθω)  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πορεύω** carry  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
 masc)  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συγκαλέω** call together  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
**τρίτος** third  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπερβάλλω** topple; outthrow  
**ὑπερβολή** a throwing beyond others  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
**χαλεπαίνω** be violent, rage  
**ὥδε** thus  
**ὥρα** season, time ~horoscope

οϊκίαν αὐτοῦ εἰσεφόρησαν ὡς ἐδύναντο πλείστα, καὶ ἀναζεύξαντες ἐπορεύοντο. ἤγειτο δ' αὐτοῖς ὁ κώμαρχος λελυμένος διὰ χιόνος· καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἐν τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ, καὶ Χειρίσοφος αὐτῷ ἐχαλεπάνθη ὅτι οὐκ εἰς κώμας ἤγαγεν. ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ εἶεν ἐν τῷ τόπῳ τούτῳ. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος αὐτὸν ἔπαισεν, ἔδησε δ' οὐ. ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἐκείνος τῆς νυκτὸς ἀποδρὰς ὄχητο καταλιπὼν τὸν υἱόν. τοῦτό γε δὴ Χειρισόφῳ καὶ Ξενοφῶντι μόνον διάφορον ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ ἐγένετο, ἢ τοῦ ἡγεμόνος κάκωσις καὶ ἀμέλεια. Πλεισθένης δὲ ἠράσθη τοῦ παιδὸς καὶ οἴκαδε κομίσας πιστοτάτῳ ἐχρήτο. μετὰ τοῦτο ἐπορεύθησαν ἐπτὰ σταθμοὺς ἀνὰ πέντε παρασάγγας τῆς ἡμέρας παρὰ τὸν Φᾶσιν ποταμόν, εὖρος πλεθριαῖον. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα· ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδῖον ὑπερβολῇ ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς Χάλυβες καὶ Τάοχοι καὶ Φασιανοί. Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐπεὶ κατείδε τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ, ἐπαύσατο πορευόμενος, ἀπέχων εἰς τριάκοντα σταδίους, ἵνα μὴ κατὰ κέρας ἄγων πλησιάσῃ τοῖς πολεμίους· παρήγγειλε δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις παράγειν τοὺς λόχους, ὅπως ἐπὶ φάλαγγος γένοιτο τὸ στράτευμα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθον οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, συνεκάλεσε στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Οἱ μὲν πολέμοι, ὡς ὀράτε, κατέχουσι τὰς ὑπερβολὰς τοῦ ὄρους· ὧρα δὲ βουλευέσθαι ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιούμεθα. ἐμοὶ μὲν οὖν δοκεῖ παραγγεῖλαι μὲν ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις, ἡμᾶς δὲ βουλευέσθαι εἴτε τήμερον εἴτε αὔριον δοκεῖ ὑπερβάλλειν τὸ

οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ |carry into ὡς ἐδύναντο πλείστα, καὶ ἀναζεύξαντες  
ἐπορεύοντο. |go before, lead ὁ κώμαρχος λελυμένος διὰ |snow καὶ  
ἤδη τε ἦν ἐν τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ, καὶ Χειρίσοφος αὐτῷ |be violent, rage  
ὅτι οὐκ εἰς |village ἤγαγεν. ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ εἶεν ἐν τῷ τόπῳ  
τούτῳ. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος αὐτὸν |play ἔδησε δ' οὐ. ἐκ δὲ τούτου  
ἐκείνος τῆς νυκτὸς ἀποδρὰς ὄχρετο καταλιπὼν τὸν υἱόν. τοῦτό γε  
δὴ Χειρισόφῳ καὶ Ξενοφῶντι μόνον διάφορον ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ ἐγένετο, ἡ  
τοῦ ἡγεμόνος κάκωσις καὶ ἀμέλεια. Πλεισθένης δὲ |love τοῦ παιδὸς  
καὶ οἴκαδε κομίσας πιστοτάτῳ ἐχρήτο. μετὰ τοῦτο ἐπορεύθησαν  
ἐπτὰ |cottage; post ἑνὲς Περσῶν τῆς ἡμέρας παρὰ τὸν Φᾶσιν  
ποταμόν, |width;30 m |km ἐντεύθεν ἐπορεύθησαν |cottage; post  
|Persian theδέκα· ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίον |a throw- ἦντησαν  
|unit, ca. 5ast |ing beyond  
|kmοῖς Χάλυβες καὶ Τάοχοι καὶ Φασιανοί. Χειρ |others δ' ἐπεὶ κατέειδε  
τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ τῇ |a throw- ἄσατο πορευόμενος, ἀπέχων  
|ing beyond  
εἰς τριάκοντα |στάδιον?; others 200 meters (pl' also masc)|bring/be near  
πολεμίους· παρὰ |firm; (pl noun) 200 meters εἰς παράγειν τοὺς |ambush, band,  
|childbirth  
ὅπως ἐπὶ φάλαγγος γένοιτο τὸ στράτευμα. ἐπεὶ δὲ |ἄλθομαι?: become  
|whole ; or ἔρχομαι?:  
ὀπισθοφύλακες, |call together τρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς, κ |go, come  
ᾧδε. Οἱ μὲν πολέμοι, ὡς ὀράτε, κατέχουσι τὰς |a throw- ὦ  
|ing beyond  
ὁρους· ὥρα δὲ βουλευέσθαι ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγαθὸν |others θᾶ. ἐμοὶ  
μὲν οὖν δοκεῖ παραγγεῖλαι μὲν ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις,  
ἡμᾶς δὲ βουλευέσθαι εἴτε τήμερον εἴτε |tomorrow ἢ |topple; τὸ  
|outhrow

a good guide, he was to take away his son also at his departure. They finally made his house the repository of all the good things they could contrive to get together; then they broke up their camp and commenced to march, the headman guiding them through the snow unfettered. When they had reached the third stage Cheirisophus flew into a rage with him, because he had not brought them to any villages. The headman pleaded that there were none in this part. Cheirisophus struck him, but forgot to bind him, and the end of it was that the headman ran away in the night and was gone, leaving his son behind him. This was the sole ground of difference between Cheirisophus and Xenophon during the march, this combination of ill-treatment and neglect in the case of the guide. As to the boy, Episthenes conceived a passion for him, and took him home with him, and found in him the most faithful of friends.

After this they marched seven stages at the rate of five parasangs a day, to the banks of the river Phasis, which is a hundred feet broad: and thence they marched another couple of stages, ten parasangs; but at the pass leading down into the plain there appeared in front of them a mixed body of Chalybes and Taochians and Phasianians. When Cheirisophus caught sight of the enemy on the pass at a distance of about three or four miles, he ceased marching, not caring to approach the enemy with his troops in column, and he passed down the order to the others: to deploy their companies to the front, that the troops might form into line. As soon as the rearguard had come up, he assembled the generals and officers, and addressed them: "The enemy, as you see, are in occupation of the mountain pass, it is time we should consider how we are to make the best fight to win it. My opinion is, that we should give

*vocabulary*

**ἀθρόος** grouped  
**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**διατριβώ** wear down, delay ~tribology  
**εἰκός οἰκότος** (n, 3) likely  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἑξήκοντα** sixty  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**ἥμερος** domesticated  
**θαρσαλέος** bold, over-bold  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart; also **θαρρέω**  
**ἰσχυρός** strong, forceful, violent  
**κεφαλή** head; height ~gable  
**κλέπτω** steal  
**κράτιστος** best  
**κρείσσω** more powerful  
**λανθάνω** escape notice; (mp+gen)  
 forget ~Lethe; also **καταλήθομαι**  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also **οὐδός**  
**ὄρνυμι** set upon, arouse ~hormone;

also **ὄπόρνυμι**  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also  
**πειρητίζω**  
**πλέος** full; also **πλεῖος**, **πλέως**  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πρό** before, forward ~prolog  
**προσβάλλω** hit (+acc+dat); mp: heed  
**προσποιέω** give over to  
**ῥάδιος** easy; also **ῥάιος**  
**σκεπτέος** thing to consider, one who  
 must consider  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
 masc)  
**σῶμα** -τος (n, 3) corpse ~somatic  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπερβάλλω** topple; outthrow  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous  
**φθάνω** do first, outstrip  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard  
 ~phylactery  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

ὄρος. Ἐμοὶ δέ γε, ἔφη ὁ Κλεάνωρ, δοκεῖ, ἐπὶν τάχιστα ἀριστήσωμεν,  
 ἐξοπλισαμένους ὡς κράτιστα ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας. εἰ γὰρ  
 διατρίβομεν τὴν τήμερον ἡμέραν, οἷ τε νῦν ἡμᾶς ὀρώντες πολέμιοι  
 θαρραλεώτεροι ἔσονται καὶ ἄλλους εἰκὸς τούτων θαρρούντων πλείους  
 προσγενέσθαι. μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ δ' οὔτω γιγνώσκω.  
 εἰ μὲν ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ μάχεσθαι, τοῦτο δεῖ παρασκευάσασθαι, ὅπως  
 ὡς κράτιστα μαχοῦμεθα· εἰ δὲ βουλόμεθα ὡς ῥᾶστα ὑπερβάλλειν,  
 τοῦτό μοι δοκεῖ σκεπτέον εἶναι, ὅπως ὡς ἐλάχιστα μὲν τραύματα  
 λάβωμεν, ὡς ἐλάχιστα δὲ σώματα ἀνδρῶν ἀποβάλωμεν. τὸ μὲν  
 οὖν ὄρος ἐστὶ τὸ ὀρώμενον πλεόν ἢ ἐφ' ἐξήκοντα στάδια, ἄνδρες  
 δ' οὐδαμοῦ φυλάττοντες ἡμᾶς φανεροὶ εἰσιν ἀλλ' ἢ κατ' αὐτὴν τὴν  
 ὁδόν· πολὺ οὖν κρεῖττον τοῦ ἐρήμου ὄρους καὶ κλέψαι τι πειρᾶσθαι  
 λαθόντας καὶ ἀρπάσαι φθάσαντας, εἰ δυναίμεθα, μᾶλλον ἢ πρὸς  
 ἰσχυρὰ χωρία καὶ ἀνθρώπους παρεσκευασμένους μάχεσθαι. πολὺ  
 γὰρ ῥᾶον ὄρθιον ἀμαχεὶ ἰέναι ἢ ὀμαλὲς ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν πολεμίων  
 ὄντων, καὶ νύκτωρ ἀμαχεὶ μᾶλλον ἢ τὰ πρὸ ποδῶν ὀρήη τις ἢ  
 μεθ' ἡμέραν μαχόμενος, καὶ ἡ τραχεῖα τοῖς ποσὶν ἀμαχεὶ ἰοῦσιν  
 εὐμενεστέρα ἢ ἡ ὀμαλὴ τὰς κεφαλὰς βαλλομένοις. καὶ κλέψαι δ'  
 οὐκ ἀδύνατόν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι, ἐξὸν μὲν νυκτὸς ἰέναι, ὡς μὴ ὀραῖσθαι,  
 ἐξὸν δ' ἀπελθεῖν τοσοῦτον ὡς μὴ αἰσθησῶν παρέχειν. δοκοῦμεν δ'  
 ἂν μοι ταύτῃ προσποιοῦμενοι προσβάλλειν ἐρημοτέρῳ ἢ τῷ ὄρει  
 χρῆσθαι· μένοιεν γὰρ ἂν αὐτοῦ μᾶλλον ἀθρόοι οἱ πολέμιοι. ἀτὰρ τί

ὄρος. Ἐμοὶ δέ γε, ἔφη ὁ Κλεάνωρ, δοκεῖ, **|when, ίχιστα ἀριστήσωμεν, after**  
 ἐξοπλισαμένους ὡς κράτιστα ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας. εἰ γὰρ  
**|wear down, delay** ἕμερον ἡμέραν, οἳ τε νῦν ἡμᾶς ὀρῶντες πολέμοι  
**|bold** ἔσσονται καὶ ἄλλους εἰκὸς τούτων θαρρούντων πλείους  
 προσγενέσθαι. μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ δ' οὕτω γιγνώσκω.  
 εἰ μὲν ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ μάχεσθαι, τοῦτο δεῖ παρασκευάσασθαι, ὅπως  
 ὡς κράτιστα μαχοῦμεθα· εἰ δὲ βουλόμεθα ὡς ῥᾶστα **|topple; outthrow**  
 τοῦτό μοι δοκεῖ **|thing to consider, one ὡς ἐλάχιστα μὲν τραύματα |who must consider**  
 λάβωμεν, ὡς ἐλάχιστα δὲ σώματα ἀνδρῶν ἀποβάλωμεν. τὸ μὲν  
 οὖν ὄρος ἐστὶ τὸ ὀρώμενον πλέον ἢ ἐφ' ἐξήκοντα **|στάδιον? ὄ 200 meters (pl also masc) ; or στάδιος?: (adj) αὐ standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters**  
 δ' οὐδαμοῦ φυλάττοντες ἡμᾶς φανεροὶ εἰσὺν ἀλλ' ἢ  
 ὁδόν· πολὺ οὖν κρεῖττον τοῦ ἐρήμου ὄρους καὶ κλέψαι τι πειρᾶσθαι  
 λαθόντας καὶ **|carry off, seize** ντας, εἰ **|enter, put on, ἴλλον ἢ πρὸς strip off**  
 ἰσχυρὰ χωρία καὶ ἀνθρώπους παρεσκευασμένους μάχεσθαι. πολὺ  
 γὰρ ῥᾶον **|shrill** ἀμαχεὶ ἰέναι ἢ ὀμαλὲς ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν πολεμίων  
 ὄντων, καὶ νύκτωρ ἀμαχεὶ μᾶλλον ἂν τὰ πρὸ ποδῶν ὀρήη τις ἢ  
 μεθ' ἡμέραν μαχόμενος, καὶ ἡ τραχεῖα τοῖς ποσὶν ἀμαχεὶ ἰοῦσιν  
 εὐμενεστέρα ἢ ἡ **|smooth** ἄς κεφαλὰς βαλλομένοις. καὶ κλέψαι δ'  
 οὐκ ἀδύνατόν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι, **|go forth** νυκτὸς ἰέναι, ὡς μὴ ὀρᾶσθαι,  
**|go forth** ἔπελθεῖν τοσοῦτον ὡς μὴ αἴσθησιν παρέχειν. δοκοῦμεν δ'  
 ἂν μοι ταύτη **|give over to** **|hit** ἐρημοτέρῳ ἂν τῷ ὄρει  
 χρῆσθαι· μένοιεν γὰρ ἂν αὐτοῖ **|mp: heed** θρόοι οἱ πολέμοι. ἀτὰρ τί

orders to the troops to take their morning meal, whilst we deliberate whether we should cross the mountains to-day or to-morrow." "My opinion," said Cleanor, "is, that as soon as we have breakfasted, we should arm for the fight and attack the enemy, without loss of time, for if we fritter away to-day, the enemy who are now content to look at us, will grow bolder, and with their growing courage, depend upon it, others more numerous will join them."

After him Xenophon spoke: "This," he said, "is how I see the matter; if fight we must, let us make preparation to sell our lives dearly, but if we desire to cross with the greatest ease, the point to consider is, how we may get the fewest wounds and throw away the smallest number of good men. Well then, that part of the mountain which is visible stretches nearly seven miles. Where are the men posted to intercept us? except at the road itself, they are nowhere to be seen. It is much better to try if possible to steal a point of this desert mountain unobserved, and before they know where we are, secure the prize, than to fly at a strong position and an enemy thoroughly prepared. Since it is much easier to march up a mountain without fighting than to tramp along a level when assailants are at either hand; and provided he has not to fight, a man will see what lies at his feet much more plainly even at night than in broad daylight in the midst of battle; and a rough road to feet that roam in peace may be pleasanter than a smooth surface with the bullets whistling about your ears. Nor is it so impossible, I take it, to steal a march, since it is open to us to go by night, when we cannot be seen, and to fall back so far that they will never notice us. In my opinion, however, if we make a feint of attacking here, we shall find the mountain



*vocabulary*

**αείρω** raise, win ~aorta; also *αἴρω*  
**αἶξ** αἰγός (m/f) goat  
**αἰσχρός** shameful  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also *ἄκρα*,  
*ἄκρη*  
**ἀξιόω** consider worthy, fitting  
**ἅπαξ** once  
**ἀράομαι** pray, vow, invoke  
**ἀράω** wear something out  
**ἄρης** ἄρω (m) war, warlike spirit  
**βοῦς** βοός (m/f) cow, ox; shield  
 ~bovine  
**δειπνέω** eat, dine  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**ἐπειδάν** when  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὑ) display, exhibit  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
*ἰθύς*  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief  
**ἴσος** equal; also *ἔιση*  
**καταβαίνω** go down  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake  
**κίνδυνος** (ὑ) danger  
**κλέπτω** steal

**κράτιστος** best  
**κωλύω** hinder, prevent  
**λανθάνω** escape notice; (mp+gen)  
 forget ~Lethe; also *καταλήθομαι*  
**λείπω** leave something; depart  
 ~eclipse; also *λιπάω*  
**μέντοι** however  
**νέμω** to allot, to pasture (νομός)  
**ὁμοῖος** like ~homoerotic; also *ὅμοιος*  
**ὁμοιόω** assimilate, liken ~homoerotic  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also *ὀδός*  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also  
*πειρητίζω*  
**πληγή** a hit  
**πυνθάνομαι** learn, inquire, (+gen) hear  
 of ~buddha; also *πεύθομαι*  
**συμβάλλω** pit against; mp: meet, fall  
 in with  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard  
 ~phylactery  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also *καταχέω*  
**ώρα** season, time ~horoscope

ἐγὼ περὶ κλοπῆς συμβάλλομαι; ὑμᾶς γὰρ ἔγωγε, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἀκούω  
 τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους ὅσοι ἐστὲ τῶν ὁμοίων εὐθὺς ἐκ παίδων κλέπτειν  
 μελετᾶν, καὶ οὐκ αἰσχρὸν εἶναι ἀλλὰ καλὸν κλέπτειν ὅσα μὴ κωλύει  
 νόμος. ὅπως δὲ ὡς κράτιστα κλέπτητε καὶ πειρᾶσθε λανθάνειν,  
 νόμιμον ἄρα ὑμῖν ἐστίν, ἐὰν ληφθῆτε κλέπτοντες, μαστιγοῦσθαι.  
 νῦν οὖν μάλα σοι καιρὸς ἐστὶν ἐπιδείξασθαι τὴν παιδείαν, καὶ  
 φυλάξασθαι μὴ ληφθῶμεν κλέπτοντες τοῦ ὄρους, ὡς μὴ πληγὰς  
 λάβωμεν. Ἄλλὰ μέντοι, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, καὶ γὰρ ὑμᾶς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους  
 ἀκούω δεινοὺς εἶναι κλέπτειν τὰ δημόσια, καὶ μάλα ὄντος δεινοῦ  
 κινδύνου τῷ κλέπτοντι, καὶ τοὺς κρατίστους μέντοι μάλιστα, εἴπερ  
 ὑμῖν οἱ κράτιστοι ἄρχειν ἀξιοῦνται· ὥστε ὦρα καὶ σοὶ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι  
 τὴν παιδείαν. Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἔτοιμός εἰμι τοὺς  
 ὀπισθοφύλακας ἔχων, ἐπειδὴν δειπνήσωμεν, ἰέναι καταληψόμενος τὸ  
 ὄρος. ἔχω δὲ καὶ ἡγεμόνας· οἱ γὰρ γυμνήτες τῶν ἐπομένων ἡμῖν  
 κλωπῶν ἔλαβόν τινες ἐνεδρεύσαντες· τούτων καὶ πυνθάνομαι ὅτι οὐκ  
 ἄβατόν ἐστι τὸ ὄρος, ἀλλὰ νέμεται αἰξὶ καὶ βουσί· ὥστε ἐάνπερ ἅπαξ  
 λάβωμέν τι τοῦ ὄρους, βατὰ καὶ τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις ἔσται. ἐλπίζω δὲ οὐδὲ  
 τοὺς πολεμίους μενεῖν ἔτι, ἐπειδὴν ἴδωσιν ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ ὁμοίῳ ἐπὶ τῶν  
 ἄκρων· οὐδὲ γὰρ νῦν ἐθέλουσι καταβαίνειν εἰς τὸ ἴσον ἡμῖν. ὁ δὲ  
 Χειρίσοφος εἶπε· Καὶ τί δεῖ σὲ ἰέναι καὶ λιπεῖν τὴν ὀπισθοφυλακίαν;  
 ἀλλὰ ἄλλους πέμψον, ἂν μὴ τινες ἐθέλοντες ἀγαθοὶ φαίνωνται. ἐκ  
 τούτου Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεὺς ἔρχεται ὀπλίτας ἔχων καὶ Ἀριστέας

ἐγὼ περὶ κλοπῆς συμβάλλομαι; ὑμᾶς γὰρ ἔγωγε, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἀκούω  
 τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους ὅσοι ἐστὲ τῶν ὁμοίων εὐθύς ἐκ παίδων κλέπτειν  
 μελετᾶν, καὶ οὐκ αἰσχρὸν εἶναι ἀλλὰ καλὸν κλέπτειν ὅσα μὴ κωλύει  
 νόμος. ὅπως δὲ ὡς κράτιστα κλέπτητε καὶ πειρᾶσθε λανθάνειν,  
 νόμιμον ἄρα ὑμῖν ἐστίν, ἐὰν ληφθῆτε κλέπτοντες, μαστιγοῦσθαι.  
 νῦν οὖν μάλα σοι καιρὸς ἐστίν ἐπιδείξασθαι τὴν παιδείαν, καὶ  
 φυλάξασθαι μὴ ληφθῶμεν κλέπτοντες τοῦ ὄρους, ὡς μὴ πληγὰς  
 λάβωμεν. Ἄλλὰ μέντοι, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, καὶ γὰρ ὑμᾶς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους  
 ἀκούω δεινοὺς εἶναι κλέπτειν τὰ δημόσια, καὶ μάλα ὄντος δεινοῦ  
 κινδύνου τῷ κλέπτοντι, καὶ τοὺς κρατίστους μέντοι μάλιστα, εἴπερ  
 ὑμῖν οἱ κράτιστοι ἄρχειν ἀξιούνται· ὥστε ὦρα καὶ σοὶ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι  
 τὴν παιδείαν. Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἔτοιμός εἰμι τοὺς  
 ὀπισθοφύλακας ἔχων, **|when** δειπνήσωμεν, ἵνα καταληψόμενος τὸ  
 ὄρος. ἔχω δὲ καὶ ἡγεμόνας· οἱ γὰρ γυμνήτες τῶν ἐπομένων ἡμῖν  
 κλωπῶν ἔλαβόν τινας ἐνεδρεύσαντες· τούτων καὶ πυνθάνομαι ὅτι οὐκ  
 ἄβατόν ἐστι τὸ ὄρος, ἀλλὰ νέμεται αἰξὶ καὶ βουσίν· ὥστε ἐάνπερ **|once**  
 λάβωμέν τι τοῦ ὄρους, βατὰ καὶ τοῖς **|beast of burden** ἐλπίζω δὲ οὐδὲ  
 τοὺς πολεμίους μενεῖν ἔτι, **|when** ἴδωσιν ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ ὁμοίῳ ἐπὶ τῶν  
**|ἄκρον?: 'extremity' ; 'or** σοι καταβαίνειν εἰς τὸ ἴσον ἡμῖν. ὁ δὲ  
**|ἄκρος?: at the edge, extreme**  
 Χειρίσοφος εἶπε· Καὶ τί δεῖ σὲ ἵνα καὶ λιπεῖν τὴν ὀπισθοφυλακίαν;  
 ἀλλὰ ἄλλους πέμψον, ἂν μὴ τινες ἐθέλοντες ἀγαθοὶ φαίνωνται. ἐκ  
 τούτου Ἀριστῶννμος Μεθυδριεὺς ἔρχεται ὀπλίτας ἔχων καὶ Ἀριστέας

chain all the more deserted elsewhere, since the enemy will be waiting for us here in thicker swarm.

“But what right have I to be drawing conclusions about stealing in your presence, Cheirisophus? for you Lacedaemonians, as I have often been told, you who belong to the ‘peers,’ practise stealing from your boyhood up; and it is no disgrace but honourable rather to steal, except such things as the law forbids; and in order, I presume, to stimulate your sense of secretiveness, and to make you master thieves, it is lawful for you further to get a whipping if you are caught. Now then you have a fine opportunity of displaying your training. But take care we are not caught stealing over the mountain, or we shall catch it ourselves.” “For all that,” retorted Cheirisophus, “I have heard that you Athenians are clever hands at stealing the public moneys; and that too though there is a fearful risk for the person so employed; but, I am told, it is your best men who are addicted to it; if it is your best men who are thought worthy to rule. So it is a fine opportunity for yourself also, Xenophon, to exhibit your education.” “And I,” replied Xenophon, “am ready to take the rear division, as soon as we have supped, and seize the mountain chain. I have already got guides, for the light troops laid an ambush, and seized some of the cut-purse vagabonds who hung on our rear. I am further informed by them that the mountain is not inaccessible, but is grazed by goats and cattle, so that if we can once get hold of any portion of it, there will be no difficulty as regards our animals— they can cross. As to the enemy, I expect they will not even wait for us any longer, when they once see us on a level with themselves on the heights, for they do not even at present care to come down and meet us on fair ground.” Cheirisophus answered: “But why should you go and leave

*vocabulary*

**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also ἄκρα,  
 ἄκρη  
**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease  
**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards,  
 out to sea  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀχρεῖος** serving no purpose  
**δειπνέω** eat, dine  
**δέκα** ten ~decimal  
**διώκω** chase  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεὶ  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach  
**ἥμερος** domesticated  
**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be  
 overcome; (active) defeat  
**θέω** run, run for  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**καταβαίνω** go down  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake  
**κόπτω** beat, cut, strike

**κώμη** village  
**μάχαιρα** knife, dagger  
**μέρος** -ος (n, 3) part  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὁμός** same  
**ὁμοῦ** together  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**ὀπότε** when; also ὀπότε  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**προσάγω** bring to a place  
**πυρά** (f/n) pyre ~pyre; also πυρή  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
 masc)  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**συμμίγνυμι** mix with  
**συντίθημι** hearken, mark  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τήκω** melt  
**ὑπερβολή** a throwing beyond others

ὁ Χίος γυμνήτας καὶ Νικόμαχος Οἰταῖος γυμνήτας· καὶ σύνθημα ἐποίησαντο, ὅποτε ἔχοιεν τὰ ἄκρα, πυρὰ καίειν πολλά. ταῦτα συνθέμενοι ἠρίστων· ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἀρίστου προήγαγεν ὁ Χειρίσοφος τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν ὡς δέκα σταδίους πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους, ὅπως ὡς μάλιστα δοκοίη ταύτῃ προσάξειν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐδείπνησαν καὶ νύξ ἐγένετο, οἱ μὲν ταχθέντες ὄχοντο, καὶ καταλαμβάνουσι τὸ ὄρος, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι αὐτοῦ ἀνεπαύοντο. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ἐπεὶ ἦσθοντο τὸ ὄρος ἐχόμενον, ἐργηγόρεσαν καὶ ἔκαιον πυρὰ πολλὰ διὰ νυκτός. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο Χειρίσοφος μὲν θυσάμενος ἦγε κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν, οἱ δὲ τὸ ὄρος καταλαβόντες κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα ἐπήσαν. τῶν δὲ πολεμίῳν τὸ μὲν πολὺ ἔμενεν ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ ὄρους, μέρος δ' αὐτῶν ἀπήντα τοῖς κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα. πρὶν δὲ ὁμοῦ εἶναι τοὺς πολλοὺς ἀλλήλοις, συμμιγνύασιν οἱ κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα, καὶ νικῶσιν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ διώκουσιν. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου οἱ μὲν πελτασταὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων δρόμῳ ἔθειον πρὸς τοὺς παρατεταγμένους, Χειρίσοφος δὲ βάδην ταχὺ ἐφείπετο σὺν τοῖς ὀπίταις. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ ἐπειδὴ τὸ ἄνω ἐώρων ἠττώμενον, φεύγουσι· καὶ ἀπέθανον μὲν οὐ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν, γέρρα δὲ πάμπολλα ἐλήφθη· ἃ οἱ Ἕλληνες ταῖς μαχαίραις κόπτοντες ἀχρεῖα ἐποίουν. ὡς δ' ἀνέβησαν, θύσαντες καὶ τρόπαιον στησάμενοι κατέβησαν εἰς τὸ πεδίον, καὶ εἰς κώμας πολλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν γεμούσας ἦλθον.

ὁ Χίος γυμνήτας καὶ Νικόμαχος Οἰταῖος γυμνήτας· καὶ σύνθημα  
 ἐποιήσαντο, ὅποτε ἔχοιεν τὰ ἄκροις?;|pyre καίειν πολλά. ταῦτα  
 hilltop  
 |hearken, mark ᾧων· ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἱερίστον προήγαγεν ὁ Χειρίσοφος τὸ  
 ἄκρον?;  
 στράτευμα πᾶν ὡς δέκα |στάδιον?; 200 μέτρα (pl also masc) ; ὁ στάδιος?;  
 (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
 μάλιστα δοκοῖη ταύτη προσάξιν· ἔπειτα ἔδειπνησαν καὶ νύξ  
 ἄκροσ?; because  
 ἐγένετο, οἱ μὲν ταχθέντες ἄκροσ?; at the edge, καὶ καταλαμβάνουσι τὸ ὄρος,  
 οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι αὐτοῦ |cause to cease ἐξ- οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ἐπεὶ ἦσθοντο τὸ  
 ὄρος ἐχόμενον, ἐργηγόρεσαν καὶ ἔκαιον |pyre πολλά διὰ νυκτός.  
 |after; ἔπειτα ἡμέρα ἐγένετο Χειρίσοφος μὲν θυσάμενος ἦγε κατὰ τὴν  
 |because  
 ὁδόν, οἱ δὲ τὸ ὄρος καταλαβόντες κατὰ τὰ ἄκροις?; hilltop ; ὁ ἄκρον?; ex-  
 tremity ; or ἄκροσ?; at the edge,  
 πολέμιων τὸ μὲν πολὺ ἔμενον ἐπὶ τῇ |a extreme ὄρους, μέρος  
 ing beyond  
 δ' αὐτῶν ἀπὴντα τοῖς κατὰ τὰ ἄκροις?; hilltop ; ὁ ἄκρον?; extremity ; or  
 ἄκροσ?; at the edge, extreme  
 πολλοὺς ἀλλήλοισ, |mix with οἱ κατὰ τὰ ἄκροις?; hilltop ; ὁ ἄκρον?; ex-  
 tremity ; or ἄκροσ?; at the edge,  
 "Ἕλληνες καὶ διώκουσιν. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ οἱ |extreme πεδίον οἱ μὲν  
 |light τῶν Ἑλλήνων |running ἔειπον πρὸς τοὺς παρατεταγμένους,  
 |troops  
 Χειρίσοφος δὲ |step by step ἐφείπετο σὺν τοῖς ὀπίταις. οἱ δὲ  
 πολέμοι οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ |after; ) accomplish, |(pass) be weaker, be overcome;  
 |because |pass, waste; |(active) defeat  
 καὶ ἀπέθανον μὲν οὐ πολλοὶ ἀντ' ἑαυτῶν, ἀλλὰ πολλοὶ δὲ ἀπάμπολλα ἐλήφθη·  
 upwards, out to sea  
 ἂ οἱ Ἕλληνες ταῖς μαχαίραις |beat, cut, |serving no purpose 's  
 |strike  
 δ' ἀνέβησαν, θύσαντες καὶ τρόπαιον στησάμενοι κατέβησαν εἰς  
 τὸ πεδίον, καὶ εἰς |village πολλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν γεμούσας |ἄλθομαι?; be-  
 come whole ; or  
 |ἔρχομαι?; go,  
 |come

your command in the rear? Send others rather, unless a band of volunteers will present themselves.” Thereupon Aristonymus the Methydrian came forward with some heavy infantry, and Nicomachus the Oetean with another body of light troops, and they made an agreement to kindle several watch-fires as soon as they held the heights. The arrangements made, they breakfasted; and after breakfast Cheirisophus advanced the whole army ten furlongs closer towards the enemy, so as to strengthen the impression that he intended to attack them at that point.

But as soon as they had supped and night had fallen, the party under orders set off and occupied the mountain, while the main body rested where they were. Now as soon as the enemy perceived that the mountain was taken, they banished all thought of sleep, and kept many watch-fires blazing throughout the night. But at break of day Cheirisophus offered sacrifice, and began advancing along the road, while the detachment which held the mountain advanced *pari passu* by the high ground. The larger mass of the enemy, on his side, remained still on the mountain-pass, but a section of them turned to confront the detachment on the heights. Before the main bodies had time to draw together, the detachment on the height came to close quarters, and the Hellenes were victorious and gave chase. Meanwhile the light division of the Hellenes, issuing from the plain, were rapidly advancing against the serried lines of the enemy, whilst Cheirisophus followed up with his heavy infantry at quick march. But the enemy on the road no sooner saw their higher division being worsted than they fled, and some few of them were slain, and a vast number of wicker shields were taken, which the Hellenes hacked to pieces with their short swords and rendered useless. So when they had reached the summit of the pass, they sacrificed and set up a trophy, and descending into the plain, reached villages abounding in good things of every kind.



*vocabulary*

**ἄθροός** grouped  
**ἀὔθις** back, again, moreover ~after  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**διατίθημι** arrange; set out goods for sale  
**ἐναντίος** opposite, facing, meeting  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεὶ  
**ἐπιλείπω** fail, not work  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also ἰθύς  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἰσχυρός** strong, forceful, violent  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**κυλίνδω** roll ~cylinder  
**κωλύω** hinder, prevent  
**λίθος** (m/f) stone ~monolith; also λιθάς  
**μιαίνω** stain ~miasma

**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow  
**πάροδος** (f) detour, side way, mountain pass  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also πειρητίζω  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**περίστημι** stand around; enfold  
**πέτρα** rock, cliff, reef ~petrified  
**πλευρά** rib  
**πορεύω** carry  
**προσβάλλω** hit (+acc+dat); mp: heed  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στρατιά** army  
**τάξις -εως** (f) arrangement  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
**ὑπερέχω** be over; protect  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

## 4.7

Ἐκ δὲ τούτων ἐπορεύθησαν εἰς Ταόχους σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα· καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπέλειπε· χωρία γὰρ ὄκουν ἰσχυρὰ οἱ Τάοχοι, ἐν οἷς καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἅπαντα εἶχον ἀνακεκομισμένοι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκοντο πρὸς χωρίον ὃ πόλιν μὲν οὐκ εἶχεν οὐδ' οἰκίας, συνεληλυθότες δ' ἦσαν αὐτόσε καὶ ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ κτήνη πολλά, Χειρίσοφος μὲν οὖν πρὸς τοῦτο προσέβαλλεν εὐθὺς ἦκων· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ πρώτη τάξις ἀπέκαμνεν, ἄλλη προσῆι καὶ αὐθις ἄλλη· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἀθρόοις περιστῆναι, ἀλλ' ἀπότομον ἦν κύκλω. ἐπειδὴ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἦλθε σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι καὶ πελτασταῖς καὶ ὀπλίταις, ἐνταῦθα δὴ λέγει Χειρίσοφος· Εἰς καλὸν ἦκετε· τὸ γὰρ χωρίον αἰρετέον· τῇ γὰρ στρατιᾷ οὐκ ἔστι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, εἰ μὴ ληψόμεθα τὸ χωρίον. ἐνταῦθα δὴ κοινῇ ἐβουλευόντο· καὶ τοῦ Ξενοφῶντος ἐρωτῶντος τί τὸ κωλύον εἴη εἰσελθεῖν, εἶπεν ὁ Χειρίσοφος· Μία αὕτη πάροδος ἐστὶν ἣν ὀρᾶς· ὅταν δέ τις ταύτη πειρᾶται παριέναι, κυλίνδουσι λίθους ὑπὲρ ταύτης τῆς ὑπερχούσης πέτρας· ὃς δ' ἂν καταληφθῆ, οὕτω διατίθεται. ἅμα δ' ἔδειξε συντετριμμένους ἀνθρώπους καὶ σκέλη καὶ πλευράς. Ἦν δὲ τοὺς λίθους ἀναλώσωσιν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἄλλο τι ἢ οὐδὲν κωλύει παριέναι; οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου ὀρῶμεν εἰ μὴ ὀλίγους τούτους ἀνθρώπους, καὶ τούτων δύο ἢ τρεῖς ὀπλισμένους. τὸ δὲ χωρίον, ὡς καὶ σὺ ὀρᾶς,

4.7

Ἐκ δὲ τούτων ἐπορεύθησαν εἰς Ταόχους |cottage; post |Persian  
 τριάκοντα· καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια |fail, not work, ἅ γὰρ ἀ|kmn ἰσχυρὰ  
 οἱ Τάοχοι, ἐν οἷς καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἅπαντα εἶχον ἀνακεκομμένοι.  
 ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκοντο πρὸς χωρίον ὃ πόλιν μὲν οὐκ εἶχεν οὐδ' οἰκίας,  
 συνελλυθέντες δ' ἦσαν αὐτόσε καὶ ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ κτήνη  
 πολλά, Χειρίσοφος μὲν οὖν πρὸς τοῦτο |hit εὐθὺς ἦκων·  
 |after; ἡ πρώτη τάξις ἀπέκαμνεν, ἀλλ' |mp: heed καὶ αὐθις ἄλλη·  
 |because οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἀθρόοις |stand ἄλλ' ἀπότομον ἦν |circle, |after; ἡ  
 |around; |wheel |because  
 Ξενοφῶν |ἄλθομαι? |enfold |whole ; or |light troops καὶ ὀπλίταις,  
 |ἔρχομαι?: go, come  
 ἐνταῦθα δὴ λέγει Χειρίσοφος· Εἰς καλὸν ἦκετε· τὸ γὰρ χωρίον  
 αἰρετέον· τῇ γὰρ στρατιᾷ οὐκ ἔστι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, εἰ μὴ ληψόμεθα  
 τὸ χωρίον. ἐνταῦθα δὴ κοινῇ ἐβουλεύοντο· καὶ τοῦ Ξενοφάντος  
 ἐρωτῶντος τί τὸ κωλύον εἴη εἰσελθεῖν, εἶπεν ὁ Χειρίσοφος· Μία  
 αὕτη |detour, side way, ὄρᾱς· ὅταν δέ τις ταύτη πειρᾶται |dangle; pass  
 |mountain pass |over, allow  
 |roll |λίθος?: made of stone ; or |be over; protect 'ras' ὅς δ'  
 |λίθος?: stone  
 ἂν καταληφθῇ, οὕτω |arrange; set out δ' ἔδειξε συντετριμμένους  
 |goods for sale  
 ἀνθρώπους καὶ |leg καὶ |rib Ἦν δὲ τοὺς |λίθος?: made of stone ; or  
 |λίθος?: stone  
 ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἄλλο τι ἢ οὐδὲν κωλύει |dangle; pass γὰρ δὴ  
 |over, allow  
 ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου ὀρώμεν εἰ μὴ ὀλίγους τούτους ἀνθρώπους, καὶ  
 τούτων δύο ἢ τρεῖς ὀπλισμένους. τὸ δὲ χωρίον, ὡς καὶ σὺ ὄρᾱς,

## 4.7

After this they marched into the country of the Taochians five stages—thirty parasangs— and provisions failed; for the Taochians lived in strong places, into which they had carried up all their stores. Now when the army arrived before one of these strong places— a mere fortress, without city or houses, into which a motley crowd of men and women and numerous flocks and herds were gathered— Cheirisophus attacked at once. When the first regiment fell back tired, a second advanced, and again a third, for it was impossible to surround the place in full force, as it was encircled by a river. Presently Xenophon came up with the rearguard, consisting of both light and heavy infantry, whereupon Cheirisophus halted him with the words: “In the nick of time you have come; we must take this place, for the troops have no provisions, unless we take it.” Thereupon they consulted together, and to Xenophon’s inquiry, “What it was which hindered their simply walking in?” Cheirisophus replied, “There is just this one narrow approach which you see, but when we attempt to pass it by they roll down volleys of stones from yonder overhanging crag,” pointing up, “and this is the state in which you find yourself, if you chance to be caught;” and he pointed to some poor fellows with their legs or ribs crushed to bits. “But when they have expended their ammunition,” said Xenophon, “there is nothing else, is there, to hinder our passing? Certainly, except yonder handful of fellows, there is no one in front of us that we can see; and of them, only two or three apparently are armed, and the distance to be traversed under fire is, as your eyes will tell you, about one hundred and fifty feet as near as can be, and of this space the first hundred is thickly covered with

*vocabulary*

**ἄημι** blow  
**ἀθρόος** grouped  
**ἄμαξα** wagon  
**ἀναλίσκω** spend, use up  
**ἀναχάζω** pull back ~heir  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἀντί** for, equivalent to  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀσφαλής** going ahead, standing firm  
**δασύς** hairy  
**δείδω** to fear ~Deimos  
**δέκα** ten ~decimal  
**δένδρεον** tree; also δένδρον  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἐπειδάν** when  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεί  
**ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
 ἰθύς  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand

**ἥμερος** domesticated  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater; also θάομαι, θηέομαι  
**καθίζω** to seat ~sit; also ἴζω, καθιζάνω  
**κυλίνδω** roll ~cylinder  
**λίθος** (m/f) stone ~monolith; also  
 λιθάς  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive  
 ~mechanism  
**μικρός** small; also σμικρός  
**πέτρα** rock, cliff, reef ~petrified  
**πλέος** full; also πλεῖος, πλέως  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**ῥάδιος** easy; also ῥάιος  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**σχεδόν** near, approximately at  
 ~ischemia  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard  
 ~phylactery  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

σχεδὸν τρία ἡμίπλεθρά ἐστιν ὁ δεῖ βαλλομένους διελθεῖν· τούτου δὲ ὅσον πλέθρον δασὺ πίτυσι διαλειπούσαις μεγάλαις, ἀνθ' ὧν ἐστηκότες ἄνδρες τί ἂν πάσχοιεν ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν φερομένων λίθων ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν κυλιδομένων; τὸ λοιπὸν οὖν γίγνεται ὡς ἡμίπλεθρον, ὁ δὲ ὅταν λωφήσωσιν οἱ λίθοι παραδραμεῖν. Ἄλλὰ εὐθύς, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, ἐπειδὰν ἀρξώμεθα εἰς τὸ δασὺ προσιέναι, φέρονται οἱ λίθοι πολλοί. Αὐτὸ ἄν, ἔφη, τὸ δέον εἶη· θᾶπτον γὰρ ἀναλώσουσι τοὺς λίθους. ἀλλὰ πορευόμεθα ἔνθεν ἡμῖν μικρόν τι παραδραμεῖν ἔσται, ἣν δυνώμεθα, καὶ ἀπελθεῖν ῥάδιον, ἣν βουλώμεθα.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ Καλλίμαχος Παρράσιος λοχαγός· τούτου γὰρ ἡ ἡγεμονία ἦν τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων λοχαγῶν ἐκείνη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι λοχαγοὶ ἔμενον ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ. μετὰ τοῦτο οὖν ἀπήλθον ὑπὸ τὰ δένδρα ἄνθρωποι ὡς ἑβδομήκοντα, οὐχ ἀθρόοι ἀλλὰ καθ' ἕνα, ἕκαστος φυλαττόμενος ὡς ἐδύνατο. Ἄγασίας δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος καὶ Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεὺς καὶ οὗτοι τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων λοχαγοὶ ὄντες, καὶ ἄλλοι δέ, ἐφέστασαν ἔξω τῶν δένδρων· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἀσφαλῶς ἐν τοῖς δένδροις ἐστάναι πλέον ἢ τὸν ἕνα λόχον. ἔνθα δὲ Καλλίμαχος μηχανᾶται τι· προύτρεχεν ἀπὸ τοῦ δένδρου ὑφ' ᾧ ἦν αὐτὸς δύο ἢ τρία βήματα· ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ λίθοι φέροντο, ἀνέχαζεν εὐπετῶς· ἐφ' ἐκάστης δὲ τῆς προδρομῆς πλέον ἢ δέκα ἄμαξαι πετρῶν ἀνηλίσκοντο. ὁ δὲ Ἄγασίας ὡς ὀρᾷ τὸν Καλλίμαχον ἃ ἐποίει τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν θεώμενον, δείσας

σχεδὸν τρία ἡμίπλευρά ἐστιν ὁ δεῖ βαλλομένους διελθεῖν· τούτου δὲ

ὄσον 30 |hairy|pine διαλειπούσαις μεγάλαις, ἄημι?: blow ; or ἀντί?: for, equivalent to  
 meters  
 ἀνδρῶν ἢ τῶν πᾶσχοιεν ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν φερομένων λίθος?: made of stone ; or  
 square λίθος?: stone  
 |roll τὸ λοιπὸν οὖν γίνεται ὡς ἡμίπλευρον, ὁ δεῖ ὅταν

stop, find λίθος? in past Ἄλλα εὐθύς, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος,  
 respite from made  
 when ἀρξώμεθα ὅτι εἰς τὸ |hairy τροσιέναι, φέρονται οἱ λίθος?: made of stone ;  
 stone or λίθος?: stone  
 Αὐτὸ ἄν, ἔφη, τὸ δέ οἱ εἶπεν· θάττον γὰρ |spend, use up ἵς λίθος?: made of stone ;  
 λίθος?: stone  
 πορευόμεθα ἐν τῇ ἡμῖν μικρὸν τι |run past ἔσται, ἢν δυνώμεθα,  
 καὶ ἀπελθεῖν ῥάδιον, ἢν βουλώμεθα.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ Καλλίμαχος

Παρράσιος λοχαγός· τούτου γὰρ ἡ ἡγεμονία ἦν τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων  
 λοχαγῶν ἐκείνη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι λοχαγοὶ ἔμμενον ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ.

μετὰ τοῦτο οὖν ἀπῆλθον ὑπὸ τὰ |tree ἄνθρωποι ὡς ἑβδομήκοντα,

οὐχ ἀθρόοι ἀλλὰ καθ' ἓνα, ἕκαστος φυλαττόμενος ὡς |enter, put on,  
 strip off

Ἀγασίας δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος καὶ Ἀριστόνυμος Μεθυδριεὺς καὶ οὗτοι  
 τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων λοχαγοὶ ὄντες, καὶ ἄλλοι δέ, ἐφέστασαν ἕξω

τῶν |tree οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἀσφαλῶς ἐν τοῖς |tree ἐστάναι πλέον

ἢ τὸν ἓνα |ambush, band, child- δὴ Καλλίμαχος |build, τι· προὔτρεχεν  
 |contrive

ἀπὸ τοῦ |tree ἕξ ὧν ἦν αὐτὸς δύο ἢ τρία βήματα· |after; ὅτι οἱ  
 |because

λίθος?: made of stone ; or  
 of stone ; or

λίθος?: stone a |wagon πετρῶν |spend, use up ὁ δὲ Ἀγασίας ὡς

ὄρᾳ τὸν Καλλίμαχον ἃ ἐποίει τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν θεώμενον, δεισας

great pines at intervals; under cover of these, what harm can come to our men from a pelt of stones, flying or rolling? So then, there is only fifty feet left to cross, during a lull of stones.” “Ay,” said Cheirisophus, “but with our first attempt to approach the bush a galling fire of stones commences.” “The very thing we want,” said the other, “for they will use up their ammunition all the quicker; but let us select a point from which we shall have only a brief space to run across, if we can, and from which it will be easier to get back, if we wish.”

Thereupon Cheirisophus and Xenophon set out with Callimachus the Parrhasian, the captain in command of the officers of the rearguard that day; the rest of the captains remained out of danger. That done, the next step was for a party of about seventy men to get away under the trees, not in a body, but one by one, every one using his best precaution; and Agasis the Stymphalian, and Aristonymous the Methydrian, who were also officers of the rearguard, were posted as supports outside the trees; for it was not possible for more than a single company to stand safely within the trees. Here Callimachus hit upon a pretty contrivance— he ran forward from the tree under which he was posted two or three paces, and as soon as the stones came whizzing, he retired easily, but at each excursion more than ten wagon-loads of rocks were expended. Agasias, seeing how Callimachus was amusing himself, and the whole army looking on as spectators, was seized with the fear that he might miss his chance of being first to run the gauntlet of the enemy’s fire and get into the place. So, without a word of summons to his neighbour, Aristonymous, or to Eurylochus of Lusias, both comrades of his, or to any one else, off he set on his own account, and passed



*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*  
**ἄημι** blow  
**αἰδέομαι** respect, be ashamed  
**ἄλκιμος** brave; sturdily made (*ἀλκή*)  
**ἀμφότερος** both ~amphora  
**ἀντί** for, equivalent to  
**ἅπαξ** once  
**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**βοῦς βοός** (m/f) cow, ox; shield  
 ~bovine  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**εἶτα** then, therefore, next  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἑπτά** seven  
**ἐρίζω** struggle, contend  
**ἑταῖρος** companion; also *ἑταίρα*,  
*ἕταρος*  
**ζώνη** girdle; waist, loins ~zone  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater; also *θάομαι*, *θηέομαι*  
**θέω** run, run for

**θώραξ -ηκος** (m) corselet; torso  
**κεφαλή** head; height ~gable  
**κρατέω** rule ~democracy  
**κωλύω** hinder, prevent  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὀνίνημι** help, please, be available  
**ὄνος** donkey ~onager  
**ὅποτε** when; also *ὄπποτε*  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also *ὀδός*  
**πάνυ** altogether, very  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πεντήκοντα** fifty  
**πέτρα** rock, cliff, reef ~petrified  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds; also  
*πρόβασις*  
**πτέρυξ -γος** (f) wing ~archeopteryx  
**ρίπτω** hurl; also *ἐπιρίπτω*  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also *σταθμόν*  
**στολή** equipment, gear  
**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
 ~heir  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

μὴ οὐ πρῶτος παραδράμη εἰς τὸ χωρίον, οὐδὲ τὸν Ἀριστώνυμον πλησίον ὄντα παρακαλέσας οὐδὲ Εὐρύλοχον τὸν Λουσιέα, ἐταίρους ὄντας, οὐδὲ ἄλλον οὐδένα χωρεῖ αὐτός, καὶ παρέρχεται πάντας. ὁ δὲ Καλλίμαχος ὡς ὄρῃ αὐτὸν παριόντα, ἐπιλαμβάνεται αὐτοῦ τῆς ἴτιος· ἐν δὲ τούτῳ παραθεῖ αὐτοὺς Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεύς, καὶ μετὰ τούτων Εὐρύλοχος Λουσιεύς· πάντες γὰρ οὗτοι ἀντεποιοῦντο ἀρετῆς καὶ διηγωνίζοντο πρὸς ἀλλήλους· καὶ οὕτως ἐρίζοντες αἰρούσι τὸ χωρίον. ὡς γὰρ ἅπαξ εἰσέδραμον, οὐδεὶς πέτρος ἄνωθεν ἠνέχθη. ἐνταῦθα δὴ δεινὸν ἦν θέαμα. αἱ γὰρ γυναῖκες ρίπτουσαι τὰ παιδιά εἶτα ἑαυτὰς ἐπικατερρίπτουν, καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες ὡσαύτως. ἐνταῦθα δὴ καὶ Αἰνείας Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς ἰδὼν τινα θεόντα ὡς ρίβοντα ἑαυτὸν στολὴν ἔχοντα καλὴν ἐπιλαμβάνεται ὡς κωλύσων· ὁ δὲ αὐτὸν ἐπισπᾶται, καὶ ἀμφότεροι ὄχοντο κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν φερόμενοι καὶ ἀπέθανον. ἐντεῦθεν ἄνθρωποι μὲν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἐλήφθησαν, βόες δὲ καὶ ὄνοι πολλοὶ καὶ πρόβατα.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Χαλύβων σταθμοὺς ἑπτὰ παρασάγγας πεντήκοντα. οὗτοι ἦσαν ὧν διήλθον ἀλκμώτατοι, καὶ εἰς χεῖρας ἦσαν. εἶχον δὲ θώρακας λινοῦς μέχρι τοῦ ἦτρου, ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν περὺγων σπάρτα πυκνὰ ἐστραμμένα. εἶχον δὲ καὶ κνημίδας καὶ κράνη καὶ παρὰ τὴν ζώνην μαχαίριον ὅσον ξυλήν Λακωνικὴν, ᾧ ἔσφαττον ὧν κρατεῖν δύναιντο, καὶ ἀποτεμόντες ἂν τὰς κεφαλὰς ἔχοντες ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ ἦδον καὶ ἐχόρευον ὅποτε οἱ πολέμοι αὐτοὺς

μη οὐ πρῶτος |run past εἰς τὸ χωρίον, οὐδὲ τὸν Ἀριστόνυμον  
 πλησίον ὄντα παρακαλέσας οὐδὲ Εὐρύλοχον τὸν Λουσιέα, ἐταίρους  
 ὄντας, οὐδὲ ἄλλον οὐδένα χωρεῖ αὐτός, καὶ παρέρχεται πάντας. ὁ  
 δὲ Καλλίμαχος ὡς ὄρᾳ αὐτὸν παριόντα, ἐπιλαμβάνεται αὐτοῦ τῆς  
 |rim ἐν δὲ τούτῳ παραθεῖ αὐτοὺς Ἀριστόνυμος Μεθυδριεύς, καὶ  
 μετὰ τοῦτον Εὐρύλοχος Λουσιεύς· πάντες γὰρ οὗτοι ἀντεπιούντο  
 ἀρετῆς καὶ διηγωνίζοντο πρὸς ἀλλήλους· καὶ οὕτως |struggle, |ίροῦσι  
 τὸ χωρίον. ὡς γὰρ |once εἰσέδραμον, οὐδεὶς |rock |contend ἄνωθεν ἠνέχθη.  
 ἐνταῦθα δὴ δευρὸν ἦν θέαμα. αἱ γὰρ γυναῖκες |hurl τὰ παιδία  
 εἶτα ἑαυτὰς ἐπικατερρίπτουν, καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες ὡσαύτως. ἐνταῦθα  
 δὴ καὶ Αἰνεΐας Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς ἰδὼν τινα θέοντα ὡς ρίψοντα  
 ἑαυτὸν |equipment, gear λῆν ἐπιλαμβάνεται ὡς κωλύσων· ὁ δὲ αὐτὸν  
 ἐπισπᾶται, καὶ ἀμφοτέροι ᾤχοντο κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν φερόμενοι καὶ  
 ἀπέθανον. ἐντεῦθεν ἀνθρωποὶ μὲν πάντῃ ὀλίγοι ἐλήφθησαν, βόες δὲ  
 καὶ |ὄνος?: `donkey` ; or |ἄνινημι?: help, please,  
 |be available ; or |ὄνομαι?: minimize  
 Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Χαλύβων |cottage; post ἃ |Persian  
 πεντήκοντα. οὗτοι ἦσαν ὡς διήλθον ἀλκιμώτατοι, καὶ |kmis χεῖρας  
 ἦσαν. εἶχον δὲ |corselet; λινοῦς μέχρι τοῦ ἥτρου, ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν  
 |torso |wing σπάρτα πυκνὰ ἐστραμμένα. εἶχον δὲ καὶ |greave καὶ  
 κράνη καὶ παρὰ τὴν |ζώνη?: girdle; waist ; ξυήλην Λακωνικὴν, ᾧ  
 ἢ |or ζώννυμι?: gird  
 ἔσφαττον ὡς κρατεῖν |enter, put on, |cut off, sever ἢ τὰς κεφαλὰς  
 |strip off ἔχοντες ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ ἦδον καὶ ἐχόρευον ὅποτε οἱ πολέμιοι αὐτοὺς

the whole detachment. But Callimachus, seeing him tearing past, caught hold of his shield by the rim, and in the meantime Aristonymous the Methydrian ran past both, and after him Eurylochus of Lusian; for they were one and all aspirants to valour, and in that high pursuit, each was the eager rival of the rest. So in this strife of honour, the three of them took the fortress, and when they had once rushed in, not a stone more was hurled from overhead.

And here a terrible spectacle displayed itself: the women first cast their infants down the cliff, and then they cast themselves after their fallen little ones, and the men likewise. In such a scene, Aeneas the Stymphalian, an officer, caught sight of a man with a fine dress about to throw himself over, and seized hold of him to stop him; but the other caught him to his arms, and both were gone in an instant headlong down the crags, and were killed. Out of this place the merest handful of human beings were taken prisoners, but cattle and asses in abundance and flocks of sheep.

From this place they marched through the Chalybes seven stages, fifty parasangs. These were the bravest men whom they encountered on the whole march, coming cheerily to close quarters with them. They wore linen cuirasses reaching to the groin, and instead of the ordinary "wings" or basques, a thickly-plaited fringe of cords. They were also provided with greaves and helmets, and at the girdle a short sabre, about as long as the Laconian dagger, with which they cut the throats of those they mastered, and after severing the head from the trunk they would march along carrying it, singing and dancing, when they drew within their enemy's field of view. They carried also a spear fifteen cubits long, lanced

*vocabulary*

**ἄγνυμι** break  
**αἶθω** set on fire ~ether  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**αὐτόθεν** from that place  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**δόρου** δουρός (n, 3) spear shaft, plank ~druid  
**εἰκός** οικότος (n, 3) likely  
**εἴκοσι** twenty  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεὶ  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide, chief  
**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**θνήσκω** die ~euthanasia; also ἐχθνήσκω  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**κραυγή** screaming, shouting

**κώμη** village  
**ὅθεν** whence  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἰκουμένη** inhabited  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι, οἴομαι  
**ὄπισθεν** behind, hereafter; also ὄπιθεν  
**ὄρнуμι** set upon, arouse ~hormone; also ὑπόρнуμι  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill ~hormone  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πέμπτος** fifth  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**πεντεκαίδεκα** 15  
**πῆχυς** -εος (m) forearm, cubit  
**πορεύω** carry  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**τέσσαρες** (3) four  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φθείρω** destroy, ruin  
**χώρα** place  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

ὄψεσθαι ἔμελλον. εἶχον δὲ καὶ δόρυ ὡς πεντεκαίδεκα πήχεων μίαν  
 λόγχην ἔχον. οὗτοι ἐνέμενον ἐν τοῖς πολίσμασιν· ἐπεὶ δὲ παρέλθοιεν  
 οἱ Ἕλληνες, εἶποντο αἰὲ μαχοῦμενοι. ὥκουν δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὄχυροῖς,  
 καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐν τούτοις ἀνακεκομισμένοι ἦσαν· ὥστε μηδὲν  
 λαμβάνειν αὐτόθεν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ἀλλὰ διετράφησαν τοῖς κτήνεσιν  
 ἃ ἐκ τῶν Ταόχων ἔλαβον. ἐκ τούτων οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ  
 Ἄρπασον ποταμόν, εὖρος τεττάρων πλέθρων. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν  
 διὰ Σκυθηνῶν σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι διὰ πεδίου  
 εἰς κώμας· ἐν αἷς ἔμεναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο. ἐντεῦθεν  
 διήλθον σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι πρὸς πόλιν μεγάλην  
 καὶ εὐδαίμονα καὶ οἰκουμένην ἣ ἐκαλεῖτο Γυμνιάς. ἐκ ταύτης τῆς  
 χώρας ὁ ἄρχων τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἡγεμόνα πέμπει, ὅπως διὰ τῆς  
 ἑαυτῶν πολεμίας χώρας ἄγοι αὐτούς. ἐλθὼν δ' ἐκεῖνος λέγει ὅτι  
 ἄξει αὐτοὺς πέντε ἡμερῶν εἰς χωρίον ὅθεν ὄψονται θάλατταν· εἰ  
 δὲ μή, τεθνᾶναι ἐπηγγέλατο. καὶ ἡγούμενος ἐπειδὴ ἐνέβαλλεν  
 εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ πολεμίαν, παρεκελεύετο αἶθειν καὶ φθείρειν τὴν  
 χώραν· ᾧ καὶ δῆλον ἐγένετο ὅτι τούτου ἕνεκα ἔλθοι, οὐ τῆς τῶν  
 Ἑλλήνων εὐνοίας. καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος τῇ πέμπτῃ ἡμέρᾳ·  
 ὄνομα δὲ τῷ ὄρει ἦν Θήχης. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ πρῶτοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ  
 ὄρους καὶ κατεῖδον τὴν θάλατταν, κραυγὴ πολλὴ ἐγένετο. ἀκούσας  
 δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ᾠήθησαν ἔμπροσθεν ἄλλους  
 ἐπιτίθεσθαι πολεμίους· εἶποντο γὰρ ὄπισθεν ἐκ τῆς καιομένης χώρας,

ὄψεσθαι ἔμελλον. εἶχον δὲ καὶ δόρυ ὡς |15 |forearm., ἴαν  
 λόγχην ἔχον. οὗτοι ἐνέμενον ἐν τοῖς πολίσμασιν· ἐπεὶ δὲ παρέλθοιεν  
 οἱ Ἕλληνες, εἶποντο αἰὲ μαχοῦμενοι. ἄκουον δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὄχυροῖς,  
 καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐν τούτοις ἀνακεκομσμένοι ἦσαν· ὥστε μηδὲν  
 λαμβάνειν |from that place |ληνας, ἀλλὰ διετράφησαν τοῖς κτήνεσιν  
 ἀ ἐκ τῶν Ταόχων ἔλαβον. ἐκ τούτων οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ  
 Ἄρπασον ποταμόν. |width; (caps)|30 meters ὁρ εὐθεν ἐπορεύθησαν  
 |the east wind |its square  
 διὰ Σκυθηνῶν |cottage; post |aras |Persian εἴκοσι διὰ πεδίου  
 |village ἐν αἷς ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τῆ |km καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο. ἐντεῦθεν  
 διήλθον |cottage; post |aras |Persian εἴκοσι πρὸς πόλιν μεγάλην  
 |unit, ca. 5  
 καὶ |blessed with |ἀοικουμένῃ, inhabited Γυμνιάς. ἐκ ταύτης τῆς  
 |good genius |; or οἰκῶ?: inhabit  
 χώρας ὁ ἄρχων τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἡγεμόνα πέμπει, ὅπως διὰ τῆς  
 ἑαυτῶν πολεμίας χώρας ἄγοι αὐτούς. ἐλθὼν δ' ἐκεῖνος λέγει ὅτι  
 |ἄγνυμι?: break ; or |μερῶν εἰς χωρίον ὅθεν ὄψονται θάλατταν· εἰ  
 |ἄγω?: lead, bring  
 δὲ μὴ, τεθνάναι ἐπηγγείλατο. καὶ ἡγούμενος |after; ἴεβαλλεν  
 |because  
 εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ πολεμίαν, παρεκελεύετο |set on fire φθείρειν τὴν  
 χώραν· ᾧ καὶ δῆλον ἐγένετο ὅτι τούτου ἕνεκα ἔλθοι, οὐ τῆς τῶν  
 Ἑλλήνων εὐνοίας. καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος τῆ |fifth ἡμέρα·  
 ὄνομα δὲ τῷ ὄρει ἦν Θήχης. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ πρῶτοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ  
 ὄρους καὶ κατεῖδον τὴν θάλατταν, |screaming, ἠ γέγονετο. |ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix  
 |shouting |; or ἀκούω?: hear,  
 δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἀήθησαν ἔμπροσθεν |listenous  
 ἐπιτίθεσθαι πολέμιους· εἶποντο γὰρ ὀπισθεν ἐκ τῆς καιομένης χώρας,

at one end. This folk stayed in regular townships, and whenever the Hellenes passed by they invariably hung close on their heels fighting. They had dwelling-places in their fortresses, and into them they had carried up their supplies, so that the Hellenes could get nothing from this district, but supported themselves on the flocks and herds they had taken from the Taochians. After this the Hellenes reached the river Harpasus, which was four hundred feet broad. Hence they marched through the Scythenians four stages— twenty parasangs— through a long level country to more villages, among which they halted three days, and got in supplies.

Passing on from thence in four stages of twenty parasangs, they reached a large and prosperous well-populated city, which went by the name of Gymnias, from which the governor of the country sent them a guide to lead them through a district hostile to his own. This guide told them that within five days he would lead them to a place from which they would see the sea, “and,” he added, “if I fail of my word, you are free to take my life.” Accordingly he put himself at their head; but he no sooner set foot in the country hostile to himself than he fell to encouraging them to burn and harry the land; indeed his exhortations were so earnest, it was plain that it was for this he had come, and not out of the good-will he bore the Hellenes.

On the fifth day they reached the mountain, the name of which was Theches. No sooner had the men in front ascended it and caught sight of the sea than a great cry arose, and Xenophon, in the rear-guard, catching the sound of it, conj ectured that another set of enemies must surely be attacking in front; for they were followed by the inhabitants of the country, which was all aflame; indeed the rear-guard had killed some



*vocabulary*

**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also ἄκρα,  
 ἄκρη  
**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**ἀνατίθημι** reproach  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀποκτείνω** kill  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βοάω** shout  
**βοείη** shield; leather, bovine; also  
 βόειος  
**βοή** din, a shout  
**βοῦς** βοός (m/f) cow, ox; shield  
 ~bovine  
**δακρῶω** weep  
**δασύς** hairy  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**δέκα** ten ~decimal  
**δέρμα** (n, 3) skin, hide ~dermatology  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
**δῶρον** gift ~donate  
**εἰκός** οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also

ἐλαστρέω  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐξαπίνης** suddenly  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεί  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ζωγρέω** revive  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θέω** run, run for  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἵππιοχάρμης  
**κώμη** village  
**λίθος** (m/f) stone ~monolith; also  
 λιθάς  
**ὄδος** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**περιβάλλω** excel; don  
**πλήθος** -υς (3) numerical superiority  
**πορεύω** carry  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τάχα** quickly, soon ~tachometer  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φιάλη** jar ~vial

καὶ αὐτῶν οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἀπέκτεινάν τέ τινας καὶ ἐζώγησαν ἐνέδραν ποιησάμενοι, καὶ γέρρα ἔλαβον δασειῶν βοῶν ὠμοβοεία ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσιν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ βοῆ πλείων τε ἐγίγνετο καὶ ἐγγύτερον καὶ οἱ αἰεὶ ἐπιόντες ἔθεον δρόμῳ ἐπὶ τοὺς αἰεὶ βοῶντας καὶ πολλῶ μείζων ἐγίγνετο ἢ βοῆ ὅσῳ δὴ πλείους ἐγίγνοντο, ἐδόκει δὴ μείζον τι εἶναι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐφ' ἵππον καὶ Λύκιον καὶ τοὺς ἰπέας ἀναλαβὼν παρεβοήθει· καὶ τάχα δὴ ἀκούουσι βοῶντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν Θάλαττα θάλαττα καὶ παρεγγυώντων. ἔνθα δὴ ἔθεον πάντες καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἠγλαύνετο καὶ οἱ ἵπποι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο πάντες ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, ἐνταῦθα δὴ περιέβαλλον ἀλλήλους καὶ στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς δακρύνοντες. καὶ ἔξαπίνης ὅτου δὴ παρεγγυήσαντος οἱ στρατιῶται φέρουσι λίθους καὶ ποιοῦσι κολωνὸν μέγαν. ἐνταῦθα ἀνετίθεσαν δερμάτων πλήθος ὠμοβοείων καὶ βακτηρίας καὶ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα γέρρα, καὶ ὁ ἡγεμὼν αὐτός τε κατέτεμνε τὰ γέρρα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις διεκελεύετο. μετὰ ταῦτα τὸν ἡγεμόνα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀποπέμπουσι δῶρα δόντες ἀπὸ κοινοῦ ἵππον καὶ φιάλην ἀργυρᾶν καὶ σκευὴν Περσικὴν καὶ δαρεϊκοὺς δέκα· ἥτει δὲ μάλιστα τοὺς δακτυλίους, καὶ ἔλαβε πολλοὺς παρὰ τῶν στρατιωτῶν. κάμην δὲ δείξας αὐτοῖς οὗ σκηνήσουσι καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἣν πορεύονται εἰς Μάκρωνας, ἐπεὶ ἐσπέρα ἐγένετο, ὄχετο τῆς νυκτὸς ἀπίων.

καὶ αὐτῶν οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἀπέκτεινάν τέ τινας καὶ |revive  
 ἐνέδραν ποιησάμενοι, καὶ γέρρα ἔλαβον |hairy βοῶν ὠμοβόεια  
 ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσιν. |after; ἄ: βοῇ πλείων τε ἐγίνετο καὶ ἐγγύτερον  
 |because  
 καὶ οἱ αἰεὶ ἐπιόντες ἔθειον |running ἰ τὸς αἰεὶ βοῶντας καὶ πολλῶ  
 μεῖζων ἐγίνετο ἢ βοῇ ὅσω δὴ πλείους ἐγίνοντο, ἐδόκει δὴ |μεῖζον?: more  
 τι εἶναι τῶ Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐφ' ἵππον καὶ Λύκιον καὶ |greatly ; or  
 |μέγας?: big,  
 ἱπέας ἀναλαβὼν παρεβοήθει· καὶ τάχα δὴ ἀκούουσι βοῶντων τῶν  
 στρατιωτῶν Θάλαττα θάλαττα καὶ παρεγγυόντων. ἔνθα δὴ ἔθειον  
 πάντες καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, καὶ τὰ |beast of burden ο καὶ οἱ ἵπποι.  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο πάντες ἐπὶ τὸ |ἄκρον?: ἔxtremity ; ὅr  
 |ἄκρος?: at the edge, extreme  
 ἀλλήλους καὶ στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς |weep καὶ |suddenly  
 ὅτου δὴ παρεγγήσαντος οἱ στρατιῶται φέρουσι |λίθος?: ἔmade of stone ; or  
 |λίθος?: stone  
 κολωνὸν μέγαν. ἐνταῦθα |reproach |skin, hide τλήθος ὠμοβοείων  
 καὶ βακτηρίας καὶ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα γέρρα, καὶ ὁ ἡγεμὼν αὐτός τε  
 κατέτεμνε τὰ γέρρα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις διεκελεύετο. μετὰ ταῦτα τὸν  
 ἡγεμόνα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀποπέμπουσι δῶρα δόντες ἀπὸ κοινοῦ ἵππον  
 καὶ |jar ἄργυρᾶν καὶ σκευὴν Περσικὴν καὶ δαρεικὸν δέκα· ἥτιι δὲ  
 μάλιστα τοὺς δακτυλίους, καὶ ἔλαβε πολλοὺς παρὰ τῶν στρατιωτῶν.  
 |village δὲ δείξας αὐτοῖς οὗ σκηνήσουσι καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἣν πορεύονται  
 εἰς Μάκρωνας, ἐπεὶ ἑσπέρα ἐγένετο, ὄχητο τῆς νυκτὸς ἀπιών.

and captured others alive by laying an ambushade; they had taken also about twenty wicker shields, covered with the raw hides of shaggy oxen.

But as the shout became louder and nearer, and those who from time to time came up, began racing at the top of their speed towards the shouters, and the shouting continually recommenced with yet greater volume as the numbers increased, Xenophon settled in his mind that something extraordinary must have happened, so he mounted his horse, and taking with him Lycius and the cavalry, he galloped to the rescue. Presently they could hear the soldiers shouting and passing on the joyful word, "The sea! the sea!"

Thereupon they began running, rearguard and all, and the baggage animals and horses came galloping up. But when they had reached the summit, then indeed they fell to embracing one another—generals and officers and all— and the tears trickled down their cheeks. And on a sudden, some one, whoever it was, having passed down the order, the soldiers began bringing stones and erecting a great cairn, whereon they dedicated a host of untanned skins, and staves, and captured wicker shields, and with his own hand the guide hacked the shields to pieces, inviting the rest to follow his example. After this the Hellenes dismissed the guide with a present raised from the common store, to wit, a horse, a silver bowl, a Persian dress, and ten darics; but what he most begged to have were their rings, and of these he got several from the soldiers. So, after pointing out to them a village where they would find quarters, and the road by which they would proceed towards the land of the Macrones, as evening fell, he turned his back upon them in the night and was gone.

*vocabulary*

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
**ἀριστερός** left-hand  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βλάπτω** break, make fail  
**δέκα** ten ~decimal  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**διάβασις** -εως (f) crossing, passage  
**διαλέγω** go through, debate  
**διό** because of which  
**ἔδω** eat ~eat  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire  
**ἔνειμι** be in  
**ἐννυμι** clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἥμερος** domesticated  
**ἡμέτερος** our, my  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**κόπτω** beat, cut, strike  
**κωλύω** hinder, prevent  
**λίθος** (m/f) stone ~monolith; also λιθάς

**μανθάνω** learn, be trained ~math  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οὔομαι, οἶομαι  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὀδός  
**πατρίς** -δος fatherland  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**πορεύω** carry  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender, come in  
**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry ~repudiate  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**φάσκω** declare, promise, think  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**φωνή** sound; voice ~megaphone  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear  
**χιτών** -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor  
**χρήζω** need  
**χώρα** place  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

## 4.8

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες διὰ Μακρώνων σταθμούς τρεῖς παρασάγγας δέκα. τῇ πρώτῃ δὲ ἡμέρᾳ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν ὃς ὠρίζε τὴν τῶν Μακρώνων καὶ τὴν τῶν Σκυθηνῶν. εἶχον δ' ὑπὲρ δεξιῶν χωρίον οἶον χαλεπώτατον καὶ ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς ἄλλον ποταμὸν, εἰς ὃν ἐνέβαλλεν ὁ ὀρίζων, δι' οὗ ἔδει διαβῆναι. ἦν δὲ οὗτος δασὺς δένδροισι παχέσι μὲν οὐ, πυκνοῖσι δέ. ταῦτ' ἐπεὶ προσῆλθον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔκοπτον, σπεύδοντες ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου ὡς τάχιστα ἐξελεῖν. οἱ δὲ Μάκρωνες ἔχοντες γέρρα καὶ λόγχας καὶ τριχίνους χιτῶνας κατ' ἀντιπέραν τῆς διαβάσεως παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν καὶ ἀλλήλοις διεκελεύοντο καὶ λίθους εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν ἔριπτον· ἐξικνοῦντο γὰρ οὐ οὐδ' ἔβλαπτον οὐδέν. ἔνθα δὴ προσέρχεται Ξενοφῶντι τῶν πελταστῶν ἀνὴρ Ἀθήνησι φάσκων δεδουλευκέναι, λέγων ὅτι γινώσκω τὴν φωνὴν τῶν ἀνθρώπων. καὶ οἶμαι, ἔφη, ἐμὴν ταύτην πατρίδα εἶναι· καὶ εἰ μὴ τι κωλύει, ἐθέλω αὐτοῖς διαλεχθῆναι. Ἄλλ' οὐδὲν κωλύει, ἔφη, ἀλλὰ διαλέγου καὶ μάθε πρῶτον τίνες εἰσίν. οἱ δ' εἶπον ἐρωτήσαντος ὅτι Μάκρωνες. Ἐρώτα τοίνυν, ἔφη, αὐτοὺς τί ἀντιτετάχεται καὶ χρήξουσιν ἡμῖν πολέμοι εἶναι. οἱ δ' ἀπεκρίναντο Ὅτι καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐπὶ τὴν ἡμετέραν χώραν ἔρχεσθε. λέγειν ἐκέλευον οἱ στρατηγοὶ ὅτι οὐ κακῶς γε ποιήσοντες, ἀλλὰ βασιλεῖ πολεμήσαντες ἀπερχόμεθα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ ἐπὶ θάλατταν βουλόμεθα ἀφικέσθαι.

4.8

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες διὰ Μακρώνων |cottage; post  
 τρεῖς |Persian δέκα. τῇ πρώτῃ δὲ ἡμέρᾳ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν  
 unit, ca. 5  
 ποταμὸν |km ὃς ὠρίζε τὴν τῶν Μακρώνων καὶ τὴν τῶν Σκυθηγῶν.  
 εἶχον δ' ὑπὲρ |δεξιὰ?: right-hand ; or ἑπώτατον καὶ ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς  
 |δεξιός?: right-hand  
 ἄλλον ποταμόν, εἰς ὃν ἐνέβαλλεν ὁ ὀρίζων, δι' οὗ ἔδει |pass over, cross  
 ἦν δὲ οὗτος |hairy δένδρεσι παχέσι μὲν οὗ, πυκνοῖς δέ. ταῦτ'  
 ἐπεὶ προσῆλθον οἱ Ἕλληνες |beat, cut, strike ῥτες ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου ὡς  
 τάχιστα ἐξελθεῖν. οἱ δὲ Μάκρωνες ἔχοντες γέρρα καὶ λόγχας καὶ  
 τριχίνους χιτῶνας κατ' ἀντιπέραν τῆς |crossing, παρατεταγμένοι  
 |passage  
 ἦσαν καὶ ἀλλήλοις διεκελεύοντο καὶ |λίθος?: made of stone ἔρριπτον'  
 ; or λίθος?: stone  
 ἐξικνούντο γὰρ οὐδ' οὐδ' ἔβλαπτον οὐδέν. ἔνθα δὴ προσέρχεται  
 Ξενοφῶντι τῶν |light troops ἀνὴρ Ἀθήνησι φάσκων δεδουλευκέναι,  
 λέγων ὅτι γιγνώσκουσι τὴν φωνὴν τῶν ἀνθρώπων. καὶ οἶμαι, ἔφη, ἐμὴν  
 ταύτην πατρίδα εἶναι· καὶ εἰ μὴ τι κωλύει, ἐθέλω αὐτοῖς διαλεχθῆναι.  
 Ἄλλ' οὐδὲν κωλύει, ἔφη, ἀλλὰ διαλέγου καὶ μάθε πρῶτον τίνες εἰσίν.  
 οἱ δ' εἶπον ἐρωτήσαντος ὅτι Μάκρωνες. Ἐρώτα τοίνυν, ἔφη, αὐτοὺς  
 τί ἀντιτετάχεται καὶ |need ἡμῖν πολέμοι εἶναι. οἱ δ' ἀπεκρίναντο  
 Ὅτι καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐπὶ τὴν ἡμετέραν χώραν ἔρχεσθε. λέγειν ἐκέλευον οἱ  
 στρατηγοὶ ὅτι οὐ κακῶς γε ποιήσοντες, ἀλλὰ βασιλεῖ πολεμήσαντες  
 ἀπερχόμεθα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ ἐπὶ θάλατταν βουλόμεθα ἀφικέσθαι.

## 4.8

From this point the Hellenes marched through the country of the Macrones three stages— ten parasangs, and on the first day they reached the river, which formed the boundary between the land of the Macrones and the land of the Scythenians. Above them, on their right, they had a country of the sternest and ruggedest character, and on their left another river, into which the frontier river discharges itself, and which they must cross. This was thickly fringed with trees which, though not of any great bulk, were closely packed. As soon as they came up to them, the Hellenes proceeded to cut them down in their haste to get out of the place as soon as possible. But the Macrones, armed with wicker shields and lances and hair tunics, were already drawn up to receive them opposite the crossing. They were cheering one another on, and kept up a steady pelt of stones into the river, though they failed to reach the other side or do any harm.

At this juncture one of the light infantry came up to Xenophon; he had been, he said, a slave at Athens, and he wished to tell him that he recognised the speech of these people. “I think,” said he, “that this must be my native country, and if there is no objection I will have a talk with them.” “No objection at all,” replied Xenophon, “pray talk to them, and ask them first, who they are.” In answer to this question they said, “they were Macrones.” “Well, then,” said he, “ask them why they are drawn up in battle and want to fight with us.” They answered, “Because you are invading our country.” The generals bade him say: “If so, it is with not intention certainly of doing it or you any harm: but we have been at war with the king, and are now returning to Hellas, and all we want is to



*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
**ἄημι** blow  
**ἄθροός** grouped  
**ἄμφοτερος** both ~amphora  
**ἀναμίγνυμι** mix  
**βαρβαρικός** non-Greek  
**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**δένδρεον** tree; also δένδρον  
**διασπάω** tear apart  
**δίδημι** should; bind; need, fail; also  
δέω  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,  
ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
not worry about  
**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐρωτάω** ask about something  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also

ἰθύς

**ἤμερος** domesticated  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**καθίστημι** set down, land  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
~odometer; also οὐδός  
**ὄλος** complete, generally, actually  
**ὄρθιος** shrill  
**ὄρος ὄρεος** (n, 3) mountain, hill  
~hormone  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**παύω** stop something ~pause  
**πη** somewhere, somehow  
**πιστός** faithful (πείθω)  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**προσάγω** bring to a place  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
~phalanx

ἡρώτων ἐκείνοι εἰ δοῖεν ἂν τούτων τὰ πιστά. οἱ δ' ἔφασαν καὶ δοῦναι καὶ λαβεῖν ἐθέλειν. ἐντεῦθεν διδόασιν οἱ Μάκρωνες βαρβαρικὴν λόγχην τοῖς Ἑλλησιν, οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες ἐκείνοις Ἑλληνικὴν ταῦτα γὰρ ἔφασαν πιστὰ εἶναι· θεοὺς δ' ἐπεμαρτύραντο ἀμφότεροι.

Μετὰ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ εὐθύς οἱ Μάκρωνες τὰ δένδρα συνεξέκοπτον τὴν τε ὁδὸν ὠδοποιοῦν ὡς διαβιβάσοντες ἐν μέσοις ἀναμεμιγμένοι τοῖς Ἑλλησι, καὶ ἀγορὰν οἶαν ἐδύναντο παρεῖχον, καὶ παρήγαγον ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις ἕως ἐπὶ τὰ Κόλχων ὄρια κατέστησαν τοὺς Ἑλληνας. ἐνταῦθα ἦν ὄρος μέγα, προσβατὸν δέ· καὶ ἐπὶ τούτου οἱ Κόλχοι παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον οἱ Ἑλληνες ἀντιπαρετάξαντο φάλαγγα, ὡς οὕτως ἄξοντες πρὸς τὸ ὄρος· ἔπειτα δὲ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βουλευσάσθαι συλλεγείσθαι ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιοῦνται. ἔλεξεν οὖν Ξενοφῶν ὅτι δοκοῖη παύσαντας τὴν φάλαγγα λόχους ὀρθίους ποιῆσαι· ἡ μὲν γὰρ φάλαγξ διασπασθήσεται εὐθύς· τῇ μὲν γὰρ ἄνοδον τῇ δὲ εὐδοκίαν εὐρήσομεν τὸ ὄρος· καὶ εὐθύς τοῦτο ἀθυμίαν ποιήσει ὅταν τεταγμένοι εἰς φάλαγγα ταύτην διεσπασμένην ὀρώσωσιν. ἔπειτα ἦν μὲν ἐπὶ πολλῶν τεταγμένοι προσάγωμεν, περιττεύουσιν ἡμῶν οἱ πολέμιοι καὶ τοῖς περιτοῖς χρήσονται ὅ τι ἂν βούλωνται· ἐὰν δὲ ἐπ' ὀλίγων τεταγμένοι ὦμεν, οὐδὲν ἂν εἴη θαυμαστὸν εἰ διακοπέῃ ἡμῶν ἢ φάλαγξ ὑπὸ ἀθρώων καὶ βελῶν καὶ ἀνθρώπων πολλῶν ἐμπεσόντων· εἰ δὲ πῆ τοῦτο ἔσται, τῇ ὅλῃ φάλαγγι κακὸν ἔσται. ἀλλὰ μοι δοκεῖ ὀρθίους τοὺς λόχους

ἡρώτων ἐκεῖνοι εἰ δοῖεν ἂν τούτων τὰ πιστά. οἱ δ' ἔφασαν καὶ δοῦναι  
 καὶ λαβεῖν ἐθέλειν. ἐντεῦθεν **|δίδημι?: should; bind;|non-Greek  
 need, fail ; or δίδωμι?:**  
 λόγῃην τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, οἱ δὲ Ἕλλησιν **|give; permits** Ἕλληνικὴν ταῦτα γὰρ  
 ἔφασαν πιστὰ εἶναι· θεοὺς δ' ἐπεμαρτύραντο ἀμφότεροι.

Μετὰ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ εὐθὺς οἱ Μάκρωνες τὰ **|tree** συνεξέκοπτον  
 τὴν τε ὁδὸν ὡδοποιοῦν ὡς διαβιβάσοντες ἐν μέσοις **|mix**  
 τοῖς Ἕλλησι, καὶ ἀγορὰν οἶαν ἐδύναντο παρεῖχον, καὶ παρήγαγον  
 ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις ἕως ἐπὶ τὰ Κόλχων ὄρια κατέστησαν τοὺς  
 Ἕλληνας. ἐνταῦθα ἦν ὄρος μέγα, προσβατὸν δέ· καὶ ἐπὶ  
 τούτου οἱ Κόλχοι παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον οἱ  
 Ἕλληνες ἀντιπαρετάξαντο φάλαγγα, ὡς οὕτως ἄξοντες πρὸς τὸ  
 ὄρος· ἔπειτα δὲ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βουλεύσασθαι συλλεγείσιν  
 ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιοῦνται. ἔλεξεν οὖν Ξενοφῶν ὅτι δοκοίη  
 παύσαντας τὴν φάλαγγα **|am- |shrill** ποιῆσαι· ἡ μὲν γὰρ φάλαγξ  
**|tear apart** εὐθύς· τῆ **|band,** γὰρ ἄνοδον τῇ δὲ εὐδοκίᾳ εὐρήσομεν τὸ  
**|child-**  
 ὄρος· καὶ εὐθὺς τοῦτο ἀθι **|birth** ποιήσει ὅταν τεταγμένοι εἰς φάλαγγα  
 ταύτην διεσπασμένην ὀρώσιν. ἔπειτα ἦν μὲν ἐπὶ πολλῶν τεταγμένοι  
 προσάγωμεν, περιπτεύσουσιν ἡμῶν οἱ πολέμοι καὶ τοῖς περιττοῖς  
 χρήσονται ὅ τι ἂν βούλωνται· ἐὰν δὲ ἐπ' ὀλίγων τεταγμένοι ὦμεν,  
 οὐδὲν ἂν εἴη θαυμαστὸν εἰ διακοπήν ἡμῶν ἢ φάλαγξ ὑπὸ ἀθρόων  
 καὶ βελῶν καὶ ἀνθρώπων πολλῶν **|fall into; attack** **|somewhere,  
 somehow**  
 τῇ ὅλη φάλαγγι κακὸν ἔσται. ἀλλὰ μοι δοκεῖ **|shrill** τοὺς **|ambush,** **band,**  
**|childbirth**

reach the sea.” The others asked, “Were they willing to give them pledges to that effect?” They replied: “Yes, they were ready to give and receive pledges to that effect.” Then the Macrones gave a barbaric lance to the Hellenes, and the Hellenes a Hellenic lance to them: “for these,” they said, “would serve as pledges,” and both sides called upon the gods to witness.

After the pledges were exchanged, the Macrones fell to vigorously hewing down trees and constructing a road to help them across, mingling freely with the Hellenes and fraternising in their midst, and they afforded them as good a market as they could, and for three days conducted them on their march, until they had brought them safely to the confines of the Colchians. At this point they were confronted by a great mountain chain, which however was accessible, and on it the Colchians were drawn up for battle. In the first instance, the Hellenes drew up opposite in line of battle, as though they were minded to assault the hill in that order; but afterwards the generals determined to hold a council of war, and consider how to make the fairest fight.

Accordingly Xenophon said: “I am not for advancing in line, but advise to form companies by columns. To begin with, the line,” he urged, “would be scattered and thrown into disorder at once; for we shall find the mountain full of inequalities, it will be pathless here and easy to traverse there. The mere fact of first having formed in line, and then seeing the line thrown into disorder, must exercise a disheartening effect. Again, if we advance several deep, the enemy will none the less overlap us, and turn their superfluous numbers to account as best they like; while, if we march in shallow order, we may fully expect our line to be cut through and through by the thick rain of missiles and rush of men, and if this happen anywhere along the line, the whole line will equally suffer. No; my notion is to form columns by companies, covering ground sufficient with

*vocabulary*

**ἄγνυμι** break  
**αἰίδω** sing; also αἰοιδιάω  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also ἄκρα,  
 ἄκρη  
**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**βοάω** shout  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**εἰσίημι** (mid) speed to  
**ἑκατόν** hundred  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἔσχατος** farthest, last  
**εὐχομαι** declare, boast; pray (εὐχος)  
**εὐώνυμος** spindle tree  
**κατεσθίω** devour  
**κατέχω** hold down; cover; also  
 κατασχεθεῖν  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn  
**κράτιστος** best  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie

**μηκέτι** no more  
**ὀγδοήκοντα** eighty  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**ὄρθιος** shrill  
**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo  
**πάλη** wrestling  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**πως** somehow  
**ῥάδιος** easy; also ῥάιος  
**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry  
 ~repudiate  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**σχεδόν** near, approximately at  
 ~ischemia  
**τοξότης** (m, 1) archer  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
**χώρα** place  
**χωρίον** area; downwards  
**ὠμός** raw

ποιησαμένους τοσοῦτον χωρίον κατασχέιν διαλιπόντας τοῖς λόχοις ὅσον ἔξω τοὺς ἐσχάτους λόχους γενέσθαι τῶν πολεμίων κεράτων· καὶ οὕτως ἐσόμεθα τῆς τε τῶν πολεμίων φάλαγγος ἔξω οἱ ἔσχατοι λόχοι, καὶ ὀρθίους ἄγοντες οἱ κράτιστοι ἡμῶν πρῶτοι προσίασιν, ἧ τε ἂν εὐοδον ἧ, ταύτη ἕκαστος ἄξει ὁ λόχος. καὶ εἷς τε τὸ διαλείπον οὐ ράδιον ἔσται τοῖς πολεμίοις εἰσελθεῖν ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν λόχων ὄντων, διακόψαι τε οὐ ράδιον ἔσται λόχον ὀρθιον προσιόντα. ἂν τέ τις πιέζηται τῶν λόχων, ὁ πλησίον βοηθήσει. ἦν τε εἰς πη δυνηθῆ τῶν λόχων ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον ἀναβῆναι, οὐδεὶς μηκέτι μείνη τῶν πολεμίων. ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ ἐποίουν ὀρθίους τοὺς λόχους. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἀπιὼν ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον ἀπὸ τοῦ δεξιοῦ ἔλεγε τοῖς στρατιώταις· Ἄνδρες, οὗτοί εἰσιν οὓς ὀράτε μόνον ἔτι ἡμῖν ἐμποδῶν τὸ μὴ ἦδη εἶναι ἔνθα πάλαι σπεύδομεν· τούτους, ἦν πως δυνώμεθα, καὶ ὠμούς δεῖ καταφαγεῖν.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν ταῖς χώραις ἕκαστοι ἐγένοντο καὶ τοὺς λόχους ὀρθίους ἐποίησαντο, ἐγένοντο μὲν λόχοι τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ἀμφὶ τοὺς ὀγδοήκοντα, ὁ δὲ λόχος ἕκαστος σχεδὸν εἰς τοὺς ἑκατόν· τοὺς δὲ πελταστὰς καὶ τοὺς τοξότας τριχῆ ἐποίησαντο, τοὺς μὲν τοῦ εὐωνύμου ἔξω, τοὺς δὲ τοῦ δεξιοῦ, τοὺς δὲ κατὰ μέσον, σχεδὸν ἑξακοσίους ἑκάστους. ἐκ τούτου παρηγγύησαν οἱ στρατηγοὶ εὐχεσθαι· εὐξάμενοι δὲ καὶ παιανίσαντες ἐπορεύοντο. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτοῖς πελτασταὶ τῆς τῶν πολεμίων φάλαγγος ἔξω γενόμενοι ἐπορεύοντο· οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ὡς εἶδον αὐτούς, ἀντιπαράθεοντες

ποιησαμένους τοσούτον χωρίον κατασχέιν διαλιπόντας τοῖς **ambush,** band,  
 ὅσον ἔξω τοὺς ἐσχάτους **ambush,** ' γαι τῶν πολεμίων κεράτων'  
 καὶ οὕτως ἐσόμεθα τῆς τῆς **band, child-**  
 πολεμίων φάλαγγος ἔξω οἱ ἔσχατοι  
**ambush,** |shrill ἴγοντες οἱ κράτιστοι ἡμῶν πρῶτοι προσίασιν, ἧ̄ τε  
**band,**  
**childbirth** ἧ̄, ταύτη ἕκαστος ἄγνωμα **ambush,** ' ὅ τε τὸ διαλείπον οὐ  
 ῥάδιον ἔσται τοῖς πολεμίοις ; ἴσεν **ambush,** ἦεν καὶ ἔνθεν **ambush,**  
 διακόψαι τε οὐ ῥάδιον ἔσται **lead-** |shrill προσιώντες **ambush,**  
 πείζεται τῶν **ambush,** ' ἴσεν **band, child-** θήσει. ἦν τε εἰς **somehow**  
**ambush,** **band,** ἴσεν? ; , or **child-** ἔτι μείνη τῶν πολεμίων.  
**childbirth** ἄκρος? ; at the edge, extreme  
 ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ ἐποίουν **shrill** τοὺς **ambush,** ὧν δὲ ἀπῶν ἐπὶ  
 τὸ **spindle tree** ἃ τοῦ δεξιῦ ἔλεγε τοῖς **band, child-** στρατιώταις· Ἄνδρες, οὗτοί  
 εἰσιν οὓς ὀράτε μόνοι ἔτι ἡμῖν ἐμποδῶν τὸ μὴ ἤδη εἶναι ἔνθα πάλαι  
 σπεύδομεν· τούτους, ἦν πως δυνώμεθα, καὶ **raw** δεῖ **devour**  
 Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν ταῖς χώραις ἕκαστοι ἐγένοντο καὶ τοὺς **am-** |shrill  
 ἐποίησαντο, ἐγένοντο μὲν **ambush,** ' ἰσίων ἀμφὶ τοῖς **bush,**  
 οὐ δὲ **ambush,** ' σ σχεδὸν **band, child-** τοὺς ἑκατόν· τοὺς δὲ **child-** καὶ  
 τοὺς **ambush,** **band, child-** τριχῆ ἐποίησαντο, τοὺς μὲν τοῦ **birth** **right**  
 δὲ τοῦ δεξιῦ, τοὺς δὲ κατὰ μέσον, σχεδὸν ἑξακοσίους ἑκάστους.  
 ἐκ τούτου παρηγγύησαν οἱ στρατηγοὶ εὐχεσθαι· εὐξάμενοι δὲ καὶ  
 παιανίσαντες ἐπορεύοντο. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ  
 σὺν αὐτοῖς **light** τῆς τῶν πολεμίων φάλαγγος ἔξω γενόμενοι  
 ἐπορεύοντο· οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ὡς εἶδον αὐτούς, ἀντιπαραθέοντες

spaces between the companies to allow the last companies of each flank to be outside the enemy's flanks. Thus we shall with our extreme companies be outside the enemy's line, and the best men at the head of their columns will lead the attack, and every company will pick its way where the ground is easy; also it will be difficult for the enemy to force his way into the intervening spaces, when there are companies on both sides; nor will it be easy for him to cut in twain any individual company marching in column. If, too, any particular company should be pressed, the neighbouring company will come to the rescue, or if at any point any single company succeed in reaching the height, from that moment not one man of the enemy will stand his ground."

This proposal was carried, and they formed into columns by companies. Then Xenophon, returning from the right wing to the left, addressed the soldiers. "Men," he said, "these men whom you see in front of you are the sole obstacles still interposed between us and the haven of our hopes so long deferred. We will swallow them up whole, without cooking, if we can."

The several divisions fell into position, the companies were formed into columns, and the result was a total of something like eighty companies of heavy infantry, each company consisting on an average of a hundred men. The light infantry and bowmen were arranged in three divisions—two outside to support the left and the right respectively, and the third in the centre—each division consisting of about six hundred men.

Before starting, the generals passed the order to offer prayer; and with the prayer and battle hymn rising from their lips they commenced their advance. Cheirisophus and Xenophon, and the light infantry with them, advanced outside the enemy's line to right and left, and the enemy, seeing their advance, made an effort to keep parallel and confront them, but in order to do so, as he extended partly to right and partly to left, he was pulled to pieces, and there was a large space



or hollow left in the centre of his line. Seeing them separate thus, the light infantry attached to



*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**αὐτόθι** on the spot  
**ἄφρων** senseless, unthinking  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἑπτά** seven  
**ἔργω** bound, fend off; do; also  
 ἐργαθεῖν  
**ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics  
**εὐώνυμος** spindle tree  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θαυμάζω** marvel ~theater; also  
 ἀποθαυμάζω  
**θέω** run, run for  
**κάτω** (+acc) throughout, upon, in  
 accord with; (+gen) down  
 into/through/over/from ~cataract; also  
 κάδ, κατά  
**κενός** empty, vain  
**κώμη** village  
**μαίνομαι** be berserk ~maenad  
**μεθύω** be soaked, drunk ~mead  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**οἰκέω** inhabit

**οἰκουμένη** inhabited  
**ὀρθός** upright ~orthogonal  
**ὀρμάω** set in motion, rush at  
 ~hormone  
**ὄρος ὄρεος** (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**οὐκέτι** no more  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πως** somehow  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up  
 station  
**τέταρτος** fourth; also τέτρατος  
**τρέπω** divert ~trophy  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
 **τρίτος** third  
**τροπή** rout, turning of an enemy  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὕστεραίος** the next; later  
**φάλαγξ -γος** (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape  
**χώρα** place  
**ὥρα** season, time ~horoscope

οἱ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον διεσπίασθησαν, καὶ πολὺ τῆς αὐτῶν φάλαγγος ἐν τῷ μέσῳ κενὸν ἐποίησαν. οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν πελτασταί, ὧν ἦρχεν Αἰσχίνης ὁ Ἀκαρνάν, νομίσαντες φεύγειν ἀνακραγόντες ἔθεον· καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος ἀναβαίνουσι· συνεφείπετο δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν ὀπλιτικόν, ὧν ἦρχε Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι, ὡς ἤρξαντο θεῖν, οὐκέτι ἔστησαν, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ ἄλλος ἄλλη ἐτράπετο. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἀναβάντες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐν πολλαῖς κώμαις καὶ τὰπιτήδεια πολλὰ ἐχούσας. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα οὐδὲν ὅ τι καὶ ἐθαύμασαν· τὰ δὲ σμήνη πολλὰ ἦν αὐτόθι, καὶ τῶν κηρίων ὅσοι ἔφαγον τῶν στρατιωτῶν πάντες ἄφρονές τε ἐγίνοντο καὶ ἤμουν καὶ κάτω διεχώρει αὐτοῖς καὶ ὀρθὸς οὐδεὶς ἐδύνατο ἴστασθαι, ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν ὀλίγον ἐδηδοκότες σφόδρα μεθύουσιν ἐήκεσαν, οἱ δὲ πολὺ μαινομένοις, οἱ δὲ καὶ ἀποθνήσκουσιν. ἔκειτο δὲ οὕτω πολλοὶ ὥσπερ τροπῆς γεγενημένης, καὶ πολλὴ ἦν ἀθυμία. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἀπέθανε μὲν οὐδεὶς, ἀμφὶ δὲ τὴν αὐτὴν πῶς ὥραν ἀνεφρόνου· τρίτη δὲ καὶ τετάρτη ἀνίσταντο ὥσπερ ἐκ φαρμακοποσίας.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταθμοὺς παρασάγγας ἑπτὰ, καὶ ἦλθον ἐπὶ θάλατταν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα οἰκουμένην ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ, Σινωπέων ἀποικίαν, ἐν τῇ Κόλχων χώρα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας ἀμφὶ τὰς τριάκοντα ἐν ταῖς τῶν Κόλχων κώμαις· κἀντεῦθεν ὀρμώμενοι ἐλήζοντο τὴν Κολχίδα. ἀγορὰν δὲ παρεῖχον

οί μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τὸ |spindle tree ῥάσθησαν, καὶ  
πολὺ τῆς αὐτῶν φάλαγγος ἐν τῷ μέσῳ κενὸν ἐποίησαν. οἱ δὲ  
κατὰ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν |light ὧν ἦρχεν Αἰσχίνης ὁ Ἄκαρνάν,  
νομίσαντες φεύγειν |troops speak up ἔθειον· καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι ἐπὶ τὸ  
ὄρος ἀναβαίνουσι· συνεφέπετο δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν ὀπλιτικόν,  
ὧν ἦρχε Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι, ὡς ἤρξαντο θεῖν,  
οὐκέτι ἔστησαν, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ ἄλλος ἄλλη ἐτράπετο. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες  
ἀναβάντες |encamp or ἐν πολλαῖς |village καὶ τάπιτῆδεια  
πολλὰ ἐχούσι |take up sta- tion. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα οὐδὲν ὅ τι καὶ ἐθαύμασαν·  
τὰ δὲ σμήνη πολλὰ ἦν |on the spot τῶν κηρίων ὅσοι ἔφαγον τῶν  
στρατιωτῶν πάντες |senseless, ἐγίνοντο καὶ |vomit καὶ |(+acc) through-  
|unthinking out, upon, in  
διεχώρει αὐτοῖς καὶ ὀρθὸς οὐδεὶς |enter, put on, ἴθαι, ἀλλ' οἱ |accord with;  
|strip off (+gen) down  
ὀλίγον ἐδηδοκότες σφόδρα |be soaked, drunk οἱ δὲ πολὺ |be berserk into/through/over/from  
οἱ δὲ καὶ ἀποθνήσκουσιν. ἔκειτο δὲ οὕτω πολλοὶ ὥσπερ |rout,  
|turning  
γεγεννημένης, καὶ πολλὴ ἦν ἀθυμία. τῇ δ' |the next; later νε μὲν οὐδεὶς,  
ἀμφὶ δὲ τὴν αὐτὴν πῶς ὄραν ἀνεφρόνουν· τρίτῃ δὲ καὶ τετάρτῃ  
ἀνίσταντο ὥσπερ ἐκ φαρμακοποσίας.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν δύο |cottage; |Persian ἐπτά, καὶ |ἄλλομαι?: be-  
|post unit, ca. 5 come whole ; or  
ἐπὶ θάλατταν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα πόλιν |km λιπίδα |οἰκουμένη?: ἐνοικησθεῖς ; ἔσοι  
|οἰκέω?: inhabit  
Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ, Σιωπέων ἀποικίαν, ἐν τῇ Κόλχων χώρα. ἐνταῦθα  
ἔμειναν ἡμέρας ἀμφὶ τὰς τριάκοντα ἐν ταῖς τῶν Κόλχων |village  
κάντεῦθεν ὀρμώμενοι |plunder τὴν Κολχίδα. ἀγορὰν δὲ παρέιχον

the Arcadian battalion, under command of Aeschines, an Arcarnian, mistook the movement for flight, and with a loud shout rushed on, and these were the first to scale the mountain summit; but they were closely followed up by the Arcadian heavy infantry, under command of Cleanor of Orchomenus.

When they began running in that way, the enemy stood their ground no longer, but betook themselves to flight, one in one direction, one in another, and the Hellenes scaled the hill and found quarters in numerous villages which contained supplies in abundance. Here, generally speaking, there was nothing to excite their wonderment, but the numbers of bee-hives were indeed astonishing, and so were certain properties of the honey. The effect upon the soldiers who tasted the combs was, that they all went for the nonce quite off their heads, and suffered from vomiting and diarrhoea, with a total inability to stand steady on their legs. A small dose produced a condition not unlike violent drunkenness, a large one an attack very like a fit of madness, and some dropped down, apparently at death's door. So they lay, hundreds of them, as if there had been a great defeat, a prey to the cruellest despondency. But the next day, none had died; and almost at the same hour of the day at which they had eaten they recovered their senses, and on the third or fourth day got on their legs again like convalescents after a severe course of medical treatment.

From this place they marched on two stages— seven parasangs— and reached the sea at Trapezus, a populous Hellenic city on the Euxine Sea, a colony of the Sinopeans, in the territory of the Colchians. Here they halted about thirty days in the villages of the Colchians, which they used as a base of operations to ravage the whole territory of Colchis. The men of Trapezus supplied the army with a market, entertained them, and gave them, as gifts of hospitality, oxen and wheat and wine. Further, they negotiated with them in behalf of their neighbours the Colchians, who dwelt

*vocabulary*

**ἄγων** -ος (m, 3) gathering place (ἄγω)  
**ἄέκων** unwilling  
**ἄκων** (3) javelin ~acme  
**ἄλφριτον** barley meal  
**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, out to sea  
**ἀποστρέφω** turn back  
**βοῦς βοός** (m/f) cow, ox; shield ~bovine  
**βωμός** altar; stand, pedestal  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**δέρμα** (n, 3) skin, hide ~dermatology  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await ~doctrine  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
**ἔδω** eat ~eat  
**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also ἐλαστρέω  
**ἑξήκοντα** sixty  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεί  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἐταῖρος** companion; also ἐταίρα, ἕταρος  
**εὐχόμαι** declare, boast; pray (εὐχος)  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider ~theater; also θάομαι, θήομαι  
**θέω** run, run for  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**ἰσχυρός** strong, forceful, violent

**καταβαίνω** go down  
**καταπίπτω** fall down  
**κάτω** (+acc) throughout, upon, in accord with; (+gen) down into/through/over/from ~cataract; also κάδ, κατά  
**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop  
**ξένιος** of hospitality  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἶνος** wine ~wine  
**ὅπου** where  
**ὄρῳμι** set upon, arouse ~hormone; also ὑπόρῳμι  
**ὄρος ὄρεος** (n, 3) mountain, hill ~hormone  
**πατάσσω** beat (heart)  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πῶς** how? why?  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**τρέχω** run, spin; also τροχάζω, τροχάω, τρωχάω  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

τῷ στρατοπέδῳ Τραπεζούντιοι, καὶ ἐδέξαντό τε τοὺς Ἕλληνας καὶ  
 ξένια ἔδοσαν βοῦς καὶ ἄλφιτα καὶ οἶνον. συνδιεπράττοντο δὲ καὶ ὑπὲρ  
 τῶν πλησίον Κόλχων τῶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ μάλιστα οἰκούντων, καὶ ξένια  
 καὶ παρ' ἐκείνων ἦλθον βόες. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τὴν θυσίαν ἦν ἠῤῥξαντο  
 παρεσκευάζοντο· ἦλθον δ' αὐτοῖς ἱκανοὶ βόες ἀποθῦσαι τῷ Διὶ τῷ  
 σωτήρι καὶ τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ ἡγεμόσυνα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς ἃ ἠῤῥξαντο.  
 ἐποίησαν δὲ καὶ ἀγῶνα γυμνικὸν ἐν τῷ ὄρει ἔνθαπερ ἐσκήνουν.  
 εἶλοντο δὲ Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιάτην, ὃς ἔφυγε παῖς ὢν οἴκοθεν, παῖδα  
 ἄκων κατακανῶν ξυήλη πατάξας, δρόμου τ' ἐπιμεληθῆναι καὶ τοῦ  
 ἀγῶνος προστατήσαι. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ θυσία ἐγένετο, τὰ δέρματα  
 παρέδωσαν τῷ Δρακοντίῳ, καὶ ἡγείσθαι ἐκέλευον ὅπου τὸν δρόμον  
 πεποιηκῶς εἴη. ὁ δὲ δείξας οὐπερ ἐστηκότες ἐτύγχανον Οὐτός ὁ  
 λόφος, ἔφη, κάλλιστος τρέχειν ὅπου ἄν τις βούληται. Πῶς οὖν,  
 ἔφασαν, δυνήσονται παλαίειν ἐν σκληρῷ καὶ δασεῖ οὕτως; ὁ δ' εἶπε·  
 Μᾶλλον τι ἀνιάσεται ὁ καταπεσών. ἡγωνίζοντο δὲ παῖδες μὲν  
 στάδιον τῶν αἰχμαλώτων οἱ πλείστοι, δόλιχον δὲ Κρήτες πλείους  
 ἢ ἐξήκοντα ἔθεον, πάλην δὲ καὶ πυγμὴν καὶ παγκράτιον ἕτεροι,  
 καὶ καλὴ θέα ἐγένετο· πολλοὶ γὰρ κατέβησαν καὶ ἄτε θεωμένων  
 τῶν ἐταίρων πολλὴ φιλονικία ἐγένετο. ἔθεον δὲ καὶ ἵπποι καὶ ἔδει  
 αὐτοὺς κατὰ τοῦ πρανοῦς ἐλάσαντας ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ ἀποστρέψαντας  
 πάλιν πρὸς τὸν βωμὸν ἄγειν. καὶ κάτω μὲν οἱ πολλοὶ ἐκαλινδοῦντο·  
 ἄνω δὲ πρὸς τὸ ἰσχυρῶς ὄρθιον μόλις βάδην ἐπορεύοντο οἱ



τῷ στρατοπέδῳ Τραπεζούντιοι, καὶ ἐδέξαντό τε τοὺς Ἕλληνας καὶ  
 |of hospitality<sup>ς</sup> ἣς καὶ |barley meal<sup>ον</sup>. συνδιεπράττοντο δὲ καὶ ὑπὲρ  
 τῶν πλησίον Κόλχων τῶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ μάλιστα οἰκούντων, καὶ |of hospitality  
 καὶ παρ' ἐκείνων |ἄλθομαι?: become<sup>ον</sup> whole<sup>ο</sup> τὴν θυσίαν ἣν ἠῤῥξαντο  
 παρεσκευάζοντο· |ἄλθομαι?: become whole<sup>εις</sup> ἀποθῆσαι τῷ Διὶ τῷ  
 σωτήρι καὶ τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ ἡγεμόσυνα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς ἃ ἠῤῥξαντο.  
 ἐποίησαν δὲ καὶ ἀγῶνα γυμνικὸν ἐν τῷ ὄρει ἔνθαπερ |σκηνέω?: camp ; or  
 εἶλοντο δὲ Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιάτην, ὃς ἔφυγε παῖς ὢν |from home<sup>ια</sup>  
 ἄκων κατακανὼν ξυήλη |beat<sup>(heart)</sup> . |running<sup>ς</sup> ἐπιμεληθῆναι καὶ τοῦ  
 ἀγῶνος προστατήσαι. |after; ἔξ ἢ θυσία ἐγένετο, τὰ |skin, hide  
 παρέδοσαν τῷ Δρακοντίῳ, καὶ ἡγείσθαι ἐκέλευον ὅπου τὸν |running  
 πεποιηκῶς εἶη. ὁ δὲ δείξας οὐπὲρ ἐστηκότες ἐτύχανον Οὐτός ὁ  
 |neck, crest on<sup>α</sup> ἱστος τρέχειν ὅπου ἂν τις βούληται. Πῶς οὖν,  
 |helmet, hilltop  
 ἔφασαν, δυνήσονται |wrestle ἐν σκληρῷ καὶ δασεῖ οὕτως; ὁ δ' εἶπε·  
 Μᾶλλον τι ἀνιάσεται ὁ |fall down ἡγωνίζοντο δὲ παῖδες μὲν  
 |στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also māsē) ; or στάδιος?: (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
 ἣ ἐξήκοντα ἔθεον, |wrestling<sup>ς</sup> καὶ |boxing καὶ παγκράτιον ἕτεροι,  
 καὶ καλὴ θεὰ ἐγένετο· πολλοὶ γὰρ κατέβησαν καὶ ἅτε θεωμένων  
 τῶν ἐταίρων πολλὴ φιλονικία ἐγίνετο. ἔθεον δὲ καὶ ἵπποι καὶ ἔδει  
 αὐτοὺς κατὰ τοῦ πρानουῦς ἐλάσαντας ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ ἀποστρέψαντας  
 πάλιν πρὸς τὸν |altar ἄγειν. καὶ |(+acc) throughout, upon, in accord with;  
 |(+gen) down into/through/over/from  
 |accomplish, pass, waste; up-shrill μόλις |step by step ὕνοντο οἱ  
 |wards, out to sea

in the plain for the most part, and from this folk also came gifts of hospitality in the shape of cattle. And now the Hellenes made preparation for the sacrifice which they had vowed, and a sufficient number of cattle came in for them to offer thank-offerings for safe guidance to Zeus the Saviour, and to Heracles, and to the other gods, according to their vows. They instituted also a gymnastic contest on the mountain side, just where they were quartered, and chose Dracontius, a Spartan (who had been banished from home when a lad, having unintentionally slain another boy with a blow of his dagger), to superintend the course, and be president of the games.

As soon as the sacrifices were over, they handed over the hides of the beasts to Dracontius, and bade him lead the way to his racecourse. He merely waved his hand and pointed to where they were standing, and said, "There, this ridge is just the place for running, anywhere, everywhere." "But how," it was asked, "will they manage to wrestle on the hard scrubby ground?" "Oh! worse knocks for those who are thrown," the president replied. There was a mile race for boys, the majority being captive lads; and for the long race more than sixty Cretans competed; there was wrestling, boxing, and the pankration. Altogether it was a beautiful spectacle. There was a large number of entries, and the emulation, with their companions, male and female, standing as spectators, was immense. There was horse-racing also; the riders had to gallop down a steep incline to the sea, and then turn and come up again to the altar, and on the descent more than half rolled head over heels, and then back they came toiling up the tremendous steep, scarcely out of a walking pace. Loud were the shouts, the laughter, and the cheers.

## 5

Is given of all that the Hellenes did, and how they fared on the march up with Cyrus; and also of all that befell them on their march subsequently, until they reached the seaboard of the Euxine Sea, or Pontus, and the Hellenic city of Trapezus, where they duly offered

the sacrifice for safe deliverance which



*vocabulary*

**ἀνάβασις** -ος (f) going up, mounting, going inland  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἀπείπον** refuse, renounce, declare  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**γέη** earth; a country ~geography; also γῆ  
**γέλως** -τος laughter  
**ἐκτείνω** stretch out ~tend  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**κραυγή** screaming, shouting  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι, οἶομαι  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**παύω** stop something ~pause  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πλοῖον** ship

**πονέω** work; be busy  
**πόνος** toil, suffering  
**πρόιημι** send forth, abandon  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**ταυτός** identical  
**τρέχω** run, spin; also τροχάζω, τροχάω, τρωχάω  
**τριήρης** -ους (f, 3) trireme  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῶ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φιλία** friendship  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch; also φυλακεύς  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard ~phylactery  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**ὥδε** thus

ἵπποι· ἔνθα πολλή κραυγή καὶ γέλωσ καὶ παρακέλευσις ἐγίγνετο.

## 5

### 5.1

“Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου ἔπραξαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, καὶ ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ τῇ μέχρι ἐπὶ θάλατταν τὴν ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ, καὶ ὡς εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν ἀφίκοντο, καὶ ὡς ἀπέθυσαν ἃ εὗξαντο σωτήρια θύειν ἔνθα πρῶτον εἰς φιλίαν γῆν ἀφίκοντο, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου ξυνελθόντες ἐβουλευόντο περὶ τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας· ἀνέστη δὲ πρῶτος Λέων Θούριος καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Ἐγὼ μὲν τοῖνυν, ἕφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀπείρηκα ἤδη ξυσκευαζόμενος καὶ βαδίζων καὶ τρέχων καὶ τὰ ὄπλα φέρων καὶ ἐν τάξει ὦν καὶ φυλακὰς φυλάττων καὶ μαχόμενος, ἐπιθυμῶ δὲ ἤδη παυσάμενος τούτων τῶν πόνων, ἐπεὶ θάλατταν ἔχομεν, πλεῖν τὸ λοιπὸν καὶ ἐκταθεῖς ὥσπερ Ὀδυσσεὺς ἀφικέσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρατιῶται ἀνεθορύβησαν ὡς εὖ λέγει· καὶ ἄλλος ταῦτ’ ἔλεγε, καὶ πάντες οἱ παριόντες. ἔπειτα δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἀνέστη καὶ εἶπεν ὧδε. Φίλος μοί ἐστιν, ὦ ἄνδρες, Ἀναξίβιος, ναυαρχῶν δὲ καὶ τυγχάνει. ἦν οὖν πέμψητέ με, οἴομαι ἂν ἐλθεῖν καὶ τριήρεις ἔχων καὶ πλοῖα τὰ ἡμᾶς ἄξοντα· ὑμεῖς δὲ εἴπερ πλεῖν βούλεσθε,

ἵπποι· ἔνθα πολλή |screaming, laughter` παρακέλευσις ἐγίγνετο.  
|shouting

5

5.1

“Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ |going up, mount-` Κύρου ἔπραξαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, καὶ  
|ing, going inland  
ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ τῇ μέχρι ἐπὶ θάλατταν τὴν ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ, καὶ  
ὡς εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν ἀφίκοντο, καὶ ὡς ἀπέθυσαν ἅ  
εὔξαντο σωτήρια θύειν ἔνθα πρῶτον εἰς |friend-|earth; a country` τῷ  
|ship  
πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου ξυνελθόντες ἐβουλεύοντο περὶ τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας·  
ἀνέστη δὲ πρῶτος Λέων Θούριος καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Ἐγὼ μὲν  
τοῖνυν, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, |refuse, re-` ξυσκευαζόμενος καὶ βαδίζων  
|noun, re-`  
καὶ τρέχων καὶ τὰ ὅπ|declare  
|stretch out  
τῶν πόνων, ἐπεὶ θάλατταν ἔχομεν, πλεῖν τὸ λοιπὸν καὶ |stretch out  
ὥσπερ Ὀδυσσεὺς ἀφικέσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες  
οἱ στρατιῶται ἀνεθορύβησαν ὡς εἰ λέγει· καὶ ἄλλος |identical` γε,  
καὶ πάντες οἱ παριόντες. ἔπειτα δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἀνέστη καὶ εἶπεν  
ὧδε. Φίλος μοί ἐστιν, ὦ ἄνδρες, Ἀναξίβιος, ναυαρχῶν δὲ καὶ  
τυγχάνει. ἦν οὖν πέμψητέ με, οἶομαι ἂν ἐλθεῖν καὶ τριήρεις  
ἔχων καὶ πλοῖα τὰ ἡμᾶς ἄξοντα· ὑμεῖς δὲ εἴπερ πλεῖν βούλεσθε,

they had vowed to offer as soon as they set foot on a friendly soil.)

## 5.1

After this they met and took counsel concerning the remainder of the march. The first speaker was Antoleon of Thurii. He rose and said: “For my part, sirs, I am weary by this time of getting kit together and packing up for a start, of walking and running and carrying heavy arms, and of tramping along in line, or mounting guard, and doing battle. The sole desire I now have is to cease from all these pains, and for the future, since here we have the sea before us, to sail on and on, ’stretched out in sleep, ’ like Odysseus, and so to find myself in Hellas.” When they heard these remarks, the soldiers showed their approval with loud cries of “well said,” and then another spoke to the same effect, and then another, and indeed all present. Then Cheirisophus got up and said: “I have a friend, sirs, who, as good hap will have it, is now high admiral, Anaxibius. If you like to send me to him, I think I can safely promise to return with some men of war and other vessels which will carry us. All you have to do, if you are really minded to go home by sea, is to wait here till I come. I will be back ere long.” The soldiers were delighted at these words, and voted that Cheirisophus should set sail on his mission without delay.

After him, Xenophon got up, and spoke as follows: “Cheirisophus, it is agreed, sets out in search of vessels, and we are going to await him. Let me tell you what, in my opinion, it is reasonable to do while



*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
**ἄλλως** otherwise  
**ἀναμένω** wait for  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι,  
 ὀλλυμι  
**βέλτιστος** best, noblest  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth  
**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔραμαι** love  
**ἔρομαι** ask, search through; also  
 ἀνέρομαι, εἶρομαι, ἐξείρομαι, ἐξέρομαι  
**ἐρωέω** (act) back off; (mid, rare) drive  
 back; spurt  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**κίνδυνος** (ῶ) danger  
**λεῖος** smooth

**μέρος** -υς (n, 3) part  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,  
 οἶομαι  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειρώω** try, test ~empirical; also  
 πειρηγίζω  
**πλανάω** lead astray  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πλήθος** -υς (3) numerical superiority  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**πορεύω** carry  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**στέλλω** prepare, send, furl ~apostle  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**φράζω** consider ~phrase  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch; also  
 φυλακεύς  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard  
 ~phylactery  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χώρα** place  
**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
 ~heir  
**ψηφίζω** count, vote  
**ὥδε** thus

περιμένετε ἔστ' ἂν ἐγὼ ἔλθω· ἤξω δὲ ταχέως. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ στρατιῶται ἤσθησάν τε καὶ ἐψηφίσαντο πλεῖν αὐτὸν ὡς τάχιστα.

Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Χειρίσοφος μὲν δὴ ἐπὶ πλοῖα στέλλεται, ἡμεῖς δὲ ἀναμενοῦμεν. ὅσα μοι οὖν δοκεῖ καιρὸς εἶναι ποιεῖν ἐν τῇ μονῇ, ταῦτα ἐρῶ. πρῶτον μὲν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια δεῖ πορίζεσθαι ἐκ τῆς πολεμίας· οὔτε γὰρ ἀγορὰ ἔστιν ἱκανὴ οὔτε ὅτου ὠνησόμεθα εὐπορία εἰ μὴ ὀλίγοις τισίν· ἡ δὲ χώρα πολεμία· κίνδυνος οὖν πολλοὺς ἀπόλλυσθαι, ἣν ἀμελῶς τε καὶ ἀφυλάκτως πορεύεσθε ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ἀλλὰ μοι δοκεῖ σὺν προνομαῖς λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἄλλως δὲ μὴ πλανᾶσθαι, ὡς σήζησθε, ἡμᾶς δὲ τούτων ἐπιμελείσθαι. ἔδοξε ταῦτα. Ἔτι τοῖνυν ἀκούσατε καὶ τάδε. ἐπὶ λείαν γὰρ ὑμῶν ἐκπορεύονται τινες. οἶομαι οὖν βέλτιστον εἶναι ἡμῖν εἰπεῖν τὸν μέλλοντα ἐξιέναι, φράζειν δὲ καὶ ὅποι, ἵνα καὶ τὸ πλήθος εἰδῶμεν τῶν ἐξιόντων καὶ τῶν μενόντων καὶ ξυμπαρασκευάζωμεν, ἐάν τι δέη, κἂν βοηθῆσαί τισι καιρὸς ᾗ, εἰδῶμεν ὅποι δεήσει βοηθεῖν, καὶ ἐάν τις τῶν ἀπειροτέρων ἐγχειρῇ ποι, ξυμβουλευόμεν πειρώμενοι εἰδέναι τὴν δύναμιν ἐφ' οὗς ἂν ἴωσιν. ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα. Ἐννοεῖτε δὴ καὶ τόδε, ἔφη. σχολὴ τοῖς πολεμίοις λήξεσθαι, καὶ δικαίως ἡμῖν ἐπιβουλευούσιν· ἔχομεν γὰρ τὰ ἐκείνων· ὑπερκάθηται δὲ ἡμῶν. φυλακὰς δὴ μοι δοκεῖ δεῖν περὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον εἶναι· ἐὰν οὖν κατὰ μέρος μερισθέντες φυλάττωμεν καὶ σκοπῶμεν, ἦττον ἂν δύναντο ἡμᾶς θηρᾶν οἱ πολέμοι. ἔτι τοῖνυν τάδε ὀράτε. εἰ

περμένετε ἔστ' ἂν ἐγὼ ἔλθω· ἦξω δὲ ταχέως. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ  
στρατιῶται ἦσθησάν τε καὶ ἐψηφίσαντο πλεῖν αὐτὸν ὡς τάχιστα.

Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Χειρίσοφος μὲν δὴ

ἐπὶ πλοῖα |prepare, send, fur| |wait for ὅσα μοι οὖν δοκεῖ καιρὸς

εἶναι ποιεῖν ἐν τῇ μονῇ, ταῦτα |ἔραμαι?: love ; or ἔρομαι?: ask, search through ;  
or ἐρωέω?: (act) back off; (mid, rare) drive back;  
πορίζεσθαι ἐκ τῆς πολεμίας· οὐ |spur; or εἶρω?: declare; (pf) string together

ὠνησόμεθα εὐπορία εἰ μὴ ὀλίγοις τισίν· ἡ δὲ χώρα πολεμία· κίνδυνος

οὖν πολλοὺς ἀπόλλυσθαι, ἣν ἀμελῶς τε καὶ ἀφυλάκτως πορεύησθε

ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ἀλλὰ μοι δοκεῖ σὺν προνομαῖς λαμβάνειν τὰ

ἐπιτήδεια, ἄλλως δὲ μὴ πλανᾶσθαι, ὡς σήζησθε, ἡμᾶς δὲ τούτων

ἐπιμελεῖσθαι. ἔδοξε ταῦτα. Ἔτι τοίνυν ἀκούσατε καὶ τάδε. ἐπὶ

λείαν γὰρ ὑμῶν ἐκπορεύονται τινες. οἴομαι οὖν |best. εἶναι ἡμῖν  
|noblest

εἰπεῖν τὸν μέλλοντα |ἔξειμι?: 'go forth' ; or ἐξίημι?: a καὶ τὸ πλήθος  
|send forth, allow forth

εἰδῶμεν τῶν |ἔξειμι?: go forth ; or ἐξίημι?: ἢ ζυμπαρσκευάζωμεν,  
|send forth, allow forth

ἐάν τι δέη, κἂν βοηθῆσαί τισι καιρὸς ἦ, εἰδῶμεν ὅποι δεήσει

βοηθεῖν, καὶ ἐάν τις τῶν ἀπειροτέρων ἐγχειρῇ ποι, ζυμβουλεύωμεν

πειρώμενοι εἰδέναι τὴν δύναμιν ἐφ' οὗς ἂν ἴωσιν. ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα.

Ἐννοεῖτε δὴ καὶ τόδε, ἔφη. σχολὴ τοῖς πολεμίοις λήξασθαι, καὶ

δικαίως ἡμῖν |plot, plan, harm |χομεν γὰρ τὰ ἐκείνων· ὑπερκάθηται

δὲ ἡμῶν. φυλακὰς δὴ μοι δοκεῖ δεῖν περὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον εἶναι·

ἐὰν οὖν κατὰ μέρος μερισθέντες φυλάττωμεν καὶ σκοπῶμεν, ἦττον

ἂν |enter, put on ; θηρᾶν οἱ πολέμοι. ἔτι τοίνυν τάδε ὀράτε. εἰ  
|strip off

we are waiting. First of all, we must provide ourselves with necessities from hostile territory, for there is not a sufficient market, nor, if there were, have we, with a few solitary exceptions, the means of purchase. Now, the district is hostile, so that if you set off in search of provisions without care and precaution, the chances are that many of us will be lost. To meet this risk, I propose that we should organise foraging parties to capture provisions, and, for the rest, not roam about the country at random. The organisation of the matter should be left to us." (The resolution was passed.) "Please listen to another proposal;" he continued: "Some of you, no doubt, will be going out to pillage. It will be best, I think, that whoever does so should in each case before starting inform us of his intent, and in what direction he means to go, so that we may know the exact number of those who are out and of those who stop behind. Thus we shall be able to help in preparing and starting the expedition where necessary; and in case of aid or reinforcements being called for, we shall know in what direction to proceed; or, again, if the attempt is to be undertaken by raw or less expert hands, we may throw in the weight of our experience and advice by endeavouring to discover the strength of those whom they design to attack." This proposal was also carried. "Here is another point," he continued, "to which I would draw your attention. Our enemies will not lack leisure to make raids upon us: nor is it unnatural, that they should lay plots for us; for we have appropriated what is theirs; they are seated over us ever on the watch. I propose then that we should have regular outposts round the camp. If we take it in succession to do picket and outlook duty, the enemy will be less able to harry us. And here is another point for your observation; supposing we knew for certain that Cheirisophus must return with a sufficient number of vessels, there would be no need of the remark, but as that is still problematical,

*vocabulary*

**ἀγαμαι** admire; begrudge; also  
**ἀγαίομαι**  
**ἄγνυμι** break  
**αἰίρω** raise, win ~aorta; also *αἴρω*  
**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology  
**ἀμελέω** disregard (μέλω)  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve  
**ἀράομαι** pray, vow, invoke  
**ἀρκέω** ward off, defend; suffice  
**αὐτόθεν** from that place  
**ἀφροσύνη** folly  
**ἔδω** eat ~eat  
**εἰκός** οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
**ἐκόν** willingly  
**ἐνθάδε** here, hither  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἦώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**ἴσος** equal; also *ἔιση*  
**κατάγω** lead down, make landfall  
**κομιδή** care, tending, providing for

(κομίζω)

**μακρός** long, tall  
**ναός** νεώς (f/m) temple, shrine; also  
**νηός**  
**ὄδος** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**παραπλέω** sail past  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also  
*πειρητίζω*  
**πηδάλιον** rudder  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**πολλάκις** often  
**σαφής** clear, understandable  
**τρέφω** nurture; solidify ~atrophy  
**ὑπάρχω** start, lead, set an example  
**ὑστερον** later  
**ὑστερος** later, last  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard  
 ~phylactery  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**ώφελέω** help, be useful

μὲν ἠπιστάμεθα σαφῶς ὅτι ἤξει πλοῖα Χειρίσοφος ἄγων ἱκανά, οὐδὲν ἂν ἔδει ὦν μέλλω λέγειν· νῦν δ' ἐπεὶ τοῦτο ἄδηλον, δοκεῖ μοι πειρᾶσθαι πλοῖα συμπαρασκευάζειν καὶ αὐτόθεν. ἦν μὲν γὰρ ἔλθη, ὑπαρχόντων ἐνθάδε ἐν ἀφθονωτέροις πλευσόμεθα· ἦν δὲ μὴ ἄγῃ, τοῖς ἐνθάδε χρυσόμεθα. ὁρῶ δὲ ἐγὼ πλοῖα πολλάκις παραπλέοντα· εἰ οὖν αἰτησάμενοι παρὰ Τραπεζουντίων μακρὰ πλοῖα κατάγομεν καὶ φυλάττομεν αὐτά, τὰ πηδάλια παραλούμενοι, ἕως ἂν ἱκανὰ τὰ ἄξοντα γένηται, ἴσως ἂν οὐκ ἀπορήσαιμεν κομιδῆς οἴας δεόμεθα. ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα. Ἐννοήσατε δ', ἔφη, εἰ εἰκὸς καὶ τρέφειν ἀπὸ κοινοῦ οὓς ἂν καταγάγομεν ὅσον ἂν χρόνον ἡμῶν ἔνεκεν μένωσι, καὶ ναῦλον ξυθιέσθαι, ὅπως ὠφελούντες καὶ ὠφελῶνται. ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα. Δοκεῖ τοῖσιν μοι, ἔφη, ἦν ἄρα καὶ ταῦτα ἡμῖν μὴ ἐκπεραίνηται ὥστε ἀρκεῖν πλοῖα, τὰς ὁδοὺς ἅς δυσπόρους ἀκούομεν εἶναι ταῖς παρὰ θάλατταν οἰκούσαις πόλεσιν ἐντείλασθαι ὁδοποιεῖν· πείσονται γὰρ καὶ διὰ τὸ φοβεῖσθαι καὶ διὰ τὸ βούλεσθαι ἡμῶν ἀπαλλαγῆναι.

Ἐνταῦθα δὲ ἀνέκραγον ὡς οὐ δέοι ὁδοιπορεῖν. ὁ δὲ ὡς ἔγνω τὴν ἀφροσύνην αὐτῶν, ἐπειμήφισε μὲν οὐδέν, τὰς δὲ πόλεις ἐκούσας ἔπεισεν ὁδοποιεῖν, λέγων ὅτι θᾶπτον ἀπαλλάσσονται, ἦν εὗποροι γένωνται αἱ ὁδοί. ἔλαβον δὲ καὶ πεντηκόντορον παρὰ τῶν Τραπεζουντίων, ἧ ἐπέστησαν Δέξιππον Λάκωνα περίοικον. οὗτος ἀμελήσας τοῦ ξυλλέγειν πλοῖα ἀποδρὰς ὄχρετο ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου, ἔχων τὴν ναῦν. οὗτος μὲν οὖν δίκαια ἔπαθεν ὕστερον· ἐν Θράκῃ γὰρ παρὰ

μὲν |ἀπιστέω?: disbelieve"; ἢ ἴξει πλοῖα Χειρίσοφος ἄγων ἱκανά,  
 |or ἐπίσταμαι?: know  
 οὐδὲν ἂν ἔδει ὧν μέλλω λέγειν· νῦν δ' ἐπεὶ τοῦτο ἄδηλον, δοκεῖ μοι  
 πειρᾶσθαι πλοῖα συμπαρασκευάζειν καὶ |from that place γὰρ ἔλθη,  
 ὑπαρχόντων ἐνθάδε ἐν ἀφθονωτέροις πλευσόμεθα· ἦν δὲ μὴ ἄγη,  
 τοῖς ἐνθάδε χρυσόμεθα. ὁρῶ δὲ ἐγὼ πλοῖα πολλάκις |sail past  
 εἰ οὖν αἰτησάμενοι παρὰ Τραπεζουντίων μακρὰ πλοῖα |lead down,  
 καὶ φυλάττομεν αὐτά, τὰ |rudder παραλυόμενοι, ἕως |make land-  
 |fallκανὰ τὰ  
 ἄξοντα γένηται, ἴσως ἂν οὐκ ἀπορήσαιμεν |care, οἷας δεόμεθα.  
 ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα. Ἐννοήσατε δ', ἔφη, εἰ εἰκὸς καὶ τρέφειν ἀπὸ κοινῶ  
 οὓς ἂν |lead down, ὅσον ἂν χρόνον ἡμῶν ἔνεκεν μένωσι, καὶ ναῦλον  
 |make land-  
 ξυνηθέσ|fall ὅπως ὠφελούντες καὶ ὠφελῶνται. ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα. Δοκεῖ  
 τοῖνυν μοι, ἔφη, ἦν ἄρα καὶ ταῦτα ἡμῖν μὴ ἐκπεραίνηται ὥστε |ward off  
 πλοῖα, τὰς ὁδοὺς ἅς δυσπόρους ἀκούομεν εἶναι ταῖς παρὰ θάλατταν  
 οἰκούσας πόλεσιν ἐντείλασθαι ὁδοποιεῖν· πείσονται γὰρ καὶ διὰ τὸ  
 φοβεῖσθαι καὶ διὰ τὸ βούλεσθαι ἡμῶν ἀπαλλαγῆναι.

Ἐνταῦθα δὲ |speak up ὡς οὐ δέοι ὁδοιπορεῖν. ὁ δὲ ὡς ἔγνω τὴν  
 |folly αὐτῶν, ἐπειρήφισε μὲν οὐδέν, τὰς δὲ πόλεις ἐκούσας  
 ἔπεισεν ὁδοποιεῖν, λέγων ὅτι θάττον ἀπαλλάξονται, ἦν εὐπορο  
 γένωνται αἱ ὁδοί. ἔλαβον δὲ καὶ πεντηκόντορον παρὰ τῶν  
 Τραπεζουντίων, ἧ ἐπέστησαν Δέξιππον Λάκωνα περίοικον. οὗτος  
 |disregard τοῦ συλλέγειν πλοῖα ἀποδρὰς ὄχρητο ἕξω τοῦ Πόντου, ἔχων  
 τὴν ναῦν. οὗτος μὲν οὖν δίκαια ἔπαθεν ὕστερον· ἐν Θράκῃ γὰρ παρὰ

I propose that we should try to get together vessels on the spot also. If he comes and finds us already provided for here, we shall have more ships than we need, that is all; while, if he fails to bring them, we shall have the local supply to fall back upon. I see ships sailing past perpetually, so we have only to ask the loan of some war-ships from the men of Trapezus, and we can bring them into port, and safeguard them with their rudders unshipped, until we have enough to carry us. By this course I think we shall not fail of finding the means of transport requisite." That resolution was also passed. He proceeded: "Consider whether you think it equitable to support by means of a general fund the ships' companies which we so impress, while they wait here for our benefit, and to agree upon a fare, on the principle of repaying kindnesses in kind." That too was passed. "Well then," said he, "in case, after all, our endeavours should not be crowned with success, and we find that we have not vessels enough, I propose that we should enjoin on the cities along the seaboard the duty of constructing and putting in order the roads, which we hear are impassable. They will be only too glad to obey, no doubt, out of mere terror and their desire to be rid of us."

This last proposal was met by loud cries and protestations against the idea of going by land at all. So, perceiving their infatuation, he did not put the question to the vote, but eventually persuaded the cities voluntarily to construct roads by the suggestion, "If you get your roads in good order, we shall all the sooner be gone." They further got a fifty-oared galley from the Trapezuntines, and gave the command of it to Dexippus, a Laconian, one of the perioeci. This man altogether neglected to collect vessels on the offing, but slunk off himself, and vanished, ship and all, out of Pontus. Later on, however, he paid the penalty of his misdeeds.



*vocabulary***ἄθροός** grouped**ἄκρον** crest, extremity**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also ἄκρα,

ἄκρη

**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards,  
out to sea**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return**ἐκπίπτω** fall out of**ἐμπύπρημι** burn up (πῦρ); also

ἐμπρήθω

**ἐξάγω** lead out**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide,  
chief**ἡμισυς** half ~hemisphere**ἡώς** ἡοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet**κατάγω** lead down, make landfall**λεῖος** smooth**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie**ὀπόθεν** whence**ὀποῖος** whatever kind**ὀπόσος** as/how many/great**οὐκέτι** no more**πλοῖον** ship**πρόθυμος** willing, eager**ῥάδιος** easy; also ῥάιος**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army**τῶ** so, therefore; in that case**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy**φύλαξ** (m) guard; sentry; also

φυλακός, φυλακτήρ

**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard

~phylactery

**χαλεπός** hard to bear**χώρα** place**χωρίον** area; downwards

Σεύθη πολυπραγμονῶν τι ἀπέθανεν ὑπὸ Νικάνδρου τοῦ Λάκωνος. ἔλαβον δὲ καὶ τριακόντορον, ἧ ἔπεστάθη Πολυκράτης Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς ὀπόσα λαμβάνοι πλοῖα κατήγεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἀγώγιμα εἴ τι ἦγον ἐξαιρούμενοι φύλακας καθίστασαν, ὅπως σῶα εἴη, τοῖς δὲ πλοίοις ἐχρήσαντο εἰς παραγωγὴν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἦν ἐπὶ λείαν ἐξῆσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐλάμβανον οἱ δὲ καὶ οὐ. Κλαίνετος δ' ἐξαγαγὼν καὶ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ καὶ ἄλλον λόχον πρὸς χωρίον χαλεπὸν αὐτός τε ἀπέθανε καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ.

## 5.2

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια οὐκέτι ἦν λαμβάνειν ὥστε ἀπαυθημερίζειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἐκ τούτου λαβὼν Ξενοφῶν ἡγεμόνας τῶν Τραπεζουντίων ἐξάγει εἰς Δρίλας τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος, τὸ δὲ ἥμισυ κατέλιπε φυλάττειν τὸ στρατόπεδον· οἱ γὰρ Κόλχοι, ἅτε ἐκπεπτωκότες τῶν οἰκιῶν, πολλοὶ ἦσαν ἀθρόοι καὶ ὑπερεκάθηγτο ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων. οἱ δὲ Τραπεζούντιοι ὀπόθεν μὲν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ῥάδιον ἦν λαβεῖν οὐκ ἦγον· φίλοι γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἦσαν· εἰς δὲ τοὺς Δρίλας προθύμως ἦγον, ὑφ' ὧν κακῶς ἔπασχον, εἰς χωρία τε ὀρεινὰ καὶ δύσβατα καὶ ἀνθρώπους πολεμικωτάτους τῶν ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐν τῇ ἄνω χώρᾳ οἱ Ἕλληνες, ὅποια τῶν χωρίων τοῖς Δρίλαις ἀλώσιμα εἶναι ἐδόκει ἐμπιμπράντες ἀπῆσαν· καὶ οὐδὲν ἦν

Σεύθη πολυπραγμονῶν τι ἀπέθανεν ὑπὸ Νικάνδρου τοῦ Λάκωνος.  
 ἔλαβον δὲ καὶ τριακόντορον, ἣ ἐπεστάθη Πολυκράτης Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς  
 |as/how many/great ῥῖα |lead down, ὃ στρατόπεδον. καὶ τὰ μὲν  
 |make land-  
 ἀγώγιμα εἶ τι ἦγον ἐξαιρῶν |fall |guard; καθίστασαν, ὅπως σῶα εἶη,  
 |sentry  
 τοῖς δὲ πλοίοις ἐχρήσαντο εἰς παραγωγὴν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἦν ἐπὶ λείαν  
 |go forth ῥ Ἐλληνες, καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐλάμβανον οἱ δὲ καὶ οὐ. Κλαιίνετος  
 δ' ἐξαγαγὼν καὶ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ καὶ ἄλλον |ambush, ῥ ἑυρίον χαλεπὸν  
 |band, child-  
 αὐτός τε ἀπέθανε καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῶι |birthαὐτῷ.

## 5.2

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια οὐκέτι ἦν λαμβάνειν ὥστε ἀπαυθημερίζειν  
 ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἐκ τούτου λαβὼν Ξενοφῶν ἡγεμόνας τῶν  
 Τραπεζουντιῶν ἐξάγει εἰς Δρίλας τὸ ἦμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος, τὸ  
 δὲ ἦμισυ κατέλιπε φυλάττειν τὸ στρατόπεδον· οἱ γὰρ Κόλχοι, ἅτε  
 |fall out of τῶν οἰκιῶν, πολλοὶ ἦσαν ἀθρόοι καὶ ὑπερεκάθητο ἐπὶ  
 τῶν |ἄκρον?: ῥ ἔκτρη ; or|whence, ἐν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ῥάδιον ἦν  
 |ἄκρος?: at the edge, extreme  
 λαβεῖν οὐκ ἦγον· φίλοι γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἦσαν· εἰς δὲ τοὺς Δρίλας προθύμως  
 ἦγον, ὑφ' ὧν κακῶς ἔπασχον, εἰς χωρία τε ὄρεινὰ καὶ δύσβατα καὶ  
 ἀνθρώπους πολεμικωτάτους τῶν ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐν τῇ |accomplish, pass, waste;|whatever kind, ὧν τοῖς  
 |upwards, out to sea  
 Δρίλαις ἀλώσιμα εἶναι ἐδόκει |burn up ἀπῆσαν· καὶ οὐδὲν ἦν

He became involved in some meddling and making in Thrace at the court of Seuthes, and was put to death by the Laconian Nicander. They also got a thirty-oared galley, the command of which was entrusted to Polycrates, an Athenian, and that officer brought into harbour to the camp all the vessels he could lay his hands on. If these were laden, they took out the freights and appointed guards to keep an eye on their preservation, whilst they used the ships themselves for transport service on the coast. While matters stood at this point, the Hellenes used to make forays with varying success; sometimes they captured prey and sometimes they failed. On one occasion Cleanetus led his own and another company against a strong position, and was killed himself, with many others of his party.

## 5.2

The time came when it was no longer possible to capture provisions, going and returning to the camp in one day. In consequence of this, Xenophon took some guides from the Trapezuntines and led half the army out against the Drilae, leaving the other half to guard the camp. That was necessary, since the Colchians, who had been ousted from their houses, were assembled thickly, and sat eyeing them from the heights above; on the other hand the Trapezuntines, being friendly to the native inhabitants, were not for leading the Hellenes to places where it was easy to capture provisions. But against the Drilae, from whom they personally suffered, they would lead them with enthusiasm, up into mountainous and scarcely accessible fortresses, and against the most warlike people of any in the Pontus.

But when the Hellenes had reached the uplands, the Drilae set fire to all their fastnesses which they thought could be taken easily, and beat a retreat; and except here and there

*vocabulary*

**ἀγέομαι** go before, lead ~hegemony;  
 also ἡγέομαι  
**ἀκέομαι** heal, fix  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp.~sin  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
 ἀφήνω  
**βαθύς** high, deep ~bathysphere  
**βοῦς βοός** (m/f) cow, ox; shield  
 ~bovine  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**δισχίλιοι** 2000  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἕξ** six ~hexagon  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐρύς** wide  
**ἰσχυρός** strong, forceful, violent  
**κρείσσω** more powerful  
**μεστός** full  
**νεκρός** corpse ~necrotic

**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,  
 οἴομαι  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**πότερος** which, whichever of two  
**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds; also  
 πρόβασις  
**προσάγω** bring to a place  
**προσβάλλω** hit (+acc+dat); mp: heed  
**προτρέχω** run forth, outrun  
**ῥάδιος** easy; also ῥάιος  
**σκόλοψ** (m) palisade, stake  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
 masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters; also σταδία  
**τάφρος** (f) ditch, trench  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**ὔς ὑός** (m/f) pig ~sow  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear  
**χαράδρα** torrent, gorge  
**χοῦμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

λαμβάνειν εἰ μὴ ὕς ἢ βοῦς ἢ ἄλλο τι κτήνος τὸ πῦρ διαπεφευγός. ἐν δὲ ἦν χωρίον μητρόπολις αὐτῶν· εἰς τοῦτο πάντες ξυνερρήκεσαν. περὶ δὲ τοῦτο ἦν χαράδρα ἰσχυρῶς βαθεῖα, καὶ πρόσοδοι χαλεπαὶ πρὸς τὸ χωρίον. οἱ δὲ πελτασταὶ προδραμόντες στάδια πέντε ἢ ἕξ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, διαβάντες τὴν χαράδραν, ὀρώντες πρόβατα πολλὰ καὶ ἄλλα χρήματα προσέβαλλον πρὸς τὸ χωρίον· ξυνείποντο δὲ καὶ δορυφόροι πολλοὶ οἱ ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐξωρμημένοι· ὥστε ἐγένοντο οἱ διαβάντες πλείους ἢ δισχίλιοι ἄνθρωποι. ἐπεὶ δὲ μαχόμενοι οὐκ ἐδύνατο λαβεῖν τὸ χωρίον καὶ γὰρ τάφρος ἦν περὶ αὐτὸ εὐρεία ἀναβεβλημένη καὶ σκόλοπες ἐπὶ τῆς ἀναβολῆς καὶ τύρσεις πυκναὶ ξύλιναι πεποιημέναι, ἀπίεναί δὴ ἐπεχείρουν· οἱ δὲ ἐπέκειντο αὐτοῖς. ὡς δὲ οὐκ ἐδύνατο ἀποτρέχειν ἦν γὰρ ἐφ' ἐνὸς ἢ κατάβασις ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου εἰς τὴν χαράδραν, πέμπουσι πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα· ὁ δὲ ἠγείτο τοῖς ὀπλίταις. ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν λέγει ὅτι ἔστι χωρίον χρημάτων πολλῶν μεστόν· τοῦτο οὔτε λαβεῖν δυνάμεθα· ἰσχυρὸν γάρ ἐστιν· οὔτε ἀπελθεῖν ῥάδιον· μάχονται γὰρ ἐπεξεληλυθότες καὶ ἡ ἄφοδος χαλεπή. ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν προσαγαγὼν πρὸς τὴν χαράδραν τοὺς μὲν ὀπλίτας θέσθαι ἐκέλευσε τὰ ὄπλα, αὐτὸς δὲ διαβὰς σὺν τοῖς λοχαγοῖς ἐσκοπεῖτο πότερον εἷη κρεῖττον ἀπαγαγεῖν καὶ τοὺς διαβεβηκότας ἢ καὶ τοὺς ὀπλίτας διαβιβάζειν, ὡς ἀλόντος ἂν τοῦ χωρίου. ἐδόκει γὰρ τὸ μὲν ἀπαγαγεῖν οὐκ εἶναι ἄνευ πολλῶν νεκρῶν, ἐλεῖν δ' ἂν ᾤοντο καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ τὸ χωρίον, καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ξυνεχώρησε τοῖς

λαμβάνειν εἰ μὴ ὕς ἢ βοῦς ἢ ἄλλο τι κτήνος τὸ πῦρ διαπεφευγός. ἐν δὲ ἦν χωρίον μητρόπολις αὐτῶν· εἰς τοῦτο πάντες ξυνερρηήκεσαν. περὶ δὲ τοῦτο ἦν |torrent, ισχυρῶς |high, deep` πρόσοδοι χαλεπαὶ gorge  
 πρὸς τὸ χωρίον. οἱ δὲ |light |run forth, out-στάδιον?: 200`meters (pl also  
 τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, |pass over, cross|troops |run mase) ; or στάδιος?: (adj)  
 καὶ ἄλλα χρήματα |torrent, ὀρώντε|standing upright, firm; (pl  
 δορυφόροι πολλοὶ |hit πρὸς τὸ χωρίον· ξυνείποντο δὲ καὶ  
 (+acc+dat);  
 οἱ |pass over, cross s ἢ |200 ἄνθρωποι. ἐπεὶ δὲ μαχόμενοι οὐκ  
 ἐδύναντο λαβεῖν τὸ χωρίον καὶ γὰρ τάφρος ἦν περὶ αὐτὸ εὐρεία  
 ἀναβεβλημένη καὶ |palisade, ἐπὶ τῆς ἀναβολῆς καὶ τύρσεις πυκναὶ  
 |stake  
 ξύλιναι πεποιημέναι, ἀπιέναι δὴ ἐπεχείρουν· οἱ δὲ ἐπέκειντο αὐτοῖς.  
 ὡς δὲ οὐκ ἐδύναντο ἀποτρέχειν ἦν γὰρ ἐφ' ἐνὸς ἢ κατάβασις ἐκ  
 τοῦ χωρίου εἰς τὴν |torrent, πέμπουσι πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα· ὁ δὲ  
 |go before, lead` ἴταις. ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν λέγει ὅτι ἔστι χωρίον χρημάτων  
 πολλῶν |full τοῦτο οὐτε λαβεῖν δυνάμεθα· ισχυρὸν γὰρ ἐστὶν· οὐτε  
 ἀπελθεῖν ῥάδιον· μάχονται γὰρ ἐπεξεληλυθότες καὶ ἡ ἄφοδος χαλεπή.  
 |ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix ; ὀρ` προσαγαγὼν πρὸς τὴν |torrent, τοὺς μὲν  
 |ἀκούω?: hear, listen |gorge  
 ὀπλίτας θέσθαι ἐκέλευσε τὰ ὄπλα, αὐτὸς δὲ |pass over, cross `οχαγοῖς  
 ἐσκοπεῖτο |which, `! κρεῖττον ἀπαγαγεῖν καὶ τοὺς |pass over, cross  
 |whichever  
 ἢ καὶ τοὺς ὀπλίτας διαβιβάζειν, ὡς ἀλόγτος ἂν τοῦ χωρίου. ἐδόκει  
 γὰρ τὸ μὲν ἀπαγαγεῖν οὐκ εἶναι ἄνευ πολλῶν νεκρῶν, ἐλεῖν δ' ἂν  
 ᾤοντο καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ τὸ χωρίον, καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ξυνεχώρησε τοῖς

a stray pig or bullock or other animal which had escaped the fire there was nothing to capture; but there was one fastness which served as their metropolis: into this the different streams of people collected; round it ran a tremendously deep ravine, and the approaches to the place were difficult. So the light infantry ran forward five or six furlongs in advance of the heavy infantry, and crossed the ravine; and seeing quantities of sheep and other things, proceeded to attack the place. Close at their heels followed a number of those who had set out on the foray armed with spears, so that the storming party across the ravine amounted to more than two thousand. But, finding that they could not take the place by a coup de main, as there was a trench running round it, mounded up some breadth, with a stockade on the top of the earthwork and a close-packed row of wooden bastions, they made an attempt to run back, but the enemy fell upon them from the rear. To get away by a sudden rush was out of the question, since the descent from the fortress into the ravine only admitted of moving in single file. Under the circumstances they sent to Xenophon, who was in command of the heavy infantry. The messenger came and delivered his message: "There is a fastness choke full of all sorts of stores, but we cannot take it, it is too strong; nor can we easily get away; the enemy rush out and deliver battle, and the return is difficult."

On hearing this, Xenophon pushed forward his heavy infantry to the edge of the ravine, and there ordered them to take up a position, while he himself with the officers crossed over to determine whether it were better to withdraw the party already across, or to bring over the heavy infantry also, on the supposition that the fortress might be taken. In favour of the latter opinion it was agreed that the retreat must cost many lives, and the



*vocabulary*

**ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**ἀξιόω** consider worthy, fitting  
**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ῶ) show, point out;  
 (mid) declare  
**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**ἔλκω** drag, pull, hoist; rape; also ἐλκέω  
**ἐπιβάλλω** throw upon, head for  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**θέω** run, run for  
**ἱερός** (2) holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph;  
 also ἱερόν, ἱερόν, ἱρός  
**κατατίθημι** put down  
**κράτιστος** best  
**λείπω** leave something; depart  
 ~eclipse; also λιπάω  
**λίθος** (m/f) stone ~monolith; also  
 λιθάς  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis

**μεστός** full  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,  
 οἶομαι  
**ὁμοῦ** together  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πληθός** -ους (3) numerical superiority  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**σάλπιγξ** -γος (f/m) trumpet  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τελέω** fulfill; pf pass: be feasible  
**τέλος** -ους (n, 3) end; military post  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at  
**τοξότης** (m, 1) archer  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φθέγγομαι** make a sound, utter  
**χείρων** worse, more base  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**χιτών** -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

ἱεροῖς πιστεύσας· οἱ γὰρ μάντις ἀποδεδειγμένοι ἦσαν ὅτι μάχη μὲν  
 ἔσται, τὸ δὲ τέλος καλὸν τῆς ἐξόδου. καὶ τοὺς μὲν λοχαγοὺς ἔπεμπε  
 διαβιβάσσοντας τοὺς ὀπλίτας, αὐτὸς δ' ἔμενεν ἀναχωρίσας ἅπαντας  
 τοὺς πελταστάς, καὶ οὐδένα εἶα ἀκροβολίζεσθαι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦκον οἱ  
 ὀπλίται, ἐκέλευσε τὸν λόχον ἕκαστον ποιῆσαι τῶν λοχαγῶν ὡς ἂν  
 κράτιστα οἴηται ἀγωνιεῖσθαι· ἦσαν γὰρ οἱ λοχαγοὶ πλησίον ἀλλήλων  
 οἱ πάντα τὸν χρόνον ἀλλήλους περὶ ἀνδραγαθίας ἀντεποιούντο.  
 καὶ οἱ μὲν ταῦτ' ἐποίουν· ὁ δὲ τοῖς πελτασταῖς πᾶσι παρήγγειλε  
 διηγκυλωμένους ἰέναι, ὡς, ὁπότεν σημήνη, ἀκοντίζειν, καὶ τοὺς  
 τοξότας ἐπιβεβλησθαι ἐπὶ ταῖς νευραῖς, ὡς, ὁπότεν σημήνη, τοξεύειν  
 δεῖσον, καὶ τοὺς γυμνήτας λίθων ἔχειν μεστὰς τὰς διφθέρας· καὶ  
 τοὺς ἐπιτηδείους ἔπεμψε τούτων ἐπιμεληθῆναι. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντα  
 παρεσκεύαστο καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ ὑπολόχαγοι καὶ οἱ ἀξιούντες  
 τούτων μὴ χείρους εἶναι πάντες παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν, καὶ ἀλλήλους  
 μὲν δὴ ξυνεώρων μνηοειδῆς γὰρ διὰ τὸ χωρίον ἢ τάξις ἦν· ἐπεὶ δ'  
 ἐπαιάνισαν καὶ ἡ σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγγετο, ἅμα τε τῷ Ἐνναλίῳ ἠλέλιξαν  
 καὶ ἔθεον δρόμῳ οἱ ὀπλίται, καὶ τὰ βέλη ὁμοῦ ἐφέρετο, λόγχοι,  
 τοξεύματα, σφενδόνας, πλείστοι δ' ἐκ τῶν χειρῶν λίθοι, ἦσαν δὲ οἱ καὶ  
 πῦρ προσέφερον. ὑπὸ δὲ τοῦ πλήθους τῶν βελῶν ἔλιπον οἱ πολέμοι  
 τά τε σταυρώματα καὶ τὰς τύρσεις· ὥστε Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος  
 καταθέμενος τὰ ὄπλα ἐν χιτῶνι μόνον ἀνέβη, καὶ ἄλλος ἄλλον εἶλκε,  
 καὶ ἄλλος ἀνεβέβηκε, καὶ ἠλώκει τὸ χωρίον, ὡς ἐδόκει. καὶ οἱ μὲν

ἱεροῖς πιστεύσας· οἱ γὰρ |seer ἀποδεδειγμένοι ἦσαν ὅτι μάχη μὲν  
 ἔσται, τὸ δὲ τέλος καλὸν τῆς ἐξόδου. καὶ τοὺς μὲν λοχαγοὺς ἔπεμπε  
 διαβιβάσοντας τοὺς ὀπλίτας, αὐτὸς δ' ἔμενεν ἀναχωρίσας ἅπαντας  
 τοὺς |light troops, καὶ οὐδένα εἶα ἀκροβολίζεσθαι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦκον οἱ  
 ὀπλίται, ἐκέλευσε τὸν |ambush, band, child-  
 κράτιστα οἴηται ἀγωνί|birth· ἦσαν γὰρ οἱ λοχαγοὶ πλησίον ἀλλήλων  
 οἱ πάντα τὸν χρόνον ἀλλήλοις περὶ ἀνδραγαθίας ἀντεποιούντο.  
 καὶ οἱ μὲν ταῦτ' ἐποίουν· ὁ δὲ τοῖς |light troops πᾶσι παρήγγειλε  
 διηγκυλωμένους ἰέναι, ὡς, ὀπότεν σημήνην, ἀκοντίζειν, καὶ τοὺς  
 |archer ἐπιβεβλήσθαι ἐπὶ ταῖς |bowstring, ὀπότεν σημήνην, |shoot an arrow at  
 δεῆσον, καὶ τοὺς γυμνήτας |λίθος?· |full τὰς διφθέρας· καὶ  
 τοὺς ἐπιτηδείους ἔπεμψε τὰ |made of stone ἐπιμελεθῆναι. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντα  
 παρεσκεύαστο καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ ὑπολόχαγοι καὶ οἱ ἀξιούντες  
 τούτων μὴ χείρους εἶναι πάντες παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν, καὶ ἀλλήλους  
 μὲν δὴ ξυνεώρων μνησοειδῆς γὰρ διὰ τὸ χωρίον ἢ τάξις ἦν· ἐπεὶ δ'  
 ἐπαιάνισαν καὶ ἡ |trumpet |make a sound, utter ἤ Ἐνναλίῳ |shake; turn  
 καὶ ἔθεον |running ὀπλίται, καὶ τὰ βέλη ὁμοῦ ἐφέρετο, λόγχοι,  
 τοξεύματα. |sling, πλείστοι δ' ἐκ τῶν χειρῶν |λίθος?· made of stone ; or  
 πῦρ προσέφερον. ὑπὸ δὲ τοῦ πλήθους τῶν βελῶν ἔλιπον οἱ πολέμοι  
 τά τε σταυρώματα καὶ τὰς τύρσεις· ὥστε Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος  
 καταθέμενος τὰ ὄπλα ἐν χιτῶνι μόνον ἀνέβη, καὶ ἄλλος ἄλλον εἶλκε,  
 καὶ ἄλλος ἀνεβεβήκει, καὶ ἠλώκει τὸ χωρίον, ὡς ἐδόκει. καὶ οἱ μὲν

officers were further disposed to think, they could take the place. Xenophon consented, relying on the victims, for the seers had announced, that there would be a battle, but that the result of the expedition would be good. So he sent the officers to bring the heavy troops across, while he himself remained, having drawn off all the light infantry and forbidden all sharp-shooting at long range. As soon as the heavy infantry had arrived, he ordered each captain to form his company, in whatever way he hoped to make it most effective in the coming struggle. Side by side together they stood, these captains, not for the first time to-day competitors for the award of manly virtue. While they were thus employed, he—the general—was engaged in passing down his order along the ranks of the light infantry and archers respectively to march with the javelin on its thong and the arrow to the string, ready at the word “shoot” to discharge their missiles, while the light troops were to have their wallets well stocked with slingstones; lastly, he despatched his adjutants to see to the proper carrying out of these orders.

And now the preparations were complete: the officers and lieutenants and all others claiming to be peers of these, were drawn up in their several places. With a glance each was able to command the rest in the crescent-like disposition which the ground invited. Presently the notes of the battle hymn arose, the clarion spoke, and with a thrilling cry in honour of the warrior-god, commenced a rush of the heavy infantry at full speed under cover of a storm of missiles, lances, arrows, bullets, but most of all stones hurled from the hand with ceaseless pelt, while there were some who brought firebrands to bear. Overwhelmed by this crowd of missiles, the enemy left their stockades and their bastion towers, which gave Agasias the Stymphalian and Philoxenus of Pellene a chance not to be missed; laying aside their heavy arms,

*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*

**ἄκρις** (f) hilltop

**ἄκρον** crest, extremity

**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also *ἄκρα*,

*ἄκρη*

**ἄλλως** otherwise

**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart

**ἀποχωρέω** go away from, retreat

**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon

**ἀχρεῖος** serving no purpose

**διαρπάζω** make prey of

**εἶσω** into; also *ἔσω*

**ἐκκομίζω** remove; bury a corpse

**ἐκπέμπω** send forth

**ἐκπίπτω** fall out of

**ἐνδοθεν** from within

**ἐνδον** in the house of; within

**ἐνταῦθα** thither

**ἔξω** outward, outside

**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel

**ἔργω** bound, fend off; do; also

*ἐργαθεῖν*

**ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics

**ἔρωτάω** ask about something

**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene

**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet

**ἰσχυρός** strong, forceful, violent

**καθίζω** to seat ~sit; also *ἴζω*, *καθιζάνω*

**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon;

also *καταλείπω*

**κῆρυξ** -κος (m) henchman, functionary

**κνημῖς** (f) greave

**κραυγή** screaming, shouting

**μεταξύ** between

**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike

**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey

~odometer; also *οὐδός*

**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy

infantryman

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

**ὀπόσος** as/how many/great

**πάνυ** altogether, very

**πελταστής** (m) light troops

**πλήθος** -υς (3) numerical superiority

**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae

**σταυρός** stake

**τάχα** quickly, soon ~tachometer

**χαλεπός** hard to bear

**χωρίον** area; downwards

**φιλός** naked, bare ~epsilon

πελτασταὶ καὶ οἱ ψιλοὶ ἐσδραμόντες ἤρπαζον ὅ τι ἕκαστος ἐδύνατο·  
 ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν στὰς κατὰ τὰς πύλας ὁπόσους ἐδύνατο κατεκώλυε τῶν  
 ὀπλιτῶν ἕξω· πολέμοι γὰρ ἄλλοι ἐφαίνοντο ἐπὶ ἄκροις τισὶν ἰσχυροῖς.  
 οὐ πολλοῦ δὲ χρόνου μεταξὺ γενομένου κραυγὴ τε ἐγένετο ἔνδον καὶ  
 ἔφευγον οἱ μὲν καὶ ἔχοντες ἅ ἔλαβον, τάχα δέ τις καὶ τετρωμένος· καὶ  
 πολὺς ἦν ὠθισμὸς ἀμφὶ τὰ θύρετρα. καὶ ἐρωτώμενοι οἱ ἐκπίπτοντες  
 ἔλεγον ὅτι ἄκρα τέ ἐστιν ἔνδον καὶ οἱ πολέμοι πολλοί, οἱ παίουσιν  
 ἐκδεδραμηκότες τοὺς ἔνδον ἀνθρώπους. ἐνταῦθα ἀνειπεῖν ἐκέλευσε  
 Τολμίδην τὸν κήρυκα ἰέναι εἴσω τὸν βουλόμενόν τι λαμβάνειν. καὶ  
 ἴεται πολλοὶ εἴσω, καὶ νικῶσι τοὺς ἐκπίπτοντας οἱ εἰσωθούμενοι καὶ  
 κατακλείουσι τοὺς πολεμίους πάλιν εἰς τὴν ἄκραν. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἕξω τῆς  
 ἄκρας πάντα διηρπάσθη, καὶ ἐξεκομίσαντο οἱ Ἕλληες· οἱ δὲ ὀπλιταὶ  
 ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα, οἱ μὲν περὶ τὰ σταυρώματα, οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν τὴν  
 ἐπὶ τὴν ἄκραν φέρουσαν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἐσκόπουν εἰ  
 οἴόν τε εἶη τὴν ἄκραν λαβεῖν· ἦν γὰρ οὕτως σωτηρία ἀσφαλῆς, ἄλλως  
 δὲ πάνυ χαλεπὸν ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀπελθεῖν· σκοπομένους δὲ αὐτοῖς ἔδοξε  
 παντάπασιν ἀνάλωτον εἶναι τὸ χωρίον. ἐνταῦθα παρεσκευάζοντο τὴν  
 ἄφοδον, καὶ τοὺς μὲν σταυροὺς ἕκαστοι τοὺς καθ' αὐτοὺς διήρουν, καὶ  
 τοὺς ἀχρεῖους καὶ φορτία ἔχοντάς τε ἐξεπέμποντο καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν  
 τὸ πλῆθος, καταλιπόντες οἱ λοχαγοὶ οἷς ἕκαστος ἐπίστευεν. ἐπεὶ  
 δὲ ἤρξαντο ἀποχωρεῖν, ἐπέξέθειον ἔνδοθεν πολλοὶ γέρρα καὶ λόγχας  
 ἔχοντες καὶ κνημίδας καὶ κράνη Παφλαγονικά, καὶ ἄλλοι ἐπὶ τὰς

light troops καὶ οἱ naked, bare, ὄντες carry off, "seize" αστος enter, put on, strip off  
 ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν στὰς κατὰ τὰς πύλας as/how enter, put on, ὡλυε τῶν many/great strip off  
 ὀπλιτῶν ἔξω· πολέμοι γὰρ ἄλλοι ἐφαίνοντο ἐπὶ ἄκρον?: extremity ; or ἄκρος?: at the edge, extreme  
 οὐ πολλοῦ δὲ χρόνου μεταξὺ γενομένου screaming, γένετο ἔνδον καὶ shouting  
 ἔφευγον οἱ μὲν καὶ ἔχοντες ἅ ἔλαβον, τάχα δέ τις καὶ τετρωμένος· καὶ  
 πολὺς ἦν ὠθισμὸς ἀμφὶ τὰ door καὶ ἐρωτώμενοι οἱ fall out of  
 ἔλεγον ὅτι ἄκρις?: hilltop ; or ἄκρον?: extremity ; λλοί, οἱ παίουσιν or ἄκρος?: at the edge, extreme  
 ἐκδεδραμηκότες τοὺς ἔνδον ἀνθρώπους. ἐνταῦθα ἀνειπεῖν ἐκέλευσε  
 Τολμίδην τὸν κήρυκα ἰέναι εἴσω τὸν βουλόμενόν τι λαμβάνειν. καὶ  
 ἴενται πολλοὶ εἴσω, καὶ νικῶσι τοὺς fall out of οἱ εἰσωθούμενοι καὶ  
 κατακλείουσι τοὺς πολεμίους πάλιν εἰς τὴν ἄκραν. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἔξω τῆς  
 ἄκρις?: hilltop ; οἱ Ἕλληνες· οἱ δὲ ὀπλίται make prey of remove; bury a  
 ἄκρος?: la, οἱ μὲν περὶ τὴν ἄκραν ἄκρος?: la, οἱ μὲν περὶ τὴν ἄκραν ἄκρος?: la, οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν τὴν  
 extreme ἄκραν φέρουσαν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἐσκόπουν εἰ  
 οἶόν τε εἶη τὴν ἄκραν λαβεῖν· ἦν γὰρ οὕτως σωτηρία ἀσφαλῆς, ἄλλως  
 δὲ πάνυ χαλεπὸν ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀπελθεῖν· σκοπουμένοις δὲ αὐτοῖς ἐδοξε  
 παντάπασιν ἀνάλωτον εἶναι τὸ χαρίον. ἐνταῦθα παρεσκευάζοντο τὴν  
 ἄφοδον, καὶ τοὺς μὲν stake ἕκαστοι τοὺς καθ' αὐτοὺς διήρουν, καὶ  
 τοὺς serving no purpose ἔχοντάς τε ἐξεπέμποντο καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν  
 τὸ πλῆθος, καταλιπόντες οἱ λοχαγοὶ οἷς ἕκαστος ἐπίστευεν. ἐπεὶ  
 δὲ ἤρξαντο ἀποχωρεῖν, ἐπεξέθεον from within ἂν γέρρα καὶ λόγχας  
 ἔχοντες καὶ greave καὶ κράνη Παφλαγονικά, καὶ ἄλλοι ἐπὶ τὰς

up they went in bare tunics only, and one hauled another up, and meantime another had mounted, and the place was taken, as they thought. Then the peltasts and light troops rushed in and began snatching what each man could. Xenophon the while, posted at the gates, kept back as many of the hoplites as he could, for there were other enemies now visible on certain strong citadel heights; and after a lapse of no long time a shout arose within, and the men came running back, some still clutching what they had seized; and presently here and there a wounded man; and mighty was the jostling about the portals. To the questions which were put to them the outpouring fugitives repeated the same story: there was a citadel within and enemies in crowds were making savage sallies and beating the fellows inside.

At that Xenophon ordered Tolmides the herald to proclaim: "Enter all who are minded to capture aught." In poured the surging multitude, and the counter-current of persons elbowing their passage in prevailed over the stream of those who issued forth, until they beat back and cooped up the enemy within the citadel again. So outside the citadel everything was sacked and pillaged by the Hellenes, and the heavy infantry took up their position, some about the stockades, others along the road leading up to the citadel. Xenophon and the officers meantime considered the possibility of taking the citadel, for if so, their safety was assured; but if otherwise, it would be very difficult to get away. As the result of their deliberations they agreed that the place was impregnable. Then they began making preparations for the retreat. Each set of men proceeded to pull down the palisading which faced themselves; further, they sent away all who were useless or who had enough to do to carry their burdens, with the mass of the heavy infantry accompanying them; the officers in each case leaving behind men whom they could severally depend on.

But as soon as they began to retreat, out rushed upon them from within a host



*vocabulary*

**ἄκρις** (f) hilltop  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also ἄκρα,  
 ἄκρη  
**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀριστερός** left-hand  
**ἀσφαλής** going ahead, standing firm  
**ἀφήμι** throw, release, use up; also  
 ἀφήκω  
**ἀφοράω** look away, at  
**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic  
**δέκα** ten ~decimal  
**δεξιὰ** right-hand  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διώκω** chase  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐξαπίνης** suddenly  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**θεά** (2) goddess ~theology

**ικανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**καταβαίνω** go down  
**κατακαίω** burn down  
**λυπέω** annoy, distress  
**μανθάνω** learn, be trained ~math  
**ξύλον** piece of wood ~xylophone  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**οἰκίον** abode, nest  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**πλήν** except  
**προσποιέω** give over to  
**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae  
**στενός** narrow  
**στόμα** -τος (n, 3) mouth ~stomach  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**ὕστεραῖος** the next; later  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

οικίας ἀνέβαινον τὰς ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν τῆς εἰς τὴν ἄκραν φερούσης ὁδοῦ· ὥστε οὐδὲ διώκειν ἀσφαλὲς ἦν κατὰ τὰς πύλας τὰς εἰς τὴν ἄκραν φερούσας. καὶ γὰρ ξύλα μεγάλα ἐπερρίπτουν ἄνωθεν, ὥστε χαλεπὸν ἦν καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἡ νύξ φοβερά ἦν ἡ ἐπιούσα. μαχομένων δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ ἀπορουμένων θεῶν τις αὐτοῖς μηχανὴν σωτηρίας δίδωσιν. ἐξαπίνης γὰρ ἀνέλαμψεν οἰκία τῶν ἐν δεξιᾷ ὄτου δὴ ἐνάψαντος. ὡς δ' αὕτη ξυνέπιπτεν, ἔφευγον οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν ἐν δεξιᾷ οἰκιῶν. ὡς δὲ ἔμαθεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν τοῦτο παρὰ τῆς τύχης, ἐνάπτειν ἐκέλευε καὶ τὰς ἐν ἀριστερᾷ οἰκίας, αἱ ξύλιναι ἦσαν, ὥστε καὶ ταχὺ ἐκαίοντο. ἔφευγον οὖν καὶ οἱ ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν οἰκιῶν. οἱ δὲ κατὰ στόμα δὴ ἔτι μόνοι ἐλύπουν καὶ δηλοῖ ἦσαν ὅτι ἐπικείσονται ἐν τῇ ἐξόδῳ τε καὶ καταβάσει. ἐνταῦθα παραγγέλλει φέρειν ξύλα ὅσοι ἐτύγχανον ἕξω ὄντες τῶν βελῶν εἰς τὸ μέσον ἑαυτῶν καὶ τῶν πολεμίων. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἰκανὰ ἤδη ἦν, ἐνήψαν· ἐνήπτουν δὲ καὶ τὰς παρ' αὐτὸ τὸ χαράκωμα οἰκίας, ὅπως οἱ πολέμοι ἀμφὶ ταῦτα ἔχοιεν. οὕτω μόλις ἀπῆλθον ἀπὸ τοῦ χωρίου, πῦρ ἐν μέσῳ ἑαυτῶν καὶ τῶν πολεμίων ποιησάμενοι. καὶ κατεκαύθη πᾶσα ἡ πόλις καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι καὶ αἱ τύρσεις καὶ τὰ σταυρώματα καὶ τᾶλλα πάντα πλὴν τῆς ἄκρας.

Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἀπῆσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔχοντες τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὴν κατάβασιν ἐφοβοῦντο τὴν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα πρηνῆς γὰρ ἦν καὶ στενὴ, ψευδενέδραν ἐποίησαντο· καὶ ἀνὴρ Μυσοῦς καὶ τοῦνομα τοῦτο ἔχων τῶν Κρητῶν λαβὼν δέκα ἔμενεν ἐν λαισίῳ χωρίῳ καὶ προσεποιεῖτο

οικίας ἀνέβαινον τὰς ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν τῆς εἰς τὴν ἄκραν φερούσης  
 ὁδοῦ· ὥστε οὐδὲ διώκειν ἀσφαλὲς ἦν κατὰ τὰς πύλας τὰς εἰς τὴν  
 ἄκραν φερούσας. καὶ γὰρ ξύλα μεγάλα ἐπερρίπτουν ἄνωθεν, ὥστε  
 χαλεπὸν ἦν καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἡ νύξ φοβερὰ ἦν ἡ ἐπιούσα.  
 μαχομένων δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ ἀπορουμένων θεῶν τις αὐτοῖς μηχανὴν

σωτηρίας **δίδημι?;** |suddenly |,ὰρ ἀνέλαμψεν οἰκία τῶν ἐν **δεξιᾶ?;** right-  
 ὅτου δὴ εἰ **bind;** **τος.** ὡς δ' αὐτῆ ξυνέπιπτεν, ἔφευγον οἱ ἀπὸ **δεξιός?;** ; or  
 ἐν **δεξιᾶ?;** **right-hand ; or** **δεξιός?;** right-  
**δεξιός?;** **right-hand**  
 ἐνάπτειν ἐπιένει καὶ τὰς ἐν ἀριστερᾷ οἰκίας, αἱ ξύλιναι ἦσαν, ὥστε  
**give;**  
**permit**

καὶ ταχὺ ἐκαίοντο. ἔφευγον οὖν καὶ οἱ ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν οἰκιῶν. οἱ  
 δὲ κατὰ στόμα δὴ ἔτι μόνον ἐλύπουν καὶ δῆλοι ἦσαν ὅτι ἐπικείσονται  
 ἐν τῇ ἐξόδῳ τε καὶ καταβάσει. ἐνταῦθα παραγγέλλει φέρειν ξύλα  
 ὅσοι ἐτύγχανον ζῆω ὄντες τῶν βελῶν εἰς τὸ μέσον ἑαυτῶν καὶ τῶν  
 πολεμίων. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἱκανὰ ἦδη ἦν, ἐνήψαν· ἐνήπτον δὲ καὶ τὰς παρ'  
 αὐτὸ τὸ χαράκωμα οἰκίας, ὅπως οἱ πολέμοι ἀμφὶ ταῦτα ἔχοιεν.  
 οὕτω μόλις ἀπήλθον ἀπὸ τοῦ χωρίου, πῦρ ἐν μέσῳ ἑαυτῶν καὶ τῶν  
 πολεμίων ποιησάμενοι. καὶ **burn down** ἅσα ἡ πόλις καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι καὶ

αἱ τύρσεις καὶ τὰ σταυρώματα καὶ τᾶλλα πάντα πλὴν τῆς **ἄκρος?;** hilltop ; or  
**ἄκρος?;** at the edge,  
**extreme**

Τῇ δὲ **the next; later** οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔχοντες τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὴν  
 κατάβασιν ἐφοβοῦντο τὴν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα πρηνῆς γὰρ ἦν καὶ **narrow**  
 ψευδενέδραν ἐποίησαντο· καὶ ἀνὴρ Μυσὸς καὶ τοῦνομα τοῦτο ἔχων  
 τῶν Κρητῶν λαβὼν δέκα ἔμενεν ἐν **shaggy,** **ωρίῳ** καὶ **give over to**

of fellows, armed with wicker shields and lances, greaves and Paphlagonian helmets. Others might be seen scaling the houses on this side and that of the road leading into the citadel. Even pursuit in the direction of the citadel was dangerous, since the enemy kept hurling down on them great beams from above, so that to stop and to make off were alike dangerous, and night approaching was full of terrors. But in the midst of their fighting and their despair some god gave them a means of safety. All of a sudden, by whatsoever hand ignited, a flame shot up; it came from a house on the right hand, and as this gradually fell in, the people from the other houses on the right took to their heels and fled.

Xenophon, laying this lesson of fortune to heart, gave orders to set fire to the left-hand houses also, which being of wood burned quickly, with the result that the occupants of these also took to flight. The men immediately at their front were the sole annoyance now, and these were safe to fall upon them as they made their exit and in their descent. Here then the word was passed for all who were out of range to bring up logs of wood and pile them between themselves and the enemy, and when there was enough of these they set them on fire; they also fired the houses along the trench-work itself, so as to occupy the attention of the enemy. Thus they got off, though with difficulty, and escaped from the place by putting a fire between them and the enemy; and the whole city was burnt down, houses, turrets, stockading, and everything belonging to it except the citadel.

Next day the Hellenes were bent on getting back with the provisions; but as they dreaded the descent to Trapezus, which was precipitous and narrow, they laid a false ambushade, and a Mysian, called after the name of his nation (Mysus), took ten of the Cretans and halted in some thick brushy ground, where he made a feint of endeavouring to escape the notice of the enemy. The glint of their light shields, which

*vocabulary*

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἄλλοτε** at another time  
**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἀναχωρέω** return, retreat  
**ἀσθενέω** be weak, sick  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βοάω** shout  
**διαφαίνω** seem, show through (φαίνω)  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**ἐκπίπτω** fall out of  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔτης** (m, 1) fellow townsman?  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἦμερος** domesticated  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**καταβαίνω** go down  
**κράτος** -εος (n, 3) strength, power;  
 victory ~democracy; also **κάρτος**

**λανθάνω** escape notice; (mp+gen)  
 forget ~Lethe; also **καταλήθομαι**  
**νάπη** valley  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also **οὐδός**  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also  
**πειρητίζω**  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
**στρατιά** army  
**σώζω** save  
**τεσσαράκοντα** forty; also  
**τετταράκοντα**  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὕλη** forest, firewood  
**ὑπέειπον** say as preface, premise  
**ὑπέρχομαι** go under  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also **καταχέω**  
**χώρα** place

τοὺς πολεμίους πειρᾶσθαι λανθάνειν· αἱ δὲ πέλται αὐτῶν ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε διεφαίνοντο χαλκαῖ οὖσαι. οἱ μὲν οὖν πολέμοι ταῦτα διορῶντες ἐφοβοῦντο ὡς ἐνέδραν οὖσαν· ἡ δὲ στρατιὰ ἐν τούτῳ κατέβαινε. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει ἤδη ἰκανὸν ὑπεληλυθῆναι, τῷ Μυσῶ ἐσήμηνε φεύγειν ἀνὰ κράτος· καὶ ὃς ἔξαναστὰς φεύγει καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι Κρήτες ἀλίσκεσθαι γὰρ ἔφασαν τῷ δρόμῳ, ἐκπεσόντες ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ εἰς ὕλην κατὰ τὰς νάπας καλινδούμενοι ἐσώθησαν, ὁ Μυσὸς δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν φεύγων ἐβόα βοηθεῖν· καὶ ἐβοήθησαν αὐτῷ, καὶ ἀνέλαβον τετρωμένον. καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐπὶ πόδα ἀνεχώρουν βαλλόμενοι οἱ βοηθήσαντες καὶ ἀντιοξεύοντές τινες τῶν Κρητῶν. οὕτως ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον πάντες σῶοι ὄντες.

### 5.3

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὔτε Χειρίσοφος ἦκεν οὔτε πλοῖα ἰκανὰ ἦν οὔτε τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦν λαμβάνειν ἔτι, ἐδόκει ἀπιτέον εἶναι. καὶ εἰς μὲν τὰ πλοῖα τοὺς τε ἀσθενοῦντας ἐνεβίβασαν καὶ τοὺς ὑπὲρ τετταράκοντα ἔτη καὶ παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ τῶν σκευῶν ὅσα μὴ ἀνάγκη ἦν ἔχειν. καὶ Φιλήσιον καὶ Σοφαίνετον τοὺς πρεσβυτάτους τῶν στρατηγῶν εἰσβιβάσαντες τούτων ἐκέλευον ἐπιμελεῖσθαι· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο· ἡ δὲ ὁδὸς ὠδοποιημένη ἦν. καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται πορευόμενοι εἰς Κερασοῦντα τριταῖοι πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ Σιωπέων ἄποικον ἐν τῇ Κολχίδι χώρα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας

τοὺς πολεμίους πειρᾶσθαι λανθάνειν· αἱ δὲ πέλται αὐτῶν ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε |**seem, show through** ἴσαι. οἱ μὲν οὖν πολέμοι ταῦτα διορῶντες ἐφοβοῦντο ὡς ἐνέδραν οὔσαν· ἡ δὲ στρατιὰ ἐν τούτῳ κατέβαινε. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει ἤδη ἱκανὸν |**go under** τῷ Μυσῶ ἐσήμηνε φεύγειν ἀνὰ κράτος· καὶ ὅς ἐξαναστὰς φεύγει καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι Κρήτες ἀλίσκεσθαι γὰρ ἔφασαν τῷ |**running** |**fall out of** ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ εἰς ὕλην κατὰ τὰς |**valley** καλινδούμενοι ἐσώθησαν, ὁ Μυσὸς δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν φεύγων ἐβόα βοηθεῖν· καὶ ἐβοήθησαν αὐτῷ, καὶ ἀνέλαβον τετραμένον. καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐπὶ πόδα ἀνεχώρουν βαλλόμενοι οἱ βοηθήσαντες καὶ ἀντιτοξεύοντές τινες τῶν Κρητῶν. οὕτως ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον πάντες σῶοι ὄντες.

### 5.3

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὔτε Χειρίσοφος ἦκεν οὔτε πλοῖα ἱκανὰ ἦν οὔτε τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦν λαμβάνειν ἔτι, ἐδόκει ἀπιτέον εἶναι. καὶ εἰς μὲν τὰ πλοῖα τοὺς τε |**be weak, sick** ἐβίβασαν καὶ τοὺς ὑπὲρ τετταράκοντα |**ἔτης?: 'fellow townsman?'; or ἔτος?: ^ year ; or ὅσα μὴ ἀνάγκη τίθημι?: put; cause; endow; cause to be, make** ἦν ἔχειν. καὶ Φιλίσιον καὶ Σοφαίνετον τοὺς πρεσβυτάτους τῶν στρατηγῶν εἰσβιβάσαντες τούτων ἐκέλευον ἐπιμελεῖσθαι· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο· ἡ δὲ ὁδὸς ὠδοποιημένη ἦν. καὶ ἀφικνούνται πορευόμενοι εἰς Κερασοῦντα τριταῖοι πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ Σιωπέων ἄποικον ἐν τῇ Κολχίδι χώρα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας

were of brass, now and again gleamed through the brushwood. The enemy, seeing it all through the thicket, were confirmed in their fears of an ambushade. But the army meanwhile was quietly making its descent; and when it appeared that they had crept down far enough, the signal was given to the Mysian to flee as fast as he could, and he, springing up, fled with his men. The rest of the party, that is the Cretans, saying, "We are caught if we race," left the road and plunged into a wood, and tumbling and rolling down the gullies were saved. The Mysian, fleeing along the road, kept crying for assistance, which they sent him, and picked him up wounded. The party of rescue now beat a retreat themselves with their face to the foe, exposed to a shower of missiles, to which some of the Cretan bowmen responded with their arrows. In this way they all reached the camp in safety.

### 5.3

Now when Cheirisophus did not arrive, and the supply of ships was insufficient, and to get provisions longer was impossible, they resolved to depart. On board the vessels they embarked the sick, and those above forty years of age, with the boys and women, and all the baggage which the soldiers were not absolutely forced to take for their own use. The two eldest generals, Philesius and Sophaenetus, were put in charge, and so the party embarked, while the rest resumed their march, for the road was now completely constructed. Continuing their march that day and the next, on the third they reached Cerasus, a Hellenic city on the sea, and a colony of Sinope, in the country of the Colchians. Here they halted ten days, and there



*vocabulary*

**ἄημι** blow  
**ἀνάθημα** (n, 3) accessory  
**ἀναιρέω** take up  
**ἀνατίθημι** reproach  
**ἀντί** for, equivalent to  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀποδίδωμι** repay  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι, ὄλλυμι  
**ἀργύριον** small coin  
**ἀριθμός** number  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**δέκα** ten ~decimal  
**δέκατος** tenth  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal  
**ἐξέτασις** scrutiny  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεὶ  
**ἐπιγράφω** scratch, graze  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater; also θάομαι, θήομαι  
**θεωρέω** be sent to consult an oracle;  
 observe, contemplate  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon;

also καταλείπω  
**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)  
 there is a danger that  
**μέρος** -ος (n, 3) part  
**νόσος** (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome;  
 also νοῦσος  
**ξένος** guest-friend, host, stranger  
 ~xenophobe  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι, οἴομαι  
**ὀπλομαι** get ready, prepare  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὅπου** where  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**σώζω** save  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard  
 ~phylactery  
**χιών χιόνος** (f, 3) snow  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

δέκα· καὶ ἐξέτασις σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις ἐγίνετο καὶ ἀριθμός, καὶ ἐγένοντο ὀκτακισχίλιοι καὶ ἑξακόσιοι. οὗτοι ἐσώθησαν. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἀπόλοντο ὑπὸ τε τῶν πολεμίων καὶ χιόνος καὶ εἴ τις νόσῳ.

Ἐνταῦθα καὶ διαλαμβάνουσι τὸ ἀπὸ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων ἀργύριον γενόμενον. καὶ τὴν δεκάτην, ἣν τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι ἐξείλον καὶ τῇ Ἐφεσίᾳ Ἀρτέμιδι, διέλαβον οἱ στρατηγοὶ τὸ μέρος ἕκαστος φυλάττειν τοῖς θεοῖς· ἀντὶ δὲ Χειρισόφου Νέων ὁ Ἀσυναῖος ἔλαβε. Ξενοφῶν οὖν τὸ μὲν τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος ἀνάθημα ποιησάμενος ἀνατίθησιν εἰς τὸν ἐν Δελφοῖς τῶν Ἀθηναίων θησαυρὸν καὶ ἐπέγραψε τό τε αὐτοῦ ὄνομα καὶ τὸ Προξένου, ὃς σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἀπέθανεν· ξένος γὰρ ἦν αὐτοῦ. τὸ δὲ τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος τῆς Ἐφεσίας, ὅτ' ἀπήει σὺν Ἀγησιλάῳ ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας τὴν εἰς Βοιωτοὺς ὁδόν, καταλείπει παρὰ Μεγαβύζῳ τῷ τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος νεωκόρῳ, ὅτι αὐτὸς κινδυνεύσων ἐδόκει ἰέναι, καὶ ἐπέστειλεν, ἣν μὲν αὐτὸς σωθῆ, αὐτῷ ἀποδοῦναι ἣν δέ τι πάθῃ, ἀναθεῖναι ποιησάμενον τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι ὅ τι οἴοιτο χαριεῖσθαι τῇ θεῷ. ἐπειδὴ δ' ἔφενγεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν, κατοικοῦντος ἤδη αὐτοῦ ἐν Σκιλλοῦντι ὑπὸ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων οἰκισθέντος παρὰ τὴν Ὀλυμπίαν ἀφικνεῖται Μεγάβυζος εἰς Ὀλυμπίαν θεωρήσων καὶ ἀποδίδωσι τὴν παρακαταθήκην αὐτῷ. Ξενοφῶν δὲ λαβὼν χωρίον ἠνεῖται τῇ θεῷ ὅπου ἀνείλεν ὁ θεός. ἔτυχε δὲ διαρρέων διὰ τοῦ χωρίου ποταμὸς Σελινοῦς. καὶ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ δὲ παρὰ τὸν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος νεῶν Σελινοῦς ποταμὸς παραρρεῖ. καὶ ἰχθύες τε ἐν

δέκα· καὶ |scrutiny τὴν τοῖς ὅπλοις ἐγίγνετο καὶ ἀριθμός, καὶ ἐγένοντο ὀκτακισχίλιοι καὶ ἑξακόσιοι. οὗτοι ἐσώθησαν. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἀπώλοντο ὑπὸ τε τῶν πολεμίων καὶ |snow καὶ εἴ τις |plague

Ἐνταῦθα καὶ διαλαμβάνουσι τὸ ἀπὸ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων ἀργύριον γενόμενον. καὶ τὴν δεκάτην, ἣν τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι ἐξείλον καὶ τῇ Ἐφεσίᾳ Ἀρτέμιδι, διέλαβον οἱ στρατηγοὶ τὸ μέρος ἕκαστος φυλάττειν τοῖς θεοῖς· ἀντὶ δὲ Χειρισόφου Νέων ὁ Ἄσιναῖος ἔλαβε. Ξενοφῶν οὖν τὸ μὲν τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος |accessory ποιησάμενος |reproach εἰς τὸν ἐν Δελφοῖς τῶν Ἀθηναίων θησαυρὸν καὶ |graze τὸ τε αὐτοῦ ὄνομα καὶ τὸ Προξένου, ὃς σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἀπέθανεν· ξένος γὰρ ἦν αὐτοῦ. τὸ δὲ τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος τῆς Ἐφεσίας, ὅτ' ἀπήει σὺν Ἀγησιλάῳ ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας τὴν εἰς Βοιωτοὺς ὁδόν, καταλείπει παρὰ Μεγαβύζῳ τῷ τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος νεωκόρῳ, ὅτι αὐτὸς κινδυνεύσων ἐδόκει ἰέναι, καὶ ἐπέστειλεν, ἣν μὲν αὐτὸς σωθῆ, αὐτῷ ἀποδοῦναι· ἣν δέ τι πάθῃ, |reproach ποιησάμενον τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι ὅ τι οἶοιτο χαριεῖσθαι τῇ θεῷ. |after; because ἔφευγεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν, κατοικοῦντος ἤδη αὐτοῦ ἐν Σκιλλοῦντι ὑπὸ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων οἰκισθέντος παρὰ τὴν Ὀλυμπίαν ἀφικνεῖται Μεγάβυζος εἰς Ὀλυμπίαν θεωρήσων καὶ ἀποδίδωσι τὴν παρακαταθήκην αὐτῷ. Ξενοφῶν δὲ λαβὼν χωρίον ἠνεῖται τῇ θεῷ ὅπου ἀνεῖλεν ὁ θεός. ἔτυχε δὲ διαρρέων διὰ τοῦ χωρίου ποταμὸς Σελινοῦς. καὶ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ δὲ παρὰ τὸν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος νεῶν Σελινοῦς ποταμὸς παραρρεῖ. καὶ ἰχθῦες τε ἐν

was a review and numbering of the troops under arms, when there were found to be eight thousand six hundred men. So many had escaped; the rest had perished at the hands of the enemy, or by reason of the snow, or else disease.

At this time and place they divided the money accruing from the captives sold, and a tithe selected for Apollo and Artemis of the Ephesians was divided between the generals, each of whom took a portion to guard for the gods, Neon the Asinaean taking on behalf of Cheirisophus.

Out of the portion which fell to Xenophon he caused a dedicatory offering to Apollo to be made and dedicated among the treasures of the Athenians at Delphi. It was inscribed with his own name and that of Proxenus, his friend, who was killed with Clearchus. The gift for Artemis of the Ephesians was, in the first instance, left behind by him in Asia at the time when he left that part of the world himself with Agesilaus on the march into Boeotia. He left it behind in charge of Megabyzus, the sacristan of the goddess, thinking that the voyage on which he was starting was fraught with danger. In the event of his coming out of it alive, he charged Megabyzus to restore to him the deposit; but should any evil happen to him, then he was to cause to be made and to dedicate on his behalf to Artemis, whatsoever thing he thought would be pleasing to the goddess.

In the days of his banishment, when Xenophon was now established by the Lacedaemonians as a colonist in Scillus, a place which lies on the main road to Olympia, Megabyzus arrived on his way to Olympia as a spectator to attend the games, and restored to him the deposit. Xenophon took the money and bought for the goddess a plot of ground at a point indicated to him by the

*vocabulary***ἀγρός** field, wild ~agriculture**αἴξ** αἰγός (m/f) goat**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured**ἄλφιτον** barley meal**ἀμφότερος** both ~amphora**ἀργύριον** small coin**ἄρτος** bread, loaf**αὐτοῦ** here, there**βοῦς βοός** (m/f) cow, ox; shield

~bovine

**βωμός** altar; stand, pedestal**εἰκός οἰκότος** (n, 3) likely**εἴκοσι** twenty**ἔλαφος** (m/f) deer**ἔοικα** seem, seem likely, beseem ~icon**ἑορτή** holiday, feast**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider

~theater; also θάομαι, θηέομαι

**θήρα** hunt (θήρ)**θηρίον** (f/m/n) wild animal

~megatherium; also θήρ

**θύω** rush; sacrifice**ἱερός** (2) holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph;

also ἱερόν, ἱερόν, ἱρός

**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit**λειμών** (m, 3) meadow ~limnic**μεστός** full**μικρός** small; also **σμικρός****ναός νεώς** (f/m) temple, shrine; also

νηός

**νομεύς** (m) shepherd, herder**οἶνος** wine ~wine**ὀπόσος** as/how many/great**ὄρнуμι** set upon, arouse ~hormone;

also ὀπόρнуμι

**ὄρος ὄρεος** (n, 3) mountain, hill

~hormone

**παρέχω** furnish**πολίτης** -ου (m, 1) townsmen; also

πολιήτης

**πορεύω** carry**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also

masc)

**στήλη** post, column**τρέφω** nurture; solidify ~atrophy**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case**ὑς ὑός** (m/f) pig ~sow**φυτεύω** plant, grow, cause, prepare

(φύω)

**χρυσός** gold**χώρα** place**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)

~heir

**χωρίον** area; downwards**χώρος** place

ἀμφοτέροις ἔνεισι καὶ κόγχοι· ἐν δὲ τῷ ἐν Σκιλλοῦντι χωρίῳ καὶ θῆραι πάντων ὅποσα ἐστὶν ἀγρευόμενα θηρία. ἐποίησε δὲ καὶ βωμὸν καὶ ναὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ἀργυρίου, καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν δὲ αἰὲ δεκατεύων τὰ ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ ὠραῖα θυσίαν ἐποίει τῇ θεῷ, καὶ πάντες οἱ πολῖται καὶ οἱ πρόσχωροι ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες μετείχον τῆς ἐορτῆς. παρείχε δὲ ἡ θεὸς τοῖς σκηνοῦσιν ἄλφιστα, ἄρτους, οἶνον, τραγήματα, καὶ τῶν θυομένων ἀπὸ τῆς ἱερᾶς νομῆς λάχος, καὶ τῶν θηρευομένων δέ. καὶ γὰρ θήραν ἐποιοῦντο εἰς τὴν ἐορτὴν οἳ τε Ξενοφῶντος παῖδες καὶ οἱ τῶν ἄλλων πολιτῶν, οἱ δὲ βουλόμενοι καὶ ἄνδρες ξυνεθήρων· καὶ ἠλίσκετο τὰ μὲν ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἱεροῦ χώρου, τὰ δὲ καὶ ἐκ τῆς Φολόης, σῦες καὶ δορκάδες καὶ ἔλαφοι. ἔστι δὲ ἡ χώρα ἣ ἐκ Λακεδαίμονος εἰς Ὀλυμπίαν πορεύονται ὡς εἴκοσι στάδιοι ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐν Ὀλυμπίᾳ Διὸς ἱεροῦ. ἐν δ' ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ χώρῳ καὶ λειμῶν καὶ ὄρη δένδρων μεστά, ἱκανὰ σῦς καὶ αἰγᾶς καὶ βοῦς τρέφειν καὶ ἵππους, ὥστε καὶ τὰ τῶν εἰς τὴν ἐορτὴν ἰόντων ὑποζύγια εὐωχεῖσθαι. περὶ δὲ αὐτὸν τὸν ναὸν ἄλσος ἡμέρων δένδρων ἐφυτεύθη ὅσα ἐστὶ τρωκτὰ ὠραῖα. ὁ δὲ ναὸς ὡς μικρὸς μεγάλῳ τῷ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ εἴκασται, καὶ τὸ ξόανον ἔοικεν ὡς κυπαρίττινον χρυσῷ ὄντι τῷ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ. καὶ στήλη ἔστηκε παρὰ τὸν ναὸν γράμματα ἔχουσα·

ΙΕΡΟΣ Ο ΧΩΡΟΣ  
ΤΙΣ ΑΡΤΕΜΙΔΟΣ. ΤΟΝ ΕΧΟΝΤΑ ΚΑΙ ΚΑΡΠΟΥΜΕΝΟΝ  
ΤΗΝ ΜΕΝ ΔΕΚΑΤΗΝ ΚΑΤΑΘΥΕΙΝ ΕΚΑΣΤΟΥ ΕΤΟΥΣ.  
ΕΚ ΔΕ ΤΟΥ ΠΕΡΙΤΤΟΥ ΤΟΝ ΝΑΟΝ ΕΠΙΣΚΕΥΑΖΕΙΝ.

ἀμφοτέροις |be in καὶ κόγχαι· ἐν δὲ τῷ ἐν Σκιλλοῦντι χωρίῳ καὶ  
 θήραι πάντων |as/how many/great', εἷνα θηρία. ἐποίησε δὲ καὶ |altar  
 καὶ ναὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ἀργυρίου, καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν δὲ αἰὲ δεκατεύων τὰ  
 ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ ὠραία θυσίαν ἐποίει τῇ θεῷ, καὶ πάντες οἱ πολῖται καὶ  
 οἱ πρόσχωροι ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες μετείχον τῆς ἐορτῆς. παρείχε δὲ  
 ἡ θεὸς τοῖς |σκηνώ?: |barley meal us, οἶνον, τραγήματα, καὶ τῶν  
 θυομένων ἀ|σκηνώ?:|as |shepherd, is, καὶ τῶν |hunt δέ. καὶ  
 γὰρ θήραν ἐποιούντο εἰς τὴν ἐορτὴν οἳ τε Ξενοφῶντος παῖδες καὶ οἱ  
 τῶν ἄλλων πολιτῶν, οἱ δὲ βουλόμενοι καὶ ἄνδρες ξυνηθῆρων· καὶ  
 ἡλίσκετο τὰ μὲν ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἱεροῦ |χώρος?: place ; ὁρῶν?: withdraw, give  
 way to (+dat)  
 σύες καὶ δορκάδες καὶ |deer ἔστι δὲ ἡ χώρα ἣ ἐκ Λακεδαίμονος  
 εἰς Ὀλυμπίαν πορεύονται ὡς εἴκοσι |στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also masc) ; or  
 Διὸς ἱεροῦ. ἐν δ' ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ |place |noun) 200 meters ὄρη |tree  
 |full ἱκανὰ σύς καὶ αἶγας καὶ βοῦς τρέφειν καὶ ἵππους, ὥστε  
 καὶ τὰ τῶν εἰς τὴν ἐορτὴν ἰόντων |beast of burden ἔθαι. περὶ δὲ  
 αὐτὸν τὸν ναὸν |grove, |domes- |tree ἐφυτεύθη ὅσα ἐστὶ τρωκτὰ  
 ὠραία. ὁ δὲ ναὸς |place| μικρὸς μεγάλῳ τῷ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ εἴκασται, καὶ τὸ  
 ξόανον ἔοικεν ὡς |of cypress wood σῶ ὄντι τῷ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ. καὶ  
 |post, " ἵτηκε παρὰ τὸν ναὸν γράμματα ἔχουσα· ΙΕΡΟΣ Ο ΧΩΡΟΣ  
 |column  
 ΤΙΣ ΑΡΤΕΜΙΔΟΣ. ΤΟΝ ΕΧΟΝΤΑ ΚΑΙ ΚΑΡΠΟΥΜΕΝΟΝ  
 ΤΗΝ ΜΕΝ ΔΕΚΑΤΗΝ ΚΑΤΑΘΥΕΙΝ ΕΚΑΣΤΟΥ ΕΤΟΥΣ.  
 ΕΚ ΔΕ ΤΟΥ ΠΕΡΙΤΤΟΥ ΤΟΝ ΝΑΟΝ ΕΠΙΣΚΕΥΑΖΕΙΝ.

oracle. The plot, it so happened, had its own Selinus river flowing through it, just as at Ephesus the river Selinus flows past the temple of Artemis, and in both streams fish and mussels are to be found. On the estate at Scillus there is hunting and shooting of all the beasts of the chase that are.

Here with the sacred money he built an altar and a temple, and ever after, year by year, tithed the fruits of the land in their season and did sacrifice to the goddess, while all the citizens and neighbours, men and women, shared in the festival. The goddess herself provided for the banqueters meat and loaves and wine and sweetmeats, with portions of the victims sacrificed from the sacred pasture, as also of those which were slain in the chase; for Xenophon's own lads, with the lads of the other citizens, always made a hunting excursion against the festival day, in which any grown men who liked might join. The game was captured partly from the sacred district itself, partly from Pholoe, pigs and gazelles and stags. The place lies on the direct road from Lacedaemon to Olympia, about twenty furlongs from the temple of Zeus in Olympia, and within the sacred enclosure there is meadow-land and wood-covered hills, suited to the breeding of pigs and goats and cattle and horses, so that even the sumpter animals of the pilgrims passing to the feast fare sumptuously. The shrine is girdled by a grove of cultivated trees, yielding dessert fruits in their season. The temple itself is a facsimile on a small scale of the great temple at Ephesus, and the image of the goddess is like the golden statue at Ephesus, save only that it is made, not of gold, but of cypress wood. Beside the temple stands a column bearing this inscription:—  
 THE PLACE IS SACRED TO ARTEMIS. HE WHO HOLDS IT AND ENJOYS THE FRUITS OF IT IS BOUND TO SACRIFICE YEARLY A TITHE OF THE PRODUCE. AND FROM THE RESIDUE THEREOF TO KEEP IN REPAIR THE SHRINE. IF ANY MAN FAIL IN AUGHT OF



*vocabulary*

**ἄγε** lead, bring

**ἄγνουμι** break

**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone

**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself

**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor

**αὐθις** back, again, moreover ~after

**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also

**ἀφήκω**

**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive

**γέη** earth; a country ~geography; also

**γῆ**

**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await

~doctrine

**ἐντεῦθεν** thence

**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)

**ἔρωτάω** ask about something

**ἦκω** to have come

**ἔημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet

**κομίζω** take; attend to; also κομέω

**κωλύω** hinder, prevent

**ὄον** type of fruit

**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (πούς)

**πλοῖον** ship

**πόθεν** from where?

**πορεύω** carry

**πότερος** which, whichever of two

**προξενος** doing certain public duties

**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)

**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch

~skeptic

**τίη** strengthened form of τί

**τιμωρέω** take vengeance

**τοσοῦτος** so much

**φιλία** friendship

**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

**χώρα** place

**χωρίον** area; downwards

ΑΝ ΔΕ ΤΙΣ ΜΗ ΠΟΙΗΙ ΤΑΥΤΑ ΤΗΙ ΘΕΩΙ ΜΕΛΗΣΕΙ.

## 5.4

Ἐκ Κερασούντος δὲ κατὰ θάλατταν μὲν ἐκομίζοντο οἵπερ καὶ πρόσθεν, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι κατὰ γῆν ἐπορεύοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοῖς Μοσσυνοίκων ὀρίοις, πέμπουσιν εἰς αὐτοὺς Τιμησίθεον τὸν Τραπεζούντιον πρόξενον ὄντα τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων, ἐρωτῶντες πότερον ὡς διὰ φιλίας ἢ διὰ πολεμίας πορεύσονται τῆς χώρας. οἱ δὲ εἶπον ὅτι οὐ διήσοιεν· ἐπίστευον γὰρ τοῖς χωρίοις. ἐντεῦθεν λέγει ὁ Τιμησίθεος ὅτι πολέμοι εἰσιν αὐτοῖς οἱ ἐκ τοῦ ἐπέκεινα. καὶ ἐδόκει καλέσαι ἐκείνους, εἰ βούλονται ξυμμαχίαν ποιήσασθαι· καὶ πεμφθεὶς ὁ Τιμησίθεος ἦκεν ἄγων τοὺς ἄρχοντας. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο, συνήλθον οἱ τε τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων ἄρχοντες καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων· καὶ ἔλεξε Ξενοφῶν, ἡρμήνευε δὲ Τιμησίθεος· ὦ ἄνδρες Μοσσύνοικοι, ἡμεῖς βουλόμεθα διασωθῆναι πρὸς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πεζῇ· πλοῖα γὰρ οὐκ ἔχομεν· κωλύουσι δὲ οὗτοι ἡμᾶς οὓς ἀκούομεν ὑμῖν πολεμίους εἶναι. εἰ οὖν βούλεσθε, ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν ἡμᾶς λαβεῖν ξυμμάχους καὶ τιμωρήσασθαι εἴ τί ποτε ὑμᾶς οὗτοι ἠδίκησαν, καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ὑμῶν ὑπηκόους εἶναι τούτους. εἰ δὲ ἡμᾶς ἀφήσετε, σκέψασθε πόθεν αὐθις ἂν τοσαύτην δύναμιν λάβετε ξύμμαχον. πρὸς ταῦτα ἀπεκρίνατο ὁ ἄρχων τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων ὅτι καὶ βούλονται ταῦτα καὶ δέχονται τὴν ξυμμαχίαν. Ἄγετε δὴ, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, τί ἡμῶν

ΑΝ ΔΕ ΤΙΣ ΜΗ ΠΟΙΗΙ ΤΑΥΤΑ ΤΗΙ ΘΕΩΙ ΜΕΛΗΣΕΙ.

## 5.4

Ἐκ Κερασούντος δὲ κατὰ θάλατταν μὲν ἐκομίζοντο οἵπερ καὶ πρόσθεν, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι κατὰ **|earth; a country** ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοῖς Μοσσυνοίκων ὀρίοις, πέμπουσιν εἰς αὐτοὺς Τιμησίθεον τὸν Τραπεζούντιον **|doing certain τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων, ἐρωτῶντες public duties** **|which, διὰ φιλία?: friendship ; or, whichever** **|φίλος?: friend; beloved** κεύσονται τῆς χώρας. οἱ δὲ εἶπον ὅτι οὐ διήσοιεν· ἐπίστευον γὰρ τοῖς χωρίοις. ἐντεῦθεν λέγει ὁ Τιμησίθεος ὅτι πολέμοι εἰσιν αὐτοῖς οἱ ἐκ τοῦ ἐπέκεινα. καὶ ἐδόκει καλέσαι ἐκείνους, εἰ βούλωντο ξυμμαχίαν ποιήσασθαι· καὶ πεμφθεὶς ὁ Τιμησίθεος ἦκεν ἄγων τοὺς ἄρχοντας. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο, συνήλθον οἱ τε τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων ἄρχοντες καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων· καὶ ἔλεξε Ξενοφῶν, ἡρμήνευε δὲ Τιμησίθεος· **|type of fruit** Μοσσυνοῖκοι, ἡμεῖς βουλόμεθα διασωθῆναι πρὸς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πεζῆ· πλοῖα γὰρ οὐκ ἔχομεν· κωλύουσι δὲ οὗτοι ἡμᾶς οὓς ἀκούομεν ὑμῖν πολεμίους εἶναι. εἰ οὖν βούλεσθε, **|go forth**, ἴν ἡμᾶς λαβεῖν ξυμμαχούς καὶ τιμωρήσασθαι εἴ τί ποτε ὑμᾶς οὗτοι ἠδίκησαν, καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ὑμῶν ὑπηκόους εἶναι τούτους. εἰ δὲ ἡμᾶς ἀφήσετε, **|look, look at, watch** πόθεν αὐθις ἂν τοσαύτην δύναμιν λάβοιτε ξύμμαχον. πρὸς ταῦτα ἀπεκρίνατο ὁ ἄρχων τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων ὅτι καὶ βούλωντο ταῦτα καὶ δέχοντο τὴν ξυμμαχίαν. **|ἀγε?: lead, bring ; or ἀγω?: lead, bring ; or ἄγνουμι?: break**

THIS THE GODDESS HERSELF WILL LOOK TO IT THAT THE  
MATTER SHALL NOT SLEEP.

#### 5.4

From Cerasus they continued the march, the same portion of the troops being conveyed by sea as before, and the rest marching by land. When they had reached the frontiers of the Mossynoecians they sent to him Timesitheus the Trapezuntine, who was the proxenos of the Mossynoecians, to inquire whether they were to pass through their territory as friends or foes. They, trusting in their strongholds, replied that they would not give them passage. It was then that Timesitheus informed them that the Mossynoecians on the farther side of the country were hostile to these members of the tribe; and it was resolved to invite the former to make an alliance, if they wished it. So Timesitheus was sent, and came back with their chiefs. On their arrival there was a conference of the Mossynoecian chiefs and the generals of the Hellenes, and Xenophon made a speech which Timesitheus interpreted. He said: "Men of the Mossynoecians, our desire is to reach Hellas in safety; and since we have no vessels we must needs go by foot, but these people who, as we hear, are your enemies, prevent us. Will you take us for your allies? Now is your chance to exact vengeance for any wrong, which they at any time may have put upon you, and for the future they will be your subjects; but if you send us about our business, consider and ask yourselves from what quarter will you ever again obtain so strong a force to help you?" To this the chief of the Mossynoecians made answer:— that the proposal was in accordance with their wishes and they welcomed the alliance. "Good," said Xenophon, "but to what use do you propose

*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also *ἄκρα*,  
*ἄκρη*  
**ἀποπλέω** sail away  
**βοείη** shield; leather, bovine; also  
*βόειος*  
**βοή** din, a shout  
**βοῦς βοός** (m/f) cow, ox; shield  
*~bovine*  
**δεξιὰ** right-hand  
**δεξιός** right-hand *~dextrous*  
**δεῦρο** here, come here!  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**εἰσβάλλω** throw into  
**ἑκατόν** hundred  
**ἐνδύω** go into, put on  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξάρχω** take the lead in  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase *~sequel*  
**εὐθύς** straight; course *~justice*; also  
*ἰθύς*  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn *~Eocene*  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**κεφαλή** head; height *~gable*  
**λευκός** white *~light*

**ναός νεώς** (f/m) temple, shrine; also  
*νηός*  
**ξύλον** piece of wood *~xylophone*  
**ὄδος** (f) threshold, road, journey  
*~odometer*; also *οὐδός*  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὄπισθεν** behind, hereafter; also *ὄπιθεν*  
**ὄπλομαι** get ready, prepare  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**πάχος** (n, 3) thickness  
**πέταλον** leaf  
**πιστός** faithful (*πείθω*)  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρό** before, forward *~prolog*  
**τάξις -εως** (f) arrangement  
**τρεις** three *~three*  
**τριακόσιοι** three hundred  
**ὑπέιπον** say as preface, premise  
**ὑστεραῖος** the next; later  
**χορός** dancing, dancing place  
*~terpsichorean*  
**χώρα** place  
**χωρίον** area; downwards  
**ὥδε** thus

δεισέσθε χρήσασθαι, ἂν ξύμμαχοι ὑμῶν γενώμεθα, καὶ ὑμεῖς τί οἰοίτε ἔσεσθε ἡμῖν ξυμπράξει περὶ τῆς διόδου; οἱ δὲ εἶπον ὅτι ἱκανοὶ ἐσμεν εἰς τὴν χώραν εἰσβάλλειν ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ θάτερα τὴν τῶν ὑμῖν τε καὶ ἡμῖν πολεμίων, καὶ δεῦρο ὑμῖν πέμψαι ναῦς τε καὶ ἄνδρας οἵτινες ὑμῖν ξυμμαχοῦνταί τε καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἡγήσονται.

Ἐπὶ τούτοις πιστὰ δόντες καὶ λαβόντες ᾤχοντο. καὶ ἦγον τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἄγοντες τριακόσια πλοῖα μονόξυλα καὶ ἐν ἐκάστῳ τρεῖς ἄνδρας, ὧν οἱ μὲν δύο ἐκβάντες εἰς τάξιω ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα, ὁ δὲ εἰς ἔμενε. καὶ οἱ μὲν λαβόντες τὰ πλοῖα ἀπέπλευσαν, οἱ δὲ μένοντες ἐξετάξαντο ὧδε. ἔστησαν ὥσπερ ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν μάλιστα οἶον χοροὶ ἀντιστοιχοῦντες ἀλλήλοις, ἔχοντες γέρρα πάντες λευκῶν βοῶν δασέα, ἠκασμένα κιττοῦ πετάλω, ἐν δὲ τῇ δεξιᾷ παλτὸν ὡς ἔξπηχυν, ἔμπροσθεν μὲν λόγχην ἔχον, ὀπισθεν δὲ τοῦ ξύλου σφαιροειδές. χιτωνίσκους δὲ ἐνεδεδύκεσαν ὑπὲρ γονάτων, πάχος ὡς λινοῦ στρωματοδέσμου, ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ δὲ κράνη σκύτινα οἰάπερ τὰ Παφλαγονικά, κρωβύλον ἔχοντα κατὰ μέσον, ἐγγύτατα τιαροειδῆ· εἶχον δὲ καὶ σαγάρεις σιδηρᾶς. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξήρχε μὲν αὐτῶν εἰς, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἅπαντες ἐπορεύοντο ἄδοντες ἐν ῥυθμῷ, καὶ διελθόντες διὰ τῶν τάξεων καὶ διὰ τῶν ὄπλων τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐπορεύοντο εὐθὺς πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ χωρίον ὃ ἐδόκει ἐπιμαχώτατον εἶναι. ᾤκειτο δὲ τοῦτο πρὸ τῆς πόλεως τῆς Μητροπόλεως καλουμένης αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐχούσης τὸ ἀκρότατον τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων. καὶ περὶ τούτου

δείσεσθε χρήσασθαι, ἂν ξύμμαχοι ὑμῶν γενώμεθα, καὶ ὑμεῖς τί οἰοῖτε ἔσεσθε ἡμῖν ξυμπρᾶξαι περὶ τῆς διόδου; οἱ δὲ εἶπον ὅτι ἱκανοὶ ἔσμεν εἰς τὴν χώραν |**throw into** ἕκ τοῦ ἐπὶ θάτερα τὴν τῶν ὑμῖν τε καὶ ἡμῖν πολεμίων, καὶ δεῦρο ὑμῖν πέμψαι ναῦς τε καὶ ἄνδρας οἵτινες ὑμῖν ξυμμαχοῦνται τε καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἡγήσονται.

Ἐπὶ τούτοις πιστὰ δόντες καὶ λαβόντες ᾤχοντο. καὶ ἦκον τῇ |**the next; later** ἑς τριακόσια πλοῖα μονόξυλα καὶ ἐν ἐκάστῳ τρεῖς ἄνδρας, ὧν οἱ μὲν δύο ἐκβάντες εἰς τάξιν ἔθηντο τὰ ὄπλα, οἱ δὲ εἰς ἔμενε. καὶ οἱ μὲν λαβόντες τὰ πλοῖα ἀπέπλευσαν, οἱ δὲ μένοντες ἐξετάξαντο ὧδε. ἔστησαν ὥσπερ ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν μάλιστα οἶον χοροὶ ἀντιστοιχοῦντες ἀλλήλοις, ἔχοντες γέρρα πάντες λευκῶν βοῶν δασέα, ἡκασμένα κιττοῦ |**leaf** . ἐν δὲ τῇ δεξιᾷ? |**brandished,** ὡς ἔξπηχυν, ἔμπροσθεν μὲν λόγχην ἔχον, ὀπισθεν **right-** |**hurled** σφαιροειδές. χιτωνίσκους δὲ ἐνεδεδύκεσαν ὑπὲρ γονάτων **hand** ἢ ξύλου ; or δεξιᾷ? |**thickness** λινοῦ στραματοδέσμου, ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ δὲ κράνη σκῦτινῶν **right-** |**hand** ἢ ἄπερ τὰ Παφλαγονικά, κρωβύλον ἔχοντα κατὰ μέσον, ἐγγύτατα τιαιοειδῆ· εἶχον δὲ καὶ σαγάρεις σιδηρᾶς. ἐντεῦθεν |**ἔξάρομαι?: take the lead in ; or** ἄλλοι ἅπαντες ἐπορεύοντο ἄδοντες ἐν ῥυθμῷ, καὶ διελθόντες διὰ τῶν τάξεων καὶ διὰ τῶν ὄπλων τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐπορεύοντο εὐθὺς πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ χωρίον ὃ ἐδόκει ἐπιμαχάτατον εἶναι. ὠκέϊτο δὲ τοῦτο πρὸ τῆς πόλεως τῆς Μητροπόλεως καλουμένης αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐχούσης τὸ ἀκρότατον τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων. καὶ περὶ τούτου

to put us, if we become your allies? And what will you in turn be able to do to assist our passage?" They replied: "We can make an incursion into this country hostile to yourselves and us, from the opposite side, and also send you ships and men to this place, who will aid you in fighting and conduct you on the road."

On this understanding, they exchanged pledges and were gone. The next day they returned, bringing three hundred canoes, each hollowed out of a single trunk. There were three men in each, two of whom disembarked and fell into rank, whilst the third remained. Then the one set took the boats and sailed back again, whilst the other two-thirds who remained marshalled themselves in the following way. They stood in rows of about a hundred each, like the rows of dancers in a chorus, standing vis a vis to one another, and all bearing wicker shields, made of white oxhide, shaggy, and shaped like an ivy leaf; in the right hand they brandished a javelin about six cubits long, with a lance in front, and rounded like a ball at the butt end of the shaft.

Their bodies were clad in short frocks, scarcely reaching to the knees and in texture closely resembling that of a linen bedclothes' bag; on their heads they wore leathern helmets just like the Paphlagonian helmet, with a tuft of hair in the middle, as like a tiara in shape as possible. They carried moreover iron battle-axes. Then one of them gave, as it were, the key-note and started, while the rest, taking up the strain and the step, followed singing and marking time. Passing through the various corps and heavy armed battalions of the Hellenes, they marched straight against the enemy, to what appeared the most assailable of his fortresses. It was situated in front of the city, or mother city, as it is called, which latter contains the high citadel of the Mossynoecians. This citadel was the real bone of contention,



*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*  
**ἀμελέω** disregard (*μέλω*)  
**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve  
**ἀποκτείνω** kill  
**ἀποτρέπω** divert from  
**αὔθις** back, again, moreover ~after  
**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**δίκη** justice  
**διώκω** chase  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**εἶτα** then, therefore, next  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also *εἴνεκα*, *ἐνεκεν*  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (*ῶ*) display, exhibit  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ἔχθω** (mp) be hated  
**ἡμέτερος** our, my

**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**κακώω** harm, disfigure  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake  
**κεφαλή** head; height ~gable  
**μείων** less, smaller  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**νεκρός** corpse ~necrotic  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**οὔπω** no longer  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τέως** meanwhile, for a while  
**τήγω** melt  
**τρέπω** divert ~trophy  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also *καταχέω*  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

ὁ πόλεμος ἦν· οἱ γὰρ αἰεὶ τοῦτ' ἔχοντες ἐδόκουν ἐγκρατεῖς εἶναι καὶ πάντων Μοσσυνοίκων, καὶ ἔφασαν τούτους οὐ δικαίως ἔχειν τοῦτο, ἀλλὰ κοινὸν ὃν καταλαβόντας πλεονεκτεῖν. εἶποντο δ' αὐτοῖς καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων τινές, οὐ ταχθέντες ὑπὸ τῶν στρατηγῶν, ἀλλὰ ἀρπαγῆς ἕνεκεν. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι προσιόντων τέως μὲν ἡσύχαζον· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο τοῦ χωρίου, ἐκδραμόντες τρέπονται αὐτούς, καὶ ἀπέκτειναν συχνούς τῶν βαρβάρων καὶ τῶν ξυναβάντων Ἑλλήνων τινάς, καὶ ἐδίωκον μέχρι οὗ εἶδον τοὺς Ἑλληνας βοηθοῦντας· εἶτα δὲ ἀποτραπόμενοι ὄχοντο, καὶ ἀποτεμόντες τὰς κεφαλὰς τῶν νεκρῶν ἐπεδείκνυσαν τοῖς Ἑλλησι καὶ τοῖς ἑαυτῶν πολεμίους, καὶ ἅμα ἐχόρευον νόμῳ τινὶ ἄδοντες. οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες μάλα ἤχθοντο ὅτι τοὺς τε πολεμίους ἐπεποιήκεσαν θραυστέρους καὶ ὅτι οἱ ἐξεληθόντες Ἑλληνες σὺν αὐτοῖς ἐπεφεύγεσαν μάλα ὄντες συχνοί· ὁ οὐπω πρόσθεν ἐπεποιήκεσαν ἐν τῇ στρατείᾳ. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ξυγκαλέσας τοὺς Ἑλληνας εἶπεν· Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μηδὲν ἀθυμήσητε ἕνεκα τῶν γεγενημένων· ἴστε γὰρ ὅτι καὶ ἀγαθὸν οὐ μείον τοῦ κακοῦ γεγένηται. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἐπίστασθε ὅτι οἱ μέλλοντες ἡμῖν ἡγείσθαι τῷ ὄντι πολέμοι εἰσιν οἷσπερ καὶ ἡμᾶς ἀνάγκη· ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων οἱ ἀμελήσαντες τῆς ξὺν ἡμῖν τάξεως καὶ ἱκανοὶ ἡγησάμενοι εἶναι ξὺν τοῖς βαρβάροις ταυτὰ πράττειν ἄπερ σὺν ἡμῖν δίκην δεδώκασιν· ὥστε ἀθῆτις ἦττον τῆς ἡμετέρας τάξεως ἀπολείβονται. ἀλλ' ὑμᾶς δεῖ παρασκευάζεσθαι ὅπως καὶ τοῖς φίλοις οὕσι τῶν βαρβάρων

ό πόλεμος ήν· οί γάρ αεί τοῦτ' ἔχοντες ἐδόκουν ἐγκρατεῖς εἶναι  
 καί πάντων Μοσσυνοίκων, καί ἔφασαν τούτους οὐ δικαίως ἔχειν  
 τοῦτο, ἀλλά κοινόν ὄν καταλαβόντας πλεονεκτεῖν. εἶποντο δ' αὐτοῖς  
 καί τῶν Ἑλλήνων τινές, οὐ ταχθέντες ὑπό τῶν στρατηγῶν, ἀλλά  
 ἀρπαγῆς ἔνεκον. οί δέ πολέμοι προσιόντων **meanwhile, 'χαζον' ἐπεὶ  
for a while**  
 δ' ἐγγύς ἐγένοντο τοῦ χωρίου, ἐκδραμόντες τρέπονται αὐτούς, καί  
 ἀπέκτειναν συχοὺς τῶν βαρβάρων καί τῶν ξυναβάντων Ἑλλήνων  
 τινάς, καί ἐδίωκον μέχρι οὗ εἶδον τοὺς Ἑλληνας βοηθοῦντας· εἶτα δέ  
**divert from** ὤχοντο, καί **cut off, sever** ἄς κεφαλὰς τῶν νεκρῶν  
 ἐπεδείκνυσαν τοῖς Ἑλλησι καί τοῖς ἑαυτῶν πολεμίοις, καί ἅμα  
 ἐχόρευον νόμῳ τιλῆ ἄδοντες. οί δέ Ἑλληνες μάλα **ἄχθομαι?: be burdened  
with ; or ἔχθω?: (mp)  
be hated**  
 τοὺς τε πολεμίους ἐπεποιήκεσαν θραυστέρους καί ὅτι  
 Ἑλληνες σὺν αὐτοῖς ἐπεφεύγεσαν μάλα ὄντες συχοί· ὁ οὐπω πρόσθεν  
 ἐπεποιήκεσαν ἐν τῇ στρατείᾳ. Ξενοφῶν δέ ξυγκαλέσας τοὺς Ἑλληνας  
 εἶπεν· Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μηδὲν ἀθυμήσητε ἔνεκα τῶν γεγενημένων·  
 ἵστε γάρ ὅτι καί ἀγαθόν οὐ **less, ὕ κακοῦ γεγένηται. πρῶτον  
smaller**  
 μὲν γάρ **ἀπιστέω?: disbelieve ; or ἐφίστήμι?: stand ἵντι πολέμοι  
ready, take a stand ; or ἐπίσταμαι?: know**  
 εἰσιν οἷσπερ καί ἡμᾶς ἀνάγκη· ἔπειτα δέ καί τῶν Ἑλλήνων οί  
**disregard** τῆς ξὺν ἡμῖν τάξεως καί ἱκανοὶ ἡγησάμενοι εἶναι ξὺν  
 τοῖς βαρβάροις **identical**, ἀπτεῖν ἅπερ σὺν ἡμῖν δίκην δεδώκασιν·  
 ὥστε αὐθις ἦττον τῆς ἡμετέρας τάξεως ἀπολείφονται. ἀλλ' ὑμᾶς  
 δεῖ παρασκευάζεσθαι ὅπως καί τοῖς φίλοις οὖσι τῶν βαρβάρων

the occupants at any time being acknowledged as the masters of all the other Mossynoecians. The present holders (so it was explained) had no right to its possession; for the sake of self-aggrandisement they had seized what was really common property.

Some of the Hellenes followed the attacking party, not under the orders of the generals, but for the sake of plunder. As they advanced, the enemy for a while kept quiet; but as they got near the place, they made a sortie and routed them, killing several of the barbarians as well as some of the Hellenes who had gone up with them; and so pursued them until they saw the Hellenes advancing to the rescue. Then they turned round and made off, first cutting off the heads of the dead men and flaunting them in the face of the Hellenes and of their own private foes, dancing the while and singing in a measured strain. But the Hellenes were much vexed to think that their foes had only been rendered bolder, while the Hellenes who had formed part of the expedition had turned tail and fled, in spite of their numbers; a thing which had not happened previously during the whole expedition. So Xenophon called a meeting of the Hellenes and spoke as follows: "Soldiers, do not in any wise be cast down by what has happened, be sure that good no less than evil will be the result; for to begin with, you now know certainly that those who are going to guide us are in very deed hostile to those with whom necessity drives us to quarrel; and, in the next place, some of our own body, these Hellenes who have made so light of orderly array and conj oint action with ourselves, as though they must needs achieve in the company of barbarians all they could with ourselves, have paid the penalty and been taught a lesson, so that another time they will be

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρον** crest, extremity  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also ἄκρα,  
 ἄκρη  
**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards,  
 out to sea  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**διώκω** chase  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεί  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
 ἰθύς  
**εὐώνυμος** spindle tree  
**ἥμερος** domesticated  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**κρείσσω** more powerful  
**λείπω** leave something; depart  
 ~eclipse; also λιπάω  
**λίθος** (m/f) stone ~monolith; also

λιθάς  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**μακρός** long, tall  
**μεταξύ** between  
**μικρός** small; also **σμικρός**  
**ὁμοῖος** like ~homoerotic; also ὁμοιος  
**ὁμοῦ** together  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also  
 πειρητίζω  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πορεύω** carry  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**στόμα** -τος (n, 3) mouth ~stomach  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τοξότης** (m, 1) archer  
**τρέπω** divert ~trophy  
**τρέφω** nurture; solidify ~atrophy  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπολείπω** leave (food, person)  
**ὑστεραῖος** the next; later  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard  
 ~phylactery  
**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
 ~heir  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

δόξητε κρείττους αὐτῶν εἶναι καὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις δηλώσητε ὅτι οὐχ ὁμοίοις ἀνδράσι μαχοῦνται νῦν τε καὶ ὅτε τοῖς ἀτάκτοις ἐμάχοντο.

Ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν οὕτως ἔμειναν· τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία θύσαντες ἐπεὶ ἐκαλλιερήσαντο, ἀριστήσαντες, ὀρθίους τοὺς λόχους ποιησάμενοι, καὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον κατὰ ταυτὰ ταξάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο τοὺς τοξότας μεταξὺ τῶν λόχων ὀρθίων ἔχοντες, ὑπολειπομένου δὲ μικρὸν τοῦ στόματος τῶν ὀπλιτῶν. ἦσαν γὰρ τῶν πολεμίων οἱ εὗζωνοι κατατρέχοντες τοῖς λίθοις ἔβαλλον. τούτους ἀνέστελλον οἱ τοξόται καὶ πελτασταί. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι βάδην ἐπορεύοντο πρῶτον μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ χωρίον ἀφ' οὗ τῇ προτεραία οἱ βάρβαροι ἐτρέφθησαν καὶ οἱ ξὺν αὐτοῖς· ἐνταῦθα γὰρ οἱ πολέμοι ἦσαν ἀντιτεταγμένοι. τοὺς μὲν οὖν πελταστὰς ἐδέξαντο οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ἐμάχοντο, ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐγγὺς ἦσαν οἱ ὀπλίται, ἐτρέποντο. καὶ οἱ μὲν πελτασταὶ εὐθὺς εἶποντο διώκοντες ἄνω πρὸς τὴν πόλιν, οἱ δὲ ὀπλίται ἐν τάξει εἶποντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄνω ἦσαν πρὸς ταῖς Μητροπόλεως οἰκίαις, ἐνταῦθα οἱ πολέμοι ὁμοῦ δὴ πάντες γενόμενοι ἐμάχοντο καὶ ἐξηκόντιζον τοῖς παλτοῖς, καὶ ἄλλα δόρατα ἔχοντες παχέα μακρά, ὅσα ἀνὴρ ἂν φέροι μόλις, τούτοις ἐπειρῶντο ἀμύνασθαι ἐκ χειρός. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐχ ὑφίεντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἀλλὰ ὁμόσε ἐχώρουν, ἔφευγον οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ἐντεῦθεν, λιπόντες ἅπαντες τὸ χωρίον. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς αὐτῶν ὁ ἐν τῷ μύσσηνι τῷ ἐπ' ἄκρου ὠκοδομημένῳ, ὃν τρέφουσι πάντες κοινῇ αὐτοῦ μένοντα καὶ φυλάττουσιν, οὐκ

δόξητε κρείττους αὐτῶν εἶναι καὶ τοῖς πολεμίους δηλώσητε ὅτι οὐχ ὁμοίοις ἀνδράσι μαχοῦνται νῦν τε καὶ ὅτε τοῖς ἀτάκτοις ἐμάχοντο.

Ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν οὕτως ἔμειναν· τῇ δὲ |the next; later  
 θύσαντες ἐπεὶ ἐκαλλιερήσαντο, ἀριστήσαντες, |shrill τοὺς |ambush, band,  
 ποιησάμενοι, καὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους ἐπὶ τὸ |spindle tree τὰ |childbirth  
 ταξάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο τοὺς |archer μεταξὺ τῶν |am- |shrill  
 ἔχοντες· |leave (food, person) ἰὼν τοῦ στόματος τῶν |band. ᾧν. ἦσαν  
 γὰρ τῶν πολεμίων οἱ |well-girded κατατρέχοντες τοῖς |birth. ᾧν. ἦσαν  
 τούτους ἀνέστελλον οἱ |archer καὶ |light οἱ δ' ἄλλοι |step by step  
 ἐπορεύοντο πρῶτον μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ χωρίον ἀφ' οὗ τῇ προτεραιᾷ οἱ  
 βάρβαροι ἐτρέφθησαν καὶ οἱ ξὺν αὐτοῖς· ἐνταῦθα γὰρ οἱ πολέμοι  
 ἦσαν ἀντιτεταγμένοι. τοὺς μὲν οὖν |light ἐδέξαντο οἱ βάρβαροι  
 καὶ ἐμάχοντο, |after; ᾧν. ἔγγυς ἦσαν οἱ ὀπλίται, ἐτρέποντο. καὶ οἱ  
 μὲν |light |because εὐθὺς εἶποντο διώκοντες |accomplish, pass, waste; δὲ  
 ὀπλίται ἐν τάξει εἶποντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ |upwards, out to sea  
 ἀποπύλαι, ἐνταῦθα οἱ πολέμοι ὁμοῦ δὴ πάντες γενόμενοι ἐμάχοντο  
 καὶ ἐξηκόντιζον τοῖς |brandished, ἄλλα δόρατα ἔχοντες παχέα  
 μακρά, ὅσα ἀνὴρ ἂν φέροι μόλις, τούτοις ἐπειρῶντο ἀμύνασθαι ἐκ  
 χειρός. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐχ ὑφίεντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἀλλὰ |to the same spot  
 ἔφηνον οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ἐντεῦθεν, λιπόντες ἅπαντες τὸ χωρίον. ὁ  
 δὲ βασιλεὺς αὐτῶν ὁ ἐν τῷ μύσσηνι τῷ ἐπ' |ἄκρον?; extremity; or ἄκρος?; at  
 ὄν τρέφουσι πάντες κοινῇ αὐτοῦ μένοντα καὶ φυλάττουσιν, οὐκ

less prone to leave our ranks. But you must be prepared to show these friendly barbarians that you are of a better sort, and prove to the enemy that battle with the undisciplined is one thing, but with men like yourselves another.”

Accordingly they halted, as they were, that day. Next day they sacrificed and finding the victims favourable, they breakfasted, formed the companies into columns, and with their barbarians arranged in similar order on their left, began their march. Between the companies were the archers only slightly retired behind the front of the heavy infantry, on account of the enemy's active light troops, who ran down and kept up volleys of stones. These were held in check by the archers and peltasts; and steadily step by step the mass marched on, first to the position from which the barbarians and those with them had been driven two days back, and where the enemy were now drawn up to meet them. Thus it came to pass that the barbarians first grappled with the peltasts and maintained the battle until the heavy infantry were close, when they turned and fled. The peltasts followed without delay, and pursued them right up to their city, while the heavy troops in unbroken order followed. As soon as they were up at the houses of the capital, there and then the enemy, collecting all together in one strong body, fought valiantly, and hurled their javelins, or else clenched their long stout spears, almost too heavy for a man to wield, and did their best to ward off the attack at close quarters.

But when the Hellenes, instead of giving way, kept massing together more thickly, the barbarians fled from this place also, and in a body deserted the fortress. Their king, who sat in his wooden tower or mossyn, built on the citadel (there he sits and there they maintain him, all at the common cost, and guard him narrowly), refused to come forth, as did also those



*vocabulary*

**ἄκρατος** pure, unmixed ~crater  
**ἀπαλός** soft, delicate  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain  
**ἄρτος** bread, loaf  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**δελφίς** -νος (m) dolphin  
**διαρπάζω** make prey of  
**ἐκών** willingly  
**ἔλαιον** oil, olive oil ~olive  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ῶ) display, exhibit  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**ἴσος** equal; also ἔσῃ  
**ἰσόω** liken to  
**κατακαίω** burn down  
**κοῖλος** hollow ~hollow  
**λείπω** leave something; depart  
 ~eclipse; also λιπάω  
**λευκός** white ~light  
**μείων** less, smaller  
**μῆκος** (n, 3) length, stature  
**νέομαι** go; come home ~nostalgia  
**νέος** young; neuter: recently ~neon  
**νέω** spin; swim ~neuro; also νήχω  
**ὀγδοήκοντα** eighty  
**οἶνος** wine ~wine

**ὀπόσος** as/how many/great  
**ὀπτάω** roast, bake  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὀδός  
**πλατύς** -είας extensive, wide  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πλέος** full; also πλεῖος, πλέως  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρόσω** forward, in the future; also  
 πόρρω, πρόσωθεν  
**σίτος** (m/n) grain, bread, food  
 ~parasite  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
 masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters; also σταδίη  
**τεῦχος** (n, 3) tool, arms, gear  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὕψηλός** high  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**χώρα** place  
**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
 ~heir  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

ἤθελεν ἐξελθεῖν, οὐδὲ ὁ ἐν τῷ πρότερον αἰρεθέντι χωρίῳ, ἀλλ' αὐτοῦ σὺν τοῖς μοσσύνοις κατεκαύθησαν. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες διαρπάζοντες τὰ χωρία ἠύρισκον θησαυροὺς ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις ἄρτων νενημένων περυσινῶν, ὡς ἔφασαν οἱ Μοσσύνοικοι, τὸν δὲ νέον σίτον ξὺν τῇ καλάμῃ ἀποκεείμενον ἦσαν δὲ ζειαὶ αἱ πλείστα. καὶ δελφίνων τεμάχη ἐν ἀμφορεῦσιν ἠύρισκετο τεταριχευμένα καὶ στέαρ ἐν τεύχεσι τῶν δελφίνων, ᾧ ἐχρῶντο οἱ Μοσσύνοικοι καθάπερ οἱ Ἕλληνες τῷ ἐλαίῳ· κάρνα δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀνώγειων ἦν πολλὰ τὰ πλατέα οὐκ ἔχοντα διαφυγὴν οὐδεμίαν. τούτων καὶ πλείστῳ σίτῳ ἐχρῶντο ἔψοντες καὶ ἄρτους ὀπτῶντες. οἶνος δὲ ἠύρισκετο ὡς ἄκρατος μὲν ὄξυς ἐφαίνετο εἶναι ὑπὸ τῆς αὐστηρότητος, κερασθεῖς δὲ εὐώδης τε καὶ ἡδύς.

Οἱ μὲν δὴ Ἕλληνες ἀριστήσαντες ἐνταῦθα ἐπορεύοντο εἰς τὸ πρόσω, παραδόντες τὸ χωρίον τοῖς ξυμμαχήσασι τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων. ὅποσα δὲ καὶ ἄλλα παρήσαν χωρία τῶν ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις ὄντων, τὰ εὐπροσοδάτα οἱ μὲν ἔλειπον, οἱ δὲ ἐκόντες προσεχώρουν. τὰ δὲ πλείστα τοιάδε ἦν τῶν χωρίων. ἀπείχον αἱ πόλεις ἀπ' ἀλλήλων στάδια ὀγδοήκοντα, αἱ δὲ πλέον αἱ δὲ μείον· ἀναβοώντων δὲ ἀλλήλων ξυνήκουον εἰς τὴν ἑτέραν ἐκ τῆς ἑτέρας πόλεως· οὕτως ὑψηλή τε καὶ κοίλη ἢ χώρα ἦν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐν τοῖς φίλοις ἦσαν, ἐπεδείκνυσαν αὐτοῖς παιδας τῶν εὐδαμόνων σιτευτούς, τεθραμμένους καρύοις ἐφθοῖς, ἀπαλοὺς καὶ λευκοὺς σφόδρα καὶ οὐ πολλοῦ δέοντας ἴσους τὸ μῆκος καὶ τὸ πλάτος

ἤθελεν ἐξελεθεῖν, οὐδὲ ὁ ἐν τῷ πρότερον αἰρεθέντι χωρίῳ, ἀλλ' αὐτοῦ  
 σὺν τοῖς μοσσύνοισι |burn down οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες |make prey of  
 τὰ χωρία ἠῦρισκον θησαυροὺς ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις ἄρτων νενημένων  
 περυσινῶν, ὡς ἔφασαν οἱ Μοσσύνοικοι, τὸν δὲ νέον σῖτον ξὺν τῇ  
 |straw, ἵποκείμενον ἦσαν δὲ |type of grain *u.* καὶ |dolphin *τεμάχη*  
 |stubble  
 ἐν ἀμφορεῦσιν ἠῦρίσκετο τεταριχευμένα καὶ |tallow ἐν τεύχεσι τῶν  
 |dolphin ὧ ἐχρῶντο οἱ Μοσσύνοικοι καθάπερ οἱ Ἕλληνες τῷ |oil  
 κάρυα δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀνώγειων ἦν πολλὰ τὰ |extensive, wide *τα* διαφυγὴν  
 οὐδεμίαν. τούτων καὶ πλείστῳ σίτῳ ἐχρῶντο |boil, be boiling *γ* οὖς  
 |roast, bake *ζῖνος* δὲ ἠῦρίσκετο ὡς |pure μὲν ὄξυς ἐφαίνετο εἶναι  
 ὑπὸ τῆς αὐστηρότητος, κερασθεῖς δὲ |fragrant : καὶ ἡδύς.

Οἱ μὲν δὲ Ἕλληνες ἀριστήσαντες ἐνταῦθα ἐπορεύοντο εἰς τὸ  
 |forward, in *ιδόντες* τὸ χωρίον τοῖς *ξυμμαχήσασσι* τῶν *Μοσσυνοίκων*.  
 |the future  
 |as/how many/great *ταρῆσαν* χωρία τῶν ξὺν τοῖς *πολεμίοις ὄντων*,  
 τὰ εὐπροσοδώτατα οἱ μὲν ἔλειπον, οἱ δὲ ἐκόντες *προσεχώρουν*.  
 τὰ δὲ πλείστα τοιαῦτα ἦν τῶν *χωρίων*. ἀπέιχον αἱ πόλεις ἀπ'

ἀλλήλων |στάδιον *eighty* αἱ δὲ πλεόν αἱ δὲ |less, smaller  
 200  
 δὲ ἀλλήλ *μήκουον* εἰς τὴν ἑτέραν ἐκ τῆς ἑτέρας πόλεως·  
 (pl also  
 οὕτως ὑπερῆσαν *τε* καὶ *κοίλη* ἡ *χώρα* ἦν. ἐπεὶ δὲ *πορευόμενοι*  
 ; or  
 ἐν τοῖς *φάσμασι* ἐπέδεικνυσαν αὐτοῖς *παῖδας* τῶν |blessed with a  
 (adj) |good genius  
 σιτευτούς *καρμυμένους* *καρῦοις* ἐφθοῖς, |soft, *καὶ* *λευκοῦς*  
 |up- *καρμυμένους* *καρῦοις* ἐφθοῖς, |delicate  
 σφόδρα *καρμυμένους* *καρῦοις* ἐφθοῖς, |length, *καὶ* τὸ *πλάτος*  
 |right, *καρμυμένους* *καρῦοις* ἐφθοῖς, |stature  
 firm;  
 (pl  
 noun)  
 200  
 meters

in the fortress first taken, and so were burnt to a cinder where they were, their mossyns, themselves, and all. The Hellenes, pillaging and ransacking these places, discovered in the different houses treasures and magazines of loaves, pile upon pile, "the ancestral stores," as the Mossynoecians told them; but the new corn was laid up apart with the straw-stalk and ear together, and this was for the most part spelt. Slices of dolphin were another discovery, in narrow-necked jars, all properly salted and pickled; and there was blubber of dolphin in vessels, which the Mossynoecians used precisely as the Hellenes use oil. Then there were large stores of nuts on the upper floor, the broad kind without a division. This was also a chief article of food with them—boiled nuts and baked loaves. Wine was also discovered. This, from its rough, dry quality, tasted sharp when drunk pure, but mixed with water was sweet and fragrant.

The Hellenes breakfasted and then started forward on their march, having first delivered the stronghold to their allies among the Mossynoecians. As for the other strongholds belonging to tribes allied with their foes, which they passed en route, the most accessible were either deserted by their inhabitants or gave in their adhesion voluntarily. The following description will apply to the majority of them: the cities were on an average ten miles apart, some more, some less; but so elevated is the country and intersected by such deep clefts that if they chose to shout across to one another, their cries would be heard from one city to another. When, in the course of their march, they came upon a friendly population, these would entertain them with exhibitions of fatted children belonging to the wealthy classes, fed up on boiled chestnuts until they were as white as white can be, of skin plump and delicate, and very nearly as broad as they were long, with their backs variegated and their breasts tattooed with patterns of all sorts of

*vocabulary*

**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ῶ) show, point out;  
 (mid) declare  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βίος** life; also βιοτή  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**γελάω** laugh, smile, laugh at  
**γνώμη** sign, mind, will, decision  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**διαλέγω** go through, debate  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ῶ) display, exhibit  
**ἐπιμένω** wait, stay  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ζητέω** seek  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**λευκός** white ~light  
**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis  
**νομεύς** (m) shepherd, herder

**νώτον** back (body part)  
**ξένιος** of hospitality  
**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus  
**ὁμοίος** like ~homoerotic; also ὅμοιος  
**ὅπου** where  
**ὄχλος** mob, crowd  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**ποικίλος** ornamented  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also  
 πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**πορεύω** carry  
**προσβάλλω** hit (+acc+dat); mp: heed  
**σιδήρεος** of iron  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στρατιά** army  
**τελέω** fulfill; pf pass: be feasible  
**τέλος** -υς (n, 3) end; military post  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**φιλία** friendship  
**χρήζω** need  
**χώρα** place  
**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
 ~heir  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

εἶναι, ποικίλους δὲ τὰ νῶτα καὶ τὰ ἔμπροσθεν πάντα, ἐστιγμένους ἀνθέμια. ἐζήτουν δὲ καὶ ταῖς ἐταίραις ὡς ἦγον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐμφανῶς ξυγγίγνεσθαι· νόμος γὰρ ἦν οὗτός σφισι. λευκοὶ δὲ πάντες οἱ ἄνδρες καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες. τούτους ἔλεγον οἱ στρατευσάμενοι βαρβαρωτάτους διελθεῖν καὶ πλείστον τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν νόμων κεχωρισμένους. ἔν τε γὰρ ὄχλῳ ὄντες ἐποίουν ἅπερ ἂν ἄνθρωποι ἐν ἐρημίᾳ ποιήσειαν, μόνου τε ὄντες ὅμοια ἔπραττον ἅπερ ἂν μετ' ἄλλων ὄντες, διελέγοντό τε αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐγέλων ἐφ' ἑαυτοῖς καὶ ὠρχοῦντο ἐφιστάμενοι ὅπου τύχοιεν, ὥσπερ ἄλλοις ἐπιδεικνύμενοι.

## 5.5

Διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας οἱ Ἕλληνες, διὰ τε τῆς πολεμίας καὶ τῆς φιλίας, ἐπορεύθησαν ὀκτῶ σταθμούς, καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Χάλυβας. οὗτοι ὀλίγοι τε ἦσαν καὶ ὑπήκοοι τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων, καὶ ὁ βίος ἦν τοῖς πλείστοις αὐτῶν ἀπὸ σιδηρείας. ἐντεῦθεν ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Τιβαρηνοῦς. ἡ δὲ τῶν Τιβαρηνῶν χώρα πολὺ ἦν πεδινωτέρα καὶ χωρία εἶχεν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ ἥττον ἐρυμνά. καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔχρηζον πρὸς τὰ χωρία προσβάλλειν καὶ τὴν στρατιὰν ὀνηθῆναί τι, καὶ τὰ ξένια ἃ ἦκε παρὰ Τιβαρηνῶν οὐκ ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλ' ἐπιμεῖναι κελεύσαντες ἔστε βουλεύσαιτο ἐθύοντο. καὶ πολλὰ καταθυσάντων τέλος ἀπεδείξαντο οἱ μάντιες πάντες γνώμην ὅτι οὐδαμῇ προσίοιτο οἱ θεοὶ τὸν πόλεμον. ἐντεῦθεν δὴ τὰ ξένια ἐδέξαντο, καὶ ὡς

εἶναι, ποικίλους δὲ τὰ νῶτα καὶ τὰ ἔμπροσθεν πάντα, ἐστιγμένους ἀνθήμια. ἐζήτουν δὲ καὶ ταῖς |companion ἦγον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐμφανῶς ξυγγίγνεσθαι νόμος γὰρ ἦν οὗτός σφισι. λευκοὶ δὲ πάντες οἱ ἄνδρες καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες. τούτους ἔλεγον οἱ στρατευσάμενοι βαρβαρωτάτους διελθεῖν καὶ πλείστον τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν |νομεύς?: shepherd, herder ; or νόμος?: custom, law γὰρ ὄχλω ὄντες ἐποίουν ἅπερ ἂν ἄνθρωποι ἐν ἐρημίᾳ ποιήσειαν, μόνου τε ὄντες ὅμοια ἔπραττον ἅπερ ἂν μετ' ἄλλων ὄντες, διελέγοντό τε αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐγέλων ἐφ' ἑαυτοῖς καὶ |dance ἐφιστάμενοι ὅπου τύχοιεν, ὥσπερ ἄλλοις ἐπιδεικνύμενοι.

## 5.5

Διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας οἱ Ἕλληνες, διὰ τε τῆς πολεμίας καὶ τῆς |φιλία?: 'friendship' ; ὀ|cottage; post ἄφικνοῦνται εἰς Χάλυβας. |φίλος?: friend; beloved οὗτοι ὀλίγοι τε ἦσαν καὶ ὑπήκοοι τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων, καὶ ὁ βίος ἦν τοῖς πλείστοις αὐτῶν ἀπὸ |of iron ἐντεῦθεν ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Τιβαρηνοὺς. ἡ δὲ τῶν Τιβαρηνῶν χώρα πολλὴ ἦν πεδινωτέρα καὶ χωρία εἶχεν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ ἦττον |fortified, ἰ οἱ στρατηγοὶ |impreg- |need πρὸς τὰ χωρία |hit |nable στρατιὰν ὀνηθῆναί τι, (+acc+dat); καὶ τὰ |of hospitality |mp: heed τῶν οὐκ ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλ' |wait, stay κελύσαντες ἔστε βουλευσάμενοι ἐθύοντο. καὶ πολλὰ καταθυσάντων τέλος ἀπεδείξαντο οἱ |seer πάντες γνώμην ὅτι οὐδαμῇ προσίοιτο οἱ θεοὶ τὸν πόλεμον. ἐντεῦθεν δὴ τὰ |of hospitality ), καὶ ὡς

flowers. They sought after the women in the Hellenic army, and would fain have laid with them openly in broad daylight, for that was their custom. The whole community, male and female alike, were fair-complexioned and white-skinned.

It was agreed that this was the most barbaric and outlandish people that they had passed through on the whole expedition, and the furthest removed from the Hellenic customs, doing in a crowd precisely what other people would prefer to do in solitude, and when alone behaving exactly as others would behave in company, talking to themselves and laughing at their own expense, standing still and then again capering about, wherever they might chance to be, without rhyme or reason, as if their sole business were to show off to the rest of the world.

## 5.5

Through this country, friendly or hostile as the chance might be, the Hellenes marched, eight stages in all, and reached the Chalybes. These were a people few in number, and subject to the Mossynoecians. Their livelihood was for the most part derived from mining and forging iron.

Thence they came to the Tibarenians. The country of the Tibarenians was far more level, and their fortresses lay on the seaboard and were less strong, whether by art or nature. The generals wanted to attack these places, so that the army might get some pickings, and they would not accept the gifts of hospitality which came in from the Tibarenians, but bidding them wait till they had taken counsel, they proceeded to offer sacrifice. After several abortive attempts, the seers at last pronounced an opinion that the gods in no wise countenanced war. Then they accepted the gifts of hospitality, and marching through what was now recognised as a friendly country, in two days



*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
**ἀγών** -ος (m, 3) gathering place (ἄγω)  
**ἀξιόω** consider worthy, fitting  
**ἀσθενέω** be weak, sick  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**ἄχρι** as far as (+gen); until  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**ἔθνος** -εος (n, 3) tribe, company, flock  
 ~ethnic  
**εἰκός** οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
**εἴκοσι** twenty  
**ἑκατόν** hundred  
**ἐννυμι** clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἡμέτερος** our, my  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**μυρίος** immense, myriad ~myriad  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus

**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**παρίστημι** stand, be present  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**πλήθος** -ους (3) numerical superiority  
**πομπή** a sending, expedition  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πράγμα** -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing,  
 affair  
**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**πώποτε** never  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
 masc)  
**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τείχος** -υς (n, 3) outdoor wall; also  
 τειχίον  
**τεσσαράκοντα** forty; also  
 τετταράκοντα  
**ὑπάρχω** start, lead, set an example  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry  
**χώρα** place  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

διὰ φιλίας πορευόμενοι δύο ἡμέρας ἀφίκοντο εἰς Κοτύωρα πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα, Σινωπέων ἄποικον, οὐσαν δ' ἐν τῇ Τιβαρηνῶν χώρᾳ.

Μέχρι ἐνταῦθα ἐπέξευσε ἡ στρατιά. πλήθος τῆς καταβάσεως τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀπὸ τῆς ἐν Βαβυλῶνι μάχης ἄχρι εἰς Κοτύωρα σταθμοὶ ἑκατὸν εἴκοσι δύο, παρασάγγαι ἑξακόσιοι καὶ εἴκοσι, στάδιοι μύριοι καὶ ὀκτακισχίλιοι καὶ ἑξακόσιοι, χρόνου πλήθος ὀκτὼ μῆνες. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τετταράκοντα πέντε. ἐν δὲ ταύταις πρῶτον μὲν τοῖς θεοῖς ἔθυσαν, καὶ πομπὰς ἐποίησαν κατὰ ἔθνος ἕκαστοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ ἀγῶνας γυμνικούς. τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδει' ἐλάμβανον τὰ μὲν ἐκ τῆς Παφλαγονίας, τὰ δ' ἐκ τῶν χωρίων τῶν Κοτυωριτῶν· οὐ γὰρ παρῆχον ἀγοράν, οὐδ' εἰς τὸ τεῖχος τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας ἐδέχοντο.

Ἐν τούτῳ ἔρχονται ἐκ Σινώπης πρέσβεις, φοβούμενοι περὶ τῶν Κοτυωριτῶν τῆς τε πόλεως ἣν γὰρ ἐκείνων καὶ φόρον ἐκείνοις ἔφερον καὶ περὶ τῆς χώρας, ὅτι ἤκουον δηουμένην. καὶ ἐλθόντες εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἔλεγον· προηγόρει δὲ Ἑκατόνυμος δεινὸς νομιζόμενος εἶναι λέγειν· Ἐπεμψεν ἡμᾶς, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ἡ τῶν Σινωπέων πόλις ἐπαιέσοντάς τε ὑμᾶς ὅτι νικᾶτε Ἕλληνες ὄντες βαρβάρους, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ξυνηθησομένους ὅτι διὰ πολλῶν τε καὶ δεινῶν, ὡς ἡμεῖς ἠκούσαμεν, πραγμάτων σεσωσμένοι πάρεστε. ἀξιούμεν δὲ Ἕλληνες ὄντες καὶ αὐτοὶ ὑφ' ὑμῶν ὄντων Ἑλλήνων ἀγαθὸν μὲν τι πάσχειν, κακὸν δὲ μηδέν· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἡμεῖς ὑμᾶς οὐδὲν πώποτε ὑπῆρξαμεν κακῶς ποιοῦντες. Κοτυωρίται δὲ οὗτοι εἰσὶ μὲν ἡμέτεροι ἄποικοι, καὶ τὴν

διὰ φίλια?: friendship ; or ἡμέρας ἀφίκοντο εἰς Κοτύωρα πόλιν  
 φίλος?: friend; beloved  
 Ἑλληνίδα, Σινωπέων ἄποικον, οὖσαν δ' ἐν τῇ Τιβαρηνῶν χώρα.

Μέχρι ἐνταῦθα ἐπέξευσε ἡ στρατιά. πλῆθος τῆς καταβάσεως τῆς  
 ὁδοῦ ἀπὸ τῆς ἐν Βαβυλῶνι μάχης ἄχρι εἰς Κοτύωρα |cottage; post `n

εἴκοσι δύο, |Persian ἑξακόσιοι καὶ εἴκοσι, |στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also  
 unit, ca. 5 masc) ; or στάδιος?: (adj)  
 ὀκτακισχίλιαι καὶ ἑξακόσιοι, χρόνου πλῆθος ὀκτῆρας |standing upright, firm; (pl  
 noun) 200 meters  
 ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τετταράκοντα πέντε. ἐν δὲ ταύταις πρῶτον μὲν

τοῖς θεοῖς ἔθυσαν, καὶ |a sending, ἴησαν κατὰ ἔθνος ἕκαστοι τῶν  
 |expedition  
 Ἑλλήνων καὶ ἀγῶνας γυμνικούς. τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδει' ἐλάμβανον τὰ μὲν  
 ἐκ τῆς Παφλαγονίας, τὰ δ' ἐκ τῶν χωρίων τῶν Κοτυωριτῶν· οὐ γὰρ  
 παρεῖχον ἀγοράν, οὐδ' εἰς τὸ τεῖχος τοὺς |be weak, sick ἔχοντο.

Ἐν τούτῳ ἔρχονται ἐκ Σινώπης πρέσβεις, φοβούμενοι περὶ τῶν  
 Κοτυωριτῶν τῆς τε πόλεως ἣν γὰρ ἐκείνων καὶ φόρον ἐκείνοις ἔφερον  
 καὶ περὶ τῆς χώρας, ὅτι ἤκουον δηουμένην. καὶ ἐλθόντες εἰς τὸ  
 στρατόπεδον ἔλεγον· προηγόρει δὲ Ἑκατόννυμος δεινὸς νομιζόμενος  
 εἶναι λέγειν· Ἔπεμψεν ἡμᾶς, ὧ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ἡ τῶν Σινωπέων  
 πόλις ἐπαινέσοντάς τε ὑμᾶς ὅτι νικᾶτε Ἑλληνες ὄντες βαρβάρους,  
 ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ξυνηθησομένους ὅτι διὰ πολλῶν τε καὶ δεινῶν, ὡς ἡμεῖς  
 ἠκούσαμεν, πραγμάτων σεσωσμένοι πάρεστε. ἀξιοῦμεν δὲ Ἑλληνες  
 ὄντες καὶ αὐτοὶ ὑφ' ὑμῶν ὄντων Ἑλλήνων ἀγαθὸν μὲν τι πάσχειν,  
 κακὸν δὲ μηδέν· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἡμεῖς ὑμᾶς οὐδὲν |never ὑπήρξαμεν κακῶς  
 ποιοῦντες. Κοτυωρῖται δὲ οὗτοι εἰσὶ μὲν ἡμέτεροι ἄποικοι, καὶ τὴν

reached Cotyora, a Hellenic city, and a colony of Sinope, albeit situated in the territory of the Tibarenians.

Here they halted forty-five days, during which they first of all sacrificed to the gods, and instituted processions, each set of the Hellenes according to their several tribes, with gymnastic contests. Provisions they got in meanwhile, partly from Paphlagonia, partly from the estates of the Cotyorites, for the latter would neither provide them a market nor receive their sick within their walls.

Meanwhile ambassadors arrived from Sinope, full of fears, not only for the Cotyorites and their city, which belonged to Sinope, and brought in tribute, but also for the territory which, as they had heard, was being pillaged. Accordingly they came to the camp and made a speech. Hecatonymus, who was reported to be a clever orator, acted as their spokesman: "Soldiers," he said, "the city of the Sinopeans has sent us to offer you, as Hellenes, our compliments and congratulations on your victories over the barbarians; and next, to express our joyful satisfaction that you have surmounted all those terrible sufferings of which we have heard, and have reached this place in safety. As Hellenes we claim to receive at your hands, as fellow-Hellenes, kindness and not harm. We have certainly not ourselves set you an example heretofore of evil treatment. Now the Cotyorites are our colonists. It was we who gave them this country to dwell in, having taken it from the barbarians; for which reason also they, with the men of Cerasus and Trapezus, pay us an appointed tribute. So that, whatever mischief you inflict on the men of Cotyora, the city of Sinope takes as personal to herself. At the present time we hear that you have made forcible entry into their city, some of you, and are quartered in the houses, besides taking forcibly from the Cotyorite estates whatever you need, by hook and by crook. Now against these things

*vocabulary***ἀγαπάω** welcome, be host; also

ἀγαπάζω

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις**ἄημι** blow**ἄλθομαι** become whole, sound**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse**ἀντί** for, equivalent to**ἀξιόω** consider worthy, fitting**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain**ἀτιμάω** dishonor**ἀφαιρέω** take away**βάρβαρος** non-Greek**βία** strength, force**γέη** earth; a country ~geography; also

γῆ

**δασμός** division of a spoil**διό** because of which**δυνατός** powerful, possible**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,

ἐξαποδύνω

**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω,

ἐξαποδύνω

**ἐνθάδε** here, hither**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἐρωτάω** ask about something**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide, chief**ἦκω** to have come**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene**νομίζω** consider customary**ξένιος** of hospitality**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle**ὅποῖος** whatever kind**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape**παρέχω** furnish**στρατιά** army**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary**σῶμα** -τος (n, 3) corpse ~somatic**τιμάω** honor, exalt**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,

happen, happen to exist; also

ἐντυγχάνω

**ὑβρις** -ος (f) pride, insolence, outrage**ὑπεῖπον** say as preface, premise**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy**φιλία** friendship**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions**χώρα** place**χωρίον** area; downwards

χώραν ἡμεῖς αὐτοῖς ταύτην παραδεδώκαμεν βαρβάρους ἀφελόμενοι· διὸ καὶ δασμὸν ἡμῖν φέρουσιν οὗτοι τεταγμένοι καὶ Κερασούντιοι καὶ Τραπεζούντιοι· ὥστε ὃ τι ἂν τούτους κακὸν ποιήσητε ἢ Σινωπέων πόλις νομίζει πάσχειν. νῦν δὲ ἀκούομεν ὑμᾶς εἰς τε τὴν πόλιν βία παρεληλυθότας ἐνίοις σκηνοῦν ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις καὶ ἐκ τῶν χωρίων βία λαμβάνειν ὧν ἂν δέησθε οὐ πείθοντας. ταῦτ' οὖν οὐκ ἀξιούμεν· εἰ δὲ ταῦτα ποιήσετε, ἀνάγκη ἡμῖν καὶ Κορύλλαν καὶ Παφλαγόνας καὶ ἄλλον ὄντινα ἂν δυνώμεθα φίλον ποιεῖσθαι.

Πρὸς ταῦτα ἀναστὰς Ξενοφῶν ὑπὲρ τῶν στρατιωτῶν εἶπεν· Ἡμεῖς δέ, ὦ ἄνδρες Σινωπεῖς, ἤκομεν ἀγαπῶντες ὅτι τὰ σώματα διεσώσαμεθα καὶ τὰ ὄπλα· οὐ γὰρ ἦν δυνατόν ἅμα τε χρήματα ἄγειν καὶ φέρειν καὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις μάχεσθαι. καὶ νῦν ἐπεὶ εἰς τὰς Ἑλληνίδας πόλεις ἤλθομεν, ἐν Τραπεζούντι μὲν παρεῖχον γὰρ ἡμῖν ἀγορὰν ὠνούμενοι εἶχομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ ἀνθ' ὧν ἐτίμησαν ἡμᾶς καὶ ξένια ἔδωκαν τῇ στρατιᾷ, ἀντετιμῶμεν αὐτούς, καὶ εἴ τις αὐτοῖς φίλος ἦν τῶν βαρβάρων, τούτων ἀπειχόμεθα· τοὺς δὲ πολεμίους αὐτῶν ἐφ' οὓς αὐτοὶ ἠγοῖντο κακῶς ἐποιοῦμεν ὅσον ἐδυνάμεθα. ἐρωτᾶτε δὲ αὐτοὺς ὁποῖων τινῶν ἡμῶν ἔτυχον· πάρεισι γὰρ ἐνθάδε οὓς ἡμῖν ἠγεμόνας διὰ φιλίαν ἢ πόλις ξυνέπεμψεν. ὅποι δ' ἂν ἐλθόντες ἀγορὰν μὴ ἔχωμεν, ἂν τε εἰς βάρβαρον γῆν ἂν τε εἰς Ἑλληνίδα, οὐχ ὕβρει ἀλλὰ ἀνάγκη λαμβάνομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. καὶ Καρδούχους καὶ Ταόχους καὶ Χαλδαίους καίπερ βασιλέως οὐχ ὑπηκόους ὄντας

χώραν ἡμεῖς αὐτοῖς ταύτην παραδεδώκαμεν βαρβάρους ἀφελόμενοι· διὸ καὶ |division of a spoil| ἰω οὗτοι τεταγμένον καὶ Κερασοῦντιοι καὶ Τραπεζοῦντιοι· ὥστε ὅ τι ἂν τούτους κακὸν ποιήσητε ἢ Σινωπέων πόλις νομίζει πάσχειν. νῦν δὲ ἀκούομεν ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν πόλιν βία παρεληλυθότας ἐνίοις σκηνοῦν ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις καὶ ἐκ τῶν χωρίων βία λαμβάνειν ὧν ἂν δέησθε οὐ πείθοντας. ταῦτ' οὖν οὐκ ἀξιούμεν· εἰ δὲ ταῦτα ποιήσετε, ἀνάγκη ἡμῖν καὶ Κορύλαν καὶ Παφλαγόνας καὶ ἄλλον ὄντινα ἂν δυνώμεθα φίλον ποιεῖσθαι.

Πρὸς ταῦτα ἀναστὰς Ξενοφῶν ὑπὲρ τῶν στρατιωτῶν εἶπεν· Ἡμεῖς δέ, ὦ ἄνδρες Σινωπεῖς, ἤκομεν ἀγαπῶντες ὅτι τὰ σώματα διεσωσάμεθα καὶ τὰ ὄπλα· οὐ γὰρ ἦν δυνατὸν ἅμα τε χρήματα ἄγειν καὶ φέρειν καὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις μάχεσθαι. καὶ νῦν ἐπεὶ εἰς τὰς Ἑλληνίδας πόλεις |ἄλθομαι?: 'become whole| μὲν παρέιχον γὰρ ἡμῖν |; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come| ἀγοράν ἀνούμενοι εἶχομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ |ἄημι?: |ἀτιμάω?: 'dishonor ; or| καὶ |of hospitality| ἢ στρατιᾷ, ἀντετιμῶμεν αὐτοὺς. |τιμάω?: honor| ἄντι?: |τούς. or| εἴ τις αὐτοῖς |ἀντί?:| φίλος ἦν τῶν βαρβάρων, τούτων ἀπειχόμε|for, τοὺς δὲ πολεμίους| αὐτῶν ἐφ' οὓς αὐτοὶ ἠγοῖντο κακῶς ἐποι|equiv-| ἄντι?:| ἄντι?:| αὐτῶν ἔτυχον· πάρεισι γὰρ ἐνθάδε |alent| ὅσον ἐδυνάμεθα. |to| ἐρωτᾶτε δὲ αὐτοὺς |whatever kind| ἄντι?:| ἄντι?:| οὓς ἡμῖν ἠγεμόνας διὰ |friendship| ἄντι?:| ἄντι?:| ἀγοράν μὴ ἔχωμεν, ἂν τε εἰς βάρβαρον |earth; a country| ἄντι?:| ἄντι?:| οὐχ ὕβρει ἀλλὰ ἀνάγκη λαμβάνομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. καὶ Καρδούχους καὶ Ταόχους καὶ Χαλδαίους καίπερ βασιλέως οὐχ ὑπηκόους ὄντας

we enter protest. If you mean to go on so doing, you will drive us to make friends with Corylas and the Paphlagonians, or any one else we can find.”

To meet these charges Xenophon, on behalf of the soldiers, rose and said: “As to ourselves, men of Sinope, having got so far, we are well content to have saved our bodies and our arms. Indeed it was impossible at one and the same moment to keep our enemies at bay and to despoil them of their goods and chattels. And now, since we have reached Hellenic cities, how has it fared with us? At Trapezus they gave us a market, and we paid for our provisions at a fair market price. In return for the honour they did us, and the gifts of hospitality they gave the army, we requited them with honour. Where the barbarian was friendly to them, we stayed our hands from injury; or under their escort, we did damage to their enemies to the utmost of our power. Ask them, what sort of people they found us. They are here, some of them, to answer for themselves. Their fellow-citizens and the state of Trapezus, for friendship’s sake, have sent them with us to act as our guides.

”But wherever we come, be it foreign or Hellenic soil, and find no market for provisions, we are wont to help ourselves, not out of insolence but from necessity. There have been tribes like the Carduchians, the Taochians, the Chaldaeans, which, albeit they were not subject to the great king, yet were no less formidable than independent. These we had to bring over by our arms. The necessity of getting provisions forced us; since they refused to offer us a market. Whereas some other folk, like the Macrones, in spite of their being barbarians, we regarded as our friends, simply because they did provide us with the best market in their power, and we took no single thing



*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
**αἰίδω** sing; also αἰοδιάω  
**αἰτιάομαι** blame  
**αἴτιος** guilty ~etiology; also αἰτίος  
**αἰτίος** guilty ~etiology; also αἴτιος  
**ἀλέξω** ward off; aid  
**ἀμρότερος** both ~amphora  
**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἀνοίγνυμι** open  
**ἀνοίγω** open  
**ἀντί** for, equivalent to  
**ἀξιόω** consider worthy, fitting  
**ἀπειλέω** vow, threaten, boast  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βία** strength, force  
**βίαιος** by force  
**δαπανάω** spend, consume, waste  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about

**εἶσω** into; also ἔσω  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**κάννω** toil, acquire  
**κλείω** tell of, celebrate  
**κομίζω** take; attend to; also κομέω  
**κτάομαι** acquire, possess (κτῆμα)  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also  
 πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae  
**σκηνέω** camp  
**σκηνώω** camp  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὁμέτερος** yours  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**φρουρέω** keep watch  
**χωρίον** area; downwards  
**ώθέω** push

ὅμως καὶ μάλα φοβεροὺς ὄντας πολεμίους ἐκτησάμεθα διὰ τὸ ἀνάγκην εἶναι λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐπεὶ ἀγορὰν οὐ παρέιχον. Μάκρωνας δὲ καίπερ βαρβάρους ὄντας, ἐπεὶ ἀγορὰν οἷαν ἐδύναντο παρέιχον, φίλους τε ἐνομίζομεν εἶναι καὶ βία οὐδὲν ἐλαμβάνομεν τῶν ἐκείνων. Κοτυωρίτας δέ, οὓς ὑμετέρους φατὲ εἶναι, εἴ τι αὐτῶν εὐλόγησεν, αὐτοὶ αἰτιοί εἰσιν· οὐ γὰρ ὡς φίλοι προσεφέροντο ἡμῖν, ἀλλὰ κλείσαντες τὰς πύλας οὔτε εἴσω ἐδέχοντο οὔτε ἔξω ἀγορὰν ἔπεμπον· ἠτιῶντο δὲ τὸν παρ' ὑμῶν ἀρμοστήν τούτων αἴτιον εἶναι. ὁ δὲ λέγεις βία παρελθόντας σκηνοῦν, ἡμεῖς ἠξιοῦμεν τοὺς κάμνοντας εἰς τὰς στέγας δέξασθαι· ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ ἀνέωγον τὰς πύλας, ἢ ἡμᾶς ἐδέχετο αὐτὸ τὸ χωρίον ταύτη εἰσελθόντες ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν βίαιον ἐποιήσαμεν, σκηνοῦσι δ' ἐν ταῖς στέγαις οἱ κάμνοντες τὰ αὐτῶν δαπανῶντες, καὶ τὰς πύλας φρουροῦμεν, ὅπως μὴ ἐπὶ τῷ ὑμετέρῳ ἀρμοστῇ ὤσω οἱ κάμνοντες ἡμῶν, ἀλλ' ἐφ' ἡμῖν ἢ κομίσασθαι ὅταν βουλώμεθα. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι, ὡς ὀράτε, σκηνοῦμεν ὑπαίθριοι ἐν τῇ τάξει, παρεσκευασμένοι, ἂν μὲν τις εὖ ποιῇ, ἀντ' εὖ ποιεῖν, ἂν δὲ κακῶς, ἀλέξασθαι. ἃ δὲ ἠπειλήσας ὡς, ἦν ὑμῖν δοκῇ, Κορύλαν καὶ Παφλαγόνας ξυμμάχους ποιήσεσθε ἐφ' ἡμᾶς, ἡμεῖς δέ, ἦν μὲν ἀνάγκη ἦ, πολεμήσομεν καὶ ἀμφοτέροις· ἦδη γὰρ καὶ ἄλλοις πολλαπλασίοις ὑμῶν ἐπολεμήσαμεν· ἂν δὲ δοκῇ ἡμῖν καὶ φίλον ποιεῖσθαι τὸν Παφλαγόνα ἀκούομεν δὲ αὐτὸν καὶ ἐπιθυμεῖν τῆς ὑμετέρας πόλεως καὶ χωρίων τῶν ἐπιθαλαττίων,

ὅμως καὶ μάλα φοβεροὺς ὄντας πολεμίους ἐκτησάμεθα διὰ τὸ ἀνάγκη ἐῖναι λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐπεὶ ἀγορὰν οὐ παρεῖχον. Μάκρωνας δὲ καίπερ βαρβάρους ὄντας, ἐπεὶ ἀγορὰν οἶαν ἐδύναντο παρεῖχον, φίλους τε ἐνομίζομεν εἶναι καὶ βία οὐδὲν ἐλαμβάνομεν τῶν ἐκείνων. Κοτυωρίτας δέ, οὓς ὑμετέροισι φατέ εἶναι, εἴ τι αὐτῶν εἰλήφαμεν, αὐτοὶ αἰτιοί εἰσιν· οὐ γὰρ ὡς φίλοι προσεφέροντο ἡμῖν, ἀλλὰ |tell of, celebrate τύλας οὔτε εἴσω ἐδέχοντο οὔτε ἔξω ἀγορὰν ἔπεμπον· |blame δὲ τὸν παρ' ὑμῶν ἀρμοστήν τούτων |guilty εἶναι. ὁ δὲ λέγεις βία παρελθόντας σκηνοῦν, ἡμεῖς ἡξιούμεν τοὺς κάμνοντας εἰς τὰς στέγας δέξασθαι· ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ |ἀνοίγνυμι?: ὀpen ; or |ἀνοίγω?: open πύλας, ἢ ἡμῶς ἐδέχετο αὐτὸ τὸ χωρίον ταύτῃ εἰσελθόντες ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν |by force οἰήσαμεν, |σκηνέω?: ὀ camp ὀ στέγαις οἱ κάμνοντες τὰ αὐτῶν |spend, , κ|camp πύλας |keep watch ὅπως μὴ ἐπὶ τῷ ὑμετέρῳ |waste οἰοσθῆ ὥσιν οἱ κάμνοντες ἡμῶν, ἀλλ' ἐφ' ἡμῖν ἢ κομίσασθαι ὅταν βουλώμεθα. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι, ὡς ὀράτε, |σκηνέω?: camp ; or |σκηνώ?: camp ὑπαίθριοι ἐν τῇ τάξει, παρεσκευασμένοι, ἂν μὲν τις εὔ ποιῆ, ἀντ' εὔ ποιεῖν, ἂν δὲ κακῶς, |ward off; aid ἔ δὲ ἡπέλιγσας ὡς, ἦν ὑμῖν δοκῆ, Κορύλλαν καὶ Παφλαγόναν ξυμμάχους ποιήσεσθε ἐφ' ἡμῶς, ἡμεῖς δέ, ἦν μὲν ἀνάγκη ἦ, πολεμήσομεν καὶ ἀμφοτέροισι· ἦδη γὰρ καὶ ἄλλοις πολλαπλασίοις ὑμῶν ἐπολεμήσαμεν· ἂν δὲ δοκῆ ἡμῖν καὶ φίλον ποιεῖσθαι τὸν Παφλαγόνα ἀκούομεν δὲ αὐτὸν καὶ ἐπιθυμεῖν τῆς ὑμετέρας πόλεως καὶ χωρίων τῶν ἐπιθαλαττίων,

of theirs by force. But, to come to these Cotyrorites, whom you claim to be your people, if we have taken aught from them, they have themselves to blame, for they did not deal with us as friends, but shut their gates in our faces. They would neither welcome us within nor furnish us with a market without. The only justification they alleged was that your governor had authorised this conduct.

“As to your assertion,” he continued, turning to Hecatonymus, “that we have got in by force and have taken up quarters, this is what we did. We requested them to receive our sick and wounded under cover; and when they refused to open their gates, we walked in where the place itself invited us. All the violence we have committed amounts to this, that our sick folk are quartered under cover, paying for their expenses, and we keep a sentry at the gates, so that our sick and wounded may not lie at the mercy of your governor, but we may have it in our power to remove them whenever we like. The rest of us, you observe, are camping under the canopy of heaven, in regular rank and file, and we are ready to requite kindness with kindness, but to repel evil vigorously. And as for your threat,” he said, once again turning to the spokesman, “that you will, if it suits you, make alliance with Corylas and the Paphlagonians to attack us, for our part, we have no objection to fighting both sets of you, if so be we must; we have already fought others many times more numerous than you. Besides, ‘if it suits us,’ as you put it, to make the Paphlagonian our friend (report says that he has a hankering after your city and some other places on the seaboard), we can enhance the value of our friendship by helping to win for him what he covets.”

Thereupon the ambassadors

*vocabulary*

**ἀξιόω** consider worthy, fitting  
**ἀρκέω** ward off, defend; suffice  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διαλέγω** go through, debate  
**δίδημι** should; bind; need, fail; also  
**δέω**  
**εἴτε** if, whenever  
**ἐκεῖ** there  
**ἐνθάδε** here, hither  
**ἐννυμι** clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἦμερος** domesticated  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**κεῖμαι** lie

**ξενίζω** be host, treat as a guest  
**ξένιος** of hospitality  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (πούς)  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also  
**πειρητίζω**  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also  
**πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω**  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τελέω** fulfill; pf pass: be feasible  
**τέλος** -υς (n, 3) end; military post  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑστεραῖος** the next; later  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**χαλεπαίνω** be violent, rage

πειρασόμεθα ξυμπράττοντες αὐτῷ ὧν ἐπιθυμῆ φίλοι γίγνεσθαι.

Ἐκ τούτου μάλα μὲν δῆλοι ἦσαν οἱ ξυμπρέσβεις τῷ Ἑκατονύμῳ χαλεπαίνοντες τοῖς εἰρημένοις, παρελθὼν δ' αὐτῶν ἄλλος εἶπεν ὅτι οὐ πόλεμον ποιησόμενοι ἤκοιεν ἀλλὰ ἐπιδείξοντες ὅτι φίλοι εἰσὶ. καὶ ξενίοις, ἦν μὲν ἔλθητε πρὸς τὴν Σινωπέων πόλιν, ἐκεῖ δεξόμεθα, νῦν δὲ τοὺς ἐνθάδε κελεύσομεν διδόναι ἃ δύνανται· ὀρώμεν γὰρ πάντα ἀληθῆ ὄντα ἃ λέγετε. ἐκ τούτου ξενία τε ἔπεμπον οἱ Κοτυωρίται καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐξένιζον τοὺς τῶν Σινωπέων πρέσβεις, καὶ πρὸς ἀλλήλους πολλὰ τε καὶ φιλικὰ διελέγοντο τά τε ἄλλα καὶ περὶ τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας ἀνεπυθάνοντο ὧν ἑκάτεροι ἐδέοντο.

## 5.6

Ταύτῃ μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία ξυνέλεξαν οἱ στρατηγοὶ τοὺς στρατιώτας. καὶ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς περὶ τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας παρακαλέσαντας τοὺς Σινωπέας βουλευέσθαι. εἴτε γὰρ πεζῇ δέοι πορεύεσθαι, χρήσιμοι ἂν ἐδόκουν εἶναι οἱ Σινωπεῖς· ἔμπειροι γὰρ ἦσαν τῆς Παφλαγονίας· εἴτε κατὰ θάλατταν, προσδεῖν ἐδόκει Σινωπέων· μόνοι γὰρ ἂν ἐδόκουν ἱκανοὶ εἶναι πλοῖα παρασχέειν ἀρκοῦντα τῇ στρατιᾷ. καλέσαντες οὖν τοὺς πρέσβεις ξυμβουλευόντο, καὶ ἤξιουν Ἑλληνας ὄντας Ἑλλησι τούτῳ πρῶτον καλῶς δέχεσθαι τῷ εὐνοῦς τε εἶναι καὶ τὰ κάλλιστα ξυμβουλεύειν.

πειρασόμεθα ξυμπράττοντες αὐτῷ ὧν ἐπιθυμῆ φίλοι γίνεσθαι.

Ἐκ τούτου μάλα μὲν δῆλοι ἦσαν οἱ ξυμπρέσβεις τῷ Ἑκατωνύμῳ

|be violent, rage οὓς εἰρημένους, παρελθὼν δ' αὐτῶν ἄλλος εἶπεν ὅτι

οὐ πόλεμον ποιησόμενοι ἤκοιεν ἀλλὰ ἐπιδείζοντες ὅτι φίλοι εἰσὶ. καὶ

|of hospitality ἔλθητε πρὸς τὴν Σινωπέων πόλιν, |ξξιμι?: 'gō forth ; or ἐκει?:  
|there ; or κειμαι?: lie

δὲ τοὺς ἐνθάδε κελεύσομεν |δίδημι?: 'should; bind; need, fail πάντα  
; or δίδωμι?: give; permit

ἀληθῆ ὄντα ἂ λέγετε. ἐκ τούτου |of hospitality οὐν οἱ Κοτυωρίται καὶ

οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων |be host τοὺς τῶν Σινωπέων πρέσβεις,

καὶ πρὸς ἀλλήλους πολλά τε καὶ φιλικὰ διελέγοντο τά τε ἄλλα καὶ

περὶ τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας ἀνεπυθάνοντο ὧν ἐκάτεροι ἐδέοντο.

## 5.6

Ταύτῃ μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο. τῇ δὲ |the next; later

ξυνέλεξαν οἱ στρατηγοὶ τοὺς στρατιώτας. καὶ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς περὶ

τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας παρακαλέσαντας τοὺς Σινωπέας βουλεύεσθαι.

εἴτε γὰρ πεζῇ δέοι πορεύεσθαι, χρήσιμοι ἂν ἐδόκουν εἶναι οἱ

Σινωπεῖς· ἔμπειροι γὰρ ἦσαν τῆς Παφλαγονίας· εἴτε κατὰ θάλατταν,

προσδεῖν ἐδόκει Σινωπέων· μόνοι γὰρ ἂν ἐδόκουν ἱκανοὶ εἶναι πλοῖα

παρασχεῖν |ward off τῇ στρατιᾷ. καλέσαντες οὖν τοὺς πρέσβεις

ξυμβουλευόντο, καὶ ἤξιον Ἑλλήνας ὄντας Ἑλλησι τούτῳ πρῶτον

καλῶς δέχεσθαι τῷ εὖνους τε εἶναι καὶ τὰ κάλλιστα ξυμβουλεύειν.

showed very plainly their annoyance with Hecatonymus, on account of the style of his remarks, and one of them stepped forward to explain that their intention in coming was not at all to raise a war, but on the contrary to demonstrate their friendliness. "And if you come to Sinope itself," the speaker continued, "we will welcome you there with gifts of hospitality. Meanwhile we will enjoin upon the citizens of this place to give you what they can; for we can see that every word of what you say is true." Thereupon the Cotyrorites sent gifts of hospitality, and the generals of the Hellenes entertained the ambassadors of the Sinopeans. Many and friendly were the topics of conversation; freely flowed the talk on things in general; and, in particular, both parties were able to make inquiries and satisfy their curiosity concerning the remaining portion of the march.

## 5.6

Such was the conclusion of that day. On the following day the generals summoned an assembly of the soldiers, when it was resolved to invite the men of Sinope, and to take advice with them touching the remainder of the journey. In the event of their having to continue it on foot, the Sinopeans through their acquaintance with Paphlagonia would be useful to them; while, if they had to go by sea, the services of the same people would be at a premium; for who but they could furnish ships sufficient for the army? Accordingly, they summoned their ambassadors, and took counsel with them, begging them, on the strength of the sacred ties which bind Hellenes to Hellenes, to inaugurate the good reception they had spoken of, by present kindness and their best advice.

Hecatonymus rose and



*vocabulary*

**ἀμφότερος** both ~amphora  
**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βέλτιστος** best, noblest  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**εἰσβολή** ἐσβολῆς invasion, an entrance  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἐπαινέω** concur, concur with  
**ἐπεύχομαι** exult (over); pray  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also ἰθύς  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἱερή** holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph; also ἱερόν, ἱερός, ἱρός  
**ἵππειος** of horses  
**καθίζω** to seat ~sit; also ἵζω, καθιζάνω  
**καταράομαι** curse  
**κατέχω** hold down; cover; also κατασχεθεῖν  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn  
**κομίζω** take; attend to; also κομέω  
**κρατέω** rule ~democracy

**κρείσσω** more powerful  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ὄδος** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὄρнуμι** set upon, arouse ~hormone; also ὑπόρнуμι  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill ~hormone  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὄδος  
**πάνυ** altogether, very  
**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend  
**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**πράγμα** -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing, affair  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**στέλλω** prepare, send, furl ~apostle  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**ὕψηλός** high  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**φρονέω** think, be wise ~phrenology  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**χώρα** place  
**ὥδε** thus

Ἄναστας δὲ Ἑκατόνυμος πρῶτον μὲν ἀπελογήσατο περὶ οὗ εἶπεν ὡς τὸν Παφλαγῶνα φίλον ποιήσουντο, ὅτι οὐχ ὡς τοῖς Ἑλλησι πολεμησόντων σφῶν εἶποι, ἀλλ' ὅτι ἐξὸν τοῖς βαρβάροις φίλους εἶναι τοὺς Ἕλληνας αἰρήσονται. ἐπεὶ δὲ συμβουλεύειν ἐκέλευον, ἐπευξάμενος εἶπεν ὧδε. Εἰ μὲν συμβουλεύοιμι ἃ βέλτιστά μοι εἶναι δοκεῖ, πολλά μοι καὶ ἀγαθὰ γένοιτο· εἰ δὲ μή, τάναντία. αὐτὴ γὰρ ἢ ἱερά ξυμβουλή λεγομένη εἶναι δοκεῖ μοι παρεῖναι· νῦν γὰρ δὴ ἂν μὲν εὖ συμβουλεύσας φανῶ, πολλοὶ ἔσονται οἱ ἐπαινοῦντές με, ἂν δὲ κακῶς, πολλοὶ ἔσεσθε οἱ καταρώμενοι. πράγματα μὲν οὖν οἶδ' ὅτι πολὺ πλείω ἔξομεν, ἂν κατὰ θάλατταν κομίζησθε· ἡμᾶς γὰρ δεήσει τὰ πλοῖα πορίζειν· ἦν δὲ κατὰ γῆν στέλλησθε, ὑμᾶς δεήσει τοὺς μαχομένους εἶναι. ὅμως δὲ λεκτέα ἃ γινώσκω· ἔμπειρος γὰρ εἶμι καὶ τῆς χώρας τῆς Παφλαγόνων καὶ τῆς δυνάμεως. ἔχει γὰρ ἀμφοτέρω, καὶ πεδία κάλλιστα καὶ ὄρη ὑψηλότατα. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν οἶδα εὐθὺς ἢ τὴν εἰσβολὴν ἀνάγκη ποιεῖσθαι· οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἄλλη ἢ ἢ τὰ κέρατα τοῦ ὄρους τῆς ὁδοῦ καθ' ἑκάτερά ἐστιν ὑψηλά, ἃ κρατεῖν κατέχοντες καὶ πάνυ ὀλίγοι δύναιτ' ἂν· τούτων δὲ κατεχομένων οὐδ' ἂν οἱ πάντες ἄνθρωποι δύναιτ' ἂν διελθεῖν. ταῦτα δὲ καὶ δείξαμι ἂν, εἰ μοί τινα βούλοισθε συμπέμψαι. ἔπειτα δὲ οἶδα καὶ πεδία ὄντα καὶ ἵππειαν ἣν αὐτοὶ οἱ βάρβαροι νομίζουσι κρείττω εἶναι ἀπάσης τῆς βασιλέως ἵππειας. καὶ νῦν οὗτοι οὐ παρεγένοντο βασιλεῖ καλοῦντι, ἀλλὰ μείζον φρονεῖ ὁ ἄρχων αὐτῶν. ἦν δὲ καὶ δυνηθῆτε τά τε ὄρη

Ἀναστὰς δὲ Ἑκατόννυμος πρῶτον μὲν ἀπελογήσατο περὶ οὗ εἶπεν  
ὡς τὸν Παφλαγόνα φίλον ποιήσονται, ὅτι οὐχ ὡς τοῖς Ἑλληνσι  
πολεμησόντων σφῶν εἴποι, ἀλλ' ὅτι **go forth** βαρβάροις φίλους  
εἶναι τοὺς Ἑλληνας αἰρήσονται. ἐπεὶ δὲ συμβουλευεῖν ἐκέλευον,  
**exult (over); pray** ἴδε. Εἰ μὲν συμβουλεύοιμι ἂ **best, noblest** μοι εἶναι  
δοκεῖ, πολλά μοι καὶ ἀγαθὰ γένοιτο· εἰ δὲ μή, τάναντία. αὐτὴ γὰρ  
ἡ ἱερά συμβουλή λεγομένη εἶναι δοκεῖ μοι παρεῖναι· νῦν γὰρ δὴ ἂν  
μὲν εὖ συμβουλεύσας φανῶ, πολλοὶ ἔσονται οἱ ἐπαινοῦντές με, ἂν  
δὲ κακῶς, πολλοὶ ἔσεσθε οἱ **curse** πράγματα μὲν οὖν οἶδ'  
ὅτι πολὺ πλείω ἔξομεν, ἐὰν κατὰ θάλατταν κομίζησθε· ἡμᾶς γὰρ  
δεήσει τὰ πλοῖα πορίζειν· ἦν δὲ κατὰ **earth, prepare, send, furl** ἴσει  
τοὺς μαχομένους εἶναι. ὅμως δὲ λεκτέ **a coun-try** γινώσκω· ἔμπειρος γὰρ  
εἶμι καὶ τῆς χώρας τῆς Παφλαγόνων καὶ τῆς δυνάμεως. ἔχει γὰρ  
ἀμφότερα, καὶ πεδία κάλλιστα καὶ ὄρη ὑψηλότατα. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν  
οἶδα εὐθὺς ἢ τὴν **invasion, an entrance** ἰγκη ποιεῖσθαι· οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἄλλη ἢ ἢ  
τὰ κέρατα τοῦ ὄρους τῆς ὁδοῦ καθ' ἐκάτερά ἐστιν ὑψηλά, ἃ κρατεῖν  
κατέχοντες καὶ πάνυ ὀλίγοι **enter, put on, strip off** ὑτων δὲ κατεχομένων οὐδ'  
ἂν οἱ πάντες ἄνθρωποι **enter, put on, strip off** ελθεῖν. ταῦτα δὲ καὶ δείξαιμι  
ἂν, εἰ μοί τινα βούλοισθε **strip off** συμπέμψαι. ἔπειτα δὲ οἶδα καὶ πεδία ὄντα  
καὶ ἰππεῖαν ἦν αὐτοὶ οἱ βάρβαροι νομίζουσι κρείττω εἶναι ἀπάσης τῆς  
βασιλείως **of horses**· αἱ νῦν οὗτοι οὐ παρεγένοντο βασιλεῖ καλοῦντι,  
ἀλλὰ **μειζον?; more greatly ; or μέγας?; big, great, marvelous** ἦν δὲ καὶ δυνηθῆτε τά τε ὄρη

wished at once to offer an apology with regard to what he had said about the possibility of making friends with the Paphlagonians. “The words were not intended,” he said, “to convey a threat, as though they were minded to go to war with the Hellenes, but as meaning rather: albeit we have it in our power to be friendly with the barbarians, we will choose the Hellenes.” Then, being urged to aid them by some advice, with a pious ejaculation, he commenced: “If I bestow upon you the best counsel I am able, God grant that blessings in abundance may descend on me; but if the contrary, may evil betide me! ‘Sacred counsel,’ as the saying goes— well, sirs, if ever the saying held, it should hold I think to-day; when, if I be proved to have given you good counsel, I shall not lack panegyrists, or if evil, your imprecations will be many-tongued.

”As to trouble, I am quite aware, we shall have much more trouble if you are conveyed by sea, for we must provide the vessels; whereas, if you go by land, all the fighting will evolve on you. Still, let come what may, it behoves me to state my views. I have an intimate acquaintance with the country of the Paphlagonians and their power. The country possesses the two features of hill and vale, that is to say, the fairest plains and the highest mountains. To begin with the mountains, I know the exact point at which you must make your entry. It is precisely where the horns of a mountain tower over both sides of the road. Let the merest handful of men occupy these and they can hold the pass with ease; for when that is done not all the enemies in the world could effect a passage. I could point out the whole with my finger, if you like to send any one with me to the scene.

“So much for the mountain barrier. But the next thing I know is that there are plains and a cavalry which the barbarians themselves hold to be superior to the entire cavalry of the great king. Why, only the other day these people refused to present themselves to the summons of the king; their chief is too proud for that.

“But now,

*vocabulary*

**ἄλλως** otherwise  
**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp.~sin  
**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck  
**ἀριθμός** number  
**αὐτως** just so, merely; in vain  
**δεύτερος** second  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**δώδεκα** twelve ~dodecahedron; also **δωκαίδεκα, δωδέκα**  
**δῶρον** gift ~donate  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also **εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν**  
**ἐνθάδε** here, hither  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐργάζομαι** work, function well  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also **ἵππιοχάρμης**  
**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon; also **καταλιμπάνω**  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon; also **καταλείπω**  
**κλέπτω** steal  
**κρατέω** rule ~democracy  
**μείων** less, smaller

**μυριάς** (f, 3) countless, myriad  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also **οὔομαι, οὔομαι**  
**ὄπισθεν** behind, hereafter; also **ὄπιθεν**  
**ὅπου** where  
**παραπλέω** sail past  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (**πούς**)  
**πλέος** full; also **πλεῖος, πλέως**  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τρίτος** third  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φθάνω** do first, outstrip  
**φιλία** friendship  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also **καταχέω**  
**χώρα** place  
**ψηφίζω** count, vote

κλείψαι ἢ φθάσαι λαβόντες καὶ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ κρατῆσαι μαχόμενοι τοὺς τε ἰππέας τούτων καὶ πεζῶν μυριάδας πλέον ἢ δώδεκα, ἤξετε ἐπὶ τοὺς ποταμούς, πρῶτον μὲν τὸν Θερμώδοντα, εὖρος τριῶν πλέθρων, ὃν χαλεπὸν οἶμαι διαβαίνειν ἄλλως τε καὶ πολεμίων πολλῶν ἔμπροσθεν ὄντων, πολλῶν δὲ ὄπισθεν ἐπομένων· δεύτερον δὲ Ἴριον, τρίπλεθρον ὡσαύτως· τρίτον δὲ Ἄλυν, οὐ μείον δυοῖν σταδίων, ὃν οὐκ ἂν δύνασθε ἄνευ πλοίων διαβῆναι· πλοῖα δὲ τίς ἔσται ὁ παρέχων; ὡς δ' αὐτως καὶ ὁ Παρθένιος ἄβατος· ἐφ' ὃν ἔλθοιτε ἄν, εἰ τὸν Ἄλυν διαβαίητε. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν οὐ χαλεπὴν ὑμῖν εἶναι νομίζω τὴν πορείαν ἀλλὰ παντάπασιν ἀδύνατον. ἂν δὲ πλέητε, ἔστιν ἐνθένδε μὲν εἰς Σινώπην παραπλευσαι, ἐκ Σινώπης δὲ εἰς Ἡράκλειαν· ἐξ Ἡρακλείας δὲ οὔτε πεζῇ οὔτε κατὰ θάλατταν ἀπορία· πολλὰ γὰρ καὶ πλοῖα ἔστιν ἐν Ἡρακλείᾳ.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτ' ἔλεξεν, οἱ μὲν ὑπόπτειον φιλίας ἔνεκα τῆς Κορυλα λέγειν· καὶ γὰρ ἦν πρόξενος αὐτῶ· οἱ δὲ καὶ ὡς δῶρα ληψόμενον διὰ τὴν συμβουλήν ταύτην· οἱ δὲ ὑπόπτειον καὶ τούτου ἔνεκα λέγειν ὡς μὴ πεζῇ ἰόντες τὴν Σινωπέων τι χώραν κακὸν ἐργάζονται. οἱ δ' οὖν Ἕλληνες ἐψηφίσαντο κατὰ θάλατταν τὴν πορείαν ποιῆσθαι. μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· ὦ Σινωπεῖς, οἱ μὲν ἄνδρες ἡρῆνται πορείαν ἣν ὑμεῖς συμβουλεύετε· οὕτω δὲ ἔχει· εἰ μὲν μέλλει πλοῖα ἔσεσθαι ἱκανὰ ὡς ἀριθμῶ ἓνα μὴ καταλείπεσθαι ἐνθάδε, ἡμεῖς ἂν πλείομεν· εἰ δὲ μέλλομεν οἱ μὲν καταλείψεσθαι οἱ δὲ πλείσεσθαι, οὐκ ἂν ἐμβαίημεν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα. γινώσκομεν γὰρ ὅτι ὅπου μὲν

κλείψαι ἢ φθάσαι λαβόντες καὶ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ κρατῆσαι μαχόμενοι τοὺς  
 τε ἰπέας τούτων καὶ **πέζα?:** countless, **λέον ἢ δώδεκα,** ἤξετε ἐπὶ τοὺς  
 ποταμούς, πρῶτον μὲν **πρόσθετον** Ἰερμαίνοντα, **width;** , **30 meters or**  
**;** or **(caps) the** its square  
 χαλεπὸν οἶμαι **pass over** **πεζός?:** on **τε** καὶ **πο** **east wind** ἁλῶν ἔμπροσθεν  
 ὄντων, πολλῶν δὲ ὄπισθεν ἐπομένων· δεύτερον δὲ Ἴριν, τρίπλεθρον  
 ὡσαύτως· τρίτον δὲ **Ἰρίν,** οὐ **less,** ὅ **ἴν** **στάδιον?:** 200 me- enter, put on,  
**smaller** **ters** (pl also masc) strip off  
 ἄνευ πλοίων **pass over, cross** **ἢ τίς ἐστὶν** ; or **στάδιος?:** (adj) ὄτως καὶ  
**standing upright,**  
 ὁ Παρθένιος ἄβατος· ἐφ' ὃν ἔλθοιτε ἄν, **firm; (pl noun) 200**  
**meters**  
 μὲν οὖν οὐ χαλεπὴν ὑμῖν εἶναι νομίζω τὴν πορείαν ἀλλὰ παντάπασιν  
 ἀδύνατον. ἂν δὲ πλέητε, ἔστω **hence** μὲν εἰς Σινώπην **sail past**  
 ἐκ Σινώπης δὲ εἰς Ἡρακλείαν· ἐξ Ἡρακλείας δὲ οὔτε πεζῇ οὔτε κατὰ  
 θάλατταν **difficulty,** **ἄ** λὰ γὰρ καὶ πλοῖα ἐστὶν ἐν Ἡρακλείᾳ.  
**bottleneck**  
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτ' ἔλεξεν, οἱ μὲν **guess,** **φιλία?:** friendship **;** or **φίλος?:** friend;  
**observe, be** beloved  
 λέγειν· καὶ γὰρ ἦν **doing** **certain** **suspicious** δὲ καὶ ὡς δῶρα ληψόμενον  
**public duties**  
 διὰ τὴν ξυμβουλὴν ταύτην· οἱ δὲ **guess, observe, be** ἵτου ἕνεκα λέγειν  
**suspicious of**  
 ὡς μὴ πεζῇ ἰόντες τὴν Σινωπέων τι χώραν κακὸν ἐργάζοιντο. οἱ  
 δ' οὖν Ἕλληνες ἐψηφίσαντο κατὰ θάλατταν τὴν πορείαν ποιείσθαι.  
 μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· **type of fruit** οἱ μὲν ἄνδρες ἤρηνται  
 πορείαν ἦν ὑμεῖς ξυμβουλευέετε· οὕτω δὲ ἔχει· εἰ μὲν μέλλει πλοῖα  
 ἔσσεσθαι ἱκανὰ ὡς ἀριθμῶ ἕνα μὴ καταλείπεσθαι ἐνθάδε, ἡμεῖς ἂν  
 πλέοιμεν· εἰ δὲ μέλλοιμεν οἱ μὲν καταλείψεσθαι οἱ δὲ πλείεσθαι,  
 οὐκ ἂν ἐμβαίημεν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα. **γνωσόμεν** γὰρ ὅτι ὅπου μὲν

supposing you were able to seize the mountain barrier, by stealth, or expedition, before the enemy could stop you; supposing further, you were able to win an engagement in the plain against not only their cavalry but their more than one hundred and twenty thousand infantry— you will only find yourself face to face with rivers, a series of them. First the Thermodon, three hundred feet broad, which I take it will be difficult to pass, especially with a host of foes in front and another following behind. Next comes the Iris river, three hundred feet broad; and thirdly, the Halys, at least two furlongs broad, which you could not possibly cross without vessels, and who is going to supply you with vessels? In the same way too the Parthenius is impassable, which you will reach if you cross the Halys. For my part, then, I consider the land-journey, I will not say difficult, but absolutely impossible for you. Whereas if you go by sea, you can coast along from here to Sinope, and from Sinope to Heraclea. From Heraclea onwards there is no difficulty, whether by land or by sea; for there are plenty of vessels at Heraclea.”

After he had finished his remarks, some of his hearers thought they detected a certain bias in them. He would not have spoken so, but for his friendship with Corylas, whose official representative he was. Others guessed he had an itching palm, and that he was hoping to receive a present for his “sacred advice.” Others again suspected that his object was to prevent their going by foot and doing some mischief to the country of the Sinopeans. However that might be, the Hellenes voted in favour of continuing the journey by sea. After this Xenophon said: “Sinopeans, the army has chosen that method of procedure which you advise, and thus the matter stands. If there are sure to be vessels enough to make it impossible for a single man to be left behind, go by sea we will; but if part of us are to be left while part go by sea, we will not set foot on board the vessels. One fact we plainly recognise, strength is everything to us. So long as we have the mastery, we shall be able to protect ourselves and get provisions; but if we



*vocabulary***ἀνδράποδον** (m/n, 3) slave**ἀνθέω** sprout**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive**βέλτιστος** best, noblest**δέκα** ten ~decimal**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,**ἐξαποδύνω****εἰσίημι** (mid) speed to**ἐκφέρω** carry off**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἥμερος** domesticated**θύω** rush; sacrifice**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit**ἱκάνω** reach, arrive at**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also**ἵππιοχάρμης****κρατέω** rule ~democracy**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
infantryman**οὔτις** nobody, nothing**πελταστής** (m) light troops**πλήθος** -ος (3) numerical superiority**πού** no doubt; somewhere/how**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army**στρατιά** army**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary**τοξότης** (m, 1) archer**τοσοῦτος** so much**τρισχίλιοι** 3000**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions**χώρα** place

ἂν κρατῶμεν, δυναίμεθ' ἂν καὶ σῆζεσθαι καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχειν· εἰ δέ που ἤττους τῶν πολεμίων ληφθησόμεθα, εὐδηλον δὴ ὅτι ἐν ἀνδραπόδων χώρα ἐσόμεθα. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ πρέσβεις ἐκέλευον πέμπειν πρέσβεις. καὶ πέμπουσι Καλλίμαχον Ἀρκάδα καὶ Ἀρίστωνα Ἀθηναῖον καὶ Σαμόλαν Ἀχαιόν. καὶ οἱ μὲν ᾤχοντο.

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ Ξενοφῶντι, ὁρῶντι μὲν ὀπίστας πολλοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ὁρῶντι δὲ πελταστὰς πολλοὺς καὶ τοξότας καὶ σφενδομήτας καὶ ἰππέας δὲ καὶ μάλα ἤδη διὰ τὴν τριβὴν ἱκανοὺς, ὄντας δ' ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ, ἔνθα οὐκ ἂν ἀπ' ὀλίγων χρημάτων τοσαύτη δύναμις παρεσκευάσθη, καλὸν αὐτῷ ἐδόκει εἶναι χώραν καὶ δύναμιν τῇ Ἑλλάδι προσκτήσασθαι πόλιν κατοικήσαντας. καὶ γενέσθαι ἂν αὐτῷ ἐδόκει μεγάλη, καταλογιζομένῳ τό τε αὐτῶν πλῆθος καὶ τοὺς περιοικοῦντας τὸν Πόντον. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις ἐθύετο πρὶν τι εἰπεῖν τῶν στρατιωτῶν Σιλανὸν παρακαλέσας τὸν Κύρου μάντιν γενόμενον τὸν Ἀμπρακιώτην. ὁ δὲ Σιλανὸς δεδιὼς μὴ γένηται ταῦτα καὶ καταμείνη που ἢ στρατιά, ἐκφέρει εἰς τὸ σπράτευμα λόγον ὅτι Ξενοφῶν βούλεται καταμείναι τὴν στρατιὰν καὶ πόλιν οἰκίσει καὶ ἑαυτῷ ὄνομα καὶ δύναμιν περιποιήσασθαι. αὐτὸς δ' ὁ Σιλανὸς ἐβούλετο ὅτι τάχιστα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀφικέσθαι· οὗς γὰρ παρὰ Κύρου ἔλαβε τρισχιλίους δαρεικοὺς ὅτε τὰς δέκα ἡμέρας ἠλήθευσε θνόμενος Κύρῳ, διεσεσώκει. τῶν δὲ στρατιωτῶν, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσαν, τοῖς μὲν ἐδόκει βέλτιστον εἶναι καταμείναι, τοῖς δὲ πολλοῖς οὐ. Τυμασίῳ δὲ ὁ Δαρδανεὺς καὶ

ἂν κρατῶμεν, |enter, put ὄν, καὶ σήξασθαι καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχειν·  
 |strip off  
 εἰ δέ που ἦπτους τῶν πολεμίων ληφθησόμεθα, εὐδηλον δὴ ὅτι ἐν  
 |slave χώρα ἐσόμεθα. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ πρέσβεις ἐκέλευον  
 πέμπειν πρέσβεις. καὶ πέμπουσι Καλλίμαχον Ἀρκάδα καὶ Ἀρίστωνα  
 Ἀθηναῖον καὶ Σαμόλαν Ἀχαιοῖν. καὶ οἱ μὲν ᾤχοντο.

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ Ξενοφῶντι, ὀρώντι μὲν ὀπλίτας πολλοὺς  
 τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ὀρώντι δὲ |light πολλοὺς καὶ |archer καὶ  
 |troops σφενδονήτας καὶ ἰππέας δὲ καὶ μάλα ἤδη διὰ τὴν τριβὴν ἱκανοὺς,  
 ὄντας δ' ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ, ἔνθα οὐκ ἂν ἀπ' ὀλίγων χρημάτων τοσαύτη  
 δύναμις παρεσκευάσθη, καλὸν αὐτῷ ἐδόκει εἶναι χώραν καὶ δύναμιν  
 τῇ Ἑλλάδι προσκλήσασθαι πόλιν κατοικίσαντας. καὶ γενέσθαι ἂν  
 αὐτῷ ἐδόκει μεγάλη, καταλογιζομένῳ τό τε αὐτῶν πλῆθος καὶ τοὺς  
 περιοικοῦντας τὸν Πόντον. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις ἐθύετο πρὶν τι εἰπεῖν τῶν  
 στρατιωτῶν Σιλανὸν παρακαλέσας τὸν Κύρου |seer γενόμενον τὸν  
 Ἀμπρακιώτην. ὁ δὲ Σιλανὸς δεδιὼς μὴ γένηται ταῦτα καὶ καταμείνη  
 που ἢ στρατιά, ἐκφέρει εἰς τὸ στράτευμα λόγον ὅτι Ξενοφῶν βούλεται  
 καταμείναι τὴν στρατιὰν καὶ πόλιν οἰκίσει καὶ ἑαυτῷ ὄνομα καὶ  
 δύναμιν περιποιήσασθαι. αὐτὸς δ' ὁ Σιλανὸς ἐβούλετο ὅτι τάχιστα  
 εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀφικέσθαι· οὗς γὰρ παρὰ Κύρου ἔλαβε |3000  
 δαρεικοὺς ὅτε τὰς δέκα ἡμέρας ἠλήθευσε θυόμενος Κύρῳ, διεσεσώκει.  
 τῶν δὲ στρατιωτῶν, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσαν, τοῖς μὲν ἐδόκει |best, εἶναι  
 |noblest καταμείναι, τοῖς δὲ πολλοῖς οὐ. Τιμασίῳν δὲ ὁ Δαρδανεὺς καὶ

are once caught at the mercy of our foes, it is plain, we shall be reduced to slavery.” On hearing this the ambassadors bade them send an embassy, which they did, to wit, Callimachus the Arcadian, and Ariston the Athenian, and Samolas the Achaean.

So these set off, but meanwhile a thought shaped itself in the mind of Xenophon, as there before his eyes lay that vast army of Hellenic hoplites, and that other array of peltasts, archers, and slingers, with cavalry to boot, and all in a state of thorough efficiency from long practice, hardened veterans, and all collected in Pontus, where to raise so large a force would cost a mint of money. Then the idea dawned upon him: how noble an opportunity to acquire new territory and power for Hellas, by the founding of a colony— a city of no mean size, moreover, said he to himself, as he reckoned up their own numbers— and besides themselves a population planted on the shores of Pontus. Thereupon he summoned Silanus the Ambraciot, the soothsayer of Cyrus above mentioned, and before breathing a syllable to any of the soldiers, he consulted the victims by sacrifice.

But Silanus, in apprehension lest these ideas might embody themselves, and the army be permanently halted at some point or other, set a tale going among the men, to the effect that Xenophon was minded to detain the army and found a city in order to win himself a name and acquire power, Silanus himself being minded to reach Hellas with all possible speed, for the simple reason that he had still got the three thousand darics presented to him by Cyrus on the occasion of the sacrifice when he hit the truth so happily about the ten days. Silanus’s story was variously received, some few of the soldiers thinking it would be an excellent thing to stay in that country; but the majority were strongly averse. The next incident was that Timasion the Dardanian, with Thorax the Boeotian, addressed themselves to some Heracleot and Sinopean traders who had come to Cotyora, and told them that if

*vocabulary*

**ἄγνυμι** break  
**ἀκέομαι** heal, fix  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
**ἀφήκω**  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**ἐκὼν** willingly  
**ἔμπορος** passenger  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐξαίφνης** suddenly  
**ἐπειδὴν** when  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔρομαι** ask, search through; also  
**ἀνέρομαι, εἴρομαι, ἐξείρομαι, ἐξέρομαι**  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**κατέχω** hold down; cover; also  
**κατασχεθεῖν**  
**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)  
 there is a danger that

**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἴκοι** at home  
**οἰκουμένη** inhabited  
**ὀνίνημι** help, please, be available  
**ὅπη** wherever, however  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**προσέχω** direct a thing to  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**σύλλογος** meeting  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπάρχω** start, lead, set an example  
**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do; also  
**ὑπίσχομαι**  
**φυγᾶς** -δος (m, 3) exile, refugee  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also **καταχέω**  
**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**χώρα** place

Θώραξ ὁ Βοιώτιος πρὸς ἐμπόρους τινὰς παρόντας τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν  
 καὶ Σιλωπέων λέγουσιν ὅτι εἰ μὴ ἐκποριοῦσι τῇ στρατιᾷ μισθὸν  
 ὥστε ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐκπλέοντας, ὅτι κινδυνεύσει μείναι τοσαύτη  
 δύναμις ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ· βούλεται γὰρ Ξενοφῶν καὶ ἡμᾶς παρακαλεῖ,  
 ἐπειδὴν ἔλθῃ τὰ πλοῖα, τότε εἰπεῖν ἐξαίφνης τῇ στρατιᾷ· Ἄνδρες, νῦν  
 μὲν ὀρώμεν ὑμᾶς ἀπόρους ὄντας καὶ ἐν τῷ ἀπόπλῳ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια  
 καὶ ὡς οἴκαδε ἀπελθόντας ὀνῆσαι τι τοὺς οἴκοι· εἰ δὲ βούλεσθε  
 τῆς κύκλῳ χώρας περὶ τὸν Πόντον οἰκουμένης ἐκλεξάμενοι ὅποι ἂν  
 βούλησθε κατασχεῖν, καὶ τὸν μὲν ἐθέλοντα ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε, τὸν δ'  
 ἐθέλοντα μένειν αὐτοῦ, πλοῖα δ' ὑμῖν πάρεστιν, ὥστε ὅπη ἂν βούλησθε  
 ἐξαίφνης ἂν ἐπιπέσοιτε. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ ἔμποροι ἀπήγγελλον  
 ταῖς πόλεσι· ξυνέπεμψε δ' αὐτοῖς Τιμασίῳν Δαρδανεύς Εὐρύμαχόν τε  
 τὸν Δαρδανέα καὶ Θώρακα τὸν Βοιώτιον ταῦτὰ ἐροῦντας. Σιλωπεῖς  
 δὲ καὶ Ἡρακλεῶται ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες πέμπουσι πρὸς τὸν Τιμασίωνα  
 καὶ κελεύουσι προστατεῦσαι λαβόντα χρήματα ὅπως ἐκπλεύσῃ ἡ  
 στρατιά. ὁ δὲ ἄσμενος ἀκούσας ἐν ξυλλόγῳ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὄντων  
 λέγει τάδε. Οὐ δεῖ προσέχειν μονῇ, ὦ ἄνδρες, οὐδὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος  
 οὐδὲν περὶ πλείονος ποιεῖσθαι. ἀκούω δέ τινος θύεσθαι ἐπὶ τούτῳ  
 οὐδ' ὑμῖν λέγοντας. ὑπισχνοῦμαι δὲ ὑμῖν, ἂν ἐκπλέητε, ἀπὸ νομηγίας  
 μισθοφορὰν παρέξειν κυζικηνὸν ἐκάστῳ τοῦ μηνός· καὶ ἄξω ὑμᾶς  
 εἰς τὴν Τρωάδα, ἔνθεν καί εἰμι φυγᾶς, καὶ ὑπάρξει ὑμῖν ἡ ἐμὴ  
 πόλις· ἐκόντες γὰρ με δέξονται. ἡγήσομαι δὲ αὐτὸς ἐγὼ ἔνθεν

Θώραξ ὁ Βοιώτιος πρὸς **|passenger** *ὡς παρόντας τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν*  
*καὶ Σινωπέων λέγουσιν ὅτι εἰ μὴ ἐκποριοῦσι τῇ στρατιᾷ μισθὸν*  
*ὥστε ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐκπλέοντας, ὅτι κινδυνεύσει μείναι τοσαύτη*  
*δύναμις ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ· βούλεται γὰρ Ξενοφῶν καὶ ἡμᾶς παρακαλεῖ,*  
**|when** *ἔλθῃ τὰ πλοῖα, τότε εἰπεῖν* **|suddenly** *ἡ στρατιᾷ· Ἄνδρες, νῦν*  
*μὲν ὀρώμεν ὑμᾶς ἀπόρους ὄντας καὶ ἐν τῷ ἀπόπλῳ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια*  
*καὶ ὡς οἴκαδε ἀπελθόντας* **|help, please, ; οἴκοι· εἰ δὲ βούλεσθε**  
*τῆς* **|circle, χώρας περὶ τὸν Πόντον** **|be available**  
**|wheel** **|οἰκουμένη?:** *inhabited* *ὅποι ἂν*  
*βούλησθε κατασχεῖν, καὶ τὸν μὲν ἐθέλοντα ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε, τὸν δ'*  
*ἐθέλοντα μένειν αὐτοῦ, πλοῖα δ' ὑμῖν πάρεστιν, ὥστε ὅπῃ ἂν βούλησθε*  
**|suddenly** *ἔπιπέσοιτε. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ* **|passenger** *ἠγγελλον*  
*ταῖς πόλεσι· ξυνέπεμψε δ' αὐτοῖς Τιμασίῳν Δαρδανεὺς Εὐρύμαχόν τε*  
*τὸν Δαρδανέα καὶ Θώρακα τὸν Βοιώτιον* **|identi-ask, search through**  
*δὲ καὶ Ἡρακλεῶται ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες πέμπονσι πρὸς τὸν Τιμασίῳνα*  
*καὶ κελεύουσι προστατεῦσαι λαβόντα χρήματα ὅπως ἐκπλεύσῃ ἡ*  
*στρατιά. ὁ δὲ ἄσμενος* **|ἀκέομαι?:** **|meeting** *τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὄντων*  
*λέγει τάδε. Οὐ δεῖ πρὸς* **|οἰκέω?:** *ἡ, ὦ ἄνδρες, οὐδὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος*  
**|hear, listen**  
*οὐδὲν περὶ πλείονος ποιῆσθαι. ἀκούω δὲ τινος θύεσθαι ἐπὶ τούτῳ*  
*οὐδ' ὑμῖν λέγοντας.* **|promise, δὲ ὑμῖν, ἂν ἐκπλήτε, ἀπὸ νομηγίας**  
**|agree to do**  
*μισθοφορὰν παρέξειν κυζικηνὸν ἐκάστῳ τοῦ μηνός· καὶ* **|ἄγνομι?:** *break ; or*  
**|ἄγω?:** *lead, bring*  
*εἰς τὴν Τρωάδα, ἔνθεν καὶ εἰμι* **|φυγᾶς?:** *exile, refugee ; or φυγῆ?:* *flight,*  
**|means of escape**  
*πόλις· ἐκόντες γὰρ με δέξονται. ἠγήσομαι δὲ αὐτὸς ἐγὼ ἔνθεν*

they did not find means to furnish the army with pay sufficient to keep them in provisions on the homeward voyage, all that great force would most likely settle down permanently in Pontus. "Xenophon has a pet idea," they continued, "which he urges upon us. We are to wait until the ships come, and then we are suddenly to turn round to the army and say: 'Soldiers, we now see the straits we are in, unable to keep ourselves in provisions on the return voyage, or to make our friends at home a little present at the end of our journey. But if you like to select some place on the inhabited seaboard of the Black Sea which may take your fancy and there put in, this is open to you to do. Those who like to go home, go; those who care to stay here, stay. You have got vessels now, so that you can make a sudden pounce upon any point you choose.'"

The merchants went off with this tale and reported it to every city they came to in turn, nor did they go alone, but Timasion the Dardanian sent a fellow-citizen of his own, Eurymachus, with the Boeotian Thorax, to repeat the same story. So when it reached the ears of the men of Sinope and the Heracleots, they sent to Timasion and pressed him to accept of a gratuity, in return for which he was to arrange for the departure of the troops. Timasion was only too glad to hear this, and he took the opportunity when the soldiers were convened in meeting to make the following remarks: "Soldiers," he said, "do not set your thoughts on staying here; let Hellas, and Hellas only, be the object of your affection, for I am told that certain persons have been sacrificing on this very question, without saying a word to you. Now I can promise you, if you once leave these waters, to furnish you with regular monthly pay, dating from the first of the month, at the rate of one cyzicene a head per month. I will bring you to the Troad, from which part I am an



*vocabulary*

**ἀγορεύω** speak in assembly, give counsel  
**αἰδέομαι** respect, be ashamed  
**ἀμείνων** better  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
**ἄπτω** set on fire; attach; mid: touch, seize ~haptic  
**αὐθις** back, again, moreover ~after  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also ἀφήνω  
**βάβαρος** non-Greek  
**γέλοιος** amusing  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about  
**ἐκεῖ** there  
**ἐκεῖθεν** from there, then  
**ἐνοικέω** dwell in  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**ἴδιος** private, personal

**ἱερόν** holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph; also ἱερόν, ἱερός, ἱρός  
**κάλωξ** halyard  
**κεῖμαι** lie  
**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis  
**μηδέ** and not; not even  
**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics  
**ὅποῖος** whatever kind  
**ὅποσος** as/how many/great  
**παντάπασι** altogether; yes, certainly  
**πάσσω** sprinkle; insert in a web  
**πράγμα** -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing, affair  
**σιγάω** be silent  
**στρατηγία** office of command  
**στρατιά** army  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπεῖπον** say as preface, premise  
**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do; also ὑπίσχομαι  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χοῦμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**χώρα** place

πολλὰ χρήματα λήψεσθε. ἔμπειρος δέ εἰμι τῆς Αἰολίδος καὶ τῆς Φρυγίας καὶ τῆς Τρωάδος καὶ τῆς Φαρναβάζου ἀρχῆς πάσης, τὰ μὲν διὰ τὸ ἐκεῖθεν εἶναι, τὰ δὲ διὰ τὸ ξυνεστρατεῦσθαι ἐν αὐτῇ σὺν Κλεάρχῳ τε καὶ Δερκυλίδῃ. ἀναστὰς αὖθις Θώραξ ὁ Βοιώτιος, ὃς περὶ στρατηγίας Ξενοφῶντι ἐμάχετο, ἔφη, εἰ ἐξέλθοιεν ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου, ἔσσεσθαι αὐτοῖς Χερρόνησον χώραν καλὴν καὶ εὐδαίμονα ὥστε τῷ βουλομένῳ ἐνοικεῖν, τῷ δὲ μὴ βουλομένῳ ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε. γελοῖον δὲ εἶναι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι οὔσης χώρας πολλῆς καὶ ἀφθόνου ἐν τῇ βαρβάρων μαστεύειν. ἔστε δ' ἄν, ἔφη, ἐκεῖ γένησθε, καγὼ καθάπερ Τιμασίῳν ὑπισχνοῦμαι ὑμῖν τὴν μισθοφοράν. ταῦτα δὲ ἔλεγεν εἰδὼς ἂ Τιμασίῳνι οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται καὶ οἱ Σινοπεῖς ὑπισχνοῦντο ὥστε ἐκπλεῖν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐν τούτῳ ἐσίγα. ἀναστὰς δὲ Φιλίσιος καὶ Λύκων οἱ Ἀχαιοὶ ἔλεγον ὡς δεῖν ἔἰη ἰδίᾳ μὲν Ξενοφῶντα πείθειν τε καταμένειν καὶ θύεσθαι ὑπὲρ τῆς μονῆς μὴ κοινούμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ, εἰς δὲ τὸ κοινὸν μηδὲν ἀγορεύειν περὶ τούτων. ὥστε ἠναγκάσθη ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἀναστῆναι καὶ εἰπεῖν τάδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, θύομαι μὲν ὡς ὁρᾶτε ὅποσα δύναμαι καὶ ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν καὶ ὑπὲρ ἑμαντοῦ ὅπως ταῦτα τυγχάνω καὶ λέγων καὶ νοῶν καὶ πράττων ὅποια μέλλει ὑμῖν τε κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα ἔσσεσθαι καὶ ἐμοί. καὶ νῦν ἐθνόμην περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου, εἰ ἄμεινον εἴη ἄρχεσθαι λέγειν εἰς ὑμᾶς καὶ πράττειν περὶ τούτων ἢ παντάπασι μηδὲ ἀπτεσθαι τοῦ πράγματος. Σιλανὸς δέ μοι ὁ μάντις ἀπεκρίνατο τὸ μὲν μέγιστον, τὰ ἱερά καλά εἶναι· ἦδει γὰρ

πολλὰ χρήματα λήψεσθε. ἔμπειρος δέ εἰμι τῆς Αἰολίδος καὶ τῆς Φρυγίας καὶ τῆς Τρωάδος καὶ τῆς Φαρναβάζου ἀρχῆς πάσης, τὰ μὲν διὰ τὸ |ἐξεῖμι?: go forth<sup>1</sup>; or ἐκεῖ?: νεστρατεῦσθαι ἐν αὐτῇ σὺν Κλεάρχῳ τε καὶ Δερκυλίδῃ. ἀναστὰς αὐθις Θώραξ ὁ Βοιώτιος, ὃς περὶ |office of command<sup>1</sup> ἔντι ἐμάχετο, ἔφη, εἰ ἐξέλθοιεν ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου, ἔσσεσθαι αὐτοῖς Χερρόνησον χώραν καλὴν καὶ |blessed with a good genius ὥστε τῷ βουλομένῳ |dwell in τῷ δὲ μὴ βουλομένῳ ἀπιέναι οὐκάδε. |amusing<sup>1</sup> εἶναι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι οὔσης χώρας πολλῆς καὶ ἀφθόνου ἐν τῇ βαρβάρων μαστεύειν. ἔστε δ' ἄν, ἔφη, ἐκεῖ γένησθε, καὶ γὰρ καθάπερ Τιμασίῳ |promise, ἴμῃν τὴν μισθοφοράν. ταῦτα δὲ ἔλεγεν εἰδὼς ἂ Τιμασίῳ |agree to do οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται καὶ οἱ Σινοπεῖς ὑπισχνοῦντο ὥστε ἐκπλεῖν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐν τούτῳ |be silent ἄστὰς δὲ Φιλίσιος καὶ Λύκων οἱ Ἄχαιοι ἔλεγον ὡς δεῖν εἶναι ἰδίᾳ μὲν Ξενοφῶντα πείθειν τε καταμένειν καὶ θύεσθαι ὑπὲρ τῆς μονῆς μὴ κοινούμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ, εἰς δὲ τὸ κοινὸν μηδὲν ἀγορεύειν περὶ τούτων. ὥστε ἠναγκάσθη ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἀναστῆναι καὶ εἰπεῖν τάδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, θύομαι μὲν ὡς ὁρᾶτε |as/how many/great<sup>1</sup> ἔρ ὑμῶν καὶ ὑπὲρ ἑμαυτοῦ ὅπως ταῦτα τυγχάνω καὶ λέγων καὶ νοῶν καὶ πράττων |whatever<sup>1</sup> kind<sup>1</sup>, ἴν τε κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα ἔσσεσθαι καὶ ἐμοί. καὶ νῦν ἐθυόμην περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου, εἰ ἄμεινον εἶναι ἄρχεσθαι λέγειν εἰς ὑμᾶς καὶ πράττειν περὶ τούτων ἢ παντάπασιν μηδὲ ἀπτεσθαι τοῦ πράγματος. Σιλανὸς δὲ μοι ὁ |seer ἀπεκρίνατο τὸ μὲν μέγιστον, τὰ ἱερά καλὰ εἶναι· ἦδαι γὰρ

exile, and my own state is at your service. They will receive me with open arms. I will be your guide personally, and I will take you to places where you will get plenty of money. I know every corner of the Aeolid, and Phrygia, and the Troad, and indeed the whole satrapy of Pharnabazus, partly because it is my birthplace, partly from campaigns in that region with Clearchus and Dercylidas.”

No sooner had he ceased than up got Thorax the Boeotian. This was a man who had a standing battle with Xenophon about the generalship of the army. What he said was that, if they once got fairly out of the Euxine, there was the Chersonese, a beautiful and prosperous country, where they could settle or not, as they chose. Those who liked could stay; and those who liked could return to their homes; how ridiculous then, when there was so much territory in Hellas and to spare, to be poking about in the land of the barbarian. “But until you find yourselves there,” he added, “I, no less than Timasion, can guarantee you regular pay.” This he said, knowing what promises had been made Timasion by the men of Heraclea and Sinope to induce them to set sail.

Meanwhile Xenophon held his peace. Then up got Philesius and Lycon, two Achaeans: “It was monstrous,” they said, “that Xenophon should be privately persuading people to stop there, and consulting the victims for that end, without letting the army into the secret, or breathing a syllable in public about the matter.” When it came to this, Xenophon was forced to get up, and speak as follows: “Sirs, you are well aware that my habit is to sacrifice at all times; whether in your own behalf or my own, I strive in every thought, word, and deed to be directed as is best for yourselves and for me. And in the present instance my sole object was to learn whether it were better even so much as to broach the subject, and so take action, or to have absolutely nothing to do with the project. Now Silanus the soothsayer assured me by his answer of what was the main point: ‘the victims were favourable.’ No doubt Silanus knew that I was

not unversed myself in



*vocabulary*

**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**αἰέρω** raise, win ~aorta; also αἴρω  
**αἴρω** raise, win ~aorta; also αἰέρω  
**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail  
**ἀποπλέω** sail away  
**ἀράομαι** pray, vow, invoke  
**ἀσφαλῆς** going ahead, standing firm  
**ἀφήμι** throw, release, use up; also  
 ἀφήκω  
**βοάω** shout  
**διαβάλλω** throw across; slander  
**δόλος** trick, bait  
**ἐκφέρω** carry off  
**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm  
**ἐπιβουλή** a plot, scheme  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἱερός** (2) holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph;  
 also ἱερή, ἱερόν, ἱρός  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**κρατέω** rule ~democracy  
**κρίνω** sift, separate, choose ~critic

**κτάομαι** acquire, possess (κτῆμα)  
**μέντοι** however  
**μικρός** small; also σμικρός  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**ὁμός** same  
**ὁμοῦ** together  
**ὀπόσος** as/how many/great  
**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow  
**παύω** stop something ~pause  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**σώζω** save  
**τροφή** support, maintenance  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do; also  
 ὑπίσχομαι  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χαίρω** rejoice ~eucharist  
**χειρών** worse, more base  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**χρή** it is necessary, must, should  
 ~chresard  
**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

καὶ ἐμὲ οὐκ ἄπειρον ὄντα διὰ τὸ αἰεὶ παρεῖναι τοῖς ἱεροῖς· ἔλεξε δὲ ὅτι ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς φαίνοιτό τις δόλος καὶ ἐπιβουλὴ ἐμοί, ὡς ἄρα γινώσκων ὅτι αὐτὸς ἐπεβούλευε διαβάλλειν με πρὸς ὑμᾶς. ἐξήνεγκε γὰρ τὸν λόγον ὡς ἐγὼ πράττειν ταῦτα διανοοίμην ἤδη οὐ πείσας ὑμᾶς. ἐγὼ δὲ εἰ μὲν ἐώρων ἀποροῦντας ὑμᾶς, τοῦτ' ἂν ἐσκόπουν ἀφ' οὗ ἂν γένοιτο ὥστε λαβόντας ὑμᾶς πόλιν τὸν μὲν βουλόμενον ἀποπλεῖν ἤδη, τὸν δὲ μὴ βουλόμενον, ἐπεὶ κτήσαιτο ἱκανὰ ὥστε καὶ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ οἰκείους ὠφελῆσαί τι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὀρῶ ὑμῖν καὶ τὰ πλοῖα πέμποντας Ἡρακλεώτας καὶ Σινωπέας ὥστε ἐκπλεῖν, καὶ μισθὸν ὑπισχνουμένους ὑμῖν ἄνδρας ἀπὸ νομηνίας, καλὸν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι σαζομένους ἔνθα βουλόμεθα μισθὸν τῆς σωτηρίας λαμβάνειν, καὶ αὐτὸς τε παύομαι ἐκείνης τῆς διανοίας, καὶ ὅποσοι πρὸς ἐμὲ προσῆσαν λέγοντες ὡς χρῆ ταῦτα πράττειν, ἀναπαύεσθαι φημι χρῆναι. οὕτω γὰρ γινώσκω· ὁμοῦ μὲν ὄντες πολλοὶ ὥσπερ νυνὶ δοκεῖτε ἂν μοι καὶ ἔντιμοι εἶναι καὶ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· ἐν γὰρ τῷ κρατεῖν ἐστὶ καὶ τὸ λαμβάνειν τὰ τῶν ἡττόνων· διασπασθέντες δ' ἂν καὶ κατὰ μικρὰ γενομένης τῆς δυνάμεως οὕτ' ἂν τροφὴν δύνασθε λαμβάνειν οὔτε χαίροντες ἂν ἀπαλλάξαιτε. δοκεῖ οὖν μοι ἄπερ ὑμῖν, ἐκπορεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ ἐάν τις μέντοι ἀπολιπὼν ληφθῆ πρὶν ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ εἶναι πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα, κρίνεσθαι αὐτὸν ὡς ἀδικοῦντα. καὶ ὅτ' αὐτὸς δοκεῖ, ἔφη, ταῦτα, ἀράτω τὴν χεῖρα. ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. ὁ δὲ Σιλανὸς ἐβόα, καὶ ἐπεχείρει λέγειν ὡς δίκαιον εἶναι ἀπιέναι τὸν



καὶ ἐμὲ οὐκ ἄπειρον ὄντα διὰ τὸ αἰεὶ παρεῖναι τοῖς ἱεροῖς· ἔλεξε δὲ ὅτι ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς φαίνοντο τις δόλος καὶ |a plot, scheme' ὡς ἄρα γινώσκων ὅτι αὐτὸς |plot, plan, throw |harm |across; γὰρ τὸν λόγον ὡς ἐγὼ πράττει|slander διανοοίμην ἤδη οὐ |πεισα?: obedience, subjection ὑμᾶς. ἐγὼ δὲ εἰ μὲν ἐώρων ἀποροῦντας ὑμᾶς, τοῦτ' ἂν ἐσοί|όποιος πάσχω?: suffer ; or πείθω?: ἀφ' οὗ ἂν γένοιτο ὥστε λαβόντας ὑμᾶς πόλιν τὸν μὲν βουλο|persuade ἀποπλεῖν ἤδη, τὸν δὲ μὴ βουλόμενον, ἐπεὶ κτήσαιτο ἱκανὰ ὥστε καὶ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ οἰκείους ὠφελῆσαί τι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὄρω ὑμῖν καὶ τὰ πλοῖα πέμποντας Ἡρακλεώτας καὶ Σινωπέας ὥστε ἐκπλεῖν, καὶ μισθὸν |promise, agree ὑμῖν ἄνδρας ἀπὸ νομηγίας, καλὸν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι |to do σαφζομένους ἔνθα βουλόμεθα μισθὸν τῆς σωτηρίας λαμβάνειν, καὶ αὐτὸς τε παύομαι ἐκέλης τῆς διανοίας, καὶ |as/how many/great ἦσαν λέγοντες ὡς χρή ταῦτα πράττειν, |cause to cease' ἡμι χρῆναι. οὕτω γὰρ γινώσκω· ὁμοῦ μὲν ὄντες πολλοὶ ὥσπερ νυνὶ δοκεῖτε ἂν μοι καὶ ἔντιμοι εἶναι καὶ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· ἐν γὰρ τῷ κρατεῖν ἐστὶ καὶ τὸ λαμβάνειν τὰ τῶν ἡττόνων· |tear apart δ' ἂν καὶ κατὰ μικρὰ γενομένης τῆς δυνάμεως οὗτ' ἂν τροφήν |enter, put on, ζάνειν οὔτε |strip off χαίροντες ἂν ἀπαλλάξαιτε. δοκεῖ οὖν μοι ἄπερ ὑμῖν, ἐκπορεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ ἐάν τις μέντοι |leave ληφθῆ πρὶν ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ |behind, εἶναι πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα, κρίνεσθαι |fail ὑτὸν ὡς ἀδικοῦντα. καὶ ὅτω δοκεῖ, ἔφη, ταῦτα, ἀράτω τὴν χεῖρα. ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. ὁ δὲ Σιλανὸς ἐβόα, καὶ ἐπεχείρει λέγειν ὡς δίκαιον εἶη ἀπιέναι τὸν

his lore, as I have so often assisted at the sacrifice; but he added that there were symptoms in the victims of some guile or conspiracy against me. That was a happy discovery on his part, seeing that he was himself conspiring at the moment to traduce me before you; since it was he who set the tale going that I had actually made up my mind to carry out these projects without procuring your consent. Now, for my part, if I saw that you were in any difficulties, I should set myself to discover how you might capture a city, on the understanding of course that all who wished might sail away at once, leaving those who did not wish, to follow at a later date, with something perhaps in their pockets to benefit their friends at home. Now, however, as I see that the men of Heraclea and Sinope are to send you ships to assist you to sail away, and more than one person guarantees to give you regular monthly pay, it is, I admit, a rare chance to be safely piloted to the haven of our hopes, and at the same time to receive pay for our preservation. For myself I have done with that dream, and to those, who came to me to urge these projects, my advice is to have done with them. In fact, this is my view. As long as you stay together united as to-day, you will command respect and procure provisions; for might certainly exercises a right over what belongs to the weaker. But once broken up, with your force split into bits, you will neither be able to get subsistence, nor indeed will you get off without paying dearly for it. In fact, my resolution coincides precisely with yours. It is that we should set off for Hellas, and if any one stops behind, or is caught deserting before the whole army is in safety, let him be judged as an evil-doer. Pray let all who are in favour of this proposition hold up their hands.”

They all held them up; only Silanus began shouting and vainly striving to maintain the right of departure for all who liked to depart. But the soldiers would not suffer him, threatening him that if

*vocabulary*

**αἴητος** of Hephaestus  
**ἀναπειθῶ** persuade; also ἐπιπειθομαι,  
 πείθω, παραπειθῶ  
**ἀνέχω** raise; mid: endure, submit  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ῶ) show, point out;  
 (mid) declare  
**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape  
**ἀποκρίνω** (ι) to separate; answer,  
 reject, defend oneself  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**γνώμη** sign, mind, will, decision  
**δείδω** to fear ~Deimos  
**δίκη** justice  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**κατέχω** hold down; cover; also  
 κατασχεθεῖν  
**κράτιστος** best

**οὐπω** no longer  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also  
 πειρητίζω  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πλήν** except  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**ταράσσω** mess things up  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**ὑπέχω** hold out one's hand; submit to;  
 also ὑποσχέθω  
**ὑπίσχομαι** promise, agree to do; also  
 ὑπισχνέομαι  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**χώρα** place

βουλόμενον. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἠνείχοντο, ἀλλ' ἠπείλουν αὐτῶ ὅτι εἰ λήψονται ἀποδιδράσκοντα, τὴν δίκην ἐπιθήσοιεν. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπεὶ ἔγνωσαν οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται ὅτι ἐκπλεῖν δεδογμένον εἶη καὶ Ξενοφῶν αὐτὸς ἐπειρηφικῶς εἶη, τὰ μὲν πλοῖα πέμπουσι, τὰ δὲ χρήματα ἃ ὑπέσχοντο Τιμασίῳ καὶ Θώρακι ἐψευσμένοι ἦσαν τῆς μισθοφορᾶς. ἐνταῦθα δὲ ἐκπεπληγμένοι ἦσαν καὶ ἐδεδίεσαν τὴν στρατιάν οἱ τὴν μισθοφορὰν ὑπεσχημένοι. παραλαβόντες οὖν οὗτοι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς οἷς ἀνεκεκοίνωντο ἃ πρόσθεν ἔπραττον, πάντες δ' ἦσαν πλην Νέωνος τοῦ Ἀσιναιίου, ὃς Χειρισόφῳ ὑπεστρατήγει, Χειρίσοφος δὲ οὐπω παρῆν, ἔρχονται πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ λέγουσιν ὅτι μεταμέλοι αὐτοῖς, καὶ δοκοίη κράτιστον εἶναι πλεῖν εἰς Φᾶσιν, ἐπεὶ πλοῖα ἔστι, καὶ κατασχέειν τὴν Φασιανῶν χώραν. Αἰήτου δὲ υἱοῦς ἐτύγχανε βασιλεύων αὐτῶν. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδὲν ἂν τούτων εἴποι εἰς τὴν στρατιάν· ὑμεῖς δὲ ξυλλέξαντες, ἔφη, εἰ βούλεσθε, λέγετε. ἐνταῦθα ἀποδείκνυται Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεὺς γνώμην οὐκ ἐκκλησιάζειν ἀλλὰ τοὺς αὐτοῦ ἕκαστον λοχαγούς πρῶτον πειρᾶσθαι πείθειν. καὶ ἀπελθόντες ταῦτ' ἐποιοῦν.

## 5.7

Ταῦτα οὖν οἱ στρατιῶται ἀνεπύθοντο ταραττόμενα. καὶ ὁ Νέων λέγει ὡς Ξενοφῶν ἀναπεπεικῶς τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς διανοεῖται ἄγειν τοὺς στρατιώτας ἐξαπατήσας πάλιν εἰς Φᾶσιν. ἀκούσαντες

βουλόμενον. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἠνείχοντο, ἀλλ' ἠπέιλουν αὐτῷ ὅτι εἰ λήψονται ἀποδιδράσκοντα, τὴν δίκην ἐπιθήσοιεν. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπεὶ ἔγνωσαν οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται ὅτι ἐκπλεῖν δεδογμένον εἶη καὶ Ξενοφῶν αὐτὸς ἐπειρηφικῶς εἶη, τὰ μὲν πλοῖα πέμπουσι, τὰ δὲ χρήματα ἂ |**ὑπέχω?: hold out one's hand; submit to ; 'νοι ἦσαν τῆς μισθοφορᾶς. |or ὑπίσχομαι?: promise, agree to do** ἐνταῦθα δὲ ἐκπεπληγμένοι ἦσαν καὶ ἐδεδέσαν τὴν στρατιὰν οἱ τὴν μισθοφορὰν ὑπεσχημένοι. παραλαβόντες οὖν οὗτοι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς οἷς ἀνεκεκοίνωντο ἂ πρόσθεν ἔπραττον, πάντες δ' ἦσαν πλην Νέωνος τοῦ Ἀσναίου, ὃς Χειρισόφω ὑπεστρατήγει, Χειρίσοφος δὲ οὐπω παρῆν, ἔρχονται πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ λέγουσιν ὅτι μεταμέλοι αὐτοῖς, καὶ δοκοῖη κράτιστον εἶναι πλεῖν εἰς Φᾶσιν, ἐπεὶ πλοῖα ἔστι, καὶ κατασχεῖν τὴν Φασιανῶν χώραν. Αἰήτου δὲ ὑδουῖς ἐτύγχανε βασιλεύων αὐτῶν. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδὲν ἂν τούτων εἶποι εἰς τὴν στρατιάν· ὑμεῖς δὲ ξυλλέξαντες, ἔφη, εἰ βούλεσθε, λέγετε. ἐνταῦθα ἀποδείκνυται Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεύς γνώμην οὐκ ἐκκλησιάζειν ἀλλὰ τοὺς αὐτοῦ ἕκαστον λοχαγούς πρῶτον πειρᾶσθαι πείθειν. καὶ ἀπελθόντες ταῦτ' ἐποιοῦν.

## 5.7

Ταῦτα οὖν οἱ στρατιῶται ἀνεπίθοντο |**mess things up** αἰ ὁ Νέων λέγει ὡς Ξενοφῶν |**persuade** τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς διανοεῖται ἄγειν τοὺς στρατιώτας ἐξαπατήσας πάλιν εἰς Φᾶσιν. ἀκούσαντες

he were himself caught attempting to run away they would inflict the aforesaid penalty. After this, when the Heracleots learned that the departure by sea was resolved upon, and that the measure itself emanated from Xenophon, they sent the vessels indeed; but as to the money which they had promised to Timasion and Thorax as pay for the soldiers, they were not as good as their word, in fact they cheated them both. Thus the two who had guaranteed regular monthly pay were utterly confounded, and stood in terror of the soldiers. What they did then, was to take to them the other generals to whom they had communicated their former transactions (that is to say, all except Neon the Asniaean, who, as lieutenant-general, was acting for Cheirisophus during his continued absence). This done they came in a body to Xenophon and said that their views were changed. As they had now got the ships, they thought it best to sail to the Phasis, and seize the territory of the Phasians (whose present king was a descendant of Aetes). Xenophon's reply was curt:— Not one syllable would he have to say himself to the army in this matter, “But,” he added, “if you like, you can summon an assembly and have your say.” Thereupon Timasion the Dardanian set forth as his opinion:— It were best to hold no parliament at present, but first to go and conciliate, each of them, his own officers. Thus they went away and proceeded to execute their plans.

## 5.7

Presently the soldiers came to learn what was in course of agitation, and Neon gave out that Xenophon had persuaded the other generals to adopt his views, and had a plan to cheat the soldiers and take them back to

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγουρις  
**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**αἰίδω** sing; also αἰοδιάω  
**αἰίρω** raise, win ~aorta; also αἴρω  
**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**ἄξιος** worthy ~axiom  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve  
**ἀράομαι** pray, vow, invoke  
**αὐτόματος** self-willed  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**διαβάλλω** throw across; slander  
**δίκη** justice  
**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**δῶμα** -τος (n, 3) hall, house  
 ~domicile; also δῶ  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**εἴσω** into; also ἔσω  
**ἐμβαίνω** step on, board  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither

**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
**ἐτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ἥλιος** sun; also ἠέλιος  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θεά** (2) goddess ~theology  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**καταφεύγω** resort to, flee to, appeal to  
**κῆρυξ** -κος (m) henchman, functionary  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**νότος** south, south wind  
**ὄθεν** whence  
**ὅπου** where  
**πλόος** -ῦ course, voyage  
**πνέω** breathe, blow ~apnea  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear  
**ὥδε** thus

δ' οἱ στρατιῶται χαλεπῶς ἔφερον, καὶ ξύλλογοι ἐγίνοντο καὶ κύκλοι  
 ξυνίσταντο καὶ μάλα φοβεροὶ ἦσαν μὴ ποιήσειαν οἶα καὶ τοὺς τῶν  
 Κόλχων κήρυκας ἐποίησαν καὶ τοὺς ἀγορανόμους· ὅσοι μὴ εἰς τὴν  
 θάλατταν κατέφυγον κατελεύσθησαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσθάνετο Ξενοφῶν,  
 ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ὡς τάχιστα ξυναγαγεῖν αὐτῶν ἀγοράν, καὶ μὴ ἔασαι  
 ξυλληγῆναι αὐτομάτους· καὶ ἐκέλευσε τὸν κήρυκα ξυλλέξαι ἀγοράν. οἱ  
 δ' ἐπεὶ τοῦ κήρυκος ἤκουσαν, ξυνέδραμον καὶ μάλα ἐτοίμως. ἐνταῦθα  
 Ξενοφῶν τῶν μὲν στρατηγῶν οὐ κατηγόρει, ὅτι ἦλθον πρὸς αὐτόν,  
 λέγει δὲ ὧδε.

Ἄκούω τινὰ διαβάλλειν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐμὲ ὡς ἐγὼ ἄρα ἐξαπατήσας ὑμᾶς  
 μέλλω ἄγειν εἰς Φᾶσιν. ἀκούσατε οὖν μου πρὸς θεῶν, καὶ ἔαν μὲν ἐγὼ  
 φαίνωμαι ἀδικεῖν, οὐ χρὴ με ἐνθένδε ἀπελθεῖν πρὶν ἂν δῶ δίκην· ἂν  
 δ' ὑμῖν φαίνωνται ἀδικεῖν οἱ ἐμὲ διαβάλλοντες, οὕτως αὐτοῖς χρῆσθε  
 ὥσπερ ἄξιον. ὑμεῖς δέ, ἔφη, ἴστε δήπου ὅθεν ἥλιος ἀνίσχει καὶ ὅπου  
 δύεται, καὶ ὅτι ἔαν μὲν τις εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα μέλλῃ ἰέναι, πρὸς ἑσπέραν  
 δεῖ πορεύεσθαι· ἦν δέ τις βούληται εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, τοῦμπαλιν  
 πρὸς ἕω. ἔστιν οὖν ὅστις τοῦτο ἂν δύναιτο ὑμᾶς ἐξαπατήσαι ὡς  
 ἥλιος ἔνθεν μὲν ἀνίσχει, δύεται δὲ ἐνταῦθα, ἔνθα δὲ δύεται, ἀνίσχει  
 δ' ἐντεῦθεν; ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ τοῦτό γε ἐπίστασθε ὅτι βορέας μὲν ἔξω τοῦ  
 Πόντου εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα φέρει, νότος δὲ εἴσω εἰς Φᾶσιν, καὶ λέγεται,  
 ὅταν βορρᾶς πνέῃ, ὡς καλοὶ πλοῖ εἰσω εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. τοῦτ' οὖν  
 ἔστιν ὅπως τις ἂν ὑμᾶς ἐξαπατήσαι ὥστε ἐμβαίνειν ὁπότεν νότος



δ' οί στρατιῶται χαλεπῶς ἔφερον, καὶ |meeting ἐγίνοντο καὶ |circle, wheel  
 ξυνίσταντο καὶ μάλα φοβεροὶ ἦσαν μὴ ποιήσειαν οἶα καὶ τοὺς τῶν  
 Κόλχων κήρυκας ἐποίησαν καὶ τοὺς ἀγορανόμους· ὅσοι μὴ εἰς τὴν  
 θάλατταν |resort to, flee to, λεύσθησαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσθάνετο Ξενοφῶν,  
 ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ὡς τάχιστα ξυναγαγεῖν αὐτῶν ἀγοράν, καὶ μὴ ἔασαι  
 ξυλληγῆναι |self-willed καὶ ἐκέλευσε τὸν κήρυκα ξυλλέξαι ἀγοράν. οἱ  
 δ' ἐπεὶ τοῦ κήρυκος ἤκουσαν, ξυνέδραμον καὶ μάλα ἐτοίμως. ἐνταῦθα  
 Ξενοφῶν τῶν μὲν στρατηγῶν οὐ κατηγόρει, ὅτι |ἄλθομαι?: become whole ; or  
 λέγει δὲ ᾧδε. |ἔρχομαι?: go, come

Ἀκούω τινα |throw ὧ ἄνδρες, ἐμὲ ὡς ἐγὼ ἄρα ἐξαπατήσας ὑμᾶς  
 μέλλω ἄγειν |across; |slander οὐκ ἀκούσατε οὖν μου πρὸς θεῶν, καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἐγὼ  
 φαίνωμαι ἀδικεῖν, οὐ χρή με |hence ἀπελθεῖν πρὶν ἂν δῶ δίκην· ἂν  
 δ' ὑμῖν φαίνονται ἀδικεῖν οἱ ἐμὲ |throw , οὕτως αὐτοῖς χρήσθε  
 ὥσπερ ἄξιον. ὑμεῖς δέ, ἔφη, ἵστα |across; |slander ὅθεν ἥλιος ἀνίσχει καὶ ὅπου  
 |δυάω?: afflict ; or δύω?: ; τὴν Ἑλλάδα μέλλη ἵεναι, πρὸς ἐσπέραν  
 δεῖ πορεύεσθαι· ἦν δέ τις βούληται εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, τοῦμπαλιν  
 πρὸς ἔω. ἔστιν οὖν ὅστις τοῦτο ἂν |enter, put on, strip off, ἐξαπατήσαι ὡς  
 ἥλιος ἔθεν μὲν ἀνίσχει, |δυάω?: afflict ; or δύω?: ἐν- |δυάω?: afflict ; or δύω?:  
 δ' ἐντεῦθεν; ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ τοῦτό γε |ter, put on, strip off |enter, put on, strip off  
 Πόντου εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα φέρει, |ἀπιστέω?: " |north, μὲν ἔξω τοῦ  
 ὅταν βορρᾶς |south, ἐπίστημι?: |wind, καὶ λέγεται,  
 ἔστιν ὅπως τις ἂν ὑμᾶς ἐξαπατήσῃ |south, stand ready, |north  
 |breathe, blow |wind take εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. τοῦτ' οὖν  
 ἔστιν ὅπως τις ἂν ὑμᾶς ἐξαπατήσῃ |stand ; or |south, south, wind  
 |ἐπίσταμαι?: step on, board |know

the Phasis. The soldiers were highly indignant; meetings were held; little groups gathered ominously; and there seemed an alarming probability that they would repeat the violence with which they had lately treated the heralds of the Colchians and the clerks of the market; when all who did not save themselves by jumping into the sea were stoned to death. So Xenophon, seeing what a storm was brewing, resolved to anticipate matters so far as to summon a meeting of the men without delay, and thus prevent their collecting of their own accord, and he ordered the herald to announce an assembly. The voice of the herald was no sooner heard than they rushed with great readiness to the place of meeting. Then Xenophon, without accusing the generals of having come to him, made the following speech: "I hear that a charge is brought against me. It is I apparently who am going to cheat you and carry you off to Phasis. I beg you by all that is holy to listen to me; and if there be found any guilt in me, let me not leave this place till I have paid the penalty of my misdoing; but if my accusers are found guilty, treat them as they deserve. I presume, sirs, you know where the sun rises and where he sets, and that he who would go to Hellas must needs journey towards the sunset; whereas he who seeks the land of the barbarian must contrariwise fix his face towards the dawn. Now is that a point in which a man might hope to cheat you? Could any one make you believe that the sun rises here and sets there, or that he sets here and rises there? And doubtless you know this too, that it is Boreas, the north wind, who bears the mariner out of Pontus towards Hellas, and the south wind inwards towards the Phasis, whence the saying—

"He would be a clever fellow who could befool you into embarking with a south wind blowing. That sounds all very well, you think, only I may get you on board during a calm. Granted, but I shall be on board my one ship, and you on board

*vocabulary*

**ἄλις** in plenty; enough  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀποβαίνω** leave, get off  
**ἀρκέω** ward off, defend; suffice  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**γαλήνη** stillness of wind or sea  
**διδάσκω** teach ~didactic  
**δίκη** justice  
**δυνάτης** (m) lord, ruler  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐγείρω** rouse  
**ἐκατόν** hundred  
**ἐμέω** vomit ~emetic  
**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**θαυμάζω** marvel ~theater; also ἀποθαυμάζω  
**θεά** (2) goddess ~theology  
**κωλύω** hinder, prevent  
**μυρίος** immense, myriad ~myriad

**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι, οἴομαι  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**οὔτις** nobody, nothing  
**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**πνέω** breathe, blow ~apnea  
**πόα ποιῆς** grass  
**ποῖος** what kind  
**πράγμα** -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing, affair  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**πῶς** how? why?  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τιμάω** honor, exalt  
**ὕμετερος** yours  
**ὕπείπον** say as preface, premise  
**φθονέω** be reluctant, begrudge  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**χώρα** place  
**ὥρα** season, time ~horoscope

πνέη; ἀλλὰ γὰρ ὁπότεν γαλήνη ἦ ἐμβιβῶ. οὐκοῦν ἐγὼ μὲν ἐν ἐνὶ πλοίῳ πλεύσομαι, ὑμεῖς δὲ τοῦλάχιστον ἐν ἑκατόν. πῶς ἂν οὖν ἐγὼ ἢ βιασαίμην ὑμᾶς ζῆν ἐμοὶ πλεῖν μὴ βουλομένους ἢ ἐξαπατήσας ἄγοιμι; ποιῶ δ' ὑμᾶς ἐξαπατηθέντας καὶ γοητευθέντας ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἦκειν εἰς Φᾶσιν· καὶ δὴ ἀποβαίνομεν εἰς τὴν χώραν· γνώσεσθε δήπου ὅτι οὐκ ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἐστέ· καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν ἔσομαι ὁ ἐξηπατηκῶς εἰς, ὑμεῖς δὲ οἱ ἐξηπατημένοι ἐγγὺς μυρίων ἔχοντες ὅπλα. πῶς ἂν οὖν ἀνὴρ μᾶλλον δοίη δίκην ἢ οὕτω περὶ αὐτοῦ τε καὶ ὑμῶν βουλευόμενος; ἀλλ' οὐτοὶ εἰσιν οἱ λόγοι ἀνδρῶν καὶ ἡλιθίων κάμοι φθονούντων, ὅτι ἐγὼ ὑφ' ὑμῶν τιμῶμαι. καίτοι οὐ δικαίως γ' ἄν μοι φθονοῖεν· τίνα γὰρ αὐτῶν ἐγὼ κωλύω ἢ λέγειν εἴ τίς τι ἀγαθὸν δύναται ἐν ὑμῖν, ἢ μάχεσθαι εἴ τις ἐθέλει ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν τε καὶ ἑαυτοῦ, ἢ ἐργηγορέναι περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας ἀσφαλείας ἐπιμελούμενον; τί γάρ, ἄρχοντας αἰρουμένων ὑμῶν ἐγὼ τινι ἐμποδῶν εἰμι; παρήμι, ἀρχέτω· μόνον ἀγαθόν τι ποιῶν ὑμᾶς φαιεύσθω. ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἐμοὶ μὲν ἀρκεῖ περὶ τούτων τὰ εἰρημένα· εἰ δέ τις ὑμῶν ἢ αὐτὸς ἐξαπατηθῆναι ἂν οἶεται ταῦτα ἢ ἄλλον ἐξαπατῆσαι ταῦτα, λέγων διδασκέτω. ὅταν δὲ τούτων ἄλις ἔχητε, μὴ ἀπέλθῃτε πρὶν ἂν ἀκούσητε οἶον ὁρῶ ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ ἀρχόμενον πρᾶγμα· ὁ εἰ ἔπεισι καὶ ἔσται οἶον ὑποδείκνυσιν, ὥρα ἡμῖν βουλευέσθαι ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν μὴ κάκιστοί τε καὶ αἰσχιστοὶ ἄνδρες ἀποφαινόμεθα καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων καὶ φίλων καὶ πολεμίων. ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ στρατιῶται ἐθαύμασάν τε ὅ τι εἶη καὶ λέγειν ἐκέλευον. ἐκ

|breathe, blow `ρ ὀπόταν |stillness, of ἰβῶ. οὐκοῦν ἐγὼ μὲν ἐν ἐνὶ  
 πλοίῳ πλεύσομαι, ὑμεῖς δὲ τοῦλάχιστον ἐν ἑκατόν. πῶς ἂν οὖν ἐγὼ ἢ  
 βιασαίμην ὑμᾶς ξὺν ἐμοὶ πλεῖν μὴ βουλομένους ἢ ἐξαπατήσας ἄγοιμι;  
 ποιῶ δ' ὑμᾶς ἐξαπατηθέντας καὶ γοητευθέντας ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἤκειν εἰς  
 Φᾶσιν· καὶ δὴ ἀποβαίνομεν εἰς τὴν χώραν· γνώσεσθε δήπου ὅτι οὐκ  
 ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἐστέ· καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν ἔσομαι ὁ ἐξηπατηκὸς εἷς, ὑμεῖς δὲ οἱ  
 ἐξηπατημένοι ἐγγὺς μυριάων ἔχοντες ὄπλα. πῶς ἂν οὖν ἀνὴρ μᾶλλον  
 δοίῃ δίκην ἢ οὕτω περὶ αὐτοῦ τε καὶ ὑμῶν βουλευόμενος; ἀλλ' οὐτοί  
 εἰσιν οἱ λόγοι ἀνδρῶν καὶ ἡλιθίων κάμοι |be reluctant, ὅτι ἐγὼ ὑφ'  
 ὑμῶν τιμῶμαι. καίτοι οὐ δικαίως γ' ἂν μοι |begrudge  
 ἐγὼ κωλύω ἢ λέγειν εἴ τίς τι ἀγαθὸν |be reluctant, a γὰρ αὐτῶν  
 εἴ τις ἐθέλει ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν τε καὶ ἑαυτοῦ, ἢ ἐργηγορέναι περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας |begrudge  
 ἀσφαλείας ἐπιμελούμενον; τί γάρ, ἄρχοντας αἰρουμένων ὑμῶν ἐγὼ  
 τινι ἐμποδῶν εἶμι; |dangle; pass ἴτω· μόνον ἀγαθὸν τι |πόα?: grass; or ποῖος?:  
 φαινέσθω. ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἐμοὶ μὲν |over, allow |ward off, ἰ τούτων τὰ εἰρημένα· εἰ δὲ  
 τίς ὑμῶν ἢ αὐτὸς ἐξαπατηθῆναι ἂν οἶεται ταῦτα ἢ ἄλλον ἐξαπατήσαι  
 ταῦτα, λέγων διδασκέτω. ὅταν δὲ τούτων |in plenty; enough ἔθητε  
 πρὶν ἂν ἀκούσητε οἶον ὀρῶ ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ ἀρχόμενον πρᾶγμα· ὁ εἰ  
 ἔπεισι καὶ ἔσται οἶον ὑποδείκνυσιν, ὥρα ἡμῖν βουλεύεσθαι ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν  
 αὐτῶν μὴ κάκιστοί τε καὶ αἰσχιστοὶ ἄνδρες ἀποφαινόμεθα καὶ πρὸς  
 θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων καὶ φίλων καὶ πολεμίων. ἀκούσαντες δὲ  
 ταῦτα οἱ στρατιῶται ἐθαύμασάν τε ὅ τι εἶη καὶ λέγειν ἐκέλευον. ἐκ

another hundred at least, and how am I to constrain you to voyage with me against your will, or by what cajolery shall I carry you off? But I will imagine you so far befooled and bewitched by me, that I have got you to the Phasis; we proceed to disembark on dry land. At last it will come out, that wherever you are, you are not in Hellas, and the inventor of the trick will be one sole man, and you who have been caught by it will number something like ten thousand with swords in your hands. I do not know how a man could better ensure his own punishment than by embarking on such a policy with regards to himself and you.

“Nay, these tales are the invention of silly fellows who are jealous of the honour you bestow on me. A most uncalled-for jealousy! Do I hinder any of them from speaking any word of import in his power? of striking a blow in your behalf and his own, if that is his choice? or, finally, of keeping his eyes and ears open to secure your safety? What is it? In your choice of leaders do I stand in the way of any one, is that it? Let him step forward, I yield him place; he shall be your general; only he must prove that he has your good at heart.

“For myself, I have done; but for yourselves, if any of you conceive either that he himself could be the victim of a fraud, or that he could victimise any one else in such a thing as this, let him open his lips and explain to us how. Take your time, but when you have sifted the matter to your hearts’ content, do not go away without suffering me to tell you of something which I see looming. If it should burst upon us and prove in fact anything like what it gives signs of being now, it is time for us to take counsel for ourselves and see that we do not prove ourselves to be the worst and basest of men in the sight of gods and men, be they friends or be they foes.” The words moved the curiosity of the soldiers. They marvelled what this matter might be, and bade him explain. Thereupon he

*vocabulary*

**ἀγοράζω** do commerce  
**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve  
**ἀποκτείνω** kill  
**ἀποπλέω** sail away  
**ἀποχωρέω** go away from, retreat  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**γεραιός** old ~geriatric  
**δεῦρο** here, come here!  
**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ἡμέτερος** our, my  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θαυμάζω** marvel ~theater; also  
**ἀποθαυμάζω**  
**ἰσχυρός** strong, forceful, violent  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake  
**κάτειμι** go down, disembark  
**μέντοι** however  
**μηκέτι** no more

**μικρός** small; also **σμικρός**  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ὅθεν** whence  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὀπόσος** as/how many/great  
**ὄρnuμι** set upon, arouse ~hormone;  
 also **ὕπόρnuμι**  
**ὄρος ὄρεος** (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**οὐπω** no longer  
**παραπλέω** sail past  
**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (πούς)  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πού** no doubt; somewhere/how  
**πράγμα** -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing,  
 affair  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
**ἐντυγχάνω**  
**φθάνω** do first, outstrip  
**χρήζω** need  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

τούτου ἄρχεται πάλιν· Ἐπίστασθέ που ὅτι χωρία ἦν ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσι  
 βαρβαρικά, φίλια τοῖς Κερασούντιοις, ὅθεν κατιόντες τινές καὶ ἱερεῖα  
 ἐπόλων ἡμῖν καὶ ἄλλα ὧν εἶχον, δοκοῦσι δέ μοι καὶ ὑμῶν τινες εἰς τὸ  
 ἐγγυτάτω χωρίον τούτων ἐλθόντες ἀγοράσαντές τι πάλιν ἀπελθεῖν.  
 τοῦτο καταμαθὼν Κλεάρετος ὁ λοχαγὸς ὅτι καὶ μικρὸν εἶη καὶ  
 ἀφύλακτον διὰ τὸ φίλιον νομίζειν εἶναι, ἔρχεται ἐπ' αὐτοὺς τῆς νυκτὸς  
 ὡς πορθήσων, οὐδενὶ ἡμῶν εἰπῶν. διενενόητο δέ, εἰ λάβοι τὸδε τὸ  
 χωρίον, εἰς μὲν τὸ στράτευμα μηκέτι ἐλθεῖν, εἰσβὰς δὲ εἰς πλοῖον ἐν ᾧ  
 ἐτύγχανον οἱ ξύσκηνοι αὐτοῦ παραπλέοντες, καὶ ἐνθέμενος εἴ τι λάβοι,  
 ἀποπλέων οἴχεσθαι ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου. καὶ ταῦτα ξυνωμολόγησαν αὐτῶ  
 οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πλοίου σύσκηνοι, ὡς ἐγὼ νῦν αἰσθάνομαι. παρακαλέσας οὖν  
 ὁπόσους ἔπειθεν ἦγεν ἐπὶ τὸ χωρίον. πορευόμενον δ' αὐτὸν φθάνει  
 ἡμέρα γενομένη, καὶ ξυστάντες οἱ ἄνθρωποι ἀπὸ ἰσχυρῶν τόπων  
 βάλλοντες καὶ παίοντες τὸν τε Κλεάρετον ἀποκτείνουσι καὶ τῶν  
 ἄλλων συχνοὺς, οἱ δὲ τινες καὶ εἰς Κερασούντα αὐτῶν ἀποχωροῦσι.  
 ταῦτα δ' ἦν ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἣ ἡμεῖς δεῦρο ἐξωρμῶμεν πεζῇ· τῶν δὲ  
 πλεόντων ἔτι τινές ἦσαν ἐν Κερασούντι, οὓπω ἀνηγγέμενοι. μετὰ  
 τοῦτο, ὡς οἱ Κερασούντιοι λέγουσιν, ἀφικνοῦνται τῶν ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου  
 τρεῖς ἄνδρες τῶν γεραιτέρων πρὸς τὸ κοινὸν τὸ ἡμέτερον χρήζοντες  
 ἐλθεῖν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμᾶς οὐ κατέλαβον, πρὸς τοὺς Κερασούντιους ἔλεγον  
 ὅτι θαυμάζοιεν τί ἡμῖν δόξειεν ἐλθεῖν ἐπ' αὐτούς. ἐπεὶ μέντοι σφεῖς  
 λέγειν, ἔφασαν, ὅτι οὐκ ἀπὸ κοινοῦ γένοιτο τὸ πρᾶγμα, ἥδεσθαί τε



τούτου ἄρχεται πάλιν· ἀπιστέω?: disbelieve ; or ἐπίστημι?: stand ready, take a stand ; or ἐπίσταμαι?: know  
 |non-Greek. φίλια τοῖς Κερασούντιοις, ὅθεν |go down, disem-|sacrificial  
 |bark |animal  
 |go back and forth ἡλα ὧν εἶχον, δοκοῦσι δέ μοι καὶ ἡμῶν τινας εἰς τὸ  
 ἐγγυτάτω χωρίον τούτων ἐλθόντες |do commerce ι πάλιν ἀπελθεῖν.  
 τοῦτο καταμαθὼν Κλεάρετος ὁ λοχαγὸς ὅτι καὶ μικρὸν εἴη καὶ  
 ἀφύλακτον διὰ τὸ φίλιον νομίζειν εἶναι, ἔρχεται ἐπ' αὐτοὺς τῆς νυκτὸς  
 ὡς πορθήσων, οὐδενὶ ἡμῶν εἰπῶν. διενεόητο δέ, εἰ λάβοι τόδε τὸ  
 χωρίον, εἰς μὲν τὸ στράτευμα μηκέτι ἐλθεῖν, εἰσβάς δὲ εἰς πλοῖον ἐν ᾧ  
 ἐτύγχανον οἱ ξύσκηνοι αὐτοῦ |sail past , καὶ |load; mῑ: ι λάβοι,  
 |take to heart  
 ἀποπλέων οἴχεσθαι ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου. καὶ ταῦτα ξυνωμολόγησαν αὐτῷ  
 οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πλοίου σύσκηνοι, ὡς ἐγὼ νῦν αἰσθάνομαι. παρακαλέσας οὖν  
 |as/how many/great , ἐπὶ τὸ χωρίον. πορευόμενον δ' αὐτὸν φθάνει  
 ἡμέρα γενομένη, καὶ ξυστάντες οἱ ἄνθρωποι ἀπὸ ἰσχυρῶν τόπων  
 βάλλοντες καὶ παίοντες τὸν τε Κλεάρετον ἀποκτείνουσι καὶ τῶν  
 ἄλλων συχνούς, οἱ δέ τινας καὶ εἰς Κερασούντα αὐτῶν ἀποχωροῦσι.  
 ταῦτα δ' ἦν ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἣ ἡμεῖς δεῦρο ἐξωρμῶμεν πεζῇ· τῶν δὲ  
 πλεόντων ἔτι τινὲς ἦσαν ἐν Κερασούντι, οὐπω ἀνηγμένοι. μετὰ  
 τοῦτο, ὡς οἱ Κερασούντιοι λέγουσιν, ἀφικνοῦνται τῶν ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου  
 τρεῖς ἄνδρες τῶν γεραιτέρων πρὸς τὸ κοινὸν τὸ ἡμέτερον |need  
 ἐλθεῖν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμᾶς οὐ κατέλαβον, πρὸς τοὺς Κερασούντιοὺς ἔλεγον  
 ὅτι θαυμάζοιεν τί ἡμῖν δόξειεν ἐλθεῖν ἐπ' αὐτούς. ἐπεὶ μέντοι σφεῖς  
 λέγειν, ἔφασαν, ὅτι οὐκ ἀπὸ κοινοῦ γένοιτο τὸ πρᾶγμα, ἥδεσθαί τε

began again: “You will not have forgotten certain places in the hills—barbaric fastnesses, but friendly to the Cerasuntines— from which people used to come down and sell us large cattle and other things which they possessed, and if I mistake not, some of you went to the nearest of these places and made purchases in the market and came back again. Clearetus the captain learnt of this place, that it was but a little one and unguarded. Why should it be guarded since it was friendly? so the folk thought. Thus he stole upon it in the dead of night, and meant to sack it without saying a word to any of us. His design was, if he took the place, not to return again to the army, but to mount a vessel which, with his messmates on board her, was sailing past at the time, and stowing away what he had seized, to set sail and begone beyond the Euxine. All this had been agreed upon and arranged with his comrades on board the vessel, as I now discover. Accordingly, he summoned to his side all whom he could persuade, and set off at their head against the little place. But dawn overtook him on his march. The men collected out of their strongholds, and whether from a distance or close quarters, made such a fight that they killed Clearetus and a good many of the rest, and only a few of them got safe back to Cerasus.

“These things took place on the day on which we started to come hither on foot; while some of those who were to go by sea were still at Cerasus, not having as yet weighed anchor. After this, according to what the Cerasuntines state, there arrived three inhabitants of the place which had been attacked; three elderly men, seeking an interview with our public assembly. Not finding us, they addressed themselves to the men of Cerasus, and told them, they were astonished that we should have thought it right to attack them; however, when, as the Cerasuntines assert, they had assured them that the occurrence was not authorised by public consent, they were pleased, and proposed to sail

*vocabulary*

**ἄγριος** wild, savage (ἄγρός)  
**αἰίδω** sing; also αἰοδιάω  
**αἰδέομαι** respect, be ashamed  
**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**ἄλθομαι** become whole, sound  
**ἀναιρέω** take up  
**ἀνακράζω** speak up  
**ἀποφεύγω** avoid, escape, go free  
**ἀποχωρέω** go away from, retreat  
**αὖ** again, then again; next ~after  
**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**δείδω** to fear ~Deimos  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
**ἔλαφος** (m/f) deer  
**ἐνθάδε** here, hither  
**ἐξαίφνης** suddenly  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἔχθω** (mp) be hated  
**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**καθίζω** to seat ~sit; also ἴζω, καθιζάνω

**λίθεος** made of stone  
**λίθος** (m/f) stone ~monolith; also λιθάς  
**νεκρός** corpse ~necrotic  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὅπλομαι** get ready, prepare  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὀρμάω** set in motion, rush at ~hormone  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**πράγμα** -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing, affair  
**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian  
**σαφής** clear, understandable  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**τάχα** quickly, soon ~tachometer  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τολμάω** dare (τλάω)  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also ἐντυγχάνω  
**ὑς ὑός** (m/f) pig ~sow

αὐτοὺς καὶ μέλλειν ἐνθάδε πλεῖν, ὡς ἡμῖν λέξαι τὰ γενόμενα καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς κελεύειν αὐτοὺς θάπτειν λαβόντας. τῶν δ' ἀποφυγόντων τινὰς Ἑλλήνων τυχεῖν ἔτι ὄντας ἐν Κερασούντι· αἰσθόμενοι δὲ τοὺς βαρβάρους ὅποι ἴοιεν αὐτοὶ τε ἐτόλμησαν βάλλειν τοῖς λίθοις καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις παρεκελεύοντο. καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες ἀποθνήσκουσι τρεῖς ὄντες οἱ πρέσβεις καταλευσθέντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο ἐγένετο, ἔρχονται πρὸς ἡμᾶς οἱ Κερασούντιοι καὶ λέγουσι τὸ πρᾶγμα· καὶ ἡμεῖς οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ἠχθόμεθά τε τοῖς γεγενημένοις καὶ ἐβουλεύμεθα ξὺν τοῖς Κερασούντιοις ὅπως ἂν ταφείησαν οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων νεκροί. συγκαθήμενοι δ' ἔξωθεν τῶν ὄπλων ἐξαίφνης ἀκούομεν θορύβου πολλοῦ Παῖε παῖε, βάλλε βάλλε, καὶ τάχα δὴ ὀρώμεν πολλοὺς προσθέοντας λίθους ἔχοντας ἐν ταῖς χερσί, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἀναιρουμένους. καὶ οἱ μὲν Κερασούντιοι, ὡς ἂν καὶ ἑορακότες τὸ παρ' ἑαυτοῖς πρᾶγμα, δείσαντες ἀποχωροῦσι πρὸς τὰ πλοῖα. ἦσαν δὲ νηὶ Δία καὶ ἡμῶν οἱ ἔδρισαν. ἐγὼ γε μὴν ἦλθον πρὸς αὐτοὺς καὶ ἠρώτων ὅ τι ἐστὶ τὸ πρᾶγμα. τῶν δὲ ἦσαν μὲν οἱ οὐδὲν ἤδεσαν, ὅμως δὲ λίθους εἶχον ἐν ταῖς χερσίν. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰδότες τι ἐπέτυχον, λέγει μοι ὅτι οἱ ἀγορανόμοι δεινότατα ποιοῦσι τὸ στράτευμα. ἐν τούτῳ τις ὄρᾳ τὸν ἀγορανόμον Ζήλαρχον πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν ἀποχωροῦντα, καὶ ἀνέκραγεν· οἱ δὲ ὡς ἤκουσαν, ὥσπερ ἡ συὸς ἀγρίου ἢ ἐλάφου φανέντος ἴενται ἐπ' αὐτόν. οἱ δ' αὖ Κερασούντιοι ὡς εἶδον ὀρμῶντας καθ' αὐτούς, σαφῶς νομίζοντες ἐπὶ σφᾶς ἴεσθαι, φεύγουσι δρόμῳ καὶ

αὐτοὺς καὶ μέλλειν ἐνθάδε πλεῖν, ὡς ἡμῖν λέξει τὰ γενόμενα καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς κελεύειν αὐτοὺς θάπτειν λαβόντας. τῶν δ' **|avoid, escape, go free** οἱ δὲ τοὺς βαρβάρους ὅποι ἴοιεν αὐτοὶ τε ἐτόλμησαν βάλλειν τοῖς **|λίθος?: ` made of stone ; or λίθος?: stone** τοῖς ἄλλοις παρεκελεύοντο. καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες ἀποθνήσκουσι **|stone** οἱ πρέσβεις καταλευσθέντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο ἐγένετο, ἔρχονται πρὸς ἡμᾶς οἱ Κερασούντιοι καὶ λέγουσι τὸ πρᾶγμα· καὶ ἡμεῖς οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες **|ἄχθομαι?: be burdened with οἰς καὶ ἐβουλεύομεθα ξῖν ; or ἔχθω?: (mp) be hated** τοῖς Κερασούντιοις ὅπως ἂν ταφείησαν οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων νεκροί. συγκαθήμενοι δ' ἔξωθεν τῶν ὄπλων **|suddenly** ἰκούμεν θορύβου πολλοῦ Παῖε παῖε, βάλλε βάλλε, καὶ τάχα δὴ ὀρώμεν πολλοὺς προσθέντας **|λίθος?: made of stone, κερσί, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἀναιρουμένους. ; or λίθος?: stone** καὶ οἱ μὲν Κερασούντιοι, ὡς ἂν καὶ ἐορακότες τὸ παρ' ἑαυτοῖς πρᾶγμα, δείσαντες ἀποχωροῦσι πρὸς τὰ πλοῖα. ἦσαν δὲ νῆ Δία καὶ ἡμῶν οἱ ἔδεισαν. ἐγὼ γε μὴν **|ἄλλθομαι?: become whole, ρώτων ; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come** ὅ τι ἐστὶ τὸ πρᾶγμα. τῶν δὲ ἦσαν μὲν οἱ οὐδὲν ἠῖδον, ὅμως δὲ **|λίθος?: made of stone ρσίν. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰδότι τινὶ ἐπέτυχον, λέγει μοι ; or λίθος?: stone** ὅτι οἱ ἀγορανόμοι δεινότετα ποιοῦσι τὸ στράτευμα. ἐν τούτῳ τις ὀρᾷ τὸν ἀγορανόμον Ζήλαρχον πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν ἀποχωροῦντα, καὶ **|speak up** οἱ δὲ ὡς ἤκουσαν, ὥσπερ ἡ σὺς ἀγρίου ἢ **|deer** φανέντος ἵενται ἐπ' αὐτόν. οἱ δ' αὖ Κερασούντιοι ὡς εἶδον ὀρμῶντας καθ' αὐτούς, σαφῶς νομίζοντες ἐπὶ σφᾶς ἴεσθαι, φεύγουσι **|running** ἰ

here, not only to state to us what had occurred, but to offer that those who were interested should take up and bury the bodies of the slain.

“But among the Hellenes still at Cerasus were some of those who had escaped. They found out in which direction the barbarians were minded to go, and not only had the face themselves to pelt them with stones, but vociferously encouraged their neighbours to do the same. The three men— ambassadors, mark you— were slain, stoned to death. After this occurrence, the men of Cerasus came to us and reported the affair, and we generals, on being informed, were annoyed at what had taken place, and took counsel with the Cerasuntines how the dead bodies of the Hellenes might be buried. While seated in conclave outside the camp, we suddenly were aware of a great hubbub. We heard cries: ‘Cut them down!’ ‘Shoot them!’ ‘Stone them!’ and presently we caught sight of a mass of people racing towards us with stones in their hands, and others picking them up. The Cerasuntines, naturally enough, considering the incident they had lately witnessed, retired in terror to their vessels, and, upon my word, some of us did not feel too comfortable. All I could do was to go to them and inquire what it all meant. Some of them had not the slightest notion, although they had stones in their hands, but chancing on some one who was better informed, I was told by him that ‘the clerks of the market were treating the army most scandalously.’ Just then some one got sight of the market clerk, Zelarchus, making his way off towards the sea, and lifted up his voice aloud, and the rest responding to the cry as if a wild boar or a stag had been started, they rushed upon him.

“The Cerasuntines, seeing a rush in their direction, thought that, without a doubt, it was directed against themselves, and fled with all speed and threw themselves into the sea, in which proceeding they were imitated by some few of our own men, and all who did not know

*vocabulary*

**ἄγνουμι** break  
**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**ἀκέομαι** heal, fix  
**ἄκριτος** indiscriminate, endless ~critic  
**ἄλλομαι** to jump ~sally  
**ἀναιρέω** take up  
**ἀποπλέω** sail away  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**ἀσφαλῆς** going ahead, standing firm  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**δείδω** to fear ~Deimos  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
**δίκη** justice  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about  
**εἰρήνη** peace  
**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater; also **θάομαι**, **θηέομαι**

**ἴδιος** private, personal  
**ιδιώτης** -ου (m, 1) private, not public  
**ικανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**κατακτείνω** kill, slay  
**καταλύω** unyoke; destroy  
**κῆρυξ** -κος (m) henchman, functionary  
**κύων** κυνός (m/f, 3) dog ~hound  
**λύσσα** battle rage  
**μηδέ** and not; not even  
**νεκρός** corpse ~necrotic  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also **πολεμίζω**, **πτολεμίζω**  
**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch  
 ~skeptical  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιά** army  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also **ἐντυγχάνω**  
**χώρα** place  
**ώθέω** push

ἐμπίπτουσιν εἰς τὴν θάλατταν. ξυνεισέπεσον δὲ καὶ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν  
 τινες, καὶ ἐπνίγετο ὅστις νεῖν μὴ ἐτύγχανεν ἐπιστάμενος. καὶ τούτους  
 τί δοκεῖτε; ἠδίκουν μὲν οὐδέν, ἔδεισαν δὲ μὴ λύττα τις ὥσπερ κυσὶν  
 ἡμῖν ἐμπεπτῶκοι. εἰ οὖν ταῦτα τοιαῦτα ἔσται, θεάσασθε οἷα ἡ  
 κατάστασις ἡμῖν ἔσται τῆς στρατιᾶς. ὑμεῖς μὲν οἱ πάντες οὐκ ἔσεσθε  
 κύριοι οὔτε ἀνελέσθαι πόλεμον ᾧ ἂν βούλησθε οὔτε καταλῦσαι, ἰδίᾳ  
 δὲ ὁ βουλόμενος ἄξει στρατεύμα ἐφ' ὅ τι ἂν θέλῃ. κἄν τινες πρὸς  
 ὑμᾶς ἴωσι πρέσβεις εἰρήνης δεόμενοι ἢ ἄλλου τινός, κατακτείναντες  
 τούτους οἱ βουλόμενοι ποιήσουσιν ὑμᾶς τῶν λόγων μὴ ἀκοῦσαι τῶν  
 πρὸς ὑμᾶς ἰόντων. ἔπειτα δὲ οὓς μὲν ἂν ὑμεῖς πάντες ἔλησθε  
 ἄρχοντας, ἐν οὐδεμῇ χώρᾳ ἔσονται, ὅστις δὲ ἂν ἑαυτὸν ἔληται  
 στρατηγὸν καὶ ἐθέλῃ λέγειν Βάλλε βάλλε, οὗτος ἔσται ἰκανὸς καὶ  
 ἄρχοντα κατακανεῖν καὶ ἰδιώτην ὃν ἂν ὑμῶν ἐθέλῃ ἄκριτον, ἣν  
 ὦσιν οἱ πεισόμενοι αὐτῷ, ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν ἐγένετο. οἷα δὲ ὑμῖν καὶ  
 διαπεπράχασιν οἱ αὐθαίρετοι οὔτοι στρατηγοὶ σκέψασθε. Ζήλαρχος  
 μὲν ὁ ἀγορανόμος εἰ μὲν ἀδικεῖ ὑμᾶς, οἴχεται ἀποπλέων οὐ δοὺς ὑμῖν  
 δίκην· εἰ δὲ μὴ ἀδικεῖ, φεύγει ἐκ τοῦ στρατεύματος δείσας μὴ ἀδίκως  
 ἄκριτος ἀποθάνῃ. οἱ δὲ καταλεύσαντες τοὺς πρέσβεις διεπράξαντο  
 ὑμῖν μόνοις μὲν τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς Κερασούντα μὴ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι,  
 ἂν μὴ σὺν ἰσχύι ἀφικνήσθε· τοὺς δὲ νεκροὺς οὓς πρόσθεν αὐτοὶ  
 οἱ κατακάνοντες ἐκέλευον θάπτειν, τούτους διεπράξαντο μηδὲ ξὺν  
 κηρυκείῳ ἔτι ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι ἀνελέσθαι. τίς γὰρ ἐθελήσει κήρυξ



|fall into; attack τὴν θάλατταν. ξυνεισέπεσον δὲ καὶ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν  
 τινες, καὶ ἐπνίγετο ὅστις νεῖν μὴ ἐτύγχανεν ἐπιστάμενος. καὶ τούτους  
 τί δοκεῖτε; ἡδίκουν μὲν οὐδέν, ἔδεισαν δὲ μὴ |battle rage ὅσπερ κυσὶν  
 ἡμῶν |fall into; attack ὅν ταῦτα τοιαῦτα ἔσται, θεάσασθε οἷα ἡ  
 κατάστασις ἡμῶν ἔσται τῆς στρατιᾶς. ὑμεῖς μὲν οἱ πάντες οὐκ ἔσεσθε  
 κύριοι οὔτε ἀνελέσθαι πόλεμον ᾧ ἂν βούλησθε οὔτε καταλύσαι, ἰδίᾳ  
 δὲ ὁ βουλόμενος |ἄγνυμι?: break ; ὅρ ὅ τι ἂν θέλη. καὶ τινες πρὸς  
 ὑμᾶς ἴωσι πρέσβεις εἰρήνης δεόμενοι ἢ ἄλλου τινός, κατακτείναντες  
 τούτους οἱ βουλόμενοι ποιήσουσιν ὑμᾶς τῶν λόγων μὴ |ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix ; or  
 πρὸς ὑμᾶς ἰόντων. ἔπειτα δὲ οὗς μὲν ἂν ὑμεῖς πάντες |ἀκούω?: hear, listen  
 ἄρχοντας, ἐν οὐδεμῇ χώρᾳ ἔσονται, ὅστις δὲ ἂν ἑαυτὸν |to jump  
 στρατηγὸν καὶ ἐθέλη λέγειν Βάλλε βάλλε, οὗτος ἔσται ἰκανὸς καὶ  
 ἄρχοντα κατακανεῖν καὶ |private, not public ἢ ἐθέλη |indiscrimi-  
 ᾶσιν οἱ πεισόμενοι αὐτῷ, ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν ἐγένετο. οἷα δὲ ὑμῶν καὶ  
 διαπεπράχασιν οἱ αὐθαίρετοι οὗτοι στρατηγοὶ |look, look at, watch  
 μὲν ὁ ἀγορανόμος εἰ μὲν ἀδικεῖ ὑμᾶς, οἴχεται ἀποπλέων οὐ δοὺς ὑμῶν  
 δίκην· εἰ δὲ μὴ ἀδικεῖ, φεύγει ἐκ τοῦ στρατεύματος δείσας μὴ ἀδίκως  
 |indiscrimi- ἴανη. οἱ δὲ καταλεύσαντες τοὺς πρέσβεις διεπράξαντο  
 |nate, endless  
 ὑμῶν μόνοις μὲν τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς Κερασσοῦντα μὴ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι,  
 ἂν μὴ σὺν ἰσχύι ἀφικνησθε· τοὺς δὲ νεκροὺς οὗς πρόσθεν αὐτοὶ  
 οἱ κατακανόντες ἐκέλευον θάπτειν, τούτους διεπράξαντο μηδὲ ξὺν  
 κηρυκείῳ ἔτι ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι ἀνελέσθαι. τίς γὰρ ἐθελήσει κήρυξ

how to swim were drowned. But now, what do you think of their case, these men of Cerasus? They had done no wrong. They were simply afraid that some madness had seized us, like that to which dogs are liable.

“I say then, if proceedings like this are to be the order of the day, you had better consider what the ultimate condition of the army is like to be. As a body you will not have it in your power to undertake war against whom you like, or to conclude peace. But in private any one who chooses will conduct the army on any quest which takes his fancy. And when ambassadors come to you to demand peace, or whatever it may be, officious people will put them to death and prevent your hearing the proposals which brought them to you. The next step will be that those whom you as a body may choose as generals will be of no account; but any one who likes to elect himself general, and will adopt the formula ‘Shoot him! shoot him!’ will be competent to cut down whomsoever he pleases untried, be it general or private soldier, if only he have sufficient followers, as was the case just now. But just consider what these self-appointed generals have achieved for you. Zelarchus, the clerk of the market, may possibly have done you a wrong; if so, he has sailed off and is gone without paying you any penalty; or he may be guiltless, in which case we have driven him from the army in terror of perishing unjustly without a trial. While those who stoned the ambassadors have contrived so cleverly that we alone of all Hellenes cannot approach Cerasus safely without a strong force, and the corpses which the very men who slew them themselves invited us to bury, we cannot now pick up with safety even under a flag of truce. Who indeed would care to carry a flag of truce, or go as a herald with the blood of heralds upon his hands? All we could do was to implore the Cerasuntines to bury them.

“If

*vocabulary***ἄγνουμι** break**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγουρις**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse**δείκνυμι** show, point out**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await

~doctrine

**δικάζω** judge**δίκη** justice**ἔξεστι** it is allowed/possible**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth**ἐπαινέω** concur, concur with**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel**ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics**ἐρυμνός** fortified, impregnable**ἡδέως** pleasantly**ἡώς ἡοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph**θάρσος** -ει (n, 3) boldness, over-boldness; also θράσος**θηρίον** (f/m/n) wild animal ~megatherium; also θήρ**θύω** rush; sacrifice**ἴδιος** private, personal**καθαίρω** clean**καθίστημι** set down, land**κῆρυξ** -κος (m) henchman, functionary**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis**μέντοι** however**μηκέτι** no more**οἰδέω** swell**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι, οἶομαι**πειράζω** test a person**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also

πειρητίζω

**πῶς** how? why?**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army**στρατηγέω** be a general**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult**τεύχω** make, cause; pass: happen; pass pf: be, become; pass pf ppl: well made**τίη** strengthened form of τί**τοσοῦτος** so much**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also

ἐντυγχάνω

**φιλία** friendship**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch; also

φυλακεύς

**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω

ἵεναι κήρυκας ἀπεκτονώς; ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς Κερασουντίων θάψαι αὐτοὺς  
 ἐδεήθημεν. εἰ μὲν οὖν ταῦτα καλῶς ἔχει, δοξάτω ὑμῖν, ἵνα ὡς  
 τοιούτων ἐσομένων καὶ φυλακὴν ἰδίᾳ ποιήσῃ τις καὶ τὰ ἐρμυνὰ  
 ὑπερδέξια πειρᾶται ἔχων σκηνοῦν. εἰ μὲντοι ὑμῖν δοκεῖ θηρίων ἀλλὰ  
 μὴ ἀνθρώπων εἶναι τὰ τοιαῦτα ἔργα, σκοπεῖτε παῦλάν τινα αὐτῶν· εἰ  
 δὲ μή, πρὸς Διὸς πῶς ἢ θεοῖς θύσομεν ἠδέως ποιοῦντες ἔργα ἀσεβῆ,  
 ἢ πολεμίους πῶς μαχοῦμεθα, ἢν ἀλλήλους κατακαίνωμεν; πόλις δὲ  
 φιλία τίς ἡμᾶς δέξεται, ἢ τις ἂν ὄρᾳ τοσαύτην ἀνομίαν ἐν ἡμῖν; ἀγορὰν  
 δὲ τίς ἄξι θαρρῶν, ἢν περὶ τὰ μέγιστα τοιαῦτα ἐξαμαρτάνοντες  
 φαινόμεθα; οὐ δὲ δὴ πάντων οἰόμεθα τεύξεσθαι ἐπαίνου, τίς ἂν ἡμᾶς  
 τοιούτους ὄντας ἐπαιnéσειεν; ἡμεῖς μὲν γὰρ οἶδ' ὅτι πονηροὺς ἂν  
 φαίημεν εἶναι τοὺς τὰ τοιαῦτα ποιοῦντας.

Ἐκ τούτου ἀνιστάμενοι πάντες ἔλεγον τοὺς μὲν τούτων ἄρξαντας  
 δοῦναι δίκην, τοῦ δὲ λοιποῦ μηκέτι ἐξεῖναι ἀνομίας ἄρξαι· ἐὰν δέ  
 τις ἄρξῃ, ἄγεσθαι αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ θανάτῳ· τοὺς δὲ στρατηγοὺς εἰς δίκας  
 πάντας καταστήσαι· εἶναι δὲ δίκας καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο τις ἠδίκητο  
 ἐξ οὗ Κῦρος ἀπέθανε· δικαστὰς δὲ τοὺς λοχαγοὺς ἐποίησαντο.  
 παραινοῦντος δὲ Ξενοφῶντος καὶ τῶν μάντεων συμβουλευόντων  
 ἔδοξε καθῆραι τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ ἐγένετο καθαρμός.

ἵεναι κήρυκας ἀπεκτονῶς; ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς Κερασουντίων θάψαι αὐτοὺς  
 ἐδειήθημεν. εἰ μὲν οὖν ταῦτα καλῶς ἔχει, δοξάτω ὑμῖν, ἵνα ὡς  
 τοιούτων ἐσομένων καὶ φυλακὴν ἰδίᾳ ποιήσῃ τις καὶ τὰ **fortified,**  
 ὑπερδέξια πειράται ἔχων σκηνοῦν. εἰ μέντοι ὑμῖν δοκεῖ θηρία **impreg-**  
 μὴ ἀνθρώπων εἶναι τὰ τοιαῦτα ἔργα, σκοπεῖτε παῦλάν τινα αὐτῶν· εἰ  
 δὲ μή, πρὸς Διὸς πῶς ἢ θεοῖς θύσομεν **pleasantly** ὄντες ἔργα ἀσεβῆ,  
 ἢ πολεμίοις πῶς μαχοῦμεθα, ἢν ἀλλήλους κατακαίνωμεν; πόλις δὲ  
**φιλία?:** friendship ; **or** ἂν ὀρᾶ τοσαύτην ἀνομίαν ἐν ἡμῖν; ἀγορὰν  
**φίλος?:** friend; beloved  
 δέ τις **ἀγνοῦσθαι** ἦν περὶ τὰ μέγιστα τοιαῦτα ἐξαμαρτάνοντες  
**break**  
 φαινώ **εἶθ' ὅ** δὲ δι' πάντων οἰόμεθα τεύξεσθαι ἐπαίνου, τίς ἂν ἡμᾶς  
**ἄγω?:**  
 τοιούτ' **lead** ἄντας ἐπαινέσειεν; ἡμεῖς μὲν γὰρ οἶδ' ὅτι πονηροὺς ἂν  
**bring**  
 φαίημεν εἶναι τοὺς τὰ τοιαῦτα ποιῶντας.

Ἐκ τούτου ἀνιστάμενοι πάντες ἔλεγον τοὺς μὲν τούτων ἄρξαντας  
 δοῦναι δίκην, τοῦ δὲ λοιποῦ μηκέτι ἐξεῖναι ἀνομίας ἄρξαι· ἐὰν  
 δέ τις ἄρξῃ, ἄγεσθαι αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ θανάτῳ· τοὺς δὲ στρατηγοὺς  
 εἰς δίκας πάντας καταστήσαι· εἶναι δὲ δίκας καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο  
 τις ἠδίκητο ἐξ οὗ Κῦρος ἀπέθανε· δικαστὰς δὲ τοὺς λοχαγοὺς  
 ἐποίησαντο. παραينوῦντος δὲ Ξενοφῶντος καὶ τῶν **seer**

**give advice;** ἔδοξε **clean** τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ ἐγένετο καθαρμός.  
**(mid) consult**

then you approve of such doings, have a resolution passed to that effect, so that, with a prospect of like occurrences in the future, a man may privately set up a guard and do his best to fix his tent where he can find a strong position with a commanding site. If, however, these seem to you to be the deeds rather of wild beasts than of human beings, bethink you of some means by which to stay them; or else, in heaven's name, how shall we do sacrifice to the gods gladly, with impious deeds to answer for? or how shall we, who lay the knife to each other's throats, give battle to our enemies? What friendly city will receive us when they see rampant lawlessness in our midst? Who will have the courage to afford us a market, when we prove our worthlessness in these weightiest concerns? and what becomes of the praise we expect to win from the mouths of men? who will vouchsafe it to us, if this is our behaviour? Should we not ourselves bestow the worst of names on the perpetrators of like deeds?"

After this they rose, and, as one man, proposed that the ringleaders in these matters should be punished; and that for the future, to set an example of lawlessness should be forbidden. Every such ringleader was to be prosecuted on the capital charge; the generals were to bring all offenders to the bar of justice; prosecutions for all other misdemeanours committed since the death of Cyrus were to be instituted; and they ended by constituting the officers into a board of dicasts; and upon the strong representation of Xenophon, with the concurrence of the soothsayers, it was resolved to purify the army, and this purification was made.

*vocabulary*

**αἶρω** raise, win ~aorta; also ἀείρω  
**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι, ὀλλυμι  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**δείδω** to fear ~Deimos  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**δέκα** ten ~decimal  
**δίκη** justice  
**διό** because of which  
**εἰκός οἰκός** (n, 3) likely  
**εἴκοσι** twenty  
**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also ἐλαστρέω  
**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἡμίονος** (m/f) mule  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**κάμνω** toil, acquire  
**μά** by (in oaths)  
**μηδέ** and not; not even

**ναί** yea  
**οἶνος** wine ~wine  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὅπου** where  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πάρως** before, in the past  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πλήσσω** hit ~plectrum  
**πονέω** work; be busy  
**πόνος** toil, suffering  
**ποῦ** where?  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**σίτος** (m/n) grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**ὕβριζω** insult, treat outrageously  
**ὑβρις** -ος (f) pride, insolence, outrage  
**φάσκω** declare, promise, think  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch; also φυλακεύς  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm  
**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions

## 5.8

Ἔδοξε δὲ καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς δίκην ὑποσχέειν τοῦ παρεληλυθότος χρόνου. καὶ διδόντων Φιλίσιος μὲν ὠφλε καὶ Ξανθικλῆς τῆς φυλακῆς τῶν γαυλικῶν χρημάτων τὸ μείωμα εἴκοσι μνᾶς, Σοφαίνετος δέ, ὅτι αἰρεθεὶς[...] κατημέλει, δέκα μνᾶς. Ξενοφῶντος δὲ κατηγορήσαντινες φάσκοντες παίεσθαι ὑπ' αὐτοῦ καὶ ὡς ὑβρίζοντος τὴν κατηγορίαν ἐποιοῦντο. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐκέλευσεν εἰπεῖν τὸν πρῶτον λέξαντα ποῦ καὶ ἐπλήγη. ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο· Ὅπου καὶ ρίγει ἀπωλλύμεθα καὶ χιῶν πλείστη ἦν. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν· Ἄλλα μὴν χειμῶνός γε ὄντος οἴου λέγεις, σίτου δὲ ἐπιλελοιπότης, οἴνου δὲ μὴδ' ὄσφραίνεσθαι παρόν, ὑπὸ δὲ πόνων πολλῶν ἀπαγορευόντων, πολεμίων δὲ ἐπομένων, εἰ ἐν τοιούτῳ καιρῷ ὑβρίζον, ὁμολογῶ καὶ τῶν ὄνων ὑβριστότερος εἶναι, οἷς φασιν ὑπὸ τῆς ὑβρεως κόπον οὐκ ἐγγίγνεσθαι. ὅμως δὲ καὶ λέξον, ἔφη, ἐκ τίνος ἐπλήγης. πότερον ἦτον τί σε καὶ ἐπεὶ μοι οὐκ ἐδίδους ἔπαιον; ἀλλ' ἀπήτουν; ἀλλὰ περὶ παιδικῶν μαχόμενος; ἀλλὰ μεθύων ἐπαρῆνησα; ἐπεὶ δὲ τούτων οὐδὲν ἔφησεν, ἐπήρετο αὐτὸν εἰ ὀπλιτεῦοι. οὐκ ἔφη· πάλιν εἰ πελτάζοι. οὐδὲ τοῦτ' ἔφη, ἀλλ' ἡμίονον ἐλαύνειν ταχθεὶς ὑπὸ τῶν συσκήνων ἐλεύθερος ὢν. ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἀναγιγνώσκει αὐτὸν καὶ ἤρετο· Ἦ σὺ εἶ ὁ τὸν κάμοντα ἀγαγών; Ναὶ μὰ Δεῦ, ἔφη· σὺ γὰρ ἠνάγκαζες· τὰ δὲ τῶν ἐμῶν συσκήνων σκευὴ διέρρηψας. Ἄλλ'



## 5.8

Ἔδοξε δὲ καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς δίκην |<sup>ὑπέχω?: hold out one's hand; submit to ;</sup>  
<sup>|</sup>οἱ ὑπίσχομαι?: promise, agree to do  
 χρόνου. καὶ |<sup>δίδημι?: should; bind; need, fail</sup> |<sup>ἰανθικλῆς τῆς φυλακῆς</sup>  
<sup>|</sup>; or <sup>δίδωμι?: give; permit</sup>  
 τῶν γαυλικῶν χρημάτων τὸ μείωμα εἴκοσι μνᾶς, Σοφαίνετος  
 δέ, ὅτι αἰρεθεῖς[...] κατημέλει, δέκα μνᾶς. Ξενοφῶντος δὲ  
 κατηγορήσαντινες φάσκοντες παίεσθαι ὑπ' αὐτοῦ καὶ ὡς ὑβρίζοντος  
 τὴν κατηγορίαν ἐποιοῦντο. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐκέλευσεν εἰπεῖν τὸν  
 πρῶτον λέξαντα ποῦ καὶ ἐπλήγη. ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο· Ὅπου καὶ  
 |<sup>ῥιγέω?: shudder; be|snow</sup> πλείστη ἦν. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν· Ἄλλὰ μὴν  
<sup>|</sup>flustered ; or <sup>ῥιγος?:</sup>  
<sup>|</sup>miserable, cold<sup>ντος οἴου λέγεις, σίτου δὲ</sup> |fail, not work . οἴνου δὲ  
 μηδ' ὀσφραίνεσθαι παρόν, ὑπὸ δὲ πόνων πολλῶν |<sup>(trans) forbid; (intrans) say</sup>  
<sup>|</sup>goodbye  
 πολεμίων δὲ ἐπομένων, εἰ ἐν τοιούτῳ καιρῷ ὑβρίζον, ὁμολογῶ καὶ  
 τῶν |<sup>ῥνος?: donkey ; or</sup> εἶναι, οἷς φασιν ὑπὸ τῆς ὑβρεως κόπον  
<sup>|</sup>ῥνομαι?: minimize  
 οὐκ |live in ὅμως δὲ καὶ λέξον, ἔφη, ἐκ τίνος ἐπλήγης.  
 |<sup>which, ἣ</sup> οὐν τί σε καὶ ἐπεὶ μοι οὐκ ἐδίδους ἔπαιον; ἀλλ' |<sup>demand.</sup>  
<sup>|</sup>whichever<sup>to have</sup>  
 ἀλλὰ περὶ παιδικῶν μαχόμενος; ἀλλὰ |<sup>be soaked, drunk</sup> |<sup>returned</sup>  
 τούτων οὐδὲν ἔφησεν, ἐπήρετο αὐτὸν εἰ ὀπλιτεύοι. οὐκ ἔφη· πάλιν  
 εἰ πελτάζοι. οὐδὲ τοῦτ' ἔφη, ἀλλ' ἡμίονον ἐλαύνειν ταχθεὶς ὑπὸ  
 τῶν συσκήμων ἐλεύθερος ὢν. ἐνταῦθα δὲ |<sup>recognize</sup> αὐτὸν καὶ  
 ἦρετο· Ἦ σὺ εἶ ὁ τὸν κάμνοντα ἀγαγών; Ναὶ μὰ Δί, ἔφη· σὺ  
 γὰρ ἠνάγκαζες· τὰ δὲ τῶν ἐμῶν συσκήμων σκευὴ διέρρηψας. Ἄλλ'

## 5.8

It was further resolved that the generals themselves should undergo a judicial examination in reference to their conduct in past time. In course of investigation, Philesius and Xanthicles respectively were condemned to pay a sum of twenty minae, to meet a deficiency to that amount incurred during the guardianship of the cargoes of the merchantmen. Sophaenetus was fined ten minae for inadequate performance of his duty as one of the chief officers selected. Against Xenophon a charge was brought by certain people, who asserted that they had been beaten by him, and framed the indictment as one of personal outrage with violence. Xenophon got up and demanded that the first speaker should state "where and when it was he had received these blows." The other, so challenged, answered, "When we were perishing of cold and there was a great depth of snow." Xenophon said: "Upon my word, with weather such as you describe, when our provisions had run out, when the wine could not even be smelt, when numbers were dropping down dead beat, so acute was the suffering, with the enemy close on our heels; certainly, if at such a season as that I was guilty of outrage, I plead guilty to being a more outrageous brute than the ass, which is too wanton, they say, to feel fatigue. Still, I wish you would tell us," said he, "what led to my striking you. Did I ask you for something and, on your refusing it to me, did I proceed to beat you? Was it a debt, for which I demanded payment? or a quarrel about some boy or other? Was I the worse for liquor, and behaving like a drunkard?" When the man met each of these questions with a negative, he questioned him further: "Are you a heavy infantry soldier?" "No," said he. "A peltast, then?" "No, nor yet a peltast"; but he had been ordered by his messmates to drive a mule, although he was a free man. Then at last he recognised him, and inquired: "Are

*vocabulary*

**ἄγνυμι** break  
**αἶρω** raise, win ~aorta; also ἀείρω  
**ἀνακράζω** speak up  
**ἄξιος** worthy ~axiom  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back  
**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ῶ) show, point out;  
 (mid) declare  
**ἀποδίδωμι** repay  
**ἀπολαμβάνω** receive, recover, take  
 aside, cut off  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι,  
 ὄλλυμι  
**ἀρκέω** ward off, defend; suffice  
**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon  
**αὐθις** back, again, moreover ~after  
**βόθρος** pit, grotto, trench  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**διό** because of which  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἔοικα** seem, seem likely, beseem ~icon  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ζῶ** live ~zoo; also ζάω, ζῶω

**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon;  
 also καταλείπω  
**λείπω** leave something; depart  
 ~eclipse; also λιπάω  
**μηκέτι** no more  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οὔομαι,  
 οὔομαι  
**ὅπόσος** as/how many/great  
**ὅπου** where  
**ὀρύσσω** dig  
**παίζω** play  
**παρίστημι** stand, be present  
**πλήσσω** hit ~plectrum  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πράγμα** -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing,  
 affair  
**προθέω** run from, lead to the fray  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**σκέλος** (m/n, 3) leg  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

ἡ μὲν διάρρημις, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, τοιαύτη τις ἐγένετο. διέδωκα  
 ἄλλοις ἄγειν καὶ ἐκέλευσα πρὸς ἐμὲ ἀπαγαγεῖν, καὶ ἀπολαβὼν  
 ἅπαντα σῶα ἀπέδωκά σοι, ἐπεὶ καὶ σὺ ἐμοὶ ἀπέδειξας τὸν ἄνδρα.  
 οἶον δὲ τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐγένετο ἀκούσατε, ἔφη· καὶ γὰρ ἄξιον. ἀνὴρ  
 κατελείπετο διὰ τὸ μηκέτι δύνασθαι πορεύεσθαι. καὶ ἐγὼ τὸν μὲν  
 ἄνδρα τοσοῦτον ἐγίνωσκον ὅτι εἰς ἡμῶν εἴη· ἠνάγκασα δὲ σὲ τοῦτον  
 ἄγειν, ὡς μὴ ἀπόλοιτο· καὶ γὰρ, ὡς ἐγὼ οἶμαι, πολέμιοι ἡμῖν  
 ἐφείποντο. συνέφη τοῦτο ὁ ἄνθρωπος. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν,  
 ἐπεὶ προύπεμψά σε, καταλαμβάνω αὐθις σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι  
 προσιῶν βόθρον ὀρύττοντα ὡς κατορύζοντα τὸν ἄνθρωπον, καὶ  
 ἐπιστὰς ἐπήμουν σε. ἐπεὶ δὲ παρεστηκότων ἡμῶν συνέκαμψε τὸ  
 σκέλος ἀνὴρ, ἀνέκραγον οἱ παρόντες ὅτι ζῆ ἀνὴρ, σὺ δ' εἶπας·  
 Ὅποσα γε βούλεται· ὡς ἔγωγε αὐτὸν οὐκ ἄξω. ἐνταῦθα ἔπαισά  
 σε· ἀληθῆ λέγεις· ἔδοξας γὰρ μοι εἰδοῦναι ὅτι ἔζη. Τί οὖν;  
 ἔφη, ἠττόν τι ἀπέθανεν, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ σοι ἀπέδειξα αὐτόν; Καὶ γὰρ  
 ἡμεῖς, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, πάντες ἀποθανούμεθα· τούτου οὖν ἕνεκα  
 ζῶντας ἡμᾶς δεῖ κατορυχθῆναι; Τοῦτον μὲν ἀνέκραγον ὡς ὀλίγας  
 παίσειεν· ἄλλους δ' ἐκέλευε λέγειν διὰ τί ἕκαστος ἐπλήγη. ἐπεὶ  
 δὲ οὐκ ἀνίσταντο, αὐτὸς ἔλεγεν· Ἐγὼ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ὁμολογῶ παῖσαι  
 δὴ ἄνδρας ἕνεκεν ἀταξίας ὅσοις σῆζεσθαι μὲν ἤρκει δι' ὑμῶν ἐν  
 τάξει τε ἰόντων καὶ μαχομένων ὅπου δέοι, αὐτοὶ δὲ λιπόντες τὰς  
 τάξεις προθέοντες ἀρπάζειν ἤθελον καὶ ὑμῶν πλεονεκτεῖν. εἰ δὲ

ἡ μὲν διάρρηξις, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, τοιαύτη τις ἐγένετο. διέδωκα  
 ἄλλοις ἄγειν καὶ ἐκέλευσα πρὸς ἐμὲ ἀπαγαγεῖν, καὶ |receive, recover, take  
 ἅπαντα σῶα ἀπέδωκά σοι, ἐπεὶ καὶ σὺ ἐμοὶ ἀπέδειξας τὸν ἄνδρα.  
 οἶον δὲ τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐγένετο ἀκούσατε, ἔφη· καὶ γὰρ ἄξιον. ἀνὴρ  
 κατελείπετο διὰ τὸ μηκέτι δύνασθαι πορεύεσθαι. καὶ ἐγὼ τὸν μὲν  
 ἄνδρα τοσοῦτον ἐγίγνωσκον ὅτι εἰς ἡμῶν εἴη· ἠνάγκασα δὲ σὲ τοῦτον  
 ἄγειν, ὡς μὴ ἀπόλοιτο· καὶ γάρ, ὡς ἐγὼ οἶμαι, πολέμιοι ἡμῖν  
 ἐφείποντο. συνέφη τοῦτο ὁ ἄνθρωπος. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν,  
 ἐπεὶ προὔπεμψά σε, καταλαμβάνω αὐθις σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι  
 προσιῶν |pit, |dig ὡς κατορύζοντα τὸν ἄνθρωπον, καὶ  
 ἐπιστάς |trench σε. ἐπεὶ δὲ παρεστηκότων ἡμῶν συνέκαμψε τὸ  
 |leg ἀνὴρ, |speak up οἱ παρόντες ὅτι ζῆ ἀνὴρ, σὺ δ' εἶπας·  
 |as/how many/great ὡς ἔγωγε αὐτὸν οὐκ ἄγνομι?; |break|play  
 σε· ἀληθῆ λέγεις· ἔδοξας γάρ μοι εἰδότεῖ ἐο|bring ὅτι ἔζη. Τί οὖν;  
 ἔφη, ἠττόν τι ἀπέθανεν, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ σοι ἀπέδειξα αὐτόν; Καὶ γὰρ  
 ἡμεῖς, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, πάντες ἀποθανούμεθα· τούτου οὖν ἕνεκα  
 |live ἡμᾶς δεῖ κατορυχθῆναι; Τοῦτον μὲν |speak up ὡς ὀλίγας  
 |play ἄλλους δ' ἐκέλευε λέγειν διὰ τί ἕκαστος ἐπλήγη. ἐπεὶ  
 δὲ οὐκ ἀνίσταντο, αὐτὸς ἔλεγεν· Ἐγὼ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ὁμολογῶ |play  
 δὴ ἄνδρας ἕνεκεν ἀταξίας ὅσοις σῆζεσθαι μὲν ἤρκει δι' ὑμῶν ἐν  
 τάξει τε ἰόντων καὶ μαχομένων ὅπου δέοι, αὐτοὶ δὲ λιπόντες τὰς  
 τάξεις |run from,|carry off, seize ' και ὑμῶν πλεονεκτεῖν. εἰ δὲ  
 |lead to the  
 |fray

you the fellow who carried home the sick man?" "Yes, I am," said he, "thanks to your driving; and you made havoc of my messmates' kit." "Havoc!" said Xenophon: "Nay, I distributed it; some to one man, some to another to carry, and bade them bring the things safely to me; and when I got them back I delivered them all safely to you, and you, on your side, had rendered an account to me of the man. Let me tell you," he continued, turning to the court, "what the circumstances were; it is worth hearing:—

"A man was left behind from inability to proceed farther; I recognised the poor fellow sufficiently to see that he was one of ours, and I forced you, sir, to carry him to save his life. For if I am not much mistaken, the enemy were close at our heels?" The fellow assented to this. "Well then," said Xenophon, "after I had sent you forward, I overtook you again, as I came up with the rearguard; you were digging a trench with intent to bury the man; I pulled up and said something in commendation; as we stood by the poor fellow twitched his leg, and the bystanders all cried out, 'Why, the man's alive!' Your remark was: 'Alive or not as he likes, I am not going to carry him' Then I struck you. Yes! you are right, for it looked very much as if you knew him to be alive." "Well," said he, "was he any the less dead when I reported him to you?" "Nay," retorted Xenophon, "by the same token we shall all one day be dead, but that is no reason why meantime we should all be buried alive?" Then there was a general shout: "If Xenophon had given the fellow a few more blows, it might have been better." The others were now called upon to state the grounds on which they had been beaten in each case; but when they refused to get up, he proceeded to state them himself.

"I confess, sirs, to having struck certain men for failure in discipline. These were men who were quite content to owe their safety to us. Whilst the rest of the world marched on in rank and did whatever fighting had to

*vocabulary*

**αἷμα** -τος (n, 3) blood ~hematology  
**ἀναμένω** wait for  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἀξιόω** consider worthy, fitting  
**ἀπλός** onefold, worn single ~haploid  
**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι,  
 ὀλλυμι  
**δάκτυλος** finger, toe  
**δίκη** justice  
**ἐκτείνω** stretch out ~tend  
**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also  
 ἐλαστρέω  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἤσυχία** peace and quiet  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart; also θαρρέω  
**ιατρός** physician  
**ἴσος** equal; also ἔσση  
**ἰσχυρός** strong, forceful, violent  
**καθέζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit  
 down, sit up; also ἕζομαι, καθέζετο,  
 καθέζω  
**κάθημαι** sit  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**κινέω** set in motion, move, remove

~kinetic

**κωλύω** hinder, prevent  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**οἶνος** wine ~wine  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὄπισθεν** behind, hereafter; also ὀπιθεν  
**ὁπότε** when; also ὀπότε  
**παίζω** play  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πείρω** pierce, run through ~pierce  
**πίνω** drink ~potion  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πού** no doubt; somewhere/how  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**πύξ** with the fist ~pugilist  
**σώζω** save  
**τέμνω** cut, sacrifice, solemnize  
 ~tonsure  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑβρις** -ος (f) pride, insolence, outrage  
**ὑπέχω** hold out one's hand; submit to;  
 also ὑποσχέθω  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω

τοῦτο πάντες ἐποιοῦμεν, ἅπαντες ἂν ἀπωλόμεθα. ἤδη δὲ καὶ  
 μαλακιζόμενόν τινα καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλοντα ἀνίστασθαι ἀλλὰ προϊέμενον  
 αὐτὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις καὶ ἔπαισα καὶ ἐβιασάμην πορεύεσθαι. ἐν γὰρ  
 τῷ ἰσχυρῷ χειμῶνι καὶ αὐτός ποτε ἀναμένων τινὰς συσκευαζομένους  
 καθεζόμενος συχνὸν χρόνον κατέμαθον ἀναστὰς μόλις καὶ τὰ σκέλη  
 ἐκτείνας. ἐν ἐμαυτῷ οὖν πείραν λαβὼν ἐκ τούτου καὶ ἄλλον, ὅποτε  
 ἴδοιμι καθήμενον καὶ βλακεύοντα, ἤλαυνον· τὸ γὰρ κινεῖσθαι καὶ  
 ἀνδρῖζεσθαι παρῆχε θερμασίαν τινὰ καὶ ὑγρότητα, τὸ δὲ καθῆσθαι  
 καὶ ἡσυχίαν ἔχειν ἐώρων ὑπουργὸν ὃν τῷ τε ἀποπήγνυσθαι τὸ αἷμα  
 καὶ τῷ ἀποσήπεσθαι τοὺς τῶν ποδῶν δακτύλους, ἄπερ πολλοὺς  
 καὶ ὑμεῖς ἴστε παθόντας. ἄλλον δέ γε ἴσως ἀπολειπόμενόν που  
 διὰ ῥαστώνην καὶ κωλύοντα καὶ ὑμᾶς τοὺς πρόσθεν καὶ ἡμᾶς τοὺς  
 ὀπισθεν πορεύεσθαι ἔπαισα πύξ, ὅπως μὴ λόγχῃ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων  
 παίοιτο. καὶ γὰρ οὖν νῦν ἔξεστω αὐτοῖς σωθῆσιν, εἴ τι ὑπ' ἐμοῦ  
 ἔπαθον παρὰ τὸ δίκαιον, δίκην λαβεῖν. εἰ δ' ἐπὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις  
 ἐγένοντο, τί μέγα ἂν οὕτως ἔπαθον ὅτου δίκην ἂν ἠξίουσαν λαμβάνειν;  
 ἀπλοῦς μοι, ἔφη, ὁ λόγος· εἰ μὲν ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ ἐκόλασά τινα, ἀξιῶ  
 ὑπέχειν δίκην οἷαν καὶ γονεῖς υἱοῖς καὶ διδάσκαλοι παισί· καὶ γὰρ  
 οἱ ἰατροὶ καίουσι καὶ τέμνουσιν ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ· εἰ δὲ ὕβρει νομίζετέ με  
 ταῦτα πράττειν, ἐνθυμήθητε ὅτι νῦν ἐγὼ θαρρῶ σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς μᾶλλον  
 ἢ τότε καὶ θρασύτερός εἰμι νῦν ἢ τότε καὶ οἶνον πλείω πίνω, ἀλλ'  
 ὅμως οὐδένα παίω· ἐν εὐδία γὰρ ὀρώ ὑμᾶς. ὅταν δὲ χειμῶν ἦ καὶ



τοῦτο πάντες ἐποιούμεν, ἅπαντες ἂν ἀπωλόμεθα. ἤδη δὲ καὶ  
μαλακιζόμενόν τινα καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλοντα ἀνίστασθαι ἀλλὰ προϊέμενον  
αὐτὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις καὶ |play καὶ ἐβιασάμην πορεύεσθαι. ἐν γὰρ  
τῷ ἰσχυρῷ χειμῶνι καὶ αὐτός ποτε |wait for τινὰς συσκευαζομένους

|act: set, seat; pass: ρόνον κατέμαθον ἀναστὰς μόλις καὶ τὰ |leg  
|sit down, sit up  
|stretch out ἔμαυτῷ οὖν πείραν λαβὼν ἐκ τούτου καὶ ἄλλον, ὅποτε  
ἴδομι καθήμενον καὶ βλακεύοντα, ἤλαννον· τὸ γὰρ κινεῖσθαι καὶ  
ἀνδρίζεσθαι παρέιχε θερμασίαν τινὰ καὶ ὑγρότητα, τὸ δὲ καθῆσθαι  
καὶ |peace and quiet ἴων ὑπουργὸν ὃν τῷ τε ἀποπήγνυσθαι τὸ αἶμα  
καὶ τῷ ἀποσῆπεσθαι τοὺς τῶν ποδῶν |finger, toe ἄπερ πολλοὺς  
καὶ ὑμεῖς ἴστε παθόντας. ἄλλον δὲ γε ἴσως |leave behind, που  
|fail  
διὰ ῥαστώνης καὶ κωλύοντα καὶ ὑμᾶς τοὺς πρόσθεν καὶ ἡμᾶς τοὺς  
ὄπισθεν πορεύεσθαι |play |with the fist ἰ, λόγῃ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων  
παίειτο. καὶ γὰρ οὖν νῦν |go forth ὑτοῖς σωθεῖσιν, εἴ τι ὑπ' ἐμοῦ  
ἔπαθον παρὰ τὸ δίκαιον, δίκην λαβεῖν. εἰ δ' ἐπὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις  
ἐγένοντο, τί μέγα ἂν οὕτως ἔπαθον ὅτου δίκην ἂν ἠξίουν λαμβάνειν;  
|onefold, worn single ὄγος· εἰ μὲν ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ ἐκόλασά τινα, ἀξιῶ  
|hold out one's ἠ καὶ γονεῖς υἱοῖς καὶ διδάσκαλοι παισί· καὶ γὰρ  
|hand; submit to  
οἱ |physician ἰσοὶ καὶ τέμνουσιν ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ· εἰ δὲ ὕβρει νομίζετέ με  
ταῦτα πράττειν, ἐνθυμήθητε ὅτι νῦν ἐγὼ θαρρῶ σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς μᾶλλον  
ἢ τότε καὶ θρασύτερός εἰμι νῦν ἢ τότε καὶ οἶνον πλείω πίνω, ἀλλ'  
ὅμως οὐδένα παίω· ἐν εὐδία γὰρ ὀρῶ ὑμᾶς. ὅταν δὲ χειμῶν ἦ καὶ

be done, they preferred to leave the ranks, and rush forward to loot and enrich themselves at our expense. Now, if this conduct were to be the rule, general ruin would be the result. I do not deny that I have given blows to this man or the other who played the poltroon and refused to get up, helplessly abandoning himself to the enemy; and so I forced them to march on. For once in the severe wintry weather I myself happened to sit down for a long time, whilst waiting for a party who were getting their kit together, and I discovered how difficult it was to get up again and stretch one's legs. After this personal experience, whenever I saw any one else seated in slack and lazy mood, I tried to spur him on. The mere movement and effort to play the man caused warmth and moisture, whereas it was plain that sitting down and keeping quiet helped the blood to freeze and the toes to mortify, calamities which really befell several of the men, as you yourselves are aware.

“I can imagine a third case, that of some straggler stopping behind, merely to rest for rest's sake, and hindering you in front and us behind alike from pressing on the march. If he got a blow with the fist from me it saved him a thrust with the lance from the enemy. In fact, the opportunity they enjoy to-day of taking vengeance on me for any treatment which I put upon them wrongfully, is derived from their salvation then; whereas, if they had fallen into the enemy's hands, let them ask themselves for what outrage, however great, they could expect to get satisfaction now. My defence,” he continued, “is simple: if I chastised any one for his own good, I claim to suffer the same penalties as parents pay their children or masters their boys. Does not the surgeon also cauterise and cut us for our good? But if you really believe that these acts are the outcome of wanton insolence, I beg you to observe that although to-day, thank God! I am heartier than formerly, I wear a bolder front now than then, and I drink more wine, yet I never strike a soul; no, for I see that you have reached smooth water. When storm arises, and a great sea strikes the vessel amidships, a mere shake

*vocabulary*

**ἀμαρτάνω** miss, fail, lose; sin; also  
 ἀφάμαρτάνω, ἡμβροτον, ἀπήμβροτον  
**ἀπερύκω** keep off  
**ἀπεχθάνομαι** become hated ~external  
**ἀπέχθομαι** be hated, incur hatred  
**ἀποδύω** strip off, dump; also ἀποδύνω  
**ἀσθενέω** be weak, sick  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**ἀτιμάω** dishonor  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
 ἀφήκω  
**ἀφοράω** look away, at  
**γόος** crying, wailing  
**δίδημι** should; bind; need, fail; also  
 δέω  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἐξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἐπαινέω** concur, concur with  
**ἐπιφέρω** bestow  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**θαυμάζω** marvel ~theater; also  
 ἀποθαυμάζω

**ικανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**κακώω** harm, disfigure  
**κάμνω** toil, acquire  
**κυβερνήτης** -εω (m, 1) steersman  
 ~govern; also κυβερνητήρ  
**κύων** κυνός (m/f, 3) dog ~hound  
**μά** by (in oaths)  
**μής** (m, 1) indeed; month; also μείς,  
 μήν  
**μικρός** small; also σμικρός  
**μιμνήσκω** remind; (mid) remember,  
 turn one's thoughts to ~mnemonic  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οὔομαι,  
 οἶομαι  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὀδός  
**οὔτις** nobody, nothing  
**παρίστημι** stand, be present  
**πρύμνα** stern; also πρυμνόν  
**σιωπάω** be silent  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τιμάω** honor, exalt  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὕβριζω** insult, treat outrageously  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χαλεπαίνω** be violent, rage  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear  
**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

θάλαττα μεγάλη ἐπιφέρηται, οὐχ ὁράτε ὅτι καὶ νεύματος μόνον ἔνεκα χαλεπαίνει μὲν πρωρεὺς τοῖς ἐν πρήρη, χαλεπαίνει δὲ κυβερνήτης τοῖς ἐν πρύμνῃ; ἱκανὰ γὰρ ἐν τῷ τοιούτῳ καὶ μικρὰ ἀμαρτηθέντα πάντα συνεπιτρῦψαι. ὅτι δὲ δικαίως ἔπαιον αὐτοὺς καὶ ὑμεῖς κατεδικάσατε· ἔχοντες ξίφη, οὐ ψήφους, παρέστατε, καὶ ἔξην ὑμῖν ἐπικουρεῖν αὐτοῖς, εἰ ἐβούλεσθε· ἀλλὰ μὰ Δία οὔτε τούτοις ἐπεκουρέετε οὔτε σὺν ἐμοὶ τὸν ἀτακτοῦντα ἐπαίετε. τοιγαροῦν ἐξουσίαν ἐποιήσατε τοῖς κακοῖς αὐτῶν ὑβρίζειν ἐὼντες αὐτούς. οἶμαι γάρ, εἰ ἐθέλετε σκοπεῖν, τοὺς αὐτοὺς εὐρήσετε καὶ τότε κακίστους καὶ νῦν ὑβριστοτάτους. Βοῖσκος γοῦν ὁ πύκτης ὁ Θετταλὸς τότε μὲν διεμάχετο ὡς κάμνων ἀσπίδα μὴ φέρειν, νῦν δέ, ὡς ἀκούω, Κοτυωριτῶν πολλοὺς ἤδη ἀποδέδυκεν. ἦν οὖν σωφρονῆτε, τοῦτον τὰναντία ποιήσετε ἢ τοὺς κύνας ποιουσι· τοὺς μὲν γὰρ κύνας τοὺς χαλεποὺς τὰς μὲν ἡμέρας διδέασι, τὰς δὲ νύκτας ἀφιάσι, τοῦτον δέ, ἦν σωφρονῆτε, τὴν νύκτα μὲν δήσετε, τὴν δὲ ἡμέραν ἀφήσετε. ἀλλὰ γάρ, ἔφη, θαυμάζω ὅτι εἰ μὲν τι ὑμῶν ἀπηχθόμην, μέμνησθε καὶ οὐ σιωπᾶτε, εἰ δέ τῳ ἢ χεμῶνα ἐπεκούρησα ἢ πολέμιον ἀπήρυξα ἢ ἀσθενοῦντι ἢ ἀποροῦντι συνεξεπόρισά τι, τούτων δὲ οὐδεὶς μέμνηται, οὐδ' εἴ τινα καλῶς τι ποιῶντα ἐπήνεσα οὐδ' εἴ τινα ἄνδρα ὄντα ἀγαθὸν ἐτίμησα ὡς ἐδυνάμην, οὐδὲν τούτων μέμνησθε. ἀλλὰ μὴν καλὸν τε καὶ δίκαιον καὶ ὅσιον καὶ ἴδιον τῶν ἀγαθῶν μᾶλλον ἢ τῶν κακῶν μεμνήσθαι.

Ἐκ τούτου μὲν δὴ ἀνίσταντο καὶ ἀνεμύμησκον.

θάλαττα μεγάλη ἐπιφέρηται, οὐχ ὁράτε ὅτι καὶ νεύματος μόνον ἔνεκα

|be violent, rage |, ῥαρένς τοῖς ἐν πρήρα. |be violent|steersman τοῖς  
|rage

ἐν |stern |, ἱκανὰ γὰρ ἐν τῷ τοιούτῳ καὶ μικρὰ ἀμαρτηθέντα πάντα  
συνεπιτρῦμαι. ὅτι δὲ δικαίως ἔπαιον αὐτοὺς καὶ ὑμεῖς κατεδικάσατε·

ἔχοντες ξίφη, οὐ ψήφους, παρέστατε, καὶ |go forth| ἐπικουρεῖν αὐτοῖς,  
εἰ ἐβούλεσθε· ἀλλὰ μὰ Δία οὔτε τούτοις ἐπεκουρέετε οὔτε σὺν ἐμοὶ

τὸν ἀτακτοῦντα ἐπαίετε. τοιγαροῦν ἐξουσίαν ἐποιήσατε τοῖς κακοῖς  
αὐτῶν ὑβρίζειν ἐῶντες αὐτούς. οἶμαι γάρ, εἰ ἐθέλετε σκοπεῖν, τοὺς

αὐτοὺς εὐρήσετε καὶ τότε κακίστους καὶ νῦν ὑβριστοτάτους. Βοῖσκος  
γοῦν ὁ πύκτης ὁ Θετταλὸς τότε μὲν διεμάχετο ὡς κάμνων ἀσπίδα

μὴ φέρειν, νῦν δέ, ὡς ἀκούω, Κοτυωριτῶν πολλοὺς ἤδη |strip off, dump

ἦν οὖν σωφρονῆτε, τοῦτον τάναντία ποιήσετε ἢ τοὺς κύνας ποιούσι·  
τοὺς μὲν γὰρ κύνας τοὺς χαλεποὺς τὰς μὲν ἡμέρας |should; |  
|bind; need,

νύκτας ἀφιᾶσι, τοῦτον δέ, ἦν σωφρονῆτε, τὴν νύκτα |fail|δήσετε, τὴν  
δὲ ἡμέραν ἀφήσετε. ἀλλὰ γάρ, ἔφη, θαυμάζω ὅτι εἰ μὲν τινι ὑμῶν

|ἀπεχθάνομαι?· |, ἵ |become|be silent εἰ δέ τῳ ἢ χειμῶνα |fight in an-  
|hated ; or ἀπέχθομαι?· be |other's cause

|hated|έμιον |keep off | ἢ |be weak, sick| ἵποροῦντι συνεξέπόρισά τι,  
τούτων δὲ οὐδεὶς μέμνηται, οὐδ' εἴ τινα καλῶς τι ποιοῦντα ἐπήνεσα

οὐδ' εἴ τινα ἄνδρα ὄντα ἀγαθὸν |ἴτιμάω?· |enter, put on,| ἐν τούτων  
μέμνησθε. ἀλλὰ μὴν καλόν τε |dishonor |;strip off

μὴν καλόν τε |or| τιμάω?· καὶ ὅσιον καὶ ἴδιον τῶν  
|honor  
ἀγαθῶν μᾶλλον ἢ τῶν κακῶν μεμνησθαι.

Ἐκ τούτου μὲν δὴ ἀνίσταντο καὶ ἀνεμίμησκον.

of the head will make the look-out man furious with the crew in the forecastle, or the helmsman with the men in the stern sheets, for at such a crisis even a slight slip may ruin everything. But I appeal to your own verdict, already recorded, in proof that I was justified in striking these men. You stood by, sirs, with swords, not voting tablets, in your hands, and it was in your power to aid the fellows if you liked; but, to speak the honest truth, you neither aided them nor did you join me in striking the disorderly. In other words, you enabled any evilly-disposed person among them to give rein to his wantonness by your passivity. For if you will be at pains to investigate, you will find that those who were then most cowardly are the ringleaders to-day in brutality and outrage.

”There is Boiscus the boxer, a Thessalian, what a battle he fought then to escape carrying his shield! so tired was he, and to-day I am told he has stripped several citizens of Cotyora of the clothes on their backs. If then you are wise, you will treat this personage in a way the contrary to that in which men treat dogs. A savage dog is tied up on the day and loosed at night, but if you are wise you will tie this fellow up at night and only let him loose in the day.

“But really,” he added, “it does surprise me with what keenness you remember and recount the times when I incurred the hatred of some one; but some other occasions when I eased the burden of winter and storm for any of you, or beat off an enemy, or helped to minister to you in sickness and want, not a soul of you remembers these. Or when for any noble deed done by any of you I praised the doer, and according to my ability did honour to this brave man or that; these things have slipped from your memories, and are clean forgotten. Yet it were surely more noble, just, and holy, sweeter and kindlier to treasure the memory of good rather than of evil.”

He ended, and then one after another of the assembly got up and began recalling incidents of the kind

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**ἄλλομαι** to jump ~sally  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
**ἀρκέω** ward off, defend; suffice  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**αὐλός** flute, tube, hollow  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**βοῦς βοός** (m/f) cow, ox; shield  
 ~bovine  
**δειπνέω** eat, dine  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**διατρίβω** wear down, delay ~tribology  
**ἐντυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also τυγχάνω  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**ἱερεῖον ἱρηίου** sacrificial animal  
**κάλως** halyard  
**μάχαιρα** knife, dagger  
**μήτε** neither...nor...

**ξένιος** of hospitality  
**ὄπλομαι** get ready, prepare  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὀρχέομαι** dance  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also πειρητίζω  
**περιγιγνομαι** surpass  
**πίνω** drink ~potion  
**πλήσσω** hit ~plectrum  
**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**πρόσω** forward, in the future; also πόρρω, πρόσωθεν  
**σκηνέω** camp  
**σκηνώω** camp  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**στολή** equipment, gear  
**στρατιά** army  
**τελέω** fulfill; pf pass: be feasible  
**τέλος** -υς (n, 3) end; military post  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also ἐντυγχάνω  
**ὕψηλός** high  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**χώρα** place

καὶ περιεγένετο ὥστε καλῶς ἔχειν.

## 6

### 6.1

Ἐκ τούτου δὲ ἐν τῇ διατριβῇ οἱ μὲν ἀπὸ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἕζων, οἱ δὲ καὶ ληζόμενοι ἐκ τῆς Παφλαγονίας. ἐκλώπευον δὲ καὶ οἱ Παφλαγόνες εὖ μάλα τοὺς ἀποσκεδαννυμένους, καὶ τῆς νυκτὸς τοὺς πρόσω σκηνοῦντας ἐπειρῶντο κακουργεῖν· καὶ πολεμικώτατα πρὸς ἀλλήλους εἶχον ἐκ τούτων. ὁ δὲ Κορύλας, ὃς ἐτύγχανε τότε Παφλαγονίας ἄρχων, πέμπει παρὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας πρέσβεις ἔχοντας ἵππους καὶ στολὰς καλὰς, λέγοντας ὅτι Κορύλας ἔτοιμος εἶη τοὺς Ἕλληνας μῆτε ἀδικεῖν μῆτε ἀδικεῖσθαι. οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι περὶ μὲν τούτων σὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ βουλευσούντο, ἐπὶ ξένια δὲ ἐδέχοντο αὐτούς· παρεκάλεσαν δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀνδρῶν οὓς ἐδόκουν δικαιοτάτους εἶναι. θύσαντες δὲ βοῦς τῶν αἰχμαλώτων καὶ ἄλλα ἱερεῖα εὐωχίαν μὲν ἀρκούσαν παρεῖχον, κατακεῖμενοι δὲ ἐν σκίμπτωσι ἐδείπνουν, καὶ ἔπινον ἐκ κερατίνων ποτηρίων, οἷς ἐνετύγχανον ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ. ἐπεὶ δὲ σπονδαὶ τε ἐγένοντο καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν, ἀνέστησαν πρῶτον μὲν Θυράκες καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸν ὠρχήσαντο σὺν τοῖς ὄπλοις καὶ ἤλλοντο ὑψηλὰ τε καὶ κούφως καὶ ταῖς μαχαίραις ἐχρῶντο· τέλος δὲ ὁ ἕτερος τὸν ἕτερον παίει, ὡς πᾶσι ἐδόκει πεπληγῆναι τὸν



καὶ |surpass ὥστε καλῶς ἔχειν.

6

6.1

Ἐκ τούτου δὲ ἐν τῇ διατριβῇ οἱ μὲν ἀπὸ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἔζων, οἱ δὲ καὶ ληζόμενοι ἐκ τῆς Παφλαγονίας. ἐκλώπευον δὲ καὶ οἱ Παφλαγόνες εὖ μάλα τοὺς |dismiss , καὶ τῆς νυκτὸς τοὺς |for- |σκηνέω?: camp ὄντο κακοουργεῖν· καὶ πολεμικώτατα |ward, ; or σκηνόω?: πρὸς |in the camp ἄλλον ἐκ τούτων. ὁ δὲ Κορύλας, ὃς ἐτύγχανε τότε |future Παφλαγονίας ἄρχων, πέμπει παρὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας πρέσβεις ἔχοντας ἵππους καὶ |equipment, gear ἄγοντας ὅτι Κορύλας ἔτοιμος εἶη τοὺς Ἕλληνας μῆτε ἀδικεῖν μῆτε ἀδικεῖσθαι. οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι περὶ μὲν τούτων σὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ βουλευσούντο, ἐπὶ |of hospitality ἐδέχοντο αὐτούς· παρεκάλεσαν δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀνδρῶν οὓς ἐδόκουν δικαιοτάτους εἶναι. θύσαντες δὲ βοῦς τῶν αἰχμαλώτων καὶ ἄλλα |sacrificial , ἵαν μὲν |ward off παρεῖχον, κατακέειμενοι δὲ ἐν σκίμποισι |animal ἐδείπνου, καὶ ἔπινον ἐκ κερατίνων ποτηρίων, οἷς |meet, find, obtain; succeed, |happen, happen to exist τῇ χώρᾳ. ἐπεὶ δὲ σπονδαὶ τε ἐγένοντο καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν, ἀνέστησαν πρῶτον μὲν Θρᾶκες καὶ πρὸς |flute, |dance σὺν τοῖς ὄπλοις καὶ |to jump ὑψηλά τε καὶ κοῖ |hollowαὶ ταῖς μαχαίραις ἐχρῶντο· τέλος δὲ ὁ ἕτερος τὸν ἕτερον παίει, ὡς πᾶσι ἐδόκει πεπληγῆναι τὸν

suggested, and things ended not so unpleasantly after all.

## 6

### 6.1

After this, whilst waiting, they lived partly on supplies from the market, partly on the fruit of raids into Paphlagonia. The Paphlagonians, on their side, showed much skill in kidnapping stragglers, wherever they could lay hands on them, and in the night time tried to do mischief to those whose quarters were at a distance from the camp. The result was that their relations to one another were exceedingly hostile, so much so that Corylas, who was the chief of Paphlagonia at that date, sent ambassadors to the Hellenes, bearing horses and fine apparel, and charged with a proposal on the part of Corylas to make terms with the Hellenes on the principle of mutual forbearance from injuries. The generals replied that they would consult with the army about the matter. Meanwhile they gave them a hospitable reception, to which they invited certain members of the army whose claims were obvious. They sacrificed some of the captive cattle and other sacrificial beasts, and with these they furnished forth a sufficiently festal entertainment, and reclining on their truckle beds, fell to eating and drinking out of beakers made of horn which they happened to find in the country.

But as soon as the libation was ended and they had sung the hymn, up got first some Thracians, who performed a dance under arms to the sound of a pipe, leaping high into the air with much nimbleness, and brandishing their swords, till at last one man struck his fellow, and every one thought he was really wounded, so skilfully and artistically did he fall, and the

*vocabulary***αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω***ἀνακράζω** speak up**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse**ἀπάγω** lead away, back**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon**αὐλός** flute, tube, hollow**βοῦς βοός** (m/f) cow, ox; shield

~bovine

**δινεύω** turn, whirl, roam**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also *δύω*,*ἐξαποδύνω***εἶτα** then, therefore, next**ἐκφέρω** carry off**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also*ἐλαστρέω***ἐνίστε** sometimes**ἔξιμι** go forth (*εἶμι*)**ἐπειδάν** when**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel**ζεύγνυμι** yoke, join**ζεύγος** -υς (n, 3) team of animals**θνήσκω** die ~euthanasia; also*ἀποθνήσκω***κάλως** halyard**ὀπίσω** after, back; also *ὀπίσσω***ὄπλομαι** get ready, prepare**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle**ὀρχέομαι** dance**ὄψις** ὄψεως (f) sight, view

~thanatopsis

**παρατίθημι** put near, put at risk**πάσσω** sprinkle; insert in a web**πατέομαι** eat, drink**πρό** before, forward ~prolog**προεἶδον** look toward, catch sight of**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
come in**πως** somehow**σπείρω** sow ~sprawl**στρέφω** turn, veer**τελέω** fulfill; pf pass: be feasible**τέλος** -υς (n, 3) end; military post**τοτέ** then ... now ...**τρόπος** (m/n) turn; manner, kind,  
fashion**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia

ἄνδρα· ὁ δ' ἔπεσε τεχνικῶς πως. καὶ ἀνέκραγον οἱ Παφλαγόνες.  
 καὶ ὁ μὲν σκυλεύσας τὰ ὄπλα τοῦ ἑτέρου ἐξήει ἄδων τὸν Σιτάλκαν·  
 ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν Θρακῶν τὸν ἕτερον ἐξέφερον ὡς τεθνηκότα· ἦν δὲ  
 οὐδὲν πεπονητός. μετὰ τοῦτο Αἰνιᾶνες καὶ Μάγνητες ἀνέστησαν, οἱ  
 ὠρχοῦντο τὴν καρπαίαν καλουμένην ἐν τοῖς ὄπλοις. ὁ δὲ τρόπος τῆς  
 ὀρχήσεως ἦν, ὁ μὲν παραθέμενος τὰ ὄπλα σπείρει καὶ ζευγηλατεῖ,  
 πυκνὰ δὲ στρεφόμενος ὡς φοβούμενος, ληστής δὲ προσέρχεται· ὁ  
 δ' ἐπειδὴν προΐδηται, ἀπαντᾷ ἀρπάσας τὰ ὄπλα καὶ μάχεται πρὸ  
 τοῦ ζεύγους· καὶ οὗτοι ταῦτ' ἐποίουν ἐν ρυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν αὐλόν· καὶ  
 τέλος ὁ ληστής δήσας τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ τὸ ζεύγος ἀπάγει· ἐνίστε δὲ  
 καὶ ὁ ζευγηλάτης τὸν ληστήν· εἶτα παρὰ τοὺς βοῦς ζεύξας ὀπίσω τὸ  
 χεῖρε δεδεμένον ἐλαύνει. μετὰ τοῦτο Μυσὸς εἰσῆλθεν ἐν ἑκατέρᾳ τῇ  
 χειρὶ ἔχων πέλτην, καὶ τοτὲ μὲν ὡς δύο ἀντιταπτομένων μιμούμενος  
 ὠρχεῖτο, τοτὲ δὲ ὡς πρὸς ἓνα ἐχρήτο ταῖς πέλταις, τοτὲ δ' ἐδινεῖτο καὶ  
 ἐξεκυβίστα ἔχων τὰς πέλτας, ὥστε ὄψιν καλὴν φαίεσθαι. τέλος δὲ τὸ  
 περσικὸν ὠρχεῖτο κρούων τὰς πέλτας καὶ ὠκλαζε καὶ ἐξανίστατο· καὶ  
 ταῦτα πάντα ἐν ρυθμῷ ἐποίει πρὸς τὸν αὐλόν. ἐπὶ δὲ τούτῳ ἐπιόντες  
 οἱ Μαντινεῖς καὶ ἄλλοι τινὲς τῶν Ἀρκάδων ἀναστάντες ἐξοπλισάμενοι  
 ὡς ἐδύναντο κάλλιστα ἦσαν τε ἐν ρυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν ἐνόπλιον ρυθμὸν  
 αὐλοῦμενοι καὶ ἐπαινίσαν καὶ ὠρχήσαντο ὥσπερ ἐν ταῖς πρὸς  
 τοὺς θεοὺς προσόδοις. ὀρώντες δὲ οἱ Παφλαγόνες δεινὰ ἐποιοῦντο  
 πάσας τὰς ὀρχήσεις ἐν ὄπλοις εἶναι. ἐπὶ τούτοις ὀρών ὁ Μυσὸς

ἄνδρα· ὁ δ' ἔπεσε τεχνικῶς πως. καὶ |speak up οἱ Παφλαγόνες.  
 καὶ ὁ μὲν σκυλεύσας τὰ ὄπλα τοῦ ἑτέρου |go forth ἢ τὸν Σιτάλκαν·  
 ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν Θρακῶν τὸν ἕτερον ἐξέφερον ὡς |die ἦν δὲ  
 οὐδὲν πεπονθῶς. μετὰ τοῦτο Αἰνιᾶνες καὶ Μάγνητες ἀνέστησαν, οἱ  
 |dance τὴν καρπαίαν καλουμένην ἐν τοῖς ὄπλοις. ὁ δὲ τρόπος τῆς  
 ὀρχήσεως ἦν, ὁ μὲν παραθέμενος τὰ ὄπλα σπείρει καὶ ζευγηλατεῖ,  
 πυκνὰ δὲ στρεφόμενος ὡς φοβούμενος, ληστής δὲ προσέρχεται· ὁ  
 δ' |when |look toward, catch|carry off, seize" λα καὶ μάχεται πρὸ  
 τοῦ |team |sight of καὶ οὗτοι ταῦτ' ἐποίουν ἐν ῥυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν |flute, tube, hollow  
 τέλος ὁ ληστής δήσας τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ τὸ |team ἀπάγει· |sometimes  
 καὶ ὁ ζευγηλάτης τὸν ληστήν· εἶτα παρὰ τοὺς βουῖς |yoke, join' ἰω τὰ  
 χεῖρε δεδεμένοι ἐλαύνει. μετὰ τοῦτο Μυσοὺς εἰσῆλθεν ἐν ἑκατέρᾳ τῇ  
 χειρὶ ἔχων πέλτην, καὶ |then ... now ... ἀντιπατομένων μιμούμενος  
 |dance |then ... now, ... "να ἐχρήτο ταῖς πέλταις, |then " |turn, καὶ  
 ἐξεκυβίστα ἔχων τὰς πέλτας, ὥστε ὄψιν καλὴν φαί |now, |whirl, |roam, δὲ τὸ  
 περσικὸν |dance κρούων τὰς πέλτας καὶ ὠκλαζε καὶ ἐξανίστατο· καὶ  
 ταῦτα πάντα ἐν ῥυθμῷ ἐποίει πρὸς τὸν |flute, tube, hollow , ἐπιόντες  
 οἱ Μαντινεῖς καὶ ἄλλοι τινὲς τῶν Ἀρκάδων ἀναστάντες ἐξοπλισάμενοι  
 ὡς ἐδύναντο κάλλιστα ἦσαν τε ἐν ῥυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν ἐνόπιον ῥυθμὸν  
 αὐλούμενοι καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν καὶ |dance ὥσπερ ἐν ταῖς πρὸς  
 τοὺς θεοὺς προσόδοις. ὀρώντες δὲ οἱ Παφλαγόνες δεινὰ ἐποιοῦντο  
 πάσας τὰς ὀρχήσεις ἐν ὄπλοις εἶναι. ἐπὶ τούτοις ὀρών ὁ Μυσοὺς

Paphlagonians screamed out. Then he that gave the blow stripped the other of his arms, and marched off chanting the "Sitalcas," whilst others of the Thracians bore off the other, who lay as if dead, though he had not received even a scratch.

After this some Aenianians and Magnesians got up and fell to dancing the Carpaea, as it is called, under arms. This was the manner of the dance: one man lays aside his arms and proceeds to drive a yoke of oxen, and while he drives he sows, turning him about frequently, as though he were afraid of something; up comes a cattle-lifter, and no sooner does the ploughman catch sight of him afar, than he snatches up his arms and confronts him. They fight in front of his team, and all in rhythm to the sound of the pipe. At last the robber binds the countryman and drives off the team. Or sometimes the cattle-driver binds the robber, and then he puts him under the yoke beside the oxen, with his two hands tied behind his back, and off he drives.

After this a Mysian came in with a light shield in either hand and danced, at one time going through a pantomime, as if he were dealing with two assailants at once; at another plying his shields as if to face a single foe, and then again he would whirl about and throw somersaults, keeping the shields in his hands, so that it was a beautiful spectacle. Last of all he danced the Persian dance, clashing the shields together, crouching down on one knee and springing up again from earth; and all this he did in measured time to the sound of the flute. After him the Mantineans stepped upon the stage, and some other Arcadians also stood up; they had accoutred themselves in all their warlike finery. They marched with measured tread, pipes playing, to the tune of the 'warrior's march'; the notes of the paean rose, lightly their limbs moved in dance, as in solemn procession to the holy gods. The Paphlagonians looked upon it as something truly strange that all these dances should be under arms; and the Mysians, seeing their astonishment persuaded one of the

*vocabulary*

**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**αἶρω** raise, win ~aorta; also ἀείρω  
**ἄλφριτον** barley meal  
**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**ἀριστερός** left-hand  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**εἰσάγω** lead in  
**εἴσειμι** go in; come in range  
**ἐλαφρός** nimble; light ~elevator  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεὶ  
**ἔρομαι** ask, search through; also  
 ἀνέρομαι, εἴρομαι, ἐξείρομαι, ἐξέρομαι  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἥμερος** domesticated  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**μήτε** neither...nor...

**ναύαρχος** admiral  
**ξένιος** of hospitality  
**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἶνος** wine ~wine  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὀρμίζω** anchor, beach  
**ὀρχέομαι** dance  
**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow  
**πεντακόσιοι** 500  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian  
**προσάγω** bring to a place  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τελέω** fulfill; pf pass: be feasible  
**τέλος** -υς (n, 3) end; military post  
**τρέπω** divert ~trophy  
**τριήρης** -ους (f, 3) trireme  
**ὑστεραίως** the next; later  
**χίλιοι** thousand ~kilo-

ἐκεπεληγμένους αὐτούς, πείσας τῶν Ἀρκάδων τινὰ πεπαμένον ὀρχηστρίδα εἰσάγει σκευάσας ὡς ἐδύνατο κάλλιστα καὶ ἀσπίδα δούς κούφην αὐτῇ. ἡ δὲ ὠρχήσατο πυρρίχην ἐλαφρῶς. ἐνταῦθα κρότος ἦν πολὺς, καὶ οἱ Παφλαγόνες ἤροντο εἰ καὶ γυναῖκες συνεμάχοντο αὐτοῖς. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι αὐταὶ καὶ αἱ τρεψάμεναι εἶεν βασιλέα ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. τῇ μὲν νυκτὶ ταύτῃ τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο.

Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία προσῆγον αὐτοὺς εἰς τὸ στράτευμα· καὶ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις μῆτε ἀδικεῖν Παφλαγόνας μῆτε ἀδικεῖσθαι. μετὰ τοῦτο οἱ μὲν πρέσβεις ὤχοντο· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, ἐπειδὴ πλοῖα ἱκανὰ ἐδόκει παρεῖναι, ἀναβάντες ἔπλεον ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα πνεύματι καλῶ ἐν ἀριστερᾷ ἔχοντες τὴν Παφλαγονίαν. τῇ δ' ἄλλη ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Σινώπην καὶ ὠρμίσαντο εἰς Ἀρμήνην τῆς Σινώπης. Σινωπεῖς δὲ οἰκοῦσι μὲν ἐν τῇ Παφλαγονικῇ, Μιλησίων δὲ ἄποικοί εἰσιν. οὗτοι δὲ ξένια πέμπουσι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἀλφίτων μεδίμνους τρισχιλίους, οἴνου δὲ κεράμια χίλια καὶ πεντακόσια. καὶ Χειρίσοφος ἐνταῦθα ἦλθε τριήρη ἔχων. καὶ οἱ μὲν στρατιῶται προσεδόκων ἄγοντά τι σφίσιν ἤκειν· ὁ δ' ἦγε μὲν οὐδέν, ἀπήγγελλε δὲ ὅτι ἐπαινοῖ αὐτοὺς καὶ Ἀναξίβιος ὁ ναύαρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι, καὶ ὅτι ὑπισχνεῖτο Ἀναξίβιος, εἰ ἀφίκοντο ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου, μισθοφορὰν αὐτοῖς ἔσσεσθαι. καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ Ἀρμήνῃ ἔμειναν οἱ στρατιῶται ἡμέρας πέντε. ὡς δὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἐδόκουν ἐγγὺς γίνεσθαι, ἤδη μᾶλλον ἢ πρόσθεν εἰσήει αὐτοὺς ὅπως ἂν καὶ ἔχοντές τι οἴκαδε ἀφίκωνται. ἡγήσαντο οὖν,



ἐκπεπληγμένους αὐτούς, |πειῖσα?: obedience, subjection ; or πάσχω?: suffer ; or  
 |πειθω?: persuade  
 ὀρχηστρίδα εἰσάγει σκενάσας ὡς |enter, put on, στα καὶ ἀσπίδα δούς  
 |strip off  
 |light, αὐτῇ. ἢ δὲ |dance πυρρίχην |nimble; ἐνταῦθα κρότος  
 |nimble |light  
 ἦν πολὺς, καὶ οἱ Παφλαγόνες ἤροντο εἰ καὶ γυναῖκες συνεμάχοντο  
 αὐτοῖς. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι αὐταὶ καὶ αἱ τρεψάμεναι εἶεν βασιλέα ἐκ τοῦ  
 στρατοπέδου. τῇ μὲν νυκτὶ ταύτῃ τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο.

Τῇ δὲ |the next; later ἦγον αὐτοὺς εἰς τὸ στράτευμα· καὶ ἔδοξε τοῖς  
 στρατιώταις μῆτε ἀδικεῖν Παφλαγόνας μῆτε ἀδικεῖσθαι. μετὰ τοῦτο  
 οἱ μὲν πρέσβεις ᾗχοντο· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, |after; λοῖα ἱκανὰ ἐδόκει  
 |because  
 παρεῖναι, ἀναβάντες ἔπλεον ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα πνεύματι καλῶ ἐν  
 ἀριστερᾷ ἔχοντες τὴν Παφλαγονίαν. τῇ δ' ἄλλη ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς  
 Σινώπην καὶ |anchor, εἰς Ἀρμύνην τῆς Σινώπης. Σινοπεῖς δὲ  
 |beach  
 οἰκοῦσι μὲν ἐν τῇ Παφλαγονικῇ, Μιλησίων δὲ ἄποικοι εἰσιν. οὗτοι  
 δὲ |of hospitality ἰ τοῖς Ἕλλησι |barley meal ἵμνους |3000  
 οἴνου δὲ κεράμια χίλια καὶ |500 καὶ Χειρίσοφος ἐνταῦθα  
 |ἄλθομαι?: become whole ἰ μὲν στρατιῶται προσεδόκων ἄγοντά τι  
 ; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come  
 σφίσις ἦκεν· ὁ δ' ἦγε μὲν οὐδέν, ἀπήγγελλε δὲ ὅτι ἐπαινοίη αὐτοὺς  
 καὶ Ἀναξίβιος ὁ |admiral καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι, καὶ ὅτι ὑπισχνεῖτο Ἀναξίβιος,  
 εἰ ἀφίκοντο ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου, μισθοφορὰν αὐτοῖς ἔσσεσθαι. καὶ ἐν  
 ταύτῃ τῇ Ἀρμύνῃ ἔμειναν οἱ στρατιῶται ἡμέρας πέντε. ὡς δὲ τῆς  
 Ἑλλάδος ἐδόκουν ἐγγὺς γίνεσθαι, ἤδη μᾶλλον ἢ πρόσθεν |go in  
 αὐτοὺς ὅπως ἂν καὶ ἔχοντές τι οἴκαδε ἀφίκωνται. |go before, lead

Arcadians who had got a dancing girl to let him introduce her, which he did after dressing her up magnificently and giving her a light shield. When, lithe of limb, she danced the Pyrrhic, loud clapping followed; and the Paphlagonians asked, "If these women fought by their side in battle?" to which they answered, "To be sure, it was the women who routed the great King, and drove him out of camp." So ended the night.

But next day the generals introduced the embassy to the army, and the soldiers passed a resolution in the sense proposed: between themselves and the Paphlagonians there was to be a mutual abstinence from injuries. After this the ambassadors went on their way, and the Hellenes, as soon as it was thought that sufficient vessels had arrived, went on board ship, and voyaged a day and a night with a fair breeze, keeping Paphlagonia on their left. And on the following day, arriving at Sinope, they came to moorings in the harbour of Harmene, near Sinope. The Sinopeans, though inhabitants of Paphlagonia, are really colonists of the Milesians. They sent gifts of hospitality to the Hellenes, three thousand measures of barley with fifteen hundred jars of wine. At this place Cheirisophus rejoined them with a man of war. The soldiers certainly expected that, having come, he would have brought them something, but he brought them nothing, except complimentary phrases, on the part of Anaxibius, the high admiral, and the rest, who sent them their congratulations, coupled with a promise on the part of Anaxibius that, as soon as they were outside the Euxine, pay would be forthcoming.

At Harmene the army halted five days; and now that they seemed to be so close to Hellas, the question how they were to reach home not empty-handed presented itself more forcibly to their minds than heretofore. The conclusion they came to was to appoint a single general, since one man would be better able to handle the troops, by night or by day, than was possible while

*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*  
**ἀετός** *αἰετοῦ* eagle; also *αἰετός*  
**αἷτιος** guilty ~etiology; also *αἰτίος*  
**ἄλλομαι** to jump ~sally  
**ἀρχήν** (adv) originally  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**ἄν** again, then again; next ~after  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**διακρίνω** separate, sort  
**δόξα** what one expects ~doxology  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about  
**ἐνδείκνυμι** address, consider  
**ἐπαίρω** lift, raise  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἤμερος** domesticated  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**ἱερεῖον** *ἱρηίου* sacrificial animal  
**καθίστημι** set down, land  
**κίνδυνος** (ὑ) danger  
**κράτιστος** best  
**κρύπτω** hide, cover ~cryptic; also *κατακρύπτω*

**λανθάνω** escape notice; (mp+gen) forget ~Lethe; also *καταλήθομαι*  
**μεῖζον** more greatly  
**μέντοι** however  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ὄναρ** (n) dream  
**ὅπη** wherever, however  
**ὅπη** wherever, however  
**ὅποτε** when; also *ὀπότε*  
**ὀρμάω** set in motion, rush at ~hormone  
**παρίστημι** stand, be present  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιά** army  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τιμή** honor, value  
**τρέπω** divert ~trophy  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also *ἐντυγχάνω*  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑφίστημι** promise, undertake  
**φθάνω** do first, outstrip  
**φθέγγομαι** make a sound, utter

εἰ ἓνα ἔλουτο ἄρχοντα, μᾶλλον ἂν ἢ πολυαρχίας οὔσης δύνασθαι τὸν ἓνα χρῆσθαι τῷ στρατεύματι καὶ νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας, καὶ εἴ τι δέοι λανθάνειν, μᾶλλον ἂν κρύπτεσθαι, καὶ εἴ τι αὐτῷ δέοι φθάνειν, ἦπτον ἂν ὑστερίζειν· οὐ γὰρ ἂν λόγων δεῖν πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ἀλλὰ τὸ δόξαν τῷ ἐνὶ περαινεσθαι ἄν· τὸν δ' ἔμπροσθεν χρόνον ἐκ τῆς νικώσης ἔπραττον πάντα οἱ στρατηγοί. ὡς δὲ ταῦτα διανοοῦντο, ἐτράποντο ἐπὶ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα· καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἔλεγον προσιόντες αὐτῷ ὅτι ἡ στρατιὰ οὕτω γινώσκει, καὶ εὐνοίαν ἐνδεικνύμενος ἕκαστος ἔπειθεν αὐτὸν ὑποστήναι τὴν ἀρχήν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τῇ μὲν ἐβούλετο ταῦτα, νομίζων καὶ τὴν τιμὴν μείζω οὕτως ἑαυτῷ γίνεσθαι πρὸς τοὺς φίλους καὶ εἰς τὴν πόλιν τοῦνομα μείζον ἀφίξεσθαι αὐτοῦ, τυχὸν δὲ καὶ ἀγαθοῦ τινος ἂν αἴτιος τῇ στρατιᾷ γενέσθαι. τὰ μὲν δὴ τοιαῦτα ἐνθυμήματα ἐπῆρεν αὐτὸν ἐπιθυμῆν αὐτοκράτορα γενέσθαι ἄρχοντα. ὁπότε δ' αὐτῷ ἐνθυμοῖτο ὅτι ἄδηλον μὲν παντὶ ἀνθρώπῳ ὅπῃ τὸ μέλλον ἔξει, διὰ τοῦτο δὲ καὶ κίνδυνος εἶη καὶ τὴν προειργασμένην δόξαν ἀποβαλεῖν, ἠπορείτο. διαπορουμένῳ δὲ αὐτῷ διακρῖναι ἔδοξε κράτιστον εἶναι τοῖς θεοῖς ἀνακοινῶσαι· καὶ παραστησάμενος δύο ἱερεῖα ἐθύετο τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ, ὅσπερ αὐτῷ μαντευτὸς ἦν ἐκ Δελφῶν· καὶ τὸ ὄναρ δὴ ἀπὸ τούτου τοῦ θεοῦ ἐνόμιζεν ἑορακέναι ὃ εἶδεν ὅτε ἤρχετο ἐπὶ τὸ συνεπιμελεῖσθαι τῆς στρατιᾶς καθίστασθαι. καὶ ὅτε ἐξ Ἐφέσου ὠρμᾶτο Κύρῳ συσταθσόμενος, αἰετὸν ἀνεμμνήσκετο ἑαυτῷ δεξιὸν φθηγόμενον, καθήμενον μέντοι,

εἰ ἓνα |to jump ἵρχοντα, μᾶλλον ἂν ἢ πολυαρχίας οὔσης δύνασθαι  
 τὸν ἓνα χρῆσθαι τῷ στρατεύματι καὶ νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας, καὶ εἴ τι  
 δέοι λανθάνειν, μᾶλλον ἂν κρύπτεσθαι, καὶ εἴ τι αὐτῷ δέοι φθάνειν,  
 ἦττον ἂν ὑστερίζειν· οὐ γὰρ ἂν λόγων δεῖν πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ἀλλὰ  
 τὸ δόξαν τῷ ἐνὶ περαίνεσθαι ἄν· τὸν δ' ἔμπροσθεν χρόνον ἐκ τῆς  
 νικώσης ἔπραττον πάντα οἱ στρατηγοί. ὡς δὲ ταῦτα διεννοοῦντο,  
 ἐτράποντο ἐπὶ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα· καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἔλεγον προσιόντες  
 αὐτῷ ὅτι ἡ στρατιὰ οὕτω γινώσκει, καὶ εὐνοίαν |address,  
 ἕκαστος ἔπειθεν αὐτὸν |promise, γῆν |(adv) originally |consider  
 |undertake φῶν τῇ μὲν  
 ἐβούλετο ταῦτα, νομίζων καὶ τὴν τιμὴν μείζω οὕτως ἑαυτῷ γίγνεσθαι  
 πρὸς τοὺς φίλους καὶ εἰς τὴν πόλιν τοῦνομα |μειζον?· 'more greatly'; or μέγας?:  
 |big, great, marvelous  
 τυχόν δὲ καὶ ἀγαθοῦ τινος ἂν αἴτιος τῇ στρατιᾷ γενέσθαι. τὰ  
 μὲν δὴ τοιαῦτα ἐνθυμήματα ἐπῆρεν αὐτὸν ἐπιθυμῆν αὐτοκράτορα  
 γενέσθαι ἄρχοντα. ὁπότε δ' αὐτῷ ἐνθυμοῖτο ὅτι ἄδηλον μὲν παντὶ  
 ἀνθρώπῳ ὅπῃ τὸ μέλλον ἔξει, διὰ τοῦτο δὲ καὶ κίνδυνος εἶη καὶ  
 τὴν προειργασμένην δόξαν ἀποβαλεῖν, ἠπορέϊτο. διαπορουμένῳ δὲ  
 αὐτῷ διακρίναι ἔδοξε κράτιστον εἶναι τοῖς θεοῖς ἀνακουνῶσαι· καὶ  
 παραστησάμενος δύο |sacrificial  
 |animal το τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ, ὅσπερ αὐτῷ  
 μαντευτὸς ἦν ἐκ Δελφῶν· καὶ τὸ |dream, ἀπὸ τούτου τοῦ θεοῦ ἐνόμιζεν  
 ἑορακεῖναι ὃ εἶδεν ὅτε ἦρχετο ἐπὶ τὸ συνεπιμελεῖσθαι τῆς στρατιᾶς  
 καθίστασθαι. καὶ ὅτε ἐξ Ἐφέσου ὠρμᾶτο Κύρῳ συσταθησόμενος,  
 |eagle ἀνεμμιμήσκειτο ἑαυτῷ δεξιὸν |make a sound, ὑττέρ  
 ὄν μέντοι,

the generalship was divided. If secrecy were desirable, it would be easier to keep matters dark, or if again expedition were an object, there would be less risk of arriving a day too late, since mutual explanations would be avoided, and whatever approved itself to the single judgement would at once be carried into effect, whereas previously the generals had done everything in obedience to the opinion of the majority.

With these ideas working in their minds, they turned to Xenophon, and the officers came to him and told him that this was how the soldiers viewed matters; and each of them, displaying a warmth of kindly feeling, pressed him to accept the office. Xenophon partly would have liked to do so, in the belief that by so doing he would win to himself a higher repute in the esteem of his friends, and that his name would be reported to the city written large; and by some stroke of fortune he might even be the discoverer of some blessing to the army collectively.

These and the like considerations elated him; he had a strong desire to hold the supreme command. But then again, as he turned the matter over, the conviction deepened in his mind that the issue of the future is to every man uncertain; and hence there was the risk of perhaps losing such reputation as he had already acquired. He was in sore straits, and, not knowing how to decide, it seemed best to him to lay the matter before heaven. Accordingly, he led two victims to the altar and made sacrifice to Zeus the King, for it was he and no other who had been named by the oracle at Delphi, and his belief was that the vision which he had beheld when he first essayed to undertake the joint administration of the army was sent to him by that god. He also recalled to mind a circumstance which befell him still earlier, when setting out from Ephesus to associate himself with Cyrus;— how an eagle screamed on his right hand from the east, and

*vocabulary*

**ἀετός** αἰετοῦ eagle; also αἰετός  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἀποδέχομαι** accept  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**ἀσφαλῆς** going ahead, standing firm  
**αὔ** again, then again; next ~after  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also ἰθύς  
**εὐχομαι** declare, boast; pray (εὐχος)  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide, chief  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**λίαν** very  
**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis  
**μέντοι** however  
**μήτε** neither...nor...  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**οἰωνός** vulture, eagle, omen ~avis  
**ὅπου** where

**ὄρνεον** bird ~ornithology; also ὄρνις  
**οὐκέτι** no more  
**πάνυ** altogether, very  
**πατρίς** -δος fatherland  
**παύω** stop something ~pause  
**περάω** cross; sell as a slave  
**πέτομαι** to fly ~petal; also πτέτομαι, πωτάομαι  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**πολεμόω** make an enemy of  
**πολιορκέω** besiege  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**προπέμπω** send, send ahead  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark ~semaphore  
**στρατιά** army  
**συμφέρω** bring together (φέρω)  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τιμάω** honor, exalt  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**χάρις** -τος (f) grace ~eucharist  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω

ὄνπερ ὁ μάντις προπέμπων αὐτὸν ἔλεγεν ὅτι μέγας μὲν οἰωνὸς εἶη καὶ οὐκ ἰδιωτικός, καὶ ἔνδοξος, ἐπίπονος μέντοι· τὰ γὰρ ὄρνεα μάλιστα ἐπιτίθεσθαι τῷ αἰετῷ καθημένω· οὐ μέντοι χρηματιστικὸν εἶναι τὸν οἰωνόν· τὸν γὰρ αἰετὸν πετόμενον μᾶλλον λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. οὕτω δὴ θυομένω αὐτῷ διαφανῶς ὁ θεὸς σημαίνει μήτε προσδεῖσθαι τῆς ἀρχῆς μήτε εἰ αἰροῦντο ἀποδέχεσθαι. τοῦτο μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐγένετο. ἡ δὲ στρατιὰ συνήλθε, καὶ πάντες ἔλεγον ἕνα αἰρεῖσθαι· καὶ ἐπεὶ τοῦτο ἔδοξε, προυβάλλοντο αὐτόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει δῆλον εἶναι ὅτι αἰρήσονται αὐτόν, εἰ τις ἐπισηφίζοι, ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε.

Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἦδομαι μὲν ὑφ' ὑμῶν τιμώμενος, εἴπερ ἄνθρωπός εἰμι, καὶ χάριν ἔχω καὶ εὐχομαι δοῦναί μοι τοὺς θεοὺς αἰτίον τινος ὑμῖν ἀγαθοῦ γενέσθαι· τὸ μέντοι ἐμὲ προκριθῆναι ὑφ' ὑμῶν ἄρχοντα Λακεδαιμονίου ἀνδρὸς παρόντος οὔτε ὑμῖν μοι δοκεῖ συμφέρον εἶναι, ἀλλ' ἦττον ἂν διὰ τοῦτο τυγχάνειν, εἴ τι δέοισθε παρ' αὐτῶν· ἐμοί τε αὖ οὐ πάνυ τι νομίζω ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι τοῦτο. ὁρῶ γὰρ ὅτι καὶ τῇ πατρίδι μου οὐ πρόσθεν ἐπαύσαντο πολεμοῦντες πρὶν ἐποιήσαν πᾶσαν τὴν πόλιν ὁμολογεῖν Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ αὐτῶν ἡγεμόνας εἶναι. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο ὠμολόγησαν, εὐθὺς ἐπαύσαντο πολεμοῦντες καὶ οὐκέτι πέρα ἐπολιόρκησαν τὴν πόλιν. εἰ οὖν ταῦτα ὁρῶν ἐγὼ δοκοῖν ὅπου δυναίμην ἐνταῦθ' ἄκυρον ποιεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων ἀξίωμα, ἐκεῖνο ἐννοῶ μὴ λίαν ἂν ταχὺ σωφρονησθεῖν. ὁ δὲ ὑμεῖς ἐννοεῖτε, ὅτι ἦττον ἂν στάσις εἶη ἑνὸς ἄρχοντος ἢ πολλῶν,



ὄνπερ ὁ |seer |send, send ahead ἔλεγεν ὅτι μέγας μὲν |vulture, ἢ καὶ eagle,  
 οὐκ ἰδιωτικός, καὶ ἔνδοξος, |of/with pain, toil ἂ γὰρ |omen μάλιστα  
 ἐπιτίθεσθαι τῷ |eagle καθημένῳ· οὐ μέντοι χρηματιστικὸν εἶναι τὸν  
 |vulture, ὃν γὰρ |eagle πετόμενον μᾶλλον λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.  
 |eagle,  
 |omen δὴ θνομένῳ αὐτῷ διαφανῶς ὁ θεὸς σημαίνει μίητε προσδεῖσθαι  
 τῆς ἀρχῆς μίητε εἰ αἰροῦντο |accept τούτο μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐγένετο.  
 ἡ δὲ στρατιὰ συνῆλθε, καὶ πάντες ἔλεγον ἕνα αἰρεῖσθαι· καὶ ἐπεὶ τοῦτο  
 ἔδοξε, προυβάλλοντο αὐτόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει δῆλον εἶναι ὅτι αἰρήσονται  
 αὐτόν, εἴ τις ἐπιψηφίζοι, ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε.

Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδομαι μὲν ὑφ' ὑμῶν τιμώμενος, εἴπερ ἄνθρωπός  
 εἰμι, καὶ χάριν ἔχω καὶ εὐχομαι δοῦναί μοι τοὺς θεοὺς |guilty τινος  
 ὑμῖν ἀγαθοῦ γενέσθαι· τὸ μέντοι ἐμὲ προκριθῆναι ὑφ' ὑμῶν ἄρχοντα  
 Λακεδαιμονίου ἀνδρὸς παρόντος οὔτε ὑμῖν μοι δοκεῖ συμφέρον εἶναι,  
 ἀλλ' ἦττον ἂν διὰ τοῦτο τυγχάνειν, εἴ τι δέοισθε παρ' αὐτῶν·  
 ἐμοί τε αὖ οὐ πάννυ τι νομίζω ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι τοῦτο. ὁρῶ γὰρ  
 ὅτι καὶ τῇ πατρίδι μου οὐ πρόσθεν ἐπαύσαντο πολεμοῦντες πρὶν  
 ἐποίησαν πᾶσαν τὴν πόλιν ὁμολογεῖν Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ αὐτῶν  
 ἡγεμόνας εἶναι. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο ὠμολόγησαν, εὐθύς ἐπαύσαντο  
 πολεμοῦντες καὶ οὐκέτι πέρα ἐπολιόρκησαν τὴν πόλιν. εἰ οὖν  
 ταῦτα ὁρῶν ἐγὼ δοκοῖν ὅπου |enter, put on, ἵθ' ἄκυρον ποιεῖν τὸ  
 |strip off  
 ἐκείνων ἀξίωμα, ἐκείνο ἐννοῶ μὴ λίαν ἂν ταχὺ σωφρονησθεῖν. ὁ  
 δὲ ὑμεῖς ἐννοεῖτε, ὅτι ἦττον ἂν στάσις εἴη ἐνδὸς ἄρχοντος ἢ πολλῶν,

still remained perched, and the soothsayer who was escorting him said that it was a great and royal omen; indicating glory and yet suffering; for the punier race of birds only attack the eagle when seated. "Yet," added he, "it bodes not gain in money; for the eagle seizes his food, not when seated, but on the wing."

Thus Xenophon sacrificed, and the god as plainly as might be gave him a sign, neither to demand the generalship, nor, if chosen, to accept the office. And that was how the matter stood when the army met, and the proposal to elect a single leader was unanimous. After this resolution was passed, they proposed Xenophon for election, and when it seemed quite evident that they would elect him, if he put the question to the vote, he got up and spoke as follows:—

"Sirs, I am but mortal, and must needs be happy to be honoured by you. I thank you, and am grateful, and my prayer is that the gods may grant me to be an instrument of blessing to you. Still, when I consider it closer, thus, in the presence of a Lacedaemonian, to be preferred by you as general, seems to me but ill conducive either to your interests or to mine, since you will the less readily obtain from them hereafter anything you may need, while for myself I look upon acceptance as even somewhat dangerous. Do I not see and know with what persistence these Lacedaemonians prosecuted the war till finally they forced our State to acknowledge the leadership of Lacedaemon? This confession once extorted from their antagonists, they ceased warring at once, and the siege of the city was at an end. If, with these facts before my eyes, I seem to be doing all I can to neutralise their high self-esteem, I cannot escape the reflection that personally I may be taught wisdom by a painful process. But with your own idea that under a single general there will be less factiousness than when there were many, be assured that in choosing some other than me you will not find

*vocabulary*

**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἄλλομαι** to jump ~sally  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain  
**ἀρχήν** (adv) originally  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with  
**γέλοιος** amusing  
**γνώμη** sign, mind, will, decision  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**διαβάλλω** throw across; slander  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω, ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐμέω** vomit ~emetic  
**ἐνδέω** tie to, entangle  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἔοικα** seem, seem likely, beseem ~icon  
**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**θαυμάζω** marvel ~theater; also

**ἀποθαυμάζω**  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**ιδιώτης** -ου (m, 1) private, not public  
**ιερός** (2) holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph; also ἱερόν, ἱερόν, ἱρός  
**μέντοι** however  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ὄμνυμι** swear  
**ὀνήνιμι** help, please, be available  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**πάνυ** altogether, very  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πάσσω** sprinkle; insert in a web  
**πατέομαι** eat, drink  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark ~semaphore  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**ὕμέτερος** yours  
**ὕφιστημι** promise, undertake  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω

εὖ ἴστε ὅτι ἄλλον μὲν ἐλόμενοι οὐχ εὐρήσετε ἐμὲ στασιάζοντα· νομίζω γὰρ ὅσους ἐν πολέμῳ ὦν στασιάζει πρὸς ἄρχοντα, τοῦτον πρὸς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σωτηρίαν στασιάζειν· ἐὰν δὲ ἐμὲ ἔλησθε, οὐκ ἂν θαυμάσαιμι εἴ τινα εὗροιτε καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ἐμοὶ ἀχθόμενον.

Ἐπεὶ ταῦτα εἶπε, πολὺ πλείονες ἀνίσταντο λέγοντες ὡς δέοι αὐτὸν ἄρχειν. Ἄγασίας δὲ Στυμφάλιος εἶπεν ὅτι γελοῖον εἶη, εἰ οὕτως ἔχοι· ἢ ὀργιοῦνται Λακεδαιμόνιοι καὶ ἐὰν σύνδειπνοι συνελθόντες μὴ Λακεδαιμόνιον συμποσίαρχον αἰρῶνται; ἐπεὶ εἰ οὕτω γε τοῦτο ἔχει, ἔφη, οὐδὲ λοχαγεῖν ἡμῖν ἔξεστιν, ὡς ἔοικεν, ὅτι Ἀρκάδες ἐσμέν. ἐνταῦθα δὴ ὡς εὖ εἰπόντος τοῦ Ἄγασίου ἀνεθορύβησαν. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ ἑώρα πλείονος ἐνδέον, παρελθὼν εἶπεν· Ἄλλ', ὦ ἄνδρες, ἔφη, ὡς πάνυ εἰδήτε, ὁμνύω ὑμῖν θεοὺς πάντας καὶ πάσας, ἧ μὴν ἐγώ, ἐπεὶ τὴν ὑμετέραν γνώμην ἡσθανόμην, ἐθυόμην εἰ βέλτιον εἶη ὑμῖν τε ἐμοὶ ἐπιτρέψαι ταύτην τὴν ἀρχὴν καὶ ἐμοὶ ὑποστῆναι· καί μοι οἱ θεοὶ οὕτως ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς ἐσήμηναν ὥστε καὶ ἰδιώτην ἂν γινῶναι ὅτι τῆς μοναρχίας ἀπέχεσθαί με δεῖ. οὕτω δὴ Χειρίσοφον αἰροῦνται. Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐπεὶ ἠρέθη, παρελθὼν εἶπεν· Ἄλλ', ὦ ἄνδρες, τοῦτο μὲν ἴστε, ὅτι οὐδ' ἂν ἔγωγε ἐστασιάζον, εἰ ἄλλον εἴλεσθε· Ξενοφῶντα μέντοι, ἔφη, ὠνήσατε οὐχ ἐλόμενοι· ὡς καὶ νῦν Δέξιππος ἤδη διέβαλλεν αὐτὸν πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον ὃ τι ἐδύνατο καὶ μάλα ἐμοῦ αὐτὸν σιγάζοντος. ὁ δ' ἔφη νομίζειν αὐτὸν Τιμασίῳνι μᾶλλον ἄρχειν συνεθελῆσαι Δαρδανεῖ ὄντι τοῦ Κλεάρχου

εὖ ἴστε ὅτι ἄλλον μὲν ἐλόμενοι οὐχ εὐρήσετε ἐμὲ στασιάζοντα· νομίζω γὰρ ὅστις ἐν πολέμῳ ὢν στασιάζει πρὸς ἄρχοντα, τοῦτον πρὸς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σωτηρίαν στασιάζει· ἐὰν δὲ ἐμὲ |to jump ἕκ ἂν θαυμάσαιμι εἴ τινα εὕροιτε καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ἐμοὶ |be burdened with

Ἐπεὶ ταῦτα εἶπε, πολὺ πλείονες ἀνίσταντο λέγοντες ὡς δέοι αὐτὸν ἄρχειν. Ἀγασίας δὲ Στυμφάλιος εἶπεν ὅτι |amusing ἦ, εἰ οὕτως ἔχοι· ἢ ὀργιοῦνται Λακεδαιμόνιοι καὶ ἐὰν σύνδειπνοι συνελθόντες μὴ Λακεδαιμόνιον συμποσίαρχον αἰρῶνται; ἐπεὶ εἰ οὕτω γε τοῦτο ἔχει, ἔφη, οὐδὲ λοχαγεῖν ἡμῖν |go forth ὡς ἔοικεν, ὅτι Ἀρκάδες ἐσμέν. ἐνταῦθα δὴ ὡς εὖ εἰπόντος τοῦ Ἀγασίου ἀνεθορύβησαν. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ ἑώρα πλείονος |tie to παρελθὼν εἶπεν· Ἄλλ', ὦ ἄνδρες, ἔφη, ὡς πάνυ εἰδῆτε, ὀμνύω ὑμῖν θεοὺς πάντας καὶ πάσας, ἣ μὴν ἐγώ, ἐπεὶ τὴν ὑμετέραν γνώμην ἠσθανόμην, ἐθυόμην εἰ βέλτιον εἶη ὑμῖν τε ἐμοὶ ἐπιτρέψαι ταύτην τὴν |(adv) originally |promise, καὶ μοι οἱ θεοὶ οὕτως ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς ἐσήμηναν ὥστε καὶ |undertake |private, not public ὅτι τῆς μοναρχίας ἀπέχεσθαί με δεῖ. οὕτω δὴ Χειρίσοφον αἰροῦνται. Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐπεὶ ἠρέθη, παρελθὼν εἶπεν· Ἄλλ', ὦ ἄνδρες, τοῦτο μὲν ἴστε, ὅτι οὐδ' ἂν ἔγωγε ἐστασίαζον, εἰ ἄλλον εἴλεσθε· Ξενοφῶντα μέντοι, ἔφη, |help, please, ἴόμενοι |be available ὡς καὶ νῦν Δέξιππος ἦδη |throw ὑτὸν πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον ὅ τι |across; |enter, put on, ἀλα ἐμοῦ αὐτὸ |slanderζοντος. ὁ δ' ἔφη νομίζειν αὐτὸν |strip off Τιμασίῳ μᾶλλον ἄρχειν συνεθελῆσαι Δαρδανεῖ ὄντι τοῦ Κλεάρχου

me factious. I hold that whosoever sets up factious opposition to his leader factiously opposes his own safety. While if you determine to choose me, I should not be surprised were that choice to entail upon you and me the resentment of other people.”

After those remarks on Xenophon’s part, many more got up, one after another, insisting on the propriety of his undertaking the command. One of them, Agasias the Stymphalian, said: It was really ridiculous, if things had come to this pass that the Lacedaemonians are to fly into a rage because a number of friends have met together to dinner, and omitted to choose a Lacedaemonian to sit at the head of the table. “Really, if that is how matters stand,” said he, “I do not see what right we have to be officers even, we who are only Arcadians.” That sally brought down the plaudits of the assembly; and Xenophon, seeing that something more was needed, stepped forward again and spoke, “Pardon, sirs,” he said, “let me make a clean breast of it. I swear to you by all the gods and goddesses; verily and indeed, I no sooner perceived your purpose, than I consulted the victims, whether it was better for you to entrust this leadership to me, and for me to undertake it, or the reverse. And the gods vouchsafed a sign to me so plain that even a common man might understand it, and perceive that from such sovereignty I must needs hold myself aloof.”

Under these circumstances they chose Cheirisophus, who, after his election, stepped forward and said: “Nay, sirs, be well assured of this, that had you chosen some one else, I for my part should not have set up factious opposition. As to Xenophon, I believe you have done him a good turn by not appointing him; for even now Dexippus has gone some way in traducing him to Anaxibius, as far as it lay in his power to do so, and that, in spite of my attempts to silence him. What he said was that he believed Xenophon would rather share the

*vocabulary*

ἄλφριτον barley meal

ἀνάγω lead up, set sail

ἀνάσσω rule, be lord (ἄναξ)

αὔριον tomorrow

ἀφικνέομαι arrive

βουλευώ to deliberate ~volunteer

βοῦς βοός (m/f) cow, ox; shield

~bovine

δείκνυμι show, point out

δέος -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos

δισχίλιοι 2000

δύω enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω,

ἐξαποδύνω

ἐάω let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,

not worry about

εἰκός οἰκότος (n, 3) likely

εἴκοσι twenty

ἑκατόν hundred

ἐκεῖσε thither

ἐνταῦθα thither

ἐντεῦθεν thence

ἐπειδάν when

ἥμερος domesticated

θεωρέω be sent to consult an oracle;

observe, contemplate

καταβαίνω go down

κατέχω hold down; cover; also

κατασχεθεῖν

κύων κυνός (m/f, 3) dog ~hound

μέντοι however

ξένιος of hospitality

οἶνος wine ~wine

ὀρμίζω anchor, beach

παραπλέω sail past

πεδίον plain, sea ~foot

πειράζω test a person

πειράω try, test ~empirical; also

πειρητίζω

πλέος full; also πλεῖος, πλέως

πλέω sail, float ~float

πλόος -ῦ course, voyage

ποταμός river ~hippopotamus

προίημι send forth, abandon

ῥέω flow ~rheostat

στάδιον (m/n) 200 meters (pl also

masc)

στόμα -τος (n, 3) mouth ~stomach

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army

στρατιώτης (m, 1) soldier, mercenary

ὑστεραίος the next; later

φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics

χώρα place

στρατεύματος ἢ ἑαυτῷ Λάκωνι ὄντι. ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἐμὲ εἴλεσθε, ἔφη, καὶ ἐγὼ πειράσομαι ὅ τι ἂν δύνωμαι ὑμᾶς ἀγαθὸν ποιεῖν. καὶ ὑμεῖς οὕτω παρασκευάζεσθε ὡς αὔριον, ἐὰν πλοῦς ᾖ, ἀναξόμενοι· ὁ δὲ πλοῦς ἔσται εἰς Ἡράκλειαν· ἅπαντας οὖν δεῖ ἐκεῖσε πειρᾶσθαι κατασχεῖν· τὰ δ' ἄλλα, ἐπειδὴν ἐκεῖσε ἔλθωμεν, βουλευσόμεθα.

## 6.2

Ἐντεῦθεν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἀναγόμενοι πνεύματι ἔπλεον καλῶ ἡμέρας δύο παρὰ γῆν. καὶ παραπλέοντες ἐθεώρουν τὴν τε Ἰασονίαν ἀκτὴν, ἔνθα ἡ Ἄργω λέγεται ὀρμίσασθαι, καὶ τῶν ποταμῶν τὰ στόματα, πρῶτον μὲν τοῦ Θερμῶδοντος, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἰριος, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἄλυσος, μετὰ τοῦτον τοῦ Παρθενίου· τοῦτον δὲ παραπλεύσαντες ἀφίκοντο εἰς Ἡράκλειαν πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα Μεγαρέων ἄποικον, οὗσαν δ' ἐν τῇ Μαριανδυνῶν χώρᾳ. καὶ ὀρμίσαντο παρὰ τῇ Ἀχερουσιάδι Χερρονήσῳ, ἔνθα λέγεται ὁ Ἡρακλῆς ἐπὶ τὸν Κέρβερον κύνα καταβῆναι ἢ νῦν τὰ σημεῖα δεικνύασι τῆς καταβάσεως τὸ βάθος πλέον ἢ ἐπὶ δύο στάδια. ἐνταῦθα τοῖς Ἑλλησι οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται ξένια πέμπουσιν ἀλφίτων μεδίμνους τρισχιλίους καὶ οἴνου κεράμια δισχίλια καὶ βοῦς εἴκοσι καὶ οἷς ἑκατόν. ἐνταῦθα διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ρεῖ ποταμὸς Λύκος ὄνομα, εὖρος ὡς δύο πλέθρων.

Οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται συλλεγέντες ἐβουλεύοντο τὴν λοιπὴν πορείαν



στρατεύματος ἢ εαυτῶ Λάκωνι ὄντι. ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἐμὲ εἴλεσθε, ἔφη, καὶ ἐγὼ πειράσομαι ὅ τι ἂν δύνωμαι ὑμᾶς ἀγαθὸν ποιεῖν. καὶ ὑμεῖς οὕτω παρασκευάζεσθε ὡς |tomorrow πλοῦς ἦ, ἀναξόμενοι· ὁ δὲ πλοῦς ἔσται εἰς Ἡράκλειαν· ἅπαντας οὖν δεῖ |thither εἰρᾶσθαι κατασχεῖν· τὰ δ' ἄλλα. |when |thither ἴθωμεν, βουλευσόμεθα.

## 6.2

Ἐντεῦθεν τῇ |the next; later, ἴμενοι πνεύματι ἔπλεον καλῶ ἡμέρας δύο παρὰ |earth; sail past country ἐθεώρουν τὴν τε Ἰασονίαν ἀκτὴν, ἔνθα ἢ Ἄργῶ λέγεται ὀρμίσασθαι, καὶ τῶν ποταμῶν τὰ στόματα, πρῶτον μὲν τοῦ Θερμῶδοντος, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἰριος, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἄλυσος, μετὰ τοῦτον τοῦ Παρθενίου· τοῦτον δὲ |sail past ἀφίκοντο εἰς Ἡράκλειαν πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα Μεγαρέων ἄποικον, οὓσαν δ' ἐν τῇ Μαρνανδυνῶν χώρα. καὶ |anchor, beach παρὰ τῇ Ἀχερουσιάδι Χερρονήσῳ, ἔνθα λέγεται ὁ Ἡρακλῆς ἐπὶ τὸν Κέρβερον κύνα καταβῆναι ἢ νῦν τὰ σημεῖα δεικνύσασθαι τῆς καταβάσεως τὸ βάθος πλέον ἢ ἐπὶ δύο |στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also masc) ; or/of hospitality στάδιος?: (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) πέμπουσιν |barley 200 meters |3000 και οἴνου κεράμια |2000 καὶ βοῦς εἴκοσι καὶ |type of fruit ἴταῦθα διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ρεῖ ποταμὸς Λύκος ὄνομα, |width; (caps) 30 meters or the east wind |its square Οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται συλλεγόντες ἐβουλευόντο τὴν λοιπὴν πορείαν

command of Clearchus's army with Timasion, a Dardanian, than with himself, a Laconian. But," continued Cheirisophus, "since your choice has fallen upon me, I will make it my endeavour to do you all the good in my power; so make your preparations to weigh anchor to-morrow; wind and weather permitting, we will voyage to Heraclea; every one must endeavour, therefore, to put in at that port; and for the rest we will consult, when we are come thither."

## 6.2

The next day they weighed anchor and set sail from Harmene with a fair breeze, two days' voyage along the coast. (As they coasted along they came in sight of Jason's beach, where, as the story says, the ship Argo came to moorings; and then the mouths of the rivers, first the Thermodon, then the Iris, then the Halys, and next to it the Parthenius.) Coasting past (the latter), they reached Heraclea, a Hellenic city and a colony of the Megarians, situated in the territory of the Mariandynians. So they came to anchorage off the Acherusian Chersonese, where Heracles is said to have descended to bring up the dog Cerberus, at a point where they still show the marks of his descent, a deep cleft more than two furlongs down. Here the Heracleots sent the Hellenes, as gifts of hospitality, three thousand measures of barley and two thousand jars of wine, twenty beeves and one hundred sheep. Through the flat country here flows the Lycus river, as it is called, about two hundred feet in breadth.

The soldiers held a meeting, and took counsel about the remainder of the journey: should they make their exit from the Pontus by

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
**ἄγρα** hunting, prey  
**ἀγρός** field, wild ~agriculture  
**αἰδῶ** sing; also αἰδιάω  
**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology  
**αἰτιάομαι** blame  
**ἄλλομαι** to jump ~sally  
**ἄμφω** both ~amphora  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**αὐτίκα** at once  
**βουλευέω** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**διαφθείρω** destroy; pf.: to be beside oneself  
**εἶσω** into; also ἔσω  
**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also ἐλαστρέω  
**ἐλαχύς** small; comp.: less ~light  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also ἰθύς  
**ἤμερος** domesticated  
**θαυμάζω** marvel ~theater; also ἀποθαυμάζω

**ἰσχυρός** strong, forceful, violent  
**μυρίος** immense, myriad ~myriad  
**ξένιος** of hospitality  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also πειρητίζω  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πότερος** which, whichever of two  
**πραΐξις** -εως (f/m/n) result, business  
**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**προΐστημι** put forward; (+gen) be head of, guard  
**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιά** army  
**συνάγω** assemble; join in battle  
**ταράσσω** mess things up  
**τείχος** -υς (n, 3) outdoor wall; also τειχίον  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τρισχίλιοι** 3000  
**φιλία** friendship  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions

πότερον κατὰ γῆν ἢ κατὰ θάλατταν χρή πορευθῆναι ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου.  
 ἀναστάς δὲ Λύκων Ἀχαιοὺς εἶπε· Θαυμάζω μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, τῶν  
 στρατηγῶν ὅτι οὐ πειρῶνται ἡμῖν ἐκπορίζειν σιτηρέσιον· τὸ μὲν  
 γὰρ ξένια οὐ μὴ γένηται τῇ στρατιᾷ τριῶν ἡμερῶν σιτία· ὀπόθεν δ'  
 ἐπισιτισάμενοι πορευσόμεθα οὐκ ἔστιν, ἔφη. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ αἰτεῖν  
 τοὺς Ἡρακλεώτας μὴ ἔλαττον ἢ τρισχιλίους κυζικηνοὺς· ἄλλος δ'  
 εἶπε μὴ ἔλαττον ἢ μυρίους· καὶ ἐλομένους πρέσβεις αὐτίκα μάλα  
 ἡμῶν καθημένων πέμπειν πρὸς τὴν πόλιν, καὶ εἰδέναι ὃ τι ἂν  
 ἀπαγγέλλωσι, καὶ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευέσθαι. ἐντεῦθεν προυβάλλοντο  
 πρέσβεις πρῶτον μὲν Χειρίσοφον, ὅτι ἄρχων ἦρητο· ἔστι δ' οἱ καὶ  
 Ξενοφῶντα. οἱ δὲ ἰσχυρῶς ἀπεμάχοντο· ἀμφοῖν γὰρ ταῦτά ἐδόκει  
 μὴ ἀναγκάζειν πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα καὶ φίλιαν ὃ τι μὴ αὐτοὶ ἐθέλοντες  
 διδοῖεν. ἐπεὶ δ' οὗτοι ἐδόκουν ἀπρόθυμοι εἶναι, πέμπουσι Λύκωνα  
 Ἀχαιὸν καὶ Καλλίμαχον Παρράσιον καὶ Ἀγασίαν Στυμφάλιον. οὗτοι  
 ἐλθόντες ἔλεγον τὰ δεδογμένα· τὸν δὲ Λύκωνα ἔφασαν καὶ ἐπαπειλεῖν,  
 εἰ μὴ ποιήσοιεν ταῦτα. ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται βουλευέσθαι  
 ἔφασαν· καὶ εὐθὺς τά τε χρήματα ἐκ τῶν ἀγρῶν συνήγον καὶ τὴν  
 ἀγορὰν εἴσω ἀνεσκεύασαν, καὶ αἱ πύλαι ἐκέκλειτο καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν τειχῶν  
 ὄπλα ἐφαίνετο.

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ ταραζάντες ταῦτα τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἠτιῶντο  
 διαφθεῖρειν τὴν πρᾶξιν· καὶ συνίσταντο οἱ Ἀρκάδες καὶ οἱ Ἀχαιοί·  
 προειστήκει δὲ μάλιστα αὐτῶν Καλλίμαχος τε ὁ Παρράσιος καὶ

|which, τὰ |earth; a country ταν χρῆ πορευθῆναι ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου.  
 |whichever  
 ἀναστὰς δὲ Λύκων Ἀχαιοὺς εἶπε· Θαυμάζω μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, τῶν  
 στρατηγῶν ὅτι οὐ πειρῶνται ἡμῖν ἐκπορίζειν σιτηρέσιον· τὸ μὲν  
 γὰρ |of hospitality ἴσθαι τῇ στρατιᾷ τριῶν ἡμερῶν σιτία· |whence ὅ  
 ἐπισιτισάμενοι πορευσόμεθα οὐκ ἔστιν, ἔφη. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ αἰτεῖν  
 τοὺς Ἡρακλεώτας μὴ ἔλαττον ἢ |3000 κυζικηνοῦς· ἄλλος δ'  
 εἶπε μὴ ἔλαττον ἢ μυρίου· καὶ ἐλομένους πρέσβεις αὐτίκα μάλα  
 ἡμῶν καθημένων πέμπειν πρὸς τὴν πόλιν, καὶ εἰδέναι ὅ τι ἂν  
 ἀπαγγέλλωσι, καὶ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευέσθαι. ἐντεύθεν προβάλλοντο  
 πρέσβεις πρῶτον μὲν Χειρίσοφον, ὅτι ἄρχων ἦρητο· ἔστι δ' οἱ καὶ  
 Ξενοφῶντα. οἱ δὲ ἰσχυρῶς ἀπεμάχοντο· ἀμφοῖν γὰρ |identical ἴκει  
 μὴ ἀναγκάζειν πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα καὶ |friendship μὴ αὐτοὶ ἐθέλοντες  
 |δίδημι?: should; bind; need, fail πρόθυμοι εἶναι, πέμπουσι Λύκωνα  
 ; or δίδωμι?: give; permit  
 Ἀχαιῶν καὶ Καλλίμαχον Παρράσιον καὶ Ἀγασίαν Στυμφάλιον. οὗτοι  
 ἐλθόντες ἔλεγον τὰ δεδογμένα· τὸν δὲ Λύκωνα ἔφασαν καὶ |threaten  
 εἰ μὴ ποιήσοιεν ταῦτα. ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται βουλευέσθαι  
 ἔφασαν· καὶ εὐθὺς τά τε χρήματα ἐκ τῶν |ἄγρα?: hunting, prey.; or ἀγρός?:  
 |field, wild  
 ἀγορὰν εἴσω ἀνεσκεύασαν, καὶ αἱ πύλαι ἐκέκλειντο καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν τειχῶν  
 ὄπλα ἐφαίνετο.

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ |mess things up ἅτα τοὺς στρατηγοὺς |blame  
 διαφθείρειν τὴν πρᾶξιν· καὶ συνίσταντο οἱ Ἀρκάδες καὶ οἱ Ἀχαιοί·  
 προεισθίκει δὲ μάλιστα αὐτῶν Καλλίμαχος τε ὁ Παρράσιος καὶ

sea or by land? and Lycon the Achaean got up and said: "I am astonished, sirs, that the generals do not endeavour to provide us more efficiently with provisions. These gifts of hospitality will not afford three days' victuals for the army; nor do I see from what region we are to provide ourselves as we march. My proposal, therefore, is to demand of the Heracleots at least three thousand cyzicenes." Another speaker suggested, "not less than ten thousand. Let us at once, before we break up this meeting, send ambassadors to the city and ascertain their answer to the demand and take counsel accordingly." Thereupon they proceeded to put up as ambassadors, first and foremost Cheirisophus, as he had been chosen general in chief; others also named Xenophon.

But both Cheirisophus and Xenophon stoutly declined, maintaining both alike that they could not compel a Hellenic city, actually friendly, to give anything which they did not spontaneously offer. So, since these two appeared to be backward, the soldiers sent Lycon the Achaean, Callimachus the Parrhasian, and Agasias the Stymphalian. These three went and announced the resolutions passed by the army. Lycon, it was said, even went so far as to threaten certain consequences in case they refused to comply. The Heracleots said they would deliberate; and, without more ado, they got together their goods and chattels from their farms and fields outside, and dismantled the market outside and transferred it within, after which the gates were closed, and arms appeared at the battlements of the walls.

At that check, the authors of these tumultuary measures fell to accusing the generals, as if they had marred the proceeding; and the Arcadians and Archaeans banded together, chiefly under the auspices of the two ringleaders, Callimachus the Parrhasian and Lycon the Achaean. The language they held was to this effect: It was outrageous that a single Athenian and a Lacedaemonian, who had

*vocabulary***αἰσχρός** shameful**ἀκέομαι** heal, fix**ἀλήθεια** truth**ἄλλομαι** to jump ~sally**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail**δέκα** ten ~decimal**ἕβδομος** seventh**ἕκτος** sixth**ἐνταῦθα** thither**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide**ἦκω** to have come**ἡμερος** domesticated**ἡμισυς** half ~hemisphere**ἴδιος** private, personal**καθίζω** to seat ~sit; also ἴζω, καθιζάνω**καταλύω** unyoke; destroy**κέρδος** -υς (n, 3) advantage, cunning**λιμὴν** -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge

~limnic

**μέντοι** however**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike**νομίζω** consider customary**παρέχω** furnish**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also

πειρητίζω

**πόνος** toil, suffering**πορεύω** carry**στέλλω** prepare, send, furl ~apostle**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army**στρατηγέω** be a general**στρατιά** army**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary**συμβουλεύω** give advice; (mid) consult**συνίστημι** unite; confront in battle**τίη** strengthened form of τί**τριήρης** -ους (f, 3) trireme**ὑπεῖπον** say as preface, premise**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω**ψηφίζω** count, vote

Λύκων ὁ Ἀχαιοῦς. οἱ δὲ λόγοι ἦσαν αὐτοῖς ὡς αἰσχρὸν εἶη ἄρχειν Ἀθηναίων Πελοποννησίων καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιον, μηδεμίαν δύναμιν παρεχόμενον εἰς τὴν στρατιάν, καὶ τοὺς μὲν πόνους σφᾶς ἔχειν, τὰ δὲ κέρδη ἄλλους, καὶ ταῦτα τὴν σωτηρίαν σφῶν κατειργασμένων· εἶναι γὰρ τοὺς κατειργασμένους Ἀρκάδας καὶ Ἀχαιοῦς, τὸ δ' ἄλλο στράτευμα οὐδὲν εἶναι καὶ ἦν δὲ τῇ ἀληθείᾳ ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν τοῦ στρατεύματος Ἀρκάδες καὶ Ἀχαιοί· εἰ οὖν σωφρονοῖεν, αὐτοὶ συστάντες καὶ στρατηγούς ἐλόμενοι ἑαυτῶν καθ' ἑαυτοὺς ἂν τὴν πορείαν ποιοῖντο καὶ πειρῶντο ἀγαθὸν τι λαμβάνειν. ταῦτ' ἔδοξε· καὶ ἀπολιπόντες Χειρίσοφον εἴ τινες ἦσαν παρ' αὐτῶν Ἀρκάδες ἢ Ἀχαιοὶ καὶ Ξενοφῶντα συνέστησαν καὶ στρατηγούς αἰροῦνται ἑαυτῶν δέκα· τούτους δὲ ἐψηφίσαντο ἐκ τῆς νικώσης ὅ τι δοκοῖη τοῦτο ποιεῖν. ἡ μὲν οὖν τοῦ παντὸς ἀρχὴ Χειρισόφῳ ἐνταῦθα κατελύθη ἡμέρα ἕκτη ἢ ἑβδόμη ἀφ' ἧς ἠρέθη.

Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ἐβούλετο κοινῇ μετ' αὐτῶν τὴν πορείαν ποιεῖσθαι, νομίζων οὕτως ἀσφαλεστέραν εἶναι ἢ ἰδίᾳ ἕκαστον στέλλεσθαι· ἀλλὰ Νέων ἔπειθεν αὐτὸν καθ' αὐτὸν πορεύεσθαι, ἀκούσας τοῦ Χειρισόφου ὅτι Κλέανδρος ὁ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ ἀρμοστής φαίη τριήρεις ἔχων ἤξειν εἰς Κάλπησ λιμένα· ὅπως οὖν μηδεὶς μετὰσχοι, ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ καὶ οἱ αὐτῶν στρατιῶται ἐκπλεύσειαν ἐπὶ τῶν τριήρων, διὰ ταῦτα συνεβούλευε. καὶ Χειρίσοφος, ἅμα μὲν ἀθυμῶν τοῖς γεγενημένοις, ἅμα δὲ μισῶν ἐκ τούτου τὸ στράτευμα, ἐπιτρέπει αὐτῷ ποιεῖν ὅ



Λύκων ὁ Ἀχαιοί. οἱ δὲ λόγοι ἦσαν αὐτοῖς ὡς αἰσχρὸν εἶη ἄρχειν Ἀθηναῖον Πελοποννησίων καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιον, μηδεμίαν δύναμιν παρεχόμενον εἰς τὴν στρατιάν, καὶ τοὺς μὲν πόρους σφᾶς ἔχειν, τὰ δὲ |**advantage,** **cunning** **is,** καὶ ταῦτα τὴν σωτηρίαν σφῶν κατειργασμένων· εἶναι γὰρ τοὺς κατειργασμένους Ἀρκάδας καὶ Ἀχαιοὺς, τὸ δ' ἄλλο στράτευμα οὐδὲν εἶναι καὶ ἦν δὲ τῇ ἀληθείᾳ ὑπὲρ ἡμῖν τοῦ στρατεύματος Ἀρκάδες καὶ Ἀχαιοί· εἰ οὖν σωφρονοῖεν, αὐτοὶ συστάντες καὶ στρατηγούς ἐλόμενοι ἑαυτῶν καθ' ἑαυτοὺς ἂν τὴν πορείαν ποιοῖντο καὶ πειρῶντο ἀγαθόν τι λαμβάνειν. ταῦτ' ἔδοξε· καὶ

|**leave behind,** **fail** Χειρίσοφον εἶ τινας ἦσαν παρ' αὐτῷ Ἀρκάδες ἢ Ἀχαιοὶ ἔξοφῶντα συνέστησαν καὶ στρατηγούς αἰροῦνται ἑαυτῶν δέκα· τούτους δὲ ἐψηφίσαντο ἐκ τῆς νικώσης ὅτι δοκοίη τοῦτο ποιεῖν. ἡ μὲν οὖν τοῦ παντὸς ἀρχὴ Χειρισόφῳ ἐνταῦθα κατελύθη ἡμέρα ἕκτη ἢ |**seventh** 'φ' ἧς ἡρέθη.

Ἐξοφῶν μέντοι ἐβούλετο κωνῆ μετ' αὐτῶν τὴν πορείαν ποιεῖσθαι, νομίζων οὕτως ἀσφαλεστέραν εἶναι ἢ ἰδίᾳ ἕκαστον |**prepare, send, furl**

Νέων ἔπειθεν αὐτὸν καθ' αὐτὸν πορεύεσθαι, |**ἀκούμαι?:** ἡἶλ, fix'; or ἀκούω?: **hear, listen** ὅτι Κλέανδρος ὁ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ ἀρμοστής φαίη τριήρεις ἔχων ἦξειν εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα· ὅπως οὖν μηδεὶς μετάσχοι, ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ καὶ οἱ αὐτῶν στρατιῶται ἐκπλεύσειαν ἐπὶ τῶν τριήρων, διὰ ταῦτα

|**give advice;** καὶ Χειρίσοφος, ἅμα μὲν ἀθυμῶν τοῖς γεγενημένοις, **(mid) consult** ἅμα δὲ μισῶν ἐκ τούτου τὸ στράτευμα, ἐπιτρέπει αὐτῷ ποιεῖν ὅ

not contributed a soldier to the expedition, should rule Peloponnesians; scandalous that they themselves should bear the toils whilst others pocketed the spoils, and that too though the preservation of the army was due to themselves; for, as every one must admit, to the Arcadians and Achaeans the credit of that achievement was due, and the rest of the army went for nothing (which was indeed so far true that the Arcadians and Achaeans did form numerically the larger half of the whole army). What then did common sense suggest? Why, that they, the Arcadians and Achaeans, should make common cause, choose generals for themselves independently, continue the march, and try somewhat to better their condition. This proposal was carried. All the Arcadians and Achaeans who chanced to be with Cheirisophus left him and Xenophon, setting up for themselves and choosing ten generals of their own. These ten, it was decreed, were to put into effect such measures as approved themselves to the majority. Thus the absolute authority vested in Cheirisophus was terminated there and then, within less than a week of his appointment.

Xenophon, however was minded to prosecute the journey in their company, thinking that this would be a safer plan than for each to start on his own account. But Neon threw in his weight in favour of separate action. "Every one for himself," he said, for he had heard from Cheirisophus that Cleander, the Spartan governor-general at Byzantium, talked of coming to Calpe Haven with some war vessels. Neon's advice was due to his desire to secure a passage home in these war vessels for themselves and their soldiers, without allowing any one else to share in their good-fortune. As for Cheirisophus, he was at once so out of heart at the turn things had taken, and soured with the whole army, that he left it to his subordinate, Neon, to do just

*vocabulary*

**ἀμείνων** better  
**ἀποβαίνω** leave, get off  
**ἀσθενέω** be weak, sick  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire  
**ἐξαίφνης** suddenly  
**ἐπιχειρέω** lay hands on  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἑπτακόσιοι** 700  
**ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
**ιθύς**  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief  
**θρίξ** (f) hair ~tresses  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**ἱερός** (2) holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph;  
 also ἱερόν, ἱερόν, ἱερός  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
**ἵππιοχάρμης**  
**ἵππικός** of horses  
**λιμὴν** -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge  
 ~limnic  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**παραμένω** stay with

**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (πούς)  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πότερος** which, whichever of two  
**πως** somehow  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
 campaign  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συστρατεύω** join in an expedition  
**τεσσαράκοντα** forty; also  
**τετταράκοντα**  
**τετρακισχίλιοι** 4000  
**τετρακόσιοι** 400  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τριακόσιοι** three hundred  
**τρίχα** divided into thirds  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**χίλιοι** thousand ~kilo-  
**χώρα** place

τι βούλεται. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔτι μὲν ἐπεχείρησεν ἀπαλλαγῆς τῆς στρατιᾶς ἐκπλεῦσαι· θυομένῳ δὲ αὐτῷ τῷ ἡγεμόνι Ἡρακλεῖ καὶ κοινουμένῳ, πότερα λῶον καὶ ἄμεινον εἴη στρατεύεσθαι ἔχοντι τοὺς παραμείναντας τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἢ ἀπαλλάττεσθαι, ἐσήμηνεν ὁ θεὸς τοῖς ἱεροῖς συστρατεύεσθαι. οὕτω γίνεται τὸ στράτευμα τρίχα, Ἄρκάδες μὲν καὶ Ἀχαιοὶ πλείους ἢ τετρακισχίλιοι, ὀπλίται πάντες, Χειρισόφῳ δ' ὀπλίται μὲν εἰς τετρακοσίους καὶ χιλίους, πελτασταὶ δὲ εἰς ἑπτακοσίους, οἱ Κλεάρχου Θρᾶκες, Ξενοφῶντι δὲ ὀπλίται μὲν εἰς ἑπτακοσίους καὶ χιλίους, πελτασταὶ δὲ εἰς τριακοσίους· ἵππικὸν δὲ μόνος οὗτος εἶχεν, ἀμφὶ τετταράκοντα ἵππέας.

Καὶ οἱ μὲν Ἄρκάδες διαπραξάμενοι πλοῖα παρὰ τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν πρῶτοι πλέουσιν, ὅπως ἐξαιφνης ἐπιπεσόντες τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς λάβοιεν ὅτι πλείστα· καὶ ἀποβαίνουσιν εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα κατὰ μέσον πῶς τῆς Θράκης. Χειρισόφος δ' εὐθὺς ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν ἀρξάμενος πεζῇ ἐπορεύετο διὰ τῆς χώρας· ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν Θράκην ἐνέβαλε, παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν ἦει· καὶ γὰρ ἡσθένει. Ξενοφῶν δὲ πλοῖα λαβὼν ἀποβαίνει ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρια τῆς Θράκης καὶ τῆς Ἡρακλεώτιδος καὶ διὰ μεσογείας ἐπορεύετο.

τι βούλεται. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔτι μὲν ἐπεχείρησεν ἀπαλλαγεῖς τῆς  
στρατιᾶς ἐκπλεῦσαι· θυομένῳ δὲ αὐτῷ τῷ ἡγεμόνι Ἡρακλεῖ καὶ  
κοινομένῳ, **which, whichever** ἢ καὶ ἄμεινον εἶη στρατεύεσθαι ἔχοντι τοὺς  
**stay with** τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἢ ἀπαλλάττεσθαι, ἐσήμηνεν ὁ θεὸς  
τοῖς ἱεροῖς **join in an expedition**. οὕτω γίνεται τὸ στράτευμα **τριχο?: divided into thirds ; or**  
Ἀρκάδες μὲν καὶ Ἀχαιοὶ πλείους ἢ **4000**, ὀπλίται **τριχο?: hair**  
Χειρισόφῳ δ' ὀπλίται μὲν εἰς **400** καὶ χιλίους, **light troops** δὲ  
εἰς **700**, οἱ Κλεάρχου Θραῆκες, Ξενοφῶντι δὲ ὀπλίται μὲν εἰς  
**700** καὶ χιλίους, **light troops** δὲ εἰς τριακοσίους· **of horses**  
μόνος οὗτος εἶχεν, ἀμφὶ τετταράκοντα ἵππείας.

Καὶ οἱ μὲν Ἀρκάδες διαπραζάμενοι πλοῖα παρὰ τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν  
πρώτοι πλέουσιν, ὅπως **suddenly** ἵπιπιδόντες τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς λάβειεν  
ὅτι πλείεστα· καὶ ἀποβαίνουσιν εἰς Κάλπησιν λιμένα κατὰ μέσον  
πως τῆς Θράκης. Χειρισόφος δ' εὐθὺς ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως τῶν  
Ἡρακλεωτῶν ἀρξάμενος πεζῇ ἐπορεύετο διὰ τῆς χώρας· ἐπεὶ  
δὲ εἰς τὴν Θράκην ἐνέβαλε, παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν ἦεν· καὶ γὰρ  
**be weak, sick** ἰφῶν δὲ πλοῖα λαβὼν ἀποβαίνει ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρια τῆς  
Θράκης καὶ τῆς Ἡρακλεώτιδος καὶ διὰ μεσογείας ἐπορεύετο.

what he liked. Xenophon, on his side, would still have been glad to be quit of the expedition and sail home; but on offering sacrifice to Heracles the Leader, and seeking advice, whether it were better and more desirable to continue the march in charge of the soldiers who had remained faithful, or to take his departure, the god indicated to him by the victims that he should adopt the former course.

In this way the army was now split up into three divisions. First, the Arcadians and Achaeans, over four thousand five hundred men, all heavy infantry. Secondly, Cheirisophus and his men, viz. one thousand four hundred heavy infantry and the seven hundred peltasts, or Clearchus's Thracians. Thirdly, Xenophon's division of one thousand seven hundred heavy infantry, and three hundred peltasts; but then he alone had the cavalry— about forty troopers.

The Arcadians, who had bargained with the Heracleots and got some vessels from them, were the first to set sail; they hoped, by pouncing suddenly on the Bithynians, to make as large a haul as possible. With that object they disembarked at Calpe Haven, pretty nearly at the middle point in Thrace. Cheirisophus setting off straight from Heraclea, commenced a land march through the country; but having entered into Thrace, he preferred to cling to the seaboard, health and strength failing him. Xenophon, lastly, took vessels, and disembarking on the confines of Thrace and the Heracleotid, pushed forward through the heart of the country.

*vocabulary*

**ἀθροίζω** press close together; (mid) muster

**ἀνδράποδον** (m/n, 3) slave

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp.~sin

**ἀνθέω** sprout

**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return

**ἀποβαίνω** leave, get off

**δέκα** ten ~decimal

**διάβασις** -εως (f) crossing, passage

**ἐξαίφνης** suddenly

**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply

**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel

**εὐτυχέω** be lucky, prosper, succeed

**ἤμερος** domesticated

**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet

**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also

**ἵππιοχάρμης**

**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle

**κώμη** village

**λείπω** leave something; depart

~eclipse; also **λιπάω**

**λιμὴν** -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge

~limnic

**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop

**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie

**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus

**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy

infantryman

**ὅποῖος** whatever kind

**πελταστής** (m) light troops

**περιβάλλω** excel; don

**πορεύω** carry

**πράγμα** -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing, affair

**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds; also

**πρόβασις**

**προίημι** send forth, abandon

**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also masc)

**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;

(pl noun) 200 meters; also **σταδίη**

**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up station

**συλλέγω** collect, assemble

**συμβάλλω** pit against; mp: meet, fall in with

**σώζω** save

**τάσσω** arrange

**τέως** meanwhile, for a while

**τρέπω** divert ~trophy

**τριάκοντα** thirty

**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case

**φάος** (n, 3) light; salvation; (pl) eyes ~photon; also **φώς**

**χαράδρα** torrent, gorge

**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions

## 6.3

Ἐπραξαν δ' αὐτῶν ἕκαστοι τάδε. οἱ μὲν Ἀρκάδες ὡς ἀπέβησαν νυκτὸς εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα, πορεύονται εἰς τὰς πρώτας κόμας, στάδια ἀπὸ θαλάττης ὡς τριάκοντα. ἐπεὶ δὲ φῶς ἐγένετο, ἦγεν ἕκαστος ὁ στρατηγὸς τὸν αὐτοῦ λόχον ἐπὶ κόμην· ὅποια δὲ μείζων ἐδόκει εἶναι, σύνδυο λόχους ἦγον οἱ στρατηγοί. συνεβάλλοντο δὲ καὶ λόφον εἰς ὃν δέοι πάντας ἀλίξεσθαι· καὶ ἄτε ἐξαίφνης ἐπιπεσόντες ἀνδράποδά τε πολλὰ ἔλαβον καὶ πρόβατα πολλὰ περιεβάλλοντο. οἱ δὲ Θρᾶκες ἠθροίζοντο οἱ διαφεύγοντες· πολλοὶ δὲ διέφευγον πελτασταὶ ὄντες ὀπίστας ἐξ αὐτῶν τῶν χειρῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνελέγησαν, πρῶτον μὲν τῷ Σμίκρητος λόχῳ ἐνὸς τῶν Ἀρκάδων στρατηγῶν ἀπιόντι ἤδη εἰς τὸ συγκείμενον καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἄγοντι ἐπιτίθενται. καὶ τέως μὲν ἐμάχοντο ἅμα πορευόμενοι οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐπὶ δὲ διαβάσει χαράδρας τρέπονται αὐτούς, καὶ αὐτόν τε τὸν Σμίκρητα ἀποκτινύουσι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους πάντας· ἄλλου δὲ λόχου τῶν δέκα στρατηγῶν τοῦ Ἡγησάνδρου ὀκτῶ μόνους ἔλιπον· καὶ αὐτὸς Ἡγήσανδρος ἐσώθη. καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ λόχοι συνήλθον οἱ μὲν σὺν πράγμασιν οἱ δὲ ἄνευ πραγμάτων· οἱ δὲ Θρᾶκες ἐπεὶ ἠτύχησαν τοῦτο τὸ εὐτύχημα, συνεβόων τε ἀλλήλους καὶ συνελέγοντο ἐρρωμένως τῆς νυκτός. καὶ ἅμα ἡμέρα κύκλῳ περὶ τὸν λόφον ἔνθα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐτάττοντο καὶ ἵππεῖς



6.3

Ἐπραξαν δ' αὐτῶν ἕκαστοι τάδε. οἱ μὲν Ἀρκάδες ὡς ἀπέβησαν  
 νυκτὸς εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα, πορεύονται εἰς τὰς πρώτας |village  
 |στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also masc) ; or |στάδιος?: (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
 ἕκαστος ὁ στρατηγὸς τὸν αὐτοῦ |ambush, |village |whatever kind  
 |band,  
 ἐδόκει εἶναι, σύνδυο |ambush, |childbirth|στρατηγοί. συνεβάλλοντο  
 |band, child-  
 δὲ καὶ |neck, crest on a |birth πάντας ἀλίεσθαι· καὶ ἄτε |suddenly  
 |helmet, hilltop  
 ἐπιπεσόντες |slave τε πολλὰ ἔλαβον καὶ πρόβατα πολλὰ  
 περιεβάλλοντο. οἱ δὲ Θρᾶκες ἠθροίζοντο οἱ διαφεύγοντες· πολλοὶ δὲ  
 διέφευγον |light ὄντες ὀπίστας ἐξ αὐτῶν τῶν χειρῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ  
 |troops  
 |collect, |πρῶτον μὲν τῷ Σμίκρητος |ambush, ἦν Ἀρκάδων  
 |assemble |band, child-  
 στρατηγῶν ἀπίοντι ἤδη εἰς τὸ συγκεῖμε|birthκαὶ πολλὰ χρήματα  
 ἄγοντι ἐπιτίθενται. καὶ |meanwhile, ἄχοντο ἅμα πορευόμενοι οἱ  
 |for a while  
 Ἕλληνες, ἐπὶ δὲ |crossing, |torrent, τρέπονται αὐτούς, καὶ αὐτόν  
 |passage |gorge  
 τε τὸν Σμίκρητα ἀποκτινύασι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους πάντας· ἄλλου  
 δὲ |ambush, ἕκα στρατηγῶν τοῦ Ἡγήσανδρου ὀκτὼ μόνους  
 |band, child-  
 ἔλι|birthκαὶ αὐτὸς Ἡγήσανδρος ἐσώθη. καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ |ambush, band,  
 |childbirth  
 συνῆλθον οἱ μὲν σὺν πράγμασιν οἱ δὲ ἄνευ πραγμάτων· οἱ δὲ Θρᾶκες  
 ἐπεὶ |be lucky, ἴτο τὸ εὐτύχημα, συνεβόων τε ἀλλήλους καὶ  
 |prosper, suc-  
 |collected ἐρρωμένως τῆς νυκτὸς. καὶ ἅμα ἡμέρα |circle, περὶ  
 |assemble |wheel  
 τὸν |neck, crest on a |helmet, encamp or ἐτάπτοντο καὶ ἱπέεῖς  
 |hilltop |take up sta-  
 |tion

### 6.3

The Arcadians, disembarking under cover of night at Calpe Haven, marched against the nearest villages about thirty furlongs from the sea; and as soon as it was light, each of the ten generals led his company to attack one village, or if the village were large, a couple of companies advanced under their combined generals. They further agreed upon a certain knoll, where they were all eventually to assemble. So sudden was their attack that they seized a number of captives and enclosed a multitude of small cattle. But the Thracians who escaped began to collect again; for being light-armed troops they had slipped in large numbers through the hands of the heavy infantry; and now that they were got together they first attacked the company of the Arcadian general, Smicres, who had done his work and was retiring to the appointed meeting-place, driving along a large train of captives and cattle. For a good while the Hellenes maintained a running fight; but at the passage of a gorge the enemy routed them, slaying Smicres himself and those with him to a man. The fate of another company under command of Hegesander, another of the ten, was nearly as bad; only eight men escaped, Hegesander being one of them. The remaining captains eventually met, some with somewhat to show for their pains, others empty-handed.

The Thracians, having achieved this success, kept up a continual shouting and clatter of conversation to one another during the night; but with day-dawn they marshalled themselves right round the knoll on which the Hellenes were encamped— both cavalry in large numbers and light-armed troops— while every minute the stream of newcomers grew greater. Then they commenced an attack on the heavy infantry in all security, for the Hellenes had not a single

*vocabulary*

**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology  
**ἄκοντιζω** throw, (+gen) at  
**ἄκοντιστής** (m, 1) spearman  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι, ὄλλυμι  
**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck  
**ἀποφεύγω** avoid, escape, go free  
**ἀσφαλῆς** going ahead, standing firm  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**διαλέγω** go through, debate  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also τυγχάνω  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔργω** bound, fend off; do; also ἐργαθεῖν  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide, chief  
**θνήσκω** die ~euthanasia; also ἐχθνήσκω  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also ἵππιοχάρμης  
**ἰσχυρός** strong, forceful, violent

**καθίστημι** set down, land  
**κινέω** set in motion, move, remove ~kinetic  
**λιμῆν** -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge ~limnic  
**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman  
**ὁπότε** when; also ὀππότε  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πολιορκέω** besiege  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πού** no doubt; somewhere/how  
**προσβάλλω** hit (+acc+dat); mp: heed  
**προσελαύνω** go to, approach  
**ῥάδιος** easy; also ῥάιος  
**σκοπός** (m/f) lookout ~telescope  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble  
**τελευτάω** bring about, finish  
**τοξότης** (m, 1) archer  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard ~phylactery  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

πολλοὶ καὶ πελτασταί, καὶ αἰεὶ πλέονες συνέρρεον· καὶ προσέβαλλον πρὸς τοὺς ὀπλίτας ἀσφαλῶς· οἱ μὲν γὰρ Ἕλληνες οὔτε τοξότην εἶχον οὔτε ἀκοντιστὴν οὔτε ἵππέα· οἱ δὲ προσθέοντες καὶ προσελαύνοντες ἠκόντιζον· ὁπότε δὲ αὐτοῖς ἐπίοιεν, ῥαδίως ἀπέφευγον· ἄλλοι δὲ ἄλλη ἐπετίθεντο. καὶ τῶν μὲν πολλοὶ ἐτιτρώσκοντο, τῶν δὲ οὐδεῖς· ὥστε κινήθῃναι οὐκ ἐδύνατο ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου, ἀλλὰ τελευτῶντες καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὕδατος εἶργον αὐτοὺς οἱ Θρᾶκες. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπορία πολλὴ ἦν, διελέγοντο περὶ σπονδῶν· καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ὠμολόγητο αὐτοῖς, ὁμήρους δὲ οὐκ ἐδίδοσαν οἱ Θρᾶκες αἰτούντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ἀλλ' ἐν τούτῳ ἴσχετο. τὰ μὲν δὴ τῶν Ἀρκάδων οὕτως εἶχε.

Χειρίσοφος δὲ ἀσφαλῶς πορευόμενος παρὰ θάλατταν ἀφικνέεται εἰς Κάλπησ λιμένα. Ξενοφῶντι δὲ διὰ τῆς μεσογείας πορευομένῳ οἱ ἵππεῖς καταθέοντες ἐντυγχάνουσι πρεσβύταις πορευομένοις ποι. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἤχθησαν παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα, ἐρωτᾷ αὐτοὺς εἴ που ἦσθηται ἄλλου στρατεύματος ὄντος Ἑλληνικοῦ. οἱ δὲ ἔλεγον πάντα τὰ γεγενημένα, καὶ νῦν ὅτι πολιορκοῦνται ἐπὶ λόφου, οἱ δὲ Θρᾶκες πάντες περικεκυκλωμένοι εἶεν αὐτούς. ἐνταῦθα τοὺς μὲν ἀνθρώπους τούτους ἐφύλαττεν ἰσχυρῶς, ὅπως ἠγεμόνες εἶεν ὅποι δέοι· σκοποὺς δὲ καταστήσας συνέλεξε τοὺς στρατιώτας καὶ ἔλεξεν· Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τῶν Ἀρκάδων οἱ μὲν τεθνήσκει, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἐπὶ λόφου τινὸς πολιορκοῦνται. νομίζω δ' ἔγωγε, εἰ ἐκεῖνοι ἀπολοῦνται, οὐδ' ἡμῖν εἶναι οὐδεμίαν σωτηρίαν, οὔτω μὲν πολλῶν ὄντων τῶν πολεμίων,

πολλοὶ καὶ **light** , καὶ αἰὲ πλέονες συνέρρεον· καὶ **hit**  
 πρὸς τοὺς ὀπλίτας ἀσφαλῶς· οἱ μὲν γὰρ Ἕλληνες οὕτε **(+acc+dat);**  
 οὕτε **spearman** οὕτε ἰππέα· οἱ δὲ προσθέοντες καὶ **go to, approach**  
 ἠκόντιζον· ὁπότε δὲ αὐτοῖς ἐπίοιεν, ῥαδίως **avoid, es-** ἴλλοι δὲ ἄλλη  
 ἐπετίθεντο. καὶ τῶν μὲν πολλοὶ **wound, cape, go** τῶν δὲ οὐδεὶς· ὥστε  
 κινήθηται οὐκ ἐδύναντο ἐκ τοῦ χα **bring to** **grief** ἀλλὰ τελευτῶντες καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ  
 ὕδατος εἶργον αὐτοὺς οἱ Θραῖκες. ἐπεὶ δὲ **difficulty, ``** ἦ ἦν, διελέγοντο  
 περὶ σπονδῶν· καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ὠμολόγητο αὐτοῖς, ὀμήρους δὲ οὐκ  
**δίδομι?: should; bind; need, fail** ἦν Ἕλλήνων, ἀλλ' ἐν τούτῳ ἴσχετο.  
**; or δίδωμι?: give; permit**  
 τὰ μὲν δὴ τῶν Ἀρκάδων οὕτως εἶχε.

Χειρίσοφος δὲ ἀσφαλῶς πορευόμενος παρὰ θάλατταν ἀφικνεῖται  
 εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα. Ξενοφῶντι δὲ διὰ τῆς μεσογαίας πορευομένῳ  
 οἱ ἰππεῖς καταθέοντες **meet, find, obtain; succeed, ρεομένοις ποι.**  
**happen, happen to exist**  
 καὶ ἐπεὶ ἤχθησαν παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα, ἐρωτᾷ αὐτοὺς εἴ που ἦσθηται  
 ἄλλου στρατεύματος ὄντος Ἑλληνικοῦ. οἱ δὲ ἔλεγον πάντα τὰ  
 γεγενημένα, καὶ νῦν ὅτι πολιορκοῦνται ἐπὶ **neck, crest on a** **kes**  
**helmet, hilltop**  
 πάντες περικεκλωμένοι εἶεν αὐτούς. ἐνταῦθα τοὺς μὲν ἀνθρώπους  
 τούτους ἐφύλαττεν ἰσχυρῶς, ὅπως ἠγεμόνες εἶεν ὅποι δέοι· **lookout**  
 δὲ καταστήσας **collect,** τοὺς στρατιώτας καὶ ἔλεξεν· Ἄνδρες  
**assemble**  
 στρατιῶται, τῶν Ἀρκάδων οἱ μὲν τεθνᾶσιν, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἐπὶ **neck, crest on a**  
**helmet, hilltop**  
 τινὸς πολιορκοῦνται. νομίζω δ' ἔγωγε, εἰ ἐκείνοι ἀπολοῦνται, οὐδ' ἡμῖν  
 εἶναι οὐδεμίαν σωτηρίαν, οὕτω μὲν πολλῶν ὄντων τῶν πολεμίων,

bowman, javelin-man, or mounted trooper amongst them; while the enemy rushed forward on foot or galloped up on horseback and let fly their javelins. It was vain to attempt to retaliate, so lightly did they spring back and escape; and ever the attack renewed itself from every point, so that on one side man after man was wounded, on the other not a soul was touched; the result being that they could not stir from their position, and the Thracians ended by cutting them off even from their water. In their despair they began to parley about a truce, and finally various concessions were made and terms agreed to between them; but the Thracians would not hear of giving hostages in answer to the demand of the Hellenes; at that point the matter rested. So fared it with the Arcadians.

As to Cheirisophus, that general prosecuted his march along the seaboard, and without check reached Calpe Haven. Xenophon advanced through the heart of the country; and his cavalry pushing on in front, came upon some old men pursuing their road somewither, who were brought to him, and in answer to his question, whether they had caught sight of another Hellenic army anywhere, told him all that had already taken place, adding that at present they were being besieged upon a knoll with all the Thracians in close circle round them. Thereupon he kept the old men under strict guard to serve as guides in case of need; next, having appointed outposts, he called a meeting of the soldiers, and addressed them: "Soldiers, some of the Arcadians are dead and the rest are being besieged upon a certain knoll. Now my own belief is, that if they are to perish, with their deaths the seal is set to our own fate: since we must reckon with an enemy at once numerous and emboldened. Clearly our best course is to hasten to their rescue, if haply

*vocabulary*

**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
 ἀφήνω  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**ἐνθένδε** hence (ἐν)  
**ἔννυμι** clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest

**θαρσέω** be of good heart; also θαρρέω  
**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)  
 there is a danger that  
**κράτιστος** best  
**λείπω** leave something; depart  
 ~eclipse; also λιπάω  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

οὔτω δὲ τεθαρρηκότων. κράτιστον οὖν ἡμῖν ὡς τάχιστα βοηθεῖν τοῖς ἀνδράσιν, ὅπως εἰ ἔτι εἰσὶ σῶοι, σὺν ἐκείνοις μαχώμεθα καὶ μὴ μόνοι λειφθέντες μόνοι καὶ κινδυνεύωμεν. ἡμεῖς γὰρ ἀποδραίημεν ἂν οὐδαμοῖ ἐνθένδε· πολλὴ μὲν γάρ, ἔφη, εἰς Ἡράκλειαν πάλιν ἀπιέναι, πολλὴ δὲ εἰς Χρυσόπολιν διελθεῖν· οἱ δὲ πολέμοι



οὕτω δὲ τεθαρρηκότων. κράτιστον οὖν ἡμῖν ὡς τάχιστα βοηθεῖν τοῖς ἀνδράσιν, ὅπως εἰ ἔτι εἰσὶ σῶοι, σὺν ἐκείνοις μαχώμεθα καὶ μὴ μόνοι λειφθέντες μόνοι καὶ κινδυνεύωμεν. ἡμεῖς γὰρ ἀποδραίημεν ἂν οὐδαμοῖ |hence πολλή μὲν γάρ, ἔφη, εἰς Ἡράκλειαν πάλιν ἀπιέναι, πολλή δὲ εἰς Χρυσόπολιν διελθεῖν· οἱ δὲ πολέμοι

we may find them still alive, and do battle by their side rather than suffer isolation, confronting danger single-handed.

“Let us then at once push forward as far as may seem opportune till supper-time, and then encamp. As long as we are marching, let Timasion, with the cavalry, gallop on in front, but without losing sight of us; and let him examine all closely in front, so that nothing may escape our observation.” (At the same time too, he sent out some nimble fellows of the light-armed troops to the flanks and to the high tops, who were to give a signal if they espied anything anywhere; ordering them to burn everything inflammable which lay in their path.) “As for ourselves,” he continued, “we need not look to find cover in any direction; for it is a long step back to Heraclea and a long leap across to Chrysopolis, and the enemy is at the door. The shortest road is to Calpe Haven, where we suppose Cheirisophus, if safe, to be; but then, when we get there, at Calpe Haven there are no vessels for us to sail away in; and if we stop here, we have not provisions for a single day. Suppose the beleaguered Arcadians left to their fate, we shall find it but a sorry alternative to run the gauntlet with Cheirisophus’s detachment alone; better to save them if we can, and with united forces work out our deliverance in common. But if so, we must set out with minds prepared, since to-day either a glorious death awaits us or the achievement of a deed of noblest emprise in the rescue of so many Hellene lives. Maybe it is God who leads us thus, God who chooses to humble the proud boaster, boasting as though he were exceedingly wise, but for us, the beginning of whose every act is by heaven’s grace, that same God reserves a higher grade of honour. One duty I would recall to you,

*vocabulary*

**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι,  
 ὀλλυμι  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**βοῦς βοός** (m/f) cow, ox; shield  
 ~bovine  
**γνώμη** sign, mind, will, decision  
**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐκεῖ** there  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐργάζομαι** work, function well  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief  
**ἡώς ἡοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θεά** (2) goddess ~theology  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἵππιοχάρμης  
**ἴσος** equal; also ἔΐση  
**καθίστημι** set down, land  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**κεῖμαι** lie  
**λανθάνω** escape notice; (mp+gen)  
 forget ~Lethe; also καταλήθομαι  
**λιμὴν** -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge

~limnic

**νέος** young; neuter: recently ~neon  
**νόος** mind, intention ~paranoia  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**πολιορκέω** besiege  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πού** no doubt; somewhere/how  
**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds; also  
 πρόβασις  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**προσέχω** direct a thing to  
**πυνθάνομαι** learn, inquire, (+gen) hear  
 of ~buddha; also πεύθομαι  
**στρατιά** army  
**σώζω** save  
**τελευτάω** bring about, finish  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**φρονέω** think, be wise ~phrenology  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch; also  
 φυλακεύς  
**χώρα** place  
**ὥρα** season, time ~horoscope

πλησίον· εἰς Κάλπησ δὲ λιμένα, ἔνθα Χειρίσοφον εἰκάζομεν εἶναι, εἰ σέσωσται, ἐλαχίστη ὁδός. ἀλλὰ δὴ ἐκεῖ μὲν οὔτε πλοιά ἐστὶν οἷσ ἀποπλευσοῦμεθα, μένουσι δὲ αὐτοῦ οὐδὲ μᾶς ἡμέρας ἔστι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. τῶν δὲ πολιορκουμένων ἀπολομένων σὺν τοῖσ Χειρισόφου μόνοις κάκιόν ἐστι διακινδυνεύειν ἢ τῶνδε σωθέντων πάντας εἰς ταῦτὸν ἐλθόντας κοινῇ τῆσ σωτηρίας ἔχεσθαι. ἀλλὰ χρῆ παρασκευασαμένους τὴν γνώμην πορεύεσθαι ὡς νῦν ἢ εὐκλεῶσ τελευτῆσαι ἔστιν ἢ κάλλιστον ἔργον ἐργάσασθαι Ἑλληνας τοσοῦτους σώσαντας. καὶ ὁ θεὸς ἴσως ἄγει οὕτως, ὃσ τοὺσ μεγαληγορήσαντας ὡσ πλέον φρονούντας ταπεινώσαι βούλεται, ἡμᾶσ δὲ τοὺσ ἀπὸ τῶν θεῶν ἀρχομένους ἐντιμότερους ἐκείνων καταστῆσαι. ἀλλ' ἔπεσθαι χρῆ καὶ προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν, ὡσ ἂν τὸ παραγγελλόμενον δύνησθε ποιεῖν. νῦν μὲν οὖν στρατοπεδευσώμεθα προελθόντες ὅσον ἂν δοκῇ καιρὸς εἶναι εἰς τὸ δειπνοποιεῖσθαι· ἕωσ δ' ἂν πορευώμεθα, Τιμασιῶν ἔχων τοὺσ ἵππέασ προελανέτω ἐφορῶν ἡμᾶσ καὶ σκοπέτω τὰ ἔμπροσθεν, ὡσ μηδὲν ἡμᾶσ λάθη.

Ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἠγγέτο. παρέπεμψε δὲ καὶ τῶν γυμνήτων ἀνθρώπους εὐζῶνους εἰς τὰ πλάγια καὶ εἰς τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως εἴ πού τί ποθεν καθορῶεν, σημαίνοιεν· ἐκέλευε δὲ καίειν ἅπαντα ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν καυσίμῳ. οἱ δὲ ἵππεῖσ σπειρόμενοι ἐφ' ὅσον καλῶσ εἶχεν ἔκαιον, καὶ οἱ πελτασταὶ ἐπιπαριόντες κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα ἔκαιον πάντα ὅσα καύσιμα ἐώρων, καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ δέ, εἴ τιμι παραλειπομένῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν·

ὥστε πᾶσα ἢ χώρα αἰθεσθαι ἐδόκει καὶ τὸ στράτευμα πολὺ εἶναι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὥρα ἦν, κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο ἐπὶ λόφον ἐκβάντες, καὶ τά τε τῶν πολεμίων πυρὰ ἐώρων, ἀπείχον δὲ ὡς τετταράκοντα σταδίους, καὶ αὐτοὶ ὡς ἐδύναντο πλείστα πυρὰ ἔκαιον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδείπνησαν τάχιστα, παρηγγέλη τὰ πυρὰ κατασβεννύναι πάντα. καὶ τὴν μὲν νύκτα φυλακὰς ποιησάμενοι ἐκάθευδον· ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ προσευξάμενοι τοῖς θεοῖς, συνταξάμενοι ὡς εἰς μάχην ἐπορεύοντο ἢ ἐδύναντο τάχιστα. Τιμασίων δὲ καὶ οἱ ἵππεῖς ἔχοντες τοὺς ἡγεμόνας καὶ προελαύνοντες ἐλάνθανον αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τῷ λόφῳ γενόμενοι ἔνθα ἐπολιορκοῦντο οἱ Ἕλληνας. καὶ οὐχ ὀρώσω οὔτε φίλιον στράτευμα οὔτε πολέμιον καὶ ταῦτα ἀπαγγέλλουσι πρὸς τὸν Ξενοφῶντα καὶ τὸ στράτευμα, γράδια δὲ καὶ γρόντια καὶ πρόβατα ὀλίγα καὶ βοῦς καταλελειμμένους. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον θαῦμα ἦν τί εἴη τὸ γεγενημένον, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ τῶν καταλελειμμένων ἐπυνθάνοντο ὅτι οἱ μὲν Θρᾶκες ἀφ' ἐσπέρας ὄχοντο ἀπιόντες, καὶ τοὺς Ἕλληνας δ' ἔφασαν οἴχεσθαι· ὅποι δέ, οὐκ εἰδέναι.

Ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα, ἐπεὶ ἠρίστησαν, συσκευασάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο, βουλόμενοι ὡς τάχιστα συμμείξει τοῖς

πλησίον· εἰς Κάλπησ δὲ λιμένα, ἔνθα Χειρίσοφον εἰκάζομεν εἶναι, εἰ σέσωσται, ἐλαχίστη ὁδός. ἀλλὰ διὴ μὲν οὔτε πλοιά ἐστὶν οἷσ ἀποπλευσοῦμεθα, μένουσι δὲ αὐτοῦ οὐδὲ μᾶσ ἡμέρας ἔστι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. τῶν δὲ πολιορκουμένων ἀπολομένων σὺν τοῖσ Χειρισόφου μόνοισ κάκιόν ἐστὶ διακινδυνεύειν ἢ τῶνδε σωθέντων πάντας εἰς ἐλθόντας κοινῇ τῆσ σωτηρίας ἔχεσθαι. ἀλλὰ χρῆ παρασκευασαμένους τὴν γνώμην πορεύεσθαι ὡσ νῦν ἢ εὐκλεῶσ τελευτῆσαι ἔστιν ἢ κάλλιστον ἔργον ἐργάσασθαι Ἑλληνας τοσοῦτους σώσαντας. καὶ ὁ θεὸσ ἴσως ἄγει οὕτως, ὅσ τοὺσ μεγαληγορήσαντας ὡσ πλέον φρονούντας ταπεινώσαι βούλεται, ἡμᾶσ δὲ τοὺσ ἀπὸ τῶν θεῶν ἀρχομένους ἐντιμότερους ἐκείνων καταστῆσαι. ἀλλ' ἔπεσθαι χρῆ καὶ προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν, ὡσ ἂν τὸ παραγγελλόμενον δύνησθε ποιεῖν. νῦν μὲν οὖν στρατοπεδευσόμεθα προελθόντες ὅσον ἂν δοκῇ καιρὸσ εἶναι εἰς τὸ δειπνοποιεῖσθαι· ἕωσ δ' ἂν πορευόμεθα, Τιμασίων ἔχων τοὺσ ἵππέασ προελανέτω ἐφορῶν ἡμᾶσ καὶ σκοπέτω τὰ ἔμπροσθεν, ὡσ μηδὲν ἡμᾶσ λάθῃ.

Ταῦτ' εἰπὼν . . . δὲ καὶ τῶν γυμνήτων ἀνθρώπους εἰς τὰ πλάγια καὶ εἰς τὰ . . . , ὅπως εἴ πού τί ποθεν . . . , σημαίνοιεν· ἐκέλευε δὲ καίειν ἅπαντα ὄτω καυσίμῳ. οἱ δὲ ἵππεῖσ σπειρόμενοι ἐφ' ὅσον καλῶσ εἶχεν ἔκαιον, καὶ οἱ . . . ἐπιπαριόντες κατὰ τὰ . . . ἔκαιον πάντα ὅσα καύσιμα ἐώρων, καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ δέ, εἴ τιτι παραλειπομένη . . .

ὥστε πάσα ἡ χώρα |set on fire ᾧ ἔκει καὶ τὸ στράτευμα πολὺ εἶναι.  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ὥρα ἦν, κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο ἐπὶ |nέξιμι?: ᾧ go forth ᾧ; or ἐκεῖ?:  
 τά τε τῶν πολεμίων |pyre ἑώρων, ἀπέιχον |cυβᾶτε; or κειμαι?: lie  
 |στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl' also masc) ᾧ; or |a  
 |στάδιο?: (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl |hel- ἑκαίον. ἐπεὶ δὲ  
 |noun) 200 meters |στα, παρηγγέθη τὰ |pyre |κατα |hill-  
 τὴν μὲν νύκτα φυ|identical ἡσάμενοι ἐκάθευδον ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ  
 προσευξάμενοι τοῖς θεοῖς, συνταξάμενοι ὡς εἰς μάχην ἐπορεύοντο ἥ  
 ἐδύναντο τάχιστα. Τιμασίων δὲ καὶ οἱ ἵππεῖς ἔχοντες τοὺς ἡγεμόνας  
 καὶ προελαύνοντες ἐλάνθανον αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τῷ |neck, crest on a ᾧ ἄθα  
 ἐπολιορκοῦντο οἱ Ἕλληνας. καὶ οὐχ ὁρώσω οὔτε φίλιον στράτευμα  
 οὔτε πολέμιον καὶ ταῦτα ἀπαγγέλλουσι πρὸς τὸν Ξενοφῶντα καὶ  
 τὸ στράτευμα, γράδια δὲ καὶ γερόντια καὶ πρόβατα ὀλίγα καὶ βοῦς  
 καταλελειμμένους. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον |wonder, ᾧ τί εἴη τὸ γεγενημένον,  
 ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ τῶν καταλελειμμένων |surprise ᾧ ἐπυνθάνοντο ὅτι οἱ μὲν Θρᾶκες  
 ἀφ' ἑσπέρας ᾧχοντο ἀπιόντες, καὶ τοὺς Ἕλληνας δ' ἔφασαν οἴχεσθαι  
 ὅποι δέ, οὐκ εἰδέναι.

Ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα, ἐπεὶ ἡρίστησαν,  
 συσκευασάμενοι ἐπὶ |go ᾧ |guide past ᾧ  
 |well-girded ᾧ before, ᾧ, βουλόμενοι ὡς τάχιστα |mix with τοῖς  
 |look down ᾧ lead ᾧ  
 |light ᾧ  
 |troops ᾧ  
 ᾧ ἄκρον?: ᾧ hilltop  
 ᾧ; or ᾧ meet, find, obtain;  
 ᾧ ἄκρον?: ᾧ succeed, happen,  
 ᾧ extrem- ᾧ happen to exist  
 ᾧ ity ; or ᾧ  
 ᾧ ἄκρον?: ᾧ hilltop ; or ᾧ ἄκρον?: extremity  
 ᾧ ᾧ ᾧ at the edge, extreme  
 ᾧ; or ᾧ ᾧ at the edge, extreme  
 ᾧ extreme ᾧ meet, find, obtain;  
 ᾧ succeed, happen,  
 ᾧ happen to exist

to apply your minds to the execution of the orders with promptitude.”

With these words he led the way. The cavalry, scattering as far in advance as was prudent, wherever they set foot, set fire. The peltasts moving parallel on the high ground were similarly employed, burning everything combustible they could discover. While the main army, wherever they came upon anything which had accidentally escaped, completed the work, so that the whole country looked as if it were ablaze; and the army might easily pass for a larger one. When the hour had come, they turned aside to a knoll and took up quarters; and there they espied the enemy's watch-fires. He was about forty furlongs distant. On their side also they kindled as many watch-fires as possible; but as soon as they had dined the order was passed to quench all the fires. So during the night they posted guards and slept. But at daybreak they offered prayers to the gods, and drawing up in order of battle, began marching with what speed they might. Timasion and the cavalry, who had the guides with them, and were moving on briskly in front, found themselves without knowing it at the very knoll upon which the Hellenes had been beleaguered. But no army could they discover, whether of friend or foe; only some starveling old women and men, with a few sheep and oxen which had been left behind. This news they reported to Xenophon and the main body. At first the marvel was what had happened; but ere long they found out by inquiries from the folk who had been left behind, that the Thracians had set off immediately after sundown, and were gone; the Hellenes had waited till morning before they made off, but in what direction, they could not say.

On hearing this, Xenophon's troops first breakfasted, and then getting their kit together began their march,



*vocabulary*

**άάω** infatuate, make foolish  
**άείδω** sing; also *άοιδιάω*  
**αιγιαλός** beach, shore  
**άλλως** otherwise  
**άπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**άπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**άπολείπω** leave behind, fail  
**άσπάζομαι** greet, salute  
**αυλίζομαι** be driven home  
**αυτοῦ** here, there  
**άφικνέομαι** arrive  
**δείδω** to fear ~Deimos  
**δεξιά** right-hand  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**δεῦρο** here, come here!  
**έκπίπτω** fall out of  
**έξιημι** send forth, allow forth  
**έπειδή** after; because; also *έπεί*  
**έρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics  
**ήδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ήκω** to have come  
**ήμερος** domesticated  
**κειμαι** lie  
**λιμήν** -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge  
 ~limnic

**μακρός** long, tall  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**όδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also *οὐδός*  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also *οἶμαι*,  
*οἶομαι*  
**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**πλόος** -ῦ course, voyage  
**πορεύω** carry  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**πύθω** rot ~putrid; also *καταπύθω*  
**πυνθάνομαι** learn, inquire, (+gen) hear  
 of ~buddha; also *πεύθομαι*  
**πυρά** (f/n) pyre ~pyre; also *πυρή*  
**πως** somehow  
**στόμα** -τος (n, 3) mouth ~stomach  
**σχεδόν** near, approximately at  
 ~ischemia  
**τίη** strengthened form of *τί*  
**τριήρης** -ους (f, 3) trireme  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ύβρίζω** insult, treat outrageously  
**φιλία** friendship  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

ἄλλοις εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα. καὶ πορευόμενοι ἐώρων τὸν στίβον τῶν Ἀρκάδων καὶ Ἀχαιῶν κατὰ τὴν ἐπὶ Κάλπης ὁδόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὸ αὐτό, ἄσμενοί τε εἶδον ἀλλήλους καὶ ἠσπάζοντο ὡσπερ ἀδελφούς. καὶ ἐπυνθάνοντο οἱ Ἀρκάδες τῶν περὶ Ξενοφῶντα τί τὰ πυρὰ κατασβέσειαν· ἡμεῖς μὲν γάρ, ἔφασαν, ὤμεθα ὑμᾶς τὸ μὲν πρῶτον, ἐπειδὴ τὰ πυρὰ οὐχ ἐωρῶμεν, τῆς νυκτὸς ἤξειν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· καὶ οἱ πολέμοι δέ, ὡς γε ἡμῖν ἐδόκουν, τοῦτο δείσαντες ἀπῆλθον· σχεδὸν γὰρ ἀμφὶ τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ἀπῆσαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ ἀφίκεσθε, ὁ δὲ χρόνος ἐξῆκεν, ὠόμεθα ὑμᾶς πυθομένους τὰ παρ' ἡμῖν φοβηθέντας οἴχεσθαι ἀποδράντας ἐπὶ θάλατταν· καὶ ἐδόκει ἡμῖν μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι ὑμῶν. οὕτως οὖν καὶ ἡμεῖς δεῦρο ἐπορεύθημεν.

## 6.4

Ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν αὐτοῦ ἠυλίζοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ πρὸς τῷ λιμένι. τὸ δὲ χωρίον τοῦτο ὃ καλεῖται Κάλπης λιμὴν ἔστι μὲν ἐν τῇ Θράκῃ τῇ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ· ἀρξαμένη δὲ ἡ Θράκη αὕτη ἐστὶν ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος τοῦ Πόντου μέχρι Ἡρακλείας ἐπὶ δεξιὰ εἰς τὸν Πόντον εἰσπλέοντι. καὶ τριήρει μὲν ἐστὶν εἰς Ἡράκλειαν ἐκ Βυζαντίου κώπαις ἡμέρας μακρᾶς πλοῦς· ἐν δὲ τῷ μέσῳ ἄλλη μὲν πόλις οὐδεμία οὔτε φιλία οὔτε Ἑλληνίς, ἀλλὰ Θρᾶκες Βιθυνοί· καὶ οὖς ἂν λάβωσι τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκπίπτοντας ἢ ἄλλως πως δευὰ ὑβρίζειν λέγονται τοὺς Ἕλληνας. ὁ δὲ Κάλπης λιμὴν ἐν μέσῳ μὲν κείται

ἄλλοις εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα. καὶ πορευόμενοι ἑώρων τὸν στίβον  
 τῶν Ἀρκάδων καὶ Ἀχαιῶν κατὰ τὴν ἐπὶ Κάλπης ὁδόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ  
 ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὸ αὐτό, ἄσμενοί τε εἶδον ἀλλήλους καὶ ἠσπάζοντο  
 ὥσπερ ἀδελφούς. καὶ ἐπυνθάνοντο οἱ Ἀρκάδες τῶν περὶ Ξενοφῶντα  
 τί τὰ |pyre |extinguish ἡμεῖς μὲν γάρ, ἔφασαν, |infatuate, ᾧ τὸ  
 μὲν πρῶτον, |after; ἵ |pyre οὐχ ἑωρῶμεν, τῆς νυκτὸς |ishξειν ἐπὶ τοὺς  
 |because πολεμίους· καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι δέ, ὥς γε ἡμῖν ἐδόκουν, τοῦτο δείσαντες  
 ἀπῆλθον· σχεδὸν γὰρ ἀμφὶ τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ἀπῆσαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ  
 ἀφίκεσθε, ὁ δὲ χρόνος |send forth, ἵα ὑμᾶς |πύθω?: rot ; ὁρ πυνθάνομαι?: learn,  
 |allow forth |inquire, (+gen) hear of  
 φοβηθέντας οἴχεσθαι ἀποδράντας ἐπὶ θάλατταν· καὶ ἐδόκει ἡμῖν μὴ  
 |leave behind, ὑμῶν. οὕτως οὖν καὶ ἡμεῖς δεῦρο ἐπορεύθημεν.  
 |fail

## 6.4

Ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν αὐτοῦ |be driven home ᾧ |beach, πρὸς  
 τῷ λιμένι. τὸ δὲ χωρίον τοῦτο ὃ καλεῖται Κάλπης λιμὴν ἔστι μὲν  
 ἐν τῇ Θράκη τῇ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ· ἀρξαμένη δὲ ἡ Θράκη αὕτη ἐστὶν  
 ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος τοῦ Πόντου μέχρι Ἡρακλείας ἐπὶ |δεξιᾶ?: right-hand ; or  
 |δεξιός?: right-hand  
 Πόντον εἰσπλέοντι. καὶ τριήρει μὲν ἐστὶν εἰς Ἡράκλειαν ἐκ Βυζαντίου  
 |handle ἡμέρας μακρᾶς πλοῦς· ἐν δὲ τῷ μέσῳ ἄλλη μὲν πόλις  
 οὐδεμία οὔτε |φιλία?: friendship ; ὁρ ἵ Θραῖκες Βιθυνοί· καὶ οὗς  
 |φίλος?: friend; beloved  
 ἂν λάβωσι τῶν Ἑλλήνων |fall out of ἢ ἄλλως πως δευνὰ ὑβρίζειν  
 λέγονται τοὺς Ἑλληνας. ὁ δὲ Κάλπης λιμὴν ἐν μέσῳ μὲν κεῖται

desiring to unite with the rest at Calpe's Haven without loss of time. As they continued their march, they came across the track of the Arcadians and Achaeans along the road to Calpe, and both divisions arriving eventually at the same place, were overjoyed to see one another again, and they embraced each other like brothers. Then the Arcadians inquired of Xenophon's officers— why they had quenched the watch-fires? “At first,” said they, “when we lost sight of your watch-fires, we expected you to attack the enemy in the night; and the enemy, so at least we imagined, must have been afraid of that and so set off. The time at any rate at which they set off would correspond. But when the requisite time had elapsed and you did not come, we concluded that you must have learnt what was happening to us, and in terror had made a bolt for it to the seaboard. We resolved not to be left behind by you; and that is how we also came to march hither.”

## 6.4

During this day they contented themselves with bivouacking there on the beach at the harbour. The place which goes by the name of Calpe Haven is in Asiatic Thrace, the name given to a region extending from the mouth of the Euxine all the way to Heraclea, which lies on the right hand as you sail into the Euxine. It is a long day's voyage for a war-ship, using her three banks of oars, from Byzantium to Heraclea, and between these two there is not a single Hellenic or friendly city, but only these Bithynian Thracians, who have a bad reputation for the savagery with which they treat any Hellenes cast ashore by shipwreck or otherwise thrown into their power.

Now the haven of Calpe lies exactly midway, halving the voyage between Byzantium and Heraclea. It is a long promontory

*vocabulary*

**αἰγιαλός** beach, shore  
**ἄμπελος** (f) vine  
**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence  
**ἀρκέω** ward off, defend; suffice  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**αὐχὴν** -ένος (m, 3) neck  
**βίος** life; also βιοτή  
**βιώω** live ~biology  
**δασύς** hairy  
**εἰκός** οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
**εἴκοσι** twenty  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντός** within  
**ἐπιβουλή** a plot, scheme  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**καθῆκω** come down, (a day) to fall, be proper  
**κεῖμαι** lie  
**κρήνη** well, spring  
**κριθή** barley plant  
**κώμη** village  
**λιμὴν** -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge  
 ~limnic  
**μείων** less, smaller

**μυρίος** immense, myriad ~myriad  
**ξύλον** piece of wood ~xylophone  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἰκουμένη** inhabited  
**ὅπη** wherever, however  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**πάνυ** altogether, very  
**πέτρα** rock, cliff, reef ~petrified  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πλέος** full; also πλεῖος, πλέως  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πλήν** except  
**πυρός** wheat  
**ῥέω** flow ~rheostat  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up station  
**τέσσαρες** (3) four  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**χώρα** place  
**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
 ~heir  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

ἐκατέρωθεν πλεόντων ἐξ Ἡρακλείας καὶ Βυζαντίου, ἔστι δ' ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ προκείμενον χωρίον, τὸ μὲν εἰς τὴν θάλατταν καθήκον αὐτοῦ πέτρα ἀπορρώξ, ὕψος ὅπῃ ἐλάχιστον οὐ μείον εἴκοσιν ὀργυιῶν, ὁ δὲ αὐχὴν ὁ εἰς τὴν γῆν ἀνήκων τοῦ χωρίου μάλιστα τεττάρων πλέθρων τὸ εὖρος· τὸ δ' ἐντὸς τοῦ αὐχένος χωρίον ἰκανὸν μυρίοις ἀνθρώποις οἰκῆσαι. λιμὴν δ' ὑπ' αὐτῇ τῇ πέτρῃ τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέραν αἰγιαλὸν ἔχων. κρήνη δὲ ἡδέος ὕδατος καὶ ἄφθονος ρέουσα ἐπ' αὐτῇ τῇ θαλάττῃ ὑπὸ τῇ ἐπικρατείᾳ τοῦ χωρίου. ξύλα δὲ πολλὰ μὲν καὶ ἄλλα, πάνυ δὲ πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ ναυπηγήσιμα ἐπ' αὐτῇ τῇ θαλάττῃ. τὸ δὲ ὄρος εἰς μεσόγειαν μὲν ἀνήκει ὅσον ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίους, καὶ τοῦτο γεῶδες καὶ ἄλιθον· τὸ δὲ παρὰ θάλατταν πλεόν ἢ ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίους δασὺ πολλοῖς καὶ παντοδαποῖς καὶ μεγάλοις ξύλοις. ἡ δὲ ἄλλη χώρα καλὴ καὶ πολλή, καὶ κῶμαι ἐν αὐτῇ εἰσι πολλαὶ καὶ οἰκούμεναι· φέρει γὰρ ἡ γῆ καὶ κριθὰς καὶ πυρούς καὶ ὄσπρια πάντα καὶ μελίνας καὶ σήσαμα καὶ σῦκα ἀρκοῦντα καὶ ἀμπέλους πολλὰς καὶ ἡδυοίους καὶ τᾶλλα πάντα πλὴν ἐλαῶν. ἡ μὲν χώρα ἦν τοιαύτη. ἐσκήνουν δ' ἐν τῷ αἰγιαλῷ πρὸς τῇ θαλάττῃ· εἰς δὲ τὸ πόλισμα ἂν γενόμενον οὐκ ἐβούλοντο στρατοπεδεύεσθαι, ἀλλὰ ἐδόκει καὶ τὸ ἐλθεῖν ἐνταῦθα ἐξ ἐπιβουλῆς εἶναι, βουλομένων τινῶν κατοικίσαι πόλιν. τῶν γὰρ στρατιωτῶν οἱ πλείστοι ἦσαν οὐ σπᾶνει βίου ἐκπεπλευκότες ἐπὶ ταύτην τὴν μισθοφορὰν, ἀλλὰ τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἀκούοντες, οἱ μὲν καὶ ἄνδρας ἄγοντες, οἱ δὲ καὶ προσαναηλωκότες

εκατέρωθεν πλεόντων ἐξ Ἡρακλείας καὶ Βυζαντίου, ἔστι δ' ἐν τῇ  
 θαλάττῃ προκείμενον χωρίον, τὸ μὲν εἰς τὴν θάλατταν | come down, (a day)  
 αὐτοῦ πέτρα | broken off" | ἵος ὅπῃ ἐλάχιστον οὐ | less, " οὐσιν ὀργυίων, | to fall, be proper  
 ὁ δὲ αὐχὴν ὁ εἰς τὴν | earth; a country" | χωρίου μάλιστα τεττάρων | smaller  
 | 30 meters or | width; (caps) ὅς τοῦ αὐχένος χωρίον ἰκανὸν μυρίου |  
 | its square | the east wind  
 ἀνθρώποις οἰκῆσαι. λμῆν δ' ὑπ' αὐτῇ τῇ πέτρα τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέραν  
 | beach, ἔχων. | well, " ἐ ἡδέος ὕδατος καὶ ἀφθονος ρέουσα ἐπ' αὐτῇ  
 | shore | spring  
 τῇ θαλάττῃ ὑπὸ τῇ ἐπικρατεία τοῦ χωρίου. ξύλα δὲ πολλὰ μὲν καὶ  
 ἄλλα, πάνυ δὲ πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ ναυπηγήσιμα ἐπ' αὐτῇ τῇ θαλάττῃ.  
 τὸ δὲ ὄρος εἰς μεσόγειαν μὲν ἀνήκει ὅσον ἐπὶ εἴκοσι | στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl  
 τοῦτο γεῶδες καὶ ἄλιθον· τὸ δὲ παρὰ θάλατταν πλέο | (adj) πῆλιστα | standing upright,  
 | στάδιον?: | hairy πολλοῖς καὶ | of every καὶ μεγάλοις | τέρσις. ἡ δὲ  
 200 | kind, mani-  
 meters | χώρα καλὴ καὶ πολλὴ | fold καὶ | κώμη?: ' village ; ' τι πολλαὶ καὶ  
 (pl) also | or κείμαι?: lie  
 | θῆκη? : ' inhabited ; | earth; | barley καὶ | wheat καὶ ὄσπρια πάντα  
 ἢ οἰκέθ?: inhabit | a | plant  
 στάδιον? : | sesame | coufig | ward off καὶ | vine | πολλὰς καὶ  
 (adj) | try  
 standing  
 upright,  
 firm; (pl  
 ἀκλήω?: camp ; or | beach, πρὸς τῇ θαλάττῃ· εἰς δὲ τὸ πόλισμα  
 πόλιν? : camp | shore  
 | μέτρον? : camp | encamp or , ἀλλὰ ἐδόκει καὶ τὸ  
 meters | take up sta-  
 ἐλθεῖν ἐνταῦθα ἐξ | a plot, scheme | , βουλομένων τινῶν κατοικίσαι  
 πόλιν. τῶν γὰρ στρατιωτῶν οἱ πλείστοι ἦσαν οὐ σπάνει βίου  
 ἐκπεπλευκότες ἐπὶ ταύτην τὴν μισθοφορὰν, ἀλλὰ τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν  
 ἀκούοντες, οἱ μὲν καὶ ἄνδρας ἄγοντες, οἱ δὲ καὶ προσανηλωκότες

running out into the sea; the seaward portion being a rocky precipice, at no point less than twenty fathoms high; but on the landward side there is a neck about four hundred feet wide; and the space inside the neck is capable of accommodating ten thousand inhabitants, and there is a haven immediately under the crag with a beach facing the west. Then there is a copious spring of fresh water flowing on the very marge of the sea commanded by the stronghold. Again, there is plenty of wood of various sorts; but most plentiful of all, fine shipbuilding timber down to the very edge of the sea. The upland stretches into the heart of the country for twenty furlongs at least. It is good loamy soil, free from stones. For a still greater distance the seaboard is thickly grown with large timber trees of every description. The surrounding country is beautiful and spacious, containing numerous well populated villages. The soil produces barley and wheat, and pulse of all sorts, millet and sesame, figs in ample supply, with numerous vines producing sweet wines, and indeed everything else except olives. Such is the character of the country.

The tents were pitched on the seaward-facing beach, the soldiers being altogether averse to camping on ground which might so easily be converted into a city. Indeed, their arrival at the place at all seemed very like the crafty design of some persons who were minded to form a city. The aversion was not unnatural, since the majority of the soldiers had not left their homes on so long a voyage from scantiness or subsistence, but attracted by the fame of Cyrus's virtues; some of them bringing followers, while others had expended money on the expedition. And amongst them was a third set who had run away from fathers and mothers; while a different class had left children behind, hoping to return to them with money or other gains. Other people with Cyrus won great



*vocabulary*

**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἀναιρέω** take up  
**ἀναχωρέω** return, retreat  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
**ἀφήκω**  
**δειπνέω** eat, dine  
**δίχα** in two, in two ways; also διχθά  
**ἐξάγω** lead out  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεί  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἥμερος** domesticated  
**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**ἱερή** holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph; also  
**ἱερόν, ἱερός, ἱρός**  
**κάλως** halyard  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon;  
 also καταλείπω  
**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down,  
 have sex  
**κτάομαι** acquire, possess (κτῆμα)

**κτέομαι** get, obtain, incur, own  
**μιμνήσκω** remind; (mid) remember,  
 turn one's thoughts to ~mnemonic  
**νεκρός** corpse ~necrotic  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**πίνω** drink ~potion  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**ποθέω** miss, long for, notice an  
 absence; lose  
**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**στέφανος** ring  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συμφέρω** bring together (φέρω)  
**συνάγω** assemble; join in battle  
**σώζω** save  
**τέκνον** child ~oxytocin  
**ὑπάρχω** start, lead, set an example  
**ὑστεραίος** the next; later  
**ὑστερος** later, last  
**φάρμακον** drug, potion ~pharmacy  
**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**χώρα** place

χρήματα, καὶ τούτων ἕτεροι ἀποδεδρακότες πατέρας καὶ μητέρας, οἱ δὲ καὶ τέκνα καταλιπόντες ὡς χρήματ' αὐτοῖς κτησάμενοι ἤζοντες πάλιν, ἀκούοντες καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους τοὺς παρὰ Κύρω πολλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ πράττειν. τοιοῦτοι ὄντες ἐπόθουν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα σφύζεσθαι.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑστέρᾳ ἡμέρᾳ ἐγένετο τῆς εἰς ταῦτόν συνόδου, ἐπ' ἐξόδῳ ἐθύετο Ξενοφῶν· ἀνάγκη γὰρ ἦν ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐξάγειν· ἐπενόει δὲ καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς θάπτειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἱερά καλὰ ἐγένετο, εἶποντο καὶ οἱ Ἀρκάδες, καὶ τοὺς μὲν νεκροὺς τοὺς πλείστους ἔνθαπερ ἔπεσον ἐκάστους ἔθαψαν· ἤδη γὰρ ἦσαν πεμπταῖοι καὶ οὐχ οἷόν τε ἀναιρεῖν ἔτι ἦν· ἐνίους δὲ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν ὁδῶν συνενεγκόντες ἔθαψαν ἐκ τῶν ὑπαρχόντων ὡς ἐδύναντο κάλλιστα· οὓς δὲ μὴ ἠῦρισκον, κενοτάφιον αὐτοῖς ἐποίησαν μέγα, καὶ στεφάνους ἐπέθεσαν. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσαντες ἀνεχώρησαν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ τότε μὲν δειπνήσαντες ἐκομήθησαν. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ συνῆλθον οἱ στρατιῶται πάντες· συνῆγε δὲ μάλιστα Ἀγασίας τε ὁ Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς καὶ Ἰερώνυμος Ἡλείος λοχαγὸς καὶ ἄλλοι οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν Ἀρκάδων. καὶ δόγμα ἐποίησαντο, εἴαν τις τοῦ λοιποῦ μνησθῆ διχα τὸ στράτευμα ποιεῖν, θανάτῳ αὐτὸν ζημιοῦσθαι, καὶ κατὰ χώραν ἀπιέναι ἢ περ πρόσθεν εἶχε τὸ στράτευμα καὶ ἄρχειν τοὺς πρόσθεν στρατηγούς. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἤδη ἐτετελευτήκει φάρμακον πίων πυρέττων· τὰ δ' ἐκείνου Νέων Ἀσυναῖος παρέλαβε.

Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἀναστὰς εἶπε Ξενοφῶν· ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὴν

χρήματα, καὶ τούτων ἕτεροι ἀποδεδρακότες πατέρας καὶ μητέρας, οἱ δὲ καὶ τέκνα καταλιπόντες ὡς χρήματ' αὐτοῖς κτησάμενοι ἤζοντες πάλιν, ἀκούοντες καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους τοὺς παρὰ Κύρῳ πολλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ πράττειν. τοιοῦτοι ὄντες |miss, long for, notice ἴδα σώζεσθαι.  
|an absence; lose

|after; ἵ ἔστερα ἡμέρα ἐγένετο τῆς εἰς |identical ἡ νόδου, ἐπ' ἐξόδου  
|because ἐθύετο Ξενοφῶν· ἀνάγκη γὰρ ἦν ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐξάγειν· ἐπενόει δὲ καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς θάπτειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἱερά καλὰ ἐγένετο, εἶποντο καὶ οἱ Ἀρκάδες, καὶ τοὺς μὲν νεκροὺς τοὺς πλείστους ἔνθαπερ ἔπεσον ἐκάστους ἔθαιψαν· ἤδη γὰρ ἦσαν |on the fifth day ἕχ οἶόν τε ἀναιρεῖν ἔτι ἦν· ἐνίους δὲ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν ὁδῶν συνενεγκόντες ἔθαιψαν ἐκ τῶν ὑπαρχόντων ὡς ἐδύναντο κάλλιστα· οὓς δὲ μὴ ἠῦρισκον, κενοτάφιον αὐτοῖς ἐποίησαν μέγα, καὶ |ring ἐπέθεσαν. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσαντες ἀνεχώρησαν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ τότε μὲν δειπνήσαντες ἐκοιμήθησαν. τῇ δὲ |the next; later ἑθον οἱ στρατιῶται πάντες· συνῆγε δὲ μάλιστα Ἀγασίας τε ὁ Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς καὶ Ἰερώνυμος Ἡλείος λοχαγὸς καὶ ἄλλοι οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν Ἀρκάδων. καὶ δόγμα ἐποίησαντο, εἴαν τις τοῦ λοιποῦ μνησθῆ |in two, in two ways ποιεῖν, θανάτῳ αὐτὸν ζημιῶσθαι, καὶ κατὰ χώραν ἀπιέναι ἢ περ πρόσθεν εἶχε τὸ στράτευμα καὶ ἄρχειν τοὺς πρόσθεν στρατηγούς. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἤδη ἐτετελευτήκει |drug, πίων πυρέττων· τὰ δ' ἐκείνου Νέων Ἀσιναῖος παρέλαβε.  
|potion

Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἀναστὰς εἶπε Ξενοφῶν· |type of fruit ρατιῶται, τὴν

success, they were told; why should it not be so with them? Being persons then of this description, the one longing of their hearts was to reach Hellas safely.

It was on the day after their meeting that Xenophon sacrificed as a preliminary to a military expedition; for it was needful to march out in search of provisions, besides which he designed burying the dead. As soon as the victims proved favourable they all set out, the Arcadians following with the rest. The majority of the dead, who had lain already five days, they buried just where they had fallen, in groups; to remove their bodies now would have been impossible. Some few, who lay off the roads, they got together and buried with what splendour they could, considering the means in their power. Others they could not find, and for these they erected a great cenotaph, and covered it with wreaths. When it was all done, they returned home to camp. At that time they supped, and went to rest.

Next day there was a general meeting of the soldiers, collected chiefly by Agasias the Stymphalian, a captain, and Hieronymus, an Eleian, also a captain, and other seniors of the Arcadians; and they passed a resolution that, for the future, whoever revived the idea of breaking up the army should be punished by death. And the army, it was decided, would now resume its old position under the command of its former generals. Though Cheirisophus, indeed, had already died under medical treatment for fever; and Neon the Asinaean had taken his place.

After these resolutions Xenophon got up and said: "Soldiers, the journey must now, I presume, be conducted on foot; indeed, this is clear, since we have no vessels; and we are

*vocabulary***ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις**ἀείρω** raise, win ~aorta; also αἴρω**ἄλλομαι** become whole, sound**ἄλλοτε** at another time**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity**ἀναμένω** wait for**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape**ἀράομαι** pray, vow, invoke**ἀράω** wear something out**ἄρης** ἄρω (m) war, warlike spirit**ἄρον** type of lily**αὔριον** tomorrow**αὐτόματος** self-willed**αὐτοῦ** here, there**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**ἐνταῦθα** thither**ἐντεῦθεν** thence**ἔοικα** seem, seem likely, beseem ~icon**ἐπιλείπω** fail, not work**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἦκω** to have come**ἦμερος** domesticated**θύω** rush; sacrifice**ἱερόν** holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph; also**ἱερόν, ἱερός, ἱρός****κηρύσσω** be a henchman, summon people**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis**ὄον** type of fruit**οὐπω** no longer**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow**παύω** stop something ~pause**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (πούς)**πλοῖον** ship**ποιητέος** to be made, done**πορεύω** carry**πω** not at all; until now, (not) yet**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary**τολμάω** dare (τλάω)**τριήρης** -ους (f, 3) trireme**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics**χαλεπός** hard to bear**χωρίον** area; downwards

μὲν πορείαν, ὡς ἔοικε, δῆλον ὅτι πεζῇ ποιητέον· οὐ γὰρ ἔστι πλοῖα· ἀνάγκη δὲ πορεύεσθαι ἤδη· οὐ γὰρ ἔστι μένουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ἡμεῖς οὖν, ἔφη, θυσόμεθα· ὑμᾶς δὲ δεῖ παρασκευάζεσθαι ὡς μαχομένους εἴ ποτε καὶ ἄλλοτε· οἱ γὰρ πολέμοι ἀνατεθαρρήκασιν. ἐκ τούτου ἐθύοντο οἱ στρατηγοί, μάντις δὲ παρῆν Ἀρηξίων Ἀρκάς· ὁ δὲ Σιλανὸς ὁ Ἀμπρακιώτης ἤδη ἀπεδεδράκει πλοῖον μισθωσάμενος ἐξ Ἡρακλείας. θυομένοις δὲ ἐπὶ τῇ ἀφόδῳ οὐκ ἐγίνετο τὰ ἱερά. ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν ἐπαύσαντο. καὶ τινες ἐτόλμων λέγειν ὡς ὁ Ξενοφῶν βουλόμενος τὸ χωρίον οἰκίσαι πέπεικε τὸν μάντιν λέγειν ὡς τὰ ἱερά οὐ γίνεται ἐπὶ ἀφόδῳ. ἐντεῦθεν κηρύξας τῇ αὔριον παρεῖναι ἐπὶ τὴν θυσίαν τὸν βουλόμενον, καὶ μάντις εἴ τις εἴη, παραγγείλας παρεῖναι ὡς συνθεασόμενον τὰ ἱερά, ἔθνε· καὶ ἐνταῦθα παρῆσαν πολλοί. θυομένων δὲ πάλιν εἰς τρεῖς ἐπὶ τῇ ἀφόδῳ οὐκ ἐγίνετο τὰ ἱερά. ἐκ τούτου χαλεπῶς εἶχον οἱ στρατιῶται· καὶ γὰρ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπέλειπεν ἃ ἔχοντες ἦλθον, καὶ ἀγορὰ οὐδεμία πω παρῆν.

Ἐκ τούτου ξυνελθόντων εἶπε πάλιν Ξενοφῶν· ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐπὶ μὲν τῇ πορείᾳ, ὡς ὀράτε, τὰ ἱερά οὐπω γίνεται· τῶν δ' ἐπιτηδείων ὀρῶ ὑμᾶς δεομένους· ἀνάγκη οὖν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι θύεσθαι περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου. ἀναστάς τις εἶπε· Καὶ εἰκότως ἄρα ἡμῖν οὐ γίνεται τὰ ἱερά· ὡς γὰρ ἐγὼ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου χθὲς ἤκουτος πλοίου ἤκουσά τινος ὅτι Κλέανδρος ὁ ἐκ Βυζαντίου ἀρμοστής μέλλει ἤξειν πλοῖα καὶ τριήρεις ἔχων. ἐκ τούτου δὲ ἀναμένειν

μὲν πορείαν, ὡς ἔοικε, δῆλον ὅτι πεζῇ |to be made, done ᾗτι πλοῖα·  
 ἀνάγκη δὲ πορεύεσθαι ἤδη· οὐ γὰρ ἔστι μένουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ἡμεῖς  
 οὖν, ἔφη, θυσόμεθα· ὑμᾶς δὲ δεῖ παρασκευάζεσθαι ὡς μαχομένους  
 εἴ ποτε καὶ ἄλλοτε· οἱ γὰρ πολέμοι ἀνατεθαρρήκασιν. ἐκ τούτου  
 ἐθύνοντο οἱ στρατηγοί, |seer δὲ παρῆν Ἀρηξίων Ἀρκάς· ὁ δὲ  
 Σιλανὸς ὁ Ἀμπρακιώτης ἤδη ἀπεδεδράκει πλοῖον μισθωσάμενος ἐξ  
 Ἡρακλείας. θυομένοις δὲ ἐπὶ τῇ ἀφόδῳ οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ ἱερά. ταύτην  
 μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν ἐπαύσαντο. καὶ τινες ἐτόλμων λέγειν ὡς ὁ  
 Ξενοφῶν βουλόμενος τὸ χωρίον οἰκίσαι πέπεικε τὸν |seer λέγειν ὡς  
 τὰ ἱερά οὐ γίγνεται ἐπὶ ἀφόδῳ. ἐντεῦθεν κηρύξας τῇ |tomorrow, εἶναι  
 ἐπὶ τὴν θυσίαν τὸν βουλόμενον, καὶ |seer εἴ τις εἴη, παραγγείλας  
 παρεῖναι ὡς συνθεασόμενον τὰ ἱερά, ἔθνε· καὶ ἐνταῦθα παρήσαν  
 πολλοί. θυομένῳ δὲ πάλιν εἰς τρεῖς ἐπὶ τῇ ἀφόδῳ οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ  
 ἱερά. ἐκ τούτου χαλεπῶς εἶχον οἱ στρατιῶται· καὶ γὰρ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια

|fail, not work ᾗτες |ἄλλθομαι?: become whole πω παρῆν.  
 ; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come

Ἐκ τούτου ξυνελθόντων εἶπε πάλιν Ξενοφῶν· |type of fruit ᾗτὶ μὲν  
 τῇ πορείᾳ, ὡς ὀράτε, τὰ ἱερά οὐπω γίγνεται· τῶν δ' ἐπιτηδείων  
 ὀρῶ ὑμᾶς δεομένους· ἀνάγκη οὖν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι θύεσθαι περὶ  
 αὐτοῦ τούτου. ἀναστάς τις εἶπε· Καὶ εἰκότως ἄρα ἡμῖν οὐ  
 γίγνεται τὰ ἱερά· ὡς γὰρ ἐγὼ ἀπὸ τοῦ |self-willed χθὲς ἦκουτος  
 πλοίου ἤκουσά τινος ὅτι Κλέανδρος ὁ ἐκ Βυζαντίου ἀρμοστής  
 μέλλει ἤξειν πλοῖα καὶ τριήρεις ἔχων. ἐκ τούτου δὲ |wait for

driven to commence it at once, for we have no provisions if we stop. We then," he continued, "will sacrifice, and you must prepare yourselves to fight now, if ever, for the spirit of the enemy has revived."

Thereupon the generals sacrificed, in the presence of the Arcadian seer, Arexion; for Silanus the Ambraciot had chartered a vessel at Heraclea and made his escape ere this. Sacrificing with a view to departure, the victims proved unfavourable to them. Accordingly they waited that day. Certain people were bold enough to say that Xenophon, out of his desire to colonise the place, had persuaded the seer to say that the victims were unfavourable to departure. Consequently he proclaimed by herald next morning that any one who liked should be present at the sacrifice; or if he were a seer he was bidden to be present and help to inspect the victims. Then he sacrificed, and there were numbers present; but though the sacrifice on the question of departure was repeated as many as three times, the victims were persistently unfavourable. Thereat the soldiers were in high dudgeon, for the provisions they had brought with them had reached the lowest ebb, and there was no market to be had.

Consequently there was another meeting, and Xenophon spoke again: "Men," said he, "the victims are, as you may see for yourselves, not yet favourable to the march; but meanwhile, I can see for myself that you are in need of provisions; accordingly we must narrow the sacrifice to the particular point." Some one got up and said: "Naturally enough the victims are unfavourable, for, as I learnt from some one on a vessel which arrived here yesterday by accident, Cleander, the governor at Byzantium, intends coming here with ships and men of war." Thereat they were all in favour of stopping; but they must needs go out for provisions, and with this object



*vocabulary*

**ἄμαξα** wagon  
**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἀσκέω** work on  
**ἀσκός** wine skin, leather bag  
**βοῦς βοός** (m/f) cow, ox; shield  
 ~bovine  
**δισχίλιοι** 2000  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐννυμι** clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest  
**ἐξάγω** lead out  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεί  
**ἐπιλείπω** fail, not work  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐρουμνός** fortified, impregnable  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide, chief  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**ἱερό** holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph; also ἱερόν, ἱερός, ἱρός  
**ἱερός** (2) holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph; also ἱερό, ἱερόν, ἱρός  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also ἵππιοχάρμης  
**ἴσος** equal; also ἔϊση

**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon; also καταλείπω  
**κηρύσσω** be a henchman, summon people  
**κώμη** village  
**μέλω** be in/on the mind  
**μέρος** -ος (n, 3) part  
**νέα** ship ~navy; also ναῦς, νηῦς  
**νέομαι** go; come home ~nostalgia  
**νέος** young; neuter: recently ~neon  
**νέω** spin; swim ~neuro; also νήχω  
**ὄθεν** whence  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**οὐκέτι** no more  
**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds; also πρόβασις  
**σκηνή** tent, booth  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συγκαλέω** call together  
**σχεδόν** near, approximately at ~ischemia  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὕστεραῖος** the next; later  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χαρίζομαι** gratify someone ~charisma  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

μὲν πᾶσιν ἐδόκει· ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀνάγκη ἦν ἐξιέναι. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ πάλιν ἐθύετο εἰς τρίς, καὶ οὐκ ἐγένετο τὰ ἱερά. καὶ ἤδη καὶ ἐπὶ σκηνὴν ἰόντες τὴν Ξενοφῶντος ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐκ ἔχοιεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὁ δ' οὐκ ἂν ἔφη ἐξαγαγεῖν μὴ γιγνομένων τῶν ἱερῶν.

Καὶ πάλιν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐθύετο, καὶ σχεδόν τι πᾶσα ἡ στρατιὰ διὰ τὸ μέλειν ἅπασιν ἐκυκλοῦντο περὶ τὰ ἱερά· τὰ δὲ θύματα ἐπελελοίπει. οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ ἐξήγουν μὲν οὐ, συνεκάλεσαν δέ. εἶπεν οὖν Ξενοφῶν· Ἴσως οἱ πολέμοι συνειλεγμένοι εἰσὶ καὶ ἀνάγκη μάχεσθαι· εἰ οὖν καταλιπόντες τὰ σκεύη ἐν τῷ ἐρυμνῷ χωρίῳ ὡς εἰς μάχην παρεσκευασμένοι ἴοιμεν, ἴσως ἂν τὰ ἱερά προχωροῖ ἡμῖν. ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ στρατιῶται ἀνέκραγον, ὡς οὐδὲν δέον εἰς τὸ χωρίον ἄγειν, ἀλλὰ θύεσθαι ὡς τάχιστα. καὶ πρόβατα μὲν οὐκέτι ἦν, βοῦς δὲ ὑπὸ ἀμάξης πριάμενοι ἐθύοντο· καὶ Ξενοφῶν Κλεάνορος ἐδείθη τοῦ Ἄρκάδος προθυμεῖσθαι, εἴ τι ἐν τούτῳ εἶη. ἀλλ' οὐδ' ὡς ἐγένοντο.

Νέων δὲ ἦν μὲν στρατηγὸς κατὰ τὸ Χειρισόφου μέρος, ἐπεὶ δὲ ἑώρα τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ὡς εἶχον δεινῶς τῇ ἐνδείᾳ, βουλόμενος αὐτοῖς χαρίζεσθαι, εὐρών τινα ἀνθρωπον Ἡρακλεώτην, ὃς ἔφη κώμας ἐγγὺς εἰδέναι ὅθεν εἶη λαβεῖν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐκήρυξε τὸν βουλόμενον ἰέναι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ὡς ἡγεμόνος ἐσομένου. ἐξέρχονται δὴ σὺν δορατίοις καὶ ἀσκοῖς καὶ θυλάκοις καὶ ἄλλοις ἀγγείοις εἰς δισχιλίους ἀνθρώπους. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις καὶ διεσπείροντο ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ λαμβάνειν, ἐπιπίπτουσι αὐτοῖς οἱ Φαρναβάζου ἵππεῖς πρῶτοι· βεβοηθηκότες

μὲν πᾶσιν ἐδόκει· ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀνάγκη ἦν |ἐξίμι?: go forth ; or  
 τούτῳ πάλιν ἐθύετο εἰς τρεῖς, καὶ οὐκ ἐγίνετο τὰ ἱερά· καὶ ἤδη καὶ |ἐξίμι?: send forth, allow  
 ἐπὶ σκηνὴν ἰόντες τὴν Ξενοφώντος ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐκ ἔχοιεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.  
 ὁ δ' οὐκ ἂν ἔφη ἐξαγαγεῖν μὴ γιγνομένων τῶν ἱερῶν.

Καὶ πάλιν τῇ |the next; later 3, καὶ σχεδόν τι πᾶσα ἡ στρατιὰ  
 διὰ τὸ μέλειν ἅπασιν |carry on wheels` τὰ ἱερά· τὰ δὲ θύματα  
 |fail, not work ` δὲ στρατηγοὶ ἐξῆγον μὲν οὐ, |call together δέ. εἶπεν  
 οὖν Ξενοφῶν· Ἴσως οἱ πολέμοι συνειλεγμένοι εἰσὶ καὶ ἀνάγκη  
 μάχεσθαι· εἰ οὖν καταλιπόντες τὰ σκευὴ ἐν τῷ |fortified, , ὡ ὡς  
 εἰς μάχην παρεσκευασμένοι ἴοιμεν, ἴσως ἂν τὰ ἱερὰ |impreg-  
 ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ στρατιῶται |speak up . ὡς οὐδὲν δέον εἰς τὸ χωρίον  
 ἄγειν, ἀλλὰ θύεσθαι ὡς τάχιστα. καὶ πρόβατα μὲν οὐκέτι ἦν, βοῦς δὲ  
 ὑπὸ |wagon πριάμενοι ἐθύοντο· καὶ Ξενοφῶν Κλεάνορος ἐδείθη τοῦ  
 Ἀρκάδος προθυμῆσθαι, εἴ τι ἐν τούτῳ εἴη. ἀλλ' οὐδ' ὡς ἐγένοντο.

|νέα?: ship ; or νέος?: young; neuter: recently ; ὅρ 3 μέρος, ἐπεὶ δὲ  
 |γέομαι?: come home ; or νέω?: spin; swim  
 ἑώρα τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ὡς εἶχον δεινῶς τῇ ἐνδείᾳ, βουλόμενος αὐτοῖς  
 χαρίζεσθαι, εὐράν τινα ἀνθρωπον Ἡρακλεώτην, ὃς ἔφη |village ἔγγυς  
 εἶδέναι ὅθεν εἴη λαβεῖν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐκήρυξε τὸν βουλόμενον ἵέναι ἐπὶ  
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ὡς ἡγεμόνος ἔσομένου. ἐξέρχονται δὴ σὺν δορατίοις καὶ  
 |ἀσκόξ?: wine` skin ; καὶ ἄλλοις ἀγγείοις εἰς |2000 ἀνθρώπους.  
 or ἀσκέω?: work on  
 after; ἦσαν ἐν ταῖς |village καὶ διεσπείροντο ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ λαμβάνειν,  
 |because  
 ἐπιπίπτουσι αὐτοῖς οἱ Φαρναβάζου ἵππεῖς πρῶτοι· βεβοηθηκότες

he again sacrificed three times, and the victims remained adverse. Things had now reached such a pass that the men actually came to Xenophon's tent to proclaim that they had no provisions. His sole answer was that he would not lead them out till the victims were favourable.

So again the next day he sacrificed; and nearly the whole army, so strong was the general anxiety, flocked round the victims; and now the very victims themselves failed. So the generals, instead of leading out the army, called the men together. Xenophon, as was incumbent on him, spoke: "It is quite possible that the enemy are collected in a body, and we shall have to fight. If we were to leave our baggage in the strong place" (pointing overhead) "and sally forth prepared for battle, the victims might favour us." But the soldiers, on hearing this proposal, cried out, "No need to take us inside that place; better sacrifice with all speed." Now sheep there were none any longer. So they purchased oxen from under a wagon and sacrificed; and Xenophon begged Cleanor the Arcadian to superintend the sacrifice on his behalf, in case there might be some change now. But even so there was no improvement.

Now Neon was general in place of Cheirisophus, and seeing the men suffering so cruelly from want, he was willing to do them a good turn. So he got hold of some Heracleot or other who said he knew of villages close by from which they could get provisions, and proclaimed by herald: "If any one liked to come out and get provisions, be it known that he, Neon, would be their leader." So out came the men with spears, and wine skins and sacks and other vessels— two thousand strong in all. But when they had reached the villages and began to scatter for the purpose of foraging, Pharnabazus's cavalry were the first to fall upon them. They

*vocabulary*

**ἀγέομαι** go before, lead ~hegemony;  
 also ἡγέομαι  
**ἄλφριτον** barley meal  
**ἄμαξα** wagon  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**ἀποκτείνω** kill  
**ἀποφεύγω** avoid, escape, go free  
**ἀσφαλής** going ahead, standing firm  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βοῦς βοός** (m/f) cow, ox; shield  
 ~bovine  
**διάγω** ferry across  
**διώκω** chase  
**εἴσοδος** ἐσόδου (f) entrance  
**ἐξαπίνης** suddenly  
**ἐπιγίγνομαι** succeed, come after  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐρουμνός** fortified, impregnable  
**ἐτεός** true  
**ἔτης** (m, 1) fellow townsman?  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἥλιος** sun; also ἡέλιος  
**ἥμερος** domesticated  
**ἱερεῖον** ἱρηίου sacrificial animal  
**ἱερή** holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph; also  
**ἱερόν**, ἱερός, ἱρός  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet

**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**ἱκάνω** reach, arrive at  
**ἱππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
**ἱππιόχαρμης**  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon;  
 also καταλείπω  
**κινέω** set in motion, move, remove  
 ~kinetic  
**κραυγή** screaming, shouting  
**μείων** less, smaller  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**πεντακόσιοι** 500  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τρέχω** run, spin; also τροχάζω,  
 τροχάω, τρωχάω  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
**φύλαξ** (m) guard; sentry; also  
 φυλακός, φυλακτήρ  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard  
 ~phylactery  
**χωρίον** area; downwards  
**ώρα** season, time ~horoscope

γὰρ ἦσαν τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς, βουλόμενοι σὺν τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς, εἰ δύναιτο, ἀποκωλύσαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας μὴ ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὴν Φρυγίαν· οὗτοι οἱ ἱππεῖς ἀποκτείνουσι τῶν ἀνδρῶν οὐ μείων πεντακοσίου· οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος ἀνέφυγον. ἐκ τούτου ἀπαγγέλλει τις ταῦτα τῶν ἀποφευγόντων εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἐγγένητο τὰ ἱερά ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, λαβὼν βοῦν ὑπὸ ἀμάξης οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἄλλα ἱερεῖα, σφαγιασάμενος ἐβοήθει καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ μέχρι τριάκοντα ἐτῶν ἅπαντες. καὶ ἀναλαβόντες τοὺς λοιποὺς ἄνδρας εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀφικνοῦνται. καὶ ἤδη μὲν ἀμφὶ ἡλίου δυσμὰς ἦν καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες μάλ' ἀθύμως ἔχοντες ἐδειπνοποιοῦντο, καὶ ἑξαπίνης διὰ τῶν λασίων τῶν Βιθυνῶν τινες ἐπιγενόμενοι τοῖς προφύλαξι τοὺς μὲν κατέκαιον τοὺς δὲ ἐδίωξαν μέχρι εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ κραυγῆς γενομένης εἰς τὰ ὄπλα πάντες ἔδραμον οἱ Ἕλληνες· καὶ διώκει μὲν καὶ κινεῖν τὸ στρατόπεδον νυκτὸς οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς ἐδόκει εἶναι· δασέα γὰρ ἦν τὰ χωρία· ἐν δὲ τοῖς ὄπλοις ἐνυκτέρευον φυλαττόμενοι ἱκανοῖς φύλαξι.

## 6.5

Τὴν μὲν νύκτα οὕτω διήγαγον· ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ στρατηγοὶ εἰς τὸ ἐρυμνὸν χωρίον ἠγοῦντο· οἱ δὲ εἶποντο ἀναλαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τὰ σκεύη. πρὶν δὲ ἀρίστου ὥραν εἶναι ἀπετάφρευον ἢ ἡ εἴσοδος ἦν εἰς τὸ χωρίον, καὶ ἀπεσταύρωσαν ἅπαν, καταλιπόντες

τρεις πύλας. καὶ πλοῖον ἐξ Ἡρακλείας ἦκεν ἄλφιτα ἄγον καὶ

γὰρ ἦσαν τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς, βουλόμενοι σὺν τῷ <sup>barley</sup> <sup>meal</sup> εἰς <sup>enter, put on,</sup> <sup>strip off</sup>  
 ἀποκωλύσαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας μὴ ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὴν Φρυγίαν· οὗτοι οἱ  
 ἰππεῖς ἀποκτείνουσι τῶν ἀνδρῶν οὐ <sup>less,</sup> <sup>500</sup> οἱ δὲ <sup>smaller</sup>  
 λοιποὶ ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος ἀνέφυγον. ἐκ τούτου ἀπαγγέλλει τις ταῦτα  
 τῶν <sup>avoid,</sup> <sup>es-</sup> εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ οὐκ <sup>cape,</sup> <sup>go</sup>  
 ἐγεγένητο <sup>free</sup> τὰ ἱερὰ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, λαβὼν βοῦν ὑπὸ <sup>wagon</sup> οὐ  
 γὰρ ἦν ἄλλα <sup>sacrificial'</sup> γηιασάμενος ἐβόηθει καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ μέχρι  
<sup>animal</sup>  
 τριάκοντα <sup>ἔτερός?: true ; or ἔτης?: fellow</sup> τοὺς λοιποὺς ἀνδρας εἰς  
<sup>townsman? ; or ἔτος?: year</sup>  
 τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀφικνοῦνται. καὶ ἤδη μὲν ἀμφὶ ἡλίου δυσμὰς ἦν καὶ  
 οἱ Ἕλληνες μάλ' <sup>having low morale</sup> τνοποιοῦντο, καὶ <sup>suddenly</sup> ἰὰ  
 τῶν <sup>shaggy</sup> γῶν Βιθυνῶν τινες ἐπιγενόμενοι τοῖς προ<sup>guard;</sup> τοὺς μὲν  
<sup>sentry</sup>  
 κατέκαινον τοὺς δὲ ἐδίωξαν μέχρι εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ <sup>screaming,</sup>  
<sup>shouting</sup>  
 γενομένης εἰς τὰ ὄπλα πάντες ἔδραμον οἱ Ἕλληνες· καὶ διώκειν μὲν  
 καὶ κινεῖν τὸ στρατόπεδον νυκτὸς οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς ἐδόκει εἶναι· δασέα  
 γὰρ ἦν τὰ χωρία· ἐν δὲ τοῖς ὄπλοις ἐνυκτέρειον φυλαττόμενοι ἱκανοῖς  
 φύλαξι.

## 6.5

Τὴν μὲν νύκτα οὕτω <sup>ferry</sup> ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ στρατηγοὶ εἰς  
<sup>across</sup>  
 τὸ <sup>fortified, impreg-</sup> <sup>go before, lead</sup> ἔποντο ἀναλαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα  
<sup>nable</sup>  
 καὶ τὰ σκεύη. πρὶν δὲ ἀρίστου ὥραν εἶναι ἀπετάφρευον ἢ ἡ  
<sup>entrance</sup> εἰς τὸ χωρίον, καὶ ἀπεσταύρωσαν ἅπαν, καταλιπόντες



τρεις πύλας. καὶ πλοῖον ἐξ Ἡρακλείας ἦκεν ἄγον καὶ

had come to the aid of the Bithynians, wishing, if possible, in conjunction with the latter, to hinder the Hellenes from entering Phrygia. These troopers killed no less than five hundred of the men; the rest fled for the lives up into the hill country.

News of the catastrophe was presently brought into camp by one of those who had escaped, and Xenophon, seeing that the victims had not been favourable on that day, took a wagon bullock, in the absence of other sacrificial beasts, offered it up, and started for the rescue, he and the rest under thirty years of age to the last man. Thus they picked up the remnant of Neon's party and returned to camp. It was now about sunset; and the Hellenes in deep despondency were making their evening meal, when all of a sudden, through bush and brake, a party of Bithynians fell upon the pickets, cutting down some and chasing the rest into camp. In the midst of screams and shouts the Hellenes ran to their arms, one and all; yet to pursue or move the camp in the night seemed hardly safe, for the ground was thickly grown with bush; all they could do was to strengthen the outposts and keep watch under arms the livelong night.

## 6.5

And so they spent the night, but with day-dawn the generals led the way into the natural fastness, and the others picked up their arms and baggage and followed the lead. Before the breakfast-hour arrived, they had fenced off with a ditch the only side on which lay ingress into the place, and had palisaded off the whole, leaving only three gates. Anon a ship from Heraclea arrived bringing barleymeal, victim animals, and wine.

Xenophon was up betimes, and made the

*vocabulary*

**ἄθροός** grouped  
**αἰσχύνω** spoil, disgrace  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**αὐθις** back, again, moreover ~after  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**ἐναντίος** opposite, facing, meeting  
**ἐντός** within  
**ἐντυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also τυγχάνω  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**ἱερός** (2) holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph; also ἱερόν, ἱερόν, ἱρός  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also ἵππιοχάρμης  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon; also καταλείπω  
**κείρω** shave, sever, raze; devour, use up  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn  
**κηρύσσω** be a henchman, summon

people  
**κώμη** village  
**νεκρός** corpse ~necrotic  
**ὄδος** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**οἶνος** wine ~wine  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὄχλος** mob, crowd  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**περάω** cross; sell as a slave  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συμφέρω** bring together (φέρω)  
**τάφρος** (f) ditch, trench  
**τελέω** fulfill; pf pass: be feasible  
**τέλος** -υς (n, 3) end; military post  
**τεσσαράκοντα** forty; also τετταράκοντα  
**τρόπος** (m/n) turn; manner, kind, fashion  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle ~phalanx  
**φύλαξ** (m) guard; sentry; also φυλακός, φυλακτήρ

ιερεία καὶ οἶνον. πρῶ δ' ἀναστὰς Ξενοφῶν ἐθύετο ἐπ' ἐξόδῳ, καὶ γίγνεται τὰ ἱερὰ ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου ἱερείου. καὶ ἤδη τέλος ἐχόντων τῶν ἱερῶν ὀρᾶ αἰετὸν αἴσιον ὁ μάντις Ἀρηξίων Παρράσιος, καὶ ἠγγεῖσθαι κελεύει τὸν Ξενοφῶντα. καὶ διαβάντες τὴν τάφρον τὰ ὄπλα τίθενται, καὶ ἐκήρυξαν ἀριστήσαντας ἐξιέναι τοὺς στρατιώτας σὺν τοῖς ὄπλοις, τὸν δὲ ὄχλον καὶ τὰ ἀνδράποδα αὐτοῦ καταλιπεῖν. οἱ μὲν δὴ ἄλλοι πάντες ἐξῆσαν, Νέων δὲ οὐκ ἔδοκει γὰρ κάλλιστον εἶναι τοῦτον φύλακα καταλιπεῖν τῶν ἐπὶ στρατοπέδου. ἐπεὶ δ' οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀπέλειπον αὐτόν, αἰσχυρόμενοι μὴ ἐφέπεσθαι τῶν ἄλλων ἐξιόντων, κατέλιπον αὐτοῦ τοὺς ὑπὲρ πέντε καὶ τετταράκοντα ἔτη. καὶ οὗτοι μὲν ἔμμενον, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο. πρὶν δὲ πεντεκαίδεκα στάδια διεληλυθέναι ἐνέτυχον ἤδη νεκροῖς· καὶ τὴν οὐρὰν τοῦ κέρατος ποιησάμενοι κατὰ τοὺς πρώτους φανέντας νεκροὺς ἔθαπτον πάντας ὁπόσους ἐπελάμβανε τὸ κέρας. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοὺς πρώτους ἔθαιψαν, προαγαγόντες καὶ τὴν οὐρὰν αὖθις ποιησάμενοι κατὰ τοὺς πρώτους τῶν ἀτάφων ἔθαπτον τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον ὁπόσους ἐπελάμβανε ἡ στρατιὰ. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν ἦγον τὴν ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν, ἔνθα ἔκειτο ἀθρόοι, συννεγκόντες αὐτοὺς ἔθαιψαν.

Ἦδη δὲ πέρα μεσοῦσης τῆς ἡμέρας προάγοντες τὸ στράτευμα ἔξω τῶν κωμῶν ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅ τι τις ὀρώη ἐντὸς τῆς φάλαγγος, καὶ ἐξαίφνης ὀρώσι τοὺς πολεμίους ὑπερβάλλοντας κατὰ λόφους τινὰς ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου, τεταγμένους ἐπὶ φάλαγγος ἰππέας τε

|sacrificial` οἶνον. πρῶ δ' ἀναστάς Ξενοφῶν ἐθύετο ἐπ' ἐξόδῳ, καὶ  
 |animal  
 γίνεταί τὰ ἱερά ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου |sacrificial αἱ ἤδη τέλος ἐχόντων  
 |animal  
 τῶν ἱερῶν ὄρα |eagle |gentle? ` |seer Ἀρηξίων Παρράσιος, καὶ  
 |courte-  
 ἡγείσθαι κελεύει τὸν Ξενοφῶντα. καὶ |pass over, cross ` φρον τὰ ὄπλα  
 τίθενται, καὶ ἐκήρυξαν ἀριστήσαντας |ἔξειμι?: go forth ; or ἐξίγημι?: send forth,  
 |allow forth  
 τοῖς ὄπλοις, τὸν δὲ ὄχλον καὶ τὰ |slave αὐτοῦ καταλιπεῖν. οἱ  
 μὲν δὴ ἄλλοι πάντες |go forth Νέων δὲ οὐκ ἔδοκει γὰρ κάλλιστον  
 εἶναι τοῦτον |guard; καταλιπεῖν τῶν ἐπὶ στρατοπέδου. ἐπεὶ δ'  
 |sentry  
 οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται |leave αὐτόν, αἰσχυρόμενοι μὴ  
 |behind,  
 ἐφέπεσθαι τῶν ἄλλων |ἔξειμι?: go forth ; or ἐξίγημι?: ἵς ὑπὲρ πέντε  
 |send forth, allow forth  
 καὶ τετταράκοντα |ἔτης?: fellow townsman? ; or ἔτος?: year ; or τίθημι?: put;  
 |cause; endow; cause to be, make  
 πρὶν δὲ |15 |στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also masc) |meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen,  
 |happen to exist  
 τὴν |tail τοῦ κέρατος, οὐκ ἴσχυοντες ἰσχυροῦσθαι τοὺς πρώτους φανέντας  
 |standing upright,  
 νεκροὺς ἔθαιπον πάντας, ὡς ἴσχυοντες ἰσχυροῦσθαι τοὺς πρώτους φανέντας  
 |firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
 |as/how many/great τὸ κέρασ. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοὺς  
 πρώτους ἔθαιψαν, προαγαγόντες καὶ τὴν |tail αἰθῆς ποιησάμενοι  
 κατὰ τοὺς πρώτους τῶν ἀτάφων ἔθαιπον τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον |as/how many/great  
 ἐπελάμβανεν ἡ στρατιά. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν ἦκον τὴν ἐκ τῶν |village  
 ἐνθα ἔκειτο ἀθροοί, συνενεγκόντες αὐτοὺς ἔθαιψαν.

Ἦδη δὲ πέρα μεσοῦσης τῆς ἡμέρας προάγοντες τὸ στράτευμα ἔξω  
 τῶν |village ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅ τι τις ὀρήν ἐντὸς τῆς  
 φάλαγγος, καὶ |suddenly ῥῶσι τοὺς πολεμίους |topple; κατὰ  
 |outthrow  
 |neck, crest ` ὀν ἂν ἐναντίου, τεταγμένους ἐπὶ φάλαγγος ἵππέας τε  
 |helmet, hilltop

usual offering before starting on an expedition, and at the first victim the sacrifice was favourable. Just as the sacrifice ended, the seer, Arexion the Parrhasian, caught sight of an eagle, which boded well, and bade Xenophon lead on. So they crossed the trench and grounded arms. Then proclamation was made by herald for the soldiers to breakfast and start on an expedition under arms; the mob of sutlers and the captured slaves would be left in camp. Accordingly the mass of the troops set out. Neon alone remained; for it seemed best to leave that general and his men to guard the contents of the camp. But when the officers and soldiers had left them in the lurch, they were so ashamed to stop in camp while the rest marched out, that they too set out, leaving only those above five and forty years of age.

These then stayed, while the rest set out on the march. Before they had gone two miles, they stumbled upon dead bodies, and when they had brought up the rear of the column in a line with the first bodies to be seen, they began digging graves and burying all included in the column from end to end. After burying the first batch, they advanced, and again bringing the rear even with the first unburied bodies which appeared, they buried in the same way all which the line of troops included. Finally, reaching the road that led out of the villages where the bodies lay thick together, they collected them and laid them in a common grave.

It was now about midday, when pushing forward the troops up to the villages without entering them, they proceeded to seize provisions, laying hands on everything they could set eyes on under cover of their lines; when suddenly they caught sight of the enemy cresting certain hillocks in front of them, duly marshalled in line— a large body of cavalry and infantry. It was Spithridates and Rhathines, sent by Pharnabazus with

*vocabulary*

**ἀγνοέω** be ignorant of  
**αἰδῶ** sing; also αἰδιῶ  
**ἀνθῆω** sprout  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain  
**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail  
**ἀφαιρέω** take away  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**διακόσιοι** two hundred  
**εἶα** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also  
 ἐλαστρέω  
**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack  
**ἐναντίος** opposite, facing, meeting  
**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act,  
 uncommon) handle, take care of  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
 ἰθύς  
**εὐώνυμος** spindle tree  
**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ἦγω** to have come  
**θαυμάζω** marvel ~theater; also  
 ἀποθαυμάζω

**ἴσχω** restrain, hold back ~ischemia  
**καθοράω** look down  
**κάλως** halyard  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**μάντις -ος (m)** seer ~mantis  
**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow  
**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (πούς)  
**πεντεκαίδεκα** 15  
**πλῆθρον** 30 meters or its square  
**πού** no doubt; somewhere/how  
**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian  
**πρόεμι** to have been before, earlier  
**στάδιον (m/n)** 200 meters (pl also  
 masc)  
**στάδιος (adj)** standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters; also σταδίη  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**τάξις -εως (f)** arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φάλαγξ -γος (f)** rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
**φύλαξ (m)** guard; sentry; also  
 φυλακός, φυλακτήρ  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**ώθέω** push

πολλοὺς καὶ πεζοὺς· καὶ γὰρ Σπιθριδάτης καὶ Ῥαθίνης ἦγον παρὰ Φαρναβάζου ἔχοντες τὴν δύναμιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατείδον τοὺς Ἑλληνας οἱ πολέμοι, ἔστησαν ἀπέχοντες αὐτῶν ὅσον πεντεκαίδεκα σταδίου. ἐκ τούτου εὐθὺς ὁ Ἄρηξιὼν ὁ μάντις τῶν Ἑλλήνων σφαγιάζεται, καὶ ἐγένετο ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου καλὰ τὰ σφάλγια. ἔνθα δὴ Ξενοφῶν λέγει· Δοκεῖ μοι, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, ἐπιτάξασθαι τῇ φάλαγγι λόχους φύλακας ἵν' ἂν που δέῃ ὦσιν οἱ ἐπιβοηθήσοντες τῇ φάλαγγι καὶ οἱ πολέμοι τεταραγμένοι ἐμπίπτωσιν εἰς τεταγμένους καὶ ἀκεραίους. συνεδόκει ταῦτα πᾶσιν. Ὑμεῖς μὲν τοῖνυν, ἔφη, προηγεῖσθε τὴν πρὸς τοὺς ἐναντίους, ὡς μὴ ἐστήκωμεν, ἐπεὶ ὠφθήμεν καὶ εἶδομεν τοὺς πολεμίους· ἐγὼ δὲ ἤξω τοὺς τελευταίους λόχους καταχωρίσας ἥπερ ὑμῖν δοκεῖ. ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἤσυχτοι προῆγον, ὁ δὲ τρεῖς ἀφελὼν τὰς τελευταίας τάξεις ἀνὰ διακοσίους ἄνδρας τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν ἐπέτρεψεν ἐφέπεσθαι ἀπολιπόντας ὡς πλέθρον· Σαμόλας Ἀχαιὸς ταύτης ἦρχε τῆς τάξεως· τὴν δ' ἐπὶ τῷ μέσῳ ἐχώρισεν ἔπεσθαι· Πυρρίας Ἄρκας ταύτης ἦρχε· τὴν δὲ μίαν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ· Φρασίας Ἀθηναῖος ταύτη ἐφειστήκει. προϊόντες δέ, ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ ἠγούμενοι ἐπὶ νάπει μεγάλῳ καὶ δυσπόρῳ, ἔστησαν ἀγνοοῦντες εἰ διαβατέον εἴη τὸ νάπος. καὶ παρεγγυῶσι στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς παριέναι ἐπὶ τὸ ἠγούμενον. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν θαυμάσας ὅ τι τὸ ἴσχον εἴη τὴν πορείαν καὶ ταχὺ ἀκούων τὴν παρεγγύην, ἐλαύνει ἥ τάχιστα. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον, λέγει Σοφαίνετος πρεσβύτατος ὢν



πολλούς και πεζούς· και γάρ Σπιθριδάτης και Ξαθίνης ἦκον παρὰ  
Φαρναβάζου ἔχοντες τὴν δύναμιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατείδον τοὺς Ἕλληνας

οἱ πολέμοι, ἔστησαν ἀπέχοντες αὐτῶν ὅσον |15 |στάδιον?: 200  
ἐκ τούτου εὐθὺς ὁ Ἀρηξίων ὁ |seer τῶν Ἑλλήνων σφαγιάς; or. στάδιος?: (adj)  
ἐγένετο ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου καλὰ τὰ σφάγια. ἔνθα δὲ Ξενοφ |standing upright,  
|firm; (pl noun) 200  
|meters

Δοκεῖ μοι, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, ἐπιτάξασθαι τῇ φάλαγγι |ambush, band,  
|childbirth

|guard; ἴν' ἂν που δέη ὦσω οἱ ἐπιβοηθήσοντες τῇ φάλαγγι και οἱ  
|sentry  
πολέμοι τεταραγμένοι |fall into; attack ἑταγμένους και ἀκεραίους.

συνεδόκει ταῦτα πᾶσιν. Ὑμεῖς μὲν τοῖνον, ἔφη, προηγεῖσθε τὴν  
πρὸς τοὺς ἐναντίους, ὡς μὴ ἐστήκωμεν, ἐπεὶ ἄφθημεν και εἶδομεν

τοὺς πολεμίους· ἐγὼ δὲ ἤξω τοὺς τελευταίους |ambush, ἰωρίσας  
|band, child-  
ἠπερ ὑμῖν δοκεῖ. ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἤσυχαι |birthγον, ὁ δὲ τρεῖς

ἀφελῶν τὰς τελευταίας τάξεις ἀνὰ διακοσίους ἄνδρας τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ  
τὸ δεξιὸν ἐπέτρεψεν ἐφέπεσθαι |leave behind, ὡς |30 meters ὄρ. ἰόλας  
|fail |its square

Ἀχαιοὺς ταύτης ἠρχε τῆς τάξεως· τὴν δ' ἐπὶ τῷ μέσῳ ἐχώρισεν  
ἔπεσθαι· Πυρρίας Ἀρκὰς ταύτης ἠρχε· τὴν δὲ μίαν ἐπὶ τῷ |spindle tree

Φρασίας Ἀθηναίους ταύτη ἐφειστήκει. |to have been ἐὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ  
|before, earlier  
ἠγούμενοι ἐπὶ νάπει μεγάλῳ και δυσπόρῳ, ἔστησαν ἀγνωοῦντες εἰ  
διαβατέον εἴη τὸ νάπος. και παρεγγυῶσι στρατηγούς και λοχαγούς

|dangle; pass τὸ ἠγούμενον. και ὁ Ξενοφῶν θαυμάσας ὅ τι τὸ  
|over, allow  
ἰσχον εἴη τὴν πορείαν και ταχὺ ἀκούων τὴν παρεγγύην, ἐλαύνει  
ἠ τάχιστα. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον, λέγει Σοφαίνετος πρεσβύτατος ὦν

their force at their backs. As soon as the enemy caught sight of the Hellenes, they stood still, about two miles distant. Then Arexion the seer sacrificed, and at the first essay the victims were favourable. Whereupon Xenophon addressed the other generals: "I would advise, sirs, that we should detach one or more flying columns to support our main attack, so that in case of need at any point we may have reserves in readiness to assist our main body, and the enemy, in the confusion of battle, may find himself attacking the unbroken lines of troops not hitherto engaged." These views approved themselves to all. "Do you then," said he, "lead on the vanguard straight at the enemy. Do not let us stand parleying here, now that we have caught sight of him and he of us. I will detach the hindmost companies in the way we have decided upon and follow you." After that they quietly advanced, and he, withdrawing the rear-rank companies in three brigades consisting of a couple of hundred men apiece, commissioned the first on the right to follow the main body at the distance of a hundred feet. Samolas the Achaean was in command of this brigade. The duty of the second, under the command of Pyrrhias the Arcadian, was to follow in the centre. The last was posted on the left, with Phrasias, an Athenian, in command. As they advanced, the vanguard reached a large and difficult woody glen, and halted, not knowing whether the obstacle needed to be crossed or not. They passed down the word for the generals and officers to come forward to the front. Xenophon, wondering what it was that stopped the march, and presently hearing the above order passed along the ranks, rode up with all speed. As soon as they were met, Sophaenetus, as the eldest general, stated his opinion that the question, whether a gully of that kind ought to be crossed or not, was not worth discussing. Xenophon, with some

*vocabulary*

**αἴρω** raise, win ~aorta; also ἀείρω  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἄξιος** worthy ~axiom  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀποχωρέω** go away from, retreat  
**ἄρα** interrogative pcl  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also ἀφήνω  
**βουλή** will, plan ~volunteer; also βουλευός  
**δέος** -ος (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await ~doctrine  
**διδάσκω** teach ~didactic  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**δόξα** what one expects ~doxology  
**ἔοικα** seem, seem likely, beseem ~icon  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**ἥμισυς** half ~hemisphere  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θαυμάζω** marvel ~theater; also ἀποθαυμάζω

**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider ~theater; also θάομαι, θηέομαι  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also ἵππιοχάρμης  
**κίνδυνος** (ὑ) danger  
**μέντοι** however  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ὄπισθεν** behind, hereafter; also ὄπιθεν  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὄρνυμι** set upon, arouse ~hormone; also ὑπόρνυμι  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill ~hormone  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὀδός  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πω** not at all; until now, (not) yet  
**πῶς** how? why?  
**σπουδή** (f/m) 'pushing,' with difficulty, quickly, seriously; an effort (σπεύδω)  
**σώζω** save  
**τολμάω** dare (τλάω)  
**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's support, seize; speak up  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

τῶν στρατηγῶν ὅτι βουλῆς οὐκ ἄξιον εἶη εἰ διαβατέον ἐστὶ τοιοῦτον  
 νάπος. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν σπουδῇ ὑπολαβὼν ἔλεξεν· Ἄλλ' ἴστε μὲν  
 με, ὦ ἄνδρες, οὐδένα πω κίνδυνον προξενήσαντα ὑμῖν ἐθελούσιον·  
 οὐ γὰρ δόξης ὀρῶ δεομένους ὑμᾶς εἰς ἀνδρειότητα, ἀλλὰ σωτηρίας.  
 νῦν δὲ οὕτως ἔχει· ἀμαχεὶ μὲν ἐνθένδε οὐκ ἔστιν ἀπελθεῖν· ἦν γὰρ  
 μὴ ἡμεῖς ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, οὗτοι ἡμῖν ὀπότεν ἀπίωμεν  
 ἔψονται καὶ ἐπιπεσοῦνται. ὀράτε δὴ πότερον κρεῖττον ἵεναι ἐπὶ τοὺς  
 ἄνδρας προβαλλομένους τὰ ὄπλα ἢ μεταβαλλομένους ὀπισθεν ἡμῶν  
 ἐπιόντας τοὺς πολεμίους θεᾶσθαι. ἴστε μέντοι ὅτι τὸ μὲν ἀπιέναι  
 ἀπὸ πολεμίων οὐδενὶ καλῶ ἔοικε, τὸ δὲ ἐφέπεσθαι καὶ τοῖς κακίοσι  
 θάρρος ἐμποιεῖ. ἐγὼ γοῦν ἦδιον ἂν σὺν ἡμίσεσι ἐπιόην ἢ σὺν  
 διπλασίοις ἀποχωροίην. καὶ τούτους οἶδ' ὅτι ἐπιόντων μὲν ἡμῶν  
 οὐδ' ὑμεῖς ἐλπίζετε δέξεσθαι ἡμᾶς, ἀπιόντων δὲ πάντες ἐπιστάμεθα  
 ὅτι τολμήσουσιν ἐφέπεσθαι. τὸ δὲ διαβάντας ὀπισθεν νάπος χαλεπὸν  
 ποιήσασθαι μέλλοντας μάχεσθαι ἄρ' οὐχὶ καὶ ἀρπάσαι ἄξιον; τοῖς  
 μὲν γὰρ πολεμίους ἐγὼ βουλοίμην ἂν εὖπορα πάντα φαίνεσθαι ὥστε  
 ἀποχωρεῖν· ἡμᾶς δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ χωρίου δεῖ διδάσκεσθαι ὅτι οὐκ  
 ἔστι μὴ νικῶσι σωτηρία. θαυμάζω δ' ἔγωγε καὶ τὸ νάπος τοῦτο  
 εἶ τις μᾶλλον φοβερὸν νομίζει εἶναι τῶν ἄλλων ὧν διαπεπορεύμεθα  
 χωρίων. πῶς γὰρ διαβατὸν τὸ πεδίον, εἰ μὴ νικήσομεν τοὺς ἰππέας;  
 πῶς δὲ ἂ διελγλύθαμεν ὄρη, ἦν πελτασταὶ τοσοῖδε ἐφέπωνται; ἦν  
 δὲ δὴ καὶ σωθῶμεν ἐπὶ θάλατταν, πόσον τι νάπος ὁ Πόντος; ἔνθα

τῶν στρατηγῶν ὅτι βουλῆς οὐκ ἄξιον εἶη εἰ διαβατέον ἐστὶ τοιοῦτον  
νάπος. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν σπουδῇ ὑπολαβὼν ἔλεξεν· Ἄλλ' ἵστε μὲν  
με, ὦ ἄνδρες, οὐδένα πω κίνδυνον προξενήσαντα ὑμῖν ἐθελούσιον·  
οὐ γὰρ δόξης ὀρώ δεομένους ὑμᾶς εἰς ἀνδρειότητα, ἀλλὰ σωτηρίας.  
νῦν δὲ οὕτως ἔχει· ἀμαχεὶ μὲν **hence** οὐκ ἔστιν ἀπελθεῖν· ἦν γὰρ  
μὴ ἡμεῖς ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, οὗτοι ἡμῖν ὁπότεν ἀπίωμεν  
ἔψονται καὶ ἐπιπεσοῦνται. ὀρᾶτε δὴ **which, whichever** ἔττον ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς  
ἄνδρας **throw before** τὰ ὄπλα ἢ μεταβαλλομένους ὅπισθεν ἡμῶν  
ἐπιόντας τοὺς πολεμίους θεᾶσθαι. ἵστε μέντοι ὅτι τὸ μὲν ἀπιέναι  
ἀπὸ πολεμίων οὐδενὶ καλῶ ἔοικε, τὸ δὲ ἐφέπεσθαι καὶ τοῖς κακίοσι  
**bold-ness** **make inside of**, οὖν ἥδιον ἂν σὺν ἡμίσεσιν ἐπιόην ἢ σὺν  
διπλασίοις ἀποχωροίην. καὶ τούτους οἶδ' ὅτι ἐπιόντων μὲν ἡμῶν  
οὐδ' ὑμεῖς ἐλπίζετε δέξεσθαι ἡμᾶς, ἀπιόντων δὲ πάντες **ἀπιστέω?: disbelieve ;  
or ἐφίστημι?: stand  
ready, take a stand ; or  
ἐπίσταμαι?: know**  
ὅτι τολμήσουσιν ἐφέπεσθαι. τὸ δὲ **pass over, cross** ἢ νάπος  
ποιήσασθαι μέλλοντας μάχεσθαι ἄρ' οὐχὶ καὶ **carry off, seize** τοῖς  
μὲν γὰρ πολεμίους ἐγὼ βουλοίμην ἂν εὖπορα πάντα φαίνεσθαι ὥστε  
ἀποχωρεῖν· ἡμᾶς δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ χωρίου δεῖ διδάσκεσθαι ὅτι οὐκ  
ἔστι μὴ νικῶσι σωτηρία. θαυμάζω δ' ἔγωγε καὶ τὸ νάπος τοῦτο  
εἶ τις μᾶλλον φοβερὸν νομίζει εἶναι τῶν ἄλλων ὧν διαπεπορεύεθα  
χωρίων. πῶς γὰρ **crossable, fordable** ὁ πεδίον, εἰ μὴ νικήσομεν τοὺς ἰππέας;  
πῶς δὲ ἂ διελθύθαμεν ὄρη, ἦν **light troops** τοσοῖδε ἐφέπωνται; ἦν  
δὲ δὴ καὶ σωθῶμεν ἐπὶ θάλατταν, πόσον τι νάπος ὁ Πόντος; ἔνθα

ardour, retorted: “You know, sirs, I have not been in the habit hitherto of introducing you to danger which you might avoid. It is not your reputation for courage surely that is at stake, but your safe return home. But now the matter stands thus: It is impossible to retire from this point without a battle; if we do not advance against the enemy ourselves, he will follow us as soon as we have turned our backs and attack us. Consider, then; is it better to go and meet the foe with arms advanced, or with arms reversed to watch him as he assails us on our rear? You know this at any rate, that to retire before an enemy has nothing glorious about it, whereas attack engenders courage even in a coward. For my part, I would rather at any time attack with half my men than retreat with twice the number. As to these fellows, if we attack them, I am sure you do not really expect them to await us; though, if we retreat, we know for certain they will be emboldened to pursue us. Nay, if the result of crossing is to place a difficult gully behind us when we are on the point of engaging, surely that is an advantage worth seizing. At least, if it were left to me, I would choose that everything should appear smooth and passable to the enemy, which may invite retreat; but for ourselves we may bless the ground which teaches us that except in victory we have no deliverance. It astonishes me that any one should deem this particular gully a whit more terrible than any of the other barriers which we have successfully passed. How impassable was the plain, had we failed to conquer their cavalry! how insurmountable the mountains already traversed by us, with all their peltasts in hot pursuit at our heels! Nay, when we have safely reached the sea, the Pontus will present a somewhat formidable gully, when we have neither vessels to convey us away nor corn to keep us alive whilst we

*vocabulary*

**ἀείδω** sing; also ἀοιδιάω  
**ἀθρόος** grouped  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back  
**αὔριον** tomorrow  
**δειπνέω** eat, dine  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**διώκω** chase  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
**ἐκεῖ** there  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide, chief  
**ἡδέως** pleasantly  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θύρα** door ~door  
**κάθημαι** sit  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**κεῖμαι** lie  
**κρείσσω** more powerful  
**νικάω** win, defeat ~Nike  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**οἰωνός** vulture, eagle, omen ~avis

**ὅπου** where  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὀδός  
**πάντως** by all means  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πέραν** on the other side, across  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**πορεύω** carry  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
**σίτος** (m/n) grain, bread, food  
 ~parasite  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**τρέφω** nurture; solidify ~atrophy  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**ὤμος** shoulder plus upper arm  
 ~humerus

οὔτε πλοῖα ἔστι τὰ ἀπάξοντα οὔτε σίτος ᾧ θρεψόμεθα μένοντες, δεήσει δέ, ἦν θᾶπτον ἐκεῖ γενώμεθα, θᾶπτον πάλιν ἐξιέναι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. οὐκοῦν νῦν κρεῖττον ἡριστηκότας μάχεσθαι ἢ αὔριον ἀναρίστους. ἄνδρες, τά τε ἱερά ἡμῖν καλὰ οἷ τε οἰωνοὶ αἴσιοι τά τε σφάγια κάλλιστα· ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας. οὐ δεῖ ἔτι τούτους, ἐπεὶ ἡμᾶς πάντως εἶδον, ἡδέως δειπνήσαι οὐδ' ὅπου ἂν θέλωσι σκηνήσαι.

Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἠγγεῖσθαι ἐκέλευον, καὶ οὐδέεις ἀντέλεγε. καὶ ὃς ἠγγεῖτο, παραγγείλας διαβαίνειν ἢ ἕκαστος ἐτύγχανε τοῦ νάπουσ ὧν· θᾶπτον γὰρ ἀθρόον ἐδόκει ἂν οὕτω πέραν γενέσθαι τὸ στράτευμα ἢ εἰ κατὰ τὴν γέφυραν ἢ ἐπὶ τῷ νάπει ἦν ἐξεμηρύνοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ διέβησαν, παριῶν παρὰ τὴν φάλαγγα ἔλεγεν· Ἄνδρες, ἀναμμνήσκεσθε ὅσας δὴ μάχας σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ὁμόσε ἰόντες νενικήκατε καὶ οἶα πάσχοισιν οἱ πολεμίους φεύγοντες, καὶ τοῦτο ἐννοήσατε ὅτι ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἐσμέν. ἀλλ' ἔπεσθε ἠγεμόνι τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ καὶ ἀλλήλους παρακαλεῖτε ὀνομασί. ἡδύ τοι ἀνδρείόν τι καὶ καλὸν νῦν εἰπόντα καὶ ποιήσαντα μνήμην ἐν οἷς ἐθέλει παρέχειν ἑαυτοῦ. ταῦτα παρελάνων ἔλεγε καὶ ἅμα ὑφηγεῖτο ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, καὶ τοὺς πελταστὰς ἐκατέρωθεν ποιησάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους. παρήγγελτο δὲ τὰ μὲν δόρατα ἐπὶ τὸν δεξιὸν ὤμον ἔχειν, ἕως σημαῖνοι τῇ σάλπιγγι· ἔπειτα δὲ εἰς προσβολὴν καθέντας ἔπεσθαι βάδην καὶ μηδένα δρόμῳ διώκειν. ἐκ τούτου σύνθημα παρήει Ζεὺς σωτήρ, Ἡρακλῆς ἠγεμόν. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ὑπέμενον, νομίζοντες καλὸν ἔχειν



οὔτε πλοῖα ἔστι τὰ ἀπάζοντα οὔτε σίτος ᾧ θρεψόμεθα μένοντες,  
 δεῖσει δέ, ἦν θᾶπτον |ἔξιμι?: 'go forth ; or ἐκεῖ?:|ἔξιμι?:' `go forth ; or  
 ἐπιτήδεια. οὐκοῦν νῦν κρείττον ἤρισθηκότας μάχε|forth ἢ |tomorrow  
 ἀναρίστους. ἄνδρες, τά τε ἱερά ἡμῖν καλὰ οἵ τε |vulture|gentle? 'courteous?  
 σφάγια κάλλιστα· ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας. οὐδὲ |eagle,  
 ἡμᾶς |by all means |pleasantly ἦσαι οὐδ' ὅπου ἂν θέλωσι σκηνηῆσαι. |omen  
 Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἡγείσθαι ἐκέλευον, καὶ οὐδείς ἀντέλεγε. καὶ ὃς  
 |go before, lead. ἴλας |pass over, cross ἵτος ἐτύγχανε τοῦ νάπουσ ὧν·  
 θᾶπτον γὰρ ἀθρόον ἐδόκει ἂν οὕτω |across ,ινέσθαι τὸ στράτευμα ἢ εἰ  
 κατὰ τὴν |dam, dike; bridge ἴπει ἦν ἐξεμηρύνοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ |pass over, cross  
 παριῶν παρὰ τὴν φάλαγγα ἔλεγεν· Ἄνδρες, ἀναμμνήσκεσθε ὅσας δὴ  
 μάχας σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς |to the same spot ἦκατε καὶ οἶα πάσχουσιν οἱ  
 πολεμίους φεύγοντες, καὶ τοῦτο ἐννοήσατε ὅτι ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις τῆς  
 Ἑλλάδος ἐσμέν. ἀλλ' ἔπεσθε ἡγεμόνι τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ καὶ ἀλλήλους  
 παρακαλεῖτε ὀνομασί. ἡδύ τοι ἀνδρείόν τι καὶ καλὸν νῦν εἰπόντα  
 καὶ ποιήσαντα μνήμην ἐν οἷς ἐθέλει παρέχειν ἑαυτοῦ. ταῦτα  
 |pass, ἔλεγε καὶ ἅμα ὑφηγείτο ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, καὶ τοὺς  
 |outstrip  
 |light ἑκατέρωθεν ποιησάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους.  
 |troops παρήγγελο δὲ τὰ μὲν δόρατα ἐπὶ τὸν δεξιὸν ὤμον ἔχειν, ἕως σημαῖνοι  
 τῇ |trumpet ἔπειτα δὲ εἰς προσβολὴν καθέντας ἔπεσθαι |step by step  
 μηδένα |running ὠκειν. ἐκ τούτου σύνθημα παρήει Ζεὺς σωτήρ,  
 Ἡρακλῆς ἡγεμών. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ὑπέμενον, νομίζοντες καλὸν ἔχειν

stop. But we shall no sooner be there than we must be off again to get provisions. Surely it is better to fight to-day after a good breakfast than to-morrow on an empty stomach. Sirs, the offerings are favourable to us, the omens are propitious, the victims more than promising; let us attack the enemy! Now that they have had a good look at us, these fellows must not be allowed to enjoy their dinners or choose a camp at their own sweet will.”

After that the officers bade him lead on. None gainsaid, and he led the way. His orders were to cross the gully, where each man chanced to find himself. By this method, as it seemed to him, the troops would more quickly mass themselves on the far side than was possible, if they defiled along the bridge which spanned the gully. But once across he passed along the line and addressed the troops: “Sirs, call to mind what by help of the gods you have already done. Bethink you of the battles you have won at close quarters with the foe; of the fate which awaits those who flee before their foes. Forget not that we stand at the very doors of Hellas. Follow in the steps of Heracles, our guide, and cheer each the other onwards by name. Sweet were it surely by some brave and noble word or deed, spoken or done this day, to leave the memory of oneself in the hearts of those one loves.”

These words were spoken as he rode past, and simultaneously he began leading on the troops in battle line; and, placing the peltasts on either flank of the main body, they moved against the enemy. Along the line the order had sped “to keep their spears at rest on the right shoulder until the bugle signal; then lower them for the charge, slow march, and even pace, no one to quicken into a run.” Lastly, the watchword was passed, “Zeus the Saviour, Heracles our Guide.” The enemy waited their approach,

*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*  
**αἰδέομαι** respect, be ashamed  
**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease  
**ἀντίος** opposite, facing  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**διώκω** chase  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also *δύω*,  
*ἐξαποδύνω*  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
*ἰθύς*  
**εὐώνυμος** spindle tree  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart; also *θαρρέω*  
**θέω** run, run for  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
*ἵππιοχάρμης*  
**ἵππικός** of horses  
**καθίζω** to seat ~sit; also *ἴζω*, *καθιζάνω*  
**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop  
**μέχρι** as far as, until

**ἔμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**ὀρμάω** set in motion, rush at  
 ~hormone  
**ὀρμέω** be anchored  
**οὐκέτι** no more  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πλησιάζω** bring/be near  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**σάλπιγξ** -γος (f/m) trumpet  
**συνίστημι** unite; confront in battle  
**συντάσσω** gather, assemble  
**τρέπω** divert ~trophy  
**ὑπαντιάζω** take a stand against  
**ὑποδέχομαι** welcome, accept, suffer  
**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
**φθέγγομαι** make a sound, utter  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φόβος** fear, rout, panic ~phobia  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

τὸ χωρίον. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπλησίαζον, ἀλαλάξαντες οἱ Ἕλληνες πελτασταὶ ἔθρον ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους πρὶν τινα κελεύειν· οἱ δὲ πολέμοιοι ἀντίοι ὤρμησαν, οἳ θ' ἰππεῖς καὶ τὸ στίφος τῶν Βιθυνῶν· καὶ τρέπονται τοὺς πελταστάς. ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑπηντίαζεν ἡ φάλαγξ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ταχὺ πορευομένη καὶ ἅμα ἡ σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγγετο καὶ ἐπαιάνιζον καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα ἠγάλαζον καὶ ἅμα τὰ δόρατα καθίεσαν, ἐνταῦθα οὐκέτι ἐδέξαντο οἱ πολέμοιοι, ἀλλὰ ἔφευγον. καὶ Τιμασίων μὲν ἔχων τοὺς ἰππέας ἐφείπετο, καὶ ἀπεκτίννυσαν ὅσουςπερ ἐδύναντο ὡς ὀλίγοι ὄντες. τῶν δὲ πολεμίῶν τὸ μὲν εὐώνυμον εὐθὺς διεσπάρη, καθ' ὃ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἰππεῖς ἦσαν, τὸ δὲ δεξιὸν ἄτε οὐ σφόδρα διωκόμενον ἐπὶ λόφου συνέστη. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον οἱ Ἕλληνες ὑπομένοντας αὐτούς, ἐδόκει ῥῆστόν τε καὶ ἀκινδυνότατον εἶναι ἰέναι ἤδη ἐπ' αὐτούς. παιανίσαντες οὖν εὐθὺς ἐπέκειντο· οἱ δ' οὐχ ὑπέμειναν. καὶ ἐνταῦθα οἱ πελτασταὶ ἐδίωκον μέχρι τὸ δεξιὸν διεσπάρη· ἀπέθανον δὲ ὀλίγοι· τὸ γὰρ ἰππικὸν φόβον παρέιχε τὸ τῶν πολεμίῶν πολὺ ὄν. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον οἱ Ἕλληνες τό τε Φαρναβάζου ἰππικὸν ἔτι συνεστηκὸς καὶ τοὺς Βιθυνοὺς ἰππέας πρὸς τοῦτο συναθροισζομένους καὶ ἀπὸ λόφου τινὸς καταθεωμένους τὰ γιγνόμενα, ἀπειρήκεσαν μὲν, ὅμως δὲ ἐδόκει καὶ ἐπὶ τούτους ἰτέον εἶναι οὕτως ὅπως δύναντο, ὡς μὴ τεθαρρηκότες ἀναπαύσαιτο. συνταξάμενοι δὲ πορεύονται. ἐντεῦθεν οἱ πολέμοιοι ἰππεῖς φεύγουσι κατὰ τοῦ πρηνοῦς ὁμοίως ὥσπερ ὑπὸ ἰππέων διωκόμενοι· νάπος γὰρ αὐτοὺς ὑπεδέχετο, ὃ οὐκ ἤδεσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἀλλὰ προαπετράποντο

τὸ χωρίον. ἐπεὶ δ' **|bring/be near** ἄλαξαντες οἱ Ἕλληνες **|light troops**  
 ἔθεον ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους πρὶν τινα κελεύειν· οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ἀντίοι  
 ὄρμησαν, οἳ θ' ἵππεῖς καὶ τὸ στίφος τῶν Βιθυνῶν· καὶ τρέπονται  
 τοὺς **|light troops** ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ **|take a stand 'against,** τῶν ὀπλιτῶν  
 ταχὺ πορευομένη καὶ ἅμα ἢ **|trumpet |make a sound, utter** ἤζον καὶ  
 μετὰ ταῦτα ἠγάλαζον καὶ ἅμα τὰ δόρατα καθίεσαν, ἐνταῦθα οὐκέτι  
 ἐδέξαντο οἱ πολέμοι, ἀλλὰ ἔφευγον. καὶ Τιμασίων μὲν ἔχων τοὺς  
 ἵππεάς ἐφέιπετο, καὶ ἀπεκτίνυσαν ὅσουςπερ ἐδύναντο ὡς ὀλίγοι  
 ὄντες. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων τὸ μὲν **|spindle tree** ἕως διεσπάρη, καθ' ὃ  
 οἱ Ἕλληνες ἵππεῖς ἦσαν, τὸ δὲ δεξιὸν ἄτε οὐ σφόδρα διωκόμενον ἐπὶ  
**|neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop** εἰ δὲ εἶδον οἱ Ἕλληνες ὑπομένοντας αὐτούς, ἐδόκει  
 ῥᾶστόν τε καὶ ἀκινδυνότατον εἶναι ἵνα ἦδη ἐπ' αὐτούς. παιανίσαντες  
 οὖν εὐθὺς ἐπέκειντο· οἱ δ' οὐχ ὑπέμειναν. καὶ ἐνταῦθα οἱ **|light troops**  
 ἐδίωκον μέχρι τὸ δεξιὸν διεσπάρη· ἀπέθανον δὲ ὀλίγοι· τὸ γὰρ **|of horses**  
 φόβον παρέιχε τὸ τῶν πολεμίων πολὺ ὄν. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον οἱ Ἕλληνες  
 τό τε Φαρναβάζου **|of horses** ἰσχυροῦς καὶ τοὺς Βιθυνοὺς ἵππεάς  
 πρὸς τοῦτο συναθροισμένους καὶ ἀπὸ **|neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop**  
 τὰ γιγνόμενα, ἀπειρήκεσαν μὲν, ὅμως δὲ ἐδόκει καὶ ἐπὶ τούτους  
 ἰτέον εἶναι οὕτως ὅπως **|enter, put on, strip off** ἢ τεθαρρηκότες **|cause to cease**  
 συναττάμενοι δὴ πορεύονται. ἐντεῦθεν οἱ πολέμοι ἵππεῖς φεύγουσι  
 κατὰ τοῦ πρᾶνου ὁμοίως ὥσπερ ὑπὸ ἵππέων διωκόμενοι· νάπος γὰρ  
 αὐτούς **|welcome, accept, suffer** οὐκ ἤδεσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἀλλὰ προαπετράποντο

confident in the excellence of his position; but as they drew closer the Hellene light troops, with a loud alala! without waiting for the order, dashed against the foe. The latter, on their side, came forward eagerly to meet the charge, both the cavalry and the mass of the Bithynians; and these turned the peltasts. But when with counter-wave the phalanx of the heavy infantry rapidly advancing, faced them, and at the same time the bugle sounded, and the battle hymn rose from all lips, and after this a loud cheer rose, and at the same instant they couched their spears;— at this conjuncture the enemy no longer welcomed them, but fled. Timasion with his cavalry followed close, and, considering their scant numbers, they did great execution. It was the left wing of the enemy, in a line with which the Hellene cavalry were posted, that was so speedily scattered. But the right, which was not so hotly pursued, collected upon a knoll; and when the Hellenes saw them standing firm, it seemed the easiest and least dangerous course to go against them at once. Raising the battle hymn, they straightway fell upon them, but the others did not await their coming. Thereupon the peltasts gave chase until the right of the enemy was in its turn scattered, though with slight loss in killed; for the enemy's cavalry was numerous and threatening.

But when the Hellenes saw the cavalry of Pharnabazus still standing in compact order, and the Bithynian horsemen massing together as if to join it, and like spectators gazing down from a knoll at the occurrences below; though weary, they determined to attack the enemy as best they could, and not suffer him to recover breath with reviving courage. So they formed in compact line and advanced. Thereupon the hostile cavalry turned and fled down the steep as swiftly as if they had been pursued by cavalry. In fact they sought the shelter of a gully, the existence of which was unknown to the Hellenes. The latter accordingly turned aside

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγουρις  
**ἀδεής** fearless ~Deimos  
**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease  
**ἀνδράποδον** (m/n, 3) slave  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**διώκω** chase  
**ἔλαιον** oil, olive oil ~olive  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἑξήκοντα** sixty  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ἥλιος** sun; also ἥελιος  
**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**κατάγω** lead down, make landfall  
**κριθή** barley plant  
**λεῖος** smooth  
**λιμὴν** -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge  
 ~limnic  
**οἰκέω** inhabit

**οἶνος** wine ~wine  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὀπότε** when; also ὀπότε  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**ὀψέ** late, in evening  
**πάντοθεν** from all directions  
**παραπλέω** sail past  
**πλήν** except  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**πυρός** wheat  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
 masc)  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τριήρης** -ους (f, 3) trireme  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**χώρα** place  
**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
 ~heir  
**χωρίον** area; downwards  
**χωρίς** separately

διώκοντες· ὁψὲ γὰρ ἦν. ἐπανελθόντες δὲ ἔνθα ἡ πρώτη συμβολὴ ἐγένετο, στησάμενοι τρόπαιον ἀπῆσαν ἐπὶ θάλατταν περὶ ἡλίου δυσμᾶς· στάδιοι δ' ἦσαν ὡς ἐξήκοντα ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.

## 6.6

Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ μὲν πολέμοι εἶχον ἀμφὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν καὶ ἀπήγοντο καὶ τοὺς οἰκέτας καὶ τὰ χρήματα ὅποι ἐδύναντο προσωτάτω· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες προσέμενον μὲν Κλέανδρον καὶ τὰς τριήρεις καὶ τὰ πλοῖα ὡς ἦξοντα, ἐξιόντες δ' ἐκάστης ἡμέρας σὺν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις καὶ τοῖς ἀνδραπόδοις ἐφέροντο ἀδεῶς πυροὺς καὶ κριθάς, οἶνον, ὄσπρια, μελίνας, σῦκα· ἅπαντα γὰρ ἀγαθὰ εἶχεν ἡ χώρα πλὴν ἐλαίου. καὶ ὁπότε μὲν καταμένοι τὸ στράτευμα ἀναπαυόμενον, ἐξῆν ἐπὶ λείαν ἰέναι, καὶ ἐλάμβανον οἱ ἐξιόντες· ὁπότε δὲ ἐξίοι πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα, εἴ τις χωρὶς ἀπελθὼν λάβοι τι, δημόσιον ἔδοξεν εἶναι. ἤδη δὲ ἦν πάντων ἀφθονία· καὶ γὰρ ἀγοραὶ πάντοθεν ἀφικνοῦντο ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνίδων πόλεων καὶ οἱ παραπλέοντες ἄσμενοι κατῆγον, ἀκούοντες ὡς οἰκίζοιτο πόλις καὶ λιμὴν εἶη. ἔπεμπον δὲ καὶ οἱ πολέμοι ἤδη οἱ πλησίον ὄκουν πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, ἀκούοντες ὅτι οὗτος πολίξει τὸ χωρίον, ἐρωτῶντες ὅ τι δέοι ποιοῦντας φίλους εἶναι. ὁ δ' ἀπεδείκνυεν αὐτοὺς τοῖς στρατιώταις. κὰν τούτῳ Κλέανδρος ἀφικνεῖται δύο τριήρεις ἔχων, πλοῖον δ' οὐδέν. ἐτύγχανε δὲ τὸ στράτευμα ἔξω ὄν ὅτε ἀφίκετο καὶ ἐπὶ λείαν τινὲς οἰχόμενοι ἄλλοι εἰς τὸ ὄρος



διώκοντες· |late γὰρ ἦν. ἐπανελθόντες δὲ ἔνθα ἡ πρώτη συμβολή  
 ἐγένετο, στησάμενοι τρόπαιον ἀπήσαν ἐπὶ θάλατταν περὶ ἡλίου  
 δυσμάς· |στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also masc) ; or στάδιοϛ?: (adj) standing upright,  
 firm; (pl noun) 200 meters

## 6.6

Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ μὲν πολέμοι εἶχον ἀμφὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν καὶ ἀπήγοντο καὶ  
 τοὺς οἰκέτας καὶ τὰ χρήματα ὅποι ἐδύναντο προσωτάτω· οἱ δὲ  
 Ἕλληνες προσέμενον μὲν Κλέανδρον καὶ τὰς τριήρεις καὶ τὰ πλοῖα  
 ὡς ἤξοντα, |go forth δ' ἐκάστης ἡμέρας σὺν τοῖς |beast of burden  
 τοῖς |slave ἐφέροντο |fear- |wheat καὶ |barley οἶνον, ὄσπρια,  
 |less |plant  
 |millet |fig ἅπαντα γὰρ ἀγαθὰ εἶχεν ἡ χώρα πλὴν |oil καὶ  
 ὁπότε μὲν καταμένοι τὸ στράτευμα |cause to cease |go forth λείαν  
 ἰέναι, καὶ ἐλάμβανον οἱ |go forth ὁπότε δὲ |ἔξιμι?: go forth ; or ἐξίμι?: send  
 |forth, allow forth  
 εἷ τις χωρὶς ἀπελθὼν λάβοι τι, δημόσιον ἐδοξεν εἶναι. ἤδη δὲ  
 ἦν πάντων ἀφθονία· καὶ γὰρ ἀγοραὶ |from all directions οἱ ἐκ τῶν  
 Ἑλληνίδων πόλεων καὶ οἱ |sail past ἴσμενοι |lead down, ὄντες  
 |make land-  
 ὡς οἰκίζοιτο πόλις καὶ λιμὴν εἶη. ἐπεμπον δὲ |fall οἱ πολέμοι ἤδη  
 οἱ πλησίον ἄκουσιν πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, ἀκούοντες ὅτι οὗτος |build a wall, city  
 χωρίον, ἐρωτῶντες ὅ τι δέοι ποιῶντας φίλους εἶναι. ὁ δ' ἀπεδείκνυεν  
 αὐτοὺς τοῖς στρατιώταις. κὰν τούτῳ Κλέανδρος ἀφικνέεται δύο  
 τριήρεις ἔχων, πλοῖον δ' οὐδέν. ἐτύγχανε δὲ τὸ στράτευμα ἔξω  
 ὄν ὅτε ἀφίκετο καὶ ἐπὶ λείαν τινὲς οἰχόμενοι ἄλλοι εἰς τὸ ὄρος

too soon and gave up the chase, for it was too late. Returning to the point where the first encounter took place they erected a trophy, and went back to the sea about sunset. It was something like seven miles to camp.

## 6.6

After this the enemy confined themselves to their own concerns, and removed their households and property as far away as possible. The Hellenes, on their side, were still awaiting the arrival of Cleander with the ships of war and transports, which ought to be there soon. So each day they went out with the baggage animals and slaves and fearlessly brought in wheat and barley, wine and vegetables, millet and figs; since the district produced all good things, the olive alone excepted. When the army stayed in camp to rest, pillaging parties were allowed to go out, and those who went out appropriated the spoils; but when the whole army went out, if any one went off apart and seized anything, it was voted to be public property. Ere long there was an ample abundance of supplies of all sorts, for marketables arrived from Hellenic cities on all sides, and marts were established. Mariners coasting by, and hearing that a city was being founded and that there was a harbour, were glad to put in. Even the hostile tribes dwelling in the neighbourhood presently began to send envoys to Xenophon. It was he who was forming the place into a city, as they understood, and they would be glad to learn on what terms they might secure his friendship. He made a point of introducing these visitors to the soldiers.

Meanwhile Cleander arrived with two ships of war, but not a single transport. At the moment of his arrival, as it happened, the army had taken the field, and a separate party had gone off on a pillaging expedition into the hills and had captured a number of small cattle. In their apprehension of being deprived of them, these

*vocabulary*

ἄγνουμι break

αἰτίος guilty ~etiology; also αἵτιος

ἄλλως otherwise

ἀπελαύνω expel, exclude, ward off

ἀποδίδωμι repay

ἀπορία difficulty, bottleneck

ἀρπάζω carry off, seize ~harpoon

ἄρχων -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor

ἀφαιρέω take away

δείδω to fear ~Deimos

δέχομαι accept, receive, await  
~doctrine

διαβάλλω throw across; slander

ἐκδίδωμι hand over

ἔνειμι be in

ἐνταῦθα thither

ἐντεῦθεν thence

ἐξαιτέω demand

ἐπειδή after; because; also ἐπεί

ἐπιχειρέω lay hands on

ἔπομαι follow, support, chase ~sequel

ἔρδω do, perform ~ergonomics

εὐθύς straight; course ~justice; also ἰθύς

ἠώς ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene

κηρύσσω be a henchman, summon people

ὀκνέω shrink from, hesitate

πράγμα -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing, affair

πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds; also

πρόβασις

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army

στρατιώτης (m, 1) soldier, mercenary

συνάγω assemble; join in battle

τέλος -υς (n, 3) end; military post

τῷ so, therefore; in that case

φοβέω drive away ~phobia

φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics

εὐλήφεσαν πρόβατα πολλά· ὀκνοῦντες δὲ μὴ ἀφαιρεθεῖεν τῷ Δεξιππῷ λέγουσιν, ὡς ἀπέδρα τὴν πεντηκόντορον ἔχων ἐκ Τραπεζοῦντος, καὶ κελεύουσι διασώσαντα αὐτοῖς τὰ πρόβατα τὰ μὲν αὐτὸν λαβεῖν, τὰ δὲ σφίσι ἀποδοῦναι. εὐθὺς δ' ἐκείνος ἀπελαύνει τοὺς περιστώτας τῶν στρατιωτῶν καὶ λέγοντας ὅτι δημόσια εἶη, καὶ τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ λέγει ἐλθὼν ὅτι ἀρπάζειν ἐπιχειροῦσιν. ὁ δὲ κελεύει τὸν ἀρπάζοντα ἄγειν πρὸς αὐτόν. καὶ ὁ μὲν λαβὼν ἠγέτινα· περιτυχῶν δ' Ἀγασίας ἀφαιρεῖται· καὶ γὰρ ἦν αὐτῷ ὁ ἀγόμενος λοχίτης. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐπιχειροῦσι βάλλειν τὸν Δεξιππον, ἀνακαλοῦντες τὸν προδότην. ἔδρισαν δὲ καὶ τῶν τριηριτῶν πολλοὶ καὶ ἔφευγον εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, καὶ Κλέανδρος δ' ἔφευγε. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ κατεκάλυόν τε καὶ τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐδὲν εἶη πρᾶγμα, ἀλλὰ τὸ δόγμα αἴτιον εἶη τὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος ταῦτα γενέσθαι. ὁ δὲ Κλέανδρος ὑπὸ τοῦ Δεξιππου τε ἀνερθειζόμενος καὶ αὐτὸς ἀχθεσθεὶς ὅτι ἐφοβήθη, ἀποπλευσεῖσθαι ἔφη καὶ κηρύξει μνηδεμίαν πόλιν δέχεσθαι αὐτούς, ὡς πολεμίους. ἦρχον δὲ τότε πάντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι. ἐνταῦθα πονηρὸν ἐδόκει τὸ πρᾶγμα εἶναι τοῖς Ἑλλησιν, καὶ ἐδέοντο μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. ὁ δ' οὐκ ἂν ἄλλως ἔφη γενέσθαι, εἰ μὴ τις ἐκδώσει τὸν ἄρξαντα βάλλειν καὶ τὸν ἀφελόμενον. ἦν δὲ ὃν ἐξήτει Ἀγασίας διὰ τέλους φίλος τῷ Ξενοφῶντι· ἐξ οὗ καὶ διέβαλλεν αὐτὸν ὁ Δεξιππος. καὶ ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειδὴ ἀπορία ἦν, συνήγαγον τὸ στράτευμα οἱ ἄρχοντες· καὶ ἔνιοι

ειλήφεσαν πρόβατα πολλά· **|hesitate** δὲ μὴ ἀφαιρεθεῖεν τῷ Δεξιππῷ  
 λέγουσιν, ὡς ἀπέδρα τὴν πεντηκόντορον ἔχων ἐκ Τραπεζοῦντος, καὶ  
 κελεύουσι διασώσαντα αὐτοῖς τὰ πρόβατα τὰ μὲν αὐτὸν λαβεῖν, τὰ  
 δὲ σφίσιν ἀποδοῦναι. εὐθὺς δ' ἐκεῖνος **|expel, ex-`s περιεστῶτας**  
 τῶν στρατιωτῶν καὶ λέγοντας ὅτι δη**|clude, ward** **|off**ια εἶη, καὶ τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ  
 λέγει ἐλθὼν ὅτι **|carry off, seize** ροῦσιν. ὁ δὲ κελεύει τὸν **|carry off, seize**  
 ἄγειν πρὸς αὐτόν. καὶ ὁ μὲν λαβὼν ἠγάγετι τινὰ περιτυχῶν δ' Ἀγασίας  
 ἀφαιρεῖται· καὶ γὰρ ἦν αὐτῷ ὁ **|ἄγνουμι?: break ; or οἱ δ' ἄλλοι**  
 οἱ παρόντες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐπιχειροῦσι **|ἄγω?: lead, bring** βάλλειν τὸν Δέξιππον,  
 ἀνακαλοῦντες τὸν προδότην. ἔδεισαν δὲ καὶ τῶν τριηριτῶν πολλοὶ  
 καὶ ἔφευγον εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, καὶ Κλεάνδρος δ' ἔφευγε. Ξενοφῶν δὲ  
 καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ κατεκάλυόν τε καὶ τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ ἔλεγον ὅτι  
 οὐδὲν εἶη πρᾶγμα, ἀλλὰ τὸ δόγμα **|guilty** εἶη τὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος  
 ταῦτα γενέσθαι. ὁ δὲ Κλεάνδρος ὑπὸ τοῦ Δεξιππου τε ἀνερθεζόμενος  
 καὶ αὐτὸς ἀχθεθεὶς ὅτι ἐφοβήθη, ἀποπλευσεῖσθαι ἔφη καὶ κηρύξειν  
 μηδεμίαν πόλιν δέχεσθαι αὐτούς, ὡς πολεμίους. ἦρχον δὲ τότε  
 πάντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι. ἐνταῦθα πονηρὸν ἐδόκει  
 τὸ πρᾶγμα εἶναι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, καὶ ἐδέοντο μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. ὁ δ'  
 οὐκ ἂν ἄλλως ἔφη γενέσθαι, εἰ μὴ τις **|hand over`** ἄρξαντα βάλλειν  
 καὶ τὸν ἀφελόμενον. ἦν δὲ ὄν **|demand`** ασίας διὰ τέλους φίλος τῷ  
 Ξενοφῶντι· ἐξ οὗ καὶ **|throw** ὑτὸν ὁ Δέξιππος. καὶ ἐντεῦθεν  
**|across;**  
**|after; |difficulty, . πνη|slander** τὸ στράτευμα οἱ ἄρχοντες· καὶ **|be in**  
**|because|bottleneck**

same people spoke to Dexippus (this was the same man who had made off from Trapezus with the fifty-oared galley), and urged him to save their sheep for them. "Take some for yourself," said they, "and give the rest back to us." So, without more ado, he drove off the soldiers standing near, who kept repeating that the spoil was public property. Then off he went to Cleander. "Here is an attempt," said he, "at robbery." Cleander bade him to bring up the culprit to him. Dexippus seized on some one, and was for haling him to the Spartan governor. Just then Agasias came across him and rescued the man, who was a member of his company; and the rest of the soldiers present set to work to stone Dexippus, calling him "traitor." Things looked so ill that a number of the crew of the ships of war took fright and fled to the sea, and with the rest Cleander himself. Xenophon and the other generals tried to hold the men back, assuring Cleander that the affair signified nothing at all, and that the origin of it was a decree passed by the army. That was to blame, if anything. But Cleander, goaded by Dexippus, and personally annoyed at the fright which he had experienced, threatened to sail away and publish an interdict against them, forbidding any city to receive them, as being public enemies. For at this date the Lacedaemonians held sway over the whole Hellenic world.

Thereat the affair began to wear an ugly look, and the Hellenes begged and implored Cleander to reconsider his intention. He replied that he would be as good as his word, and that nothing should stop him, unless the man who set the example of stoning, with the other who rescued the prisoner, were given up to him. Now, one of the two whose persons were thus demanded— Agasias— had been a friend to Xenophon throughout; and that was just why Dexippus was all the more anxious to accuse him. In their perplexity the generals summoned a full meeting of the soldiers, and some speakers were disposed to make very light of Cleander and set him at naught. But Xenophon took a

*vocabulary*

**αἰτία** blame, credit, cause ~etiology  
**αἰτιάομαι** blame  
**αἷτιος** guilty ~etiology; also αἰτίος  
**αἰτίος** guilty ~etiology; also αἷτιος  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἄξιος** worthy ~axiom  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve  
**ἀπολύω** loose, free from  
**ἀποπλέω** sail away  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**βίαιος** by force  
**γῆ** earth; a country ~geography; also γῆ  
**γνώμη** sign, mind, will, decision  
**δέος** -ους (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
**δικάζω** judge  
**δίκη** justice

**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἐννυμι** clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest  
**ἔξαρχος** leader  
**ἐξάρχω** take the lead in  
**ἔσχατος** farthest, last  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ικανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**κρίνω** sift, separate, choose ~critic  
**ναύαρχος** admiral  
**ὄθεν** whence  
**ὄον** type of fruit  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πράγμα** -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing, affair  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπέχω** hold out one's hand; submit to; also ὑποσχεθῶ  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear  
**χρή** it is necessary, must, should  
 ~chresard

μὲν αὐτῶν παρ' ὀλίγον ἐποιοῦντο τὸν Κλέανδρον, τῷ δὲ Ξενοφῶντι οὐκ ἐδόκει φαῦλον εἶναι, ἀλλ' ἀναστὰς ἔλεξεν· ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ἐμοὶ δὲ οὐδὲν φαῦλον δοκεῖ εἶναι τὸ πρᾶγμα, εἰ ἡμῖν οὕτως ἔχων τὴν γνώμην Κλέανδρος ἄπεισιν ὥσπερ λέγει. εἰσὶ μὲν γὰρ ἐγγυὸς αἱ Ἑλληνίδες πόλεις· τῆς δὲ Ἑλλάδος Λακεδαιμόνιοι προεστήκασιν· ἱκανοὶ δὲ εἰσι καὶ εἰς ἕκαστος Λακεδαιμονίων ἐν ταῖς πόλεσιν ὅτι βούλονται διαπράττεσθαι. εἰ οὖν οὗτος πρῶτον μὲν ἡμᾶς Βυζαντίου ἀποκλείσει, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἄρμοσταῖς παραγγελεῖ εἰς τὰς πόλεις μὴ δέχεσθαι ὡς ἀπιστοῦντας Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ ἀνόμους ὄντας, ἔτι δὲ πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον τὸν ναύαρχον οὗτος ὁ λόγος περὶ ἡμῶν ἦξει, χαλεπὸν ἔσται καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀποπλεῖν· καὶ γὰρ ἐν τῇ γῇ ἄρχουσι Λακεδαιμόνιοι καὶ ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ τὸν νῦν χρόνον. οὐκ οὐκ δεῖ οὔτε ἐνὸς ἀνδρὸς ἕνεκα οὔτε δυοῖν ἡμᾶς τοὺς ἄλλους τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἀπέχεσθαι, ἀλλὰ πειστέον ὅτι ἂν κελεύωσι· καὶ γὰρ αἱ πόλεις ἡμῶν ὅθεν ἐσμὲν πείθονται αὐτοῖς. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν καὶ γὰρ ἀκούω Δέξιππον λέγειν πρὸς Κλέανδρον ὡς οὐκ ἂν ἐποίησεν Ἀγασίας ταῦτα, εἰ μὴ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν ἐκέλευσα, ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν ἀπολύω καὶ ὑμᾶς τῆς αἰτίας καὶ Ἀγασίαν, ἂν αὐτὸς Ἀγασίας φήσῃ ἐμέ τι τούτων αἴτιον εἶναι, καὶ καταδικάζω ἐμαυτοῦ, εἰ ἐγὼ πετροβολίας ἢ ἄλλου τινὸς βιαίου ἐξάρχω, τῆς ἐσχάτης δίκης ἄξιός εἶναι, καὶ ὑφέξω τὴν δίκην. φημὶ δὲ καὶ εἴ τινα ἄλλον αἰτιᾶται, χρῆναι ἐαυτὸν παρασχέιν Κλεάνδρω κρῖναι· οὕτω γὰρ ἂν ὑμεῖς ἀπολελυμένοι



μὲν αὐτῶν παρ' ὀλίγον ἐποιοῦντο τὸν Κλέανδρον, τῷ δὲ Ξενοφῶντι  
 οὐκ ἐδόκει φαῦλον εἶναι, ἀλλ' ἀναστὰς ἔλεξεν· |type of fruit , ατιῶται,  
 ἐμοὶ δὲ οὐδὲν φαῦλον δοκεῖ εἶναι τὸ πρᾶγμα, εἰ ἡμῖν οὕτως ἔχων  
 τὴν γνώμην Κλέανδρος ἄπεισιν ὥσπερ λέγει. εἰσὶ μὲν γὰρ ἐγγύς  
 αἱ Ἑλληνίδες πόλεις· τῆς δὲ Ἑλλάδος Λακεδαιμόνιοι προεστήκασιν·  
 ἱκανοὶ δὲ εἰσι καὶ εἰς ἕκαστος Λακεδαιμονίων ἐν ταῖς πόλεσιν ὅ τι  
 βούλονται διαπράττεσθαι. εἰ οὖν οὗτος πρῶτον μὲν ἡμᾶς Βυζαντίου  
 ἀποκλείσει, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀρμοσταῖς παραγγελεῖ εἰς τὰς  
 πόλεις μὴ δέχεσθαι ὡς |disbelieve Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ ἀνόμους  
 ὄντας, ἔτι δὲ πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον τὸν |admiral οὗτος ὁ λόγος περὶ  
 ἡμῶν ἦξει, χαλεπὸν ἔσται καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀποπλεῖν· καὶ γὰρ ἐν  
 τῇ |earth; a country δαιμόνιοι καὶ ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ τὸν νῦν χρόνον.  
 οὐκ οὐκ δεῖ οὔτε ἐνὸς ἀνδρὸς ἕνεκα οὔτε δυοῖν ἡμᾶς τοὺς ἄλλους  
 τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἀπέχεσθαι, ἀλλὰ πειστέον ὅ τι ἂν κελεύωσι· καὶ γὰρ  
 αἱ πόλεις ἡμῶν ὅθεν ἐσμέν πείθονται αὐτοῖς. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν καὶ  
 γὰρ ἀκούω Δέξιππον λέγειν πρὸς Κλέανδρον ὡς οὐκ ἂν ἐποίησεν  
 Ἀγασίας ταῦτα, εἰ μὴ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν ἐκέλευσα, ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν ἀπολύω  
 καὶ ὑμᾶς τῆς αἰτίας καὶ Ἀγασίαν, ἂν αὐτὸς Ἀγασίας φήσῃ ἐμέ τι  
 τούτων |guilty εἶναι, καὶ καταδικάζω ἐμαντοῦ, εἰ ἐγὼ πετροβολίας  
 ἢ ἄλλου τινὸς |by |ἕξαρχος?: , leader ; ὅς ἴσ' ἄξιος εἶναι, καὶ  
 |force |ἕξαρχω?: take the lead in  
 |hold out one's hand; submit to φημί δὲ καὶ εἰ τινα ἄλλον |blame , χρῆναι  
 ἐαυτὸν παρασχέιν Κλεάνδρω κρῖναι· οὕτω γὰρ ἂν ὑμεῖς ἀπολελυμένοι

more serious view of the matter; he rose and addressed the meeting thus: "Soldiers, I cannot say that I feel disposed to make light of this business, if Cleander be allowed to go away, as he threatens to do, in his present temper towards us. There are Hellenic cities close by; but then the Lacedaemonians are the lords of Hellas, and they can, any one of them, carry out whatever they like in the cities. If then the first thing this Lacedaemonian does is to close the gates of Byzantium, and next to pass an order to the other governors, city by city, not to receive us because we are a set of lawless ruffians disloyal to the Lacedaemonians; and if, further, this report of us should reach the ears of their admiral, Anaxibius, to stay or to sail away will alike be difficult. Remember, the Lacedaemonians at the present time are lords alike on land and on sea. For the sake then of a single man, or for two men's sake, it is not right that the rest of us should be debarred from Hellas; but whatever they enjoin we must obey. Do not the cities which gave us birth yield them obedience also? For my own part, inasmuch as Dexippus, I believe, keeps telling Cleander that Agasias would never have done this had not I, Xenophon, bidden him, I absolve you of all complicity, and Agasias too, if Agasias himself states that I am in any way a prime mover in this matter. If I have set the fashion of stone-throwing or any other sort of violence I condemn myself— I say that I deserve the extreme penalty, and I will submit to undergo it. I further say that if any one else is accused, that man is bound to surrender himself to Cleander for judgement, for by this means you will be absolved entirely from the accusation. But as the matter now stands, it is cruel that just when we were aspiring to win praise and honour throughout Hellas, we are destined to sink below the level of the rest of the world, banned from the Hellenic cities whose common name we boast."

After him Agasias got up, and said, "I swear to you, sirs,

*vocabulary*

**ἄγνυμι** break  
**ἄημι** blow  
**αἰτία** blame, credit, cause ~etiology  
**αἰτιάομαι** blame  
**αἷτιος** guilty ~etiology; also αἰτίος  
**ἄλλομαι** to jump ~sally  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἀντί** for, equivalent to  
**ἀξιόω** consider worthy, fitting  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve  
**ἀσφαλῆς** going ahead, standing firm  
**ἀφαιρέω** take away  
**ἀφίστημι** stand apart; exact payment  
**εἰσίημι** (mid) speed to  
**εἴτε** if, whenever  
**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἐπαινέω** concur, concur with  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**θεά** (2) goddess ~theology  
**κρίνω** sift, separate, choose ~critic  
**μέντοι** however

**μήτε** neither...nor...  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,  
 οἶομαι  
**ὄμνυμι** swear  
**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic; also ὁμοῖος  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also  
 πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω  
**πορεύω** carry  
**προδίδωμι** betray  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιά** army  
**συμπέμπω** send with  
**τεύχω** make, cause; pass: happen; pass  
 pf: be, become; pass pf ppl: well made  
**τιμή** honor, value  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**ὑπέειπον** say as preface, premise  
**φράζω** consider ~phrase  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω

τῆς αἰτίας εἶπτε. ὡς δὲ νῦν ἔχει, χαλεπὸν εἰ οἰόμενοι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι καὶ ἐπαίνου καὶ τιμῆς τεύξεσθαι ἀντὶ δὲ τούτων οὐδ' ὅμοιοι τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐσόμεθα, ἀλλ' εἰρξόμεθα ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνίδων πόλεων.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀναστὰς εἶπεν Ἀγασίας· Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ὁμνυμι θεοὺς καὶ θεὰς ἢ μὴν μῆτε με Ξενοφῶντα κελεύσαι ἀφελέσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα μῆτε ἄλλον ὑμῶν μηδένα· ἰδόντι δέ μοι ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν ἀγόμενον τῶν ἐμῶν λοχιτῶν ὑπὸ Δεξίππου, ὃν ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε ὑμᾶς προδόντα, δεινὸν ἔδοξεν εἶναι· καὶ ἀφειλόμην, ὁμολογῶ. καὶ ὑμεῖς μὲν μὴ ἐκδῶτέ με· ἐγὼ δὲ ἐμαντόν, ὥσπερ Ξενοφῶν λέγει, παρασχίσω κρίναντι Κλεάνδρῳ ὃ τι ἂν βούληται ποιῆσαι· τούτου ἔνεκα μῆτε πολεμεῖτε Λακεδαιμονίοις σῆζεσθέ τε ἀσφαλῶς ὅποι θέλει ἕκαστος. συμπέμψατε μέντοι μοι ὑμῶν αὐτῶν ἐλόμενοι πρὸς Κλεάνδρον οἴτινες, ἂν τι ἐγὼ παραλίπω, καὶ λέξουσιν ὑπὲρ ἐμοῦ καὶ πράξουσιν. ἐκ τούτου ἔδωκεν ἡ στρατιὰ οὕστινας βούλοιο προελόμενον ἰέναι. ὁ δὲ προείλετο τοὺς στρατηγούς. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐπορεύετο πρὸς Κλεάνδρον Ἀγασίας καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ὁ ἀφαιρεθεὶς ἀνὴρ ὑπὸ Ἀγασίου. καὶ ἔλεγον οἱ στρατηγοί· Ἐπεμψεν ἡμᾶς ἡ στρατιὰ πρὸς σέ, ὦ Κλεάνδρε, καὶ κελεύουσί σε, εἴτε πάντας αἰτιᾶ, κρίναντα σὲ αὐτὸν χρῆσθαι ὃ τι ἂν βούλη, εἴτε ἕνα τινὰ ἢ δύο καὶ πλείους αἰτιᾶ, τούτους ἀξιούσι παρασχεῖν σοι ἑαυτοὺς εἰς κρίσιν. εἴ τι οὖν ἡμῶν τινα αἰτιᾶ, πάρεσμέν σοι ἡμεῖς· εἴ τι δὲ ἄλλον τινά, φράσον· οὐδεὶς γὰρ ἀπέσται ὅστις ἂν ἡμῖν ἐθέλη πείθεσθαι. μετὰ ταῦτα παρελθὼν ὁ Ἀγασίας

τῆς αἰτίας εἶητε. ὡς δὲ νῦν ἔχει, χαλεπὸν εἰ οἰόμενοι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι καὶ ἐπαίνου καὶ τιμῆς τεύξεσθαι ἀντὶ δὲ τούτων οὐδ' ὅμοιοι τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐσόμεθα, ἀλλ' εἰρξόμεθα ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνίδων πόλεων.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀναστὰς εἶπεν Ἀγασίας· Ἐγὼ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ὄμνημι θεοὺς καὶ θεὰς ἢ μὴν μῆτε με Ξενοφῶντα κελεύσαι ἀφελέσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα μῆτε ἄλλον ὑμῶν μηδένα· ἰδόντι δέ μοι ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν |ἄγνουμι?: break ; or ἄγω?:  
|lead, bring  
ἐμῶν λοχιτῶν ὑπὸ Δεξιπίπου, ὃν ὑμεῖς |ἀπιστέω?: 'disbelieve' ; or ἐφίστημι?:  
|stand ready, take a stand ; or  
δευνὸν ἔδοξεν εἶναι· καὶ ἀφειλόμην, ὅμ|ἐπίσταμαι?: know μὲν μὴ  
|hand over ἐγὼ δὲ ἐμαυτόν, ὥσπερ Ξενοφῶν λέγει, παρασχήσω  
κρίναντι Κλεάνδρῳ ὅ τι ἂν βούληται ποιῆσαι· τούτου ἔνεκα μῆτε  
πολεμεῖτε Λακεδαιμονίοις σῆξέσθ' τε ἀσφαλῶς ὅποι θέλει ἕκαστος.  
|send with μέντοι μοι ὑμῶν αὐτῶν ἐλόμενοι πρὸς Κλεάνδρον  
οὔτινες, ἂν τι ἐγὼ παραλίπω, καὶ λέξουσιν ὑπὲρ ἐμοῦ καὶ πράξουσιν.  
ἐκ τούτου ἔδωκεν ἡ στρατιὰ οὐστῖνας βούλοιο προελόμενον ἰέναι.  
ὁ δὲ προείλετο τοὺς στρατηγούς. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐπορεύετο πρὸς  
Κλεάνδρον Ἀγασίας καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ὁ ἀφαιρεθεὶς ἀνὴρ ὑπὸ  
Ἀγασίου. καὶ ἔλεγον οἱ στρατηγοί· Ἐπεμψεν ἡμᾶς ἡ στρατιὰ πρὸς σέ,  
ὦ Κλέανδρε, καὶ κελεύουσί σε, εἴτε πάντας |blame :ρίναντα σὲ αὐτὸν  
χρῆσθαι ὅ τι ἂν βούλη, εἴτε ἓνα τινὰ ἢ δύο καὶ πλείους |blame οὗτους  
ἀξιούσι παρασχέιν σοι ἑαυτοὺς εἰς κρίσιν. εἴ τι οὖν ἡμῶν τινα |blame  
πάρεσμέν σοι ἡμεῖς· εἴ τι δὲ ἄλλον τινά, φράσον· οὐδεὶς γὰρ ἀπέσται  
ὅστις ἂν ἡμῖν ἐθέλῃ πείθεσθαι. μετὰ ταῦτα παρελθὼν ὁ Ἀγασίας

by the gods and goddesses, verily and indeed, neither Xenophon nor any one else among you bade me rescue the man. I saw an honest man— one of my own company— being taken up by Dexippus, the man who betrayed you, as you know full well. That I could not endure; I rescued him, I admit the fact. Do not you deliver me up. I will surrender myself, as Xenophon suggests, to Cleander to pass what verdict on me he thinks right. Do not, for the sake of such a matter, make foes of the Lacedaemonians; rather God grant that each of you may safely reach the goal of his desire. Only do you choose from among yourselves and send with me to Cleander those who, in case of any omission on my part, may by their words and acts supply what is lacking.” Thereupon the army granted him to choose for himself whom he would have go with him and to go; and he at once chose the generals. After this they all set off to Cleander— Agasias and the generals and the man who had been rescued by Agasias— and the generals spoke as follows: “The army has sent us to you, Cleander, and this is their bidding: ‘If you have fault to find with all, they say, you ought to pass sentence on all, and do with them what seems best; or if the charge is against one man or two, or possibly several, what they expect of these people is to surrender themselves to you for judgement. ’ Accordingly, if you lay anything to the charge of us generals, here we stand at your bar. Or do you impute the fault to some one not here? tell us whom. Short of flying in the face of our authority, there is no one who will absent himself.”

At this point Agasias stepped forward and said: “It was I, Cleander, who rescued the man before you yonder from Dexippus, when the latter was carrying him off, and it was I who gave the order to strike Dexippus. My plea is that I know the prisoner to be an honest man. As to Dexippus, I know that he was chosen by the army to command a fifty-oared

*vocabulary*

**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology  
**αἰτιάομαι** blame  
**ἄκέομαι** heal, fix  
**ἀξιόω** consider worthy, fitting  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀποκτείνω** kill  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι,  
 ὄλλυμι  
**ἀφαιρέω** take away  
**ἀφήμι** throw, release, use up; also  
 ἀφήκω  
**βία** strength, force  
**δειλός** wretched, poor, cowardly  
 ~Deimos; also δείλος  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**δικάζω** judge  
**δίκη** justice  
**διό** because of which  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon;  
 also καταλείπω  
**κρίνω** sift, separate, choose ~critic  
**μέντοι** however

**νομίζω** consider customary  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,  
 οἶομαι  
**οἷς** sheep ~ewe  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὀδός  
**παρίστημι** stand, be present  
**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (πούς)  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**ποταμός** river ~hippopotamus  
**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds; also  
 πρόβασις  
**προδίδωμι** betray  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble  
**σώζω** save  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χρή** it is necessary, must, should  
 ~chresard

εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ εἰμι, ὦ Κλέανδρε, ὁ ἀφελόμενος Δέξιππου ἄγοντος τοῦτον τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ παίειν κελεύσας Δέξιππον. τοῦτον μὲν γὰρ οἶδα ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν ὄντα, Δέξιππον δὲ οἶδα αἰρεθέντα ὑπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς ἄρχειν τῆς πεντηκοντόρου ἧς ἡγησάμεθα παρὰ Τραπεζουντίων ἐφ' ὧτε πλοῖα συλλέγειν ὡς σφζοίμεθα, καὶ ἀποδράντα Δέξιππον καὶ προδόντα τοὺς στρατιώτας μεθ' ὧν ἐσώθη. καὶ τοὺς τε Τραπεζουντίους ἀπεστερήκαμεν τὴν πεντηκόντορον καὶ κακοὶ δοκοῦμεν εἶναι διὰ τοῦτον, αὐτοὶ τε τὸ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἀπολώλαμεν. ἤκουε γάρ, ὥσπερ ἡμεῖς, ὡς ἄπορον εἶη πεζῇ ἀπιόντας τοὺς ποταμούς τε διαβῆναι καὶ σωθῆναι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. τοῦτον οὖν τοιοῦτον ὄντα ἀφειλόμην. εἰ δὲ σὺ ἦγες ἢ ἄλλος τις τῶν παρὰ σοῦ, καὶ μὴ τῶν παρ' ἡμῶν ἀποδράντων, εἶ ἴσθι ὅτι οὐδὲν ἂν τούτων ἐποίησα. νόμιζε δέ, ἂν ἐμὲ νῦν ἀποκτείνης, δι' ἄνδρα δειλὸν τε καὶ πονηρὸν ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν ἀποκτείνων.

Ἄκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος εἶπεν ὅτι Δέξιππον μὲν οὐκ ἐπαινοίη, εἰ ταῦτα πεποικῶς εἶη· οὐ μέντοι ἔφη νομίζειν οὐδ' εἰ παμπόνηρος ἦν Δέξιππος βία χρῆναι πάσχειν αὐτόν, ἀλλὰ κριθέντα, ὥσπερ καὶ ὑμεῖς νῦν ἀξιούτε, τῆς δίκης τυχεῖν. νῦν οὖν ἅπιτε καταλιπόντες τόνδε τὸν ἄνδρα· ὅταν δ' ἐγὼ κελεύσω, πάρεστε πρὸς τὴν κρίσιν. αἰτιῶμαι δὲ οὔτε τὴν στρατιὰν οὔτε ἄλλον οὐδένα ἔτι, ἐπεὶ οὗτος αὐτὸς ὁμολογεῖ ἀφελῆσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα. ὁ δὲ ἀφαιρεθεὶς εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ, ὦ Κλέανδρε, εἰ καὶ οἶε με ἀδικοῦντά τι ἄγεσθαι, οὔτε ἔπαιον οὐδένα οὔτε ἔβαλλον, ἀλλ' εἶπον ὅτι δημόσια εἶη τὰ πρόβατα· ἦν γὰρ τῶν



εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ εἶμι, ὦ Κλέανδρε, ὁ ἀφελόμενος Δέξιππου ἄγοντος τοῦτον τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ παίειν κελεύσας Δέξιππον. τοῦτον μὲν γὰρ οἶδα ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν ὄντα, Δέξιππον δὲ οἶδα αἰρεθέντα ὑπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς ἄρχειν τῆς πεντηκοντόρου ἧς ἡγησάμεθα παρὰ Τραπεζουντίων ἐφ' ᾧτε πλοῖα **|collect, assemble** ὡς σωζοίμεθα, καὶ ἀποδράντα Δέξιππον καὶ προδόντα τοὺς στρατιώτας μεθ' ὧν ἐσώθη. καὶ τοὺς τε Τραπεζουντίους ἀπεστερήκαμεν τὴν πεντηκόντορον καὶ κακοὶ δοκοῦμεν εἶναι διὰ τοῦτον, αὐτοὶ τε τὸ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἀπολώλαμεν. ἤκουε γάρ, ὥσπερ ἡμεῖς, ὡς ἄπορον εἶη περὶ ἀπιόντας τοὺς ποταμούς τε **|pass over, cross** ἠναί εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. τοῦτον οὖν τοιοῦτον ὄντα ἀφειλόμην. εἰ δὲ σὺ ἦγες ἢ ἄλλος τις τῶν παρὰ σοῦ, καὶ μὴ τῶν παρ' ἡμῶν ἀποδράντων, εὖ ἴσθι ὅτι οὐδὲν ἂν τούτων ἐποίησα. νόμιζε δέ, ἂν ἐμὲ νῦν ἀποκτείνης, δι' ἄνδρα δειλὸν τε καὶ πονηρὸν ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν ἀποκτείνων.

**|ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix ; or** Ἵρος εἶπεν ὅτι Δέξιππον μὲν οὐκ ἐπαινοίη, **|ἀκούω?: hear, listen** εἰ ταῦτα πεποιηκῶς εἶη· οὐ μέντοι ἔφη νομίζειν οὐδ' εἰ παμπόνηρος ἦν Δέξιππος βία χρῆναι πάσχειν αὐτόν, ἀλλὰ κριθέντα, ὥσπερ καὶ ὑμεῖς νῦν ἀξιοῦτε, τῆς δίκης τυχεῖν. νῦν οὖν ἄπιτε καταλιπόντες τόνδε τὸν ἄνδρα· ὅταν δ' ἐγὼ κελεύσω, πάρεστε πρὸς τὴν κρίσιν. **|blame** δὲ οὔτε τὴν στρατιὰν οὔτε ἄλλον οὐδένα ἔτι, ἐπεὶ οὗτος αὐτὸς ὁμολογεῖ ἀφελέσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα. ὁ δὲ ἀφαιρεθεὶς εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ, ὦ Κλέανδρε, εἰ καὶ **|ῥίς?: sheep ; or** ἴαγεσθαι, οὔτε ἔπαιον οὐδένα οὔτε ἔβαλλον, ἀλλ' εἶπον ὅτι δημόσια εἶη τὰ πρόβατα· ἦν γὰρ τῶν

galley, which we had obtained by request from the men of Trapezus for the express purpose of collecting vessels to carry us safely home. But this same Dexippus betrayed his fellow-soldiers, with whom he had been delivered from so many perils, and made off into hiding like a runaway slave, whereby we have robbed the Trapezuntines of their frigate, and must needs appear as knaves in their eyes for this man's sake. As to ourselves, as far as he could, he has ruined us; for, like the rest of us, he had heard how all but impossible it was for us to retreat by foot across the rivers and to reach Hellas in safety. That is the stamp of man whom I robbed of his prey. Now, had it been you yourself who carried him off, or one of your emissaries, or indeed any one short of a runaway from ourselves, be sure that I should have acted far otherwise. Be assured that if you put me to death at this time you are sacrificing a good, honest man for the sake of a coward and a scamp."

When he had listened to these remarks, Cleander replied that if such had been the conduct of Dexippus, he could not congratulate him. "But still," he added, turning to the generals, "were Dexippus ever so great a scamp he ought not to suffer violence; but in the language of your own demand he was entitled to a fair trial, and so to obtain his deserts. What I have to say at present therefore is: leave your friend here and go your way, and when I give the order be present at the trial. I have no further charge against the army or any one, since the prisoner himself admits that he rescued the man." Then the man who had been rescued said: "In behalf of myself, Cleander, if possibly you think that I was being taken up for some misdeed, it is not so; I neither struck nor shot; I merely said, 'The sheep are public property; ' for it was a resolution of the soldiers that whenever the army went out as a body any booty privately obtained was to be public property. That was all I said, and thereupon yonder fellow seized me and

*vocabulary*

**ἄημι** blow  
**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology  
**ἀκέομαι** heal, fix  
**ἀντί** for, equivalent to  
**ἄξιος** worthy ~axiom  
**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
**ἀφήκω**  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**ἔαρ** -ος (n) spring (season)  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὑ) display, exhibit  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics  
**ἴδιος** private, personal  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**μέρος** -υς (n, 3) part

**ναί** yea

**νέμω** to allot, to pasture (νομός)  
**ὁπότε** when; also ὀπότε  
**πείρω** pierce, run through ~pierce  
**ρήτρα** agreement, bargain  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συμβουλεύω** give advice; (mid) consult  
**συνάγω** assemble; join in battle  
**τρόπος** (m/n) turn; manner, kind, fashion  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also  
**ἐντυγχάνω**  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do; also  
**ὑπίσχομαι**  
**φθέγγομαι** make a sound, utter  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**ώθέω** push

στρατιωτῶν δόγμα, εἴ τις ὅποτε ἡ στρατιὰ ἐξίοι ἰδία λήζοιτο, δημόσια εἶναι τὰ ληφθέντα. ταῦτα εἶπον· ἐκ τούτου με λαβὼν οὗτος ἦγεν, ἵνα μὴ φθέγγοιτο μηδεῖς, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς λαβὼν τὸ μέρος διασώσειε τοῖς λησταῖς παρὰ τὴν ῥήτρην τὰ χρήματα. πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος εἶπεν· Ἐπεὶ τοίνυν[...] εἶ, κατὰμενε, ἵνα καὶ περὶ σοῦ βουλευσώμεθα.

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Κλέανδρον ἠρίστων· τὴν δὲ στρατιὰν συνήγαγε Ξενοφῶν καὶ συνεβούλευε πέμψαι ἄνδρας πρὸς Κλέανδρον παρατηρησόμενους περὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν. ἐκ τούτου ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς πέμψαντας στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς καὶ Δρακόντιον τὸν Σπαρτιάτην καὶ τῶν ἄλλων οἱ ἐδόκουν ἐπιτήδειοι εἶναι δεῖσθαι Κλεάνδρου κατὰ πάντα τρόπον ἀφείναι τὸν ἄνδρα. ἐλθὼν οὖν ὁ Ξενοφῶν λέγει· Ἐχεις μὲν, ὦ Κλέανδρε, τοὺς ἄνδρας, καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ σοι ὑφέιτο ὃ τι ἐβούλου ποιῆσαι καὶ περὶ τούτων καὶ περὶ αὐτῶν ἀπάντων. νῦν δέ σε αἰτοῦνται καὶ δέονται δοῦναι σφίσι τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ μὴ κατακαίνειν· πολλὰ γὰρ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν χρόνῳ περὶ τὴν στρατιὰν ἐμοχθησάτην. ταῦτα δέ σου τυχόντες ὑπισχνουνταί σοι ἀντὶ τούτων, ἣν βούλη ἡγείσθαι αὐτῶν καὶ ἣν οἱ θεοὶ ἴλεω ᾧσιν, ἐπιδείξειν σοι καὶ ὡς κόσμοί εἰσι καὶ ὡς ἱκανοὶ τῷ ἄρχοντι πειθόμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς μὴ φοβείσθαι. δέονται δέ σοι καὶ τοῦτο, παραγενόμενον καὶ ἄρξαντα ἑαυτῶν πείραν λαβεῖν καὶ Δεξίππου καὶ σφῶν τῶν ἄλλων οἶος ἕκαστός ἐστι, καὶ τὴν ἀξίαν ἐκάστοις νεῖμαι. ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος· Ἄλλὰ ναὶ τὸ σιῶ,

στρατιωτῶν δόγμα, εἴ τις ὅποτε ἡ στρατιὰ ἐξείμι?; ḡo' forth ;,or ἐξίημι?; send  
 εἶναι τὰ ληφθέντα. ταῦτα εἶπον· ἐκ τούτου με λαβὼν οὗτος ἦγεν,  
 ἵνα μὴ |make a sound, utter` `` αὐτὸς λαβὼν τὸ μέρος διασώσειε τοῖς  
 λησταῖς παρὰ τὴν |agreement, ,ρήματα. πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος  
 εἶπεν· Ἐπεὶ τοῖνυν[...] εἶ, κατὰμενε, ἵνα καὶ περὶ σοῦ βουλευσώμεθα.  
 Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Κλέανδρον ἡρίστων· τὴν δὲ στρατιὰν  
 συνήγαγε Ξενοφῶν καὶ |give advice; ἴμψαι ἄνδρας πρὸς Κλέανδρον  
 (mid) consult  
 παραιτησομένους περὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν. ἐκ τούτου ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς  
 πέμψαντας στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς καὶ Δρακόντιον τὸν  
 Σπαρτιάτην καὶ τῶν ἄλλων οἱ ἐδόκουν ἐπιτήδευοι εἶναι δεῖσθαι  
 Κλεάνδρου κατὰ πάντα τρόπον ἀφεῖναι τὸ ἄνδρε. ἐλθὼν οὖν ὁ  
 Ξενοφῶν λέγει· Ἔχεις μὲν, ὦ Κλέανδρε, τοὺς ἄνδρας, καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ  
 σοι ὑφέιτο ὅ τι ἐβούλου ποιῆσαι καὶ περὶ τούτων καὶ περὶ αὐτῶν  
 ἀπάντων. νῦν δέ σε αἰτοῦνται καὶ δέονται δοῦναι σφίσι τὸ ἄνδρε  
 καὶ μὴ κατακαίνειν· πολλὰ γὰρ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν χρόνῳ περὶ τὴν  
 στρατιὰν ἐμοχθησάτην. ταῦτα δέ σου τυχόντες |promise, σοι  
 ἀντὶ τούτων, ἦν βούλη ἡγεῖσθαι αὐτῶν καὶ ἦν οἱ θεοὶ ἴλεω ὦσιν,  
 ἐπιδείξεν σοι καὶ ὡς κόσμοί εἰσι καὶ ὡς ἱκανοὶ τῷ ἄρχοντι  
 πειθόμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς μὴ φοβείσθαι. δέονται δέ  
 σου καὶ τοῦτο, παραγενόμενον καὶ ἄρξαντα ἑαυτῶν πείραν λαβεῖν  
 καὶ Δεξιππου καὶ σφῶν τῶν ἄλλων οἶος ἕκαστός ἐστι, καὶ τὴν ἀξίαν  
 ἐκάστοις νεύμαι. |ἀχέομαι?; heal, fix ; ἴor ἴρος· Ἄλλὰ ναὶ τὸ σιώ,  
 ἀκούω?; hear, listen

began dragging me off. He wanted to stop our mouths, so that he might have a share of the things himself, and keep the rest for these buccaneers, contrary to the ordinance.” In answer to that Cleander said: “Very well, if that is your disposition you can stay behind too, and we will take your case into consideration also.”

Thereupon Cleander and his party proceeded to breakfast; but Xenophon collected the army in assembly, and advised their sending a deputation to Cleander to intercede in behalf of the men. Accordingly it was resolved to send some generals and officers with Dracontius the Spartan, and of the rest those who seemed best fitted to go. The deputation was to request Cleander by all means to release the two men. Accordingly Xenophon came and addressed him thus: “Cleander, you have the men; the army has bowed to you and assented to do what you wished with respect to these two members of their body and themselves in general. But now they beg and pray you to give up these two men, and not to put them to death. Many a good service have these two wrought for our army in past days. Let them but obtain this from you, and in return the army promises that, if you will put yourself at their head and the gracious gods approve, they will show you how orderly they are, how apt to obey their general, and, with heaven’s help, to face their foes unflinchingly. They make this further request to you, that you will present yourself and take command of them and make trial of them. ‘Test us ourselves,’ they say, ‘and test Dexippus, what each of us is like, and afterwards assign to each his due.’” When Cleander heard these things, he answered: “Nay, by the twin gods, I will answer you quickly enough. Here I make you a present of the two men, and I will as you say present myself, and then, if the gods vouchsafe, I will put myself at your head and lead you into Hellas. Very different is your language from the tale I used to hear concerning you from certain people, that you wanted to withdraw

*vocabulary*

**ἀντίος** opposite, facing  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀποδίδωμι** repay  
**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
**ἀποπλέω** sail away  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**ἀφίστημι** stand apart; exact payment  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**διατίθημι** arrange; set out goods for sale  
**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω, ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐκεῖ** there  
**ἐκεῖσε** thither  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἐννυμι** clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest  
**ἐντυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also τυγχάνω  
**ἐξάγω** lead out  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἐξηγέομαι** lead forth to battle  
**ἔοικα** seem, seem likely, beseem ~icon  
**ἐπαινέω** concur, concur with  
**ἐπειδάν** when

**ἑπτά** seven  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide, chief  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**κεῖμαι** lie  
**μέντοι** however  
**ξένιος** of hospitality  
**ὄδος** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**ὀρθός** upright ~orthogonal  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds; also πρόβασις  
**σίτος** (m/n) grain, bread, food  
 ~parasite  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συγκαλέω** call together  
**τελέθω** turn out, come around  
**τρεις** three ~three  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑποστρέφω** turn around, go back  
**φιλία** friendship  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

ἔφη, ταχύ τοι ὑμῖν ἀποκρινοῦμαι. καὶ τῷ τε ἄνδρῳ ὑμῖν δίδωμι καὶ αὐτὸς παρέσομαι· καὶ ἦν οἱ θεοὶ παραδιδῶσι, ἐξηγήσομαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. καὶ πολὺ οἱ λόγοι οὗτοι ἀντίοι εἰσὶν ἢ οὓς ἐγὼ περὶ ὑμῶν ἐνίων ἤκουον ὡς τὸ στράτευμα ἀφίστατε ἀπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων.

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἐπαινοῦντες ἀπῆλθον, ἔχοντες τὸν ἄνδρα· Κλέανδρος δὲ ἐθύετο ἐπὶ τῇ πορείᾳ καὶ ξυνήν Ξενοφῶντι φιλικῶς καὶ ξενίαν ξυνεβάλλοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἑώρα αὐτοὺς τὸ παραγγελλόμενον εὐτάκτως ποιοῦντας, καὶ μᾶλλον ἔτι ἐπεθύμει ἡγεμῶν γενέσθαι αὐτῶν. ἐπεὶ μέντοι θυομένῳ αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τρεῖς ἡμέρας οὐκ ἐγίνετο τὰ ἱερά, συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἶπεν· Ἐμοὶ μὲν οὐ τελέθει τὰ ἱερά ἐξάγειν· ὑμεῖς μέντοι μὴ ἀθυμεῖτε τούτου ἕνεκα· ὑμῖν γάρ, ὡς ἔοικε, δέδοται ἐκκομίσει τοὺς ἄνδρας· ἀλλὰ πορευέσθε. ἡμεῖς δὲ ὑμᾶς, ἐπειδὴν ἐκεῖσε ἤκητε, δεξόμεθα ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα κάλλιστα.

Ἐκ τούτου ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις δοῦναι αὐτῷ τὰ δημόσια πρόβατα· ὁ δὲ δεξάμενος πάλιν αὐτοῖς ἀπέδωκε. καὶ οὗτος μὲν ἀπέπλει. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται διαθέμενοι τὸν σῖτον ὃν ἦσαν συγκεκομισμένοι καὶ τᾶλλα ἃ εὐλήφεσαν ἐξεπορεύοντο διὰ τῶν Βιθυνῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδενὶ ἐνέτυχον πορευόμενοι τὴν ὀρθὴν ὁδόν, ὥστε ἔχοντές τι εἰς τὴν φιλίαν ἐλθεῖν, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς τοῦμπαλι ὑποστρέψαντας ἐλθεῖν μίαν ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα. τοῦτο δὲ ποιήσαντες ἔλαβον πολλὰ καὶ ἀνδράποδα καὶ πρόβατα· καὶ ἀφίκοντο ἐκταῖοι εἰς Χρυσόπολιν τῆς Καληδονίας, καὶ ἐκεῖ ἔμειναν ἡμέρας ἑπτὰ λαφυροπωλοῦντες.



ἔφη, ταχύ τοι ὑμῖν ἀποκρινοῦμαι. καὶ τῷ τε ἀνδρὲ ὑμῖν **δίδομι?: should; bind; need, fail ; or δίδωμι?: give; permit**  
 αὐτὸς παρέσομαι· καὶ ἦν οἱ θεοὶ παραδιδῶσιν. **lead forth**

Ἑλλάδα. καὶ πολὺ οἱ λόγοι οὗτοι ἀντίοι εἰσὶν ἢ οὓς ἐγὼ περὶ ὑμῶν ἐνίων ἤκουον ὡς τὸ στράτευμα ἀφίστατε ἀπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων.

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἐπαινοῦντες ἀπῆλθον, ἔχοντες τὸ ἀνδρὲ· Κλέανδρος δὲ ἐθύετο ἐπὶ τῇ πορείᾳ καὶ ξυνηῆν Ξενοφῶντι φιλικῶς καὶ **ξενία?: hospitality; or ξένιος?: of hospitality**  
 ξυνεβάλλοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ εἴωρα αὐτοὺς τὸ παραγγελῆ

εὐτάκτως ποιοῦντας, καὶ μᾶλλον ἔτι ἐπεθύμει ἡγεμῶν γενέσθαι αὐτῶν. ἐπεὶ μέντοι θυομένων αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τρεῖς ἡμέρας οὐκ ἐγίνετο τὰ ἱερά, **call together** οὓς στρατηγούς εἶπεν· Ἐμοὶ μὲν οὐ **turn out**  
 τὰ ἱερά ἐξάγειν· ὑμεῖς μέντοι μὴ ἀθυμεῖτε τούτου ἕνεκα· ὑμῖν γάρ, ὡς ἔοικε, δέδοται **remove;** οὓς ἀνδρας· ἀλλὰ πορεύεσθε. ἡμεῖς δὲ **bury**  
 ὑμᾶς. **when** **this corpse** τε, δεξόμεθα ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα κάλλιστα.

Ἐκ τούτου ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις δοῦναι αὐτῷ τὰ δημόσια πρόβατα· ὁ δὲ δεξάμενος πάλιν αὐτοῖς ἀπέδωκε. καὶ οὗτος μὲν ἀπέπλει. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται **arrange; set `out** ἵππων ὃν ἦσαν συγκεκομισμένοι **goods for sale**  
 καὶ τᾶλλα ἃ εἰλήφεσαν ἐξεπορεύοντο διὰ τῶν Βιθυνῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδενὶ **meet, find, obtain; succeed,** ἠθὴν ὁδόν, ὥστε ἔχοντές τι εἰς **happen, happen to exist**  
 τὴν **friendship** ἵν, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς τοῦμπαλιν ὑποστρέψαντας ἐλθεῖν μίαν ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα. τούτο δὲ ποιήσαντες ἔλαβον πολλὰ καὶ **slave**  
 καὶ πρόβατα· καὶ ἀφίκοντο ἐκταῖοι εἰς Χρυσόπολιν τῆς Καλχηδονίας, καὶ **ἔξειμι?: go forth ; or ἐκεῖ?:** ὑροπωλοῦντες. **there ; or κείμαι?: lie**

the army from allegiance to the Lacedaemonians.”

After this the deputation thanked him and retired, taking with them the two men; then Cleander sacrificed as a preliminary to marching and consorted friendlyly with Xenophon, and the two struck up an alliance. When the Spartan saw with what good discipline the men carried out their orders, he was still more anxious to become their leader. However, in spite of sacrifices repeated on three successive days, the victims steadily remained unfavourable. So he summoned the generals and said to them: “The victims smile not on me, they suffer me not to lead you home; but be not out of heart at that. To you it is given, as it would appear, to bring your men safe home. Forwards then, and for our part, whenever you come yonder, we will bestow on you as warm a welcome as we may.”

Then the soldiers resolved to make him a present of the public cattle, which he accepted, but again gave back to them. So he sailed away; but the soldiers made division of the corn which they had collected and of the other captured property, and commenced their homeward march through the territory of the Bithynians.

At first they confined themselves to the main road; but not chancing upon anything whereby they might reach a friendly territory with something in their pockets for themselves, they resolved to turn sharp round, and marched for one day and night in the opposite direction. By this proceeding they captured many slaves and much small cattle; and on the sixth day reached Chrysopolis in Chalcedonia. Here they halted seven days while they disposed of their booty by sale.

## 7

Detailed history of the fortunes of the Hellenes during their march up country with Cyrus down to the date of the battle; and, subsequently to his death, until they reached the Euxine; as also of all their doings in their efforts to escape from the Euxine, partly by land marches and partly under sail by sea, until they found themselves outside the

mouth of the Black Sea (south of the Bosphorus) at Chrysopolis in Asia.)



*vocabulary*

**ἀνάβασις** -ος (f) going up, mounting,  
 going inland  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**ἀποπλέω** sail away  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**ναύαρχος** admiral  
**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (πούς)  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**στόμα** -τος (n, 3) mouth ~stomach

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
 campaign  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τελευτάω** bring about, finish  
**τεύχω** make, cause; pass: happen; pass  
 pf: be, become; pass pf ppl: well made  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
**ἐντυγχάνω**  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χώρα** place

## 7

## 7.1

“Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου ἔπραξαν οἱ Ἕλληνες μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα ἐπεὶ Κύρος ἐτελεύτησεν ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ μέχρι εἰς τὸν Πόντον ἀφίκοντο, καὶ ὅσα ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου περὶ ἑξιώοντες καὶ ἐκπλέοντες ἐποίουν μέχρι ἕξω τοῦ στόματος ἐγένοντο ἐν Χρυσοπόλει τῆς Ἀσίας, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.

Ἐκ τούτου δὲ Φαρνάβαζος φοβούμενος τὸ στράτευμα μὴ ἐπὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ χώραν στρατεύηται, πέμψας πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον τὸν ναύαρχον ὁ δ’ ἔτυχεν ἐν Βυζαντίῳ ὄν, εἰδεῖτο διαβιβάσαι τὸ στράτευμα ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖτο πάντα ποιήσειν αὐτῷ ὅσα δέοι. καὶ ὁ Ἀναξίβιος μετεπέμψατο τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς εἰς Βυζάντιον, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖτο, εἰ διαβαῖεν, μισθοφορὰν ἔσσεσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις. οἱ μὲν δὴ ἄλλοι ἔφασαν βουλευσάμενοι ἀπαγγελεῖν, Ξενοφῶν δὲ εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι ἀπαλλάξοιτο ἤδη ἀπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς καὶ βούλοιο ἀποπλεῖν. ὁ δὲ Ἀναξίβιος ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν συνδιαβάνα εἶπειτα οὕτως ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. ἔφη οὖν ταῦτα ποιήσειν.

Σεύθης δὲ ὁ Θρᾶξ πέμπει Μηδοσάδην καὶ κελεύει Ξενοφῶντα συμπροθυμεῖσθαι ὅπως διαβῆ τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ ἔφη αὐτῷ ταῦτα συμπροθυμηθέντι ὅτι οὐ μεταμελήσει. ὁ δ’ εἶπεν·

7

7.1

“Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ **|going up, mōunt-  
ing, going inland** Κύρου ἔπραξαν οἱ Ἕλληνες  
μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα ἐπεὶ Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησεν ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ μέχρι  
εἰς τὸν Πόντον ἀφίκοντο, καὶ ὅσα ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου πεζῇ **|go forth** αἰ  
ἐκπλέοντες ἐποιοῦν μέχρι ἕξω τοῦ στόματος ἐγένοντο ἐν Χρυσοπόλει  
τῆς Ἀσίας, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.

Ἐκ τούτου δὲ Φαρνάβαζος φοβούμενος τὸ στράτευμα μὴ ἐπὶ τὴν  
αὐτοῦ χώραν στρατεύηται, πέμψας πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον τὸν **|admiral**  
ὁ δ’ ἔτυχεν ἐν Βυζαντίῳ ὧν, εἰδέτο διαβιβάσαι τὸ στράτευμα ἐκ  
τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖτο πάντα ποιήσειν αὐτῷ ὅσα δέοι. καὶ ὁ  
Ἀναξίβιος **|send; (mid) summon** τηγὸν καὶ λοχαγὸν εἰς Βυζάντιον,  
καὶ ὑπισχνεῖτο, εἰ **|pass over, cross**, ὥρᾶν ἔσσεσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις.  
οἱ μὲν δὴ ἄλλοι ἔφασαν βουλευσάμενοι ἀπαγγελεῖν, Ξενοφῶν δὲ  
εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι ἀπαλλάξοιτο ἤδη ἀπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς καὶ βούλοιο  
ἀποπλεῖν. ὁ δὲ Ἀναξίβιος ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν συνδιαβάντα ἔπειτα οὕτως  
ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. ἔφη οὖν ταῦτα ποιήσειν.

Σεύθης δὲ ὁ Θραξ πέμπει Μηδοσάδην καὶ κελεύει Ξενοφῶντα  
συμπροθυμῆσθαι ὅπως **|pass over, cross** ἔτευμα, καὶ ἔφη αὐτῷ  
ταῦτα συμπροθυμηθέντι ὅτι οὐ μεταμελήσει. ὁ δ’ εἶπεν·

## 7.1

At this point Pharnabazus, who was afraid that the army might undertake a campaign against his satrapy, sent to Anaxibius, the Spartan high admiral, who chanced to be in Byzantium, and begged him to convey the army out of Asia, undertaking to comply with his wishes in every respect. Anaxibius accordingly sent to summon the generals and officers to Byzantium, and promised that the soldiers should not lack pay for service, if they crossed the strait. The officers said that they would deliberate and return an answer. Xenophon individually informed them that he was about to quit the army at once, and was only anxious to set sail. Anaxibius pressed him not to be in so great a hurry: "Cross over with the rest," he said, "and then it will be time enough to think about quitting the army." This the other undertook to do.

Now Seuthes the Thracian sent Medosades and begged Xenophon to use his influence to get the army across. "Tell Xenophon, if he will do his best for me in this matter, he will not regret it." Xenophon answered: "The army is in any case going to cross; so that, as far as that is concerned, Seuthes is under no obligation to me or to any one else; but as soon as it is once across, I personally shall be quit of it. Let Seuthes, therefore, as far as he may deem consistent with prudence, apply to those who are going to remain and will have a voice in affairs."

After this



*vocabulary*

**αἰτία** blame, credit, cause ~etiology

**αἰτιάομαι** blame

**αἷτιος** guilty ~etiology; also αἰτίος

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured

**ἀποπέμπω** send away

**ἀργύριον** small coin

**ἀριθμός** number

**ἀσπάζομαι** greet, salute

**ἀσφαλῆς** going ahead, standing firm

**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with

**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross

**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish

**δίδημι** should; bind; need, fail; also

δέω

**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν

**ἐνταῦθα** thither

**ἐντεῦθεν** thence

**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)

**ἐξέτασις** scrutiny

**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth

**ἔξω** outward, outside

**ἐπειδάν** when

**ἐπισιτισμός** resupply, forage

**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel

**ἔχθω** (mp) be hated

**κηρύσσω** be a henchman, summon people

**μής** (m, 1) indeed; month; also μείς,

μήν

**μήτε** neither...nor...

**μισθός** reward, wages

**ξένος** guest-friend, host, stranger

~xenophobe

**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

**πάρως** before, in the past

**πορεύω** carry

**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender, come in

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army

**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary

**συμβουλεύω** give advice; (mid) consult

**τελέω** fulfill; pf pass: be feasible

**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case

**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

Ἄλλὰ τὸ μὲν στράτευμα διαβήσεται· τούτου ἕνεκα μηδὲν τελείτω μήτε ἐμοὶ μήτε ἄλλω μηδενί· ἐπειδὴν δὲ διαβῆ, ἐγὼ μὲν ἀπαλλάξομαι, πρὸς δὲ τοὺς διαμένοντας καὶ ἐπικαιρίους ὄντας προσφερέσθω ὡς ἂν αὐτῶ δοκῆ ἀσφαλές.

Ἐκ τούτου διαβαίνουσι πάντες εἰς τὸ Βυζάντιον οἱ στρατιῶται. καὶ μισθὸν μὲν οὐκ ἐδίδου ὁ Ἄναξιβιος, ἐκήρυξε δὲ λαβόντας τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τὰ σκεύη τοὺς στρατιώτας ἐξιέναι, ὡς ἀποπέμφων τε ἅμα καὶ ἀριθμὸν ποιήσων. ἐνταῦθα οἱ στρατιῶται ἤχθοντο, ὅτι οὐκ εἶχον ἀργύριον ἐπισιτίζεσθαι εἰς τὴν πορείαν, καὶ ὀκνηρῶς συνεσκευάζοντο. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν Κλεάνδρω τῷ ἀρμοστῇ ξένος γεγενημένος προσελθὼν ἠσπάζετο αὐτὸν ὡς ἀποπλευσούμενος ἤδη. ὁ δὲ αὐτῶ λέγει· Μὴ ποιήσης ταῦτα· εἰ δὲ μή, ἔφη, αἰτίαν ἔξεις, ἐπεὶ καὶ νῦν τινὲς ἤδη σὲ αἰτιῶνται ὅτι οὐ ταχὺ ἐξέρπει τὸ στράτευμα. ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' αἴτιος μὲν ἔγωγε οὐκ εἰμὶ τούτου, οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται αὐτοὶ ἐπισιτισμοῦ δεόμενοι διὰ τοῦτο ἀθυμοῦσι πρὸς τὴν ἐξοδον. Ἄλλ' ὅμως, ἔφη, ἐγὼ σοι συμβουλεύω ἐξελθεῖν μὲν ὡς πορευσόμενον, ἐπειδὴν δ' ἔξω γένηται τὸ στράτευμα, τότε ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. Ταῦτα τοῖνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἐλθόντες πρὸς Ἄναξιβιον διαπραξόμεθα. οὕτως ἐλθόντες ἔλεγον ταῦτα. ὁ δὲ ἐκέλευεν οὕτω ποιεῖν καὶ ἐξιέναι τὴν ταχίστην συσκευασμένους, καὶ προσανείπεν, ὃς ἂν μὴ παρῆ εἰς τὴν ἐξέτασιν καὶ εἰς τὸν ἀριθμὸν, ὅτι αὐτὸς αὐτὸν αἰτιάσεται. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξῆσαν οἱ τε στρατηγοὶ πρῶτοι καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι. καὶ ἄρδην

Ἄλλὰ τὸ μὲν στράτευμα |pass over, cross' ν ἔνεκα μηδὲν τελείτω μήτε  
 ἐμοὶ μήτε ἄλλω μηδενί' |when δὲ |pass over, cross' γαλλάξομαι, πρὸς  
 δὲ τοὺς διαμένοντας καὶ ἐπικαιρίους ὄντας προσφερέσθω ὡς ἂν αὐτῶ  
 δοκῇ ἀσφαλές.

Ἐκ τούτου |pass over, cross' ες εἰς τὸ Βυζάντιον οἱ στρατιῶται. καὶ  
 μισθὸν μὲν οὐκ |δίδημι?: should; bind; need, fail' ἀβόντας τὰ ὅπλα  
 ; or δίδωμι?: give; permit  
 καὶ τὰ σκεύη τοὺς στρατιώτας |ἔξιμι?: go forth' ; or ἐξίημι?: ι καὶ  
 |send forth, allow forth  
 ἀριθμὸν ποιήσων. ἐνταῦθα οἱ στρατιῶται |ἄχθομαι?: "be burdened with ; or  
 |ἔχθω?: (mp) be hated  
 ἀργύριον ἐπισιτίζεσθαι εἰς τὴν πορείαν, καὶ ὀκνηρῶς συνεσκευάζοντο.  
 καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν Κλεάνδρῳ τῷ ἀρμοστῇ ξένος γεγενημένος προσελθὼν  
 ἠσπάζετο αὐτὸν ὡς ἀποπλευσούμενος ἤδη. ὁ δὲ αὐτῶ λέγει |indeed;  
 |month  
 ποιήσης ταῦτα· εἰ δὲ μή, ἔφη, αἰτίαν ἔξεις, ἐπεὶ καὶ νῦν τινὲς  
 ἤδη σὲ |blame ὅτι οὐ ταχὺν ἐξέρπει τὸ στράτευμα. ὁ δ' εἶπεν·  
 Ἄλλ' αἴτιος μὲν ἔγωγε οὐκ εἰμὶ τούτου, οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται αὐτοὶ  
 |resupply, δεόμενοι διὰ τοῦτο ἀθυμοῦσι πρὸς τὴν ἔξοδον. Ἄλλ'  
 |forage  
 ὅμως, ἔφη, ἐγὼ σοὶ |give advice; "ελθεῖν μὲν ὡς πορευσόμενον,  
 (mid) consult  
 |when δ' ἔξω γένηται τὸ στράτευμα, τότε ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. Ταῦτα  
 τοῖνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἐλθόντες πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον διαπραξόμεθα.  
 οὕτως ἐλθόντες ἔλεγον ταῦτα. ὁ δὲ ἐκέλευεν οὕτω ποιεῖν καὶ |ἔξιμι?: go forth  
 ; or ἐξίημι?: send  
 τὴν ταχίστην συσκευασαμένους, καὶ προσανείπεν, ὅς ἂν μὴ |forth, allow forth  
 εἰς τὴν |scrutiny καὶ εἰς τὸν ἀριθμὸν, ὅτι αὐτὸς αὐτὸν |blame  
 ἐντεῦθεν |go forth' " τε στρατηγοὶ πρῶτοι καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι. καὶ ἄρδην

the whole body of troops crossed to Byzantium. But Anaxibius, instead of proceeding to give pay, made proclamation that, "The soldiers were to take up their arms and baggage and go forth," as if all he wished were to ascertain their numbers and bid them god-speed at the same moment. The soldiers were not well pleased at that, because they had no money to furnish themselves with provisions for the march; and they sluggishly set about getting their baggage together. Xenophon meanwhile, being on terms of intimacy with the governor, Cleander, came to pay his host a final visit, and bid him adieu, being on the point of setting sail. But the other protested; "Do not do so, or else," said he, "you will be blamed, for even now certain people are disposed to hold you to account because the army is so slow in getting under weigh." The other answered, "Nay, I am not to blame for that. It is the men themselves, who are in want of provisions; that is why they are out of heart at their exodus." "All the same," he replied, "I advise you to go out, as if you intended to march with them, and when you are well outside, it will be time enough to take yourself off." "Well then," said Xenophon, "we will go and arrange all this with Anaxibius." They went and stated the case to the admiral, who insisted that they must do as he had said, and march out, bag and baggage, by the quickest road; and as an appendix to the former edict, he added, "Any one absenting himself from the review and the muster will have himself to blame for the consequences." This was peremptory. So out marched, the generals first, and then the rest; and now, with the exception of here a man and there, they were all outside; it was a "clean sweep"; and Eteonicus stood posted near the gates, ready to close them,

*vocabulary*

**αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω*  
**ανοίγω** open  
**αὐτόθι** on the spot  
**δείδω** to fear ~Deimos  
**διαλέγω** go through, debate  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
**εἴσεμι** go in; come in range  
**ἐκβάλλω** throw out, fell, let fall  
**ἐκεῖ** there  
**ἐκών** willingly  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire  
**ἐνδον** in the house of; within  
**ἐννυμι** clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest  
**ἔξεμι** go forth (*εἶμι*)  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἐπακούω** hear, listen to  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater; also *θάομαι*, *θῆομαι*  
**θέω** run, run for  
**ἱερός** (2) holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph;  
 also *ἱερόν*, *ἱερόν*, *ἱρός*  
**κεῖμαι** lie  
**κόπτω** beat, cut, strike  
**κριθή** barley plant  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle

**κώμη** village  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὀπότε** when; also *ὀπότε*  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**πλήν** except  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πότερος** which, whichever of two  
**πράγμα** -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing,  
 affair  
**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae  
**πυνθάνομαι** learn, inquire, (+gen) hear  
 of ~buddha; also *πεύθομαι*  
**πυρός** wheat  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συγκαλέω** call together  
**τείχος** -υς (n, 3) outdoor wall; also  
*τειχίον*  
**τρέπω** divert ~trophy  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
*ἐντυγχάνω*  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

πάντες πλὴν ὀλίγων ἕξω ἦσαν, καὶ Ἐτεόνικος εἰσθήκει παρὰ τὰς πύλας ὡς ὅποτε ἕξω γένοντο πάντες συγκλείσων τὰς πύλας καὶ τὸν μοχλὸν ἐμβάλων. ὁ δὲ Ἀναξίβιος συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ τοὺς λοχαγούς ἔλεγεν· Τὰ μὲν ἐπιτήδεια, ἔφη, λαμβάνετε ἐκ τῶν Θρακίων κωμῶν· εἰσὶ δὲ αὐτόθι πολλαὶ κριθαὶ καὶ πυροὶ καὶ τᾶλλα ἐπιτήδεια· λαβόντες δὲ πορεύεσθε εἰς Χερρόνησον, ἐκεῖ δὲ Κυνίσκος ὑμῖν μισθοδοτήσει. ἐπακούσαντες δὲ τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ταῦτα, ἢ καὶ τῶν λοχαγῶν τις διαγγέλλει εἰς τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ οἱ μὲν στρατηγοὶ ἐπυνθάνοντο περὶ τοῦ Σεύθου πότερα πολέμος εἴη ἢ φίλος, καὶ πότερα διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους δέοι πορεύεσθαι ἢ κύκλῳ διὰ μέσης τῆς Θράκης. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα διελέγοντο οἱ στρατιῶται ἀναρπάσαντες τὰ ὄπλα θέουσι δρόμῳ πρὸς τὰς πύλας, ὡς πάλιν εἰς τὸ τεῖχος εἰσιόντες. ὁ δὲ Ἐτεόνικος καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ὡς εἶδον προσθέοντας τοὺς ὀπλίτας, συγκλείουσι τὰς πύλας καὶ τὸν μοχλὸν ἐμβάλλουσιν. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἔκοπτον τὰς πύλας καὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι ἀδικώτατα πάσχοιεν ἐκβαλλόμενοι εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους· κατασχίσειν τε τὰς πύλας ἔφασαν, εἰ μὴ ἐκόντες ἀνοίξουσιν. ἄλλοι δὲ ἔθεον ἐπὶ θάλατταν καὶ παρὰ τὴν χηλὴν τοῦ τείχους ὑπερβαίνουσιν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, ἄλλοι δὲ οἱ ἐτύγχανον ἔνδον ὄντες τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ὡς ὀρώσι τὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πύλαις πράγματα, διακόπτοντες ταῖς ἀξίνας τὰ κλείθρα ἀναπετανύνασι τὰς πύλας, οἱ δ' εἰσπίπτουσιν.

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ὡς εἶδε τὰ γινόμενα, δείσας μὴ ἐφ' ἀρπαγὴν τράποιτο

πάντες πλὴν ὀλίγων ἔξω ἦσαν, καὶ Ἐτεόνικος εἰσθήκει παρὰ τὰς  
 πύλας ὡς ὅποτε ἔξω γένοιτο πάντες συγκλείσων τὰς πύλας καὶ  
 τὸν **|beam, ἐμβαλῶν. ὁ δὲ Ἄναξίβιος |call together οὐς στρατηγούς**  
**|lever**  
 καὶ τοὺς λοχαγούς ἔλεγεν· Τὰ μὲν ἐπιτήδεια, ἔφη, λαμβάνετε ἐκ τῶν  
 Θρακίων **|village**· εἰσὶ δὲ **|on the spot** ἢ **|barley** καὶ **|wheat**· αἱ τὰλλα  
**|plant**  
 ἐπιτήδεια· λαβόντες δὲ πορεύεσθε εἰς Χερρόνησον, **|ἔξειμι? go forth ; or ἐκεῖ?:**  
**|there ; or κείμαι?: lie**  
 ὑμῖν μισθοδοτήσει. **|hear** δέ τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ταῦτα,  
 ἢ καὶ τῶν λοχαγῶν τις διαγγέλλει εἰς τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ οἱ μὲν  
 στρατηγοὶ ἐπυνθάνοντο περὶ τοῦ Σεύθου **|which, ἕμιος εἴη ἢ φίλος,**  
**|whichever**  
 καὶ **|which, ἕ ἕ** τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους δέοι πορεύεσθαι ἢ **|circle, διὰ μέσης τῆς**  
**|whichever** **|wheel**  
 Θρακίης. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα διελέγοντο οἱ στρατιῶται **|carry off** τὰ  
 ὄπλα θέουσι **|running**, ἰὸς τὰς πύλας, ὡς πάλιν εἰς τὸ τείχος **|go in**  
 ὁ δὲ Ἐτεόνικος καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ὡς εἶδον προσθέοντας τοὺς ὀπλίτας,  
 συγκλείουσι τὰς πύλας καὶ τὸν **|beam, ἐμβάλλουσιν. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται**  
**|lever**  
**|beat, cut, strike** ἰς καὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι ἀδικώτατα πάσχοιεν ἐκβαλλόμενοι  
 εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους· κατασχίσειν τε τὰς πύλας ἔφασαν, εἰ μὴ ἐκόντες  
 ἀνοίξουσιν. ἄλλοι δὲ ἔθεον ἐπὶ θάλατταν καὶ παρὰ τὴν χηλὴν τοῦ  
 τείχους **|pass, transgress**· τὴν πόλιν, ἄλλοι δὲ οἱ ἐτύγχανον ἔνδον  
 ὄντες τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ὡς ὀρώσι τὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πύλαις πράγματα,  
 διακόπτοντες ταῖς **|axe** τὰ κλείθρα **|open wide** τὰς πύλας, οἱ  
 δ' εἰσπίπτουσιν.

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ὡς εἶδε τὰ γιγνόμενα, δείσας μὴ ἐφ' ἀρπαγὴν **|τραπέω?: tread**  
**(grapes) ; or τρέπω?:**  
**|divert**

as soon as the men were fairly out, and to thrust in the bolt pin.

Then Anaxibius summoned the generals and captains, and addressed them: "Provisions you had better get from the Thracian villages; you will find plenty of barley, wheat, and other necessaries in them; and when you have got them, off with you to the Chersonese, where Cyniscus will take you into his service." Some of the soldiers overheard what was said, or possibly one of the officers was the medium of communication; however it was, the news was handed on to the army. As to the generals, their immediate concern was to try and gain some information as to Seuthes: "Was he hostile or friendly? also, would they have to march through the Sacred mountain, or round about through the middle of Thrace?"

While they were discussing these points, the soldiers snatched up their arms and made a rush full speed at the gates, with the intention of getting inside the fortification again. But Eteonicus and his men, seeing the heavy infantry coming up at a run promptly closed the gates and thrust in the bolt pin. Then the soldiers fell to battering the gates, exclaiming that it was iniquitous to thrust them forth in this fashion into the jaws of their enemies. "If you do not of your own accord open the gates," they cried, "we will split them in half"; and another set rushed down to the sea, and so along the break-water and over the wall into the city; while a third set, consisting of those few who were still inside, having never left the city, seeing the affair at the gates, severed the bars with axes and flung the portals wide open; and the rest came pouring in.

Xenophon, seeing what was happening, was seized with alarm lest the army betake itself to pillage, and ills incurable be wrought to the city, to himself, and to the soldiers. Then he set off, and, plunging into the throng, was swept through the gates with the



*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
**αἰίδω** sing; also αἰοδιάω  
**ἀκρόπολις** -εως (f/m) citadel  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also ἄκρα, ἄκρη  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι, ὀλλυμι  
**βία** strength, force  
**ἔθω** be accustomed, tend to ~ethology  
**εἶσω** into; also ἔσω  
**ἐνδον** in the house of; within  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also ἰθύς  
**θέω** run, run for  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**κεῖμαι** lie  
**κείρω** shave, sever, raze; devour, use up  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn  
**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon

**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics  
**οἴομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι, οἶομαι  
**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus  
**ὀνίνημι** help, please, be available  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὄχλος** mob, crowd  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συγκαλέω** call together  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement  
**τάσσω** arrange  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**τριήρης** -ους (f, 3) trireme  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

τὸ στράτευμα καὶ ἀνήκεστα κακὰ γένοιτο τῇ πόλει καὶ ἑαυτῶ καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις, ἔθει καὶ συνεισπίπτει εἴσω τῶν πυλῶν σὺν τῷ ὄχλῳ. οἱ δὲ Βυζάντιοι ὡς εἶδον τὸ στράτευμα βία εἰσπίπτον, φεύγουσιν ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς, οἱ μὲν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα, οἱ δὲ οἴκαδε, ὅσοι δὲ ἔνδον ἐτύχανον ὄντες, ἔξω, οἱ δὲ καθέιλκον τὰς τριήρεις, ὡς ἐν ταῖς τριήρεσι σῆζοντο, πάντες δὲ ᾤοντο ἀπολωλέναι, ὡς ἑάλωκυίας τῆς πόλεως. ὁ δὲ Ἐτεόνικος εἰς τὴν ἄκραν ἀποφεύγει. ὁ δὲ Ἀναξίβιος καταδραμῶν ἐπὶ θάλατταν ἐν ἀλιευτικῷ πλοίῳ περιέπλει εἰς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν, καὶ εὐθὺς μεταπέμπεται ἐκ Καλχηδόνος φρουρούς· οὐ γὰρ ἱκανοὶ ἐδόκουν εἶναι οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀκροπόλει σχεῖν τοὺς ἄνδρας. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ὡς εἶδον Ξενοφῶντα, προσπίπτουσι πολλοὶ αὐτῷ καὶ λέγουσι· Νῦν σοι ἔξεστω, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἀνδρὶ γενέσθαι. ἔχεις πόλιν, ἔχεις τριήρεις, ἔχεις χρήματα, ἔχεις ἄνδρας τοσοῦτους. νῦν ἂν, εἰ βούλοιο, σὺ τε ἡμᾶς ὀνήσαις καὶ ἡμεῖς σὲ μέγαν ποιήσαιμεν. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἄλλ' εὖ γε λέγετε καὶ ποιήσω ταῦτα· εἰ δὲ τούτων ἐπιθυμίετε, θέσθε τὰ ὄπλα ἐν τάξει ὡς τάχιστα· βουλόμενος αὐτοὺς κατηρεμίσαι· καὶ αὐτὸς τε παρηγγύα ταῦτα καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐκέλευε παρεγγυᾶν καὶ τίθεσθαι τὰ ὄπλα. οἱ δὲ αὐτοὶ ὑφ' ἑαυτῶν ταπτόμενοι οἳ τε ὀπλίται ἐν ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ εἰς ὀκτῶ ἐγένοντο καὶ οἱ πελτασταὶ ἐπὶ τὸ κέρασ ἐκάτερον παρεδεδραμήκεσαν. τὸ δὲ χωρίον οἶον κάλλιστον ἐκτάξασθαί ἐστι τὸ Θράκιον καλούμενον, ἔρημον οἰκιῶν καὶ πεδινόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔκειτο τὰ ὄπλα καὶ κατηρεμίσθησαν, συγκαλεῖ ὁ Ξενοφῶν τὴν στρατιὰν καὶ

τὸ στράτευμα καὶ |incurable κακὰ γένοιτο τῇ πόλει καὶ ἑαυτῷ καὶ τοῖς  
στρατιώταις, ἔθει καὶ συνεισπίπτει εἴσω τῶν πυλῶν σὺν τῷ ὄχλῳ. οἱ  
δὲ Βυζάντιοι ὡς εἶδον τὸ στράτευμα βία εἰσπίπτον, φεύγουσιν ἐκ τῆς  
ἀγορᾶς, οἱ μὲν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα, οἱ δὲ οἴκαδε, ὅσοι δὲ ἔνδον ἐτύγχανον  
ὄντες, ἕξω, οἱ δὲ καθεῖλκον τὰς τριήρεις, ὡς ἐν ταῖς τριήρεσι σήζουτο,  
πάντες δὲ ᾤοντο ἀπολωλέναι, ὡς ἐαλωκυίας τῆς πόλεως. ὁ δὲ  
Ἐτεόνικος εἰς τὴν ἄκραν |avoid, es- ὁ δὲ Ἀναξίβιος καταδραμὼν  
ἐπὶ θάλατταν ἐν ἀλιευτικῇ |cape, go οἴῳ περιέπλει εἰς τὴν |citadel καὶ  
εὐθὺς |send; (mid) summon ἰδόνος φρουρούς· οὐ γὰρ ἱκανοὶ ἐδόκουν  
εἶναι οἱ ἐν τῇ |citadel σχεῖν τοὺς ἄνδρας. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ὡς  
εἶδον Ξενοφῶντα, προσπίπτουσι πολλοὶ αὐτῷ καὶ λέγουσι· Νῦν σοι  
|go forth Ξενοφῶν, ἀνδρὶ γενέσθαι. ἔχεις πόλιν, ἔχεις τριήρεις, ἔχεις  
χρήματα, ἔχεις ἄνδρας τοσούτους. νῦν ἂν, εἰ βούλοιο, σύ τε ἡμᾶς  
|help, please, εἰς σὲ μέγαν ποιήσαιμεν. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἄλλ' εὖ γε  
|be available λέγετε καὶ ποιήσω ταῦτα· εἰ δὲ τούτων ἐπιθυμεῖτε, θέσθε τὰ ὄπλα  
ἐν τάξει ὡς τάχιστα· βουλόμενος αὐτοὺς κατηρεμίσαι· καὶ αὐτὸς τε  
παρηγγύα ταῦτα καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐκέλευε παρεγγυᾶν καὶ τίθεσθαι  
τὰ ὄπλα. οἱ δὲ αὐτοὶ ὑφ' ἑαυτῶν ταττόμενοι οἳ τε ὀπλῖται ἐν ὀλίγῳ  
χρόνῳ εἰς ὀκτῶ ἐγένοντο καὶ οἱ |light ἐπὶ τὸ κέρας ἐκάτερον  
|troops παρεδεδραμῆκεσαν. τὸ δὲ χωρίον οἶον κάλλιστον ἐκτάξασθαι ἔστι  
τὸ Θράκιον καλούμενον, ἔρημον οἰκιῶν καὶ πεδινόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔκειτο  
τὰ ὄπλα καὶ κατηρεμίσθησαν, |call together νοφῶν τὴν στρατιὰν καὶ

crowd. The Byzantines no sooner saw the soldiers forcibly rushing in than they left the open square, and fled, some to the shipping, others to their homes, while those already indoors came racing out, and some fell to dragging down their ships of war, hoping possibly to be safe on board these; while there was not a soul who doubted but that the city was taken, and that they were all undone. Eteonicus made a swift retreat to the citadel. Anaxibius ran down to the sea, and, getting on board a fisherman's smack, sailed round to the acropolis, and at once sent off to fetch over the garrison troops from Chalcedon, since those already in the acropolis seemed hardly sufficient to keep the men in check.

The soldiers, catching sight of Xenophon, threw themselves upon him, crying: "Now, Xenophon, is the time to prove yourself a man. You have got a city, you have got triremes, you have got money, you have got men; to-day, if you only chose, you can do us a good turn, and we will make you a great man." He replied: "Nay, I like what you say, and I will do it all; but if that is what you have set your hearts on, fall into rank and take up position at once." This he said, wishing to quiet them, and so passed the order along the lines himself, while bidding the rest to do the same: "Take up position; stand easy." But the men themselves, by a species of self-marshalling, fell into rank, and were soon formed, the heavy infantry eight deep, while the light infantry had run up to cover either wing. The Thracian Square, as it is called, is a fine site for manouvering, being bare of buildings and level. As soon as the arms were stacked and the men's tempers cooled, Xenophon called a general meeting of the soldiers, and made the following speech:—

"Soldiers, I am not surprised at your wrath, or that you deem it monstrous treatment so to be cheated; but consider what will be the consequences if we gratify our indignation, and in return for such

*vocabulary***αἰτία** blame, credit, cause ~etiology**αἷτιος** guilty ~etiology; also αἰτίος**ἀναμνησκω** (+2 acc) remind someone**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, out to sea**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ῶ) show, point out; (mid) declare**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning**ἀρχήν** (adv) originally**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor**αὐτοῦ** here, there**ἀφαιρέω** take away**ἄφρων** senseless, unthinking**βάρβαρος** non-Greek**διαρπάζω** make prey of**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω, ἐξαποδύνω**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about**εἰσίημι** (mid) speed to**ἐλαχύς** small; comp.: less ~light**ἐνιαυτός** cycle of a year**ἐντεῦθεν** thence**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand**θαυμάζω** marvel ~theater; also ἀποθαυμάζω**μείων** less, smaller**νέω** spin; swim ~neuro; also νήγω**νησος** (f) island ~Polynesia**νομίζω** consider customary**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι, οἶομαι**ὁμός** same**ὁμοῦ** together**ὅπου** where**ὀργίζω** anger, provoke, annoy**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also

πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω

**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary**τάλαντον** scale, a unit of weight**τιμωρέω** take vengeance**τριακόσιοι** three hundred**τριήρης** -ους (f, 3) trireme**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case**ὑπάρχω** start, lead, set an example**χαρίζομαι** gratify someone ~charisma**χίλιοι** thousand ~kilo-**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions

λέγει τάδε. "Ὅτι μὲν ὀργίζεσθε, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, καὶ νομίζετε δεινὰ πάσχειν ἑξαπατώμενοι οὐ θαυμάζω. ἦν δὲ τῷ θυμῷ χαριζώμεθα καὶ Λακεδαιμονίους τε τοὺς παρόντας τῆς ἑξαπάτης τιμωρησώμεθα καὶ τὴν πόλιν τὴν οὐδὲν αἰτίαν διαρπάσωμεν, ἐνθυμείσθε ἃ ἔσται ἐντεῦθεν. πολέμοι μὲν ἐσόμεθα ἀποδεδειγμένοι Λακεδαιμονίοις καὶ τοῖς συμμάχοις. οἷος δὲ πόλεμος ἂν γένοιτο εἰκάζειν δὴ πάρεστιν, ἑορακότας καὶ ἀναμνησθέντας τὰ νῦν δὴ γεγενημένα. ἡμεῖς γὰρ οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἦλθομεν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον τὸν πρὸς Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ τοὺς συμμάχους ἔχοντες τριήρεις τὰς μὲν ἐν θαλάττῃ τὰς δ' ἐν τοῖς νεωρίοις οὐκ ἐλάττους τριακοσίων, ὑπαρχόντων δὲ πολλῶν χρημάτων ἐν τῇ πόλει καὶ προσόδου οὔσης κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν ἀπὸ τῶν ἐνδήμων καὶ τῆς ὑπερορίας οὐ μείον χιλίων ταλάντων· ἄρχοντες δὲ τῶν νήσων ἀπασῶν καὶ ἔν τε τῇ Ἀσίᾳ πολλὰς ἔχοντες πόλεις καὶ ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ ἄλλας τε πολλὰς καὶ αὐτὸ τοῦτο τὸ Βυζάντιον, ὅπου νῦν ἐσμεν, ἔχοντες κατεπολεμήθημεν οὕτως ὡς πάντες ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε. νῦν δὲ δὴ τί ἂν οἰόμεθα παθεῖν, Λακεδαιμονίοις μὲν καὶ τῶν ἀρχαίων συμμάχων ὑπαρχόντων, Ἀθηναίων δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐκείνοις τότε ἦσαν σύμμαχοι πάντων προσγεγενημένων, Τισσαφέρνους δὲ καὶ τῶν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ ἄλλων βαρβάρων πάντων πολεμίων ἡμῖν ὄντων, πολεμωτάτου δὲ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἄνω βασιλέως, ὃν ἦλθομεν ἀφαιρησόμενοι τὴν ἀρχὴν καὶ ἀποκτενοῦντες, εἰ δυναίμεθα; τούτων δὴ πάντων ὁμοῦ ὄντων ἔστι τις οὕτως ἄφρων ὅστις οἶεται ἂν ἡμᾶς

λέγει τάδε. "Οτι μὲν ὀργίξεσθε, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, καὶ νομίζετε  
 δεινὰ πάσχειν ἑξαπατάμενοι οὐ θαυμάζω. ἦν δὲ τῷ θυμῷ χαριζόμεθα  
 καὶ Λακεδαιμονίους τε τοὺς παρόντας τῆς ἑξαπάτης τιμωρησόμεθα  
 καὶ τὴν πόλιν τὴν οὐδὲν αἰτίαν |make prey of| ἐνθυμείσθε ἃ ἔσται  
 ἐντεῦθεν. πολέμοι μὲν ἐσόμεθα ἀποδεδειγμένοι Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ  
 τοῖς συμμάχοις. οἷος δὲ πόλεμος ἂν γένοιτο εἰκάζειν δὴ πάρεστιν,  
 ἑορακότης καὶ ἀναμνησθέντας τὰ νῦν δὴ γεγενημένα. ἡμεῖς γὰρ  
 οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι |ἄλθομαι?: become whole τὸν πρὸς Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ  
 |; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come  
 τοὺς συμμάχους ἔχοντες τριήρεις τὰς μὲν ἐν θαλάττῃ τὰς δ' ἐν  
 τοῖς νεωρίοις οὐκ ἐλάττους τριακοσίων, ὑπαρχόντων δὲ πολλῶν  
 χρημάτων ἐν τῇ πόλει καὶ προσόδου οὔσης κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν ἀπὸ τε  
 τῶν ἐνδήμων καὶ τῆς ὑπερορίας οὐ |less, ... ἴων ταλάντων· ἄρχοντες  
 δὲ τῶν νήσων ἀπασῶν καὶ ἐν τε τῇ Ἀσίᾳ πολλὰς ἔχοντες πόλεις  
 καὶ ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ ἄλλας τε πολλὰς καὶ αὐτὸ τοῦτο τὸ Βυζάντιον,  
 ὅπου νῦν ἐσμεν, ἔχοντες κατεπολεμήθημεν οὕτως ὡς πάντες ὑμεῖς  
 |ἀπιστέω?: disbelieve ; ὃ ἑφίστημι?: stand ἀκεδαιμονίους μὲν καὶ  
 |ready, take a stand ; or ἐπίσταμαι?: know  
 τῶν |ancient, from ἄρχων ὑπαρχόντων, Ἀθηναίων δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐκείνοις  
 |the beginning  
 τότε ἦσαν σύμμαχοι πάντων προσγεγενημένων, Τισσαφέρους δὲ  
 καὶ τῶν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ ἄλλων βαρβάρων πάντων πολεμίων ἡμῶν  
 ὄντων, πολεμιωτάτου δὲ αὐτοῦ τοῦ |accomplish, pass, ἄλθομαι?: be-  
 |waste; upwards, out|come whole ; or  
 ἀφαιρησόμενοι τὴν |(adv) originally ἐν|to sea, εἰ|enter, put off ἔρχομαι?: go, come  
 δὴ πάντων ὁμοῦ ὄντων ἔστι τις οὕτως |strip off  
 |senseless, ; οἴεται ἂν ἡμᾶς  
 |unthinking

deception, avenge ourselves on the Lacedaemonians here present, and plunder an innocent city. We shall be declared enemies of the Lacedaemonians and their allies; and what sort of war that will be, we need not go far to conjecture. I take it, you have not forgotten some quite recent occurrences. We Athenians entered into war against the Lacedaemonians and their allies with a fleet consisting of not less than three hundred line of battle ships, including those in dock as well as those afloat. We had vast treasures stored up in the city, and a yearly income which, derived from home or foreign sources, amounted to no less than a thousand talents. Our empire included all the islands, and we were possessed of numerous cities both in Asia and in Europe. Amongst others, this very Byzantium, where we are now, was ours; and yet in the end we were vanquished, as you all very well know.

“What, must we anticipate, will now be our fate? The Lacedaemonians have not only their old allies, but the Athenians and those who were at that time allies of Athens are added to them. Tissaphernes and all the rest of the Asiatics on the seaboard are our foes, not to speak of our arch-enemy, the king himself, up yonder, whom we came to deprive of his empire, and to kill, if possible. I ask then, with all these banded together against us, is there any one so insensate as to imagine that we can survive the contest? For heaven’s sake, let us not go mad or loosely throw away our lives in war with our own native cities— nay, our own friends, our kith and our kin; for in one or other of the cities they are all included. Every city will march against us, and not unjustly, if, after refusing to hold one single barbarian city by right of conquest, we seize the first Hellenic city that we



*vocabulary*

**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**αἰσχρός** shameful  
**ἄλθομαι** become whole, sound  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι,  
 ὀλλυμι  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βίαιος** by force  
**γόος** crying, wailing  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἔθνος** -εος (n, 3) tribe, company, flock  
 ~ethnic  
**ἐξαλαπάζω** sack, destroy  
**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔρομαι** ask, search through; also  
 ἀνέρομαι, εἴρομαι, ἐξείρομαι, ἐξέρομαι  
**ἐτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled  
**εὐχόμαι** declare, boast; pray (εὐχος)  
**ἐφοράω** look upon  
**ἡμέτερος** our, my  
**θεά** (2) goddess ~theology  
**κατέχω** hold down; cover; also  
 κατασχεθεῖν  
**κρατέω** rule ~democracy

**μαίνομαι** be berserk ~maenad  
**μηδέ** and not; not even  
**μυρίος** immense, myriad ~myriad  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὄργια** fathom, arm's length  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πατρίς** -δος fatherland  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also  
 πειρητίζω  
**περιγίγνομαι** surpass  
**περίειμι** be superior to  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**προῖστημι** put forward; (+gen) be  
 head of, guard  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
**στερέω** steal, take  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατηγία** office of command  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συμβουλεύω** give advice; (mid) consult  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy

περιγενέσθαι; μὴ πρὸς θεῶν μαινώμεθα μῆδ' αἰσχροῦς ἀπολώμεθα πολέμοι ὄντες καὶ ταῖς πατρίσι καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις αὐτῶν φίλοις τε καὶ οἰκείοις. ἐν γὰρ ταῖς πόλεσίν εἰσι πάντες ταῖς ἐφ' ἡμᾶς στρατευσομέναις, καὶ δικαίως, εἰ βάρβαρον μὲν πόλιν οὐδεμίαν ἠθελήσαμεν κατασχεῖν, καὶ ταῦτα κρατοῦντες, Ἑλληνίδα δὲ εἰς ἣν πρώτην ἦλθομεν πόλιν, ταύτην ἐξαλαπάξομεν. ἐγὼ μὲν τοῖνυν εὐχομαι πρὶν ταῦτα ἐπιδεῖν ὑφ' ὑμῶν γενόμενα μυρίας ἐμέ γε κατὰ τῆς γῆς ὀργιᾶς γενέσθαι. καὶ ὑμῖν δὲ συμβουλεύω Ἕλληνας ὄντας τοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων προεστηκόσι πειθομένους πειρᾶσθαι τῶν δικαίων τυγχάνειν. ἐὰν δὲ μὴ δύνησθε ταῦτα, ἡμᾶς δεῖ ἀδικουμένους τῆς γοῦν Ἑλλάδος μὴ στέρεσθαι. καὶ νῦν μοι δοκεῖ πέμψαντας Ἀναξιβίῳ εἰπεῖν ὅτι ἡμεῖς οὐδὲν βίαιον ποιήσοντες παρεληλύθαμεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, ἀλλ' ἦν μὲν δυνώμεθα παρ' ὑμῶν ἀγαθόν τι εὐρίσκεσθαι, εἰ δὲ μή, ἀλλὰ δηλώσοντες ὅτι οὐκ ἐξαπατῶμενοι ἀλλὰ πειθόμενοι ἐξερχόμεθα.

Ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ πέμπουσιν Ἱερώνυμόν τε τὸν Ἥλείον ἐροῦντα ταῦτα καὶ Εὐρύλοχον Ἀρκάδα καὶ Φιλήσιον Ἀχαιόν. οἱ μὲν ταῦτα ᾤχοντο ἐροῦντες.

Ἔτι δὲ καθημένων τῶν στρατιωτῶν προσέρχεται Κοιρατάδας Θηβαῖος, ὃς οὐ φεύγων τὴν Ἑλλάδα περιήει ἀλλὰ στρατηγιῶν καὶ ἐπαγγελλόμενος, εἴ τις ἢ πόλις ἢ ἔθνος στρατηγοῦ δέοιτο· καὶ τότε προσελθὼν ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἔτοιμος εἶη ἡγεῖσθαι αὐτοῖς εἰς τὸ Δέλτα καλούμενον τῆς Θράκης, ἔνθα πολλὰ κάγαθα λήψονται· ἔστε δ' ἂν

|surpass , μη πρὸς θεῶν |be berserk μηδ' αἰσχροῦς ἀπολώμεθα  
 πολέμοι ὄντες καὶ ταῖς πατρίσι καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις αὐτῶν φίλοις  
 τε καὶ οἰκείοις. ἐν γὰρ ταῖς πόλεσίν εἰσι πάντες ταῖς ἐφ' ἡμᾶς  
 στρατευσόμεναις, καὶ δικαίως, εἰ βάρβαρον μὲν πόλιν οὐδεμίαν  
 ἠθελήσαμεν κατασχέειν, καὶ ταῦτα κρατοῦντες, Ἑλληνίδα δὲ εἰς ἣν  
 πρώτην |ἄλθομαι?: become whole|sack, destroy ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν  
 |; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come  
 εὐχομαι πρὶν ταῦτα |look upon ὑμῶν γενόμενα μυρίας ἐμέ γε κατὰ  
 τῆς |earth; a country' θαι. καὶ ὑμῖν δὲ |give advice; (mid) consult  
 τοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων |put forward; (+gen) νους πειράσθαι τῶν δικαίων  
 |be head of, guard  
 τυγχάνειν. ἐὰν δὲ μὴ δύνησθε ταῦτα, ἡμᾶς δεῖ ἀδικουμένους τῆς γοῦν  
 Ἑλλάδος μὴ στέρεσθαι. καὶ νῦν μοι δοκεῖ πέμφαντας Ἀναξιβίῳ εἰπεῖν  
 ὅτι ἡμεῖς οὐδὲν |by force ἴσησόντες παρεληλύθαμεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, ἀλλ'  
 ἦν μὲν δυνώμεθα παρ' ὑμῶν ἀγαθόν τι εὐρίσκεσθαι, εἰ δὲ μή, ἀλλὰ  
 δηλώσοντες ὅτι οὐκ ἐξαπατώμενοι ἀλλὰ πειθόμενοι ἐξερχόμεθα.

Ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ πέμπουσιν Ἱερώνυμόν τε τὸν Ἥλειον |ask, search through  
 καὶ Εὐρύλοχον Ἀρκάδα καὶ Φιλήσιον Ἀχαιοῖν. οἱ μὲν ταῦτα ᾄχοντο  
 |ask, search through

Ἐπι δὲ καθημένων τῶν στρατιωτῶν προσέρχεται Κοιρατάδας  
 Θηβαῖος, ὃς οὐ φεύγων τὴν Ἑλλάδα |be superior to|office of command  
 ἐπαγγελλόμενος, εἴ τις ἢ πόλις ἢ ἔθνος στρατηγοῦ δέοιτο· καὶ τότε  
 προσελθὼν ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἔτοιμος εἶη ἠγεῖσθαι αὐτοῖς εἰς τὸ Δέλτα  
 καλούμενον τῆς Θράκης, ἔνθα πολλὰ κάγαθὰ λήψιοντο· ἔστε δ' ἂν

come to and make it a ruinous heap. For my part, my prayer is that before I see such things wrought by you, I, at any rate, may lie ten thousand fathoms under ground! My counsel to you, as Hellenes, is to try and obtain your just rights, through obedience to those who stand at the head of Hellas; and if so be that you fail in those demands, why, being more sinned against than sinning, need we rob ourselves of Hellas too? At present, I propose that we should send to Anaxibius and tell him that we have made an entrance into the city, not meditating violence, but merely to discover if he and his will show us any good; for if so, it is well; but of otherwise, at least we will let him see that he does not shut the door upon us as dupes and fools. We know the meaning of discipline; we turn our backs and go.”

This resolution was passed, and they sent Hieronymus an Eleian, with two others, Eurylochus an Arcadian and Philesius an Achaean, to deliver the message. So these set off on their errand. But while the soldiers were still seated in conclave, Coeratadas, of Thebes, arrived. He was a Theban not in exile, but with a taste for generalship, who made it his business to see if any city or nation were in need of his services. Thus, on the present occasion, he presented himself, and begged to state that he was ready to put himself at their head, and lead them into the Delta of Thrace, as it is called, where they would find themselves in a land of plenty; but until they got there, he would provide them with meat and drink enough and to spare. While they were still listening to this tale, the return message from Anaxibius came. His

*vocabulary*

ἀείδω sing; also ἀοιδιάω

ἀλίσκομαι be captured

ἄλφιτον barley meal

ἀπαγγέλλω tell about

ἄπειμι be absent, go away, return

ἀπέρχομαι go away, depart

ἀποκρίνω (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself

ἀσπάζομαι greet, salute

βουλευώ to deliberate ~volunteer

δέχομαι accept, receive, await

~doctrine

διαπράσσω travel over, accomplish

εἰκός οἰκότος (n, 3) likely

εἴκοσι twenty

εἴσειμι go in; come in range

εἶσω into; also ἔσω

ἐνδον in the house of; within

ἔξω outward, outside

ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable

ἔπομαι follow, support, chase ~sequel

ἦκω to have come

θύω rush; sacrifice

ἱερεῖον ἱρηίου sacrificial animal

ἵημι release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet

κατατίθημι put down

κηρύσσω be a henchman, summon people

κλείω tell of, celebrate

μάντις -ος (m) seer ~mantis

μεταπέμπω send; (mid) summon

οἰκέω inhabit

οἴκοι at home

οἶνος wine ~wine

ὅμως anyway, nevertheless

παρέχω furnish

πλησίος near, neighboring

πύλη gate ~Thermopylae

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army

στρατιά army

στρατιώτης (m, 1) soldier, mercenary

συντίθημι hearken, mark

τείχος -υς (n, 3) outdoor wall; also

τειχίον

τελέω fulfill; pf pass: be feasible

τέλος -υς (n, 3) end; military post

τρεις three ~three

ὕστεραῖος the next; later

φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics

μόλωσιν, εἰς ἀφθονίαν παρέξειν ἔφη καὶ σιτία καὶ ποτά. ἀκούουσι  
 ταῦτα τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ τὰ παρὰ Ἀναξίβιου ἅμα ἀπαγγελλόμενα  
 ἀπεκρίνατο γὰρ ὅτι πειθομένοις αὐτοῖς οὐ μεταμελήσει, ἀλλὰ τοῖς  
 τε οἴκοι τέλεσι ταῦτα ἀπαγγελεῖ καὶ αὐτὸς βουλεύσοιτο περὶ αὐτῶν  
 ὃ τι δύναιτο ἀγαθόν, ἐκ τούτου οἱ στρατιῶται τὸν τε Κοιρατάδαν  
 δέχονται στρατηγὸν καὶ ἔξω τοῦ τείχους ἀπήλθον. ὁ δὲ Κοιρατάδας  
 συντίθεται αὐτοῖς εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίαν παρέσεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα  
 ἔχων καὶ ἱερεῖα καὶ μάντιν καὶ σιτία καὶ ποτὰ τῇ στρατιᾷ. ἐπεὶ  
 δὲ ἐξήλθον, ὁ Ἀναξίβιος ἔκλεισε τὰς πύλας καὶ ἐκήρυξεν ὡς ἂν  
 ἀλῶ ἔνδον ἂν τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὅτι πεπράσεται. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία  
 Κοιρατάδας μὲν ἔχων τὰ ἱερεῖα καὶ τὸν μάντιν ἦκε καὶ ἄλφιστα  
 φέροντες εἶποντο αὐτῷ εἴκοσιν ἄνδρες καὶ οἶνον ἄλλοι εἴκοσι καὶ  
 ἐλαῶν τρεῖς καὶ σκοροδῶν ἀνὴρ ὅσον ἐδύνατο μέγιστον φορτίον  
 καὶ ἄλλος κρομμύων. ταῦτα δὲ καταθέμενος ὡς ἐπὶ δάσμευσιν  
 ἐθύετο. Ξενοφῶν δὲ μεταπεμφόμενος Κλέανδρον ἐκέλευε διαπραῶσαι  
 ὅπως εἰς τὸ τείχος εἰσέλθοι καὶ ἀποπλεύσαι ἐκ Βυζαντίου. ἐλθὼν  
 δ' ὁ Κλέανδρος, Μάλα μόλις, ἔφη, διαπραξάμενος ἦκω· λέγειν γὰρ  
 Ἀναξίβιον ὅτι οὐκ ἐπιτήδειον εἶη τοὺς μὲν στρατιώτας πλησίον εἶναι  
 τοῦ τείχους, Ξενοφῶντα δὲ ἔνδον· τοὺς Βυζαντίους δὲ στασιάζειν καὶ  
 πονηροὺς εἶναι πρὸς ἀλλήλους· ὅμως δὲ εἰσιέναι, ἔφη, ἐκέλευεν, εἰ  
 μέλλεις σὺν αὐτῷ ἐκπλεῖν. ὁ μὲν δὴ Ξενοφῶν ἀσπασάμενος τοὺς  
 στρατιώτας εἶσω τοῦ τείχους ἀπήει σὺν Κλεάνδρῳ. ὁ δὲ Κοιρατάδας

|come, go εἰς ἀφθονίαν παρέξεν ἔφη καὶ σιτία καὶ |ποτή?: flight? ; or ποτός?:  
 |potable  
 ταῦτα τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ τὰ παρὰ Ἀναξίβιου ἅμα ἀπαγγελλόμενα  
 ἀπεκρίνατο γὰρ ὅτι πειθόμενοις αὐτοῖς οὐ μεταμελήσει, ἀλλὰ τοῖς  
 τε οἴκοι τέλεσι ταῦτα ἀπαγγελεῖ καὶ αὐτὸς βουλευέσσοιτο περὶ αὐτῶν  
 ὅ τι |enter, put on, ἴν, ἐκ τούτου οἱ στρατιῶται τόν τε Κοιρατάδαν  
 |strip off  
 δέχονται στρατηγὸν καὶ ἔξω τοῦ τείχους ἀπήλθον. ὁ δὲ Κοιρατάδας  
 |hearken, mark ἵς εἰς τὴν |the next; later, ἴσασθαι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα  
 ἔχων καὶ |sacrificial` |seer καὶ σιτία καὶ |ποτή?: flight? ; or ἐπὶ  
 |animal |ποτός?: potable  
 δὲ ἐξήλθον, ὁ Ἀναξίβιος |tell of, celebrate ἴς καὶ ἐκήρυξεν ὡς ἂν  
 ἀλῶ ἔνδον ὧν τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὅτι πεπράσεται. τῇ δ' |the next; later  
 Κοιρατάδας μὲν ἔχων τὰ |sacrificial` τὸν |seer ἦκε καὶ |barley meal  
 |animal  
 φέροντες εἶποντο αὐτῷ εἴκοσιν ἄνδρες καὶ οἶνον ἄλλοι εἴκοσι καὶ  
 ἑλαῶν τρεῖς καὶ σκοροδῶν ἀνὴρ ὅσον |enter, put on, ἴτον φορτίον  
 |strip off  
 καὶ ἄλλος κρομμύων. ταῦτα δὲ καταθέμενος ὡς ἐπὶ δάσμευσιν  
 ἐθύετο. Ξενοφῶν δὲ |send; (mid) summon ἴδρον ἐκέλευε διαπραῖσαι  
 ὅπως εἰς τὸ τείχος εἰσέλθοι καὶ ἀποπλεύσαι ἐκ Βυζαντίου. ἐλθὼν  
 δ' ὁ Κλέανδρος, Μάλα μόλις, ἔφη, διαπραξάμενος ἦκω· λέγειν γὰρ  
 Ἀναξίβιον ὅτι οὐκ ἐπιτήδειον εἶη τοὺς μὲν στρατιώτας πλησίον εἶναι  
 τοῦ τείχους, Ξενοφῶντα δὲ ἔνδον· τοὺς Βυζαντίους δὲ στασιάζειν καὶ  
 πονηροὺς εἶναι πρὸς ἀλλήλους· ὅμως δὲ |go in ἴεφη, ἐκέλευεν, εἰ  
 μέλλεις σὺν αὐτῷ ἐκπλεῖν. ὁ μὲν δὴ Ξενοφῶν ἀσπασάμενος τοὺς  
 στρατιώτας εἶσω τοῦ τείχους ἀπήει σὺν Κλεάνδρῳ. ὁ δὲ Κοιρατάδας

answer was: "The discipline, they had spoken of, was not a thing they would regret; indeed he would report their behaviour to the authorities at home; and for himself, he would take advice and do the best he could for them."

Thereupon the soldiers accepted Coeratadas as their general, and retired without the walls. Their new general undertook to present himself to the troops next day with sacrificial beasts and a soothsayer, with eatables also and drinkables for the army. Now, as soon as they were gone out, Anaxibius closed the gates and issued a proclamation to the effect that "any of the soldiers caught inside should be knocked down to the hammer and sold at once." Next day, Coeratadas arrived with the victims and the soothsayer. A string of twenty bearers bearing barleymeal followed at his heels, succeeded by other twenty carrying wine, and three laden with a supply of olives, and two others carrying, the one about as much garlic as a single man could lift, and the other a similar load of onions. These various supplies he set down, apparently for distribution, and began to sacrifice.

Now Xenophon sent to Cleander, begging him to arrange matters so that he might be allowed to enter the walls, with a view to starting from Byzantium on his homeward voyage. Cleander came, and this is what he said: "I have come; but I was barely able to arrange what you want. Anaxibius insisted: 'It was not convenient that Xenophon should be inside while the soldiers are close to the walls without; the Byzantines at sixes and sevens moreover; and no love lost between the one party of them and the other.' Still, he ended by bidding you to come inside, if you were really minded to leave the town by sea with himself." Accordingly Xenophon bade the soldiers good-bye, and returned with Cleander within the walls.

To return to Coeratadas. The first day he failed to get favourable signs at the sacrifice, and never



*vocabulary***ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return**ἀπεῖπον** refuse, renounce, declare**ἀποδίδωμι** repay**ἀποπλέω** sail away**βωμός** altar; stand, pedestal**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross**διαμετρέω** measure**διατριβῶ** wear down, delay ~tribology**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,**ἐξαποδύνω****ἐνδέω** tie to, entangle**ἐπιμένω** wait, stay**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἡμερος** domesticated**θύω** rush; sacrifice**ἱερεῖον ἱρηίου** sacrificial animal**κατέρχομαι** come down, out from**κώμη** village**νέα** ship ~navy; also ναῦς, νηῦς**νέομαι** go; come home ~nostalgia**νέος** young; neuter: recently ~neon**νέω** spin; swim ~neuro; also νήχω**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics**οἴομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι, οἴομαι**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey

~odometer; also ὁδός

**πέραν** on the other side, across**προῖστημι** put forward; (+gen) be head of, guard**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender, come in**σίτος** (m/n) grain, bread, food

~parasite

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army**στρατηγία** office of command**στρατιά** army**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up station**ταυτός** identical**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case**ὑστεραίος** the next; later**χῶρος** place

τῇ μὲν πρώτη ἡμέρα οὐκ ἐκαλλιέρει οὐδὲ διεμέτρησεν οὐδὲν τοῖς στρατιώταις· τῇ δ' ὑστεραία τὰ μὲν ἱερεῖα εἰστήκει παρὰ τὸν βωμὸν καὶ Κοιρατάδας ἐστεφανωμένους ὡς θύσων· προσελθὼν δὲ Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεύς καὶ Νέων ὁ Ἄσιναῖος καὶ Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομήσιος ἔλεγον Κοιρατάδα μὴ θύειν, ὡς οὐχ ἡγησόμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ, εἰ μὴ δώσει τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὁ δὲ κελεύει διαμετρεῖσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ πολλῶν ἐνέδει αὐτῷ ὥστε ἡμέρας σίτον ἐκάστῳ γενέσθαι τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ἀναλαβὼν τὰ ἱερεῖα ἀπήει καὶ τὴν στρατηγίαν ἀπειπών.

## 7.2

Νέων δὲ ὁ Ἄσιναῖος καὶ Φρυνίσκος ὁ Ἄχαιὸς καὶ Φιλήσιος ὁ Ἄχαιὸς καὶ Ξανθικλῆς ὁ Ἄχαιὸς καὶ Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεύς ἐπέμενον ἐπὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ, καὶ εἰς κώμας τῶν Θρακῶν προελθόντες τὰς κατὰ Βυζάντιον ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο. καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐστασίαζον, Κλεάνωρ μὲν καὶ Φρυνίσκος πρὸς Σεύθην βουλόμενοι ἄγειν· ἔπειθε γὰρ αὐτούς, καὶ ἔδωκε τῷ μὲν ἵππον, τῷ δὲ γυναῖκα· Νέων δὲ εἰς Χερρόνησον, οἰόμενος, εἰ ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίοις γένοιτο, παντὸς ἂν προεστάναι τοῦ στρατεύματος· Τιμασίων δὲ προθυμείτο πέραν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν πάλιν διαβῆναι, οἰόμενος ἂν οἴκαδε κατελθεῖν. καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ταῦτὰ ἐβούλοντο. διατριβομένου δὲ τοῦ χρόνου πολλοὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, οἱ μὲν τὰ ὄπλα ἀποδιδόμενοι κατὰ τοὺς χώρους ἀπέπλεον ὡς ἐδύναντο, οἱ δὲ καὶ εἰς τὰς πόλεις κατεμίγνυντο.

τῇ μὲν πρώτη ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐκαλλιέρι οὐδὲ |measure οὐδὲν τοῖς  
 στρατιώταις· τῇ δ' |the next; later ` |sacrificial ἤκει παρὰ τὸν |altar  
 καὶ Κοιρατάδας ἐστεφανωμένος ὡς θύσων· προσελθὼν δὲ Τιμασίων  
 ὁ Δαρδανεύς καὶ |νέα?: ship ; or νέος?: young; neuter: recently ; or, νέομαι?: come  
 |home ; or νέω?: spin; swim  
 Κοιρατάδα μὴ θύειν, ὡς οὐχ ἡγησόμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ, εἰ μὴ δώσει τὰ  
 ἐπιτήδεια. ὁ δὲ κελεύει |measure ἐπεὶ δὲ πολλῶν ἐνέδει αὐτῷ  
 ὥστε ἡμέρας σίτον ἐκάστῳ γενέσθαι τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ἀναλαβὼν τὰ  
 |sacrificial, εἰ καὶ τὴν |office of refuse, re-  
 |animal |command |nounce, declare

## 7.2

|νέα?: ship ; or νέος?: young; neuter: recently ; or ἰλήσιος ὁ Ἀχαιοὺς  
 |νέομαι?: come home ; or νέω?: spin; swim  
 καὶ Ξανθικλῆς ὁ Ἀχαιοὺς καὶ Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεύς |wait, stay `πὶ  
 τῇ στρατιᾷ, καὶ εἰς |village τῶν Θρακῶν προελθόντες τὰς κατὰ  
 Βυζάντιον |encamp or . καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐστασίαζον, Κλεάνωρ  
 μὲν καὶ Φιτίσκος πρὸς Σεύθην βουλόμενοι ἄγειν· ἔπειθε γὰρ  
 αὐτούς, καὶ ἔδωκε τῷ μὲν ἵππον, τῷ δὲ γυναῖκα· Νέων δὲ εἰς  
 Χερρόνησον, οἰόμενος, εἰ ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίοις γένοιτο, παντὸς ἂν  
 |put forward; (+gen) ἰτεύματος· Τιμασίων δὲ προθυμείτο |across :is  
 |be head of, guard  
 τὴν Ἀσίαν πάλιν |pass over, cross :s ἂν οἴκαδε κατελθεῖν. καὶ οἱ  
 στρατιῶται |identical ἕλοντο. |wear down, delay ἡ χρόνου πολλοὶ  
 τῶν στρατιωτῶν, οἱ μὲν τὰ ὄπλα ἀποδιδόμενοι κατὰ τοὺς |place  
 ἀπέπλεον ὡς ἐδύνατο, οἱ δὲ καὶ εἰς τὰς πόλεις κατεμίγνυτο.

a dole of rations did he make to the soldiers. On the second day the victims were standing ready near the altar, and so was Coeratadas, with chaplet crowned, all ready to sacrifice, when up comes Timasion the Dardanian, with Neon the Asinaean, and Cleanor of Orchomenus, forbidding Coeratadas to sacrifice: "He must understand there was an end to his generalship, unless he gave them provisions." The other bade them measure out the supplies, "Pray, dole them out." But when he found that he had a good deal short of a single day's provisions for each man, he picked up his paraphernalia of sacrifice and withdrew. As to being general, he would have nothing more to say to it.

## 7.2

Now these five were left— Neon the Asinaean, Phryniscus the Achaean, Philesius the Achaean, Xanthicles the Achaean, Timasion the Dardanian— at the head of the army, and they pushed on to some villages of the Thracians facing Byzantium, and there encamped. Now the generals could not agree. Cleanor and Phryniscus wished to march to join Seuthes, who had worked upon their feelings by presenting one with a horse and the other with a woman to wife. But Neon's object was to come to the Chersonese: "When we are under the wing of the Lacedaemonians," he thought, "I shall step to the front and command the whole army."

Timasion's one ambition was to cross back again into Asia, hoping to be reinstated at home and end his exile. The soldiers shared the wishes of the last general. But, as time dragged on, many of the men sold their arms at different places and set sail as best they could; others (actually gave away their arms, some here, some there, and) became absorbed in the cities. One man rejoiced. This was Anaxibius, to whom the break-up of

*vocabulary*

**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**ἄλλομαι** become whole, sound  
**ἀμελέω** disregard (μέλω)  
**ἀποδίδωμι** repay  
**ἀποπλέω** sail away  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
**διαφθείρω** destroy; pf.: to be beside oneself  
**δίδημι** should; bind; need, fail; also  
 δέω  
**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐλαχύς** small; comp.: less ~light  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**θεραπεύω** help, serve  
**κάμνω** toil, acquire  
**μέλω** be in/on the mind  
**ναύαρχος** admiral

**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,  
 οἶομαι  
**ὅπόσος** as/how many/great  
**οὐκέτι** no more  
**παραπλέω** sail past  
**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow  
**πάσσω** sprinkle; insert in a web  
**πατέομαι** eat, drink  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**προπέμπω** send, send ahead  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συγχέω** entangle, destroy, confound  
**σμπέμπω** send with  
**συναντάω** encounter  
**τετρακόσιοι** 400  
**τέχνη** craft, art, plan, contrivance  
 ~technology  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**χαίρω** rejoice ~eucharist  
**χαρίζομαι** gratify someone ~charisma

Ἄναξιβιος δ' ἔχαιρε ταῦτα ἀκούων, διαφθειρόμενον τὸ στράτευμα· τούτων γὰρ γιγνομένων ὤφето μάλιστα χαρίζεσθαι Φαρναβάζω.

Ἀποπλέοντι δὲ Ἄναξιβίῳ ἐκ Βυζαντίου συναντῶ Ἀρίσταρχος ἐν Κυζίκῳ διάδοχος Κλεάνδρω Βυζαντίου ἀρμοστής· ἐλέγετο δὲ ὅτι καὶ ναύαρχος διάδοχος Πῶλος ὅσον οὐ παρεῖη ἤδη εἰς Ἑλλάσποντον. καὶ Ἄναξιβιος τῷ μὲν Ἀριστάρχῳ ἐπιστέλλει ὁπόσους ἂν εὕρη ἐν Βυζαντίῳ τῶν Κύρου στρατιωτῶν ὑπολελειμμένους ἀποδόσθαι· ὁ δὲ Κλεάνδρος οὐδένα ἐπεπράκει, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς κάμνοντας ἐθεράπευεν οἰκτίρων καὶ ἀναγκάζων οἰκία δέχεσθαι· Ἀρίσταρχος δ' ἐπεὶ ἦλθε τάχιστα, οὐκ ἐλάττους τετρακοσίων ἀπέδοτο. Ἄναξιβιος δὲ παραπλεύσας εἰς Πάριον πέμπει παρὰ Φαρνάβαζον κατὰ τὰ συγκείμενα. ὁ δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσθετο Ἀρίσταρχόν τε ἦκοντα εἰς Βυζάντιον ἀρμοστήν καὶ Ἄναξιβιον οὐκέτι ναυαρχοῦντα, Ἄναξιβίου μὲν ἠμέλησε, πρὸς Ἀρίσταρχον δὲ διεπράττετο τὰ αὐτὰ περὶ τοῦ Κύρου στρατεύματος ἅπερ πρὸς Ἄναξιβιον.

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ἄναξιβιος καλέσας Ξενοφῶντα κελεύει πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ μηχανῇ πλεῦσαι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ὡς τάχιστα, καὶ συνέχειν τε αὐτὸ καὶ συναθροίζειν τῶν διεσπαρμένων ὡς ἂν πλείστους δύνηται, καὶ παραγαγόντα εἰς τὴν Πέρωθον διαβιβάζειν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν ὅτι τάχιστα· καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ τριακόντορον καὶ ἐπιστολὴν καὶ ἄνδρα συμπέμπει κελεύσοντα τοὺς Περωνθίους ὡς τάχιστα Ξενοφῶντα προπέμψαι τοῖς ἵπποις ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν διαπλεύσας ἀφικνέεται

Ἀναξίβιος δ' ἔχαιρε ταῦτα ἀκούων, διαφθειρόμενον τὸ στράτευμα·  
τούτων γὰρ γιγνομένων ᾤετο μάλιστα χαρίζεσθαι Φαρναβάζω.

Ἀποπλέοντι δὲ Ἀναξιβίῳ ἐκ Βυζαντίου |encounter<sup>α</sup> ρίσταρχος ἐν  
Κυζίκῳ διάδοχος Κλεάνδρῳ Βυζαντίου ἀρμοστής· ἐλέγετο δὲ ὅτι καὶ  
|admiral διάδοχος Πῶλος ὅσον οὐ παρεῖη ἤδη εἰς Ἑλλάσποντον.  
καὶ Ἀναξίβιος τῷ μὲν Ἀριστάρχῳ ἐπιστέλλει |as/how many/great  
ἐν Βυζαντίῳ τῶν Κύρου στρατιωτῶν ὑπολελειμμένους ἀποδόσθαι·  
ὁ δὲ Κλεάνδρος οὐδένα ἐπεπράκει, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς κάμνοντας  
ἐθεράπευεν οἰκτίρων καὶ ἀναγκάζων οἰκία δέχεσθαι· Ἀρίσταρχος δ'  
ἐπεὶ |ἄλθομαι?: become whole ; or |400 ἀπέδοτο. Ἀναξίβιος  
δὲ |ἔρχομαι?: go, come εἰς Πάριον πέμπει παρὰ Φαρνάβαζον κατὰ  
τὰ συγκείμενα. ὁ δ' ἐπεὶ ἤσθετο Ἀρίσταρχόν τε ἦκοντα εἰς  
Βυζάντιον ἀρμοστήν καὶ Ἀναξίβιον οὐκέτι ναυαρχοῦντα, Ἀναξίβιον  
μὲν |ἀμελέω?: disregard ; or ν δὲ διεπράττετο τὰ αὐτὰ περὶ τοῦ  
|μέλω?: be in/on the mind  
Κύρου στρατεύματος ἄπερ πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον.

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ἀναξίβιος καλέσας Ξενοφῶντα κελεύει πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ  
μηχανῇ πλεῦσαι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ὡς τάχιστα, καὶ |entangle, ' ἔ  
καὶ συναθροΐζειν τῶν διεσπαρμένων ὡς ἂν πλείστ|destroy, con-  
|foundηται, καὶ  
παραγαγόντα εἰς τὴν Πέρνηθον διαβιβάζειν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν ὅτι τάχιστα·  
καὶ |δίδημι?: should; bind; need, fail πιστολὴν καὶ ἄνδρα |send with  
; or δίδωμι?: give; permit  
κελεύσοντα τοὺς Περνηθίους ὡς τάχιστα Ξενοφῶντα |send, send ahead  
ἕποισ ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν διαπλεύσας ἀφικνεῖται

the army was a blessing. "That is the way," he said to himself, "I can best gratify Pharnabazus."

But Anaxibius, while prosecuting his voyage from Byzantium, was met at Cyzicus by Aristarchus, the new governor, who was to succeed Cleander at Byzantium; and report said that a new admiral, Polus, if he had not actually arrived, would presently reach the Hellespont and relieve Anaxibius. The latter sent a parting injunction to Aristarchus to be sure and sell all the Cyreian soldiers he could lay hands on still lingering in Byzantium; for Cleander had not sold a single man of them; on the contrary, he had made it his business to tend the sick and wounded, pitying them, and insisting on their being received in the houses. Aristarchus changed all that, and was no sooner arrived in Byzantium than he sold no less than four hundred of them. Meanwhile Anaxibius, on his coasting voyage, reached Parium, and, according to the terms of their agreement, he sent to Pharnabazus. But the latter, learning that Aristarchus was the new governor at Byzantium, and that Anaxibius had ceased to be admiral, turned upon him a cold shoulder, and set out concocting the same measures concerning the Cyreian army with Aristarchus, as he had lately been at work upon with Anaxibius.

Anaxibius thereupon summoned Xenophon and bade him, by every manner of means, sail to the army with the utmost speed, and keep it together. "He was to collect the scattered fragments and march them down to Perinthus, and thence convey them across to Asia without loss of time." And herewith he put a thirty-oared galley at his service, and gave him a letter of authority and an officer to accompany him, with an order to the Perinthians "to escort Xenophon without delay on horseback to the army." So it was that Xenophon



*vocabulary*

**ἀκέομαι** heal, fix  
**ἀπεῖπον** refuse, renounce, declare  
**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**διάγω** ferry across  
**εἴσειμι** go in; come in range  
**ἐνθάδε** here, hither  
**ἐξαγγέλλω** bring news out  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also ἰθύς  
**ἡδέως** pleasantly  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon  
**ναύαρχος** admiral  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,

**οἶομαι**  
**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὄκτακόσιοι** 800  
**οὐκέτι** no more  
**περαιόω** carry across  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**προπέμπω** send, send ahead  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up station  
**συλλαμβάνω** arrest, capture  
**τείχος** -υς (n, 3) outdoor wall; also *τειχίον*  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τριήρης** -ους (f, 3) trireme  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do; also *ὑπίσχομαι*  
**ὑστεραῖος** the next; later  
**χωρίς** separately

ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐδέξαντο ἠδέως καὶ εὐθὺς εἶποντο ἄσμενοι ὡς διαβησόμενοι ἐκ τῆς Θράκης εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν.

Ὁ δὲ Σεύθης ἀκούσας ἤκοντα πάλιν πέμψας πρὸς αὐτὸν κατὰ θάλατταν Μηδοσάδην ἐδεῖτο τὴν στρατιὰν ἄγειν πρὸς ἑαυτόν, ὑπισχνόμενος αὐτῷ ὅ τι ᾤετο λέγων πείσειν. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδὲν οἶόν τε εἶη τούτων γενέσθαι. καὶ ὁ μὲν ταῦτα ἀκούσας ᾤχετο. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐπεὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς Πέρινθον, Νέων μὲν ἀποσπάσας ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο χωρὶς ἔχων ὡς ὀκτακοσίους ἀνθρώπους· τὸ δ' ἄλλο στράτευμα πᾶν ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ παρὰ τὸ τεῖχος τὸ Περυνθίων ἦν.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἔπραττε περὶ πλοίων, ὅπως ὅτι τάχιστα διαβαίεν. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἀφικόμενος Ἀρίσταρχος ὁ ἐκ Βυζαντίου ἀρμοστής, ἔχων δύο τριήρεις, πεπεισμένος ὑπὸ Φαρναβάζου τοῖς τε ναυκλήροις ἀπέειπε μὴ διάγειν ἐλθὼν τε ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα τοῖς στρατιώταις εἶπε μὴ περαιούσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεγεν ὅτι Ἀναξίβιος ἐκέλευσε καὶ ἐμὲ πρὸς τοῦτο ἔπεμψεν ἐνθάδε. πάλιν δ' Ἀρίσταρχος ἔλεξεν· Ἀναξίβιος μὲν τοῖνυν οὐκέτι ναύαρχος, ἐγὼ δὲ τῆδε ἀρμοστής· εἰ δέ τινα ὑμῶν λήψομαι ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ, καταδύσω. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ᾤχετο εἰς τὸ τεῖχος. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία μεταπέμπεται τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς τοῦ στρατεύματος. ἤδη δὲ ὄντων πρὸς τῷ τείχει ἐξαγγέλλει τις τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὅτι εἰ εἴσεισι, συλληφθήσεται καὶ ἡ αὐτοῦ τι πείσεται ἢ καὶ Φαρναβάζῳ παραδοθήσεται. ὁ δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα τοὺς μὲν προπέμπεται, αὐτὸς δὲ

ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐδέξαντο |pleasantly ὑθὺς εἶποντο ἄσμενοι ὡς |pass over, cross τῆς Θράκης εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν.

Ὁ δὲ Σεύθης |ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix ; or πέμφας πρὸς αὐτὸν κατὰ ἅλατταν Μηδοσάδην ἐδείτο τὴν στρατιὰν ἄγειν πρὸς ἑαυτόν, |promise, agree αὐτῷ ὅ τι ᾗετο λέγων πείσειν. ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι |to do οὐδὲν οἶόν τε εἶη τούτων γενέσθαι. καὶ ὁ μὲν ταῦτα |ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix ; or ἄκούω?: hear, listen οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐπεὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς Πέρηνθον, Νέων μὲν ἀποσπάσας

|encamp or χωρὶς ἔχων ὡς |800 ἀνθρώπους· τὸ δ' |take up station στράτευμα πᾶν ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ παρὰ τὸ τεῖχος τὸ Περωνθίων ἦν.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἔπραττε περὶ πλοίων, ὅπως ὅτι τάχιστα |pass over, cross τούτῳ ἀφικόμενος Ἀρίσταρχος ὁ ἐκ Βυζαντίου ἀρμοστής, ἔχων δύο τριήρεις, πεπεισμένος ὑπὸ Φαρναβάζου τοῖς τε ναυκλήροις |refuse, , ; |ferry ἐλθὼν τε ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα τοῖς |renounce, |across στρατιώταις εἰ |declare |carry across εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεγεν ὅτι Ἀναξίβιος ἐκέλευσε καὶ ἐμὲ πρὸς τοῦτο ἔπεμψεν ἐνθάδε. πάλιν δ' Ἀρίσταρχος ἔλεξεν· Ἀναξίβιος μὲν τοῖνυν οὐκέτι |admiral ἐγὼ δὲ τῆδε ἀρμοστής· εἰ δέ τινα ὑμῶν λήψομαι ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ, καταδύσω. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ᾗχετο εἰς τὸ τεῖχος. τῇ δ' |the next; later |send; (mid) summon ρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς τοῦ στρατεύματος. ἦδη δὲ ὄντων πρὸς τῷ τείχει |bring news out ᾧ Ξενοφῶντι ὅτι εἰ |go in συλληφθήσεται καὶ ἡ αὐτοῦ τι πείσεται ἢ καὶ Φαρναβάζῳ παραδοθήσεται. ὁ δὲ |ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix ; or |send, send ahead ; δὲ ἄκούω?: hear, listen

sailed across and eventually reached the army. The soldiers gave him a joyous welcome, and would have been only too glad to cross from Thrace into Asia under his leadership.

But Seuthes, hearing that Xenophon had arrived, sent Medosades again, by sea to meet him, and begged him to bring the army to him; and whatever he thought would make his speech persuasive, he was ready to promise him. But the other replied, that none of these things were open to him to do; and with this answer Medosades departed, and the Hellenes proceeded to Perinthus. Here on arrival Neon withdrew his troops and encamped apart, having about eight hundred men; while the remainder of the army lay in one place under the walls of Perinthus.

After this, Xenophon set himself to find vessels, so as to lose no time in crossing. But in the interval Aristarchus, the governor from Byzantium, arrived with a couple of war-ships, being moved to do so by Pharnabazus. To make doubly sure, he first forbade the skippers and shipmasters to carry the troops across, and then he visited the camp and informed the soldiers that their passage into Asia was forbidden. Xenophon replied that he was acting under the orders of Anaxibius, who had sent him thither for this express purpose; to which Aristarchus retorted, "For the matter of that, Anaxibius is no longer admiral, and I am governor in this quarter; if I catch any of you at sea, I will sink you." With these remarks he retired within the walls of Perinthus.

Next day, he sent for the generals and officers of the army. They had already reached the fortification walls, when some one brought word to Xenophon that if he set foot inside, he would be seized, and either meet some ill fate there or more likely be delivered up to Pharnabazus. On hearing this Xenophon sent forward the rest of the party, but for himself pleaded that there was a sacrifice which he wished to offer. In this way he contrived to turn back and consult the victims, "Would the gods allow him to try and bring the army

*vocabulary*

**αἶρω** raise, win ~aorta; also ἀείρω  
**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀσφαλῆς** going ahead, standing firm  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
 ἀφήκω  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐκεῖ** there  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἐξήκοντα** sixty  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**ἔρομαι** ask, search through; also  
 ἀνέρομαι, εἴρομαι, ἐξείρομαι, ἐξέρομαι  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**κεῖμαι** lie  
**λανθάνω** escape notice; (mp+gen)  
 forget ~Lethe; also καταλήθομαι  
**μήτε** neither...nor...

**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,  
 οἶομαι  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὅπου** where  
**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also  
 πειρητίζω  
**πλήν** except  
**πρό** before, forward ~prolog  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**προπέμπω** send, send ahead  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
**σκότος** (m/n) darkness, shadow  
 ~shadow  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
 masc)  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**τριήρης** -ους (f, 3) trireme  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φάος** (n, 3) light; salvation; (pl) eyes  
 ~photon; also φώς  
**φύλαξ** (m) guard; sentry; also  
 φυλακός, φυλακτήρ

εἶπεν ὅτι θύσαι τι βούλοιο. καὶ ἀπελθὼν ἐθύετο εἰ παρείεν αὐτῷ οἱ θεοὶ πειρᾶσθαι πρὸς Σεύθην ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα. ἑώρα γὰρ οὔτε διαβαίνειν ἀσφαλές ὃν τριήρεις ἔχοντας τοῦ κωλύσοντος, οὔτ' ἐπὶ Χερρόνησον ἐλθὼν κατακλεισθῆναι ἐβούλετο καὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἐν πολλῇ σπάνει πάντων γενέσθαι ἔνθα πείθεσθαι μὲν ἀνάγκη τῷ ἐκεῖ ἀρμοστῇ, τῶν δὲ ἐπιτηδείων οὐδὲν ἔμελλεν ἔξειν τὸ στράτευμα.

Καὶ ὁ μὲν ἀμφὶ ταῦτ' εἶχεν· οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἦκοντες παρὰ τοῦ Ἀριστάρχου ἀπήγγελλον ὅτι νῦν μὲν ἀπίεναί σφᾶς κελεύει, τῆς δειλῆς δὲ ἦκειν· ἔνθα καὶ δῆλη μᾶλλον ἐδόκει ἢ ἐπιβουλή. ὁ οὖν Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ ἐδόκει τὰ ἱερά καλὰ εἶναι αὐτῷ καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι ἀσφαλῶς πρὸς Σεύθην ἰέναι, παραλαβὼν Πολυκράτην τὸν Ἀθηναῖον λοχαγὸν καὶ παρὰ τῶν στρατηγῶν ἐκάστου ἄνδρα πλὴν παρὰ Νέωνος ᾧ ἕκαστος ἐπίστευεν ᾧχετο τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπὶ τὸ Σεύθου στράτευμα ἐξήκοντα στάδια. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἦσαν αὐτοῦ, ἐπιτυγχάνει πυροῖς ἐρήμοις. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ᾧχετο μετακεχωρηκέναι ποι τὸν Σεύθην· ἐπεὶ δὲ θορύβου τε ἦσθετο καὶ σημαινόντων ἀλλήλοις τῶν περὶ Σεύθην, κατέμαθεν ὅτι τούτου ἕνεκα τὰ πυρὰ κεκαυμένα εἶη τῷ Σεύθῃ πρὸ τῶν νυκτοφυλάκων, ὅπως οἱ μὲν φύλακες μὴ ὀρῶντο ἐν τῷ σκότει ὄντες μήτε ὀπόσοι μήτε ὅπου εἶεν, οἱ δὲ προσιόντες μὴ λαιθάνοιεν, ἀλλὰ διὰ τὸ φῶς καταφανεῖς εἶεν· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσθετο, προπέμπει τὸν ἐρμηνέα ὃν ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων, καὶ εἰπεῖν κελεύει Σεύθῃ ὅτι Ξενοφῶν πάρεστι βουλόμενος συγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ. οἱ δὲ ἤροντο

εἶπεν ὅτι θύσαι τι βούλοιο. καὶ ἀπελθὼν ἐθύετο εἰ παρέιεν αὐτῷ οἱ θεοὶ πειράσθαι πρὸς Σεύθην ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα. εἴωρα γὰρ οὔτε

|pass over, cross ἔς ὃν τριήρεις ἔχοντος τοῦ κωλύσοντος, οὐτ' ἐπὶ Χερρόνησον ἐλθὼν κατακλεισθῆναι ἐβούλετο καὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἐν

πολλῇ σπάνει πάντων γενέσθαι ἔνθα πείθεσθαι μὲν ἀνάγκη τῷ ἔξειμι?: go  
ἀρμοστῇ, τῶν δὲ ἐπιτηδείων οὐδὲν ἔμελλεν ἔξειν τὸ στράτευμα. |forth ; or ἐκεῖ?: there ; or  
|κεῖμαι?: lie

Καὶ ὁ μὲν ἀμφὶ ταῦτ' εἶχεν· οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἦκοντες παρὰ τοῦ Ἀριστάρχου ἀπήγγελλον ὅτι νῦν μὲν ἀπιέναι σφᾶς κελεύει,

τῆς |afternoon ἴκειν· ἔνθα καὶ δῆλη μᾶλλον ἐδόκει ἢ |a plot, scheme

Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ ἐδόκει τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ εἶναι αὐτῷ καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι

ἀσφαλῶς πρὸς Σεύθην ἰέναι, παραλαβὼν Πολυκράτην τὸν Ἀθηναῖον

λοχαγὸν καὶ παρὰ τῶν στρατηγῶν ἐκάστου ἄνδρα πλὴν παρὰ

Νέωνος ᾧ ἕκαστος ἐπίστευεν ᾗχετο τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπὶ τὸ Σεύθου

στράτευμα ἐξήκοντα |στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also masc) ; or. στάδιος?: (adj)  
|standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters

|wheat ἐρήμοις. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ᾗχετο μετακεχωρηκέναι ποι τὸν

Σεύθην· ἐπεὶ δὲ θορύβου τε ἦσθετο καὶ σημαϊόντων ἀλλήλοισ τῶν

περὶ Σεύθην, κατέμαθεν ὅτι τούτου ἕνεκα τὰ |pyre κεκαυμένα εἶη

τῷ Σεύθῃ πρὸ τῶν νυκτοφυλάκων, ὅπως οἱ μὲν |guard; μὴ ὀρῶντο  
|sentry

ἐν τῷ σκότει ὄντες μῆτε |as/how many/great ἐν, οἱ δὲ προϊόντες

μὴ λανθάνοιεν, ἀλλὰ διὰ τὸ φῶς καταφανεῖς εἶεν· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσθετο,

|send, send|interpreter ἐτύχανεν ἔχων, καὶ εἰπεῖν κελεύει Σεύθῃ  
|ahead

ὅτι Ξενοφῶν πάρεστι βουλόμενος |associate with, ᾧ. οἱ δὲ ἦροντο  
|meet, have sex

over to Seuthes?" On the one hand it was plain that the idea of crossing over to Asia in the face of this man with his ships of war, who meant to bar the passage, was too dangerous. Nor did he altogether like the notion of being blocked up in the Chersonese with an army in dire need of everything; where, besides being at the beck and call of the governor of the place, they would be debarred from the necessities of life.

While Xenophon was thus employed, the generals and officers came back with a message from Aristarchus, who had told them they might retire for the present, but in the afternoon he would expect them. The former suspicions of a plot had now ripened to a certainty. Xenophon meantime had ascertained that the victims were favourable to his project. He personally, and the army as a whole, might with safety proceed to Seuthes, they seemed to say. Accordingly, he took with him Polycrates, the Athenian captain, and from each of the generals, not including Neon, some one man whom they could in each case trust, and in the night they set off to visit the army of Seuthes, sixty furlongs distant.

As they approached, they came upon some deserted watch-fires, and their first impression was that Seuthes had shifted his position; but presently perceiving a confused sound (the voices of Seuthes' people signalling to one another), the explanation dawned on him: Seuthes kept his watch-fires kindled in front of, instead of behind, his night pickets, in order that the outposts, being in the dark, might escape notice, their numbers and position thus being a mystery; whilst any party approaching from the outside, so far from escaping notice, would, through the glare of the fire, stand out conspicuously. Perceiving how matters stood, Xenophon sent forward his interpreter, who was one of the party, and bade him inform Seuthes that Xenophon was there and craved conference with him. The others asked if he were an Athenian from the army yonder, and no sooner had the interpreter replied, "Yes, the same," than up they leapt and galloped



off; and in less time than it takes to tell



*vocabulary*

**ἄλθομαι** become whole, sound  
**ἀναπηδάω** leap up, start up  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι,  
 ὄλλυμι  
**ἀσπάζομαι** greet, salute  
**αὐθις** back, again, moreover ~after  
**ἀφαιρέω** take away  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**διακόσιοι** two hundred  
**διώκω** chase  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐνδον** in the house of; within  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεὶ  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἥμερος** domesticated  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**οἶνος** wine ~wine

**οἰνώω** (m, 3) make drunk  
**πάντοσε** in all directions  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πρόγονος** first-born lamb  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do; also  
 ὑπίσχομαι  
**ὔστερον** later  
**ὔστερος** later, last  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φόβος** fear, rout, panic ~phobia  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard  
 ~phylactery  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χώρα** place

εἰ ὁ Ἀθηναῖος ὁ ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔφη οὗτος εἶναι, ἀναπηδήσαντες ἐδώκον· καὶ ὀλίγον ὕστερον παρήσαν πελτασταὶ ὅσον διακόσιοι, καὶ παραλαβόντες Ξενοφῶντα καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ ἦγον πρὸς Σεύθην. ὁ δ' ἦν ἐν τύρσει μάλα φυλαττόμενος, καὶ ἵπποι περὶ αὐτὴν κύκλω ἐγκεχαλιωμένοι· διὰ γὰρ τὸν φόβον τὰς μὲν ἡμέρας ἐχίλου τοὺς ἵππους, τὰς δὲ νύκτας ἐγκεχαλιωμένοι ἐφυλάττετο. ἐλέγετο γὰρ καὶ πρόσθεν Τήρης ὁ τούτου πρόγονος ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ χώρᾳ πολὺ ἔχων στράτευμα ὑπὸ τούτων τῶν ἀνδρῶν πολλοὺς ἀπολέσαι καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα ἀφαιρεθῆναι· ἦσαν δ' οὗτοι Θυνοί, πάντων λεγόμενοι εἶναι μάλιστα νυκτὸς πολεμικώτατοι.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἦσαν, ἐκέλευσεν εἰσελθεῖν Ξενοφῶντα ἔχοντα δύο οὖς βούλιτο. ἐπειδὴ δ' ἔνδον ἦσαν, ἠσπάζοντο μὲν πρῶτον ἀλλήλους καὶ κατὰ τὸν Θράκιον νόμον κέρατα οἴνου προύπινον· παρῆν δὲ καὶ Μηδοσάδης τῷ Σεύθῃ, ὅσπερ ἐπρέσβευεν αὐτῷ πάντοσε. ἔπειτα δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἤρχετο λέγειν· Ἐπεμψας πρὸς ἐμέ, ὦ Σεύθη, εἰς Καλχηδόνα πρῶτον Μηδοσάδην τουτονί, δεόμενός μου συμπροθυμηθῆναι διαβῆναι τὸ στράτευμα ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ ὑπισχνούμενός μοι, εἰ ταῦτα πράξαιμι, εὖ ποιήσεις, ὡς ἔφη Μηδοσάδης οὗτος. ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπήρετο τὸν Μηδοσάδην εἰ ἀληθῆ ταῦτα εἶη. ὁ δ' ἔφη. Αὐθις ἦλθε Μηδοσάδης οὗτος ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ διέβην πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἐκ Παρίου, ὑπισχνούμενος, εἰ ἄγοιμι τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς σέ, τᾶλλα τέ σε φίλω μοι χρήσεσθαι

εἰ ὁ Ἀθηναῖος ὁ ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος. **|after;** ἔφη οὗτος εἶναι, **|because**  
**|leap up, start up** ἴωκον· καὶ ὀλίγον ὕστερον παρήσαν **|light**  
**|troops**  
 ὅσον διακόσιοι, καὶ παραλαβόντες Ξενοφῶντα καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ  
 ἦγον πρὸς Σεύθη. ὁ δ' ἦν ἐν τύρσει μάλα φυλαττόμενος, καὶ  
 ἵπποι περὶ αὐτὴν **|circle,** ἐγκεχαλιωμένοι· διὰ γὰρ τὸν φόβον τὰς  
**|wheel**  
 μὲν ἡμέρας ἐχίλου τοὺς ἵππους, τὰς δὲ νύκτας ἐγκεχαλιωμένοις  
 ἐφυλάττετο. ἐλέγετο γὰρ καὶ πρόσθεν Τήρης ὁ τούτου **|first-born lamb**  
 ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ χώρᾳ πολὺ ἔχων στράτευμα ὑπὸ τούτων τῶν ἀνδρῶν  
 πολλοὺς ἀπολέσαι καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα ἀφαιρεθῆναι· ἦσαν δ' οὗτοι  
 Θυνοί, πάντων λεγόμενοι εἶναι μάλιστα νυκτὸς πολεμκώτατοι.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἦσαν, ἐκέλευσεν εἰσελθεῖν Ξενοφῶντα ἔχοντα δύο  
 οὐς βούλοιο. **|after;** ἔνδον ἦσαν, ἡσπάζοντο μὲν πρῶτον  
**|because**  
 ἀλλήλους καὶ κατὰ τὸν Θράκιον νόμον κέρατα οἴνου προύπινον·  
 παρῆν δὲ καὶ Μηδοσάδης τῷ Σεύθῃ, ὅσπερ ἐπρέσβευεν αὐτῷ  
**|in all directions** δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἤρχετο λέγειν· Ἐπεμψας πρὸς ἐμέ,  
 ὦ Σεύθη, εἰς Καλχηδόνα πρῶτον Μηδοσάδην τουτονί, δεόμενός  
 μου συμπροθυμηθῆναι **|pass over, cross,** ἄτευμα ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ  
**|promise, agree** μοι, εἰ ταῦτα πράξαμι, εὖ ποιήσεις, ὡς ἔφη  
**|to do**  
 Μηδοσάδης οὗτος. ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπήρετο τὸν Μηδοσάδην εἰ ἀληθῆ  
 ταῦτα εἶη. ὁ δ' ἔφη. Αὐθις **|ἄλθομαι?: become whole** ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ  
**|; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come**  
**|pass over, cross** ἰ τὸ στράτευμα ἐκ Παρίου, **|promise, agree** εἰ  
**|to do**  
 ἄγομι τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς σέ, τὰλλα τέ σε φίλω μοι χρήσεσθαι

a couple of hundred peltasts had come up who seized and carried off Xenophon and those with him and brought them to Seuthes. The latter was in a tower right well guarded, and there were horses round it in a circle, standing all ready bitted and bridled; for his alarm was so great that he gave his horses their provender during the day, and during the nights he kept watch and ward with the brutes thus bitted and bridled. It was stated in explanation that in old days an ancestor of his, named Teres, had been in this very country with a large army, several of whom he had lost at the hands of the native inhabitants, besides being robbed of his baggage train. The inhabitants of the country are Thynians, and they are reputed to be far the most warlike set of fighters— especially at night.

When they drew near, Seuthes bade Xenophon enter, and bring with him any two he might choose. As soon as they were inside, they first greeted one another warmly, and then, according to the Thracian custom, pledged themselves in bowls of wine. There was further present at the elbow of Seuthes, Medosades, who on all occasions acted as his ambassador in chief. Xenophon took the initiative and spoke as follows: “You have sent to me, Seuthes, once and again. On the first occasion you sent Medosades yonder, to Chalcedon, and you begged me to use my influence in favour of the army crossing over from Asia. You promised me, in return for this conduct on my part, various kindnesses; at least that is what Medosades stated”; and before proceeding further he turned to Medosades and asked, “Is not that so?” The other assented. “Again, on a second occasion, the same Medosades came when I had crossed over from Parium to rejoin the army; and he promised me that if I would bring you the army, you would in various respects treat me as a friend and brother. He

*vocabulary*

**αἶρω** raise, win ~aorta; also ἀείρω  
**ἀκέομαι** heal, fix  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve  
**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
**ἀρόω** plow ~arable  
**ἀφήμι** throw, release, use up; also ἀφήκω  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about  
**ἔδω** eat ~eat  
**εἴσειμι** go in; come in range  
**ἐκεῖ** there  
**ἐκπίπτω** fall out of  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἐννυμι** clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest  
**ἔξειμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἔρομαι** ask, search through; also ἀνέρομαι, εἴρομαι, ἐξείρομαι, ἐξέρομαι  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene

**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon; also καταλείπω  
**κεῖμαι** lie  
**κρατέω** rule ~democracy  
**μάχαιρα** knife, dagger  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**νόσος** (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome; also νοῦσος  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὄρφανός** orphan  
**πιστός** faithful (πείθω)  
**πλήν** except  
**πράγμα** -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing, affair  
**πράξις** -εως (f/m/n) result, business  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιά** army  
**τελέω** fulfill; pf pass: be feasible  
**τέλλω** direct ~teleology  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χώρα** place  
**χωρίον** area; downwards  
**ὥδε** thus

καὶ ἀδελφῶ καὶ τὰ παρὰ θαλάττη μοι χωρία ὧν σὺ κρατεῖς ἔσσεσθαι παρὰ σοῦ. ἐπὶ τούτοις πάλιν ἤρετο τὸν Μηδοσάδην εἰ ἔλεγε ταῦτα. ὁ δὲ συνέφη καὶ ταῦτα. Ἰθι νυν, ἔφη, ἀφήγησαι τούτῳ τί σοι ἀπεκρινάμην ἐν Καλχηδόνι πρῶτον. Ἀπεκρίνω ὅτι τὸ στράτευμα διαβήσοιτο εἰς Βυζάντιον καὶ οὐδὲν τούτου ἔνεκα δέοι τελεῖν οὔτε σοὶ οὔτε ἄλλῳ· αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπεὶ διαβαίης, ἀπιέναι ἔφησθα· καὶ ἐγένετο οὕτως ὡσπερ σὺ ἔλεγες. Τί γὰρ ἔλεγον, ἔφη, ὅτε κατὰ Σηλυμβρίαν ἀφίκου; Οὐκ ἔφησθα οἷόν τε εἶναι, ἀλλ' εἰς Πέρωνθον ἐλθόντας διαβαίνειν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. Νῦν τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, πάρεμι καὶ ἐγὼ καὶ οὗτος Φρυνίσκος εἰς τῶν στρατηγῶν καὶ Πολυκράτης οὗτος εἰς τῶν λοχαγῶν, καὶ ἔξω εἰσὶν ἀπὸ τῶν στρατηγῶν ὁ πιστότατος ἐκάστῳ πλὴν Νέωνος τοῦ Λακωνικοῦ. εἰ οὖν βούλει πιστοτέραν εἶναι τὴν πράξιν, καὶ ἐκείνους κάλεσαι. τὰ δὲ ὄπλα σὺ ἐλθὼν εἰπέ, ὦ Πολύκρατες, ὅτι ἐγὼ κελεύω καταλιπεῖν, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκεῖ καταλιπὼν τὴν μάχαιραν εἴσθι.

Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Σεύθης εἶπεν ὅτι οὐδενὶ ἂν ἀπιστήσειεν Ἀθηναίων· καὶ γὰρ ὅτι συγγενεῖς εἶεν εἰδέναι καὶ φίλους εὐνοὺς ἔφη νομίζειν. μετὰ ταῦτα δ' ἐπεὶ εἰσῆλθον οὓς ἔδει, πρῶτον Ξενοφῶν ἐπήρετο Σεύθην ὅ τι δέοιτο χρῆσθαι τῇ στρατιᾷ. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὧδε. Μαισάδης ἦν πατήρ μοι, ἐκείνου δὲ ἦν ἀρχὴ Μελανδίται καὶ Θυνοὶ καὶ Τρανίβηαι. ἐκ ταύτης οὖν τῆς χώρας, ἐπεὶ τὰ Ὀδρυσῶν πράγματα ἐνόσησεν, ἐκπεσὼν ὁ πατήρ αὐτὸς μὲν ἀποθνήσκει νόσῳ, ἐγὼ δ' ἐξετράφην ὀρφανὸς



καὶ ἀδελφῶ καὶ τὰ παρὰ θαλάττη μοι χωρία ὧν σὺ κρατεῖς ἔσεσθαι  
 παρὰ σοῦ. ἐπὶ τούτοις πάλιν ἤρετο τὸν Μηδοσάδην εἰ ἔλεγε ταῦτα.  
 ὁ δὲ συνέφη καὶ ταῦτα. Ἰθὶ νυν, ἔφη, ἀφήγησαι τούτῳ τί σοι  
 ἀπεκρινάμην ἐν Καλχηδόνι πρῶτον. Ἀπεκρίνω ὅτι τὸ στράτευμα  
 |pass over, cross ὠζάντιον καὶ οὐδὲν τούτου ἕνεκα δέοι τελεῖν οὔτε  
 σοὶ οὔτε ἄλλῳ· αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπεὶ διαβαίης, ἀπίεναί ἔφησθα· καὶ ἐγένετο  
 οὕτως ὥσπερ σὺ ἔλεγες. Τί γὰρ ἔλεγον, ἔφη, ὅτε κατὰ Σηλυμβρίαν  
 ἀφίκου; Οὐκ ἔφησθα οἶόν τε εἶναι, ἀλλ' εἰς Πέριπτον ἐλθόντας  
 |pass over, cross ἰσὶ Ἀσίαν. Νῦν τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, πάρεμι καὶ  
 ἐγὼ καὶ οὗτος Φρυνίσκος εἰς τῶν στρατηγῶν καὶ Πολυκράτης οὗτος  
 εἰς τῶν λοχαγῶν, καὶ ἔξω εἰσὶν ἀπὸ τῶν στρατηγῶν ὁ πιστότατος  
 ἐκάστῳ πλὴν Νέωνος τοῦ Λακωνικοῦ. εἰ οὖν βούλει πιστοτέραν εἶναι  
 τὴν πρᾶξιν, καὶ ἐκείνους κάλεσαι. τὰ δὲ ὄπλα σὺ ἐλθὼν εἰπέ, ὦ  
 Πολύκρατες, ὅτι ἐγὼ κελεύω καταλιπεῖν, καὶ αὐτὸς |ἔξειμι?: go forth ; or ἐκεῖ?:  
 τὴν μάχαιραν |go in |there ; or κείμαι?: lie

|ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix ; or εἶπεν ὅτι οὐδενὶ ἂν |disbelieve Ἀθηναίων  
 |ἀκούω?: hear, listen  
 καὶ γὰρ ὅτι συγγενεῖς εἶεν εἰδέναι καὶ φίλους εὖνους ἔφη νομίζειν. μετὰ  
 ταῦτα δ' ἐπεὶ εἰσήλθον οὗς ἔδει, πρῶτον Ξενοφῶν ἐπήρετο Σεύθην ὃ τι  
 δέοιτο χρῆσθαι τῇ στρατιᾷ. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὧδε. Μαισάδης ἦν πατήρ μοι,  
 ἐκείνου δὲ ἦν ἀρχὴ Μελανδίται καὶ Θυνοὶ καὶ Τρανύβαι. ἐκ ταύτης  
 οὖν τῆς χώρας, ἐπεὶ τὰ Ὀδρυσῶν πράγματα ἐνόσησεν, |fall out of  
 ὁ πατήρ αὐτὸς μὲν ἀποθνήσκει |plague ἡ γὰρ δ' ἐξετράφην |orphan

said especially with regard to certain seaboard places of which you are the owner and lord, that you were minded to make me a present of them." At this point he again questioned Medosades, "Whether the words attributed to him were exact?" and Medosades once more fully assented. "Come now," proceeded Xenophon, "recount what answer I made you, and first at Chalcedon." "You answered that the army was, in any case, about to cross over to Byzantium; and as far as that went, there was no need to pay you or any one else anything; and for yourself, you added, that once across you were minded to leave the army, which thing came to pass even as you said." "Well! what did I say," he asked, "at your next visit, when you came to me in Selybria?" "You said that the proposal was impossible; you were all going to Perinthus to cross into Asia." "Good," said Xenophon, "and in spite of it all, at the present moment, here I am myself, and Phryniscus, one of my colleagues, and Polycrates yonder, a captain; and outside, to represent the other generals (all except Neon the Laconian), the trustiest men they could find to send. So that if you wish to give these transactions the seal of still greater security, you have nothing to do but to summon them also; and do you, Polycrates, go and say from me, that I bid them leave their arms outside, and you can leave your own sword outside before you enter with them on your return."

When Seuthes had heard so far, he interposed: "I should never mistrust an Athenian, for we are relatives already, I know; and the best of friends, I believe, we shall be." After that, as soon as the right men entered, Xenophon first questioned Seuthes as to what use he intended to make of the army, and he replied as follows: "Maesades was my father; his sway extended over the Melanditae, the Thynians, and the Tranipsae. Then the affairs of the Odrysians took a bad turn, and my father was driven out of this country, and later on died himself of sickness, leaving me to be brought up as an orphan at the

*vocabulary*

**ἀλλότριος** someone else's; alien  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπολαμβάνω** receive, recover, take  
 aside, cut off  
**ἀρχήν** (adv) originally  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
 ἀφήνω  
**γῆ** earth; a country ~geography; also  
 γῆ  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
**δίδημι** should; bind; need, fail; also  
 δέω  
**δυνατός** powerful, possible  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐκβάλλω** throw out, fell, let fall  
**ἐπειδάν** when  
**ζεύγνυμι** yoke, join  
**ζεύγος** -υς (n, 3) team of animals  
**ζέω** boil ~eczema  
**ζώς** alive ~zoo; also ζωός

**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) suppliant, refugee  
**καθέζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit  
 down, sit up; also ἔζομαι, καθέζετο,  
 καθέζω  
**κτάομαι** acquire, possess (κτῆμα)  
**κτείνω** kill  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οὔομαι,  
 οἶομαι  
**ὀπόσος** as/how many/great  
**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also  
 πειρητίζω  
**ῥάδιος** easy; also ῥάιος  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τράπεζα** a table ~trapezoid  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπέχω** hold out one's hand; submit to;  
 also ὑποσχέθω  
**ὑπίσχομαι** promise, agree to do; also  
 ὑπισχνέομαι  
**φόβος** fear, rout, panic ~phobia  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χώρα** place  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

παρὰ Μηδόκῳ τῷ νῦν βασιλεῖ. ἐπεὶ δὲ νεανίσκος ἐγενόμην, οὐκ ἐδυνάμην ζῆν εἰς ἀλλοτριάν τράπεζαν ἀποβλέπων· καὶ ἐκαθεζόμεν ἐνδίφριος αὐτῷ ἰκέτης δοῦναί μοι ὁπόσους δυνατὸς εἶη ἄνδρας, ὅπως καὶ τοὺς ἐκβαλόντας ἡμᾶς εἴ τι δυναίμην κακὸν ποιοίην καὶ ζῆην μὴ εἰς τὴν ἐκείνου τράπεζαν ἀποβλέπων. ἐκ τούτου μοι δίδωσι τοὺς ἄνδρας καὶ τοὺς ἵππους οὓς ὑμεῖς ὄψεσθε ἐπειδὰν ἡμέρα γένηται. καὶ νῦν ἐγὼ ζῶ τούτους ἔχων, ληζόμενος τὴν ἐμαυτοῦ πατρῆαν χώραν. εἰ δέ μοι ὑμεῖς παραγένοισθε, οἶμαι ἂν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ῥαδίως ἀπολαβεῖν τὴν ἀρχήν. ταῦτ' ἐστὶν ἂ ἐγὼ δέομαι.

Τί ἂν οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, σὺ δύναιο, εἰ ἔλθοιμεν, τῇ τε στρατιᾷ δίδόναι καὶ τοῖς λοχαγοῖς καὶ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς; λέξον, ἵνα οὗτοι ἀπαγγέλλωσιν. ὁ δ' ὑπέσχετο τῷ μὲν στρατιώτῃ κυζικηνόν, τῷ δὲ λοχαγῷ διμοιρίαν, τῷ δὲ στρατηγῷ τετραμοιρίαν, καὶ γῆν ὀπόσῃν ἂν βούλωνται καὶ ζεύγη καὶ χωρίον ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ τετειχισμένον. Ἐὰν δέ, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ταῦτα πειρώμενοι μὴ διαπράξωμεν, ἀλλὰ τις φόβος ἀπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων ἦ, δέξῃ εἰς τὴν σεαυτοῦ, ἐὰν τις ἀπιέναι βούληται παρὰ σέ; ὁ δ' εἶπε· Καὶ ἀδελφούς γε ποιήσομαι καὶ ἐνδιφρίους καὶ κοινωνοὺς ἀπάντων ὧν ἂν δυνώμεθα κτᾶσθαι. σοὶ δέ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, καὶ θυγατέρα δώσω καὶ εἴ τις σοὶ ἔστι θυγάτηρ, ὠνήσομαι Θρακίῳ νόμῳ, καὶ Βισάνθην οἴκησιν δώσω, ὅπερ ἐμοὶ κάλλιστον χωρίον ἐστὶ τῶν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ.

παρὰ Μηδόκῳ τῷ νῦν βασιλεῖ. ἐπεὶ δὲ νεανίσκος ἐγενόμην, οὐκ

|enter, put on, strip off, εἰς ἄλλοτριάν τράπεζαν ἀποβλέπων· καὶ |act: set, seat; pass: sit  
|down, sit up

ἐνδιφρίος αὐτῷ |suppliant, αἱ μοι |as/how many/great, ἄνδρας, ὅπως  
|refugee

καὶ τοὺς ἐκβαλόντας ἡμᾶς εἴ τι |enter, put on, ἕν ποιοίην καὶ ζῆγην μὴ εἰς  
|strip off

τὴν ἐκείνου τράπεζαν ἀποβλέπων. ἐκ τούτου μοι |δίδημι?: should; bind; need,  
|fail ; or δίδωμι?: give; permit

καὶ τοὺς ἕππους οὓς ὑμεῖς ὄψεσθε |when ἡμέρα γένηται. καὶ νῦν ἐγὼ

|ζῶς?: alive ; or ν, ληζόμενος τὴν ἔμαντοῦ πατρῆαν χώραν. εἰ δέ μοι  
|ζάω?: live

ὑμεῖς παραγένοισθε, οἶμαι ἂν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ῥαδίως |receive, recover, take aside,  
|cut off

(adv) originally ἂν ἐγὼ δέομαι.

Τί ἂν οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, σὺ |enter, put on, ὅμοιεν, τῇ τε στρατιᾷ  
|strip off

|δίδημι?: should; bind; need, fail οἷς στρατηγοῖς; λέξον, ἵνα οὗτοι  
; or δίδωμι?: give; permit

ἀπαγγέλωσιν. ὁ δ' |ὑπέχω?: hold out one's hand; submit to ; ὅρ ὑπίσχομαι?:  
|promise, agree to do

τῷ δὲ λοχαγῷ διμοιρίαν, τῷ δὲ στρατηγῷ τετραμοιρίαν, καὶ

|earth|as/how many/great αὶ καὶ |ζεῦγος?: team ; or ἰ θαλάττη  
a |ζεύγνυμι?: yoke, join

κοινοῦσιν. Ἐὰν δέ, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ταῦτα πειρώμενοι μὴ  
|try

διαπράξωμεν, ἀλλὰ τις φόβος ἀπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων ἦ, δέξῃ εἰς

τὴν σεαυτοῦ, ἐάν τις ἀπιέναι βούληται παρὰ σέ; ὁ δ' εἶπε· Καὶ

ἀδελφούς γε ποιήσομαι καὶ ἐνδιφρίους καὶ κοινωνοὺς ἀπάντων ὧν

ἂν δυνάμεθα κτᾶσθαι. σοὶ δέ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, καὶ θυγατέρα δώσω

καὶ εἴ τις σοὶ ἔστι θυγάτηρ, ὠνήσομαι Θρακίῳ νόμῳ, καὶ Βισάνθην

οἰκησιν δώσω, ὅπερ ἐμοὶ κάλλιστον χωρίον ἐστὶ τῶν ἐπὶ θαλάττη.

court of Medocus, the present king. But I, when I had grown to man's estate, could not endure to live with my eyes fixed on another's board. So I seated myself on the seat by him as a suppliant, and begged him to give me as many men as he could spare, that I might wreak what mischief I could on those who had driven us forth from our land; that thus I might cease to live in dependence upon another's board, like a dog watching his master's hand. In answer to my petition, he gave me the men and the horses which you will see at break of day, and nowadays I live with these, pillaging my own ancestral land. But if you would join me, I think, with the help of heaven, we might easily recover my empire. That is what I want of you." "Well then," said Xenophon, "supposing we came, what should you be able to give us? the soldiers, the officers, and the generals? Tell us that these witnesses may report your answer." And he promised to give "to the common soldiers a cyzicene, to a captain twice as much, and to a general four times as much, with as much land as ever they liked, some yoke of oxen, and a fortified place upon the seaboard." "But now supposing," said Xenophon, "we fail of success, in spite of our endeavours; suppose any intimidation on the part of the Lacedaemonians should arise; will you receive into your country any of us who may seek to find a refuge with you?" He answered: "Nay, not only so, but I shall look upon you as my brothers, entitled to share my seat, and the joint possessors of all the wealth which we may be able to acquire. And to you yourself, O Xenophon! I will give my daughter, and if you have a daughter, I will buy her in Thracian fashion; and I will give you Bisanthe as a dwelling-place, which is the fairest of all my possessions on the seaboard."

*vocabulary*

**ἀγοράζω** do commerce  
**αἶρω** raise, win ~aorta; also αἰείρω  
**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp.~sin  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἀπαγγέλλω** tell about  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain  
**ἀράομαι** pray, vow, invoke  
**ἀργύριον** small coin  
**ἀσφαλής** going ahead, standing firm  
**βία** strength, force  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**δέκα** ten ~decimal  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**έάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**έκει** there  
**έκεισε** thither  
**έμβαίνω** step on, board  
**ένθάδε** here, hither  
**έξαπατάω** trick, cheat  
**έξιμι** go forth (έίμι)  
**έπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**έπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ίερός** (2) holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph;  
 also ίερή, ίερόν, ίρός

**κειμαι** lie  
**κρατέω** rule ~democracy  
**κράτιστος** best  
**κωλύω** hinder, prevent  
**κώμη** village  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**όδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**ὄθεν** whence  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**πλήν** except  
**πλοῖον** ship  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πότερος** which, whichever of two  
**πρό** before, forward ~prolog  
**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch  
 ~skeptic  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
 masc)  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**συγκαλέω** call together  
**τριήρης** -ους (f, 3) trireme  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χείρων** worse, more base

## 7.3

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα καὶ δεξιὰς δόντες καὶ λαβόντες ἀπήλανον· καὶ πρὸ ἡμέρας ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ στρατοπέδῳ καὶ ἀπήγγειλαν ἕκαστοι τοῖς πέμψασιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, ὁ μὲν Ἀρίσταρχος πάλιν ἐκάλει τοὺς στρατηγούς· τοῖς δ' ἔδοξε τὴν μὲν πρὸς Ἀρίσταρχον ὁδὸν εἶσαι, τὸ δὲ στράτευμα συγκαλέσαι. καὶ συνήλθον πάντες πλὴν οἱ Νέωνος· οὗτοι δὲ ἀπέιχον ὡς δέκα στάδια. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνήλθον, ἀναστὰς Ξενοφῶν εἶπε τάδε. Ἄνδρες, διαπλεῖν μὲν ἔνθα βουλόμεθα Ἀρίσταρχος τριήρεις ἔχων κωλύει· ὥστε εἰς πλοῖα οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς ἐμβαίνειν· οὗτος δὲ αὐτὸς κελεύει εἰς Χερρόνησον βία διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους πορεύεσθαι· ἣν δὲ κρατήσαντες τούτου ἐκείσε ἔλθωμεν, οὔτε πωλήσειν ἔτι ὑμᾶς φησιν ὥσπερ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ, οὔτε ἐξαπατήσεσθαι ἔτι ὑμᾶς, ἀλλὰ λήψεσθαι μισθόν, οὔτε περιώψεσθαι ἔτι ὥσπερ νυνὶ δεομένους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. οὗτος μὲν ταῦτα λέγει· Σεύθης δὲ φησιν, ἂν πρὸς ἐκείνον ἦτε, εὖ ποιήσειν ὑμᾶς. νῦν οὖν σκέψασθε πότερον ἐνθάδε μένοντες τοῦτο βουλεύσεσθε ἢ εἰς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπανελθόντες. ἐμοὶ μὲν οὖν δοκεῖ, ἐπεὶ ἐνθάδε οὔτε ἀργύριον ἔχομεν ὥστε ἀγοράζειν οὔτε ἄνευ ἀργυρίου ἐῶσι λαμβάνειν, ἐπανελθόντας εἰς τὰς κόμας ὅθεν οἱ ἥττους ἐῶσι λαμβάνειν, ἐκεῖ ἔχοντας τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀκούοντας ὅ τι τις ἡμῶν δεῖται, αἰρεῖσθαι ὅ τι ἂν ἡμῖν δοκῇ κράτιστον εἶναι. καὶ ὅτῳ γε, ἔφη, ταῦτα δοκεῖ, ἀράτω τὴν χεῖρα. ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. Ἀπίοντες τοῖνυν, ἔφη,



7.3

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα καὶ δεξιὰ?: 'right-hand'; or expel, ex- αὶ  
 δεξιός?: right-hand clude, ward  
 πρὸ ἡμέρας ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ στρατοπέδῳ καὶ ἀπήγγειλ off ἕκαστοι τοῖς  
 πέμψασιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, ὁ μὲν Ἀρίσταρχος πάλιν ἐκάλει  
 τοὺς στρατηγούς· τοῖς δ' ἔδοξε τὴν μὲν πρὸς Ἀρίσταρχον ὁδὸν εἶσαι,  
 τὸ δὲ στράτευμα |call together αὶ συνῆλθον πάντες πλὴν οἱ Νέωνος·  
 οὔτοι δὲ ἀπέιχον ὡς δέκα |στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also masc); or 'στάδιος?: (adj)  
 εἶπε τάδε. Ἄνδρες, διαπλεῖν μὲν ἐνθά βουλόμεθα Ἀρίσταρχος τριήρεις  
 ἔχων κωλύει· ὥστε εἰς πλοῖα οὐκ ἀσφαλές |step on, board δὲ αὐτὸς  
 κελεύει εἰς Χερρόνησον βία διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους πορεύεσθαι· ἦν δὲ  
 κρατήσαντες τούτου |thither ἄλωμεν, οὔτε πωλήσειν ἔτι ὑμᾶς φησιν  
 ὥσπερ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ, οὔτε ἐξαπατήσεσθαι ἔτι ὑμᾶς, ἀλλὰ λήψεσθαι  
 μισθόν, οὔτε περιόψεσθαι ἔτι ὥσπερ νυνὶ δεομένους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων.  
 οὗτος μὲν ταῦτα λέγει· Σεύθης δὲ φησιν, ἂν πρὸς |ἔξειμι?: 'go forth; or ἐκεῖ?:  
 ποιήσειν ὑμᾶς. νῦν οὖν |look, look|which, ' γὰρ μένοντες τοῦτο  
 |at, watch |whichever  
 βουλευέσεσθε ἢ εἰς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπανελθόντες. ἐμοὶ μὲν οὖν δοκεῖ,  
 ἐπεὶ ἐνθάδε οὔτε ἀργύριον ἔχομεν ὥστε |do commerce ἄνευ ἀργυρίου  
 ἐῶσι λαμβάνειν, ἐπανελθόντας εἰς τὰς |village ὅθεν οἱ ἦττους ἐῶσι  
 λαμβάνειν, ἐκεῖ ἔχοντας τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀκούοντας ὅ τι τις ἡμῶν δεῖται,  
 αἰρεῖσθαι ὅ τι ἂν ἡμῖν δοκῆ κράτιστον εἶναι. καὶ ὅτω γε, ἔφη, ταῦτα  
 δοκεῖ, ἀράτω τὴν χεῖρα. ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. Ἀπίοντες τοῖνυν, ἔφη,

### 7.3

After listening to these proposals, they gave and accepted pledges of good faith; and so the deputation rode off. Before day they were back again in camp, and severally rendered a report to those who sent them. At dawn Aristarchus again summoned the generals and officers, but the latter resolved to have done with the visit to Aristarchus, and to summon a meeting of the army. In full conclave the soldiers met, with the exception of Neon's men, who remained about ten furlongs off. When they were met together Xenophon rose, and made the following announcement: "Men, Aristarchus with his ships of war hinders us from sailing where we fain would go; it is not even safe to set foot on board a vessel. But if he hinders us here, he hastens us there. 'Be off to the Chersonese,' says he, 'force a passage through the Sacred mountain.' If we master it and succeed in getting to that place, he has something in store for us. He promises that he will not sell you any more, as he did at Byzantium; you shall not be cheated again; you shall have pay; he will no longer, as now, suffer you to remain in want of provisions. That is his proposal. But Seuthes says that if you will go to him he will treat you well. What you have now to consider is, whether you will stay to debate this question, or leave its settlement till we have gone up into a land of provisions. If you ask me my opinion, it is this: Since here we have neither money to buy, nor leave to take without money what we need, why should we not go up into these villages where the right to help ourselves is conferred by might? There, unhampered by the want of bare necessities, you can listen to what this man and the other wants of you and choose whichever sounds best. Let those," he added, "who

*vocabulary*

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἄξιος** worthy ~axiom  
**ἀξιόω** consider worthy, fitting  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain  
**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**διώκω** chase  
**ἐκεῖ** there  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἐπειδὴν** when  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**κεῖμαι** lie  
**κράτιστος** best  
**κώμη** village  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**νέομαι** go; come home ~nostalgia  
**νέος** young; neuter: recently ~neon  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ὅπου** where  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage

**πειράζω** test a person  
**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also  
**πειρητίζω**  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πορεύω** carry  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender, come in  
**σίτος** (m/n) grain, bread, food  
 ~parasite  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συμφέρω** bring together (φέρω)  
**τιμάω** honor, exalt  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
**τροφή** support, maintenance  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπακούω** listen, reply  
**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do; also  
**ὑπίσχομαι**  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also **καταχέω**  
**χώρα** place

συσκευάζεσθε, καὶ ἐπειδὴν παραγγέλλη τις, ἔπεισθε τῷ ἡγουμένῳ.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἡγείτο, οἱ δ' εἶποντο. Νέων δὲ καὶ παρ' Ἄριστάρχου ἄλλοι ἔπειθον ἀποτρέπεσθαι· οἱ δ' οὐχ ὑπήκουον. ἐπεὶ δ' ὅσον τριάκοντα στάδια προεληλύθεσαν, ἀπαντᾷ Σεύθης. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἰδὼν αὐτὸν προσελάσαι ἐκέλευσεν, ὅπως ὅτι πλείστων ἀκουόντων εἴποι αὐτῷ ἃ ἐδόκει συμφέρειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ προσῆλθεν, εἶπε Ξενοφῶν· Ἡμεῖς πορευόμεθα ὅπου μέλλει ἔξειν τὸ στράτευμα τροφήν· ἐκεῖ δ' ἀκούοντες καὶ σοῦ καὶ τῶν τοῦ Λακωνικοῦ αἰρησόμεθα ἃ ἂν κράτιστα δοκῇ εἶναι. ἦν οὖν ἡμῖν ἡγήσῃ ὅπου πλείστα ἐστὶν ἐπιτήδεια, ὑπὸ σοῦ νομιούμεν ξενίζεσθαι. καὶ ὁ Σεύθης ἔφη· Ἄλλὰ οἶδα κόμας πολλὰς ἀθρόας καὶ πάντα ἐχούσας τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀπεχούσας ἡμῶν ὅσον διελθόντες ἂν ἡδέως ἀριστήητε. Ἡγοῦ τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκοντο εἰς αὐτὰς τῆς δειλῆς, συνῆλθον οἱ στρατιῶται, καὶ εἶπε Σεύθης τοιάδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, δέομαι ὑμῶν στρατεύεσθαι σὺν ἐμοί, καὶ ὑπισχνούμαι ὑμῖν δώσειν τοῖς στρατιώταις κυζικηνόν, λοχαγοῖς δὲ καὶ στρατηγοῖς τὰ νομιζόμενα· ἔξω δὲ τούτων τὸν ἄξιον τιμήσω. σῖτα δὲ καὶ ποτὰ ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν ἐκ τῆς χώρας λαμβάνοντες ἔξετε· ὅποσα δ' ἂν ἀλίσκηται ἀξιόσω αὐτὸς ἔχειν, ἵνα ταῦτα διατιθέμενος ὑμῖν τὸν μισθὸν πορίζω. καὶ τὰ μὲν φεύγοντα καὶ ἀποδιδράσκοντα ἡμεῖς ἱκανοὶ ἐσόμεθα διώκειν καὶ μαστεύειν· ἂν δέ τις ἀνθιστήται, σὺν ὑμῖν πειρασόμεθα χειροῦσθαι. ἐπήρητο ὁ Ξενοφῶν· Πόσον

συσκευάζεσθε, καὶ |when παραγγέλλη τις, ἔπειθε τῷ ἡγουμένῳ.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν |go before, lead ἔντο. |νέα?: ship ; or νέος?: young;  
 Ἀριστάρχου ἄλλοι ἔπειθον |divert from οἱ δ' οὐκ |come/home ; or νέω?: spin;  
 |swim

δ' ὅσον τριάκοντα |στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also masc) ; or στάδιος?: (adj)  
 |standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters

Ξενοφῶν ἰδὼν αὐτὸν |go to, approach ἔευσεν, ὅπως ὅτι πλείστων

ἀκούοντων εἴποι αὐτῷ ἃ ἐδόκει συμφέρειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ προσῆλθεν,

εἶπε Ξενοφῶν· Ἡμεῖς πορευόμεθα ὅπου μέλλει ἕξειν τὸ στράτευμα

τροφήν· |ἕξειμι?: go forth ; or ἐκεῖ?: ἔν τοῦ Λακωνικοῦ αἰρήσόμεθα  
 |there ; or κείμαι?: lie

ἃ ἂν κράτιστα δοκῆ εἶναι. ἦν οὖν ἡμῖν ἡγήγησεν ὅπου πλείστά

ἐστιν ἐπιτήδεια, ὑπὸ σοῦ νομοῦμεν |be host καὶ ὁ Σεύθης

ἔφη· Ἀλλὰ οἶδα |village πολλὰς ἀθρόας καὶ πάντα ἐχούσας τὰ

ἐπιτήδεια ἀπεχούσας ἡμῶν ὅσον διελθόντες ἂν |pleasantly τῆρητε.

Ἦγού τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκοντο εἰς αὐτὰς τῆς

|afternoon ἦλθον οἱ στρατιῶται, καὶ εἶπε Σεύθης τοιάδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ

ἄνδρες, δέομαι ὑμῶν στρατεύεσθαι σὺν ἐμοί, καὶ |promise, ὑμῖν  
 |agree to do

δώσειν τοῖς στρατιώταις κυζικηνόν, λοχαγοῖς δὲ καὶ στρατηγοῖς

τὰ νομιζόμενα· ἕξω δὲ τούτων τὸν ἄξιον τιμῆσω. σῖτα δὲ καὶ

|ποτή?: flight? ; or ἔν ἐκ τῆς χώρας λαμβάνοντες ἕξετε· |as/how many/great  
 |ποτός?: potable

ἂν ἀλίσκηται ἀξιώσω αὐτὸς ἔχειν, ἵνα ταῦτα |arrange; set out  
 |goods for sale

τὸν μισθὸν πορίζω. καὶ τὰ μὲν φεύγοντα καὶ ἀποδιδράσκοντα

ἡμεῖς ἱκανοὶ ἐσόμεθα διώκειν καὶ μαστεύειν· ἂν δὲ τις ἀνθιστῆται,

σὺν ὑμῖν πειρασόμεθα χειροῦσθαι. ἐπήρητο ὁ Ξενοφῶν· Πόσον

agree to this, hold up their hands.” They all held them up. “Retire then,” said he, “and get your kit together, and at the word of command, follow your leader.”

After this, Xenophon put himself at the head and the rest followed. Neon, indeed, and other agents from Aristarchus tried to turn them from their purpose, but to their persuasions they turned a deaf ear. They had not advanced much more than three miles, when Seuthes met them; and Xenophon, seeing him, bade him ride up. He wished to tell him what they felt to be conducive to their interests, and in the presence of as many witnesses as possible. As soon as he had approached, Xenophon said: “We are going where the troops will have enough to live upon; when we are there, we will listen to you and to the emissaries of the Laconian, and choose between you both whatever seems best. If then you will lead us where provisions are to be got in plenty, we shall feel indebted to you for your hospitality.” And Seuthes answered: “For the matter of that, I know many villages, close-packed and stocked with all kinds of provisions, just far enough off to give you a good appetite for your breakfasts.” “Lead on then!” said Xenophon. When they had reached the villages in the afternoon, the soldiers met, and Seuthes made the following speech: “My request to you, sirs, is that you will take the field with me, and my promise to you is that I will give every man of you a cyzicene, and to the officers and generals at the customary rate; besides this I will honour those who show special merit. Food and drink you shall get as now for yourselves from the country; but whatever is captured, I shall claim to have myself, so that by distribution of it I may provide you with pay. Let them flee, let them creep into hiding-places, we shall be able to pursue after them, we will track them out; or if they

*vocabulary***ἄγε** lead, bring**ἄγνουμι** break**ἀμείνων** better**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, out to sea**ἄξιος** worthy ~axiom**ἀξιόω** consider worthy, fitting**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself**ἀποπλέω** sail away**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor**ἀσφαλής** going ahead, standing firm**γείτων** -ονος (m, 3) neighbor**δείπνον** meal, food; also δείπνος**διαγίγνομαι** go through, pass**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish**διατριβή** wear down, delay ~tribology**δυνατός** powerful, possible**δώδεκα** twelve ~dodecahedron; also**δωκαίδεκα, δωδέκα****δῶρον** gift ~donate**ἑπτὰ** seven**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also**ἰθὺς****ζέω** boil ~eczema**ἡμερός** domesticated**θύρα** door ~door**ικανός** sufficient; competent, fit**κώμη** village**μείων** less, smaller**μισθός** reward, wages**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also οὐδός**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics**οἴομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι, οἶομαι**πλησίος** near, neighboring**προίημι** send forth, abandon**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near**πρόσω** forward, in the future; also**πόρρω, πρόσωθεν****στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army**στρατηγέω** be a general**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement**τάσσω** arrange**τίη** strengthened form of τί**τοσοῦτος** so much**τρέφω** nurture; solidify ~atrophy**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case**φιλία** friendship**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω

δὲ ἀπὸ θαλάττης ἀξιώσεις συνέπεσθαί σοι τὸ στράτευμα; ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο· Οὐδαμῆ πλείον ἑπτὰ ἡμερῶν, μείον δὲ πολλαχῆ.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδίδοτο λέγειν τῷ βουλομένῳ· καὶ ἔλεγον πολλοὶ κατὰ ταῦτὰ ὅτι παντὸς ἄξια λέγει Σεύθης· χειμῶν γὰρ εἷη καὶ οὔτε οἴκαδε ἀποπλεῖν τῷ τοῦτο βουλομένῳ δυνατὸν εἷη, διαγενέσθαι τε ἐν φιλίᾳ οὐχ οἶόν τε, εἰ δέοι ἄνουμένους ζῆν, ἐν δὲ τῇ πολεμίᾳ διατρίβειν καὶ τρέφεσθαι ἀσφαλέστερον μετὰ Σεύθου ἢ μόνους, ὄντων ἀγαθῶν τοσοῦτων. εἰ δὲ μισθὸν προσλήψωιντο, εὔρημα ἐδόκει εἶναι. ἐπὶ τούτοις εἶπεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν· Εἴ τις ἀντιλέγει, λεγέτω· εἰ δὲ μή, ἐπιψηφίῳ ταῦτα. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν, ἐπεψήφισε, καὶ ἔδοξε ταῦτα. εὐθύς δὲ Σεύθῃ εἶπεν, ὅτι συστρατεύσονται αὐτῷ.

Μετὰ τοῦτο οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι κατὰ τάξεις ἐσκήνησαν, στρατηγούς δὲ καὶ λοχαγούς ἐπὶ δεῖπνον Σεύθης ἐκάλεσε, πλησίον κώμην ἔχων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ θύραις ἦσαν ὡς ἐπὶ δεῖπνον παριόντες, ἦν τις Ἡρακλείδης Μαρωνείτης· οὗτος προσιῶν ἐνὶ ἐκάστῳ οὔστινας ᾤετο ἔχειν τι δοῦναι Σεύθῃ, πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς Παριανούς τινας, οἱ παρήσαν φιλίαν διαπραξόμενοι πρὸς Μήδοκον τὸν Ὀδρυσῶν βασιλέα καὶ δῶρα ἄγοντες αὐτῷ τε καὶ τῇ γυναικί, ἔλεγεν ὅτι Μήδοκος μὲν ἄνω εἷη δώδεκα ἡμερῶν ἀπὸ θαλάττης ὁδόν, Σεύθης δ' ἐπεὶ τὸ στράτευμα τοῦτο εἴληφεν, ἄρχων ἔσοιτο ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ. γείτων οὖν ὢν ἰκανώτατος ἔσται ὑμᾶς καὶ εὖ καὶ κακῶς ποιεῖν. ἦν οὖν σωφρονητε, τούτῳ δώσετε ὅ τι ἄγετε· καὶ ἄμεινον ὑμῖν διακείσεται ἢ ἂν Μηδόκῳ τῷ πρόσω



δὲ ἀπὸ θαλάττης ἀξιώσεις |go along with τὸ στράτευμα; ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο· Οὐδαμῆ πλείον ἑπτὰ ἡμερῶν, |less, smaller ὅ ἢ πολλαχῆ.

Μετὰ ταῦτα |identical |δίδημι?: should; bind; need, fail ἢ ἔλεγον πολλοὶ κατὰ ; or δίδωμι?: give; permit παντὸς ἄξια λέγει Σεύθης· χεμιῶν γὰρ εἷη καὶ οὔτε οἴκαδε ἀποπλεῖν τῷ τοῦτο βουλομένῳ δυνατὸν εἶη, |go through, pass |friendship οὐχ οἷόν τε, εἰ δέοι ὠνουμένους ζῆν, ἐν δὲ τῇ πολεμῖα |wear down, delay καὶ τρέφεσθαι ἀσφαλέστερον μετὰ Σεύθου ἢ μόνους, ὄντων ἀγαθῶν τοσοῦτων. εἰ δὲ μισθὸν προσλήψοιντο, εὖρημα ἐδόκει εἶναι. ἐπὶ τούτοις εἶπεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν· Εἴ τις ἀντιλέγει, λεγέτω· εἰ δὲ μή, ἐπιψηφιώ ταῦτα. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν, ἐπειψήφισε, καὶ ἔδοξε ταῦτα. εὐθὺς δὲ Σεύθη εἶπεν, ὅτι συστρατεύσονται αὐτῷ.

Μετὰ τοῦτο οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι κατὰ τάξεις ἐσκήνησαν, στρατηγούς δὲ καὶ λοχαγούς ἐπὶ δείπνον Σεύθης ἐκάλεσε, πλησίον |village ἔχων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ θύραις ἦσαν ὡς ἐπὶ δείπνον παριόντες, ἦν τις Ἡρακλείδης Μαρωνεΐτης· οὗτος προσιῶν ἐνὶ ἐκάστῳ οὔστινας ᾤετο ἔχειν τι δούναι Σεύθη, πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς Παριανούς τινας, οἱ παρήσαν |friendship |ραζόμενοι πρὸς Μήδοκον τὸν Ὀδρυσῶν βασιλέα καὶ δῶρα ἄγοντες αὐτῷ τε καὶ τῇ γυναικί, ἔλεγεν ὅτι Μήδοκος μὲν |accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, δώδεκα ἡμερῶν ἀπὸ θαλάττης ὁδόν, Σεύθης δ' ἐπεὶ τὸ στ |out to sea τοῦτο εἴληφεν, ἄρχων ἔσοιτο ἐπὶ θαλάττη. |neighbor ἢ ὠν ἰκανώτατος ἔσται ἡμᾶς καὶ εἰ καὶ κακῶς ποιεῖν. ἦν οὖν σωφρονῆτε, τούτῳ δώσετε ὅ τι |ἄγε?: lead, bring ; or ἄγω?: lead, |ai ἢ ἐὰν Μηδόκῳ τῷ |forward, in the future |bring ; or ἄγνυμι?: break

resist, along with you we will endeavour to subdue them to our hands.” Xenophon inquired: “And how far from the sea shall you expect the army to follow you?” “Nowhere more than seven days’ journey,” he answered, “and in many places less.”

After this, permission was given for all who wished to speak, and many spoke, but ever to one and the same tune: “What Seuthes said, was very right. It was winter, and for a man to sail home, even if he had the will to do so, was impossible. On the other hand, to continue long in a friendly country, where they must depend upon what they could purchase, was equally beyond their power. If they were to wear away time and support life in a hostile country, it was safer to do so with Seuthes than by themselves, not to speak of all these good things; but if they were going to get pay into the bargain, that indeed was a godsend.” To complete the proceedings, Xenophon said: “If any one opposes the measure, let him state his views; if not, let the officer put the proposition to the vote.” No one opposed; they put it to the vote, and the resolution was carried; and without loss of time, he informed Seuthes that they would take the field with him.

After this the troops messed in their separate divisions, but the generals and officers were invited by Seuthes to dinner at a neighbouring village which was in his possession. When they were at the doors, and on the point of stepping in to dinner, they were met by a certain Heracleides, of Maronea. He came up to each guest, addressing himself particularly to those who, as he conjectured, ought to be able to make a present to Seuthes. He addressed himself first to some Parians who were there to arrange a friendship with Medocus, the king of the Odrysians, and were bearers of presents to the king and to his wife. Heracleides reminded them: “Medocus is up country twelve days’ journey from the sea; but Seuthes, now that he has got this army, will be lord on the sea-coast; as

*vocabulary***αἰεί** always, forever ~eon; also ἀεί**ἀναιρέω** take up**ἄξιος** worthy ~axiom**ἀξιόω** consider worthy, fitting**ἄρτος** bread, loaf**αὐθις** back, again, moreover ~after**βαρβαρικός** non-Greek**δεῖπνον** meal, food; also δεῖπνος**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross**ἔαρ** -ος (n) spring (season)**εἰσφέρω** carry into, carry along**ἐνθάδε** here, hither**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit**ἴσος** equal; also ἔιση**κατάγω** lead down, make landfall**κράτιστος** best**κρέας** (n, 3) meat ~creatine**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle**μεστός** full**μικρός** small; also σμικρός**νομίζω** consider customary**ξένος** guest-friend, host, stranger

~xenophobe

**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics**οἰκέω** inhabit**ὁπότε** when; also ὀπότε**πεῖσα** obedience, subjection**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
come in**τείχος** -υς (n, 3) outdoor wall; also

τειχίον

**τιμάω** honor, exalt**τοσοῦτος** so much**τράπεζα** a table ~trapezoid**τρίπους** -δος three-legged cauldron

(πούς); also τρίπος

**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case**ὕμετερος** yours**χώρα** place

οἰκοῦντι διδώτε. τούτους μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἔπειθεν. αὐθις δὲ Τιμασίῳ τῷ Δαρδανεῖ προσελθὼν, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσεν αὐτῷ εἶναι καὶ ἐκπώματα καὶ τάπιδας βαρβαρικός, ἔλεγεν ὅτι νομίζοιτο ὅποτε ἐπὶ δεῖπνον καλέσαι Σεύθης δωρεῖσθαι αὐτῷ τοὺς κληθέντας. οὗτος δ' ἦν μέγας ἐνθάδε γένηται, ἱκανὸς ἔσται σε καὶ οὔκαδε καταγαγεῖν καὶ ἐνθάδε πλούσιον ποιῆσαι. τοιαῦτα προμυῖατο ἐκάστῳ προσιών. προσελθὼν δὲ καὶ Ξενοφῶντι ἔλεγε· Σὺ καὶ πόλεως μεγίστης εἶ καὶ παρὰ Σεύθῃ τὸ σὸν ὄνομα μέγιστόν ἐστι, καὶ ἐν τῇδε τῇ χώρᾳ ἴσως ἀξιώσεις καὶ τείχη λαμβάνειν, ὥσπερ καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν ὑμετέρων ἔλαβον, καὶ χώραν· ἄξιον οὖν σοι καὶ μεγαλοπρεπέστατα τιμῆσαι Σεύθην. εὖνους δέ σοι ὦν παραυῶ· εὐ οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι ὅσα ἂν μείζω τούτῳ δωρήσῃ, τοσούτῳ μείζω ὑπὸ τούτου ἀγαθὰ πείσῃ. ἀκούων ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν ἠπόρει· οὐ γὰρ διεβεβήκει ἔχων ἐκ Παρίου εἰ μὴ παῖδα καὶ ὅσον ἐφόδιον.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰσῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον τῶν τε Θρακῶν οἱ κράτιστοι τῶν παρόντων καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ εἴ τις πρεσβεία παρῆν ἀπὸ πόλεως, τὸ δεῖπνον μὲν ἦν καθημένοις κύκλω· ἔπειτα δὲ τρίποδες εἰσηνέχθησαν πᾶσι· οὗτοι δ' ἦσαν κρεῶν μεστοὶ νενεμημένων, καὶ ἄρτοι ζυμίται μεγάλοι προσπεπερονημένοι ἦσαν πρὸς τοῖς κρέασι. μάλιστα δ' αἱ τράπεζαι κατὰ τοὺς ξένους αἰεὶ ἐτίθεντο· νόμος γὰρ ἦν— καὶ πρῶτος τοῦτο ἐποίει Σεύθης, καὶ ἀνελόμενος τοὺς ἑαυτῷ παρακειμένους ἄρτους διέκλα κατὰ μικρὸν καὶ ἐρρίπτει οἷς αὐτῷ ἐδόκει, καὶ τὰ κρέα

οἰκοῦντι διδώτε. τούτους μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἔπειθεν. αὐθις δὲ Τιμασίῳ  
 τῷ Δαρδανεῖ προσελθὼν, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσεν αὐτῷ εἶναι καὶ ἐκπώματα καὶ  
 τάπιδας |non-Greek . ἔλεγεν ὅτι νομίζοιτο ὅποτε ἐπὶ δεῖπνον καλέσαι  
 Σεύθης δωρεῖσθαι αὐτῷ τοὺς κληθέντας. οὗτος δ' ἦν μέγας ἐνθάδε  
 γένηται, ἱκανὸς ἔσται σε καὶ οἴκαδε |lead down, ἢ ἐνθάδε πλοῦσιον  
 ποιῆσαι. τοιαῦτα προμνᾶτο ἐκάστω |make land-  
 |fallπροσιῶν. προσελθὼν δὲ καὶ  
 Ξενοφῶντι ἔλεγε· Σὺ καὶ πόλεως μεγίστης εἶ καὶ παρὰ Σεύθη τὸ σὸν  
 ὄνομα μέγιστόν ἐστι, καὶ ἐν τῇδε τῇ χώρᾳ ἴσως ἀξιώσεις καὶ τείχη  
 λαμβάνειν, ὥσπερ καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν ὑμετέρων ἔλαβον, καὶ χώραν· ἄξιον  
 οὖν σοι καὶ μεγαλοπρεπέστατα τιμῆσαι Σεύθην. εὖνους δέ σοι ἂν  
 παραινῶ· εὖ οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι ὅσω ἂν μείζω τούτῳ δωρήσῃ, τοσούτῳ  
 μείζω ὑπὸ τούτου ἀγαθὰ |πεισσα?: ὀbedience, sub̄jection ; ὀρ πάσχω?: suffer ; or  
 |πειθω?: persuade  
 γὰρ |pass over, cross ἢ Παρίου εἰ μὴ παῖδα καὶ ὅσον ἐφόδιον.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰσῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον τῶν τε Θρακῶν οἱ κράτιστοι  
 τῶν παρόντων καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων  
 καὶ εἴ τις πρεσβεία παρῆν ἀπὸ πόλεως, τὸ δεῖπνον μὲν ἦν  
 καθημένοι |circle, ἔπειτα δὲ |cauldron |carry into, πᾶσιν· οὗτοι  
 |wheel |carry along  
 δ' ἦσαν κρεῶν |full νενεμημένων, καὶ ἄρτοι ζυμῆται μεγάλοι  
 προσπεπερονημένοι ἦσαν πρὸς τοῖς κρέασι. μάλιστα δ' αἱ τράπεζαι  
 κατὰ τοὺς ξένους |always, ἔντο· νόμος γὰρ ἦν— καὶ πρῶτος τοῦτο  
 |forever  
 ἐποίει Σεύθης, καὶ ἀνελόμενος τοὺς ἐαυτῷ παρακειμένους ἄρτους  
 διέκλα κατὰ μικρὸν καὶ ἐρρίπτει οἷς αὐτῷ ἐδόκει, καὶ τὰ κρέα

your neighbour, then, he is the man to do you good or do you ill. If you are wise, you will give him whatever he asks of you. On the whole, it will be laid out at better interest than if you have it to Medocus, who lives so far off." That was his mode of persuasion in their case. Next he came to Timasion the Dardanian, who, some one had told him, was the happy possessor of certain goblets and oriental carpets. What he said to him was: "It is customary when people are invited to dinner by Seuthes for the guests to make him a present; now if he should become a great person in these parts, he will be able to restore you to your native land, or to make you a rich man here." Such were the solicitations which he applied to each man in turn whom he accosted. Presently he came to Xenophon and said: "You are at once a citizen of no mean city, and with Seuthes also your own name is very great. Maybe you expect to obtain a fort or two in this country, just as others of your countrymen have done, and territory. It is only right and proper therefore that you should honour Seuthes in the most magnificent style. Be sure, I give this advice out of pure friendliness, for I know that the greater the gift that you are ready to bestow on him, the better the treatment you will receive at his hands." Xenophon, on hearing this, was in a sad dilemma, for he had brought with him, when he crossed from Parium, nothing but one boy and just enough to pay his travelling expenses.

As soon as the company, consisting of the most powerful Thracians there present, with the generals and captains of the Hellenes, and any embassy from a state which might be there, had arrived, they were seated in a circle, and the dinner was served. Thereupon three-legged stools were brought in and placed in front of the assembled guests. They were laden with pieces of meat, piled up, and there were huge leavened-loaves fastened on to

*vocabulary*

**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἄξιος** worthy ~axiom  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve  
**ἄρτος** bread, loaf  
**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning  
**γέλως** -τος laughter  
**γεύω** taste ~gusto  
**γόνυ** γουνός (n, 3) knee ~polygon  
**δείδω** to fear ~Deimos  
**δειπνέω** eat, dine  
**δέκα** ten ~decimal  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**δίφρος** seat, chariot box ~bear  
**διώκω** chase  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**εἰσάγω** lead in  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἴνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεὶ  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene

**ἵημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**καθίζω** to seat ~sit; also ἵζω, καθιζάνω  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon;  
 also καταλείπω  
**κείρω** shave, sever, raze; devour, use  
 up  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn  
**κρέας** (n, 3) meat ~creatine  
**λευκός** white ~light  
**μυστός** full  
**οἶνος** wine ~wine  
**οἰνοχόος** cupbearer  
**οὐκέτι** no more  
**τιμάω** honor, exalt  
**τιμή** honor, value  
**τράπεζα** a table ~trapezoid  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φιάλη** jar ~vial  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**φωνή** sound; voice ~megaphone  
**χαίρω** rejoice ~eucharist  
**χείρων** worse, more base  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω

ὡσαύτως, ὅσον μόνον γεύσασθαι ἑαυτῷ καταλιπών. καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ κατὰ ταυτὰ ἐποίουν καθ' οὓς αἱ τράπεζαι ἔκειντο. Ἄρκας δέ τις Ἀρύστας ὄνομα, φαγεῖν δεινός, τὸ μὲν διαρριπτεῖν εἶα χαίρειν, λαβὼν δὲ εἰς τὴν χεῖρα ὅσον τριχοῖνικον ἄρτον καὶ κρέα θέμενος ἐπὶ τὰ γόνατα ἐδείπνει. κέρατα δὲ οἴνου περιέφερον, καὶ πάντες ἐδέχοντο· ὁ δ' Ἀρύστας, ἐπεὶ παρ' αὐτὸν φέρων τὸ κέρας ὁ οἰνοχόος ἦκεν, εἶπεν ἰδὼν τὸν Ξενοφῶντα οὐκέτι δειπνοῦντα, Ἐκεῖνῳ, ἔφη, δός· σχολάζει γὰρ ἤδη, ἐγὼ δὲ οὐδέπω. ἀκούσας Σεύθης τὴν φωνὴν ἠρώτα τὸν οἰνοχόον τί λέγει. ὁ δὲ οἰνοχόος εἶπεν· ἐλληνίζειν γὰρ ἠπίστατο. ἐνταῦθα μὲν δὴ γέλωσ ἐγένετο.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ προυχώρει ὁ πότος, εἰσῆλθεν ἀνὴρ Θραξ ἵππον ἔχων λευκόν, καὶ λαβὼν κέρας μεστὸν εἶπε· Προπίνω σοι, ὦ Σεύθη, καὶ τὸν ἵππον τοῦτον δωροῦμαι, ἐφ' οὗ καὶ διώκων ὄν ἂν θέλῃς αἰρήσεις καὶ ἀποχωρῶν οὐ μὴ δείσης τὸν πολέμιον. ἄλλος παῖδα εἰσάγων οὕτως ἐδωρήσατο προπίνων, καὶ ἄλλος ἱμάτια τῇ γυναικί. καὶ Τιμασίων προπίνων ἐδωρήσατο φιάλην τε ἀργυρᾶν καὶ τάπιδα ἀξίαν δέκα μνῶν. Γνήσιππος δέ τις Ἀθηναῖος ἀναστάς εἶπεν ὅτι ἀρχαῖος εἷη νόμος κάλλιστος τοὺς μὲν ἔχοντας διδόναι τῷ βασιλεῖ τιμῆς ἕνεκα, τοῖς δὲ μὴ ἔχουσι διδόναι τὸν βασιλέα, ἵνα καὶ ἐγώ, ἔφη, ἔχω σοι δωρεῖσθαι καὶ τιμᾶν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἠπορεῖτο τί ποιήσει· καὶ γὰρ ἐτύγχανεν ὡς τιμώμενος ἐν τῷ πλησιαιτάτῳ δίφρῳ Σεύθη καθημένος. ὁ δὲ Ἡρακλείδης ἐκέλευεν αὐτῷ τὸ



ώσαύτως, ὅσον μόνον γεύσασθαι ἐαυτῷ καταλιπών. καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ κατὰ |identical| ἴουν καθ' οὓς αἱ τράπεζαι ἔκειτο. Ἄρκας δέ τις Ἄρυστας ὄνομα, φαγεῖν δεινός, τὸ μὲν διαρριπτεῖν εἶα χαίρειν, λαβὼν δὲ εἰς τὴν χεῖρα ὅσον τριχοίνικον ἄρτον καὶ κρέα θέμενος ἐπὶ τὰ γόνατα ἐδείπνει. κέρατα δὲ οἴνου περιέφερον, καὶ πάντες ἐδέχοντο· ὁ δ' Ἄρυστας, ἐπεὶ παρ' αὐτὸν φέρων τὸ κέρας ὁ |cupbearer<sup>6</sup>|, εἶπεν ἰδὼν τὸν Ξενοφῶντα οὐκέτι δειπνοῦντα, Ἐκείνῳ, ἔφη, δός· σχολάζει γὰρ ἤδη, ἐγὼ δὲ οὐδέπω. |ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix ; or ἴην ἠρώτα τὸν ἀκούω?: hear, listen |cupbearer<sup>7</sup>| λέγει. ὁ δὲ |cupbearer<sup>8</sup>| πεν· ἐλληνίζειν γὰρ |disbelieve ἐνταῦθα μὲν δὴ |laughter<sup>9</sup>| ἔνετο.

|after; because| δὲ προυχῶρει ὁ πότος, εἰσῆλθεν ἀνὴρ Θορᾶξ ἵππον ἔχων λευκόν, καὶ λαβὼν κέρας |full| εἶπε· Προπίνω σοι, ὦ Σεύθη, καὶ τὸν ἵππον τοῦτον δωροῦμαι, ἐφ' οὗ καὶ διώκων ὄν ἂν θέλῃς αἰρήσεις καὶ ἀποχωρῶν οὐ μὴ δείσης τὸν πολέμιον. ἄλλος παῖδα εἰσάγων οὕτως ἐδωρήσατο προπίνων, καὶ ἄλλος ἱμάτια τῇ γυναικί. καὶ Τιμασίων προπίνων ἐδωρήσατο |jar| τε ἀργυρᾶν καὶ τάπιδα ἀξίαν δέκα μνῶν. Γνήσιππος δέ τις Ἀθηναῖος ἀναστὰς εἶπεν ὅτι

|ancient, from| ἰος κάλλιστος τοὺς μὲν ἔχοντας |δίδημι?: should; bind; need, fail ; or δίδωμι?: give; permit |the beginning| τιμῆς ἔνεκα, τοῖς δὲ μὴ ἔχουσι |δίδημι?: should; bind; need, fail ; or δίδωμι?: give; permit| ἔφη, ἔχω σοι δωρεῖσθαι καὶ τιμᾶν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἠπορεύετο τί ποιήσει· καὶ γὰρ ἐτύγχανεν ὡς τιμώμενος ἐν τῷ πλησιαιτάτῳ δίφρῳ Σεύθη καθήμενος. ὁ δὲ Ἡρακλείδης ἐκέλευεν αὐτῷ τὸ

the pieces of meat with long skewers. The tables, as a rule, were set beside the guests at intervals. That was the custom; and Seuthes set the fashion of the performance. He took up the loaves which lay by his side and broke them into little pieces, and then threw the fragments here to one and there to another as seemed to him good; and so with the meat likewise, leaving for himself the merest taste. Then the rest fell to following the fashion set them, those that is who had tables placed beside them.

Now there was an Arcadian, Arystas by name, a huge eater; he soon got tired of throwing the pieces about, and seized a good three-quarters loaf in his two hands, placed some pieces of meat upon his knees, and proceeded to discuss his dinner. Then beakers of wine were brought round, and every one partook in turn; but when the cupbearer came to Arystas and handed him the bowl, he looked up, and seeing that Xenophon had done eating: "Give it him," quoth he, "he is more at leisure. I have something better to do at present." Seuthes, hearing a remark, asked the cupbearer what was said, and the cupbearer, who knew how to talk Greek, explained. Then followed a peal of laughter.

When the drinking had advanced somewhat, in came a Thracian with a white horse, who snatched the brimming bowl and said: "Here's a health to thee, O Seuthes! Let me present thee with this horse. Mounted on him, thou shalt capture whom thou chooseth to pursue, or retiring from battle, thou shalt not dread the foe." He was followed by one who brought in a boy, and presented him in proper style with "Here's a health to thee, O Seuthes!" A third had "clothes for his wife." Timasion, the Dardanian, pledged Seuthes, and presented a silver bowl and a carpet worth ten minae. Gnesippus, an Athenian, got up and said: "It was a good old custom, and a fine one too, that those who had, should give to the king for honour's sake, but to those who had not, the king should give; whereby,

*vocabulary*

**ἀέκων** unwilling  
**ἄκων** (3) javelin ~acme  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἀπολαμβάνω** receive, recover, take  
 aside, cut off  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**δῶρον** gift ~donate  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**εἴσειμι** go in; come in range  
**ἐλαφρός** nimble; light ~elevator  
**ἔξειμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἔοικα** seem, seem likely, beseem ~icon  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐταῖρος** companion; also ἐταίρα,  
 ἔταρος  
**ἥλιος** sun; also ἡέλιος  
**ἡμέτερος** our, my  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θαρσαλέος** bold, over-bold  
**καθίστημι** set down, land  
**κείρω** shave, sever, raze; devour, use  
 up  
**κεράννυμι** mix ~crater; also

ἐπικεράννυμι, κερνάω  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn  
**κτάομαι** acquire, possess (κτῆμα)  
**κτείνω** kill  
**κτέομαι** get, obtain, incur, own  
**μεθύω** be soaked, drunk ~mead  
**οἰνοχόος** cupbearer  
**ὀρέγω** hold out, offer, thrust ~reach  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**πιστός** faithful (πεῖθω)  
**πιστόω** reassure; also (pass) promise  
**πονέω** work; be busy  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**πω** not at all; until now, (not) yet  
**σάλπιγξ** -γος (f/m) trumpet  
**σαλπίζω** sound the trumpet  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 ἐντυγχάνω  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard  
 ~phylactery  
**χώρα** place  
**ὥρα** season, time ~horoscope

κέρας ὀρέξαι τὸν οἰνοχόον. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἤδη γὰρ ὑποπεπωκῶς ἐτύγχανεν ἀνέστη θαρραλέως δεξάμενος τὸ κέρας καὶ εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ δέ σοι, ὦ Σεύθη, δίδωμι ἑμαυτὸν καὶ τοὺς ἐμοὺς τούτους ἐταίρους φίλους εἶναι πιστούς, καὶ οὐδένα ἄκοντα, ἀλλὰ πάντας μᾶλλον ἔτι ἐμοῦ σοι βουλομένους φίλους εἶναι. καὶ νῦν πάρεισιν οὐδέν σε προσαιτοῦντες, ἀλλὰ καὶ προϊέμενοι καὶ πονεῖν ὑπὲρ σοῦ καὶ προκινδυνεύειν ἐθέλοντες· μεθ' ὧν, ἂν οἱ θεοὶ θέλωσι, πολλὴν χώραν τὴν μὲν ἀπολήψῃ πατρίαν οὖσαν, τὴν δὲ κτήσῃ, πολλοὺς δὲ ἵππους, πολλοὺς δὲ ἄνδρας καὶ γυναῖκας καλὰς κτήσῃ, οὓς οὐ λήξεσθαί σε δεήσει, ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ φέροντες παρέσονται πρὸς σὲ δῶρα. ἀναστὰς ὁ Σεύθης συνεξέπικε καὶ συγκατεσκεδάσατο μετ' αὐτοῦ τὸ κέρας. μετὰ ταῦτα εἰσῆλθον κέρασί τε οἷοις σημαίνουσιν αὐλοῦντες καὶ σάλπιγξιν ὠμοβοεαῖς ῥυθμούς τε καὶ οἶον μαγάδι σαλπίζοντες. καὶ αὐτὸς Σεύθης ἀναστὰς ἀνέκραγέ τε πολεμικὸν καὶ ἐξήλατο ὥσπερ βέλος φυλαττόμενος μάλα ἐλαφρῶς. εἰσῆσαν δὲ καὶ γελωτοποιοί.

Ὡς δ' ἦν ἥλιος ἐπὶ δυσμαῖς, ἀνέστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ εἶπον ὅτι ὥρα νυκτοφύλακας καθιστάναι καὶ σύνθημα παραδιδόναι. καὶ Σεύθην ἐκέλευον παραγγεῖλαι ὅπως εἰς τὰ Ἑλληνικὰ στρατόπεδα μηδεῖς τῶν Θρακῶν εἴσεισι νυκτός· οἱ τε γὰρ πολέμοι Θραῖκες ὑμῖν καὶ ὑμεῖς οἱ φίλοι. ὡς δ' ἐξῆσαν, συνανέστη ὁ Σεύθης οὐδέν τι μεθύοντι ἐοικώς. ἐξελθὼν δ' εἶπεν αὐτοὺς τοὺς στρατηγούς ἀποκαλέσας· ὦ ἄνδρες, οἱ πολέμοι ἡμῶν οὐκ ἴσασί πω τὴν ἡμετέραν

*κέρας ὀρέξαι τὸν* |cupbearer *ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἤδη γὰρ ὑποπεπωκῶς*  
*ἐτύχανεν ἀνέστη* |bold *δεξάμενος τὸ κέρασ καὶ εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ*  
*δέ σοι, ὦ Σεύθη, |δίδημι?: should; bind; need, fail* ἴοτους ἑταίρους  
*φίλους εἶναι πιστοῦς, καὶ οὐδένα ἄκοντα, ἀλλὰ πάντας μᾶλλον*  
*ἔτι ἐμοῦ σοι βουλομένους φίλους εἶναι. καὶ νῦν πάρεισι οὐδέν*  
*σε* |demand as well *ἄλλὰ καὶ προϊέμενοι καὶ πονεῖν ὑπὲρ σοῦ καὶ*  
*προκινδυνεύειν ἐθέλοντες· μεθ' ὧν, ἂν οἱ θεοὶ θέλωσι, πολλὴν χώραν*  
*τὴν μὲν* |receive, recover, take *ἴσαν, τὴν δὲ κτήσῃ, πολλοὺς δὲ ἵππους,*  
*πολλοὺς δὲ ἄνδρας καὶ γυναῖκας καλὰς κτήσῃ, οὓς οὐ λήξῃσθαί σε*  
*δείσει, ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ φέροντες παρέσονται πρὸς σὲ δῶρα. ἀναστὰς ὁ*  
*Σεύθης συνεξέπικε καὶ συγκατεσκεδάσατο μετ' αὐτοῦ τὸ κέρασ. μετὰ*  
*ταῦτα εἰσῆλθον* |κεράννυμι?: mix ; αἰνουσιν αὐλοῦντες καὶ |trumpet  
*ὠμοβοεαῖς ῥυθμούς τε καὶ οἶον μαγάδι* |sound the trumpet *ὑτὸς*  
*Σεύθης ἀναστὰς* |speak up *τε πολεμικὸν καὶ ἐξήλατο ὥσπερ βέλος*  
*φυλαττόμενος μάλα* |nimble; |go in *δὲ καὶ γελωτοποιοί.*  
*Ἵς δ' ἦν ἥλιος ἐπὶ δυσμαῖς, ἀνέστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ εἶπον*  
*ὅτι ὥρα νυκτοφύλακας καθιστάναι καὶ σύνθημα παραδιδόναι. καὶ*  
*Σεύθην ἐκέλευον παραγγεῖλαι ὅπως εἰς τὰ Ἑλληνικὰ στρατόπεδα*  
*μηδεῖς τῶν Θρακῶν* |go in *νυκτός· οἳ τε γὰρ πολέμοι Θραῖκες*  
*ὑμῖν καὶ ὑμεῖς οἱ φίλοι. ὡς δ' |go forth* νυνανέστη ὁ Σεύθης οὐδέν  
*τι* |be soaked, drunk *ἐξελθὼν δ' εἶπεν αὐτοῦς τοὺς στρατηγούς*  
*ἀποκαλέσας· |typé of fruit* τολέμοι ἡμῶν οὐκ ἴσασί πω τὴν ἡμετέραν

my lord," he added, "I too may one day have the wherewithal to give thee gifts and honour." Xenophon the while was racking his brains what he was to do; he was not the happier because he was seated in the seat next Seuthes as a mark of honour; and Heracleides bade the cupbearer hand him the bowl. The wine had perhaps a little mounted to his head; he rose, and manfully seized the cup, and spoke: "I also, Seuthes, have to present you with myself and these my dear comrades to be your trusty friends, and not one of them against his will. They are more ready, one and all, still more than I, to be your friends. Here they are; they ask nothing from you in return, rather they are forward to labour in your behalf; it will be their pleasure to bear the brunt of battle in voluntary service. With them, God willing, you will gain vast territory; you will recover what was once your forefathers'; you will win for yourself new lands; and not lands only, but horses many, and of men a multitude, and many a fair dame besides. You will not need to seize upon them in robber fashion; it is your friends here who, of their own accord, shall take and bring them to you, they shall lay them at your feet as gifts." Up got Seuthes and drained with him the cup, and with him sprinkled the last drops fraternally.

At this stage entered musicians blowing upon horns such as they use for signal calls, and trumpeting on trumpets, made of raw oxhide, tunes and airs, like the music of the double-octave harp. Seuthes himself got up and shouted, trolling forth a war song; then he sprang from his place and leapt about as though he would guard himself against a missile, in right nimble style. Then came in a set of clowns and jesters.

But when the sun began to set, the Hellenes rose from their seats. It was time, they said, to place the night sentinels and to pass

*vocabulary*

**ἀγέομαι** go before, lead ~hegemony;  
also ἡγέομαι  
**ἀγνοέω** be ignorant of  
**ἀναμένω** wait for  
**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease  
**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape  
**διασπάω** tear apart  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide,  
chief  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἦμερος** domesticated  
**ἦνίκα** when  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
**ἵππιοχάρμης**  
**ἵππικός** of horses  
**λανθάνω** escape notice; (mp+gen)  
forget ~Lethe; also καταλήθομαι  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
infantryman

**ὄπλομαι** get ready, prepare  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
**ὅποῖος** whatever kind  
**ὀρθός** upright ~orthogonal  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πολλάκις** often  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch  
~skeptical  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**συμφέρω** bring together (φέρω)  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὕμέτερος** yours  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard  
~phylactery  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**χώρα** place

συμμαχίαν· ἦν οὖν ἔλθωμεν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς πρὶν φυλάξασθαι ὥστε μὴ  
 ληφθῆναι ἢ παρασκευάσασθαι ὥστε ἀμύνασθαι, μάλιστ' ἂν λάβομεν  
 καὶ ἀνθρώπους καὶ χρήματα. συνεπήγουν ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ  
 ἠγγείσθαι ἐκέλευον. ὁ δ' εἶπε· Παρασκευασάμενοι ἀναμένετε· ἐγὼ  
 δὲ ὅποταν καιρὸς ἦ ἤξω πρὸς ὑμᾶς, καὶ τοὺς πελταστὰς καὶ ὑμᾶς  
 ἀναλαβὼν ἠγήσομαι σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε· Σκέψαι  
 τοῖνυν, εἴπερ νυκτὸς πορευσόμεθα, εἰ ὁ Ἑλληνικὸς νόμος κάλλιον  
 ἔχει· μεθ' ἡμέραν μὲν γὰρ ἐν ταῖς πορείαις ἠγείται τοῦ στρατεύματος  
 ὁποῖον ἂν αἰεὶ πρὸς τὴν χώραν συμφέρη, ἐάν τε ὀπλιτικὸν ἐάν τε  
 πελταστικὸν ἐάν τε ἵππικόν· νύκτωρ δὲ νόμος τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἠγείσθαι  
 ἐστὶ τὸ βραδύτατον· οὕτω γὰρ ἤκιστα διασπᾶται τὰ στρατεύματα καὶ  
 ἤκιστα λαιθάνουσιν ἀποδιδράσκοντες ἀλλήλους· οἱ δὲ διασπασθέντες  
 πολλάκις καὶ περιπίπτουσιν ἀλλήλοις καὶ ἀγνοοῦντες κακῶς ποιοῦσι  
 καὶ πάσχουσιν. εἶπεν οὖν Σεύθης· Ὅρθῶς λέγετε καὶ ἐγὼ τῷ νόμῳ τῷ  
 ὑμετέρῳ πείσομαι. καὶ ὑμῖν μὲν ἠγεμόνας δώσω τῶν πρεσβυτάτων  
 τοὺς ἐμπειροτάτους τῆς χώρας, αὐτοὺς δ' ἐφέψομαι τελευταῖος τοὺς  
 ἵππους ἔχων· ταχὺ γὰρ πρῶτος, ἂν δέη, παρέσομαι. σύνθημα δ' εἶπον  
 Ἀθηναίαν κατὰ τὴν συγγένειαν. ταῦτα εἰπόντες ἀνεπαύοντο.

Ἦνίκα δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας, παρῆν Σεύθης ἔχων τοὺς ἵππείας  
 τεθωρακισμένους καὶ τοὺς πελταστὰς σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις. καὶ ἐπεὶ  
 παρέδωκε τοὺς ἠγεμόνας, οἱ μὲν ὀπλῖται ἠγούντο, οἱ δὲ πελτασταὶ  
 εἶποντο, οἱ δ' ἵππείς ὠπισθοφυλάκουν· ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ἦν, ὁ Σεύθης



συμμαχίαν· ἦν οὖν ἔλθωμεν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς πρὶν φυλάξασθαι ὥστε μὴ  
 ληφθῆναι ἢ παρασκευάσασθαι ὥστε ἀμύνασθαι, μάλιστ' ἂν λάβοιμεν  
 καὶ ἀνθρώπους καὶ χρήματα. συνεπήνουν ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ  
 ἠγγεῖσθαι ἐκέλευον. ὁ δ' εἶπε· Παρασκευασάμενοι |wait for ἐγὼ  
 δὲ ὅπταν καιρὸς ἦ ἤξω πρὸς ὑμᾶς, καὶ τοὺς |light καὶ ὑμᾶς  
 ἀναλαβὼν ἠγγέσομαι σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε· |look, look at, watch  
 τοῖνυν, εἴπερ νυκτὸς πορευσόμεθα, εἰ ὁ Ἑλληνικὸς νόμος κάλλιον  
 ἔχει· μεθ' ἡμέραν μὲν γὰρ ἐν ταῖς πορείαις ἠγγείται τοῦ στρατεύματος  
 |whatever kind ἄρως τὴν χώραν συμφέρη, ἐάν τε ὀπλιτικὸν ἐάν τε  
 πελταστικὸν ἐάν τε |of horses ἵκτωρ δὲ νόμος τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἠγγεῖσθαι  
 ἐστὶ τὸ βραδύτατον· οὕτω γὰρ ἦκιστα |tear apart τὰ στρατεύματα καὶ  
 ἦκιστα λανθάνουσιν ἀποδιδράσκοντες ἀλλήλους· οἱ δὲ |tear apart  
 πολλάκις καὶ περιπίπτουσιν ἀλλήλοις καὶ ἀγνοοῦντες κακῶς ποιοῦσι  
 καὶ πάσχουσιν. εἶπεν οὖν Σεύθης· Ὀρθῶς λέγετε καὶ ἐγὼ τῷ νόμῳ τῷ  
 ὑμετέρῳ πείσομαι. καὶ ὑμῖν μὲν ἠγεμόνας δώσω τῶν πρεσβυτάτων  
 τοὺς ἐμπειροτάτους τῆς χώρας, αὐτοὺς δ' ἐφέψομαι τελευταῖος τοὺς  
 ἵππους ἔχων· ταχὺ γὰρ πρῶτος, ἂν δέη, παρέσομαι. σύνθημα δ' εἶπον  
 Ἀθηναίαν κατὰ τὴν συγγένειαν. ταῦτα εἰπόντες |cause to cease  
 Ἦνίκα δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας, παρῆν Σεύθης ἔχων τοὺς ἵππείας  
 τεθωρακισμένους καὶ τοὺς |light σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις. καὶ ἐπεὶ  
 παρέδωκε τοὺς ἠγεμόνας, οἱ μὲν ὀπλῖται |go before, lead |light  
 εἶποντο, οἱ δ' ἵππεις ὠπισθοφυλάκουν· ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ἦν, ὁ Σεύθης

the watchword; further, they begged of Seuthes to issue an order that none of the Thracians were to enter the Hellenic camp at night, “since between your Thracian foes and our Thracian friends there might be some confusion.” As they sallied forth, Seuthes rose to accompany them, like the soberest of men. When they were outside, he summoned the generals apart and said: “Sirs, our enemies are not aware as yet of our alliance. If, therefore, we attack them before they take precautions not to be caught, or are prepared to repel assault, we shall make a fine haul of captives and other stock.” The generals fully approved of these views, and bade him lead on. He answered: “Prepare and wait; as soon as the right time comes I will be with you. I shall pick up the peltasts and yourselves, and with the help of the gods, I will lead on.” “But consider one point,” urged Xenophon; “if we are to march by night, is not the Hellenic fashion best? When marching in the daytime that part of the army leads the van which seems best suited to the nature of the country to be traversed— heavy or light infantry, or cavalry; but by night our rule is that the slowest arm should take the lead. Thus we avoid the risk of being pulled to pieces: and it is not so easy for a man to give his neighbour the slip without intending, whereas the scattered fragments of an army are apt to fall foul of one another, and to cause damage or incur it in sheer ignorance.” To this Seuthes replied: “You reason well, and I will adopt your custom. I will furnish you with guides chosen from the oldest experts of the country, and I will myself follow with the cavalry in the rear; it will not take me long, if need be, to present myself at the front.” Then, for kinship’s sake, they chose “Athenaia” as their watchword. With this, they turned and sought repose.

It was about midnight when Seuthes presented himself with his

*vocabulary*

**ἀθρόος** grouped  
**αἶρω** raise, win ~aorta; also ἀείρω  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also ἄκρα,  
 ἄκρη  
**ἀλέξω** ward off; aid  
**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
 ἀφήκω  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**διό** because of which  
**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also  
 ἐλαστρέω  
**ἐναντίος** opposite, facing, meeting  
**ἐπαινέω** concur, concur with  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔρομαι** ask, search through; also  
 ἀνέρομαι, εἶρομαι, ἐξείρομαι, ἐξέρομαι  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἦνίκα** when  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἵππιοχάρμης  
**καταβαίνω** go down  
**κώμη** village  
**λανθάνω** escape notice; (mp+gen)

forget ~Lethe; also καταλήθομαι  
**λείπω** leave something; depart  
 ~eclipse; also λιπάω  
**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also οὐδός  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**ὄρнуμι** set upon, arouse ~hormone;  
 also ὑπόρнуμι  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πεζός** on foot; footsoldier (πούς)  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πολλάκις** often  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**πρόσω** forward, in the future; also  
 πόρρω, πρόσωθεν  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch  
 ~skeptic  
**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry  
 ~repudiate  
**τεσσαράκοντα** forty; also  
 τετταράκοντα  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑφίστημι** promise, undertake  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

παρήλανεν εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν καὶ ἐπήνεσε τὸν Ἑλληνικὸν νόμον. πολλάκις γὰρ ἔφη νύκτωρ αὐτὸς καὶ σὺν ὀλίγοις πορευόμενος ἀποσπασθῆναι σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις ἀπὸ τῶν πεζῶν· νῦν δ' ὥσπερ δεῖ ἀθρόοι πάντες ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ φαινόμεθα. ἀλλὰ ὑμεῖς μὲν περιμένετε αὐτοῦ καὶ ἀναπαύσασθε, ἐγὼ δὲ σκειψάμενός τι ἤξω. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἤλαυνε δι' ὄρους ὁδὸν τινα λαβών. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκετο εἰς χιόνα πολλήν, ἐσκέψατο εἰ εἴη ἕχνη ἀνθρώπων ἢ πρόσω ἡγούμενα ἢ ἐναντία. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀτριβῆ ἑώρα τὴν ὁδόν, ἦκε ταχὺ πάλιν καὶ ἔλεγεν· Ἄνδρες, καλῶς ἔσται, ἦν θεὸς θέλη· τοὺς γὰρ ἀνθρώπους λήσομεν ἐπιπεσόντες. ἀλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν ἡγήσομαι τοῖς ἵπποις, ὅπως ἂν τινα ἴδωμεν, μὴ διαφυγὼν σημήνη τοῖς πολεμίοις· ὑμεῖς δ' ἔπεσθε· κὰν λειφθῆτε, τῷ στίβῳ τῶν ἵππων ἔπεσθε. ὑπερβάντες δὲ τὰ ὄρη ἤξομεν εἰς κώμας πολλὰς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας.

Ἦνίκα δ' ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας, ἤδη τε ἦν ἐπὶ τοῖς ἄκροις καὶ κατιδὼν τὰς κώμας ἦκεν ἐλαύνων πρὸς τοὺς ὀπλίτας καὶ ἔλεγεν· Ἀφήσω ἤδη καταθεῖν τοὺς μὲν ἱππέας εἰς τὸ πεδίον, τοὺς δὲ πελταστὰς ἐπὶ τὰς κώμας. ἀλλ' ἔπεσθε ὡς ἂν δύνησθε τάχιστα, ὅπως ἑάν τις ὑφιστῆται, ἀλέξησθε. ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν κατέβη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου. καὶ ὃς ἦρετο· Τί καταβαίνεις ἐπεὶ σπεύδειν δεῖ; Οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι οὐκ ἐμοῦ μόνου δέη· οἱ δὲ ὀπλίται θάπτον δραμοῦνται καὶ ἥδιον, ἐὰν καὶ ἐγὼ πεζὸς ἡγῶμαι. μετὰ ταῦτα ὄχητο, καὶ Τιμασίων μετ' αὐτοῦ ἔχων ἱππέας ὡς τετταράκοντα τῶν Ἑλλήνων.

|pass, outstrip εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν καὶ ἐπήνεσε τὸν Ἑλληνικὸν νόμον.  
 πολλάκις γὰρ ἔφη νύκτωρ αὐτὸς καὶ σὺν ὀλίγοις πορευόμενος  
 ἀποσπασθῆναι σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις ἀπὸ τῶν |πέζα?: πόλε ἐνδ' ; or πεζός?: on foot;  
 ἀθρόοι πάντες ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ φαινόμεθα. ἀλλὰ ὑμεῖς μὲν περιμένετε  
 αὐτοῦ καὶ |cause to cease ἔγὼ δὲ |look, look at, watch ταῦτ' εἰπὼν  
 ἤλαυνε δι' ὄρους ὁδὸν τινα λαβών. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκετο εἰς |snow πολλήν,  
 |look, look at, watch, ἰνθρώπων ἢ |forward, in, ιμενα ἢ ἐναντία. ἐπεὶ  
 δὲ ἀτριβῆ ἑώρα τὴν ὁδόν, ἦκε ταχὺ πάλιν καὶ ἔλεγεν· Ἄνδρες, καλῶς  
 ἔσται, ἦν θεὸς θέλη· τοὺς γὰρ ἀνθρώπους λήσομεν ἐπιπεσόντες. ἀλλ'  
 ἐγὼ μὲν ἠγήσομαι τοῖς ἵπποις, ὅπως ἂν τινα ἴδωμεν, μὴ διαφυγῶν  
 σημήνη τοῖς πολεμίοις· ὑμεῖς δ' ἔπεσθε· κἂν λειφθῆτε, τῷ στίβῳ τῶν  
 ἵππων ἔπεσθε. |pass, transgress ἵ ὄρη ἠΐξομεν εἰς |village πολλάς τε  
 καὶ |blessed with a  
 |good genius  
 Ἦνίκα δ' ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας, ἦδη τε ἦν ἐπὶ τοῖς |ἄκρον?: extremity ; or ἄκρος?:  
 τὰς |village ἦκεν ἐλαύνων πρὸς τοὺς ὀπίστας καὶ ἔλεγεν· Ἀφῆσω  
 ἦδη καταθεῖν τοὺς μὲν ἱππέας εἰς τὸ πεδίον, τοὺς δὲ |light  
 ἐπὶ τὰς |village ἀλλ' ἔπεσθε ὡς ἂν δύνησθε τάχιστα, ὅπως ἑάν  
 τις |promise, |ward off;|ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix̄ ; or ἂν κατέβη ἀπὸ  
 |undertake |aid |ἀκούω?: hear, listen  
 τοῦ ἵππου. καὶ ὃς ἤρετο· Τί καταβαίνεις ἐπεὶ σπεύδειν δεῖ; Οἶδα,  
 ἔφη, ὅτι οὐκ ἐμοῦ μόνου δέη· οἱ δὲ ὀπίσται θᾶττον δραμοῦνται  
 καὶ ἦδιον, ἐὰν καὶ ἐγὼ πεζὸς ἠγῶμαι. μετὰ ταῦτα ᾤχετο, καὶ  
 Τιμασίῳ μετ' αὐτοῦ ἔχων ἱππέας ὡς τετταράκοντα τῶν Ἑλλήνων.

cavalry troopers armed with corselets, and his light infantry under arms. As soon as he had handed over to them the promised guides, the heavy infantry took the van, followed by the light troops in the centre, while the cavalry brought up the rear. At daybreak Seuthes rode up to the front. He complimented them on their method: so often had he himself, while marching by night with a mere handful of men, been separated with his cavalry from his infantry. "But now," said he, "we find ourselves at dawn of day all happily together, just as we ought to be. Do you wait for me here," he proceeded, "and recruit yourselves. I will take a look round and rejoin you." So saying he took a certain path over hill and rode off. As soon as he had reached deep snow, he looked to see whether there were footprints of human beings leading forward or in the opposite direction; and having satisfied himself that the road was untrodden, back he came, exclaiming: "God willing, sirs, it will be all right; we shall fall on the fellows, before they know where they are. I will lead on with the cavalry; so that if we catch sight of any one, he shall not escape and give warning to the enemy. Do you follow, and if you are left behind, keep to the trail of the horses. Once on the other side of the mountains, we shall find ourselves in numerous thriving villages."

By the middle of the day he had already gained the top of the pass and looked down upon the villages below. Back he came riding to the heavy infantry and said: "I will at once send off the cavalry into the plain below, and the peltasts too, to attack the villages. Do you follow with what speed you may, so that in case of resistance you may lend us your aid." Hearing this, Xenophon dismounted, and the other asked: "Why do you dismount just when speed is the thing we want?" The other answered: "But you do not want me alone, I am sure. The hoplites will run all the quicker and more cheerily if I lead

*vocabulary*

**ἄθρόος** grouped  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme; also ἄκρα,  
 ἄκρη  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**βοῦς βοός** (m/f) cow, ox; shield  
 ~bovine  
**δείδω** to fear ~Deimos  
**δεῖπνον** meal, food; also δεῖπνος  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**διατίθηναι** arrange; set out goods for  
 sale  
**διώκω** chase  
**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart  
**ἐργάζομαι** work, function well  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἵππιοχάρμης  
**κατακαίω** burn down  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake  
**κώμη** village  
**λείπω** leave something; depart  
 ~eclipse; also λιπάω

**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**μεστός** full  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**μυρίος** immense, myriad ~myriad  
**οἶνος** wine ~wine  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὄρνημι** set upon, arouse ~hormone;  
 also ὑπόρνημι  
**ὄρος ὄρεος** (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**παρίηναι** dangle; pass over, allow  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πήγνυμι** stick, set, build ~fang  
**πού** no doubt; somewhere/how  
**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds; also  
 πρόβασις  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up  
 station  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
**ὑστεραῖος** the next; later  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φόβος** fear, rout, panic ~phobia  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**χιλιοί** thousand ~kilo-

Ξενοφῶν δὲ παρηγγύησε τοὺς εἰς τριάκοντα ἔτη παριέναι ἀπὸ τῶν λόχων εὐζώνους. καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν ἐτρόχαζε τούτους ἔχων, Κλεάνωρ δ' ἠγείτο τῶν ἄλλων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν ταῖς κόμαις ἦσαν, Σεύθης ἔχων ὅσον τριάκοντα ἰππέας προσελάσας εἶπε· Τάδε δὴ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἂ σὺ ἔλεγες· ἔχονται οἱ ἄνθρωποι· ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἔρημοι οἱ ἰππεῖς οἴχονται μοι ἄλλος ἄλλη διώκων, καὶ δέδοικα μὴ συστάντες ἀθρόοι που κακόν τι ἐργάσωνται οἱ πολέμιοι. δεῖ δὲ καὶ ἐν ταῖς κόμαις καταμένειν τινὰς ἡμῶν· μεσταὶ γάρ εἰσιν ἀνθρώπων. Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, σὺν οἷς ἔχω τὰ ἄκρα καταλήψομαι· σὺ δὲ Κλεάνωρα κέλευε διὰ τοῦ πεδίου παρατείνειν τὴν φάλαγγα παρὰ τὰς κόμας. ἐπεὶ ταῦτα ἐποίησαν, συνηλίσθησαν ἀνδράποδα μὲν ὡς χίλια, βόες δὲ δισχίλιοι, πρόβατα ἄλλα μύρια. τότε μὲν δὴ αὐτοῦ ἠϋλίσθησαν.

#### 7.4

Τῇ δ' ὑστεραία κατακαύσας ὁ Σεύθης τὰς κόμας παντελῶς καὶ οἰκίαν οὐδεμίαν λιπών, ὅπως φόβον ἐνθείη καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις οἶα πείσονται, ἂν μὴ πείθωνται, ἀπήει πάλιν. καὶ τὴν μὲν λείαν ἀπέπεμψε διατίθεσθαι Ἡρακλεΐδην εἰς Πέρυθον, ὅπως ἂν μισθὸς γένοιτο τοῖς στρατιώταις· αὐτὸς δὲ καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἀνὰ τὸ Θυνῶν πεδῖον. οἱ δ' ἐκλιπόντες ἔφευγον εἰς τὰ ὄρη. ἦν δὲ χιῶν πολλὴ καὶ ψῦχος οὕτως ὥστε τὸ ὕδωρ ὃ ἐφέροντο ἐπὶ δεῖπνον ἐπήγνυτο καὶ ὁ οἶνος ὃ ἐν τοῖς ἀγγείοις, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων πολλῶν



Ξενοφῶν δὲ παρηγγύησε τοὺς εἰς τριάκοντα ἔτη ἀνὰ τῶν  
 καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν |run, spin |low- |over, allow  
 |am- |well-girded καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν |run, spin |low- |over, allow  
 |bush, |bands before, lead ὡν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν ταῖς |village towns-  
 |child- |birth τριάκοντα ἰππέας |go to, approach |Ταύτην, ὧς Ξενοφῶν, ἅ |έτος?; ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἅ  
 οὐ ἔλεγεσ' ἔχονται οἱ ἄνθρωποι· ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἔρημοι οἱ ἰππεῖς οἴχονται |year  
 μοι ἄλλος ἄλλη διώκων, καὶ δέδοικα μὴ συστάσθαι ἀθροῖοι που κακόν |; or  
 τι ἐργάσωνται οἱ πολέμοι. δεῖ δὲ καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ καταμένειν |τίθῃμι?;  
 τινὰς ἡμῶν |full γὰρ εἰσιν ἀνθρώπων. ἀλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν, ἔφη ὁ |put;  
 Ξενοφῶν, σὺν οἷς ἔχω τὰ ἄκροις?; hilltop ; or ἄκρον?; extremity ; or ἄκρος?; at  
 διὰ τοῦ πεδίου παρατεῖναι τὴν φάλαγγα παρὰ τὰς |village ἐπεὶ ταῦτα  
 ἐποίησαν, συνηλίσθησαν |slave μὲν ὡς χίλια, βόες δὲ |2000  
 πρόβατα ἄλλα μύρια. τότε μὲν δὴ αὐτοῦ |be driven home

7.4

Τῇ δ' |the next; |burn down ὁ Σεύθης τὰς |village παντελῶς καὶ  
 |later οἰκίαν οὐδεμίαν λιπών, ὅπως φόβον ἐνθεῖη καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις οἷα  
 πείσονται, ἂν μὴ πείθωνται, ἀπήει πάλιν. καὶ τὴν μὲν λείαν ἀπέπεμψε  
 |arrange; set out <sup>TT</sup>λείδην εἰς Πέρυθον, ὅπως ἂν μισθὸς γένοιτο τοῖς  
 |goods for sale στρατιώταις· αὐτὸς δὲ καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες |encamp or ἀνὰ τὸ  
 |take up sta-  
 Θυνῶν πεδίου. οἱ δ' ἐκλιπόντες ἔφευγον |tion τὰ ὄρη. ἦν δὲ |snow  
 πολλή καὶ |coolness ἄνω ὥστε τὸ ὕδωρ ὁ ἐφέροντο ἐπὶ δειπνον  
 |stick, set, build ἕλκος ὁ ἐν τοῖς ἀγγείοις, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων πολλῶν

them on foot.”

Thereupon Seuthes went off, and Timasion with him, taking the Helene squadron of something like forty troopers. Then Xenophon passed the order: the active young fellows up to thirty years of age from the different companies to the front; and off with these he went himself, bowling along; while Cleanor led the other Hellenes. When they had reached the villages, Seuthes, with about thirty troopers, rode up, exclaiming: “Well, Xenophon, this is just what you said! the fellows are caught, but now look here. My cavalry have gone off unsupported; they are scattered in pursuit, one here, one there, and upon my word, I am more than half afraid the enemy will collect somewhere and do them a mischief. Some of us must remain in the villages, for they are swarming with human beings.” “Well then,” said Xenophon, “I will seize the heights with the men I have with me, and do you bid Cleanor extend his line along the level beside the villages.” When they had done so, there were enclosed— of captives for the slave market, one thousand; of cattle, two thousand; and of other small cattle, ten thousand. For the time being they took up quarters there.

#### 7.4

But the next day Seuthes burnt the villages to the ground; he left not a single house, being minded to inspire terror in the rest of his enemies, and to show them what they also were to expect, if they refused obedience; and so he went back again. As to the booty, he sent off Heraclides to Perinthus to dispose of it, with a view to future pay for the soldiers. But for himself he encamped with the Hellenes in the lowland country of the Thynians, the natives leaving the flats and betaking themselves in flight to the uplands.

There was deep snow, and cold so intense that the water brought in for dinner and the wine within the jars froze; and many of the

Hellenes had their



*vocabulary*

**αἶρω** raise, win ~aorta; also ἀείρω  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἀποκτείνω** kill  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also ἐξόλλυμι,  
 ὄλλυμι  
**ἀρόω** plow ~arable  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
 ἀφήκω  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**ἐκφεύγω** flee from, escape  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἔρομαι** ask, search through; also  
 ἀνέρομαι, εἴρομαι, ἐξείρομαι, ἐξέρομαι  
**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἰκετεύω** approach to beg  
**ἰππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἰππιοχάρμης  
**καταβαίνω** go down  
**κατακαίω** burn down  
**κεφαλή** head; height ~gable  
**κώμη** village  
**λιμός** (m/f) famine  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**μηρός** thigh, femur

**νέος** young; neuter: recently ~neon  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**ὄρнуμι** set upon, arouse ~hormone;  
 also ὑπόρнуμι  
**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**οὔς** ὠτός (n) ear  
**παίζω** play  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
**ῥίς ῥίνός** (f) nose, nostrils  
**σίτος** (m/n) grain, bread, food  
 ~parasite  
**σκοπός** (m/f) lookout ~telescope  
**στέρνον** chest ~sternum  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble  
**τράχηλος** neck  
**τρόπος** (m/n) turn; manner, kind,  
 fashion  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χάρις** -τος (f) grace ~eucharist  
**χιτών** -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor

καὶ ῥίνες ἀπεκαίοντο καὶ ὠτα. καὶ τότε δῆλον ἐγένετο οὐ ἕνεκα οἱ Θρῶκες τὰς ἀλωπεκᾶς ἐπὶ ταῖς κεφαλαῖς φοροῦσι καὶ τοῖς ὠσί, καὶ χιτῶνας οὐ μόνον περὶ τοῖς στέρνοις ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ τοῖς μηροῖς, καὶ ζειρὰς μέχρι τῶν ποδῶν ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων ἔχουσιν, ἀλλ' οὐ χλαμύδας. ἀφίεις δὲ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων ὁ Σεύθης εἰς τὰ ὄρη ἔλεγεν ὅτι εἰ μὴ καταβήσονται οἰκήσοντες καὶ πείσονται, ὅτι κατακαύσει καὶ τούτων τὰς κόμας καὶ τὸν σῖτον, καὶ ἀπολοῦνται τῷ λιμῷ. ἐκ τούτου κατέβαινον καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ παῖδες καὶ πρεσβύτεροι· οἱ δὲ νεώτεροι ἐν ταῖς ὑπὸ τὸ ὄρος κόμαις ἠυλίζοντο. καὶ ὁ Σεύθης καταμαθὼν ἐκέλευσε τὸν Ξενοφῶντα τῶν ὀπλιτῶν τοὺς νεωτάτους λαβόντα συνεπισπέσθαι. καὶ ἀναστάντες τῆς νυκτὸς ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ παρήσαν εἰς τὰς κόμας. καὶ οἱ μὲν πλείστοι ἐξέφυγον· πλησίον γὰρ ἦν τὸ ὄρος· ὅσους δὲ ἔλαβε κατηκόντισεν ἀφειδῶς Σεύθης.

Ἐπισθένης δ' ἦν τις Ὀλύμπιος παιδεραστής, ὃς ἰδὼν παῖδα καλὸν ἠβάσκοντα ἄρτι πέλτην ἔχοντα μέλλοντα ἀποθνήσκειν, προσδραμὼν Ξενοφῶντα ἰκέτευε βοηθῆσαι παιδὶ καλῷ. καὶ ὃς προσελθὼν τῷ Σεύθῃ δεῖται μὴ ἀποκτεῖναι τὸν παῖδα, καὶ τοῦ Ἐπισθένου διηγείται τὸν τρόπον, καὶ ὅτι λόχον ποτὲ συνελέξατο σκοπῶν οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ εἴ τινες εἶεν καλοί, καὶ μετὰ τούτων ἦν ἀνὴρ ἀγαθός. ὁ δὲ Σεύθης ἤρητο· Ἥ καὶ θέλοισ ἄν, ὦ Ἐπίσθηνες, ὑπὲρ τούτου ἀποθανεῖν; ὁ δ' ὑπερανατείνας τὸν τράχηλον, Παῖε, ἔφη, εἰ κελεύει ὁ παῖς καὶ μέλλει χάριν εἰδέναι. ἐπήρητο ὁ Σεύθης τὸν παῖδα εἰ παίσειεν αὐτὸν

καὶ |nose, ' εκαίοντο καὶ ὠτα. καὶ τότε δῆλον ἐγένετο οὗ ἔνεκα οἱ  
|nostrils  
Θρᾶκες τὰς ἀλωπεκᾶς ἐπὶ ταῖς κεφαλαῖς φοροῦσι καὶ τοῖς ὠσί, καὶ  
χιτῶνας οὐ μόνον περὶ τοῖς |chest ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ τοῖς |thigh καὶ  
ζειρὰς μέχρι τῶν ποδῶν ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων ἔχουσιν, ἀλλ' οὐ χλαμύδας.  
ἀφιεῖς δὲ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων ὁ Σεύθης εἰς τὰ ὄρη ἔλεγεν ὅτι εἰ μὴ  
καταβήσονται οἰκήσοντες καὶ πείσονται, ὅτι |burn down καὶ τούτων  
τὰς |village καὶ τὸν σῖτον, καὶ ἀπολοῦνται τῷ λιμῷ. ἐκ τούτου  
κατέβαινον καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ παῖδες καὶ πρεσβύτεροι· οἱ δὲ νεώτεροι  
ἐν ταῖς ὑπὸ τὸ ὄρος |village |be driven home ἔσειθης καταμαθὼν  
ἐκέλευσε τὸν Ξενοφῶντα τῶν ὀπλιτῶν τοὺς νεωτάτους λαβόντα  
συνεπισπέσθαι. καὶ ἀναστάντες τῆς νυκτὸς ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ παρήσαν  
εἰς τὰς |village καὶ οἱ μὲν πλείστοι |flee πλησίον γὰρ ἦν τὸ ὄρος·  
ὄσους δὲ ἔλαβε κατηκόντισεν ἀφειδῶς Σεύθης.

Ἐπισθένης δ' ἦν τις Ὀλύμπιος παιδεραστής, ὃς ἰδὼν παῖδα καλὸν  
ἠβάσκοντα ἄρτι πέλτην ἔχοντα μέλλοντα ἀποθνήσκειν, προσδραμὼν  
Ξενοφῶντα |approach to beg παιδὶ καλῶ. καὶ ὃς προσελθὼν τῷ  
Σεύθῃ δεῖται μὴ ἀποκτείνειν τὸν παῖδα, καὶ τοῦ Ἐπισθένου διηγείται  
τὸν τρόπον, καὶ ὅτι |ambush, ' |collect, σκοπῶν οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ  
|band, |assemble  
εἴ τινας εἶεν καλοῖ, κ|childbirthούτων ἦν ἀνὴρ ἀγαθός. ὁ δὲ Σεύθης  
ἤρreto· Ἡ καὶ θέλοις ἄν, ὦ Ἐπίσθενες, ὑπὲρ τούτου ἀποθανεῖν; ὁ  
δ' ὑπερανateίας τὸν |neck . Παῖε, ἔφη, εἰ κελεύει ὁ παῖς καὶ  
μέλλει χάριν εἰδέναί. ἐπήρreto ὁ Σεύθης τὸν παῖδα εἰ |play αὐτὸν

noses and ears frost-bitten. Now they came to understand why the Thracians wear fox-skin caps on their heads and about their ears; and why, on the same principle, they are frocked not only about the chest and bust but so as to cover the loins and thighs as well; and why on horseback they envelop themselves in long shawls which reach down to the feet, instead of the ordinary short rider's cloak. Seuthes sent off some of the prisoners to the hills with a message to say that if they did not come down to their homes, and live quietly and obey him, he would burn down their villages and their corn, and leave them to perish with hunger. Thereupon down they came, women and children and the older men; the younger men preferred to quarter themselves in the villages on the skirts of the hills. On discovering this, Seuthes bade Xenophon take the youngest of the heavy infantry and join him on an expedition. They rose in the night, and by daybreak had reached the villages; but the majority of the inhabitants made good their escape, for the hills were close at hand. Those whom he did catch, Seuthes unsparingly shot down.

Now there was a certain Olynthian, named Episthenes; he was a great lover of boys, and seeing a handsome lad, just in the bloom of youth, and carrying a light shield, about to be slain, he ran up to Xenophon and supplicated him to rescue the fair youth. Xenophon went to Seuthes and begged him not to put the boy to death. He explained to him the disposition of Episthenes; how he had once enrolled a company, the only qualification required being that of personal beauty; and with these handsome young men at his side there were none so brave as he. Seuthes put the question, "Would you like to die on his behalf, Episthenes?" whereat the other stretched out his neck, and said, "Strike, if the boy bids you, and will thank his preserver." Seuthes, turning to the boy, asked, "Shall I



*vocabulary*

**αείρω** raise, win ~aorta; also *αἴρω*  
**ἄλλως** otherwise  
**ἀντί** for, equivalent to  
**ἀπόλλυμι** destroy; also *ἐξόλλυμι*,  
*ὄλλυμι*  
**ἀράομαι** pray, vow, invoke  
**ἀράω** wear something out  
**ἄρης ἄρω** (m) war, warlike spirit  
**ἄρον** type of lily  
**αὐλίζομαι** be driven home  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
**διατριβῶ** wear down, delay ~tribology  
**εἶάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**ἐγγυάω** undertake  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also *εἵνεκα*, *ἐνεκεν*  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐξω** outward, outside  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach  
**ἐπιτίθημι** put on, apply  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

**ἡμερος** domesticated  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart; also *θαρρέω*  
**ἰκετεύω** approach to beg  
**καταβαίνω** go down  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**κώμη** village  
**μεθίημι** let go, cease; (mid) speed off  
**μηδέ** and not; not even  
**ὄρος ὄρεος** (n, 3) mountain, hill  
 ~hormone  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**σκηνέω** camp  
**σκηνόω** camp  
**σκότος** (m/n) darkness, shadow  
 ~shadow  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**συμπράσσω** cooperate  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τρέφω** nurture; solidify ~atrophy  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear  
**χωρίον** area; downwards  
**ώρα** season, time ~horoscope

ἀντ' ἐκείνου. οὐκ εἶα ὁ παῖς, ἀλλ' ἰκέτευε μηδέτερον κατακαίνειν. ἐνταῦθα ὁ Ἐπισθένης περιλαβὼν τὸν παῖδα εἶπεν· ὦρα σοι, ὦ Σεύθη, περὶ τοῦδέ μοι διαμάχεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ μεθήσω τὸν παῖδα. ὁ δὲ Σεύθης γελῶν ταῦτα μὲν εἶα· ἔδοξε δὲ αὐτῷ αὐτοῦ ἀνλισθήναι, ἵνα μηδ' ἐκ τούτων τῶν κωμῶν οἱ ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους τρέφονται. καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ὑποκαταβὰς ἐσκήνου, ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔχων τοὺς ἐπιλέκτους ἐν τῇ ὑπὸ τὸ ὄρος ἀνωτάτω κώμῃ, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἐν τοῖς ὄρειοῖς καλουμένοις Θραξί πλησίον κατεσκήνησαν.

Ἐκ τούτου ἡμέραι τ' οὐ πολλὰ διετρίβοντο καὶ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους Θραῖκες καταβαίνοντες πρὸς τὸν Σεύθην περὶ σπονδῶν καὶ ὀμήρων διεπράττοντο. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν ἔλεγε τῷ Σεύθῃ ὅτι ἐν πονηροῖς σκηνοῖεν καὶ πλησίον εἶεν οἱ πολέμοι· ἥδιόν τ' ἂν ἔξω ἀνλίξασθαι ἔφη ἐν ἐχυροῖς χωρίοις μᾶλλον ἢ ἐν τοῖς στεγνοῖς, ὥστε ἀπολέσθαι. ὁ δὲ θαρρεῖν ἐκέλευε καὶ ἔδειξεν ὀμήρους παρόντας αὐτῶν. ἐδέοντο δὲ καὶ αὐτοῦ Ξενοφῶντος καταβαίνοντές τινες τῶν ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους συμπράξαι σφίσι τὰς σπονδὰς. ὁ δ' ὠμολόγει καὶ θαρρεῖν ἐκέλευε καὶ ἠγγυᾶτο μηδὲν αὐτοὺς κακὸν πείσεσθαι πειθομένους Σεύθῃ. οἱ δ' ἄρα ταῦτ' ἔλεγον κατασκοπῆς ἕνεκα.

Ταῦτα μὲν τῆς ἡμέρας ἐγένετο· εἰς δὲ τὴν ἐπιούσαν νύκτα ἐπιτίθενται ἐλθόντες ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους οἱ Θυνοί. καὶ ἠγεμῶν μὲν ἦν ὁ δεσπότης ἐκάστης τῆς οἰκίας· χαλεπὸν γὰρ ἦν ἄλλως τὰς οἰκίας σκότους ὄντος ἀνευρίσκειν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις· καὶ γὰρ αἱ οἰκίαι κύκλω

ἀντ' ἐκείνου. οὐκ εἶα ὁ παῖς, ἀλλ' |approach to beg κατακαίειν.  
 ἐνταῦθα ὁ Ἐπισθένης περιλαβὼν τὸν παῖδα εἶπεν· ὦρα σοι, ὦ Σεύθη,  
 περὶ τοῦδέ μοι διαμάχεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ |let go, cease; α. ὁ δὲ Σεύθης  
 γελῶν ταῦτα μὲν εἶα· ἔδοξε δὲ αὐτῷ αὐτοῦ |be driven home, ἠδ' ἐκ  
 τούτων τῶν |village οἱ ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους τρέφοντο. καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν ἐν τῷ  
 πεδίῳ ὑποκαταβὰς |camp, ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔχων τοὺς ἐπιλέκτους ἐν  
 τῇ ὑπὸ τὸ ὄρος ἀνωτάτῳ |village αἱ οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἐν τοῖς ὄρειοις  
 καλουμένοις Θραζῖ πλησίον κατεσκήνησαν.

Ἐκ τούτου ἡμέραι τ' οὐ πολλαὶ |wear down, delay ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους  
 Θραῖκες καταβαίνοντες πρὸς τὸν Σεύθην περὶ σπονδῶν καὶ ὀμίηρων  
 διεπράττοντο. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν ἔλεγε τῷ Σεύθῃ ὅτι ἐν πονηροῖς  
 |σκηνέω?: `camp ἰόν εἶεν οἱ πολέμοι· ἠδιὸν τ' ἂν ἔξω |be driven home  
 ; or σκηνόω?:  
 |campροῖς χωριοῖς μᾶλλον ἢ ἐν τοῖς στεγνοῖς, ὥστε ἀπολέσθαι. ὁ δὲ  
 θαρρεῖν ἐκέλευε καὶ ἔδειξεν ὀμίηρους παρόντας αὐτῶν. ἐδέοντο δὲ καὶ  
 αὐτοῦ Ξενοφῶντος καταβαίνοντές τινες τῶν ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους |cooperate  
 σφίσι τὰς σπονδὰς. ὁ δ' ὠμολόγει καὶ θαρρεῖν ἐκέλευε καὶ |undertake  
 μηδὲν αὐτοὺς κακὸν πείσεσθαι πειθομένους Σεύθῃ. οἱ δ' ἄρα ταῦτ'  
 ἔλεγον κατασκοπῆς ἕνεκα.

Ταῦτα μὲν τῆς ἡμέρας ἐγένετο· εἰς δὲ τὴν ἐπιούσαν νύκτα ἐπιτίθενται  
 ἐλθόντες ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους οἱ Θυνοί. καὶ ἡγεμῶν μὲν ἦν ὁ δεσπότης  
 ἐκάστης τῆς οἰκίας· χαλεπὸν γὰρ ἦν ἄλλως τὰς οἰκίας σκότους  
 ὄντος ἀνευρίσκειν ἐν ταῖς |village καὶ γὰρ αἱ οἰκίαι |circle,  
 |wheel

smite him instead of you?" The boy shook his head, imploring him to slay neither the one nor the other, whereupon Episthenes caught the lad in his arms, exclaiming, "It is time you did battle with me, Seuthes, for my boy; never will I yield him up," and Seuthes laughed: "what must be must," and so consented.

In these villages he decided that they must bivouac, so that the men on the mountains might be still further deprived of subsistence. Stealthily descending he himself found quarters in the plain; while Xenophon with his picked troops encamped in the highest village on the skirts of the hills; and the rest of the Hellenes hard by, among the highland Thracians, as they are called.

After this, not many days had idly slipt away before the Thracians from the mountains came down and wished to arrange with Seuthes for terms of truce and hostages. Simultaneously came Xenophon and informed Seuthes that they were camped in bad quarters, with the enemy next door; "it would be pleasanter too," he added, "to bivouac in a strong position in the open, than under cover on the edge of destruction." The other bade him take heart and pointed to some of their hostages, as much as to say "Look there!" Parties also from the mountaineers came down and pleaded with Xenophon himself, to help arrange a truce for them. This he agreed to do, bidding them to pluck up heart, and assuring them that they would meet with no mischief, if they yielded obedience to Seuthes. All their parleying, however, was, as it turned out, merely to get a closer inspection of things. This happened in the day, and in the following night the Thynians descended from the hill country and made an attack. In each case, the guide was the master of the house attacked; otherwise it would have taxed their powers to discover the houses in the dark, which, for the sake of their flocks and herds, were palisaded all round with great stockades. As soon as they had reached

*vocabulary*

**αἰσθάνομαι** see, learn, find out about  
**ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at  
**ἀμαρτάνω** miss, fail, lose; sin; also  
 ἀφάμαρτάνω, ἤμβροτον, ἀπήμβροτον  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**διώκω** chase  
**ἐμπύπρημι** burn up (πῦρ); also  
 ἐμπρήθω  
**ἐνδον** in the house of; within  
**ἐνεκα** because, that; also εἵνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἐπτά** seven  
**ἐσθής** -τος (f, 3) clothes  
**ἐτεός** true  
**ἔτης** (m, 1) fellow townsman?  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
 ἰθύς  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**θύρα** door ~door  
**ἴημι** release, utter; desire, aim at ~jet  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἵπποχάρμης  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**κατακαίω** burn down  
**κείρω** shave, sever, raze; devour, use  
 up

**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn  
**κρεμάννυμι** hang  
**κώμη** village  
**μάχαιρα** knife, dagger  
**μέντοι** however  
**ὄπισθεν** behind, hereafter; also ὀπιθεν  
**περιβάλλω** excel; don  
**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds; also  
 πρόβασις  
**σάλπιγξ** -γος (f/m) trumpet  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
**σκότος** (m/n) darkness, shadow  
 ~shadow  
**σταυρός** stake  
**τή** strengthened form of τί  
**τιτρώσκω** wound, bring to grief  
 ~trauma; also τρώω  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**τρόπος** (m/n) turn; manner, kind,  
 fashion  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φάος** (n, 3) light; salvation; (pl) eyes  
 ~photon; also φῶς  
**φθέγγομαι** make a sound, utter  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φόβος** fear, rout, panic ~phobia  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω

περιεσταύρωντο μεγάλοις σταυροῖς τῶν προβάτων ἕνεκα. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγένοντο κατὰ τὰς θύρας ἐκάστου τοῦ οἰκήματος, οἱ μὲν εἰσηκόντιζον, οἱ δὲ τοῖς σκυτάλοις ἔβαλλον, ἃ ἔχειν ἔφασαν ὡς ἀποκόψοντες τῶν δοράτων τὰς λόγχας, οἱ δ' ἐνεπίμπρασαν, καὶ Ξενοφῶντα ὀνομαστὶ καλοῦντες ἐξιόντα ἐκέλευον ἀποθνήσκειν, ἢ αὐτοῦ ἔφασαν κατακαυθήσεσθαι αὐτόν. καὶ ἤδη τε διὰ τοῦ ὀρόφου ἐφαίνετο πῦρ, καὶ ἐντεθωρακισμένοι οἱ περὶ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα ἔνδον ἦσαν ἀσπίδας καὶ μαχαίρας καὶ κράνη ἔχοντες, καὶ Σιλανὸς Μακίστιος ἐτῶν ὡς ὀκτωκαίδεκα σημαίνει τῇ σάλπιγγι· καὶ εὐθὺς ἐκηρῶσιν ἐσπασμένοι τὰ ξίφη καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῶν ἄλλων σκηνωμάτων. οἱ δὲ Θωράκες φεύγουσιν, ὥσπερ δὴ τρόπος ἦν αὐτοῖς, ὅπισθεν περιβαλλόμενοι τὰς πέλτας· καὶ αὐτῶν ὑπεραλλομένων τοὺς σταυροὺς ἐλήφθησάν τινες κρεμασθέντες ἐνεχομένων τῶν πελτῶν τοῖς σταυροῖς· οἱ δὲ καὶ ἀπέθανον ἀμαρτόντες τῶν ἐξόδων· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνας ἐδίωκον ἕξω τῆς κόμης. τῶν δὲ Θυνῶν ὑποστραφέντες τινὲς ἐν τῷ σκότει τοὺς παρατρέχοντας παρ' οἰκίαν καιομένην ἠκόντιζον εἰς τὸ φῶς ἐκ τοῦ σκότους· καὶ ἔτρωσαν Ἰερώλυμόν τε καὶ Εὐδοέα λοχαγὸν καὶ Θεογένην Λοκρὸν λοχαγόν· ἀπέθανε δὲ οὐδεὶς· κατεκαύθη μέντοι καὶ ἐσθῆς τινων καὶ σκεύη. Σεύθης δὲ ἦκε βοηθῶν σὺν ἑπτὰ ἵππευσι τοῖς πρώτοις καὶ τὸν σαλπικτὴν ἔχων τὸν Θωράκιον. καὶ ἐπέπερ ἦσθετο, ὅσονπερ χρόνον ἐβοήθει, τοσοῦτον καὶ τὸ κέρας ἐφθέγγετο αὐτῷ· ὥστε καὶ τοῦτο φόβον συμπαρέσχε τοῖς πολεμίοις. ἐπεὶ δ'

περισταύρωντο μεγάλοις |stake τῶν προβάτων ἔνεκα. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγένοντο κατὰ τὰς θύρας ἐκάστου τοῦ οἰκήματος, οἱ μὲν εἰσηκόντιζον, οἱ δὲ τοῖς σκυτάλοις ἔβαλλον, ἃ ἔχειν ἔφασαν ὡς ἀποκόψοντες τῶν δοράτων τὰς λόγχας, οἱ δ' |burn up . καὶ Ξενοφῶντα ὀνομαστὶ καλοῦντες |go forth 'έλενον ἀποθνήσκειν, ἢ αὐτοῦ ἔφασαν κατακαυθῆσθαι αὐτόν. καὶ ἤδη τε διὰ τοῦ |thatching 'αἶνετο πῦρ, καὶ ἐντεθωρακισμένοι οἱ περὶ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα ἔνδον ἦσαν ἀσπίδας καὶ μαχαίρας καὶ κράνη ἔχοντες, καὶ Σιλανὸς Μακίστιος |έτεός?: true ; or ἔτης?: fellow towns-|trumpet καὶ εὐθύς ἐκπηδῶσαν |man? ; or ἔτος?: year ἔσπασμένοι τὰ ξίφη καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῶν ἄλλων σκηνωμάτων. οἱ δὲ Θρᾶκες φεύγουσιν, ὥσπερ δὴ τρόπος ἦν αὐτοῖς, ὅπισθεν περιβαλλόμενοι τὰς πέλτας· καὶ αὐτῶν |jump over τοὺς |stake ἐλήφθησάν τινες |hang ἐνεχομένων τῶν πελτῶν τοῖς |stake οἱ δὲ καὶ ἀπέθανον ἀμαρτόντες τῶν ἐξόδων· οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνας ἐδίωκον ἔξω τῆς |village τῶν δὲ Θυνῶν ὑποστραφέντες τινὲς ἐν τῷ σκότει τοὺς |run past παρ' οἰκίαν καιομένην ἠκόντιζον εἰς τὸ φῶς ἐκ τοῦ σκότους· καὶ |wound, " ρώνυμόν τε καὶ Εὐδοέα λοχαγὸν καὶ Θεογένην Δοκρὸν |bring to |grief ἄπεθανε δὲ οὐδεὶς· |burn down, ἔντοι καὶ |clothes νων καὶ σκεύη. Σεύθης δὲ ἦκε |swift to the fight ' ἵππεῦσι τοῖς πρώτοις καὶ τὸν σαλπικτὴν ἔχων τὸν Θράκιον. καὶ ἐπέπερ ἦσθετο, ὅσονπερ χρόνον ἐβοήθει, τοσοῦτον καὶ τὸ κέρας |make a sound, utter αὐτῶ· ὥστε καὶ τοῦτο φόβον συμπαρέσχε τοῖς πολεμίοις. ἐπεὶ δ'

the doors of any particular house, the attack began, some hurling in their spears, others belabouring with their clubs, which they carried, it was said, for the purpose of knocking off the lance points from the shaft. Others were busy setting the place on fire; and they kept calling Xenophon by name: "Come out, Xenophon, and die like a man, or we will roast you alive inside."

By this time too the flames were making their appearance through the roof, and Xenophon and his followers were within, with their coats of mail on, and big shields, swords, and helmets. Then Silanus, a Macistian, a youth of some eighteen years, signalled on the trumpet; and in an instant, out they all leapt with their drawn swords, and the inmates of other quarters as well. The Thracians took to their heels, according to their custom, swinging their light shields round their backs. As they leapt over the stockade some were captured, hanging on the top with their shields caught in the palings; others missed the way out, and so were slain; and the Hellenes chased them hotly, till they were outside the village.

A party of Thynians turned back, and as the men ran past in bold relief against a blazing house, they let fly a volley of javelins, out of the darkness into the glare, and wounded two captains, Hieronymus, an Euodean, and Theogenes, a Locrian. No one was killed, only the clothes and baggage of some of the men were consumed in the flames. Presently up came Seuthes to the rescue with seven troopers, the first to hand, and his Thracian trumpeteer by his side. Seeing that something had happened, he hastened to the rescue, and ever the while his bugler wound his horn, which music added terror to the foe. Arrived at length, he greeted them with outstretched hand, exclaiming, "I thought to find



*vocabulary***αείδω** sing; also *ἀοιδιάω***ἄλθομαι** become whole, sound**ἄλίσκομαι** be captured**ἀντί** for, equivalent to**γέρον** -οντος (3) old; old man

~geriatric

**δίκη** justice**δυνατός** powerful, possible**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
not worry about**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ῶ) display, exhibit**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also*ἵππιοχάρμης***καταβαίνω** go down**κράτιστος** best**μέντοι** however**νομίζω** consider customary**οἰκέω** inhabit**οἴκοι** at home**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also *οἶμαι*,  
*οἶομαι***ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
infantryman**ὄρος** ὄρεος (n, 3) mountain, hill  
~hormone**οὐκέτι** no more**πελταστής** (m) light troops**πιστός** faithful (*πείθω*)**πρέσβυς** elder ~Presbyterian**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult**συστρατεύω** join in an expedition**τιμωρέω** take vengeance**ὑπέειπον** say as preface, premise**ὑπερβάλλω** topple; overthrow**ὑστεραῖος** the next; later**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics**χέω** pour, scatter; also *καταχέω*

ἦλθεν, ἐδεξιούτο τε καὶ ἔλεγεν ὅτι οἴοιτο τεθνεώτας πολλοὺς εὐρήσειν.

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ξενοφῶν δέεται τοὺς ὁμήρους τε αὐτῷ παραδοῦναι καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, εἰ βούλεται, συστρατεύεσθαι· εἰ δὲ μή, αὐτὸν ἐᾶσαι. τῇ οὖν ὑστεραία παραδίδωσιν ὁ Σεύθης τοὺς ὁμήρους, πρεσβυτέρους ἄνδρας ἤδη, τοὺς κρατίστους, ὡς ἔφασαν, τῶν ὄρειων, καὶ αὐτὸς ἔρχεται σὺν τῇ δυνάμει. ἤδη δὲ εἶχε καὶ τριπλασίαν δύναμιν ὁ Σεύθης· ἐκ γὰρ τῶν Ὀδρυσῶν ἀκούοντες ἃ πράττει ὁ Σεύθης πολλοὶ κατέβαινον συστρατευσόμενοι. οἱ δὲ Θυνοὶ ἐπεὶ εἶδον ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους πολλοὺς μὲν ὀπλίτας, πολλοὺς δὲ πελταστάς, πολλοὺς δὲ ἰππέας, καταβάντες ἰκέτεον σπείσασθαι, καὶ πάντα ὠμολόγουν ποιήσειν καὶ πιστὰ λαμβάνειν ἐκέλευον. ὁ δὲ Σεύθης καλέσας τὸν Ξενοφῶντα ἐπεδείκνυεν ἃ λέγοιεν, καὶ οὐκ ἂν ἔφη σπείσασθαι, εἰ Ξενοφῶν βούλοιο τιμωρήσασθαι αὐτοὺς τῆς ἐπιθέσεως. ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' ἔγωγε ἱκανὴν νομίζω καὶ νῦν δίκην ἔχειν, εἰ οὔτοι δοῦλοι ἔσονται ἀντ' ἐλευθέρων. συμβουλεύειν μέντοι ἔφη αὐτῷ τὸ λοιπὸν ὁμήρους λαμβάνειν τοὺς δυνατωτάτους κακόν τι ποιῆν, τοὺς δὲ γέροντας οἴκοι ἐᾶν. οἱ μὲν οὖν ταύτῃ πάντες δὴ προσωμολόγουν.

## 7.5

Ὑπερβάλλουσι δὲ πρὸς τοὺς ὑπὲρ Βυζαντίου Θρωᾶκας εἰς τὸ Δέλτα καλούμενον· αὕτη δ' ἦν οὐκέτι ἀρχὴ Μαισάδου, ἀλλὰ Τήρους τοῦ

|ἄλθομαι?: become whole γεν ὅτι οἴοιτο τεθνεώτας πολλοὺς εὐρήσειν.  
; or ἔρχομαι?: go, come

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ξενοφῶν δέεται τοὺς ὁμήρους τε αὐτῷ παραδοῦναι καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, εἰ βούλεται, |join in an expedition · εἰ δὲ μή, αὐτὸν ἐᾶσαι. τῇ οὖν |the next; later ἰδῶσιν ὁ Σεύθης τοὺς ὁμήρους, πρεσβυτέρους ἄνδρας ἤδη, τοὺς κρατίστους, ὡς ἔφασαν, τῶν ὄρεινῶν, καὶ αὐτὸς ἔρχεται σὺν τῇ δυνάμει. ἤδη δὲ εἶχε καὶ τριπλασίαν δύναμιν ὁ Σεύθης· ἐκ γὰρ τῶν Ὀδρυσῶν ἀκούοντες ἅ πράττει ὁ Σεύθης πολλοὶ κατέβαινον συστρατευσόμενοι. οἱ δὲ Θυνοὶ ἐπεὶ εἶδον ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους πολλοὺς μὲν ὀπίτας, πολλοὺς δὲ |light troops, πολλοὺς δὲ ἰππέας, καταβάντες ἰκέτεον σπέισασθαι, καὶ πάντα ὠμολόγουν ποιήσειν καὶ πιστὰ λαμβάνειν ἐκέλευον. ὁ δὲ Σεύθης καλέσας τὸν Ξενοφῶντα ἐπεδείκνυεν ἅ λέγοιεν, καὶ οὐκ ἂν ἔφη σπέισασθαι, εἰ Ξενοφῶν βούλοιο τιμωρήσασθαι αὐτοὺς τῆς ἐπιθέσεως. ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' ἔγωγε ἰκανὴν νομίζω καὶ νῦν δίκην ἔχειν, εἰ οὗτοι δοῦλοι ἔσονται ἀντ' ἐλευθέρων. |give advice; (mid) consult ἐντοι ἔφη αὐτῷ τὸ λοιπὸν ὁμήρους λαμβάνειν τοὺς δυνατωτάτους κακόν τι ποιεῖν, τοὺς δὲ γέροντας οἴκοι ἐᾶν. οἱ μὲν οὖν ταύτῃ πάντες δὴ προσωμολόγουν.

## 7.5

|topple; overthrow δὲ πρὸς τοὺς ὑπὲρ Βυζαντίου Θραῦκας εἰς τὸ Δέλτα καλούμενον· αὕτη δ' ἦν οὐκέτι ἀρχὴ Μαισάδου, ἀλλὰ Τήρους τοῦ

you all dead men.”

After that, Xenophon begged him to hand over the hostages to himself, and if so disposed, to join him on an expedition to the hills, or if not, to let him go alone. Accordingly the next day Seuthes delivered up the hostages. They were men already advanced in years, but the pick of the mountaineers, as they themselves gave out. Not merely did Seuthes do this, but he came himself, with his force at his back (and by this time he had treble his former force, for many of the Odrysians, hearing of his proceedings, came down to join in the campaign); and the Thynians, espying from the mountains the vast array of heavy infantry and light infantry and cavalry, rank upon rank, came down and supplicated him to make terms. “They were ready,” they professed, “to do all that he demanded; let him take pledges of their good faith.” So Seuthes summoned Xenophon and explained their proposals, adding that he should make no terms with them, if Xenophon wished to punish them for their night attack. The latter replied: “For my part, I should think their punishment is great enough already, if they are to be slaves instead of free men; still,” he added, “I advise you for the future to take as hostages those who are most capable of doing mischief, and to let the old men abide in peace at home.” So to a man they gave in their adhesion in that quarter of the country.

## 7.5

Crossing over in the direction of the Thracians above Byzantium, they reached the Delta, as it is called. Here they were no longer in the territory of the Maesades, but in the country

*vocabulary*

αἰεὶ always, forever ~eon; also αἰεῖ  
 ἄλλως otherwise  
 ἀπαιτέω demand to have returned  
 ἀπέρχομαι go away, depart  
 ἀποδίδωμι repay  
 ἀρκέω ward off, defend; suffice  
 ἀρχαῖος ancient, from the beginning  
 αὖθις back, again, moreover ~after  
 ἄχθομαι be burdened with  
 δεῖδω to fear ~Deimos  
 δέος -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
 διαβάλλω throw across; slander  
 δύνω enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
 εἰκός οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
 εἴκοσι twenty  
 ἐκβάλλω throw out, fell, let fall  
 ἐνταῦθα thither  
 ἐντεῦθεν thence  
 ἐξάγω lead out  
 ἐπειδάν when  
 ἐπόμενυμι take an oath at one's bidding

ἐχθω (mp) be hated  
 ζεύγνυμι yoke, join  
 ζευγος -υς (n, 3) team of animals  
 ἦκω to have come  
 ἦμερος domesticated  
 κήδω distress ~heinous; also  
 περικήδομαι  
 λείος smooth  
 μιμνήσκω remind; (mid) remember,  
 turn one's thoughts to ~mnemonic  
 μισθός reward, wages  
 πλέος full; also πλεῖος, πλέως  
 πλέω sail, float ~float  
 πλήρης full, complete; (+gen) full of  
 στρατηγέω be a general  
 στρατιώτης (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
 τεῖχος -υς (n, 3) outdoor wall; also  
 τειχίον  
 τέως meanwhile, for a while  
 τιμή honor, value  
 τρεῖς three ~three  
 φιλία friendship

Ὀδρύσου ἀρχαίου τινός. καὶ ὁ Ἡρακλείδης ἐνταῦθα ἔχων τὴν τιμὴν τῆς λείας παρῆν. καὶ Σεύθης ἐξαγαγὼν ζεύγη ἡμιονικὰ τρία οὐ γὰρ ἦν πλείω, τὰ δ' ἄλλα βοεικὰ, καλέσας Ξενοφῶντα ἐκέλευε λαβεῖν, τὰ δ' ἄλλα διανείμει τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς. Ξενοφῶν δὲ εἶπεν· Ἐμοὶ τοίνυν ἀρκεῖ καὶ αἰθίς λαβεῖν· τούτοις δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς δωροῦ οἱ σὺν ἐμοὶ ἠκολούθησαν καὶ λοχαγοῖς. καὶ τῶν ζευγῶν λαμβάνει ἐν μὲν Τιμασίῳ ὁ Δαρδανεύς, ἐν δὲ Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος, ἐν δὲ Φρυνίσκος ὁ Ἀχαιός· τὰ δὲ βοεικὰ ζεύγη τοῖς λοχαγοῖς κατεμερίσθη. τὸν δὲ μισθὸν ἀποδίδωσιν ἐξεληλυθότος ἤδη τοῦ μηνὸς εἴκοσι μόνον ἡμερῶν· ὁ γὰρ Ἡρακλείδης ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐ πλέον ἐμπολήσαι. ὁ οὖν Ξενοφῶν ἀχθεσθεὶς εἶπεν ἐπομόσας· Δοκεῖς μοι, ὦ Ἡρακλείδη, οὐχ ὡς δεῖ κήδεσθαι Σεύθου· εἰ γὰρ ἐκήδου, ἦκες ἂν φέρων πλήρη τὸν μισθὸν καὶ προσδανεισάμενος, εἰ μὴ ἄλλως ἐδύνω, καὶ ἀποδόμενος τὰ σαυτοῦ ἰμάτια.

Ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Ἡρακλείδης ἠχθέσθη τε καὶ ἔδεισε μὴ ἐκ τῆς Σεύθου φιλίας ἐκβληθείη, καὶ ὅ τι ἐδύνατο ἀπὸ ταύτης τῆς ἡμέρας Ξενοφῶντα διέβαλλε πρὸς Σεύθην. οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατιῶται Ξενοφῶντι ἐνεκάλουν ὅτι οὐκ εἶχον τὸν μισθόν· Σεύθης δὲ ἠχθετο αὐτῷ ὅτι ἐντόνως τοῖς στρατιώταις ἀπῆγει τὸν μισθόν. καὶ τέως μὲν αἰεὶ ἐμέμνητο ὡς, ἐπειδὴν ἐπὶ θάλατταν ἀπέλθη, παραδώσει αὐτῷ Βισάνθην καὶ Γάνον καὶ Νέον τείχος· ἀπὸ δὲ τούτου τοῦ χρόνου οὐδενὸς ἔτι τούτων ἐμέμνητο. ὁ γὰρ Ἡρακλείδης καὶ τοῦτο διεβεβλήκει

Ὀδρύσου |ancient, from the beginning και ὁ Ἡρακλείδης ἐνταῦθα ἔχων τὴν τιμὴν τῆς λείας παρῆν. και Σείθης ἐξαγαγὼν |ζεύγος?: team ; or γὰρ ἦν πλείω, τὰ δ' ἄλλα βοεικά, καλέσας Ξενοφῶντα ἐκέλευε λαβεῖν, τὰ δ' ἄλλα διανεῖμαι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς και λοχαγοῖς. Ξενοφῶν δὲ εἶπεν· Ἐμοὶ τούνν |ward off αἰθις λαβεῖν· τούτοις δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς δωροῦ οἱ σὺν ἐμοὶ ἠκολούθησαν και λοχαγοῖς. και τῶν |team λαμβάνει ἐν μὲν Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεύς, ἐν δὲ Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος, ἐν δὲ Φρυνίσκος ὁ Ἀχαιός· τὰ δὲ βοεικά |ζεύγος?: team ; or τεμερίσθη. τὸν δὲ μισθὸν ἀποδίδωσιν ἐξεληλυθότος ἤδη τοῦ μηνὸς εἴκοσι μόνον ἡμερῶν· ὁ γὰρ Ἡρακλείδης ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐ πλέον ἐμπολήσαι. ὁ οὖν Ξενοφῶν ἀχθεσθεῖς εἶπεν |take an oath at one's bidding ὅς μοι, ὦ Ἡρακλείδη, οὐχ ὡς δεῖ |distress Σείθου· εἰ γὰρ |distress ἦκες ἂν φέρων |full, complete; (+gen) μισθὸν και προσδανεισάμενος, εἰ μὴ ἄλλως |full of enter, put on, strip off τὰ σαντοῦ ἱμάτια.

Ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Ἡρακλείδης ἠχθέσθη τε και ἔδεισε μὴ ἐκ τῆς Σείθου |φιλία?: friendship ; or φίλος?: friend; beloved enter, put on, strip off αὐτῆς τῆς ἡμέρας Ξενοφῶντα |throw , ὃς Σείθην. οἱ μὲν δὲ στρατιῶται Ξενοφῶντι ἐνεκάλουν |slander εἶχον τὸν μισθόν· Σείθης δὲ |ἄχθομαι?: be burdened with ; or ἔχθω?: (mp) be hated τοῖς στρατιώταις |demand , ἰσθόν. και |mean-, |always, ἰνητο ὡς, |when ἐπὶ |returned to have |while, for|forever ἀπέλθῃ, παρα|a while αὐτῷ Βισάνθην και Γάνον και Νέον τείχος· ἀπὸ δὲ τούτου τοῦ χρόνου οὐδενὸς ἔτι τούτων ἐμέμνητο. ὁ γὰρ Ἡρακλείδης και τούτο |throw across; slander

of Teres the Odrysian the spoil, and Seuthes picked out three pairs of mules (there were only three, the other teams being oxen); then he summoned Xenophon and bade him take them, and divide the rest between the generals and officers, to which Xenophon replied that for himself, he was content to receive his share another time, but added: "Make a present of these to my friends here, the generals who have served with me, and to the officers." So of the pairs of mules Timasion the Dardanian received one, Cleanor the Orchomenian one, and Phryniscus the Achaean one. The teams of oxen were divided among the officers. Then Seuthes proceeded to remit pay due for the month already passed, but all he could give was the equivalent of twenty days. Heracleides insisted that this was all he had got by his trafficking. Whereupon Xenophon with some warmth exclaimed: "Upon my word, Heracleides, I do not think you care for Seuthes' interest as you should. If you did, you have been at pains to bring back the full amount of the pay, even if you had had to raise a loan to do so, and, if by no other means, by selling the coat off your own back."

What he said annoyed Heracleides, who was afraid of being ousted from the friendship of Seuthes, and from that day forward he did his best to calumniate Xenophon before Seuthes. The soldiers, on their side, laid the blame of course on Xenophon: "Where was their pay?" and Seuthes was vexed with him for persistently demanding it for them. Up to this date he had frequently referred to what he would do when he got to the seaboard again; how he intended to hand over to him Bisanthe, Ganos, and Neontichos. But from this time forward he never mentioned one of them again. The slanderous tongue of Heracleides had whispered him:— it was not safe to hand over fortified towns to a man with a force at his back.

Consequently Xenophon fell to considering what he ought to do as regards marching any further up the country; and Heracleides introduced the other generals to Seuthes, urging



*vocabulary*

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp.~sin  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, out to sea  
**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon  
**ἀσφαλῆς** going ahead, standing firm  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**δεξιὰ** right-hand  
**δεξιός** right-hand ~dextrous  
**διαβάλλω** throw across; slander  
**εἰσάγω** lead in  
**ἐκπίπτω** fall out of  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐντός** within  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἤμερος** domesticated  
**καθίζω** to seat ~sit; also ἴζω, καθιζάνω

**μήνη** moon ~moon  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**ναός νεώς** (f/m) temple, shrine; also νηός  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὀδός  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**στήλη** post, column  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιά** army  
**συστρατεύω** join in an expedition  
**τείχος** -υς (n, 3) outdoor wall; also τειχίον  
**τέως** meanwhile, for a while  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τῶ** so, therefore; in that case

ὡς οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς εἶη τείχη παραδιδόναι ἀνδρὶ δύναμιν ἔχοντι.

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν ἐβουλεύετο τί χρῆ ποιεῖν περὶ τοῦ ἔτι ἄνω στρατεύεσθαι· ὁ δ' Ἡρακλείδης εἰσαγαγὼν τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς πρὸς Σεύθην λέγειν τε ἐκέλευεν αὐτοὺς ὅτι οὐδὲν ἂν ἦπτον σφεῖς ἀγάγοιεν τὴν στρατιάν ἢ Ξενοφῶν, τόν τε μισθὸν ὑπισχνεῖτο αὐτοῖς ἐντὸς ὀλίγων ἡμερῶν ἔκπλεων παρέσεσθαι δυοῖν μηνῶν, καὶ συστρατεύεσθαι ἐκέλευε. καὶ ὁ Τιμασίων εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ μὲν τοῖνυν οὐδ' ἂν πέντε μηνῶν μισθὸς μέλλῃ εἶναι στρατευσαιμία ἂν ἄνευ Ξενοφῶντος. καὶ ὁ Φρυνίσκος καὶ ὁ Κλεάνωρ συνωμολόγουν τῷ Τιμασίῳ. ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Σεύθης ἐλοιδόρει τὸν Ἡρακλείδην ὅτι οὐ παρεκάλει καὶ Ξενοφῶντα. ἐκ δὲ τούτου παρακαλοῦσιν αὐτὸν μόνον. ὁ δὲ γνοὺς τοῦ Ἡρακλείδου τὴν πανουργίαν ὅτι βούλοιο αὐτὸν διαβάλλειν πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς, παρέρχεται λαβῶν τοὺς τε στρατηγούς πάντας καὶ τοὺς λοχαγούς. καὶ ἐπεὶ πάντες ἐπέισθησαν, συνεστρατεύοντο καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχοντες τὸν Πόντον διὰ τῶν Μελινοφάγων καλουμένων Θρακῶν εἰς τὸν Σαλμυδησσόν. ἔνθα τῶν εἰς τὸν Πόντον πλεουσῶν νεῶν πολλαὶ ὀκέλλουσι καὶ ἐκπίπτουσι· τέναγος γάρ ἐστιν ἐπὶ πάμπολυ τῆς θαλάττης. καὶ Θρᾶκες οἱ κατὰ ταῦτα οἰκοῦντες στήλας ὀρισάμενοι τὰ καθ' αὐτοὺς ἐκπίπτοντα ἕκαστοι λήζονται· τέως δὲ ἔλεγον πρὶν ὀρίσασθαι ἀρπάζοντας πολλοὺς ὑπ' ἀλλήλων ἀποθνήσκειν. ἐνταῦθα ἠγρίσκοντο πολλὰ μὲν κλῖναι, πολλὰ δὲ κιβώτια, πολλὰ δὲ βίβλοι

ὡς οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς εἶη τείχη παραδιδόναι ἀνδρὶ δύναμιν ἔχοντι.

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν ἐβουλεύετο τί χρῆ ποιεῖν περὶ τοῦ  
 ἔτι **accomplish, pass, waste;** Ἡρακλείδης εἰσαγαγὼν τοὺς ἄλλους  
**upwards, out to sea**  
 στρατηγοὺς πρὸς Σεύθην λέγειν τε ἐκέλευεν αὐτοὺς ὅτι οὐδὲν ἂν  
 ἦττον σφεῖς ἀγάγοιεν τὴν στρατιὰν ἢ Ξενοφῶν, τόν τε μισθὸν  
 ὑπισχνεῖτο αὐτοῖς ἐντὸς ὀλίγων ἡμερῶν ἔκπλεων παρέσεσθαι δυοῖν  
 μηνοῖν, καὶ **join in an** ἐκέλευε, καὶ ὁ Τιμασίων εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ μὲν  
**expedition**  
 τοῖνυν οὐδ' ἂν πέντε μηνῶν μισθὸς μέλλη εἶναι στρατευσάμην ἂν  
 ἄνευ Ξενοφῶντος, καὶ ὁ Φρυνίσκος καὶ ὁ Κλεάνωρ συνωμολόγουν  
 τῷ Τιμασίω. ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Σεύθης ἐλοιδόρει τὸν Ἡρακλείδην ὅτι  
 οὐ παρεκάλει καὶ Ξενοφῶντα. ἐκ δὲ τούτου παρακαλοῦσιν αὐτὸν  
 μόνον. ὁ δὲ γνούς τοῦ Ἡρακλείδου τὴν πανουργίαν ὅτι βούλοιο  
 αὐτὸν **throw** πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγοὺς, παρέρχεται λαβὼν  
**across;**  
 τοὺς **slander** στρατηγοὺς πάντας καὶ τοὺς λοχαγούς. καὶ ἐπεὶ πάντες  
 ἐπέισθησαν, **join in an** καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐν **δεξιὰ?; right-hand ; or**  
**expedition** **δεξιός?; right-hand**  
 τὸν Πόντον διὰ τῶν Μελινοφάγων καλουμένων Θρακῶν εἰς τὸν  
 Σαλμυδησσόν. ἐνθα τῶν εἰς τὸν Πόντον πλεουσῶν νεῶν πολλὰ  
 ὀκέλλουσι καὶ **fall out of** τέναγος γάρ ἐστιν ἐπὶ πάμπλου τῆς  
 θαλάττης. καὶ Θραῖκες οἱ κατὰ ταῦτα οἰκοῦντες **post,** ἱρισάμενοι  
**column**  
 τὰ καθ' αὐτοὺς **fall out of** ἕκαστοι λήζονται· **meanwhile,** ὃν πρὶν  
**for a while**  
 ὀρίσασθαι **carry off, seize** ἄλλους ὑπ' ἀλλήλων ἀποθνήσκουν. ἐνταῦθα  
 ἠύρισκοντο πολλὰ μὲν κλῖναι, πολλὰ δὲ κιβώτια, πολλὰ δὲ βίβλοι

them to say that they were quite as well able to lead the army as Xenophon, and promising them that within a day or two they should have full pay for two months, and he again implored them to continue the campaign with Seuthes. To which Timasion replied that for his part he would continue no campaign without Xenophon; not even if they were to give him pay for five months; and what Timasion said, Phryniscus and Cleanor repeated; the views of all three coincided.

Seuthes fell to upbraiding Heracleides in round terms. "Why had he not invited Xenophon with the others?" and presently they invited him, but by himself alone. He, perceiving the knavery of Heracleides, and that his object was to calumniate him with the other generals, presented himself; but at the same time he took care to bring all the generals and the officers. After their joint consent had been secured, they continued the campaign. Keeping the Pontus on their right, they passed through the millet-eating Thracians, as they are called, and reached Salmydessus. This is a point at which many trading vessels bound for the Black Sea run aground and are wrecked, owing to a sort of marshy ledge or sandbank which runs out for a considerable distance into the sea. The Thracians, who dwell in these parts, have set up pillars as boundary marks, and each set of them has the pillage of its own flotsom and jetsom; for in old days, before they set up these landmarks, the wreckers, it is said, used freely to fall foul of and slay one another. Here was a rich treasure trove, of beds and boxes numberless, with a mass of written books, and all the various things which mariners carry in their wooden chests. Having reduced this district, they turned round and went back again. By this time the army of Seuthes had grown to be considerably larger than the Hellenic army; for on the one hand, the Odrysians flocked down

*vocabulary*

**αἰεὶ** always, forever ~eon; also **ἀεὶ**  
**ἄκχομαι** heal, fix  
**ἄλθομαι** become whole, sound  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἀπαιτέω** demand to have returned  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain  
**ἀποδίδωμι** repay  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also  
**ἰθύς**  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**καταβαίνω** go down  
**μήνη** moon ~moon  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**ὅποτε** when; also **ὀππότε**  
**οὐκέτι** no more  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πλέος** full; also **πλεῖος**, **πλέως**  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also  
**πολεμίζω**, **πτολεμίζω**

**πύθω** rot ~putrid; also **καταπύθω**  
**πυνθάνομαι** learn, inquire, (+gen) hear  
of ~buddha; also **πεύθομαι**  
**πω** not at all; until now, (not) yet  
**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
(pl noun) 200 meters; also **σταδίη**  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
campaign  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**συγγίγνομαι** associate with, meet, have  
sex  
**συστρατεύω** join in an expedition  
**σχεδόν** near, approximately at  
~ischemia  
**τεῦχος** (n, 3) tool, arms, gear  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπεῖπον** say as preface, premise  
**χώρα** place

γεγραμμένοι, καὶ τᾶλλα πολλὰ ὅσα ἐν ξυλίνοις τεύχεσι ναύκληροι ἄγουσιν. ἐντεῦθεν ταῦτα καταστρεψάμενοι ἀπῆσαν πάλιν. ἔνθα δὴ Σεύθης εἶχε στράτευμα ἤδη πλέον τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ· ἕκ τε γὰρ Ὀδρυσῶν πολὺ ἔτι πλείους κατεβεβήκεσαν καὶ οἱ αἰεὶ πιεθόμενοι συνεστρατεύοντο. κατηλύθησαν δ' ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ὑπὲρ Σηλυμβρίας ὅσον τριάκοντα σταδίους ἀπέχοντες τῆς θαλάττης. καὶ μισθὸς μὲν οὐδεὶς πω ἐφαίνετο· πρὸς δὲ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα οἱ τε στρατιῶται παγχαλέπως εἶχον ὃ τε Σεύθης οὐκέτι οἰκείως διέκειτο, ἀλλ' ὅποτε συγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ βουλόμενος ἔλθοι, πολλὰ ἤδη ἀσχολίαι ἐφαίνοντο.

## 7.6

Ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ σχεδὸν ἤδη δύο μηνῶν ὄντων ἀφικνέεται Χαρμῖνός τε ὁ Λάκων καὶ Πολύνικος παρὰ Θίβρωνος, καὶ λέγουσιν ὅτι Λακεδαιμονίοις δοκεῖ στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ Τισσαφέρην, καὶ Θίβρων ἐκπέπλευκεν ὡς πολεμήσων, καὶ δεῖται ταύτης τῆς στρατιᾶς καὶ λέγει ὅτι δαρεικὸς ἐκάστῳ ἔσται μισθὸς τοῦ μηνός, καὶ τοῖς λοχαγοῖς διμοῖρία, τοῖς δὲ στρατηγοῖς τετραμοῖρία. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθον οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, εὐθύς ὁ Ἡρακλείδης πυθόμενος ὅτι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἤκουσι λέγει τῷ Σεύθῃ ὅτι κάλλιστόν τι γεγένηται· οἱ μὲν γὰρ Λακεδαιμόνιοι δέονται τοῦ στρατεύματος, σὲ δὲ οὐκέτι δέη· ἀποδιδούς δὲ τὸ στράτευμα χαρῆν αὐτοῖς, σὲ δὲ οὐκέτι ἀπαιτήσουσι τὸν μισθόν, ἀλλ' ἀπαλλάξονται ἐκ τῆς χώρας. ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Σεύθης κελεύει

γεγραμμένοι, καὶ τὰλλα πολλὰ ὅσα ἐν ξυλίνοις τεύχεσι ναύκληροι ἄγουσιν. ἐντεῦθεν ταῦτα καταστρεψάμενοι ἀπῆσαν πάλιν. ἐνθα δὴ Σεύθης εἶχε στράτευμα ἤδη πλέον τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ· ἕκ τε γὰρ Ὀδρυσῶν πολὺ ἔτι πλείους κατεβεβήκεσαν καὶ οἱ

**always, forever**  
**join in an expedition** . κατηλύσθησαν δ' ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ὑπὲρ Σηλυμβρίας

ὅσον τριάκοντα **στάδιον?: 200 meters (pl also masc) ; or στάδιος?: (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters**

μὲν οὐδεὶς πω ἐφαίνετο· πρὸς δὲ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα οἱ τε στρατιῶται παγχαλέπως εἶχον ὃ τε Σεύθης οὐκέτι οἰκείως διέκειτο, ἀλλ' ὅποτε

**associate with, meet, have sex** βουλόμενος ἔλθοι, πολλὰ ἤδη ἀσχολία ἐφαίνοντο.

## 7.6

Ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ σχεδὸν ἤδη δύο μηνῶν ὄντων ἀφικεῖται Χαρμῖνός τε ὁ Λάκων καὶ Πολύνικος παρὰ Θίβρωνος, καὶ λέγουσιν ὅτι Λακεδαιμονίοις δοκεῖ στρατεῦσθαι ἐπὶ Τισσαφέρην, καὶ Θίβρων ἐκπέπλευκεν ὡς πολεμήσων, καὶ δεῖται ταύτης τῆς στρατιᾶς καὶ λέγει ὅτι δαρεικὸς ἐκάστῳ ἔσται μισθὸς τοῦ μηνός, καὶ τοῖς

λοχαγοῖς διμοῖρία, τοῖς δὲ στρατηγοῖς τετραμοῖρία. ἐπεὶ δ' **ἀλθομαι?: become whole ; or ἔρχομαι?: learn, inquire,**  
 Λακεδαιμόνιοι, εὐθὺς ὁ Ἡρακλείδης **πύθω?: rot ; or πυνθάνομαι?: (+gen) hear of**

ἤκουσι λέγει τῷ Σεύθῃ ὅτι κάλλιστόν τι γεγένηται· οἱ μὲν γὰρ Λακεδαιμόνιοι δέονται τοῦ στρατεύματος, σὺ δὲ οὐκέτι δέη· ἀποδιδούς

δὲ τὸ στράτευμα χαρῆν αὐτοῖς, σὲ δὲ οὐκέτι **demand to have** τὸν μισθόν, ἀλλ' ἀπαλλάσσονται ἐκ τῆς χώρας. **ἀκέομαι?: return, fix ; or ἀκούω?: hear, listen**

in still larger numbers, and on the other, the tribes which gave in their adhesion from time to time were amalgamated with his armament. They got into quarters on the flat country above Selybria at about three miles distance from the sea. As to pay, not a penny was as yet forthcoming, and the soldiers were cruelly disaffected to Xenophon, whilst Seuthes, on his side, was no longer so friendly disposed. If Xenophon ever wished to come face to face with him, want of leisure or some other difficulty always seemed to present itself.

“Trakheia pontou Salmudesia gnathos ekhthroxenos nautaisi, metruia neon.”

“The rugged Salmudesian jaw of the Black Sea, Inhospitable to sailors, stepmother of ships.”

But the poet is at fault in his geography, since he connects “the Salmydesian jaw” with the Thermodon.

## 7.6

At this date, when nearly two months had already passed, an embassy arrived. These were two agents from Thibron— Charminus, a Lacedaemonian, and Polynicus. They were sent to say that the Lacedaemonians had resolved to open a campaign against Tissaphernes, and that Thibron, who had set sail to conduct the war, was anxious to avail himself of the troops. He could guarantee that each soldier should receive a daric a month as pay, the officers double pay, and the generals quadruple. The Lacedaemonian emissaries had no sooner arrived than Heracleides, having learnt that they had come in search of the Hellenic troops, goes off himself to Seuthes and says: “The best thing that could have happened; the Lacedaemonians want these troops and you have done with them, so that if you hand over the troops to them, you will do the Lacedaemonians a good turn and will cease to be bothered for pay any more. The country will be quit



of them once and for ever.”

On hearing



*vocabulary*

**ἄγνουμι** break

**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone

**ἀήρ ἠέρος** (m/f) mist, air ~air

**αἶρω** raise, win ~aorta; also **ἀείρω**

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured

**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse

**ἀποδίδωμι** repay

**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself

**ἄρα** interrogative pcl

**ἄρά** bane, harm; prayer; also **ἄρή**, **ἄρος**

**ἄρης ἄρω** (m) war, warlike spirit

**ἄρονός** (m/f, 3) lamb, sheep; wool

**αὔριον** tomorrow

**διπλός** double, overlapping

**ἐπειδάν** when

**ἐρμηνεύς** (m) interpreter

**ἐρωτάω** ask about something

**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also

**ἰθύς**

**ἐχθρός** hated, distasteful ~external

**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism

**ἦκω** to have come

**ἡμερος** domesticated

**λάσκω** cry, crack, ring

**λήγω** cease ~lax

**μισθός** reward, wages

**ξενίζω** be host, treat as a guest

**ξένιος** of hospitality

**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey

~odometer; also **ὀδός**

**πολεμέω** make war ~polemic; also

**πολεμίζω**, **πτολεμίζω**

**πώς** how? why?

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army

**στρατιά** army

**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary

**συλλέγω** collect, assemble

**συνίημι** send together; (+gen) hear

**τετραπλός** fourfold

**τιμωρέω** take vengeance

**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case

**ὑπίσχομαι** promise, agree to do; also

**ὑπισχέομαι**

**ὑστεραῖος** the next; later

**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

**χείρων** worse, more base

παράγειν· καὶ ἐπεὶ εἶπον ὅτι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἤκουσιν, ἔλεγεν ὅτι τὸ στράτευμα ἀποδίδωσι, φίλος τε καὶ σύμμαχος εἶναι βούλεται, καλεῖ τε αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ ξένια· καὶ ἐξένιζε μεγαλοπρεπῶς. Ξενοφῶντα δὲ οὐκ ἐκάλει, οὐδὲ τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν οὐδένα. ἐρωτῶντων δὲ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων τίς ἀνὴρ εἶη Ξενοφῶν ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι τὰ μὲν ἄλλα εἶη οὐ κακός, φιλοστρατιώτης δέ· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο χεῖρόν ἐστιν αὐτῷ. καὶ οἱ εἶπον· Ἄλλ' ἢ δημαγωγεῖ ὁ ἀνὴρ τοὺς ἄνδρας; καὶ ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, Πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη. Ἄρ' οὖν, ἔφασαν, μὴ καὶ ἡμῖν ἐναντιώσεται τῆς ἀπαγωγῆς; Ἄλλ' ἦν ὑμεῖς, ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, συλλέξαντες αὐτοὺς ὑπόσχησθε τὸν μισθόν, ὀλίγον ἐκείνῳ προσχόντες ἀποδραμοῦνται σὺν ὑμῖν. Πῶς οὖν ἄν, ἔφασαν, ἡμῖν συλλεγεῖν; Αὔριον ὑμᾶς, ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, πρῶ ἄξομεν πρὸς αὐτούς· καὶ οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι ἐπειδὰν ὑμᾶς ἴδωσιν, ἄσμενοι συνδραμοῦνται. αὕτη μὲν ἡ ἡμέρα οὕτως ἔληξεν.

Τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἄγουσιν ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα τοὺς Λάκωνας Σεύθης τε καὶ Ἡρακλείδης, καὶ συλλέγεται ἡ στρατιά. τῶν δὲ Λάκωνε ἐλεγέτην ὅτι Λακεδαιμονίοις δοκεῖ πολεμεῖν Τισσαφέρνει τῷ ὑμᾶς ἀδικήσαντι· ἦν οὖν ἤτε σὺν ἡμῖν, τόν τε ἐχθρὸν τιμωρήσεσθε καὶ δαρεικὸν ἕκαστος οἴσει τοῦ μηνὸς ὑμῶν, λοχαγὸς δὲ τὸ διπλοῦν, στρατηγὸς δὲ τὸ τετραπλοῦν. καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἄσμενοί τε ἤκουσαν καὶ εὐθύς ἀνίσταταιί τις τῶν Ἀρκάδων τοῦ Ξενοφῶντος κατηγορήσων. παρῆν δὲ καὶ Σεύθης βουλόμενος εἶδέναι τί πραχθήσεται, καὶ ἐν ἐπηκόῳ εἰστήκει ἔχων ἐρμηρέα· ξυνίει δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς Ἑλληνιστὶ τὰ

παράγειν· καὶ ἐπεὶ εἶπον ὅτι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἤκουσιν, ἔλεγεν ὅτι τὸ  
στράτευμα ἀποδίδωσι, φίλος τε καὶ σύμμαχος εἶναι βούλεται, καλεῖ  
τε αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ **|of hospi-|be host**, εγαλοπρεπῶς. Ξενοφῶντα δὲ οὐκ  
ἐκάλει, οὐδὲ τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν οὐδένα. ἐρωτῶντων δὲ τῶν  
Λακεδαιμονίων τίς ἀνὴρ εἶη Ξενοφῶν ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι τὰ μὲν ἄλλα εἶη  
οὐ κακός, φιλοστρατιώτης δέ· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο χεῖρόν ἐστιν αὐτῷ. καὶ  
οἱ εἶπον· Ἄλλ' ἢ δημαγωγεῖ ὁ ἀνὴρ τοὺς ἄνδρας; καὶ ὁ Ἡρακλείδης,  
Πάνν μὲν οὖν, ἔφη. Ἄρ' οὖν, ἔφασαν, μὴ καὶ ἡμῖν ἐναντιώσεται τῆς  
ἀπαγωγῆς; Ἄλλ' ἦν ὑμεῖς, ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, **|collect,** αὐτοὺς  
**|assemble** τὸν μισθόν, ὀλίγον ἐκείνῳ προσχόντες ἀποδραμοῦνται  
**|promise,** ὑμῖν. Πῶς οὖν ἄν, ἔφασαν, ἡμῖν συλλεγεῖεν; **|tomorrow** ἔφη  
**|agree to** ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, πρὶν **|do** ἄγνυμι?:, **|break**; ἢ καὶ οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι **|when**  
ὑμᾶς ἴδωσιν, ἄσμενοι συνδραμοῦνται. αὕτη μὲν ἡ ἡμέρα οὕτως **|λήγω?:** cease ;  
**|or λάσχω?:** cry,  
**|crack, ring**  
Τῇ δ' **|the next; later** ἔπειτα ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα τοὺς Λάκωνας **|Σεύθης**  
τε καὶ Ἡρακλείδης, καὶ **|collect,** ἡ στρατιά. τὰ δὲ Λάκωνε  
**|assemble** ἐλεγέτην ὅτι Λακεδαιμονίους δοκεῖ πολεμεῖν Τισσαφέρνει τῷ ὑμᾶς  
ἀδικήσαντι· ἦν οὖν ἤτε σὺν ἡμῖν, τόν τε ἐχθρόν τιμωρήσεσθε καὶ  
δαρειακὸν ἕκαστος οἴσει τοῦ μηνὸς ὑμῶν, λοχαγὸς δὲ τὸ **|double**  
στρατηγὸς δὲ τὸ **|fourfold** καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἄσμενοί τε ἤκουσαν  
καὶ εὐθὺς ἀνίσταται τις τῶν Ἀρκάδων τοῦ Ξενοφῶντος κατηγορήσων.  
παρῆν δὲ καὶ Σεύθης βουλόμενος εἰδέναι τί πραχθήσεται, καὶ ἐν  
ἐπηκόῳ εἰσθίκει ἔχων **|interpreter** νίει δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς Ἑλληνιστὶ τὰ

this Seuthes bade him introduce the emissaries. As soon as they had stated that the object of their coming was to treat for the Hellenic troops, he replied that he would willingly give them up, that his one desire was to be the friend and ally of Lacedaemon. So he invited them to partake of hospitality, and entertained them magnificently; but he did not invite Xenophon, nor indeed any of the other generals. Presently the Lacedaemonians asked: "What sort of man is Xenophon?" and Seuthes answered: "Not a bad fellow in most respects; but he is too much the soldiers' friend; and that is why it goes ill with him." They asked: "Does he play the popular leader?" and Heracleides answered: "Exactly so." "Well then," said they, "he will oppose our taking away the troops, will he not?" "To be sure he will," said Heracleides; "but you have only to call a meeting of the whole body, and promise them pay, and little further heed will they pay to him; they will run off with you." "How then are we to get them collected?" they asked. "Early to-morrow," said Heracleides, "we will bring you to them; and I know," he added once more, "as soon as they set eyes on you, they will flock to you with alacrity." Thus the day ended.

The next day Seuthes and Heracleides brought the two Laconian agents to the army, and the troops were collected, and the agents made a statement as follows: "The Lacedaemonians have resolved on war with Tissaphernes, who did you so much wrong. By going with us therefore you will punish your enemy, and each of you will get a daric a month, the officers twice that sum, and the generals quadruple." The soldiers lent willing ears, and up jumped one of the Arcadians at once, to find fault with Xenophon. Seuthes also was hard by, wishing to know what was going to happen. He stood within ear shot, and his interpreter by his side; not but what he could understand most of what was said in Greek

*vocabulary*

ἄγγελος (m/f) messenger ~angel  
 αἰέρω raise, win ~aorta; also αἴρω  
 αἰδέομαι respect, be ashamed  
 αἰτία blame, credit, cause ~etiology  
 αἷτιος guilty ~etiology; also αἰτίος  
 ἀλίσκομαι be captured  
 ἀνίστημι stand up; arouse  
 ἀπάγω lead away, back  
 αὖ ignite; shout  
 βέλτιστος best, noblest  
 βουλευώ to deliberate ~volunteer  
 δέος -ους (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
 δεῦρο here, come here!  
 διαβαίνω pass over, cross  
 δίκη justice  
 εἰκός οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
 ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand  
 ἐπιχειρέω lay hands on  
 ἔπομαι follow, support, chase ~sequel  
 ἐφίστημι stand ready, take a stand  
 ἡμέτερος our, my  
 ἠώς ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
 ἴδιος private, personal  
 κωλύω hinder, prevent

μά by (in oaths)  
 μισθός reward, wages  
 νομίζω consider customary  
 ὄθεν whence  
 οἴκαδε homeward ~economics  
 οἶομαι suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,  
 οἶομαι  
 ὁπότε when; also ὀπότε  
 οὐτάω pierce, wound  
 πάλαι long ago ~paleo  
 παύω stop something ~pause  
 πλεῖστος most numerous  
 πόνος toil, suffering  
 προθυμία zeal, alacrity  
 πυνθάνομαι learn, inquire, (+gen) hear  
 of ~buddha; also πεύθομαι  
 στρατεύω make an expedition, war,  
 campaign  
 τριήρης -ους (f, 3) trireme  
 ὑπισχνέομαι promise, agree to do; also  
 ὑπίσχομαι  
 χειμών -ος (m, 3) winter, storm  
 χέω pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
 ὧδε thus  
 ὠφελέω help, be useful

πλείστα. ἔνθα δὴ λέγει ὁ Ἄρκας· Ἄλλ' ἡμεῖς μὲν, ὦ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, καὶ πάλαι ἂν ἦμεν παρ' ὑμῖν, εἰ μὴ Ξενοφῶν ἡμᾶς δεῦρο πείσας ἀπήγαγεν, ἔνθα δὴ ἡμεῖς μὲν τὸν δεινὸν χειμῶνα στρατευόμενοι καὶ νύκτα καὶ ἡμέραν οὐδὲν πεπαύμεθα· ὁ δὲ τοὺς ἡμετέρους πόνους ἔχει· καὶ Σεύθης ἐκείνον μὲν ἰδίᾳ πεπλούτικεν, ἡμᾶς δὲ ἀποστερεῖ τὸν μισθόν· ὥστε ὄγε πρῶτος λέγων ἐγὼ μὲν εἰ τοῦτον ἴδομι καταλευσθέντα καὶ δόντα δίκην ὧν ἡμᾶς περιεῖλκε, καὶ τὸν μισθὸν ἂν μοι δοκῶ ἔχειν καὶ οὐδὲν ἐπὶ τοῖς πεπονημένοις ἄχθεσθαι. μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη ὁμοίως καὶ ἄλλος. ἐκ δὲ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἔλεξεν ὧδε.

Ἄλλὰ πάντα μὲν ἄρα ἄνθρωπον ὄντα προσδοκᾶν δεῖ, ὅποτε γε καὶ ἐγὼ νῦν ὑφ' ὑμῶν αἰτίας ἔχω ἐν ᾧ πλείστην προθυμίαν ἐμαντῶ γε δοκῶ συνειδέναι περὶ ὑμᾶς παρεσχημένος. ἀπετραπόμην μὲν γε ἤδη οἴκαδε ὠρμημένος, οὐ μὰ τὸν Δία οὔτοι πνιθανόμενος ὑμᾶς εἶδ' πράττειν, ἀλλὰ μάλλον ἀκούων ἐν ἀπόροις εἶναι ὡς ὠφελήσων εἴ τι δυναίμην. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθον, Σεύθου τουτουὶ πολλοὺς ἀγγέλους πρὸς ἐμὲ πέμποντος καὶ πολλὰ ὑπισχνουμένου μοι, εἰ πείσαιμι ὑμᾶς πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐλθεῖν, τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ ἐπεχείρησα ποιεῖν, ὡς αὐτοὶ ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε. ἦγον δὲ ὅθεν ὠόμην τάχιστ' ἂν ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν διαβῆναι. ταῦτα γὰρ καὶ βέλτιστα ἐνόμιζον ὑμῖν εἶναι καὶ ὑμᾶς ἦδειν βουλομένους. ἐπεὶ δ' Ἀρίσταρχος ἐλθὼν σὺν τριήρεσιν ἐκώλυε διαπλεῖν ἡμᾶς, ἐκ τούτου, ὅπερ εἰκὸς δήπου ἦν, συνέλεξα ὑμᾶς, ὅπως βουλευσαίμεθα ὅτι χρὴ ποιεῖν. οὐκοῦν ὑμεῖς ἀκούοντες μὲν Ἀριστάρχου ἐπιτάττοντος



πλείστα. ἔνθα δὴ λέγει ὁ Ἄρκάς· Ἄλλ' ἡμεῖς μὲν, ὦ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, καὶ  
 πάλαι ἂν ἦμεν παρ' ὑμῖν, εἰ μὴ Ξενοφῶν ἡμᾶς δεῦρο **πειτσα?:** obedience, subjection  
 ἔνθα δὴ ἡμεῖς μὲν τὸν δεινὸν χειμῶνα στρατευόμε **;** or **πάσχω?:** suffer ; or  
 ἡμέραν οὐδὲν πεπαύμεθα· ὁ δὲ τοὺς ἡμετέρους πόνους ἔχει· καὶ Σείθης **πειθω?:** persuade  
 ἐκείνον μὲν ἰδία πεπλούτικεν, ἡμᾶς δὲ ἀποστερεῖ τὸν μισθόν· ὥστε ὁ  
 γε πρῶτος λέγων ἐγὼ μὲν εἰ τοῦτον ἴδοιμι καταλευσθέντα καὶ δόντα  
 δίκην ὧν ἡμᾶς περιεῖλκε, καὶ τὸν μισθὸν ἂν μοι δοκῶ ἔχειν καὶ οὐδὲν  
 ἐπὶ τοῖς πεπονημένοις **|be burdened with** ἕτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη ὁμοίως  
 καὶ ἄλλος. ἐκ δὲ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἐλεξεν ὠδε.

Ἄλλὰ πάντα μὲν ἄρα ἀνθρωπον ὄντα προσδοκᾶν δεῖ, ὅποτε γε καὶ  
 ἐγὼ νῦν ὑφ' ὑμῶν αἰτίας ἔχω ἐν ᾧ πλείστην προθυμίαν ἐμαντῶ  
 γε δοκῶ συνειδέναι περὶ ὑμᾶς παρεσχημένους. **|divert from** μὲν γε  
 ἤδη οὐκαδε ὠρμημένοι, οὐ μὰ τὸν Δία οὗτοι πυνθανόμενος ὑμᾶς εὖ  
 πράττειν, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἀκούων ἐν ἀπόροις εἶναι ὡς ὠφελήσων εἴ τι

**|enter, put on, strip off** **ἄλθομαι?:** become whole **;** or **ἔρχομαι?:** go, come  
 πέμποντος καὶ πολλὰ **promise, agree** τοι, εἰ πείσαιμι ὑμᾶς πρὸς αὐτὸν  
 ἐλθεῖν, τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ ἐπεχείρησα ποιεῖν, ὡς αὐτοὶ ὑμεῖς **ἀπιστέω?:** disbelieve  
 ἦγον δὲ ὅθεν ὠόμην τάχιστ' ἂν ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν **;** or **ἐφίστημι?:** stand  
 γὰρ καὶ **best,** ἐνόμιζον ὑμῖν εἶναι καὶ ὑμᾶς ἦδειν βουλομένους. **pass over, take a stand ; or**  
**noblest** **ἐπίσταμαι?:** know  
 ἐπεὶ δ' Ἀρίσταρχος ἐλθὼν σὺν τριήρεσιν ἐκώλυε διαπλεῖν ἡμᾶς, ἐκ  
 τούτου, ὅπερ εἰκὸς δῆπου ἦν, **collect,** ἡμᾶς, ὅπως βουλευσαίμεθα ὁ  
**assemble**  
 τι χρῆ ποιεῖν. οὐκοῦν ὑμεῖς ἀκούοντες μὲν Ἀριστάρχου ἐπιτάπτοντος

himself. At this point the Arcadian spoke: “For the matter of that, Lacedaemonians, we should have been by your sides long ago, if Xenophon had not persuaded us and brought us hither. We have never ceased campaigning, night and day, the dismal winter through, but he reaps the fruit of our toils. Seuthes has enriched him privately, but deprives us of our honest earnings; so that, standing here as I do to address you first, all I can say is, that if I might see the fellow stoned to death as a penalty for all the long dance he has led us, I should feel I had got my pay in full, and no longer grudge the pains we have undergone.” The speaker was followed by another and then another in the same strain; and after that Xenophon made the following speech:—

“True is the old adage; there is nothing which mortal man may not expect to see. Here am I being accused by you to-day, just where my conscience tells me that I have displayed the greatest zeal on your behalf. Was I not actually on my road home when I turned back? Not, God knows, because I learned that you were in luck’s way, but because I heard that you were in sore straits, and I wished to help you, if in any way I could. I returned, and Seuthes yonder sent me messenger after messenger, and made me promise upon promise, if only I could persuade you to come to him. Yet, as you yourselves will bear me witness, I was not to be diverted. Instead of setting my hand to do that, I simply led you to a point from which, with least loss of time, I thought you could cross into Asia. This I believed was the best thing for you, and you I knew desired it.

”But when Aristarchus came with his ships of war and hindered our passage across, you will hardly quarrel with me for the step I then took in calling you together that we might advisedly consider our best course. Having heard both sides— first Aristarchus, who ordered you to march to the Chersonese,

*vocabulary***ἄάω** infatuate, make foolish**ἄδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone**ἄημι** blow**αἰτία** blame, credit, cause ~etiology**αἰτιάομαι** blame**αἴτιος** guilty ~etiology; also αἰτίος**ἀμφότερος** both ~amphora**ἀντί** for, equivalent to**ἀποδίδωμι** repay**ἀποτίνω** pay back**αὐτίκα** at once**αὐτοῦ** here, there**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**ἐνταῦθα** thither**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)**ἐπαινέω** concur, concur with**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel**ἔργω** bound, fend off; do; also**ἐργαθεῖν****ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene**θαυμάζω** marvel ~theater; also**ἀποθαυμάζω****ἴδιος** private, personal**μείων** less, smaller**μέντοι** however**μηδέ** and not; not even**μισέω** hate, wish to prevent

~misogyny

**μισθός** reward, wages**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οἴομαι,**οἴομαι****οἴομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,**οἴομαι****ὄμνυμι** swear**πλέος** full; also πλεῖος, πλέως**πλέω** sail, float ~float**πορεύω** carry**πραΐξις** -εως (f/m/n) result, business**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**πῶς** how? why?**στερέω** steal, take**τελέω** fulfill; pf pass: be feasible**ὕμέτερος** yours**ὕπισχομαι** promise, agree to do; also**ὕπισχνέομαι****χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω**χοῦμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions**ψεύδω** middle: to lie**ψηφίζω** count, vote

ὑμῖν εἰς Χερρόνησον πορεύεσθαι, ἀκούοντες δὲ Σεύθου πείθοντος  
 ἑαυτῷ συστρατεύεσθαι, πάντες μὲν ἐλέγετε σὺν Σεύθῳ ἰέναι, πάντες  
 δ' ἐψηφίσασθε ταῦτα. τί οὖν ἐγὼ ἐνταῦθα ἠδίκησα ἀγαγὼν ὑμᾶς  
 ἔνθα πᾶσιν ὑμῖν ἐδόκει; ἐπεὶ γε μὴν ψεύδεσθαι ἤρξατο Σεύθης περὶ  
 τοῦ μισθοῦ, εἰ μὲν ἐπαινώ αὐτόν, δικαίως ἂν με καὶ αἰτιῶσθε καὶ  
 μισοῦτε· εἰ δὲ πρόσθεν αὐτῷ πάντων μάλιστα φίλος ὢν νῦν πάντων  
 διαφορώτατός εἰμι, πῶς ἂν ἔτι δικαίως ὑμᾶς αἰρούμενος ἀντὶ Σεύθου  
 ὑφ' ὑμῶν αἰτίαν ἔχοιμι περὶ ὧν πρὸς τοῦτον διαφέρομαι; ἀλλ' εἵποιτ'  
 ἂν ὅτι ἔξεστι καὶ τὰ ὑμέτερα ἔχοντα παρὰ Σεύθου τεχνάζειν. οὐκοῦν  
 δῆλον τοῦτό γέ ἐστιν, εἴπερ ἐμοὶ ἐτέλει τι Σεύθης, οὐχ οὕτως ἐτέλει  
 δῆπου ὡς ὢν τε ἐμοὶ δοίη στέροιτο καὶ ἄλλα ὑμῖν ἀποτείσειεν,  
 ἀλλ' οἶμαι, εἰ ἐδίδου, ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἂν ἐδίδου ὅπως ἐμοὶ δούς μείον μὴ  
 ἀποδοίη ὑμῖν τὸ πλεόν. εἰ τοίνυν οὕτως ἔχειν οἴεσθε, ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν  
 αὐτίκα μάλα ματαίαν ταύτην τὴν πράξιν ἀμφοτέροις ἡμῖν ποιῆσαι,  
 ἐὰν πράττητε αὐτὸν τὰ χρήματα. δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι Σεύθης, εἰ ἔχω  
 τι παρ' αὐτοῦ, ἀπαιτήσει με, καὶ ἀπαιτήσει μέντοι δικαίως, ἐὰν  
 μὴ βεβαιῶ τὴν πράξιν αὐτῷ ἐφ' ἣ ἐδωροδόκουν. ἀλλὰ πολλοῦ  
 μοι δοκῶ δεῖν τὰ ὑμέτερα ἔχειν· ὁμνύω γὰρ ὑμῖν θεοὺς ἅπαντας  
 καὶ πάσας μῆδ' ἃ ἐμοὶ ἰδία ὑπέσχετο Σεύθης ἔχειν· πάρεστι δὲ καὶ  
 αὐτὸς καὶ ἀκούων σύννοιδέ μοι εἰ ἐπιορκῶ· ἴνα δὲ μᾶλλον θαυμάσητε,  
 συνεπόμνυμι μῆδὲ ἃ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ ἔλαβον εἰληφέναι, μὴ τοίνυν  
 μῆδὲ ὅσα τῶν λοχαγῶν ἔνιοι. καὶ τί δὴ ταῦτ' ἐποιοῦν; ὦμην,

ὑμῖν εἰς Χερρόνησον πορεύεσθαι, ἀκούοντες δὲ Σεύθου πείθοντος  
 ἑαυτῶ |join in an expedition, πάντες μὲν ἐλέγετε σὺν Σεύθῃ ἰέναι, πάντες  
 δ' ἐψηφίσασθε ταῦτα. τί οὖν ἐγὼ ἐνταῦθα ἠδίκησα ἀγαγὼν ὑμᾶς  
 ἔνθα πᾶσιν ὑμῖν ἐδόκει; ἐπεὶ γὰρ μὴν ψεύδεσθαι ἤρξατο Σεύθης περὶ  
 τοῦ μισθοῦ, εἰ μὲν ἐπαινώ αὐτόν, δικαίως ἂν με καὶ |blame καὶ  
 μισοῖτε· εἰ δὲ πρόσθεν αὐτῷ πάντων μάλιστα φίλος ὢν νῦν πάντων  
 διαφορώτατός εἰμι, πῶς ἂν ἔτι δικαίως ὑμᾶς αἰρούμενος ἀντὶ Σεύθου  
 ὑφ' ὑμῶν αἰτίαν ἔχοιμι περὶ ὧν πρὸς τοῦτον διαφέρομαι; ἀλλ' εἴποιτ'  
 ἂν ὅτι |go forth ἰ τὰ ὑμέτερα ἔχοντα παρὰ Σεύθου τεχνάζειν. οὐκοῦν  
 δῆλον τοῦτό γέ ἐστιν, εἴπερ ἐμοὶ ἐτέλει τι Σεύθης, οὐχ οὕτως ἐτέλει  
 δήπου ὡς ὢν τε ἐμοὶ δοίη |steal, take αἰ ἄλλα ὑμῖν |pay back  
 ἀλλ' οἶμαι, εἰ |δίδημι?: should; bind;|δίδημι?: should; bind;|less, . . .  
 ἀποδοίη ὑμῖν |give; permit| τοῖνυν |give; permit| οἷεσθε, |go forth μῖν  
 αὐτίκα μάλα ματαίαν ταύτην τὴν πράξιν ἀμφοτέροις ἡμῖν ποιῆσαι,  
 ἐὰν πράττητε αὐτόν τὰ χρήματα. δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι Σεύθης, εἰ ἔχω  
 τι παρ' αὐτοῦ, ἀπαιτήσῃ με, καὶ ἀπαιτήσῃ μέντοι δικαίως, ἐὰν  
 μὴ βεβαιῶ τὴν πράξιν αὐτῷ ἐφ' ἣ ἔδωροδόκουν. ἀλλὰ πολλοῦ  
 μοι δοκῶ δεῖν τὰ ὑμέτερα ἔχειν· ὁμνύω γὰρ ὑμῖν θεοὺς ἅπαντας  
 καὶ πάσας μὴδ' ἂ ἐμοὶ ἰδία |ὑπέχω?: hold, out, one's hand; submit to ; or  
 ὑπίσχομαι?: promise, agree to do  
 αὐτὸς καὶ ἀκούων σύννοιδέ μοι εἰ |swear ἵνα δὲ μᾶλλον θαυμάσητε,  
 |falsely  
 συνεπόμενυ μὴδ' ἂ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ ἔλαβον εἰληφέναι, μὴ τοῖνυν  
 μὴδὲ ὅσα τῶν λοχαγῶν |be in καὶ τί δὴ ταῦτ' ἐποίουν; |infatuate, make  
 |foolish

then Seuthes, who pleaded with you to undertake a campaign with himself— you all proposed to go with Seuthes; and you all gave your votes to that effect. What wrong did I commit in bringing you, whither you were eager to go? If, indeed, since the time when Seuthes began to tell lies and cheat us about the pay, I have supported him in this, you may justly find fault with me and hate me. But if I, who at first was most of all his friend, to-day am more than any one else at variance with him, how can I, who have chosen you and rejected Seuthes, in fairness be blamed by you for the very thing which has been the ground of quarrel between him and me? But you will tell me, perhaps, that I get from Seuthes what is by right yours, and that I deal subtly by you? But is it not clear that, if Seuthes has paid me anything, he has at any rate not done so with the intention of losing by what he gives me, whilst he is still your debtor? If he gave to me, he gave in order that, by a small gift to me, he might escape a larger payment to yourselves. But if that is what you really think has happened, you can render this whole scheme of ours null and void in an instant by exacting from him the money which is your due. It is clear, Seuthes will demand back from me whatever I have got from him, and he will have all the more right to do so, if I have failed to secure for him what he bargained for when I took his gifts. But indeed, I am far removed from enjoying what is yours, and I swear to you by all the gods and goddesses that I have not taken even what Seuthes promised me in private. He is present himself and listening, and he is aware in his own heart whether I swear falsely. And what will surprise you the more, I can swear besides, that I have not received even what the other generals have received, no, nor yet

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** assembly; also ἀγορή, ἄγυρις  
**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**αἰσχρός** shameful  
**αἰσχύνω** spoil, disgrace  
**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἀνάγω** lead up, set sail  
**ἀναμνησκω** (+2 acc) remind someone  
**ἀποδίδωμι** repay  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**γνώμη** sign, mind, will, decision  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone, not worry about  
**ἔδω** eat ~eat  
**εἴσειμι** go in; come in range  
**ἐναντίον** opposite, facing; also  
**κατεναντίος**  
**ἐναντίος** opposite, facing, meeting  
**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat  
**ἔξω** outward, outside  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
**ἵππιοχάρμης**  
**κωλύω** hinder, prevent  
**λίαν** very  
**μά** by (in oaths)  
**μηδέ** and not; not even  
**ναί** yea

**ὄποτε** when; also ὀπότε  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὀδός  
**παρέχω** furnish  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πενία** poverty ~osteopenia  
**ποῖος** what kind  
**πράγμα** -τος (n, 3) deed, fact, thing, affair  
**πρόφασις** -ος (f) proposal; as occasioned by  
**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up station  
**συμφέρω** bring together (φέρω)  
**τοσοῦτος** so much  
**τριήρης** -ους (f, 3) trireme  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed, happen, happen to exist; also  
**ἐντυγχάνω**  
**ὑπέχω** hold out one's hand; submit to; also ὑποσχέθω  
**ὑπίσχομαι** promise, agree to do; also ὑπισχέομαι  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch; also φυλακεύς  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard ~phyllactery  
**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

ἄνδρες, ὅσω, μᾶλλον συμφέρομι τούτῳ τὴν τότε πενίαν, τοσοῦτῳ  
 μᾶλλον αὐτὸν φίλον ποιήσεσθαι, ὅποτε δυνασθείη. ἐγὼ δὲ ἅμα  
 τε αὐτὸν ὀρώ εἶ πράττοντα καὶ γινώσκω δὴ αὐτοῦ τὴν γνώμην.  
 εἴποι δὴ τις ἄν, οὐκ οὐκ αἰσχύνῃ οὕτω μώρως ἐξαπατώμενος; ναὶ  
 μὰ Δία ἡσχυνόμην μέντ᾽ ἄν, εἰ ὑπὸ πολεμίου γε ὄντος ἐξηπατήθην·  
 φίλῳ δὲ ὄντι ἐξαπατᾶν αἰσχίον μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ἢ ἐξαπατᾶσθαι. ἐπεὶ  
 εἴ γε πρὸς φίλους ἐστὶ φυλακή, πᾶσαν οἶδα ἡμᾶς φυλαξαμένους  
 ὡς μὴ παρασχεῖν τούτῳ πρόφασιν δικαίαν μὴ ἀποδιδόναι ἡμῖν ἃ  
 ὑπέσχετο· οὔτε γὰρ ἡδίκησαμεν τοῦτον οὐδὲν οὔτε κατεβλακεύσαμεν  
 τὰ τούτου οὐδὲ μὴν κατεδειλιάσαμεν οὐδὲν ἐφ' ὃ τι ἡμᾶς οὗτος  
 παρεκάλεσεν. ἀλλά, φαίητε ἄν, ἔδει τὰ ἐνέχυρα τότε λαβεῖν, ὡς  
 μηδ' εἰ ἐβούλετο ἐδύνατο ἐξαπατᾶν. πρὸς ταῦτα δὴ ἀκούσατε ἃ ἐγὼ  
 οὐκ ἄν ποτε εἶπον τούτου ἐναντίον, εἰ μὴ μοι παντάπασις ἀγνώμονες  
 ἐδοκεῖτε εἶναι ἢ λίαν εἰς ἐμὲ ἀχάριστοι. ἀναμνήσθητε γὰρ ἐν ποίοις  
 τισὶ πράγμασι ὄντες ἐτυγχάνετε, ἐξ ὧν ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ ἀνήγαγον πρὸς  
 Σεύθην. οὐκ εἰς μὲν Πέρινθον προσῆτε πόλιν, Ἄρισταρχος δ' ὑμᾶς  
 ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος οὐκ εἶα εἰσιέναι ἀποκλείσας τὰς πύλας; ὑπαίθριοι  
 δ' ἔξω ἐστρατοπεδεύετε, μέσος δὲ χειμῶν ἦν, ἀγορᾷ δὲ ἐχρήσθη  
 σπάνια μὲν ὀρώντες τὰ ὄνια, σπάνια δ' ἔχοντες ὄτων ἀνήσεσθε,  
 ἀνάγκη δὲ ἦν μένειν ἐπὶ Θράκης· τριήρεις γὰρ ἐφορμοῦσαι ἐκώλυον  
 διαπλεῖν· εἰ δὲ μένοι τις, ἐν πολεμίᾳ εἶναι, ἔνθα πολλοὶ μὲν ἵππεῖς  
 ἦσαν ἐναντίοι, πολλοὶ δὲ πελτασταί, ἡμῖν δὲ ὀπλιτικὸν μὲν ἦν ὧ



ἄνδρες, ὅσω, μᾶλλον συμφέρομι τούτῳ τὴν τότε **|poverty** ἰσοούτῳ  
 μᾶλλον αὐτὸν φίλον ποιήσεσθαι, ὅποτε δυνασθείη. ἐγὼ δὲ ἅμα  
 τε αὐτὸν ὀρώ εἶ πράττοντα καὶ γινώσκω δὴ αὐτοῦ τὴν γνώμην.  
 εἴποι δὴ τις ἄν, οὐκ οὐκ αἰσχύνῃ οὕτω μώρως ἐξαπατῶμενος; ναὶ  
 μὰ Δία ἡσχυρόμην μέντ᾽ ἄν, εἰ ὑπὸ πολεμίου γε ὄντος ἐξηπατήθην·  
 φίλῳ δὲ ὄντι ἐξαπατᾶν αἰσχρόν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ἢ ἐξαπατᾶσθαι. ἐπεὶ  
 εἴ γε πρὸς φίλους ἐστὶ φυλακὴ, πᾶσαν οἶδα ἡμᾶς φυλαξαμένους  
 ὡς μὴ παρασχεῖν τούτῳ πρόφασιν δικαίαν μὴ ἀποδιδόναι ἡμῖν ἂ  
**|ὑπέχω?: hold out one's hand; submit to ;** ἔδεν οὐτε κατεβλακεύσαμεν  
**|or ὑπίσχομαι?: promise, agree to do**  
 τὰ τούτου οὐδὲ μὴν κατεδειλιάσαμεν οὐδὲν ἐφ' ὅ τι ἡμᾶς οὗτος  
 παρεκάλεσεν. ἀλλά, φαίητε ἄν, ἔδει τὰ ἐνέχυρα τότε λαβεῖν, ὡς  
 μὴδ' εἰ ἐβούλετο **|enter, put on, strip off** ἰτᾶν. πρὸς ταῦτα δὴ ἀκούσατε ἂ ἐγὼ  
 οὐκ ἄν ποτε εἶπον τούτου ἐναντίον, εἰ μὴ μοι παντάπασιν ἀγνώμονες  
 ἐδοκεῖτε εἶναι ἢ λίαν εἰς ἐμέ **|ungracious, unpleasant** ἵνα μνησθήτε γὰρ ἐν ποίοις  
 τισι πράγμασι ὄντες ἐτυγχάνετε, ἐξ ὧν ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ ἀνήγαγον πρὸς  
 Σεύθην. οὐκ εἰς μὲν Πέρωντον **|demand as well** ἰρίσταρχος δ' ὑμᾶς  
 ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος οὐκ εἶα **|go in** ἀποκλείσας τὰς πύλας; ὑπαίθριοι  
 δ' ἔξω **|encamp or take up station**, μέσος δὲ χειμῶν ἦν, ἀγορᾶ δὲ ἐχρήσθη  
 σπάνια **|for sale** ἰάνια δ' ἔχοντες ὅτων ὠνήσεσθε,  
 ἀνάγκη δὲ ἦν μένειν ἐπὶ Θράκης· τριήρεις γὰρ ἐφορμοῦσαι ἐκόλυον  
 διαπλεῖν· εἰ δὲ μένοι τις, ἐν πολεμῷ εἶναι, ἔνθα πολλοὶ μὲν ἵππεῖς  
 ἦσαν ἐναντίοι, πολλοὶ δὲ **|light troops**. ἡμῖν δὲ ὀπλιτικὸν μὲν ἦν ᾧ

what some of the officers have received. But how so? why have I managed my affairs no better? I thought, sirs, the more I helped him to bear his poverty at the time, the more I should make him my friend in the day of his power. Whereas, it is just when I see the star of his good fortune rising, that I have come to divine the secret of his character.

“Some one may say, are you not ashamed to be so taken in like a fool? Yes, I should be ashamed, if it had been an open enemy who had so deceived me. But, to my mind, when friend cheats friend, a deeper stain attaches to the perpetrator than to the victim of deceit. Whatever precaution a man may take against his friend, that we took in full. We certainly gave him no pretext for refusing to pay us what he promised. We were perfectly upright in our dealings with him. We did not dawdle over his affairs, nor did we shrink from any work to which he challenged us.

”But you will say, I ought to have taken security of him at the time, so that had he fostered the wish, he might have lacked the ability to deceive. To meet that retort, I must beg you to listen to certain things, which I should never have said in his presence, except for your utter want of feeling towards me, or your extraordinary ingratitude. Try and recall the posture of your affairs, when I extricated you and brought you to Seuthes. Do you not recollect how at Perinthus Aristarchus shut the gates in your faces each time you offered to approach the town, and how you were driven to camp outside under the canopy of heaven? It was midwinter; you were thrown upon the resources of a market wherein few were the articles offered for sale, and scanty the wherewithal to purchase them. Yet stay in Thrace you must, for there were ships of war riding at anchor in the bay, ready to hinder your passage across; and what

*vocabulary*

**ἀθρόος** grouped  
**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἀνδράποδον** (m/n, 3) slave  
**ἀνίημι** urge, impel; release  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀποσκεδάννυμι** dismiss  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βουλευώ** to deliberate ~volunteer  
**δαπανάω** spend, consume, waste  
**διώκω** chase  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεί  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐφοράω** look upon  
**ζῶ** live ~zoo; also ζάω, ζώω  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θαρσαλέος** bold, over-bold  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἵππιοχάρμης  
**ἵππικός** of horses  
**ἴσος** equal; also ἔσση  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake  
**κωλύω** hinder, prevent

**κώμη** village  
**μηδέ** and not; not even  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,  
 οἶομαι  
**οὐκέτι** no more  
**πάνυ** altogether, very  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πρό** before, forward ~prolog  
**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds; also  
 πρόβασις  
**προσαιτέω** demand as well  
**πῶς** how? why?  
**σίτος** (m/n) grain, bread, food  
 ~parasite  
**σπουδή** (f/m) ‘pushing,’ with difficulty,  
 quickly, seriously; an effort (σπεύδω)  
**συνίστημι** unite; confront in battle  
**σχέλιος** tough, sound, stubborn, cruel  
 ~ischemia  
**σῶς** safe, alive; also σάος, σόος  
**τέως** meanwhile, for a while  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**χρή** it is necessary, must, should  
 ~chresard

ἀθρόοι μὲν ἰόντες ἐπὶ τὰς κόμας ἴσως ἂν ἐδυνάμεθα σίτον λαμβάνειν  
 οὐδέν τι ἄφθονον, ὅτω δὲ διώκοντες ἂν ἢ ἀνδράποδα ἢ πρόβατα  
 κατελαμβάνομεν οὐκ ἦν ἡμῖν· οὔτε γὰρ ἵππικὸν οὔτε πελταστικὸν ἔτι  
 ἐγὼ συνεστηκὸς κατέλαβον παρ' ὑμῖν. εἰ οὖν ἐν τοιαύτῃ ἀνάγκῃ ὄντων  
 ὑμῶν μηδ' ὄντιναοῦν μισθὸν προσαιτήσας Σεύθην σύμμαχον ὑμῖν  
 προσέλαβον, ἔχοντα καὶ ἵππέας καὶ πελταστὰς ὧν ὑμεῖς προσεδείσθε,  
 ἢ κακῶς ἂν ἐδόκουν ὑμῖν βεβουλεῦσθαι πρὸ ὑμῶν; τούτων γὰρ δῆπου  
 κοινωνήσαντες καὶ σίτον ἀφθονώτερον ἐν ταῖς κόμαις ἠύρισκετε  
 διὰ τὸ ἀναγκάζεσθαι τοὺς Θρᾶκας κατὰ σπουδὴν μᾶλλον φεύγειν,  
 καὶ προβάτων καὶ ἀνδραπόδων μᾶλλον μετέσχετε. καὶ πολέμοιο  
 οὐκέτι οὐδένα ἐωρῶμεν ἐπειδὴ τὸ ἵππικὸν ἡμῖν προσεγένετο· τέως δὲ  
 θαρραλέως ἡμῖν ἐφείποντο οἱ πολέμοιο καὶ ἵππικῶ καὶ πελταστικῶ  
 καλύοντες μηδαμῆ κατ' ὀλίγους ἀποσκεδαννυμένους τὰ ἐπιτήδεια  
 ἀφθονώτερα ἡμᾶς πορίζεσθαι. εἰ δὲ δὴ ὁ συμπαρέχων ὑμῖν ταύτην  
 τὴν ἀσφάλειαν μὴ πάνυ πολὺν μισθὸν προσετέλει τῆς ἀσφαλείας,  
 τοῦτο δὴ τὸ σχέτλιοι πάθημα καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οὐδαμῆ οἴεσθε χρῆναι  
 ζῶντα ἐμὲ ἀνεῖναι; νῦν δὲ δὴ πῶς ἀπέρχεσθε; οὐ διαχειμάσαντες  
 μὲν ἐν ἀφθόνοις τοῖς ἐπιτηδείοις, περιπτὸν δ' ἔχοντες τοῦτο εἴ τι  
 ἐλάβετε παρὰ Σεύθου; τὰ γὰρ τῶν πολεμίων ἐδαπανᾶτε. καὶ ταῦτα  
 πράττοντες οὔτε ἀνδρας ἐπίδτε ὑμῶν αὐτῶν ἀποθανόντας οὔτε  
 ζῶντας ἀπεβάλετε. εἰ δέ τι καλὸν πρὸς τοὺς ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ βαρβάρους  
 ἐπέπρακτο ὑμῖν, οὐ καὶ ἐκεῖνο σὼν ἔχετε καὶ πρὸς ἐκεῖνοισι νῦν

ἀθρόοι μὲν ἰόντες ἐπὶ τὰς |village ᾧσως ἂν ἐδυνάμεθα σίτον λαμβάνειν  
 οὐδέν τι ἄφθονον, ὅτω δὲ διώκοντες ἂν ἢ |slave ἢ πρόβατα  
 κατελαμβάνομεν οὐκ ἦν ἡμῖν· οὔτε γὰρ |of horses ᾧτε πελταστικὸν ἔτι  
 ἐγὼ συνεστηκὸς κατέλαβον παρ' ὑμῖν. εἰ οὖν ἐν τοιαύτῃ ἀνάγκῃ ὄντων  
 ὑμῶν μῆδ' ὄντιναοῦν μισθὸν |demand as well ἴθην σύμμαχον ὑμῖν  
 προσέλαβον, ἔχοντα καὶ ἵππεάς καὶ |light ἔτι ἂν ὑμεῖς προσεδείσθε,  
 ἢ κακῶς ἂν ἐδόκουν ὑμῖν βεβουλεῦσθαι πρὸ ὑμῶν; τούτων γὰρ δήπου  
 κοινωνήσαντες καὶ σίτον ἀφθονώτερον ἐν ταῖς |village ἠύρισκετε  
 διὰ τὸ ἀναγκάζεσθαι τοὺς Θρᾶκας κατὰ σπουδὴν μᾶλλον φεύγειν,  
 καὶ προβάτων καὶ |slave μᾶλλον μετέσχετε. καὶ πολέμοι  
 οὐκέτι οὐδένα ἐωρῶμεν |after; ἢ |of horses, ἂν προσεγένετο· |meanwhile,  
 |because ἢ |bold ἡμῖν ἐφείποντο οἱ πολέμοι καὶ |of horses ἢ πελταστικῶ  
 κωλύοντες μῆδαμῆ κατ' ὀλίγους |dismiss τὰ ἐπιτήδεια  
 ἀφθονώτερα ἡμᾶς πορίζεσθαι. εἰ δὲ δὴ ὁ συμπαρέχων ὑμῖν ταύτην  
 τὴν ἀσφάλειαν μὴ πάνυ πολὺν μισθὸν προσετέλει τῆς ἀσφαλείας,  
 τοῦτο δὴ τὸ σχέτλιον πάθημα καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οὐδαμῆ οἴεσθε χρῆναι  
 |live ἐμὲ ἀνεῖναι; νῦν δὲ δὴ πῶς ἀπέρχεσθε; οὐ διαχεμιάσαντες  
 μὲν ἐν ἀφθόνοις τοῖς ἐπιτηδείοις, περιττὸν δ' ἔχοντες τοῦτο εἴ τι  
 ἐλάβετε παρὰ Σείθου; τὰ γὰρ τῶν πολεμίων |spend, καὶ ταῦτα  
 πράττοντες οὔτε ἄνδρας |look upon, ὧν αὐτὸ |consume, |waste τοθανόντας οὔτε  
 |live ἀπεβάλετε. εἰ δέ τι καλὸν πρὸς τοὺς ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ βαρβάρους  
 ἐπέπρακτο ὑμῖν, οὐ καὶ ἐκείνο σὼν ἔχετε καὶ πρὸς ἐκείνοις νῦν

did that stay imply? It meant being in a hostile country, confronted by countless cavalry, legions of light infantry. And what had we? A heavy infantry force certainly, with which we could have dashed at villages in a body possibly, and seized a modicum of food at most; but as to pursuing the enemy with such a force as ours, or capturing men or cattle, the thing was out of the question; for when I re-joined you your original cavalry and light infantry divisions had disappeared. In such sore straits you lay!

“Supposing that, without making any demands for pay whatever, I had merely won for you the alliance of Seuthes— whose cavalry and light infantry were just what you needed— would you not have thought that I had planned very well for you? I presume, it was through your partnership with him and his that you were able to find such complete stores of corn in the villages, when the Thracians were driven to take to their heels in such hot haste, and you had so large a share of captives and cattle. Why! from the day on which his cavalry force was attached to us, we never set eyes on a single foeman in the field, though up to that date the enemy with his cavalry and his light infantry used undauntedly to hang on our heels, and effectually prevented us from scattering in small bodies and reaping a rich harvest of provisions. But if he who partly gave you this security has failed to pay in full the wages due to you therefrom, is not that a terrible misfortune? So monstrous indeed that you think I ought not to go forth alive.

”But let me ask you, in what condition do you turn your backs on this land to-day? Have you not wintered here in the lap of plenty? Whatever you have got from Seuthes has been surplus gain. Your enemies have had to meet the bill of your expenses, whilst you

*vocabulary***ἄγε** lead, bring**ἄγνυμι** break**ἄλλομαι** to jump ~sally**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart**ἀπεχθάνομαι** become hated ~external**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape**βάρβαρος** non-Greek**γέη** earth; a country ~geography; also**γῆ****γνώμη** sign, mind, will, decision**διό** because of which**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,**ἐξαποδύνω****ἐμέω** vomit ~emetic**ἔξιμι** go forth (εἶμι)**εὐκλεία** good repute (κλέος)**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene**θεά** (2) goddess ~theology**κάλως** halyard**κατατίθημι** put down**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)

there is a danger that

**κρατέω** rule ~democracy**κρείσσω** more powerful**μέρος** -ος (n, 3) part**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics**ὅπη** wherever, however**ὅπη** wherever, however**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey

~odometer; also ὀδός

**παύω** stop something ~pause**πλεῖστος** most numerous**πονέω** work; be busy**πορεύω** carry**πρό** before, forward ~prolog**πω** not at all; until now, (not) yet**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch

~skeptic

**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case**ὕμετερος** yours**ὕπείπον** say as preface, premise**χαλεπαίνω** be violent, rage**χάρις** -τος (f) grace ~eucharist**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω

ἄλλην εὐκλειαν προσειλήφατε καὶ τοὺς ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ Θρᾶκας ἐφ'  
 οὓς ἐστρατεύσασθε κρατήσαντες; ἐγὼ μὲν ὑμᾶς φημι δικαίως ἂν  
 ὦν ἐμοὶ χαλεπαίνετε τούτων τοῖς θεοῖς χάριν εἰδέναι ὡς ἀγαθῶν.  
 καὶ τὰ μὲν δὴ ὑμέτερα τοιαῦτα. ἄγετε δὴ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ τὰ ἐμὰ  
 σκέψασθε ὡς ἔχει. ἐγὼ γὰρ ὅτε μὲν πρότερον ἀπῆα οὔκαδε, ἔχων μὲν  
 ἔπαινον πολὺν πρὸς ὑμῶν ἀπεπορευόμεν, ἔχων δὲ δι' ὑμᾶς καὶ ὑπὸ  
 τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων εὐκλειαν. ἐπιστευόμενην δὲ ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων·  
 οὐ γὰρ ἂν με ἔπεμπον πάλιν πρὸς ὑμᾶς. νῦν δὲ ἀπέρχομαι πρὸς  
 μὲν Λακεδαιμονίους ὑφ' ὑμῶν διαβεβλημένος, Σεύθη δὲ ἀπήχθημένος  
 ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν, ὃν ἠλπίζον εὖ ποιήσας μεθ' ὑμῶν ἀποστροφὴν καὶ ἐμοὶ  
 καλὴν καὶ παισίν, εἰ γένοιτο, καταθήσεσθαι. ὑμεῖς δ', ὑπὲρ ὧν  
 ἐγὼ ἀπήχθημαί τε πλείστα καὶ ταῦτα πολὺ κρείττωσιν ἐμαντοῦ,  
 πραγματευόμενός τε οὐδὲ νῦν πω πέπαυμαι ὅ τι δύναμαι ἀγαθὸν ὑμῖν,  
 τοιαύτην ἔχετε γνώμην περὶ ἐμοῦ. ἀλλ' ἔχετε μὲν με οὔτε φεύγοντα  
 λαβόντες οὔτε ἀποδιδράσκοντα· ἦν δὲ ποιήσητε ἃ λέγετε, ἵστε ὅτι  
 ἄνδρα κατακεκονότες ἔσεσθε πολλὰ μὲν δὴ πρὸ ὑμῶν ἀγρυπνήσαντα,  
 πολλὰ δὲ σὺν ὑμῖν πονήσαντα καὶ κινδυνεύσαντα καὶ ἐν τῷ μέρει καὶ  
 παρὰ τὸ μέρος, θεῶν δ' ἴλεων ὄντων καὶ τρόπαια βαρβάρων πολλὰ  
 δὴ σὺν ὑμῖν στησάμενον, ὅπως δέ γε μηδενὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων πολέμιοι  
 γένησθε, πᾶν ὅσον ἐγὼ ἐδυνάμην πρὸς ὑμᾶς διατεινόμενον. καὶ γὰρ  
 οὖν νῦν ὑμῖν ἔξεστιν ἀνεπιλήπτως πορεύεσθαι ὅπῃ ἂν ἔλησθε καὶ κατὰ  
 γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν. ὑμεῖς δέ, ὅτε πολλὴ ὑμῖν εὐπορία φαίνεται,



ἄλλην |good repute τελήφατε καὶ τοὺς ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ Θρᾶκας ἐφ'  
 οὓς ἐστρατεύσασθε κρατήσαντες; ἐγὼ μὲν ὑμᾶς φημι δικαίως ἂν  
 ὦν ἐμοὶ |be violent, rage ἕτων τοῖς θεοῖς χάριν εἶδέναι ὡς ἀγαθῶν.  
 καὶ τὰ μὲν δὴ ὑμέτερα τοιαῦτα. |ἄγε?: lead, bring ; ἢ or ἄγω?: lead, bring ; or  
 |ἄγνυμι?: break  
 |look, look at, watch, ἢ γὰρ ὅτε μὲν πρότερον ἀπῆα οὐκάδε, ἔχων μὲν  
 ἔπαινον πολὺν πρὸς ὑμῶν ἀπεπορευόμεν, ἔχων δὲ δι' ὑμᾶς καὶ ὑπὸ  
 τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων |good repute γτεύομεν δὲ ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων·  
 οὐ γὰρ ἂν με ἔπεμπον πάλιν πρὸς ὑμᾶς. νῦν δὲ ἀπέρχομαι πρὸς  
 μὲν Λακεδαιμονίους ὑφ' ὑμῶν διαβεβλημένος, Σεύθη δὲ ἀπηχθημένος  
 ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν, ὃν ἠλπίζον εὖ ποιήσας μεθ' ὑμῶν ἀποστροφὴν καὶ ἐμοὶ  
 καλὴν καὶ παισί, εἰ γένοιτο, καταθήσεσθαι. ὑμεῖς δ', ὑπὲρ ὧν  
 ἐγὼ |become  
 |hated τε πλείστα καὶ ταῦτα πολὺ κρείττοσιν ἐμαντοῦ,  
 πραγματευόμενός τε οὐδὲ νῦν πω πέπαυμαι ὅ τι δύναιμι ἀγαθὸν ὑμῖν,  
 τοιαύτην ἔχετε γνώμην περὶ ἐμοῦ. ἀλλ' ἔχετε μὲν με οὔτε φεύγοντα  
 λαβόντες οὔτε ἀποδιδράσκοντα· ἦν δὲ ποιήσητε ἃ λέγετε, ἵστε ὅτι  
 ἄνδρα κατακεκονότες ἔσεσθε πολλὰ μὲν δὴ πρὸ ὑμῶν ἀγρυπνήσαντα,  
 πολλὰ δὲ σὺν ὑμῖν πονήσαντα καὶ κινδυνεύσαντα καὶ ἐν τῷ μέρει καὶ  
 παρὰ τὸ μέρος, θεῶν δ' ἕλεων ὄντων καὶ τρόπαια βαρβάρων πολλὰ  
 δὴ σὺν ὑμῖν στησάμενον, ὅπως δέ γε μηδεὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων πολέμοι  
 γένησθε, πᾶν ὅσον ἐγὼ |enter, put on, ἢ ὑμᾶς διατεινόμενον. καὶ γὰρ  
 |strip off  
 οὐδὲν νῦν ὑμῖν |go forth ἑπιλήπτως πορεύεσθαι ὅπῃ ἂν |to jump ἢ κατὰ  
 |earth; à country ἵπταν. ὑμεῖς δέ, ὅτε πολλὴ ὑμῖν εὐπορία φαίνεται,

led a merry round of existence, in which you have not once set eyes on the dead body of a comrade or lost one living man. Again, if you have achieved any, (or rather many) noble deeds against the Asiatic barbarian, you have them safe. And in addition to these to-day you have won for yourselves a second glory. You undertook a campaign against the European Thracians, and have mastered them. What I say then is, that these very matters which you make a ground of quarrel against myself, are rather blessings for which you ought to show gratitude to heaven.

“Thus far I have confined myself to your side of the matter. Bear with me, I beg you, while we examine mine. When I first essayed to part with you and journey homewards, I was doubly blest. From your lips I had won some praise, and, thanks to you, I had obtained glory from the rest of Hellas. I was trusted by the Lacedaemonians; else would they not have sent me back to you. Whereas to-day I turn to go, calumniated before the Lacedaemonians by yourselves, detested in your behalf by Seuthes, whom I meant so to benefit, by help of you, that I should find in him a refuge for myself and for my children, if children I might have, in after time. And you the while, for whose sake I have incurred so much hate, the hate of people far superior to me in strength, you, for whom I have not yet ceased to devise all the good I can, entertain such sentiments about me. Why? I am no renegade or runaway slave, you have got hold of. If you carry out what you say, be sure you will have done to death a man who has passed many a vigil in watching over you; who has shared with you many a toil and run many a risk in turn and out of turn; who, thanks to the gracious gods! has by your side set up full many a trophy over the barbarian; who, lastly, has strained every nerve in his body to protect you against yourselves. And

*vocabulary*

**ἀέκων** unwilling  
**ἄημι** blow  
**αἰεὶ** always, forever ~eon; also **ἀεὶ**  
**ἄκων** (3) javelin ~acme  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἀνίστημι** stand up; arouse  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back  
**ἀποδίδωμι** repay  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**αὖ** ignite; shout  
**διό** because of which  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also **δύω**,  
**ἐξαποδύνω**  
**ἐκών** willingly  
**ἐμέω** vomit ~emetic  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (f/m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**κλέπτω** steal  
**κράτιστος** best  
**μέντοι** however  
**μιμνήσκω** remind; (mid) remember,

turn one's thoughts to ~mnemonic  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also **οἶομαι**,  
**οἶομαι**  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also **ὁδός**  
**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo  
**πάλη** wrestling  
**πάομαι** experience, suffer ~pathos;  
 also **πάσχω**  
**παύω** stop something ~pause  
**πίμπλημι** fill (+gen.) ~plenum  
**πλέω** sail, float ~float  
**πονέω** work; be busy  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**τίη** strengthened form of **τί**  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do; also  
**ὑπίσχομαι**  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χαλεπαίνω** be violent, rage  
**χείρων** worse, more base  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also **καταχέω**  
**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions

καὶ πλείτε ἔνθα δὴ ἐπεθυμείτε πάλαι, δέονταί τε ὑμῶν οἱ μέγιστον  
 δυνάμενοι, μισθὸς δὲ φαίνεται, ἡγεμόνες δὲ ἦκουσι Λακεδαιμόνιοι οἱ  
 κράτιστοι νομιζόμενοι εἶναι, νῦν δὴ καιρὸς ὑμῖν δοκεῖ εἶναι ὡς τάχιστα  
 ἐμὲ κατακαίνειν; οὐ μὴν ὅτε γε ἐν τοῖς ἀπόροις ἦμεν, ὧ πάντων  
 μνημονικώτατοι, ἀλλὰ καὶ πατέρα ἐμὲ ἐκαλείτε καὶ αἰεὶ ὡς εὐεργέτου  
 μεμνήσεσθαι ὑπισχνείσθε. οὐ μέντοι ἀγνώμονες οὐδὲ οὐτοί εἰσιν οἱ νῦν  
 ἦγοντες ἐφ' ὑμᾶς· ὥστε, ὡς ἐγὼ οἶμαι, οὐδὲ τούτοις δοκεῖτε βελτίονες  
 εἶναι τοιοῦτοι ὄντες περὶ ἐμέ. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο.

Χαρμῖνος δὲ ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος ἀναστὰς εἶπεν· Οὐ τὼ σιώ, ἀλλ' ἐμοὶ  
 μέντοι οὐ δικαίως δοκεῖτε τῷ ἀνδρὶ τούτῳ χαλεπαίνειν· ἔχω γὰρ καὶ  
 αὐτὸς αὐτῷ μαρτυρῆσαι. Σεύθης γὰρ ἐρωτῶντος ἐμοῦ καὶ Πολυνίκου  
 περὶ Ξενοφώντος τίς ἀνὴρ εἴη ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν εἶχε μέμψασθαι,  
 ἄγαν δὲ φιλοστρατιώτην ἔφη αὐτὸν εἶναι· διὸ καὶ χεῖρον αὐτῷ  
 εἶναι πρὸς ἡμῶν τε τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ πρὸς αὐτοῦ. ἀναστὰς  
 ἐπὶ τούτῳ Εὐρύλοχος Λουσιάτης Ἄρκας εἶπεν· Καὶ δοκεῖ γέ μοι,  
 ἄνδρες Λακεδαιμόνιοι, τοῦτο ὑμᾶς πρῶτον ἡμῶν στρατηγῆσαι, παρὰ  
 Σεύθου ἡμῖν τὸν μισθὸν ἀναπράξαι ἢ ἐκόντος ἢ ἄκοντος, καὶ μὴ  
 πρότερον ἡμᾶς ἀπαγαγεῖν. Πολυκράτης δὲ Ἀθηναῖος εἶπεν ἐνετὸς  
 ὑπὸ Ξενοφώντος· Ὅρω γε μὴν, ἔφη, ὧ ἄνδρες, καὶ Ἡρακλείδην  
 ἐνταῦθα παρόντα, ὃς παραλαβὼν τὰ χρήματα ἃ ἡμεῖς ἐπονήσαμεν,  
 ταῦτα ἀποδόμενος οὔτε Σεύθῃ ἀπέδωκεν οὔτε ἡμῖν τὰ γιγνόμενα,  
 ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κλέψας πέπαται. ἦν οὖν σωφρονῶμεν, ἐξόμεθα αὐτοῦ· οὐ

καὶ πλεῖτε ἔνθα δὴ ἐπεθυμείτε πάλαι, δέονται τε ὑμῶν οἱ μέγιστον  
 δυνάμειοι, μισθὸς δὲ φαίνεται, ἡγεμόνες δὲ ἤκουσι Λακεδαιμόνιοι οἱ  
 κράτιστοι νομιζόμενοι εἶναι, νῦν δὴ καιρὸς ὑμῖν δοκεῖ εἶναι ὡς τάχιστα  
 ἐμὲ κατακαίειν; οὐ μὲν ὅτε γε ἐν τοῖς ἀπόροις ἦμεν, ὧ πάντων  
 μνημονικώτατοι, ἀλλὰ καὶ πατέρα ἐμὲ ἐκαλείτε καὶ **always,** ὑεργέτου  
 μεμνήσεσθαι **promise,** οὐ μέντοι ἀγνώμονες οὐδὲ οὗτοί εἰσιν οἱ νῦν  
 ἤγοντες ἐφ' ὑμᾶς· ὥστε, ὡς ἐγὼ οἶμαι, οὐδὲ τούτοις δοκεῖτε βελτίονες  
 εἶναι τοιοῦτοι ὄντες περὶ ἐμέ. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο.

Χαρμῖνος δὲ ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος ἀναστὰς εἶπεν· Οὐ τὼ σιώ, ἀλλ' ἐμοὶ  
 μέντοι οὐ δικαίως δοκεῖτε τῷ ἀνδρὶ τούτῳ **be violent, rage,** γὰρ καὶ  
 αὐτὸς αὐτῷ μαρτυρῆσαι. Σεύθης γὰρ ἐρωτῶντος ἐμοῦ καὶ Πολυνίκου  
 περὶ Ξενοφῶντος τίς ἀνὴρ εἴη ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν εἶχε μέμψασθαι,  
 ἄγαν δὲ φιλοστρατιώτην ἔφη αὐτὸν εἶναι· διὸ καὶ χεῖρον αὐτῷ  
 εἶναι πρὸς ἡμῶν τε τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ πρὸς αὐτοῦ. ἀναστὰς  
 ἐπὶ τούτῳ Εὐρύλοχος Λουσιάτης Ἄρκας εἶπεν· Καὶ δοκεῖ γέ μοι,  
 ἄνδρες Λακεδαιμόνιοι, τοῦτο ὑμᾶς πρῶτον ἡμῶν στρατηγῆσαι, παρὰ  
 Σεύθου ἡμῖν τὸν μισθὸν ἀναπρᾶξαι ἢ ἐκόντος ἢ ἄκοντος, καὶ μὴ  
 πρότερον ἡμᾶς ἀπαγαγεῖν. Πολυκράτης δὲ Ἀθηναῖος εἶπεν ἐνετὸς  
 ὑπὸ Ξενοφῶντος· Ὅρῳ γε μὲν, ἔφη, ὧ ἄνδρες, καὶ Ἡρακλείδην  
 ἐνταῦθα παρόντα, ὃς παραλαβὼν τὰ χρήματα ἃ ἡμεῖς ἐπονήσαμεν,  
 ταῦτα ἀποδόμενος οὔτε Σεύθῃ ἀπέδωκεν οὔτε ἡμῖν τὰ γιγνόμενα,  
 ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κλέψας **suffer** ἦν οὖν σωφρονῶμεν, ἐξόμεθα αὐτοῦ· οὐ

so it is, that to-day you can move freely, where you choose, by sea or by land, and no one can say you nay; and you, on whom this large liberty dawns, who are sailing to a long desired goal, who are sought after by the greatest of military powers, who have pay in prospect, and for leaders these Lacedaemonians, our acknowledged chiefs: now is the appointed time, you think, to put me to a speedy death. But in the days of our difficulties it was very different, O ye men of marvellous memory! No! in those days you called me 'father!' and you promised you would bear me ever in mind, 'your benefactor.' Not so, however, not so ungracious are those who have come to you to-day; nor, if I mistake not, have you bettered yourselves in their eyes by your treatment of me."

With these words he paused, and Charminus the Lacedaemonian got up and said: "Nay, by the Twins, you are wrong, surely, in your anger against this man; I myself can bear testimony in his favour. When Polynicus and I asked Seuthes, what sort of a man he was? Seuthes answered:— he had but one fault to find with him, that he was too much the soldiers' friend, which also was the cause why things went wrong with him, whether as regards us Lacedaemonians or himself, Seuthes."

Upon that Eurylochus of Lusian, an Arcadian, got up and said (addressing the two Lacedaemonians), "Yes, sirs; and what strikes me is that you cannot begin your generalship of us better than by exacting from Seuthes our pay. Whether he like it or no, let him pay in full; and do not take us away before."

Polycrates the Athenian, who was put forward by Xenophon, said: "If my eyes do not deceive me, sirs, there stands Heracleides, yonder, the man who received the property won by our toil, who took and sold it, and never gave back either to Seuthes or to us the proceeds of the sale, but kept

*vocabulary*

**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**ἀκέομαι** heal, fix  
**ἀμείνων** better  
**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**ἀναιρέω** take up  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off  
**ἀποδίδωμι** repay  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
**ἀφήκω**  
**δαπανάω** spend, consume, waste  
**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked senseless;  
 also ἐκπλήγγυμι  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐρμηνεύς** (m) interpreter  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**ιερεῖον ἱρηίου** sacrificial animal  
**κεῖμαι** lie  
**κώμη** village  
**ὄθεν** whence  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone

**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πότερος** which, whichever of two  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
**σαφής** clear, understandable  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**τῶ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπέχω** hold out one's hand; submit to;  
 also ὑποσχέθω  
**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do; also  
 ὑπίσχομαι  
**ὑπίσχομαι** promise, agree to do; also  
 ὑπισχνέομαι  
**ὑποχείριος** under one's hand  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard  
 ~phylactery  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear  
**χίλιοι** thousand ~kilo-  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

γὰρ δὴ οὗτός γε, ἔφη, Θραῶξ ἔστω, ἀλλ' Ἑλλήνων ὦν Ἑλληνῶν ἀδικεῖ.

Ταῦτα ἀκούσας ὁ Ἡρακλείδης μάλα ἐξεπλάγη· καὶ προσελθὼν τῷ Σεύθῃ λέγει· Ἡμεῖς ἦν σωφρονῶμεν, ἄπιμεν ἐντεῦθεν ἐκ τῆς τούτων ἐπικρατείας. καὶ ἀναβάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς ἵππους ὄχοντο ἀπελαύνοντες εἰς τὸ ἑαυτῶν στρατόπεδον. καὶ ἐντεῦθεν Σεύθης πέμπει Ἀβροζέλιμν τὸν ἑαυτοῦ ἑρμηνέα πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα καὶ κελεύει αὐτὸν καταμῆναι παρ' ἑαυτῷ ἔχοντα χιλίους ὀπλίτας, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖται αὐτῷ ἀποδώσειν τὰ τε χωρία τὰ ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἃ ὑπέσχετο. καὶ ἐν ἀπορρήτῳ ποιησάμενος λέγει ὅτι ἀκήκοε Πολυνίκου ὡς εἰ ὑποχείριος ἔσται Λακεδαιμονίοις, σαφῶς ἀποθανοῖτο ὑπὸ Θίβρωνος. ἐπέστελλον δὲ ταῦτα καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὡς διαβεβλημένος εἶη καὶ φυλάττεσθαι δέοι. ὁ δὲ ἀκούων ταῦτα δύο ἱερέια λαβὼν ἐθύετο τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ πότερα οἱ λῶν καὶ ἄμεινον εἶη μένειν παρὰ Σεύθῃ ἐφ' οἷς Σεύθης λέγει ἢ ἀπιέναι σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι. ἀναιρεῖ αὐτῷ ἀπιέναι.

## 7.7

Ἐντεῦθεν Σεύθης μὲν ἀπεστρατοπεδεύσατο προσωτέρω· οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες ἐσκήνησαν εἰς κώμας ὅθεν ἔμελλον πλείστα ἐπισιτισάμενοι ἐπὶ θάλατταν ἦξεν. αἱ δὲ κώμαι αὗται ἦσαν δεδομένοι ὑπὸ Σεύθου Μηδοσάδῃ. ὁρῶν οὖν ὁ Μηδοσάδης δαπανώμενα τὰ ἑαυτοῦ ἐν ταῖς κώμας ὑπὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων χαλεπῶς ἔφερε· καὶ λαβὼν ἄνδρα



γάρ δὴ οὗτός γε, ἔφη, Θραῖξ ἔστω, ἀλλ' Ἑλληγν ὦν Ἑλληγνας ἀδικεῖ.

Ταῦτα |ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix ; or |panic, be προσελθὼν τῷ  
 Σεύθῃ |ἀκούω?: hear, listen |knocked  
 Σεύθῃ λέγει· Ἡμεῖς ἦν σωφρονῶμεν, |senseless τεύθεν ἐκ τῆς τούτων  
 ἐπικρατείας. καὶ ἀναβάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς ἵππους ὄχοντο |expel, ex-  
 εἰς τὸ ἑαυτῶν στρατόπεδον. καὶ ἐντεύθεν Σεύθῃς πέμπε |off, exclude, ward  
 τὸν ἑαυτοῦ |interpreter, ἵς Ξενοφῶντα καὶ κελεύει αὐτὸν καταμείναι  
 παρ' ἑαυτῷ ἔχοντα χιλίους ὀπίστας, καὶ |promise, αὐτῷ ἀποδώσειν  
 τά τε χωρία τὰ ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἂ |agree to do  
 ἀπορρήτῳ ποιησάμενος λέγει ὅτι ἀκήκοε Πολυνίκα |ὑπέχω?: hold out one's hand;  
 ἔσται Λακεδαιμονίοις, σαφῶς ἀποθανοῖτο ὑπὸ Θίβρωνος. ἐπέστελλον |submit to ; or ὑπίσχομαι?:  
 δὲ ταῦτα καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὡς διαβεβλημένος εἶη καὶ |promise, judge one's  
 φυλάττεσθαι δέοι. ὁ δὲ ἀκούων ταῦτα δύο |sacrificial ἵν' ἐθύετο τῷ Διὶ  
 τῷ βασιλεῖ |which, ἕ φων καὶ ἄμεινον εἶη μένειν παρὰ Σεύθῃ ἐφ' οἷς  
 Σεύθῃς λέγει ἢ ἀπιέναι σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι. ἀναιρεῖ αὐτῷ ἀπιέναι.

## 7.7

Ἐντεύθεν Σεύθῃς μὲν ἀπεστρατοπεδεύσατο προσωτέρω· οἱ δὲ  
 Ἑλληγνες ἐσκήνησαν εἰς |village ἕθεν ἔμελλον πλείεστα ἐπισιτισάμενοι  
 ἐπὶ θάλατταν ἦξεν. αἱ δὲ |κώμη?: village ; δεδομένα ὑπὸ Σεύθου  
 Μηδοσάδῃ. ὁρῶν οὖν ὁ Μηδοσάδῃς |or κεῖμαι?: lie  
 ταῖς |village ὑπὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων χαλεπὰ |spend, ταῖς ἑαυτοῦ ἐν  
 |consume, waste, καὶ λαβῶν ἄνδρα

the money to himself, like the thief he is. If we are wise, we will lay hold of him, for he is no Thracian, but a Hellene; and against Hellenes is the wrong he has committed.”

When Heracleides heard these words, he was in great consternation; so he came to Seuthes and said: “If we are wise we will get away from here out of reach of these fellows.” So they mounted their horses and were gone in a trice, galloping to their own camp. Subsequently Seuthes sent Abrozelmes, his private interpreter, to Xenophon, begging him to stay behind with one thousand heavy troops; and engaging duly to deliver to him the places on the seaboard, and the other things which he had promised; and then, as a great secret, he told him, that he had heard from Polynicus that if he once got into the clutches of the Lacedaemonians, Thibron was certain to put him to death. Similar messages kept coming to Xenophon by letter or otherwise from several quarters, warning him that he was calumniated, and had best be on his guard. Hearing which, he took two victims and sacrificed to Zeus the King: “Whether it were better and happier to stay with Seuthes on the terms proposed, or depart with the army?” The answer he received was, “Depart.”

## 7.7

After this, Seuthes removed his camp to some considerable distance; and the Hellenes took up their quarters in some villages, selecting those in which they could best supply their commissariat, on the road to the sea. Now these particular villages had been given by Seuthes to Medosades. Accordingly, when the latter saw his property in the villages being expended by the Hellenes, he was not over well pleased; and

*vocabulary*

**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**ἄημι** blow  
**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology  
**ἀλέξω** ward off; aid  
**ἀνθέω** sprout  
**ἀντί** for, equivalent to  
**ἄνω** accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, out to sea  
**ἀξιόω** consider worthy, fitting  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀποκρίνω** (i) to separate; answer, reject, defend oneself  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also ἀφήκω  
**διό** because of which  
**δυνατός** powerful, possible  
**δῶρον** gift ~donate  
**ἔνεκα** because, that; also εἴνεκα, ἔνεκεν  
**ἐξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide  
**ἦκω** to have come  
**ἡμέτερος** our, my  
**ἡώς ἡοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**ἱππεύς** (m) charioteer; also ἱπποχάρμης

**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**καταβαίνω** go down  
**κράτος -εος** (n, 3) strength, power; victory ~democracy; also κάρτος  
**κρείσσων** more powerful  
**κώμη** village  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οὔομαι, οὔομαι  
**ὁπότε** when; also ὀπότε  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὀδός  
**πορεύω** carry  
**πορθέω** sack, ravage, plunder; also πέρθω  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**προκαλέω** challenge, call out; also προκαλιζομαι  
**προλέγω** pick the best  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender, come in  
**στράτευμα -τος** (n, 3) army  
**τριάκοντα** thirty  
**ὑπεῖπον** say as preface, premise  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear  
**χώρα** place

Ὅδρυσὴν δυνατώτατον τῶν ἄνωθεν καταβεβηκότων καὶ ἰππέας ὅσον τριάκοντα ἔρχεται καὶ προκαλεῖται Ξενοφῶντα ἐκ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ στρατεύματος. καὶ ὃς λαβὼν τινὰς τῶν λοχαγῶν καὶ ἄλλους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων προσέρχεται. ἔνθα δὴ λέγει Μηδοσάδης· Ἄδικεῖτε, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, τὰς ἡμετέρας κώμας πορθοῦντες. προλέγομεν οὖν ὑμῖν, ἐγὼ τε ὑπὲρ Σεύθου καὶ ὄδε ἀνὴρ παρὰ Μηδόκου ἦκων τοῦ ἄνω βασιλέως, ἀπιέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας· εἰ δὲ μή, οὐκ ἐπιτρέψομεν ὑμῖν, ἀλλ' ἐὰν ποιήτε κακῶς τὴν ἡμετέραν χώραν, ὡς πολεμίους ἀλεξόμεθα.

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν· Ἄλλὰ σοὶ μὲν τοιαῦτα λέγοντι καὶ ἀποκρίνασθαι χαλεπὸν· τούτου δ' ἔνεκα τοῦ νεανίσκου λέξω, ἵν' εἰδῆ οἰοί τε ὑμεῖς ἐστε καὶ οἰοί ἡμεῖς. ἡμεῖς μὲν γάρ, ἔφη, πρὶν ὑμῖν φίλοι γενέσθαι ἐπορευόμεθα διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ὅποι ἐβουλόμεθα, ἣν μὲν ἐθέλομεν πορθοῦντες, ἣν δὲ θέλομεν καίοντες, καὶ σὺ ὅποτε πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἔλθοις πρεσβεύων, ἠυλίζου τότε παρ' ἡμῖν οὐδένα φοβούμενος τῶν πολεμίων· ὑμεῖς δὲ οὐκ ἦτε εἰς τήνδε τὴν χώραν, ἢ εἴ ποτε ἔλθοιτε, ὡς ἐν κρειπτόνων χώρα ἠυλίξεσθε ἐγκεχαλινωμένοι τοῖς ἵπποις. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμῖν φίλοι ἐγένεσθε καὶ δι' ἡμᾶς σὺν θεοῖς ἔχετε τήνδε τὴν χώραν, νῦν δὴ ἐξελαύνετε ἡμᾶς ἐκ τῆσδε τῆς χώρας ἣν παρ' ἡμῶν, ἐχόντων κατὰ κράτος, παρελάβετε· ὡς γὰρ αὐτὸς οἶσθα, οἱ πολέμοι οὐχ ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν ἡμᾶς ἐξελαύνειν. καὶ οὐχ ὅπως δῶρα δούς καὶ εὖ ποιήσας ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ ἔπαθες ἀξιοῖς ἡμᾶς ἀποπέμψασθαι, ἀλλ' ἀποπορευομένους ἡμᾶς οὐδ' ἐναυλισθῆναι

Ὅδρυσιν δυνατώτατον τῶν |accomplish, pass, waste; καὶ ἰππέας ὅσον  
 |upwards, out to sea  
 τριάκοντα ἔρχεται καὶ |challenge Ξενοφῶντα ἐκ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ  
 στρατεύματος. καὶ ὃς λαβῶν τινὰς τῶν λοχαγῶν καὶ ἄλλους τῶν  
 ἐπιτηδείων προσέρχεται. ἔνθα δὴ λέγει Μηδοσάδης· Ἄδικεῖτε, ὦ  
 Ξενοφῶν, τὰς ἡμετέρας |village |sack |pick the best ἦν ὑμῶν,  
 ἐγὼ τε ὑπὲρ Σεύθου καὶ ὄδε ἀνὴρ παρὰ Μηδόκου ἦκων τοῦ ἄνω  
 βασιλέως, ἀπιέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας· εἰ δὲ μή, οὐκ ἐπιτρέψομεν ὑμῖν, ἀλλ'  
 ἐὰν ποιῆτε κακῶς τὴν ἡμετέραν χώραν, ὡς πολεμίους |ward off; aid

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν |ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix ; ὅρ' ἢ λὰ σοὶ μὲν τοιαῦτα λέγοντι  
 |ἀκούω?: hear, listen  
 καὶ ἀποκρίνασθαι χαλεπόν· τούτου δ' ἔνεκα τοῦ νεανίσκου λέξω,  
 ἕν' εἰδῆ οἴοί τε ὑμεῖς ἐστε καὶ οἴοι ἡμεῖς. ἡμεῖς μὲν γάρ, ἔφη,  
 πρὶν ὑμῖν φίλοι γενέσθαι ἐπορευόμεθα διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ὅποι  
 ἐβουλόμεθα, ἦν μὲν ἐθέλομεν |sack ἦν δὲ θέλομεν καίοντες,  
 καὶ σὺ ὁπότε πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἔλθοις πρεσβεύων, |be driven home ὅ  
 ἡμῖν οὐδένα φοβούμενος τῶν πολεμίων· ὑμεῖς δὲ οὐκ ἦτε εἰς τήνδε  
 τὴν χώραν, ἢ εἴ ποτε ἔλθοιτε, ὡς ἐν κρειπτόνων χώρα |be driven home  
 ἐγκεχαλινωμένοι τοῖς ἵπποις. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμῖν φίλοι ἐγένεσθε καὶ δι'  
 ἡμᾶς σὺν θεοῖς ἔχετε τήνδε τὴν χώραν, νῦν δὴ ἐξελαύνετε ἡμᾶς ἐκ  
 τῆσδε τῆς χώρας ἦν παρ' ἡμῶν, ἐχόντων κατὰ κράτος, παρελάβετε·  
 ὡς γὰρ αὐτὸς οἶσθα, οἱ πολέμοι οὐχ ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν ἡμᾶς ἐξελαύνειν.  
 καὶ οὐχ ὅπως δῶρα δοὺς καὶ εὖ ποιήσας |ἄημι?: blow ; ὅρ' ἢ ἀντί?: ἴσ  
 |for, equivalent to  
 ἡμᾶς ἀποπέμφασθαι, ἀλλ' ἀποπορευομένους ἡμᾶς οὐδ' ἐναυλισθῆναι

taking with him an Odrysian, a powerful person amongst those who had come down from the interior, and about thirty mounted troopers, he came and challenged Xenophon to come forth from the Hellenic host. He, taking some of the officers and others of a character to be relied upon, came forward. Then Medosades, addressing Xenophon, said: "You are doing wrong to pillage our villages; we give you fair warning— I, in behalf of Seuthes, and this man by my side, who comes from Medocus, the king up country— to begone out of the land. If you refuse, understand, we have no notion of handing it over to you; but if you injure our country we will retaliate upon you as foes."

Xenophon, hearing what they had to say, replied: "Such language addressed to us by you, of all people, is hard to answer. Yet for the sake of the young man with you, I will attempt to do so, that at least he may learn how different your nature is from ours. We," he continued, "before we were your friends, had the free run of this country, moving this way or that, as it took our fancy, pillaging and burning just as we chose; and you yourself, Medosades, whenever you came to us on an embassy, camped with us, without apprehension of any foe. As a tribe collectively you scarcely approached the country at all, or if you found yourselves in it, you bivouacked with your horses bitted and bridled, as being in the territory of your superiors. Presently you made friends with us, and, thanks to us, by God's help you have won this country, out of which to-day you seek to drive us; a country which we held by our own strength and gave to you. No hostile force, as you well know, was capable of expelling us. It might have been expected of you personally to speed us on our way with some gift, in return for the good we did you. Not so;

*vocabulary*

**ἀέκων** unwilling  
**αἰσχύνω** spoil, disgrace  
**ἄκων** (3) javelin ~acme  
**ἀναβαίνω** go up, embark  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπεχθάνομαι** become hated ~external  
**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve  
**ἀποδίδωμι** repay  
**ἀπολαμβάνω** receive, recover, take  
 aside, cut off  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
 ἀφήκω  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**βίος** life; also βιοτή  
**βιόω** live ~biology  
**έκων** willingly  
**έξελαύνω** drive out, exile ~elastic  
**έπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**έπιτρέπω** entrust, decide  
**ήώς** ήοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**ίππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ίππιοχάρμης  
**καταδύω** enter, sink  
**λυπέω** annoy, distress  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,  
 οἶτομαι

**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey  
 ~odometer; also ὁδός  
**ὀφείλω** owe, should, if only  
**πέντε** five ~pentagon  
**πλήν** except  
**πορθέω** sack, ravage, plunder; also  
 πέρθω  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**πρόθυμος** willing, eager  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**στρατιά** army  
**τέσσαρες** (3) four  
**τυγχάνω** meet, find, obtain; succeed,  
 happen, happen to exist; also  
 έντυγχάνω  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὕπέχω** hold out one's hand; submit to;  
 also ὑποσχέθω  
**ὕπισχομαι** promise, agree to do; also  
 ὑπισχνέομαι  
**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χαρίζομαι** gratify someone ~charisma  
**χώρα** place  
**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
 ~heir

ὅσον δύνασαι ἐπιτρέπεις. καὶ ταῦτα λέγων οὔτε θεοὺς αἰσχύνῃ οὔτε τόνδε τὸν ἄνδρα, ὃς νῦν μὲν σε ὀρᾶ πλουτοῦντα, πρὶν δὲ ἡμῖν φίλον γενέσθαι ἀπὸ ληστείας τὸν βίον ἔχοντα, ὡς αὐτὸς ἔφησθα. ἀτὰρ τί καὶ πρὸς ἐμὲ λέγεις ταῦτα; ἔφη· οὐ γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἔτι ἄρχω, ἀλλὰ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, οἷς ὑμεῖς παρεδώκατε τὸ στράτευμα ἀπαγαγεῖν οὐδὲν ἐμὲ παρακαλέσαντες, ὧ θαυμαστότατοι, ὅπως ὥσπερ ἀπηχθανόμην αὐτοῖς ὅτε πρὸς ὑμᾶς ἦγον, οὕτω καὶ χαρισαίμην νῦν ἀποδιδούς.

Ἐπεὶ ταῦτα ἤκουσεν ὁ Ὀδρύσης, εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ Μηδόσαδες, κατὰ τῆς γῆς καταδύομαι ὑπὸ τῆς αἰσχύνῃς ἀκούων ταῦτα. καὶ εἰ μὲν πρόσθεν ἠπιστάμην, οὐδ' ἂν συνηκολούθησά σοι· καὶ νῦν ἄπειμι. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν Μήδοκός με ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐπαινοίῃ, εἰ ἐξελαύνοιμι τοὺς εὐεργέτας. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον ἀπήλαυε καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ ἄλλοι ἱππεῖς πλὴν τεττάρων ἢ πέντε. ὁ δὲ Μηδοσάδης ἐλύπει γὰρ αὐτὸν ἢ χώρα πορθουμένη, ἐκέλευε τὸν Ξενοφῶντα καλέσαι τῷ Λακεδαιμονίῳ. καὶ ὃς λαβὼν τοὺς ἐπιτηδειοτάτους προσῆλθε τῷ Χαρμίνῳ καὶ Πολυνίκῳ καὶ ἔλεγεν ὅτι καλεῖ αὐτοὺς Μηδοσάδης προερῶν ἄπερ αὐτῷ, ἀπιέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας. οἶμαι ἂν οὖν, ἔφη, ὑμᾶς ἀπολαβεῖν τῇ στρατιᾷ τὸν ὀφειλόμενον μισθόν, εἰ εἵποιτε ὅτι δεδέχται ὑμῶν ἢ στρατιὰ συναναπράξει τὸν μισθὸν ἢ παρ' ἐκόντος ἢ παρ' ἄκοντος Σεύθου, καὶ ὅτι τούτων τυχόντες προθύμως ἂν συνέπεσθαι ὑμῖν φασί· καὶ ὅτι δίκαια ὑμῖν δοκοῦσι λέγειν· καὶ ὅτι ὑπέσχεσθε αὐτοῖς τότε ἀπιέναι ὅταν τὰ δίκαια ἔχωσιν



ὅσον |enter, put on, strip off, έπεις. και ταῦτα λέγων οὔτε θεοὺς αἰσχύνῃ οὔτε τόνδε τὸν ἄνδρα, ὃς νῦν μὲν σε ὀρᾶ πλουτοῦντα, πρὶν δὲ ἡμῖν φίλον γενέσθαι ἀπὸ ληστείας τὸν βίον ἔχοντα, ὡς αὐτὸς ἔφησθα. ἀτὰρ τί και πρὸς ἐμὲ λέγεις ταῦτα; ἔφη· οὐ γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἔτι ἄρχω, ἀλλὰ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, οἷς ὑμεῖς παρεδώκατε τὸ στράτευμα ἀπαγαγεῖν οὐδὲν ἐμὲ παρακαλέσαντες, ὧ θαυμαστότατοι, ὅπως ὥσπερ |become hated αὐτοῖς ὅτε πρὸς ὑμᾶς ἦγον, οὔτω και χαρισαίμην νῦν ἀποδιδούς.

Ἐπεὶ ταῦτα ἤκουσεν ὁ Ὀδρύσης, εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὧ Μηδόσαδες, κατὰ τῆς |earth; a country πρὸ τῆς αἰσχύνῃς ἀκούων ταῦτα. και εἰ μὲν πρόσθεν |disbelieve οὐδ' ἂν συνηκολούθησά σοι· και νῦν ἄπειμι. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν Μήδοκός με ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐπαινοίῃ, εἰ ἐξελαίνομι τοὺς εὐεργέτας. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον |expel, ex- sὺν clude, ward αὐτῷ οἱ ἄλλοι ἵππεῖς πλὴν τεττάρων ἢ πέντε. |off δὲ Μηδοσάδης ἐλύπει γὰρ αὐτὸν ἢ χώρα |sack . ἐκέλευε τὸν Ξενοφῶντα καλέσαι τῷ Λακεδαιμονίῳ. και ὃς λαβὼν τοὺς ἐπιτηδειστάτους προσῆλθε τῷ Χαρμίνῳ και Πολυνίκῳ και ἔλεγεν ὅτι καλεῖ αὐτοὺς Μηδοσάδης προερῶν ἄπερ αὐτῷ, ἀπιέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας. οἴομαι ἂν ὄν, ἔφη, ὑμᾶς |receive, recover, take ἰᾶ τὸν ὀφειλόμενον μισθόν, |aside, cut off εἰ εἴποιτε ὅτι δεδέχεται ὑμῶν ἢ στρατιὰ συναναπράξαι τὸν μισθὸν ἢ παρ' ἐκόντος ἢ παρ' ἄκοντος Σεύθου, και ὅτι τούτων τυχόντες προθύμως ἂν |go along with ἦν φασι· και ὅτι δίκαια ὑμῖν δοκοῦσι λέγειν· και ὅτι |ὑπέχω?: hold out one's hand; submit to; ἢ αἰα ἔχωσιν or ὑπίσχομαι?: promise, agree to do

even though our backs are turned to go, we are too slow in our movements for you. You will not suffer us to take up quarters even, if you can help it, and these words arouse no shame in you, either before the gods, or this Odrysian, in whose eyes to-day you are man of means, though until you cultivated our friendship you lived a robber's life, as you have told us. However, why do you address yourself to me? I am no longer in command. Our generals are the Lacedaemonians, to whom you and yours delivered the army for withdrawal; and that, without even inviting me to attend, you most marvellous of men, so that if I lost their favour when I brought you the troops, I might now win their gratitude by restoring them."

As soon as the Odrysian had heard this statement, he exclaimed: "For my part, Medosades, I sink under the earth for very shame at what I hear. If I had known the truth before, I would never have accompanied you. As it is, I return at once. Never would King Medocus applaud me, if I drove forth his benefactors." With these words, he mounted his horse and rode away, and with him the rest of his horsemen, except four or five. But Medosades, still vexed by the pillaging of the country, urged Xenophon to summon the two Lacedaemonians; and he, taking the pick of his men, came to Charminus and Polynicus and informed them that they were summoned by Medosades; probably they, like himself, would be warned to leave the country; "if so," he added, "you will be able to recover the pay which is owing to the army. You can say to them, that the army has requested you to assist in exacting their pay from Seuthes, whether he like it or not; that they have promised, as soon as they get this, cheerfully to follow you; that the demand seems to you to be only just, and that you have

*vocabulary*

**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**ἄημι** blow  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἀξιόω** consider worthy, fitting  
**ἀπαιτέω** demand to have returned  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**αὖω** ignite; shout  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
**ἀφήγω**  
**διδάσκω** teach ~didactic  
**δύω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύνω,  
**ἐξαποδύνω**  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**ἐνθένδε** hence (ἐν)  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐπειδή** after; because; also ἐπεὶ  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics  
**ἔρομαι** ask, search through; also  
**ἀνέρομαι, εἴρομαι, ἐξείρομαι, ἐξέρομαι**  
**εὐθύς** straight; course ~justice; also

## ἰθύς

**ἡμέτερος** our, my  
**ἠώς ἠούς (f)** dawn ~Eocene  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**καταπράσσω** accomplish, build  
**κράτιστος** best  
**κώμη** village  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,  
**οἶομαι**  
**ὅποῖος** whatever kind  
**ὅποτε** when; also ὅπποτε  
**ὅπτερος** which of two, either of two  
**ὄρκος** oath ~orc  
**πεῖσα** obedience, subjection  
**πορεύω** carry  
**στρατιώτης (m, 1)** soldier, mercenary  
**συμπράσσω** cooperate  
**τιμωρέω** take vengeance  
**τῶ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φάω** appear (dawn)  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**χώρα** place  
**ψηφίζω** count, vote

οί στρατιῶται. ἀκούσαντες οἱ Λάκωνες ταῦτα ἔφασαν ἐρεῖν καὶ ἄλλα ὁποῖα ἂν δύνωνται κράτιστα· καὶ εὐθὺς ἐπορεύοντο ἔχοντες πάντας τοὺς ἐπικαιρίους. ἐλθὼν δὲ ἔλεξε Χαρμῖνος· Εἰ μὲν σύ τι ἔχεις, ὦ Μηδόσαδες, πρὸς ἡμᾶς λέγειν, εἰ δὲ μή, ἡμεῖς πρὸς σέ ἔχομεν. ὁ δὲ Μηδοσάδης μάλα δὴ ὑφειμένως· Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν λέγω, ἔφη, καὶ Σεύθης τὰ αὐτά, ὅτι ἀξιούμεν τοὺς φίλους ἡμῶν γεγενημένους μὴ κακῶς πάσχειν ὑφ' ὑμῶν. ὅ τι γὰρ ἂν τούτους κακῶς ποιήτε ἡμᾶς ἤδη ποιεῖτε· ἡμέτεροι γάρ εἰσιν. Ἡμεῖς τοῖνυν, ἔφασαν οἱ Λάκωνες, ἀπίοιμεν ἂν ὁπότε τὸν μισθὸν ἔχοιεν οἱ ταῦτα ὑμῶν καταπράξαντες· εἰ δὲ μή, ἐρχόμεθα μὲν καὶ νῦν βοηθήσοντες τούτοις καὶ τιμωρησόμενοι ἄνδρας οἱ τούτους παρὰ τοὺς ὄρκους ἠδίκησαν. ἦν δὲ δὴ καὶ ὑμεῖς τοιοῦτοι ἦτε, ἐνθένδε ἀρξόμεθα τὰ δίκαια λαμβάνειν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· Ἐθέλοιτε ἂν τούτοις, ὦ Μηδόσαδες, ἐπιτρέψαι, ἐπειδὴ φίλους ἔφατε εἶναι ὑμῶν, ἐν ᾧ τῇ χώρᾳ ἐσμέν, ὁπότερ' ἂν ψηφίσωνται, εἴθ' ὑμᾶς προσήκειν ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἀπιέναι εἴθ' ἡμᾶς; ὁ δὲ ταῦτα μὲν οὐκ ἔφη· ἐκέλευε δὲ μάλιστα μὲν αὐτῶ τὸν Λάκωνε ἐλθεῖν παρὰ Σεύθην περὶ τοῦ μισθοῦ, καὶ οἴεσθαι ἂν Σεύθην πείσαι· εἰ δὲ μή, Ξενοφῶντα σὺν αὐτῷ πέμπειν, καὶ συμπράξειν ὑπισχνεῖτο. ἐδείτο δὲ τὰς κόμας μὴ καίειν.

Ἐντεῦθεν πέμπουσι Ξενοφῶντα καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ ἐδόκουν ἐπιτηδειότατοι εἶναι. ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν λέγει πρὸς Σεύθην· Οὐδὲν ἀπαιτήσων, ὦ Σεύθη, πάρεμι, ἀλλὰ διδάξων, ἦν δύνωμαι, ὡς οὐ

οἱ στρατιῶται. ἀκούσαντες οἱ Λάκωνες ταῦτα ἔφασαν ἐρεῖν καὶ ἄλλα  
 |whatever kind| γαι κράτιστα· καὶ εὐθὺς ἐπορεύοντο ἔχοντες πάντας  
 τοὺς ἐπικαιρίους. ἐλθὼν δὲ ἔλεξε Χαρμῖνος· Εἰ μὲν σὺ τι ἔχεις, ὦ  
 Μηδόσαδες, πρὸς ἡμᾶς λέγειν, εἰ δὲ μή, ἡμεῖς πρὸς σὲ ἔχομεν. ὁ  
 δὲ Μηδοσάδης μάλα δὴ ὑφειμένως· Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν λέγω, ἔφη, καὶ  
 Σεύθης τὰ αὐτά, ὅτι ἀξιοῦμεν τοὺς φίλους ἡμῶν γεγενημένους μὴ  
 κακῶς πάσχειν ὑφ' ὑμῶν. ὅ τι γὰρ ἂν τούτους κακῶς ποιῆτε ἡμᾶς  
 ἤδη ποιεῖτε· ἡμέτεροι γάρ εἰσιν. Ἡμεῖς τοίνυν, ἔφασαν οἱ Λάκωνες,  
 ἀπίοιμεν ἂν ὁπότε τὸν μισθὸν ἔχοιεν οἱ ταῦτα ὑμῶν |accomplish, εἰ  
 |build|  
 δὲ μή, ἐρχόμεθα μὲν καὶ νῦν βοηθήσοντες τούτοις καὶ τιμωρησόμενοι  
 ἄνδρας οἱ τούτους παρὰ τοὺς ὄρκους ἠδίκησαν. ἦν δὲ δὴ καὶ ὑμεῖς  
 τοιοῦτοι ἦτε, |hence| ἀρξόμεθα τὰ δίκαια λαμβάνειν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν  
 εἶπεν· Ἐθέλοιτε ἂν τούτοις, ὦ Μηδόσαδες, ἐπιτρέψαι, |after; ; λους  
 |because|  
 |φάω?: ᾧ appear (dawn) ; ὁρ. φημί?: . say;|which of two, 'ίσωνται, εἴθ'  
 (+inf) think |either of two|  
 ὑμᾶς προσῆκεν ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἀπιέναι εἴθ' ἡμᾶς; ὁ δὲ ταῦτα μὲν οὐκ  
 ἔφη· ἐκέλευε δὲ μάλιστα μὲν αὐτῶ τῶ Λάκωνε ἐλθεῖν παρὰ Σεύθην  
 περὶ τοῦ μισθοῦ, καὶ οἶεσθαι ἂν Σεύθην |πειῖσα?: ' ὀbedience, ' subjuction ; or  
 |πάσχω?: suffer ; or πείθω?: persuade|  
 σὺν αὐτῷ πέμπειν, καὶ |cooperate| ὑπισχνεῖτο. εἰδὼς δὲ τὰς |village  
 μὴ καίειν.

Ἐντεῦθεν πέμπουσι Ξενοφῶντα καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ ἐδόκουν  
 ἐπιτηδειότατοι εἶναι. ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν λέγει πρὸς Σεύθην· Οὐδὲν  
 |demand . ὦ Σεύθη, πάρεμι, ἀλλὰ διδάξων, ἦν δύνωμαι, ὡς οὐ  
 to have  
 |returned|

accordingly promised not to leave, until the soldiers have got their dues.” The Lacedaemonians accepted the suggestion: they would apply these arguments and others the most forcible they could hit upon; and with the proper representatives of the army, they immediately set off.

On their arrival Charminus spoke: “If you have anything to say to us, Medosades, say it; but if not, we have something to say to you.” And Medosades submissively made answer: “I say,” said he, “and Seuthes says the same: we think we have a right to ask that those who have become our friends should not be ill-treated by you; whatever ill you do to them you really do to us, for they are a part of us.” “Good!” replied the Lacedaemonians, “and we intend to go away as soon as those who won for you the people and the territory in question have got their pay. Failing that, we are coming without further delay to assist them and to punish certain others who have broken their oaths and done them wrong. If it should turn out that you come under this head, when we come to exact justice, we shall begin with you.” Xenophon added: “Would you prefer, Medosades, to leave it to these people themselves, in whose country we are (your friends, since this is the designation you prefer), to decide by ballot, which of the two should leave the country, you or we?” To that proposal he shook his head, but he trusted the two Laconians might be induced to go to Seuthes about the pay, adding, “Seuthes, I am sure, will lend a willing ear;” or if they could not go, then he prayed them to send Xenophon with himself, promising to lend the latter all the aid in his power, and finally he begged them not to burn the villages. Accordingly they sent Xenophon, and with him a serviceable staff. Being arrived, he addressed Seuthes thus:—

“Seuthes, I am here to advance no claims, but to show you, if I can, how unj ust

*vocabulary*

<b>αἰσχρός</b> shameful	forget ~Lethe; also καταλήθομαι
<b>ἀλήθεια</b> truth	<b>μείων</b> less, smaller
<b>ἀναμνησκω</b> (+2 acc) remind	<b>νομίζω</b> consider customary
someone	<b>οἰδέω</b> swell
<b>ἄξιος</b> worthy ~axiom	<b>οἶμαι</b> suppose, hope; also οὔομαι,
<b>ἀπαιτέω</b> demand to have returned	<b>οὔομαι</b> suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,
<b>ἀπειλή</b> boast, threat	<b>οὔομαι</b>
<b>ἀπιστέω</b> disbelieve	<b>πλανάω</b> lead astray
<b>ἄπιστος</b> not trusting, not trustworthy	<b>πρόθυμος</b> willing, eager
<b>ἀποδίδωμι</b> repay	<b>προίημι</b> send forth, abandon
<b>ἀπολαμβάνω</b> receive, recover, take	<b>στρατιώτης</b> (m, 1) soldier, mercenary
aside, cut off	<b>συστρατεύω</b> join in an expedition
<b>ἀρχήν</b> (adv) originally	<b>τάλαντον</b> scale, a unit of weight
<b>ἀσκέω</b> work on	<b>τίη</b> strengthened form of τί
<b>ἄτιμος</b> without honor	<b>τοσοῦτος</b> so much
<b>βία</b> strength, force	<b>τριάκοντα</b> thirty
<b>βιόω</b> live ~biology	<b>ὑπεῖπον</b> say as preface, premise
<b>δέος</b> -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos	<b>ὑπέχω</b> hold out one's hand; submit to;
<b>διαπράσσω</b> travel over, accomplish	also ὑποσχέθω
<b>δίδημι</b> should; bind; need, fail; also	<b>ὑπισχνέομαι</b> promise, agree to do; also
<b>δέω</b>	<b>ὑπίσχομαι</b>
<b>ἔάω</b> let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,	<b>ὑπίσχομαι</b> promise, agree to do; also
not worry about	<b>ὑπισχνέομαι</b>
<b>ἐπαίρω</b> lift, raise	<b>φανερός</b> visible, conspicuous
<b>καθίστημι</b> set down, land	<b>χώρα</b> place
<b>λανθάνω</b> escape notice; (mp+gen)	<b>ώθέω</b> push

δικαίως μοι ἠχθέσθης ὅτι ὑπὲρ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἀπήτουν σε προθύμως ἃ ὑπέσχοιο αὐτοῖς· σοὶ γὰρ ἔγωγε οὐχ ἦττον ἐνόμιζον σύμφορον εἶναι ἀποδοῦναι ἢ ἐκείνοις ἀπολαβεῖν. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ οἶδα μετὰ τοὺς θεοὺς εἰς τὸ φανερόν σε τούτους καταστήσαντας, ἐπεὶ γε βασιλέα σε ἐποίησαν πολλῆς χώρας καὶ πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων ὥστε οὐχ οἷόν τέ σοι λανθάνειν οὔτε ἦν τι καλὸν οὔτε ἦν τι αἰσχρὸν ποιήσης. τοιούτω δὲ ὄντι ἀνδρὶ μέγα μὲν μοι ἐδόκει εἶναι μὴ δοκεῖν ἀχαρίστως ἀποπέμψασθαι ἄνδρας ἐνεργέτας, μέγα δὲ εὖ ἀκούειν ὑπὸ ἑξακισχιλίων ἀνθρώπων, τὸ δὲ μέγιστον μηδαμῶς ἄπιστον σαυτὸν καταστήσαι ὅ τι λέγοις. ὁρῶ γὰρ τῶν μὲν ἀπίστων ματαίους καὶ ἀδυνάτους καὶ ἀτίμους τοὺς λόγους πλανωμένους· οἱ δ' ἂν φανεροὶ ὦσιν ἀλήθειαν ἀσκούντες, τούτων οἱ λόγοι, ἦν τι δέωνται, οὐδὲν μείον δύνανται ἀνύσασθαι ἢ ἄλλων ἢ βία· ἦν τέ τινας σωφρονίζειν βούλωνται, γιγνώσκω τὰς τούτων ἀπειλὰς οὐχ ἦττον σωφρονιζούσας ἢ ἄλλων τὸ ἦδη κολάζειν· ἦν τέ τῇ τι ὑπισχνῶνται οἱ τοιοῦτοι ἄνδρες, οὐδὲν μείον διαπράττονται ἢ ἄλλοι παραχρῆμα διδόντες· ἀναμνήσθητι δὲ καὶ σὺ τί προτελέσας ἡμῖν συμμάχους ἡμᾶς ἔλαβες. οἶσθ' ὅτι οὐδέν· ἀλλὰ πιστευθεὶς ἀληθεύσειν ἃ ἔλεγες ἐπήρας τοσοῦτους ἀνθρώπους συστρατεύεσθαι τε καὶ κατεργάσασθαι σοὶ ἀρχὴν οὐ τριάκοντα μόνον ἀξίαν ταλάντων, ὅσα οἶονται δεῖν οὗτοι νῦν ἀπολαβεῖν, ἀλλὰ πολλαπλασίων. οὐκοῦν τοῦτο μὲν πρῶτον τὸ πιστεῦεσθαι, τὸ



δικαίως μοι ἠχθέσθης ὅτι ὑπὲρ τῶν στρατιωτῶν |demand  
 προθύμως ἂ |<sup>to have</sup> <sup>return</sup> <sup>ed</sup> <sup>είζον</sup> <sup>or</sup> <sup>ὑπίσχομαι?:</sup> hold out one's hand; submit to ;  
 σύμφορον εἶναι ἀποδοῦναι ἢ ἐκείνοις |receive, recover, take <sup>μέν γὰρ</sup>  
 οἶδα μετὰ τοὺς θεοὺς εἰς τὸ φανερόν σε τούτους καταστήσαντας,  
 ἐπεὶ γε βασιλέα σε ἐποίησαν πολλῆς χώρας καὶ πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων·  
 ὥστε οὐχ οἷόν τέ σοι λανθάνειν οὔτε ἦν τι καλὸν οὔτε ἦν τι  
 αἰσχρὸν ποιήσης. τοιούτῳ δὲ ὄντι ἀνδρὶ μέγα μὲν μοι ἐδόκει  
 εἶναι μὴ δοκεῖν ἀχαρίστως ἀποπέμψασθαι ἄνδρας εὐεργέτας, μέγα  
 δὲ εὖ ἀκούειν ὑπὸ ἑξακισχιλίων ἀνθρώπων, τὸ δὲ μέγιστον  
 μηδαμῶς ἄπιστον σαυτὸν καταστήσαι ὅ τι λέγεις. ὀρῶ γὰρ  
 τῶν μὲν ἀπίστων ματαίους καὶ ἀδυνάτους καὶ |without <sup>τοὺς</sup>  
 λόγους πλανωμένους· οἱ δ' ἂν φανεροὶ ὦσιν ἀλήθειαν |honor  
 τούτων οἱ λόγοι, ἦν τι δέωνται, οὐδὲν |less, <sup>ἔ</sup>νανται ἀνύσασθαι  
 ἢ ἄλλων ἢ βία· ἦν τέ τις σωφρονίζειν βούλωνται, γινώσκω  
 τὰς τούτων |boast, <sup>οὐχ ἦττον σωφρονιζούσας ἢ ἄλλων τὸ ἦδη</sup>  
 κολάζειν· ἦν τέ τῆ τι |threat  
 διαπράττονται ἢ ἄλλοι παραχρήμα |promise, <sup>οἱ τοιοῦτοι ἄνδρες, οὐδὲν</sup> |less,  
 οὐ τί προτελέσας ἡμῖν συμμάχους ἡμᾶς ἔλαβες. οἶσθ' ὅτι οὐδέν· |agree to do |smaller  
 ἀλλὰ πιστευθεὶς ἀληθεύσειν ἂ ἔλεγες ἐπήρας τοσούτους ἀνθρώπους  
 |join in an <sup>τε καὶ κατεργάσασθαί σοι</sup> |(adv) originally <sup>ἴ</sup>ντα  
 |expedition  
 μόνον ἀξίαν ταλάντων, ὅσα οἴονται δεῖν οὗτοι νῦν |receive, recover, take  
 πολλαπλασιῶν. οὐκοῦν τοῦτο μὲν πρῶτον τὸ πιστεῦσθαι, τὸ |cut off

it was on your part to be angered with me because I zealously demanded of you on behalf of the soldiers what you promised them. According to my belief, it was no less to your interest to deliver it up, than it was to theirs to receive it. I cannot forget that, next to the gods, it was they who raised you up to a conspicuous eminence, when they made you king of large territory and many men, a position in which you cannot escape notice, whether you do good or do evil. For a man so circumstanced, I regarded it as a great thing that he should avoid the suspicion even of ungrateful parting with his benefactors. It was a great thing, I thought, that you should be well spoken of by six thousand human beings; but the greatest thing of all, that you should in no wise discredit the sincerity of your own word. For what of the man who cannot be trusted? I see that the words of his mouth are but vain words, powerless, and unhonoured; but with him who is seen to regard truth, the case is otherwise. He can achieve by his words what another achieves by force. If he seeks to bring the foolish to their senses— his very frown, I perceive, has a more sobering effect than the chastisement inflicted by another. Or in negotiations the very promises of such an one are of equal weight with the gifts of another.

”Try and recall to mind in your own case, what advance of money you made to us to purchase our alliance. You know you did not advance one penny. It was simply confidence in the sincerity of your word which incited all these men to assist you in your campaign, and so to acquire for you an empire, worth many times more than thirty talents, which is all

*vocabulary*

**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**αἰσχρός** shameful  
**ἀνάγκη** force, necessity  
**ἀναμνησκω** (+2 acc) remind someone  
**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck  
**ἀρχήν** (adv) originally  
**αὖθις** back, again, moreover ~after  
**βασιλεία** kingdom  
**βασιλεύω** be king  
**διό** because of which  
**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved  
**ἐπιχειρέω** lay hands on  
**εὐχομαι** declare, boast; pray (εὐχος)  
**ἐφίστημι** stand ready, take a stand  
**ιδιώτης** -ου (m, 1) private, not public  
**καταπράσσω** accomplish, build  
**κατέχω** hold down; cover; also **κατασχεθεῖν**  
**κίνδυνος** (ὑ) danger  
**κρείσων** more powerful  
**λείπω** leave something; depart ~eclipse; also **λιπάω**  
**μείζον** more greatly

**μήτε** neither...nor...  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**οἰδέω** swell  
**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι, οἶομαι  
**οἷς** sheep ~ewe  
**ὁπότε** when; also ὀπότε  
**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὀδός  
**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend  
**πλήθος** -υς (3) numerical superiority  
**πλήθω** be filled ~plenum  
**πρόθυμος** willing, eager  
**πῶς** how? why?  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τίη** strengthened form of τί  
**ὑπείκω** withdraw  
**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do; also **ὑπίσχομαι**  
**φιλία** friendship  
**φοβέω** drive away ~phobia  
**φόβος** fear, rout, panic ~phobia  
**χαλεπός** hard to bear  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also **καταχέω**  
**χοῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions

καὶ τὴν βασιλείαν σοι κατεργασάμενον, τούτων τῶν χρημάτων πιπράσκεται. ἴθι δὴ ἀναμνήσθητι πῶς μέγα ἡγοῦ τότε καταπρᾶξαι ἃ νῦν καταστρεψάμενος ἔχεις. ἐγὼ μὲν εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι ηὔξω ἂν τὰ νῦν πεπραγμένα μᾶλλον σοι καταπραχθῆναι ἢ πολλαπλάσια τούτων τῶν χρημάτων γενέσθαι. ἐμοὶ τοίνυν μείζον βλάβος καὶ αἴσχιον δοκεῖ εἶναι τὸ ταῦτα νῦν μὴ κατασχέιν ἢ τότε μὴ λαβεῖν, ὅσῳ περ χαλεπώτερον ἐκ πλουσίου πένητα γενέσθαι ἢ ἀρχὴν μὴ πλουτῆσαι, καὶ ὅσῳ λυπηρότερον ἐκ βασιλέως ἰδιώτην φανῆναι ἢ ἀρχὴν μὴ βασιλεῦσαι. οὐκοῦν ἐπίστασαι μὲν ὅτι οἱ νῦν σοι ὑπήκοοι γενόμενοι οὐ φιλία τῇ σῇ ἐπέισθησαν ὑπὸ σοῦ ἄρχεσθαι ἀλλ' ἀνάγκη, καὶ ὅτι ἐπιχειροῖεν ἂν πάλιν ἐλεύθεροι γίνεσθαι, εἰ μὴ τις αὐτοὺς φόβος κατέχοι. ποτέρως οὖν οἶμι μᾶλλον ἂν φοβεῖσθαι τε αὐτοὺς καὶ σωφρονεῖν τὰ πρὸς σέ, εἰ ὀρώεν σοι τοὺς στρατιώτας οὔτω διακειμένους ὡς νῦν τε μένοντας ἄν, εἰ σὺ κελεύεις, αὐθὶς τ' ἂν ταχὺ ἐλθόντας, εἰ δέοι, ἄλλους τε τούτων περὶ σοῦ ἀκούοντας πολλὰ ἀγαθὰ ταχὺ ἂν σοι ὅποτε βούλοιο παραγενέσθαι, ἢ εἰ καταδοξάσειαν μήτ' ἂν ἄλλους σοι ἐλθεῖν δι' ἀπιστίαν ἐκ τῶν νῦν γεγενημένων τούτους τε αὐτοῖς εὐνουστέρους εἶναι ἢ σοί; ἀλλὰ μὴν οὐδὲ πλήθει γε ἡμῶν λειφθέντες ὑπεῖξάν σοι, ἀλλὰ προστατῶν ἀπορία. οὐκοῦν νῦν καὶ τοῦτο κίνδυνος μὴ λάβωσι προστατάς αὐτῶν τινὰς τούτων οἱ νομίζουσιν ὑπὸ σοῦ ἀδικεῖσθαι, ἢ καὶ τούτων κρείττονας τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους, ἐὰν μὲν οἱ στρατιῶται ὑπισχνῶνται προθυμότερον

καὶ τὴν βασιλείαν σοι κατεργασάμενον, τούτων τῶν χρημάτων  
 πιπράσκειται. ἴθι δὴ ἀναμνήσθητι πῶς μέγα ἡγοῦ τότε **|accomplish,**  
 ἂ νῦν καταστρεψάμενος ἔχεις. ἐγὼ μὲν εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι ἠὔξω ἂν τὰ **|build**  
 νῦν πεπραγμένα μᾶλλον σοι **|accomplish,** ἢ πολλαπλάσια τούτων  
 τῶν χρημάτων γενέσθαι. ἐμοὶ τοίνυν **|build** **|μεῖζον?: ᾗ more greatly? ; or μέγας?: big,**  
 δοκεῖ εἶναι τὸ ταῦτα νῦν μὴ κατασχέειν ἢ τότε μὴ λαβεῖν, ὅσῳ περ  
 χαλεπώτερον ἐκ πλουσίου πένητα γενέσθαι ἢ **|great, marvelous** **|(adv) originally** ἴσαι,  
 καὶ ὅσῳ λυπηρότερον ἐκ βασιλέως **|private, not public**, **|(adv) originally**  
 βασιλεῦσαι. οὐκοῦν ἐπίστασαι μὲν ὅτι οἱ νῦν σοι ὑπήκοοι γενόμενοι  
 οὐ **|friendship** ἢ ἐπέισθησαν ὑπὸ σοῦ ἄρχεσθαι ἀλλ' ἀνάγκη, καὶ  
 ὅτι ἐπιχειροῖεν ἂν πάλιν ἐλεύθεροι γίνεσθαι, εἰ μὴ τις αὐτοὺς  
 φόβος κατέχει. ποτέρως οὖν **|ὄις?: ᾗ sheep? ; or** βεῖσθαι τε αὐτοὺς  
 καὶ σωφρονεῖν τὰ πρὸς σέ, εἰ ὀρῶέν σοι τοὺς στρατιώτας οὕτω  
 διακειμένους ὡς νῦν τε μένοντας ἄν, εἰ σὺ κελεύεις, αὐθὶς τ' ἂν  
 ταχὺ ἐλθόντας, εἰ δέοι, ἄλλους τε τούτων περὶ σοῦ ἀκούοντας πολλὰ  
 ἀγαθὰ ταχὺ ἂν σοι ὀπότε βούλοιο παραγενέσθαι, ἢ εἰ καταδοξάσειαν  
 μήτ' ἂν ἄλλους σοι ἐλθεῖν δι' ἀπιστίαν ἐκ τῶν νῦν γεγενημένων  
 τούτους τε αὐτοῖς εὐνουστέρους εἶναι ἢ σοί; ἀλλὰ μὴν οὐδὲ πλήθει  
 γε ἡμῶν λειφθέντες **|withdraw** ἰ, ἀλλὰ προσστατῶν **|difficulty,**  
 νῦν καὶ τοῦτο κίνδυνος μὴ λάβωσι προστάτας αὐτῶν τινος τούτων  
 οἱ νομίζουσιν ὑπὸ σοῦ ἀδικεῖσθαι, ἢ καὶ τούτων κρείττονας τοὺς  
 Λακεδαιμονίους, ἐὰν μὲν οἱ στρατιώται **|promise,** προθυμότερον  
**|agree to do**

they now claim to receive. Here then, first of all, goes the credit which won for you your kingdom, sold for so mean a sum. Let me remind you of the great importance which you then attached to the acquisition of your present conquests. I am certain that to achieve what stands achieved to-day, you would willingly have foregone the gain of fifty times that paltry sum. To me it seems that to lose your present fortune were a more serious loss than never to have won it; since surely it is harder to be poor after being rich than never to have tasted wealth at all, and more painful to sink to the level of a subject, being a king, than never to have worn a crown.

“You cannot forget that your present vassals were not persuaded to become your subjects out of love for you, but by sheer force; and but for some restraining dread they would endeavour to be free again to-morrow. And how do you propose to stimulate their sense of awe, and keep them in good behaviour towards you? Shall they see our soldiers so disposed towards you that a word on your part would suffice to keep them now, or if necessary would bring them back again to-morrow? while others hearing from us a hundred stories in your praise, hasten to present themselves at your desire? Or will you drive them to conclude adversely, that through mistrust of what has happened now, no second set of soldiers will come to help you, for even these troops of ours are more their friends than yours? And indeed it was not because they fell short of us in numbers that they became your subjects, but from lack of proper leaders. There is a danger, therefore, now lest they should choose as their protectors some of us who regard ourselves as wronged by you, or even better men than us— the Lacedaemonians themselves; supposing our soldiers undertake to serve with

*vocabulary***ἀναλίσκω** spend, use up**ἄξιος** worthy ~axiom**ἀποδίδωμι** repay**ἀπολαμβάνω** receive, recover, take  
aside, cut off**ἀργύριον** small coin**ἀριθμός** number**δέκατος** tenth**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos**δηλέομαι** hurt, spoil, steal ~delenda;  
also διαδηλέομαι**διαφθείρω** destroy; pf.: to be beside  
oneself**δούλειος** of a slave**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
not worry about**εἰρήνη** peace**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also**ἐλαστρέω****ἐλαχύς** small; comp.: less ~light**ἐνιαυτός** cycle of a year**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel**ἐχθρός** hated, distasteful ~external**ἠώς ἠοῦς** (f) dawn ~Eocene**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon;  
also καταλείπω**κρατέω** rule ~democracy**κρείσσω** more powerful**κτάομαι** acquire, possess (κτῆμα)**μέρος** -υς (n, 3) part**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι,  
οἴομαι**οἶς** sheep ~ewe**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**ὀφείλω** owe, should, if only**πειράω** try, test ~empirical; also  
πειρητίζω**πλέος** full; also πλεῖος, πλέως**πλέω** sail, float ~float**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until**πρόθυμος** willing, eager**προνοέω** foresee, think of**στρατιά** army**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary**τίη** strengthened form of τί**ὑπάρχω** start, lead, set an example**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy**χώρα** place

αὐτοῖς συστρατεύσεσθαι, ἂν τὰ παρὰ σοῦ νῦν ἀναπράξωσιν, οἱ δὲ Λακεδαιμόνιοι διὰ τὸ δεῖσθαι τῆς στρατιᾶς συναινέσωσιν αὐτοῖς ταῦτα. ὅτι γε μὴν οἱ νῦν ὑπὸ σοὶ Θρᾶκες γενόμενοι πολὺ ἂν προθυμότερον ἴοιεν ἐπὶ σε ἢ σὺν σοι οὐκ ἄδηλον· σοῦ μὲν γὰρ κρατοῦντος δουλεία ὑπάρχει αὐτοῖς, κρατουμένου δέ σου ἐλευθερία. εἰ δὲ καὶ τῆς χώρας προνοεῖσθαι ἤδη τι δεῖ ὡς σῆς οὔσης, ποτέρως ἂν οἶε ἀπαθῆ κακῶν μᾶλλον αὐτὴν εἶναι, εἰ οὖτοι οἱ στρατιῶται ἀπολαβόντες ἂ ἐγκαλοῦσιν εἰρήνην καταλιπόντες οἴχοντο, ἢ εἰ οὖτοι τε μένοιεν ὡς ἐν πολεμῷ σύ τε ἄλλους πειρῶο πλέονας τούτων ἔχων ἀντιστρατοπεδεύεσθαι δεομένους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων; ἀργύριον δὲ ποτέρως ἂν πλέον ἀναλωθείη, εἰ τούτοις τὸ ὀφειλόμενον ἀποδοθείη, ἢ εἰ ταῦτά τε ὀφείλουτο ἄλλους τε κρείττονας δέοι σε μισθοῦσθαι; ἀλλὰ γὰρ Ἡρακλεΐδη, ὡς πρὸς ἐμὲ ἐδήλου, πάμπολυ δοκεῖ τούτο τὸ ἀργύριον εἶναι. ἢ μὴν πολὺ γέ ἐστιν ἔλαττον νῦν σοι καὶ λαβεῖν τούτο καὶ ἀποδοῦναι ἢ πρὶν ἡμᾶς ἐλθεῖν πρὸς σὲ δέκατον τούτου μέρος. οὐ γὰρ ἀριθμὸς ἐστιν ὁ ὀρίζων τὸ πολὺ καὶ τὸ ὀλίγον, ἀλλ' ἡ δύναμις τοῦ τε ἀποδιδόντος καὶ λαμβάνοντος. σοὶ δὲ νῦν ἢ κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν πρόσσδος πλείων ἔσται ἢ ἔμπροσθεν τὰ παρόντα πάντα ἂ ἐκέκτησο. ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ Σεύθη, ταῦτα ὡς φίλου ὄντος σου προνουούμην, ὅπως σύ τε ἄξιος δοκοῖς εἶναι ὧν οἱ θεοὶ σοι ἔδωκαν ἀγαθῶν ἐγὼ τε μὴ διαφθαρείην ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ. εὖ γὰρ ἴσθι ὅτι νῦν ἐγὼ οὐτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν βουλόμενος κακῶς ποιῆσαι δυνηθείην σὺν ταύτῃ



αὐτοῖς συστρατεύεσθαι, ἂν τὰ παρὰ σοῦ νῦν ἀναπράξωσιν, οἱ δὲ Λακεδαιμόνιοι διὰ τὸ δεῖσθαι τῆς στρατιᾶς συνανέσωσιν αὐτοῖς ταῦτα. ὅτι γε μὴν οἱ νῦν ὑπὸ σοὶ Θρᾶκες γενόμενοι πολὺ ἂν προθυμότερον ἴοιεν ἐπὶ σε ἢ σὺν σοι οὐκ ἄδηλον· σοῦ μὲν γὰρ κρατοῦντος δουλεία ὑπάρχει αὐτοῖς, κρατουμένου δέ σου ἐλευθερία. εἰ δὲ καὶ τῆς χώρας **foresee,** ἤδη τι δεῖ ὡς σῆς οὔσης, ποτέρως **think of** ἂν **οἴζις?: sheep ; or** μᾶλλον αὐτὴν εἶναι, εἰ οὗτοι οἱ στρατιῶται **οἴομαι?: suppose** **receive, recover, take** λούσιν εἰρήνην καταλιπόντες οἴχοντο, ἢ εἰ οὗτοί **aside, cut off** τε μένοιεν ὡς ἐν πολεμίᾳ σύ τε ἄλλους πειρώω πλέονας τούτων ἔχων ἀντιστρατοπεδεύεσθαι δεομένους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων; ἀργύριον δὲ ποτέρως ἂν πλέον **spend, use up** σύτοις τὸ ὀφειλόμενον ἀποδοθῆι, ἢ εἰ ταῦτά τε ὀφείλουτο ἄλλους τε κρείττονας δέοι σε μισθοῦσθαι; ἀλλὰ γὰρ Ἡρακλεῖδῃ, ὡς πρὸς ἐμὲ ἐδήλου, πάμπλου δοκεῖ τοῦτο τὸ ἀργύριον εἶναι. ἢ μὴν πολὺ γέ ἐστιν ἔλαττον νῦν σοι καὶ λαβεῖν τοῦτο καὶ ἀποδοῦναι ἢ πρὶν ἡμᾶς ἐλθεῖν πρὸς σὲ δέκατον τούτου μέρος. οὐ γὰρ ἀριθμὸς ἐστὶν ὁ ὀρίζων τὸ πολὺ καὶ τὸ ὀλίγον, ἀλλ' ἡ δύναμις τοῦ τε ἀποδιδόντος καὶ λαμβάνοντος. σοὶ δὲ νῦν ἢ κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν πρόσσδος πλείων ἔσται ἢ ἔμπροσθεν τὰ παρόντα πάντα ἂ ἐκέκτησο. ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ Σεύθη, ταῦτα ὡς φίλου ὄντος σου προνουούμην, ὅπως σύ τε ἄξιος δοκοῖς εἶναι ὧν οἱ θεοὶ σοι ἔδωκαν ἀγαθῶν ἐγὼ τε μὴ διαφθαρεῖν ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ. εὐ γὰρ ἴσθι ὅτι νῦν ἐγὼ οὗτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν βουλόμενος κακῶς ποιῆσαι δυνηθεῖν σὺν ταύτῃ

more enthusiasm, if the debt you owe to them be first exacted; and the Lacedaemonians, who need their services, consent to this request. It is plain, at any rate, that the Thracians, now prostrate at your feet, would display far more enthusiasm in attacking, than in assisting you; for your mastery means their slavery, and your defeat their liberty.

”Again, the country is now yours, and from this time forward you have to make provision for what is yours; and how will you best secure it an immunity from ill? Either these soldiers receive their dues and go, leaving a legacy of peace behind, or they stay and occupy an enemy’s country, whilst you endeavour, by aid of a still larger army, to open a new campaign and turn them out; and your new troops will also need provisions. Or again, which will be the greater drain on your purse? to pay off your present debt, or, with that still owing, to bid for more troops, and of a better quality?

“Heracleides, as he used to prove to me, finds the sum excessive. But surely it is a far less serious thing for you to take and pay it back to-day than it would have been to pay the tithe of it, before we came to you; since the limit between less and more is no fixed number, but depends on the relative capacity of payer and recipient, and your yearly income now is larger than the whole property which you possessed in earlier days.

”Well, Seuthes, for myself these remarks are the expression of friendly forethought for a friend. They are expressed in the double hope that you may show yourself worthy of the good things which the gods have given you, and that my reputation may not be ruined with the army. For I must assure you that to-day, if I wished to injure a foe, I could not do so with this army. Nor again, if I wished to come and help you, should I be competent to the task; such is the disposition of the troops towards me. And yet I call you

*vocabulary***αἰσχρός** shameful**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology**ἄλλως** otherwise**ἀπαιτέω** demand to have returned**ἀποδίδωμι** repay**ἀργύριον** small coin**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general, governor**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await

~doctrine

**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,

ἐξαποδύνω

**δῶρον** gift ~donate**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel**ἔργω** bound, fend off; do; also

ἐργαθεῖν

**ἴδιος** private, personal**ιδίω** sweat; also ἰδρῶ**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit**κατανοέω** observe well, understand**κτῆμα** (n, 3) possession**λαμπρός** brilliant ~lamp**μέλεος** vain, idle, useless**μέλος** -υς (n, 3) limb**μέλω** be in/on the mind**μηδέ** and not; not even**μήτε** neither...nor...**νομίζω** consider customary**οἶομαι** suppose, hope; also οἶμαι, οἶομαι**οἶς** sheep ~ewe**ὄμνυμι** swear**οὐδός** (f) threshold, road, journey ~odometer; also ὁδός**πότερος** which, whichever of two**πῶποτε** never**στρατιά** army**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary**σφάλλω** stagger**τίη** strengthened form of τί**τιμάω** honor, exalt**τρόπος** (m/n) turn; manner, kind, fashion**ὑπέχω** hold out one's hand; submit to; also ὑποσχέθω**ὑπίσχομαι** promise, agree to do; also

ὑπισχνέομαι

**φιλέω** love ~philanthropy**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω**ψυχή** soul ~psychology

τῇ στρατιᾷ οὐτ' ἂν εἴ σοι πάλιν βουλοίμην βοηθήσαι, ἱκανὸς  
 ἂν γενοίμην. οὕτω γὰρ πρὸς με ἡ στρατιὰ διάκειται. καίτοι  
 αὐτόν σε μάρτυρα σὺν θεοῖς εἰδόσι ποιοῦμαι ὅτι οὔτε ἔχω παρὰ  
 σοῦ ἐπὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις οὐδὲν οὔτε ἤτησα πώποτε εἰς τὸ ἴδιον  
 τὰ ἐκείνων οὔτε ἂ ὑπέσχου μοι ἀπήτησα· ὄμνυμι δέ σοι μηδὲ  
 ἀποδιδόντος δέξασθαι ἂν, εἰ μὴ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἔμελλον τὰ ἑαυτῶν  
 συναπολαμβάνειν. αἰσχρὸν γὰρ ἦν τὰ μὲν ἐμὰ διαπεπράχθαι, τὰ  
 δ' ἐκείνων περιδεῖν κακῶς ἔχοντα ἄλλως τε καὶ τιμώμενον ὑπ'  
 ἐκείνων. καίτοι Ἡρακλεΐδῃ γε λῆρος πάντα δοκεῖ εἶναι πρὸς τὸ  
 ἀργύριον ἔχειν ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου· ἐγὼ δέ, ὦ Σεύθη, οὐδὲν νομίζω  
 ἀνδρὶ ἄλλως τε καὶ ἄρχοντι κάλλιον εἶναι κτῆμα οὐδὲ λαμπρότερον  
 ἀρετῆς καὶ δικαιοσύνης καὶ γενναιότητος. ὁ γὰρ ταῦτα ἔχων πλουτεῖ  
 μὲν ὄντων φίλων πολλῶν, πλουτεῖ δὲ ἄλλων βουλομένων γενέσθαι,  
 καὶ εὖ μὲν πράττων ἔχει τοὺς συνησθησομένους, ἐὰν δέ τι σφαλῇ,  
 οὐ σπανίζει τῶν βοηθησόντων. ἀλλὰ γὰρ εἰ μήτε ἐκ τῶν ἔργων  
 κατέμαθες ὅτι σοι ἐκ τῆς ψυχῆς φίλος ἦν, μήτε ἐκ τῶν ἐμῶν  
 λόγων δύνασαι τοῦτο γινῶναι, ἀλλὰ τοὺς τῶν στρατιωτῶν λόγους  
 πάντας κατανόησον· παρήσθα γὰρ καὶ ἤκουες ἂ ἔλεγον οἱ ψέγειν  
 ἐμὲ βουλόμενοι. κατηγοροῦν γάρ μου πρὸς Λακεδαιμονίους ὡς σὲ  
 περὶ πλείονος ποιοίμην ἢ Λακεδαιμονίους, αὐτοὶ δ' ἐνέκαλον ἐμοὶ ὡς  
 μᾶλλον μέλει μοι ὅπως τὰ σὰ καλῶς ἔχοι ἢ ὅπως τὰ ἑαυτῶν· ἔφασαν  
 δέ με καὶ δῶρα ἔχειν παρὰ σοῦ. καίτοι τὰ δῶρα ταῦτα πότερον οἶει

τῇ στρατιᾷ οὐτ' ἂν εἶ σοι πάλιν βουλοίμην βοηθήσαι, ἴκανός  
 ἂν γενοίμην. οὕτω γὰρ πρὸς με ἡ στρατιὰ διάκειται. καίτοι  
 αὐτόν σε μάρτυρα σὺν θεοῖς εἰδῶσι ποιῶμαι ὅτι οὔτε ἔχω παρὰ  
 σοῦ ἐπὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις οὐδὲν οὔτε ἤτησα |never εἰς τὸ ἴδιον  
 τὰ ἐκείνων οὔτε ἂ |**ὑπέχω?:** , |demand ἔνυμι δέ σοι μηδὲ  
 ἀποδιδόντος δέξασθαι |**hold out to have**  
 συναπολαμβάνειν. αὐτῶν |**one's' m'hand; returned** ὄνται ἔμελλον τὰ ἑαυτῶν  
 δ' ἐκείνων περιδεῖν |**submit to ; or** κακῶς ἔχοντα ἄλλως τε καὶ τιμώμενον ὑπ'  
 ἐκείνων. καίτοι Ἡρακλείδῃ γε λήρος πάντα δοκεῖ εἶναι πρὸς τὸ  
 ἀργύριον ἔχειν ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου· ἐγὼ δέ, ὦ Σεύθη, οὐδὲν νομίζω  
 ἀνδρὶ ἄλλως τε καὶ ἄρχοντι κάλλιον εἶναι κτῆμα οὐδὲ λαμπρότερον  
 ἀρετῆς καὶ δικαιοσύνης καὶ γενναϊότητος. ὁ γὰρ ταῦτα ἔχων πλουτεῖ  
 μὲν ὄντων φίλων πολλῶν, πλουτεῖ δὲ ἄλλων βουλομένων γενέσθαι,  
 καὶ εὖ μὲν πράττων ἔχει τοὺς συνησθησομένους, ἐὰν δέ τι |**stagger**  
 οὐ σπανίζει τῶν βοηθησόντων. ἀλλὰ γὰρ εἰ μήτε ἐκ τῶν ἔργων  
 κατέμαθες ὅτι σοι ἐκ τῆς ψυχῆς φίλος ἦν, μήτε ἐκ τῶν ἐμῶν  
 λόγων |**enter, put on, ) γνῶναι, ἀλλὰ τοὺς τῶν στρατιωτῶν λόγους**  
 |**strip off** πάντας κατανόησον· παρήσθα γὰρ καὶ ἤκουες ἂ ἔλεγον οἱ ψέγειν  
 ἐμὲ βουλόμενοι. κατηγοροῦν γάρ μου πρὸς Λακεδαιμονίους ὡς σὲ  
 περὶ πλείονος ποιόμην ἢ Λακεδαιμονίους, αὐτοὶ δ' ἐνεκάλουν ἐμοὶ ὡς  
 μᾶλλον |**μέλεος?: vain, idle ; or μέλος?: limb** ὡς τὰ ἑαυτῶν ἔφασαν  
 |**; or μέλω?: be in/on the mind** δέ με καὶ δῶρα ἔχειν παρὰ σοῦ. καίτοι τὰ δῶρα ταῦτα |**which,**  
 |**whichever** ὅς?: sheep ; or  
 |**οἴομαι?: sup-**  
 |**pose**

to witness, along with the gods who know, that never have I received anything from you on account of the soldiers. Never to this day have I, to my private gain, asked for what was theirs, nor even claimed the promises which were made to myself; and I swear to you, not even had you proposed to pay me my dues, would I have accepted them, unless the soldiers also had been going to receive theirs too; how could I? How shameful it would have been in me, so to have secured my own interests, whilst I disregarded the disastrous state of theirs, I being so honoured by them. Of course to the mind of Heracleides this is all silly talk; since the one great object is to keep money by whatever means. That is not my tenet, Seuthes. I believe that no fairer or brighter jewel can be given to a man, and most of all a prince, than the threefold grace of valour, justice, and generosity. He that possesses these is rich in the multitude of friends which surround him; rich also in the desire of others to be included in their number. While he prospers, he is surrounded by those who will rejoice with him in his joy; or if misfortune overtake him, he has no lack of sympathisers to give him help. However, if you have failed to learn from my deeds that I was, heart and soul, your friend; if my words are powerless to reveal the fact to-day, I would at least direct your attention to what the soldiers said; you were standing by and heard what those who sought to blame me said. They accused me to the Lacedaemonians, and the point of their indictment was that I set greater store by yourself than by the Lacedaemonians; but, as regards themselves, the charge was that I took more pains to secure the success of your interests than their own. They suggested that I had actually taken gifts from you. Was it, do you suppose, because they detected some ill-will in me towards you

*vocabulary*

**αἰτιάομαι** blame  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἀνέχω** raise; mid: endure, submit  
**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ῶ) show, point out;  
 (mid) declare  
**ἀποδίδωμι** repay  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away  
**ἄτιμος** without honor  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**δείκνυμι** show, point out  
**δέος** -υς (n, 3) fear ~Deimos  
**δέχομαι** accept, receive, await  
 ~doctrine  
**διδάσκω** teach ~didactic  
**διό** because of which  
**δῶρον** gift ~donate  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἔπομαι** follow, support, chase ~sequel  
**εὐεργεσία** good deed, public service  
**ἡδέως** pleasantly  
**ἠώς** ἠοῦς (f) dawn ~Eocene  
**κατανοέω** observe well, understand  
**καταράομαι** curse  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**ξένιος** of hospitality

**οἶμαι** suppose, hope; also οὔομαι,  
 οἶομαι  
**ὄμμα** (n) eye  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo  
**πάλη** wrestling  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**προθυμία** zeal, alacrity  
**πῶποτε** never  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιότης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τολμάω** dare (τλάω)  
**τῶ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπέχω** hold out one's hand; submit to;  
 also ὑποσχέθω  
**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do; also  
 ὑπίσχομαι  
**ὑπίσχομαι** promise, agree to do; also  
 ὑπισχνέομαι  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**φωνέω** sound, speak ~megaphone  
**φωνή** sound; voice ~megaphone  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω  
**χίλιοι** thousand ~kilo-  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

αὐτοὺς κακόνοιάν τινα ἐνιδόντας μοι πρὸς σέ ἐπιτασθαί με ἔχειν παρὰ σοῦ ἢ προθυμίαν πολλήν περὶ σέ κατανοήσαντας; ἐγὼ μὲν οἶμαι πάντας ἀνθρώπους νομίζειν εὖνοιαν δεῖν ἀποδείκνυσθαι τούτῳ παρ' οὗ ἂν δῶρά τις λαμβάνῃ. σὺ δὲ πρὶν μὲν ὑπηρετήσαι τί σοι ἐμὲ ἐδέξω ἠδέως καὶ ὄμμασι καὶ φωνῇ καὶ ξενίοις καὶ ὅσα ἔσοιτο ὑπισχνούμενος οὐκ ἐνεπίμπλασο· ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέπραξας ἃ ἐβούλου καὶ γεγένῃσαι ὅσον ἐγὼ ἐδυνάμην μέγιστος, νῦν οὕτω με ἄτιμον ὄντα ἐν τοῖς στρατιώταις τολμᾶς περιορᾶν; ἀλλὰ μὴν ὅτι σοι δόξει ἀποδοῦναι πιστεύω καὶ τὸν χρόνον διδάξειν σε καὶ αὐτόν γέ σε οὐχὶ ἀνέξεσθαι τοὺς σοὶ προεμένους εὐεργεσίαν ὀρώντά σοι ἐγκαλοῦντας. δέομαι οὖν σου, ὅταν ἀποδιδῶς, προθυμῆσθαι ἐμὲ παρὰ τοῖς στρατιώταις τοιοῦτον ποιῆσαι οἶόνπερ καὶ παρέλαβες.

Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Σεύθης κατηράσατο τῷ αἰτίῳ τοῦ μὴ πάλαι ἀποδεδόσθαι τὸν μισθόν· καὶ πάντες Ἡρακλείδην τοῦτον ὑπόπτεισαν εἶναι· ἐγὼ γάρ, ἔφη, οὔτε διανοήθην πώποτε ἀποστερήσαι ἀποδώσω τε. ἐντεῦθεν πάλιν εἶπεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν· Ἐπεὶ τοίνυν διανοῆ ἀποδιδόναι, νῦν ἐγὼ σου δέομαι δι' ἐμοῦ ἀποδοῦναι, καὶ μὴ περιδεῖν με διὰ σέ ἀνομοίως ἔχοντα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ νῦν τε καὶ ὅτε πρὸς σέ ἀφικόμεθα. ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἀλλ' οὐτ' ἐν τοῖς στρατιώταις ἔσει δι' ἐμὲ ἀτιμότερος ἂν τε μένης παρ' ἐμοὶ χιλίους μόνους ὀπίστας ἔχων, ἐγὼ σοι τά τε χωρῖα ἀποδώσω καὶ τᾶλλα ἃ ὑπεσχόμην. ὁ δὲ πάλιν εἶπε· Ταῦτα μὲν ἔχειν οὕτως οὐχ οἶόν τε· ἀπόπεμπε δὲ ἡμᾶς. Καὶ μὴν,



αὐτοὺς κακόνοιάν τινα ἐνιδόντας μοι πρὸς σέ |blame , με ἔχειν παρὰ  
 σοῦ ἢ προθυμίαν πολλήν περὶ σέ κατανοήσαντας; ἐγὼ μὲν οἶμαι  
 πάντας ἀνθρώπους νομίζειν εὖνοιαν δεῖν ἀποδείκνυσθαι τούτῳ παρ'  
 οὔ ἂν δῶρά τις λαμβάνῃ. σὺ δὲ πρὶν μὲν ὑπηρετῆσαι τί σοι ἐμὲ ἐδέξω  
 |pleasantly |eye καὶ φωνῇ καὶ |of hospitality ἔσοιτο |promise, agree  
 οὐκ ἐνεπίμπλασο· ἐπεὶ δὲ |accomplish, ἵ ἐβούλου καὶ γεγένησαι ὅσον  
 |build  
 ἐγὼ |enter, put on, στος, νῦν οὕτω με |without ἴτα ἐν τοῖς στρατιώταις  
 |strip off |honor  
 τολμῆς περιορᾶν; ἀλλὰ μὴν ὅτι σοι δόξει ἀποδοῦναι πιστεύω καὶ τὸν  
 χρόνον διδάξειν σε καὶ αὐτόν γέ σε οὐχὶ ἀνέξεσθαι τοὺς σοὶ προεμένους  
 |good deed, ἵντά σοι ἐγκαλοῦντας. δέομαι οὖν σου, ὅταν ἀποδιδῶς,  
 |public service  
 προθυμείσθαι ἐμὲ παρὰ τοῖς στρατιώταις τοιοῦτον ποιῆσαι οἷόνπερ  
 καὶ παρέλαβες.

|ἀκέομαι?: ἥ heal, ῑ fix ῑ ; or |curse τῷ |guilty τοῦ μὴ πάλαι  
 |ἀκούω?: hear, listen  
 ἀποδεδόσθαι τὸν μισθόν· καὶ πάντες Ἡρακλείδην τοῦτον |guess, observe, be suspi-  
 |cious of  
 εἶναι· ἐγὼ γάρ, ἔφη, οὔτε διειροήθην |never ἀποστερήσαι ἀποδώσω  
 τε. ἐντεῦθεν πάλιν εἶπεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν· Ἐπεὶ τοῖνυν διανοῆ ἀποδιδόναι,  
 νῦν ἐγὼ σου δέομαι δι' ἐμοῦ ἀποδοῦναι, καὶ μὴ περιδεῖν με διὰ σέ  
 ἀνομοίως ἔχοντα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ νῦν τε καὶ ὅτε πρὸς σέ ἀφικόμεθα.  
 ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' οὐτ' ἐν τοῖς στρατιώταις ἔσει δι' ἐμὲ |without  
 |honor  
 ἂν τε μένης παρ' ἐμοῦ χιλίους μόνους ὀπίστας ἔχων, ἐγὼ σοι τά  
 τε χωρία ἀποδώσω καὶ τᾶλλα ἂ |ὀπέχω?: hold out one's hand; submit to ; or  
 |ὀπίσχομαι?: promise, agree to do  
 Ταῦτα μὲν ἔχειν οὕτως οὐχ οἷόν τε· ἀπόπεμπε δὲ ἡμᾶς. Καὶ μὴν,

that they made the allegation? Was it not rather, that they had noticed my abundant zeal on your behalf?

“All men believe, I think, that a fund of kindly feeling is due to him from whom we accept gifts. But what is your behaviour? Before I had ministered to you in any way, or done you a single service, you welcomed me kindly with your eyes, your voice, your hospitality, and you could not sate yourself with promises of all the fine things that were to follow. But having once achieved your object, and become the great man you now are, as great indeed as I could make you, you can stand by and see me degraded among my own soldiers! Well, time will teach you— that I fully believe— to pay whatever seems to you right, and even without the lessons of that teacher you will hardly care to see those who have spent themselves in benefiting you, become your accusers. Only, when you do pay your debt, I beg of you to use your best endeavour to right me with the soldiers. Leave me at least where you found me; that is all I ask.”

After listening to this appeal, Seuthes called down curses on him, whose fault it was, that the debt had not long ago been paid, and, if the general suspicion was correct, this was Heracleides. “For myself,” said Seuthes, “I never had any idea of robbing you of your just dues. I will repay.” Then Xenophon rejoined: “Since you are minded to pay, I only ask that you will do so through me, and will not suffer me on your account to hold a different position in the army from what I held when we joined you.” He replied: “As far as that goes, so far from holding a less honoured position among your own men on my account, if you will stay with me, keeping only a thousand heavy infantry, I will deliver to you the fortified places and everything I promised.” The other answered: “

*vocabulary*

**ἀδικέω** be, do wrong; wrong someone  
**αἰδῶ** sing; also αἰδιδιάω  
**αἶρω** raise, win ~aorta; also αἰέρω  
**αἰτία** blame, credit, cause ~etiology  
**αἴτιος** guilty ~etiology; also αἰτίος  
**ἀμείνων** better  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀποδίδωμι** repay  
**ἄρα** interrogative pcl  
**ἀργύριον** small coin  
**ἀσφαλής** going ahead, standing firm  
**αὐτοῦ** here, there  
**ἀφίημι** throw, release, use up; also  
 ἀφήνω  
**βοῦς βοός** (m/f) cow, ox; shield  
 ~bovine  
**γελάω** laugh, smile, laugh at  
**διό** because of which  
**εἰκός** οἰκότος (n, 3) likely  
**εἴκοσι** twenty  
**ἑκατόν** hundred  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐπάγω** drive game; induce belief  
**ἐπαινέω** concur, concur with  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable

**καθίστημι** set down, land  
**μικρός** small; also σμικρός  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**νομίζω** consider customary  
**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὅπου** where  
**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds; also  
 πρόβασις  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
**προστίθημι** set in place  
**πω** not at all; until now, (not) yet  
**στρατιά** army  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τάλαντον** scale, a unit of weight  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape  
**φυλάσσω** guard, be on guard  
 ~phylactery  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χέω** pour, scatter; also καταχέω

ἔφη ὁ Σεύθης, καὶ ἀσφαλέστερόν γέ σοι οἶδα ὄν παρ' ἐμοὶ μένειν ἢ ἀπιέναι. ὁ δὲ πάλιν εἶπεν· Ἄλλα τὴν μὲν σὴν πρόνοιαν ἐπαινώ· ἐμοὶ δὲ μένειν οὐχ οἶόν τε· ὅπου δ' ἂν ἐγὼ ἐντιμότερος ᾶ, νόμιζε καὶ σοὶ τοῦτο ἀγαθὸν ἔσσεσθαι. ἐντεῦθεν λέγει Σεύθης· Ἀργύριον μὲν οὐκ ἔχω ἀλλ' ἢ μικρόν τι, καὶ τοῦτό σοι δίδωμι, τάλαντον· βοῦς δὲ ἑξακοσίους καὶ πρόβατα εἰς τετρακισχίλια καὶ ἀνδράποδα εἰς εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατόν. ταῦτα λαβὼν καὶ τοὺς τῶν ἀδικησάντων σε ὀμήρους προσλαβὼν ἄπιθι. γελάσας ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· Ἦν οὖν μὴ ἐξικνῆται ταῦτ' εἰς τὸν μισθόν, τίνος τάλαντον φήσω ἔχειν; ἄρ' οὐκ, ἐπειδὴ καὶ ἐπικίνδυνόν μοι ἔστιν, ἀπιόντα γε ἄμεινον φυλάττεσθαι πέτρους; ἤκουες δὲ τὰς ἀπειλάς. τότε μὲν δὴ αὐτοῦ ἔμεινε.

Τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἀπέδωκέ τε αὐτοῖς ἃ ὑπέσχετο καὶ τοὺς ἐλώντας συνέπεμψεν. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται τέως μὲν ἔλεγον ὡς ὁ Ξενοφῶν οἴχοιτο ὡς Σεύθην οἰκήσων καὶ ἃ ὑπέσχετο αὐτῷ ληψόμενος· ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον, ἤσθησαν καὶ προσέθεον. Ξενοφῶν δ' ἐπεὶ εἶδε Χαρμῖνόν τε καὶ Πολύνικον· Ταῦτα, ἔφη, σέσωσται δι' ὑμᾶς τῇ στρατιᾷ καὶ παραδίδωμι αὐτὰ ἐγὼ ὑμῖν· ὑμεῖς δὲ διαθέμενοι διάδοτε τῇ στρατιᾷ. οἱ μὲν οὖν παραλαβόντες καὶ λαφυροπώλας καταστήσαντες ἐπώλουν, καὶ πολλὴν εἶχον αἰτίαν. Ξενοφῶν δὲ οὐ προσῆει, ἀλλὰ φανερός ἦν οἴκαδε παρασκευαζόμενος· οὐ γάρ πω ψήφος αὐτῷ ἐπῆκτο Ἀθήνησι περὶ φυγῆς. προσελθόντες δὲ αὐτῷ οἱ ἐπιτήδαιοι ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἐδέοντο μὴ

ἔφη ὁ Σεύθης, καὶ ἀσφαλέςτερόν γέ σοι οἶδα ὄν παρ' ἐμοὶ μένειν ἢ ἀπίεσαι. ὁ δὲ πάλιν εἶπεν· Ἄλλὰ τὴν μὲν σὴν πρόνοιαν ἐπαινῶ· ἐμοὶ δὲ μένειν οὐχ οἶόν τε· ὅπου δ' ἂν ἐγὼ ἐντιμότερος ᾶ, νόμιζε καὶ σοὶ τοῦτο ἀγαθὸν ἔσσεσθαι. ἐντεῦθεν λέγει Σεύθης· Ἀργύριον μὲν οὐκ ἔχω ἀλλ' ἢ μικρόν τι, καὶ τοῦτό σοι **|δίδομι?: should; bind; need, fail ; or δίδωμι?: give; permit** καὶ πρόβατα εἰς τετρακισχίλια καὶ **|slave** εἰς εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατόν. ταῦτα λαβὼν καὶ τοὺς τῶν ἀδικησάντων σε ὀμήρους προσλαβὼν ἄπιθι. γελάσας ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· Ἦν οὖν μὴ **|arrive at** ταῦτ' εἰς τὸν μισθόν, τίνος τάλαντον φήσω ἔχειν; ἄρ' οὐκ, **|after; because** ἢ ἐπικίνδυνόν μοι ἔστιν, ἀπίοντα γε ἄμεινον φυλάττεσθαι **|rock** ἤκουες δὲ τὰς

**|boast, threat** τότε μὲν δὴ αὐτοῦ ἔμεινε.

Τῇ δ' **|the next; later** ἔκ τε αὐτοῖς ᾶ **|ὑπέχω?: hold out one's hand; submit to ; or ὑπίσχομαι?: promise, agree to do** **|send with** οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται **|meanwhile, for a while** εἶπον ὡς ὁ Ξενοφῶν οἴχοιτο ὡς Σεύθην οἰκήσων καὶ ᾶ **|ὑπέχω?: hold out one's hand; submit to ; or ὑπίσχομαι?: promise, agree to do** ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον, ἤσθησαν καὶ προσέθειον. Ξενοφῶν δ' ἐπεὶ εἶδε

Χαρμῖνόν τε καὶ Πολύνικον· Ταῦτα, ἔφη, σέσωσται δι' ὑμᾶς τῇ στρατιᾷ καὶ παραδίδωμι αὐτὰ ἐγὼ ὑμῖν· ὑμεῖς δὲ **|arrange; set out goods for sale** διάδοτε τῇ στρατιᾷ. οἱ μὲν οὖν παραλαβόντες καὶ λαφυροπώλας καταστήσαντες **|go back and forth** ἄλην εἶχον αἰτίαν. Ξενοφῶν δὲ οὐ προσῆει, ἀλλὰ φανερὸς ἦν οἴκαδε παρασκευαζόμενος· οὐ γάρ πω ψήφος αὐτῷ ἐπῆκτο Ἀθήνησι περὶ φυγῆς. προσελθόντες δὲ αὐτῷ οἱ ἐπιτήδειοι ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἐδέοντο μὴ

On these terms I may not accept them, only let us go free.” “Nay, but I know,” said Seuthes, “that it is safer for you to bide with me than to go away.” Then Xenophon again: “For your forethought I thank you, but I may not stay. Somewhere I may rise to honour, and that, be sure, shall redound to your gain also.” Thereupon Seuthes spoke: “Of silver I have but little; that little, however, I give to you, one talent; but of beeves I can give you six hundred head, and of sheep four thousand, and of slaves six score. These take, and the hostages besides, who wronged you, and begone.” Xenophon laughed and said: “But supposing these all together do not amount to the pay; for whom is the talent, shall I say? It is a little dangerous for myself, is it not? I think I had better be on the look-out for stones when I return. You heard the threats?”

So for the moment he stayed there, but the next day Seuthes gave up to them what he had promised, and sent an escort to drive the cattle. The soldiers at first maintained that Xenophon had gone to take up his abode with Seuthes, and to receive what he had been promised; so when they saw him they were pleased, and ran to meet him. And Xenophon, seeing Charminus and Polynicus, said: “Thanks to your intervention, this much has been saved for the army. My duty is to deliver this fraction over to your keeping; do you divide and distribute it to the soldiers.” Accordingly they took the property and appointed official vendors of the booty, and in the end incurred considerable blame. Xenophon held aloof. In fact it was no secret that he was making his preparations to return home, for as yet the vote of banishment had not been passed at Athens. But the authorities in the camp came to him and begged him not to go away until he had

*vocabulary*

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀπέρχομαι** go away, depart  
**ἀποδίδωμι** repay  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**γράφω** scratch, incise ~photograph  
**ἔθω** be accustomed, tend to ~ethology  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐπόμενυμι** take an oath at one's bidding  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἤμερος** domesticated  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater; also **θάομαι**, **θῆομαι**  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**ἱερή** holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph; also  
**ἱερόν**, **ἱερός**, **ἱρός**  
**ἱκανός** sufficient; competent, fit  
**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis  
**μειλίχιος** pleasing, gentle; also **μείλιχος**

**μηδέ** and not; not even  
**ξένιος** of hospitality  
**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics  
**οἰκέω** inhabit  
**οἴκοι** at home  
**παρίστημι** stand, be present  
**πεντήκοντα** fifty  
**ποτός** potable  
**πρίν** before, formerly; negated: until  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army  
**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult  
**συμφέρω** bring together (**φέρω**)  
**τῶ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑστεραίῳς** the next; later  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χοῖρος** young fattened pig  
**χοῖμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**χρυσίον** gold coin

ἀπελθεῖν πρὶν ἀπαγάγοι τὸ στράτευμα καὶ Θίβρωνι παραδοίῃ.

## 7.8

Ἐντεῦθεν διέπλευσαν εἰς Λάμψακον, καὶ ἀπαντᾶ τῷ Ξενοφῶντι Εὐκλείδης μάντις Φλειάσιος ὁ Κλεαγόρου υἱὸς τοῦ τὰ ἐντοίχια ἐν Λυκείῳ γεγραφότος. οὗτος συνήδετο τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὅτι ἐσέσωστο, καὶ ἠρώτα αὐτὸν πόσον χρυσίον ἔχει. ὁ δ' αὐτῷ ἐπομόσας εἶπεν ἧ μὴν ἔσεσθαι μηδὲ ἐφόδιον ἰκανὸν οἴκαδε ἀπίοντι, εἰ μὴ ἀπόδοιτο τὸν ἵππον καὶ ἅ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν εἶχεν. ὁ δ' αὐτῷ οὐκ ἐπίστευεν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἔπεμψαν Λαμψακηνοὶ ξένια τῷ Ξενοφῶντι καὶ ἔθνε τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι, παρεστήσατο τὸν Εὐκλείδην· ἰδὼν δὲ τὰ ἱερά ὁ Εὐκλείδης εἶπεν ὅτι πείθοιτο αὐτῷ μὴ εἶναι χρήματα. Ἄλλ' οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι κὰν μέλλῃ ποτὲ ἔσεσθαι, φαίνεται τι ἐμπόδιον, ἂν μηδὲν ἄλλο, σὺ σαυτῷ. συνωμολόγει ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν· Ἐμπόδιος γάρ σοι ὁ Ζεὺς ὁ μελίχιός ἐστι, καὶ ἐπήρετο εἰ ἤδη θύσειεν, ὥσπερ οἴκοι, ἔφη, εἰώθειν ἐγὼ ὑμῖν θύεσθαι καὶ ὀλοκαυτεῖν. ὁ δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἐξ ὅτου ἀπεδήμησε τεθυκέναι τούτῳ τῷ θεῷ. συνεβούλευσεν οὖν αὐτῷ θύεσθαι καθὰ εἰώθει, καὶ ἔφη συνοίσειν ἐπὶ τὸ βέλτιον. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία Ξενοφῶν προσελθὼν εἰς Ὀφρύνιον ἐθύετο καὶ ὠλοκαύτει χοίρους τῷ πατρίῳ νόμῳ, καὶ ἐκαλλιέρει. καὶ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἀφικνεῖται Βίων καὶ Ναυσικλείδης χρήματα δώσοντες τῷ στρατεύματι, καὶ ξενοῦνται τῷ Ξενοφῶντι καὶ ἵππον ὃν ἐν Λαμψάκῳ ἀπέδοτο πεντήκοντα δαρεικῶν,



ἀπελθεῖν πρὶν ἀπαγάγοι τὸ στράτευμα καὶ Θίβρωνι παραδοίῃ.

## 7.8

Ἐντεῦθεν διέπλευσαν εἰς Λάμψακον, καὶ ἀπαντᾷ τῷ Ξενοφῶντι  
 Εὐκλείδης |seer Φλειάσιος ὁ Κλεαγόρου υἱὸς τοῦ τὰ ἐντοίχια ἐν  
 Λυκείῳ γεγραφότος. οὗτος συνήδετο τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὅτι ἐσέσωστο,  
 καὶ ἡρώτα αὐτὸν πόσον |gold coin, οἰ. ὁ δ' αὐτῷ |take an oath at  
 ἡ μὴν ἔσεσθαι μηδὲ ἐφόδιον ἰκανὸν οἴκαδε ἀπιόντι, εἰ μὴ ἀπόδοιτο  
 τὸν ἵππον καὶ ἂ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν εἶχεν. ὁ δ' αὐτῷ οὐκ ἐπίστευεν. ἐπεὶ δ'  
 ἔπεμψαν Λαμψακηνοὶ |of hospitality φῶντι καὶ ἔθυε τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι,  
 παρεστήσατο τὸν Εὐκλείδην· ἰδὼν δὲ τὰ ἱερά ὁ Εὐκλείδης εἶπεν ὅτι  
 πείθεται αὐτῷ μὴ εἶναι χρήματα. Ἄλλ' οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι κἂν μέλλῃ  
 ποτὲ ἔσεσθαι, φαίνεται τι ἐμπόδιον, ἂν μηδὲν ἄλλο, σὺ σαυτῷ.  
 συνωμολόγει ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν· Ἐμπόδιος γάρ σοι ὁ Ζεὺς ὁ  
 |pleasing, ἴστι, καὶ ἐπήρετο εἰ ἤδη θύσειεν, ὥσπερ οἴκοι, ἔφη, εἰώθειν  
 |gentle ἐγὼ ὑμῖν θύεσθαι καὶ ὀλοκαυτεῖν. ὁ δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἐξ ὅτου ἀπεδήμησε  
 τεθυκέναι τούτῳ τῷ θεῷ. |give advice; οὖν αὐτῷ θύεσθαι καθὰ  
 |(mid) consult εἰώθει, καὶ ἔφη συνοίσειεν ἐπὶ τὸ βέλτιον. τῇ δὲ |the next; later ἰῶν  
 προσελθὼν εἰς Ὀφρύνιον ἐθύετο καὶ ὀλοκαύτει |young ῶ πατρίῳ  
 |fattened νόμῳ, καὶ ἐκαλλέρει. καὶ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἀ|pigνέεται Βίων καὶ  
 Ναυσικλείδης χρήματα δώσοντες τῷ στρατεύματι, καὶ ξενοῦνται τῷ  
 Ξενοφῶντι καὶ ἵππον ὃν ἐν Λαμψάκῳ ἀπέδοτο πεντήκοντα δαρεικῶν,

conducted the army to its destination, and handed it over to Thibron.

## 7.8

From this place they sailed across to Lampsacus, and here Xenophon was met by Eucleides the soothsayer, a Phliasian, the son of Cleagoras, who painted “the dreams” in the Lycium. Eucleides congratulated Xenophon upon his safe return, and asked him how much gold he had got? and Xenophon had to confess: “Upon my word, I shall have barely enough to get home, unless I sell my horse, and what I have about my person.” The other could not credit the statement. Now when the Lampsacenes sent gifts of hospitality to Xenophon, and he was sacrificing to Apollo, he requested the presence of Eucleides; and the latter, seeing the victims, said: “Now I believe what you said about having no money. But I am certain,” he continued, “if it were ever to come, there is an obstacle in the way. If nothing else, you are that obstacle yourself.” Xenophon admitted the force of that remark. Then the other: “Zeus Meilichios is an obstacle to you, I am sure,” adding in another tone of voice, “have you tried sacrificing to that god, as I was wont to sacrifice and offer whole burnt offerings for you at home?” Xenophon replied that since he had been abroad, he had not sacrificed to that god. Accordingly Eucleides counselled him to sacrifice in the old customary way: he was sure that his fortune would improve. The next day Xenophon went on to Ophrynum and sacrificed, offering a holocaust of swine, after the custom of his family, and the signs which he obtained were favourable. That very day Bion and Nausicleides arrived laden with

*vocabulary*

**ἀνεψιός** cousin ~nepotism  
**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off  
**ἀποδίδωμι** repay  
**ἀπολαμβάνω** receive, recover, take  
 aside, cut off  
**ἀφικνέομαι** arrive  
**δειπνέω** eat, dine  
**διό** because of which  
**εἰλώω** crouch, curl, wrap ~helix  
**εἶτα** then, therefore, next  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐτοιμάζω** get ready  
**ἐτοιμός** ready; fulfilled  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**θύω** rush; sacrifice  
**ἱερή** holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph; also  
**ἱερόν, ἱερός, ἱρός**  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,

## overtake

**λύω** loosen, free, ransom ~loose  
**μάντις -ος (m)** seer ~mantis  
**μέρος -ος (n, 3)** part  
**πεδίον** plain, sea ~foot  
**πιστός** faithful (πειθω)  
**πιστώω** reassure; also (pass) promise  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πορεύω** carry  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**τιμή** honor, value  
**τριακόσιοι** three hundred  
**τῷ** so, therefore; in that case  
**ὑπερβαίνω** pass, transgress  
**ὑποπτεύω** guess, observe, be  
 suspicious of  
**φράζω** consider ~phrase  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χρῆμα -τος (n, 3)** possessions

ὑποπτεύοντες αὐτὸν δι' ἔνδειαν πεπρακέναι, ὅτι ἤκουον αὐτὸν ἤδρασθαι τῷ ἵππῳ, λυσάμενοι ἀπέδωσαν καὶ τὴν τιμὴν οὐκ ἤθελον ἀπολαβεῖν.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τῆς Τρωάδος, καὶ ὑπερβάντες τὴν Ἰδην εἰς Ἄντανδρον ἀφικνοῦνται πρῶτον, εἶτα παρὰ θάλατταν πορευόμενοι τῆς Ἀσίας εἰς Θήβης πεδίον. ἐντεῦθεν δι' Ἀδραμυττίου καὶ Κερτωνοῦ ὁδεύσαντες εἰς Καΐκου πεδίον ἐλθόντες Πέργαμον καταλαμβάνουσι τῆς Μυσίας.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ξενοῦται Ξενοφῶν Ἑλλάδι τῇ Γογγύλου τοῦ Ἐρετριέως γυναικὶ καὶ Γοργίωνος καὶ Γογγύλου μητρὶ. αὕτη δ' αὐτῷ φράζει ὅτι Ἀσιδάτης ἐστὶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἀνὴρ Πέρσης· τοῦτον ἔφη αὐτόν, εἰ ἔλθοι τῆς νυκτὸς σὺν τριακοσίοις ἀνδράσι, λαβεῖν ἂν καὶ αὐτὸν καὶ γυναῖκα καὶ παῖδας καὶ τὰ χρήματα· εἶναι δὲ πολλά. ταῦτα δὲ καθηγησομένους ἔπεμψε τὸν τε αὐτῆς ἀνεψιὸν καὶ Δαφναγόραν, ὃν περὶ πλείστου ἐποιεῖτο. ἔχων οὖν ὁ Ξενοφῶν τούτους παρ' ἑαυτῷ ἐθύετο. καὶ Βασίας ὁ Ἥλειος μάντις παρῶν εἶπεν ὅτι κάλλιστα εἴη τὰ ἱερὰ αὐτῷ καὶ ὁ ἀνὴρ ἀλώσιμος εἴη. δειπνήσας οὖν ἐπορεύετο τούς τε λοχαγοὺς τοὺς μάλιστα φίλους λαβὼν καὶ[...] πιστοὺς γεγενημένους διὰ παντός, ὅπως εὖ ποιῆσαι αὐτούς. συνεχέρονται δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ ἄλλοι βιασάμενοι εἰς ἑξακοσίους· οἱ δὲ λοχαγοὶ ἀπήλανον, ἵνα μὴ μεταδοῖεν τὸ μέρος, ὡς ἐτοίμων δὴ χρημάτων.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο περὶ μέσας νύκτας, τὰ μὲν περίξ ὄντα

|guess, observe, be suspicious of  
 τῶ ἵππῳ, |ειλύω?: curl ; or |λύω?: release  
 ἴν δι' ἔνδειαν πεπρακέναι, ὅτι ἤκουον αὐτὸν ἤδουσαι |receive, recover, take  
 ἄν καὶ τὴν τιμὴν οὐκ ἤθελον |aside, cut off

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τῆς Τρωάδος, καὶ |pass, transgress Ἴδην εἰς Ἄντανδρον ἀφικνοῦνται πρῶτον, εἶτα παρὰ θάλατταν πορευόμενοι τῆς Ἀσίας εἰς Θήβης πεδίων. ἐντεῦθεν δι' Ἄδραμυττίου καὶ Κερτωνοῦ ὁδεύσαντες εἰς Καϊκού πεδίων ἐλθόντες Πέργαμον καταλαμβάνουσι τῆς Μυσίας.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ξενοῦται Ξενοφῶν Ἑλλάδι τῇ Γογγύλου τοῦ Ἐρετριέως γυναικὶ καὶ Γοργίωνος καὶ Γογγύλου μητρὶ. αὕτη δ' αὐτῷ φράζει ὅτι Ἀσιδάτης ἐστὶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἀνὴρ Πέρσης· τοῦτον ἔφη αὐτόν, εἰ ἔλθοι τῆς νυκτὸς σὺν τριακοσίοις ἀνδράσι, λαβεῖν ἂν καὶ αὐτὸν καὶ γυναῖκα καὶ παῖδας καὶ τὰ χρήματα· εἶναι δὲ πολλά. ταῦτα δὲ καθηγησομένους ἔπειψε τὸν τε αὐτῆς |cousin καὶ Δαφναγόραν, ὃν περὶ πλείστου ἐποιεῖτο. ἔχων οὖν ὁ Ξενοφῶν τούτους παρ' ἑαυτῷ ἐθύετο. καὶ Βασίας ὁ Ἥλείος |seer παρὼν εἶπεν ὅτι κάλλιστα εἶη τὰ ἱερὰ αὐτῷ καὶ ὁ ἀνὴρ ἀλώσιμος εἶη. δειπνήσας οὖν ἐπορεύετο τοὺς τε λοχαγοὺς τοὺς μάλιστα φίλους λαβὼν καὶ[...] πιστοὺς γεγενημένους διὰ παντός, ὅπως εὖ ποιήσαι αὐτούς. συνεχέρονται δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ ἄλλοι βιασάμενοι εἰς ἑξακοσίους· οἱ δὲ λοχαγοὶ |expel, ex- 'α μὴ  
 μεταδοῖεν τὸ μέρος, ὡς ἐτοίμων δὴ χρημάτων. |clude, ward  
 |off

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο περὶ μέσας νύκτας, τὰ μὲν περίξ ὄντα

gifts for the army. These two were hospitably entertained by Xenophon, and were kind enough to repurchase the horse he had sold in Lamp-sacus for fifty darics; suspecting that he had parted with it out of need, and hearing that he was fond of the beast they restored it to him, refusing to be remunerated.

From that place they marched through the Troad, and, crossing Mount Ida, arrived at Antandrus, and then pushed along the seaboard of Mysia to the plain of Thebe. Thence they made their way through Adramytium and Certonus by Atarneus, coming into the plain of the Caicus, and so reached Pergamus in Mysia.

Here Xenophon was hospitably entertained at the house of Hellas, the wife of Gongylus the Eretrian, the mother of Gorgion and Gongylus. From her he learnt that Asidates, a Persian notable, was in the plain. "If you take thirty men and go by night, you will take him prisoner," she said, "wife, children, money, and all; of money he has a store;" and to show them the way to these treasures, she sent her own cousin and Daphnagoras, whom she set great store by. So then Xenophon, with these two to assist, did sacrifice; and Basias, an Eleian, the soothsayer in attendance, said that the victims were as promising as could be, and the great man would be an easy prey. Accordingly, after dinner he set off, taking with him the officers who had been his staunchest friends and confidants throughout; as he wished to do them a good turn. A number of others came thrusting themselves on their company, to

*vocabulary*

**ἄθυμος** having low morale  
**ἀνδράποδον** (m/n, 3) slave  
**ἄπειμι** be absent, go away, return  
**ἀσφαλής** going ahead, standing firm  
**βία** strength, force  
**βοῦς βοός** (m/f) cow, ox; shield  
 ~bovine  
**διαμπερές** right through  
**διαφαίνω** seem, show through (φαίνω)  
**δύνω** enter, put on, strip off; also δύω,  
 ἐξαποδύνω  
**ἐάω** let (+acc+inf), leave; leave alone,  
 not worry about  
**ἐλαύνω** to drive ~elastic; also  
 ἐλαστρέω  
**ἐνδοθεν** from within  
**ἐνταῦθα** thither  
**ἐντός** within  
**ἐπιχειρέω** lay hands on  
**ἥμερος** domesticated  
**ἵππεύς** (m) charioteer; also  
 ἵππιοχάρμης  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon;  
 also καταλείπω  
**μηδέ** and not; not even  
**μηρός** thigh, femur

**μισθοφόρος** mercenary  
**νέος** young; neuter: recently ~neon  
**νόος** mind, intention ~paranoia  
**ὀγδοήκοντα** eighty  
**ὀκτακόσιοι** 800  
**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus  
**ὀπλίτης** (m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman  
**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow  
**πατάσσω** beat (heart)  
**πελταστής** (m) light troops  
**πλεῖστος** most numerous  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds; also  
 πρόβασις  
**προίημι** send forth, abandon  
**προσέχω** direct a thing to  
**πύργος** wall, tower  
**πυργόω** wall, fortify  
**πῶς** how? why?  
**στρατιώτης** (m, 1) soldier, mercenary  
**τοιχος** wall of a house  
**ὕψηλός** high  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape  
**χοῦμα** -τος (n, 3) possessions  
**χωρίον** area; downwards  
**ῥα** season, time ~horoscope

ἀνδράποδα τῆς τύρσιος καὶ χρήματα τὰ πλείστα ἀπέδρα αὐτοὺς παραμελοῦντας, ὡς τὸν Ἀσιδάτην αὐτὸν λάβοιεν καὶ τὰ ἐκείνου. πυργομαχοῦντες δὲ ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἐδύναντο λαβεῖν τὴν τύρσιν ὑψηλὴ γὰρ ἦν καὶ μεγάλη καὶ προμαχεῶνας καὶ ἄνδρας πολλοὺς καὶ μαχίμους ἔχουσα, διορύττειν ἐπεχείρησαν τὸν πύργον. ὁ δὲ τοίχος ἦν ἐπ' ὀκτῶ πλίνθων γηίνων τὸ εὖρος. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ διωρώρυκτο· καὶ ὡς τὸ πρῶτον διεφάνη, ἐπάταξεν ἔνδοθεν βουπόρῳ τις ὀβελίσκῳ διαμπερὲς τὸν μηρὸν τοῦ ἐγγυτάτῳ· τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν ἐκτοξεύοντες ἐποίουν μηδὲ παριέναι ἔτι ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι. κεκραγόντων δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ πυρσευόντων ἐκβοηθοῦσιν Ἰταμένης μὲν ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν, ἐκ Κομανίας δὲ ὀπίλται Ἀσσύριοι καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι ἵππεῖς καὶ οὗτοι βασιλέως μισθοφόροι ὡς ὀγδοήκοντα, καὶ ἄλλοι πελτασταὶ εἰς ὀκτακοσίους, ἄλλοι δ' ἐκ Παρθενίου, ἄλλοι δ' ἐξ Ἀπολλωνίας καὶ ἐκ τῶν πλησίον χωρίων καὶ ἵππεῖς.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ὥρα ἦν σκοπεῖν πῶς ἔσται ἡ ἄφοδος· καὶ λαβόντες ὅσοι ἦσαν βόες καὶ πρόβατα ἤλαυνον καὶ ἀνδράποδα ἐντὸς πλαισίου ποιησάμενοι, οὐ τοῖς χρήμασιν ἔτι προσέχοντες τὸν νοῦν, ἀλλὰ μὴ φυγὴ εἴη ἡ ἄφοδος, εἰ καταλιπόντες τὰ χρήματα ἀπίοιεν, καὶ οἳ τε πολέμοιοι θρασύτεροι εἶεν καὶ οἳ στρατιῶται ἀθυμότεροι· νῦν δὲ ἀπῆσαν ὡς περὶ τῶν χρημάτων μαχοῦμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐώρα Γογγύλος ὀλίγους μὲν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, πολλοὺς δὲ τοὺς ἐπικειμένους, ἐξέρχεται καὶ αὐτὸς βία τῆς μητρὸς ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν,



|slave τῆς τύρσιος καὶ χρήματα τὰ πλείστα ἀπέδρα αὐτοὺς  
 παραμελοῦντας, ὡς τὸν Ἀσιδάτην αὐτὸν λάβοιεν καὶ τὰ ἐκείνου.  
 πυργομαχοῦντες δὲ ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἐδύναντο λαβεῖν τὴν τύρσιν ὑψηλὴ γὰρ  
 ἦν καὶ μεγάλη καὶ προμαχεῶνας καὶ ἄνδρας πολλοὺς καὶ μαχίμους  
 ἔχουσα, διορύττειν ἐπεχείρησαν τὸν πύργον. ὁ δὲ |wall of a house ὡ  
 πλίνθων γηίνων τὸ |width; "(caps) ἢ ἡμέρα διωρῶρυκτο· καὶ ὡς τὸ  
 the east wind  
 πρῶτον |seem, |beat |from within ἴρω τις ὀβελίσκῳ |right  
 show (heart) |through  
 τὸν |thigh through γγυτάτω· τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν ἐκτοξεύοντες ἐποίουν μηδὲ  
 |dangle; pass ὀσφαλὲς εἶναι. κεκραγόντων δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ πυρσευόντων  
 over, allow  
 ἐκβοηθῶσιν Ἰταμένης μὲν ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν, ἐκ Κομανίας δὲ  
 ὀπλίται Ἀσσύριοι καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι ἵππεις καὶ οὗτοι βασιλέως μισθοφόροι  
 ὡς |eighty καὶ ἄλλοι |light εἰς |800 ἄλλοι δ' ἐκ  
 troops  
 Παρθενίου, ἄλλοι δ' ἐξ Ἀπολλωνίας καὶ ἐκ τῶν πλησίον χωρίων καὶ  
 ἵππεις.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ὥρα ἦν σκοπεῖν πῶς ἔσται ἡ ἄφοδος· καὶ λαβόντες  
 ὅσοι ἦσαν βόες καὶ πρόβατα ἤλαννον καὶ |slave ἐντὸς πλαισίου  
 ποιησάμενοι, οὐ τοῖς χρήμασις ἔτι προσέχοντες τὸν νοῦν, ἀλλὰ  
 μὴ φυγὴ εἴη ἡ ἄφοδος, εἰ καταλιπόντες τὰ χρήματα ἀπίοιεν, καὶ  
 οἱ τε πολέμοι θρασύτεροι εἶεν καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται |having low morale  
 δὲ ἀπῆσαν ὡς περὶ τῶν χρημάτων μαχοῦμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἴωρα  
 Γογγύλος ὀλίγους μὲν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, πολλοὺς δὲ τοὺς ἐπικειμένους,  
 ἐξέρχεται καὶ αὐτὸς βία τῆς μητρὸς ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν,

the number of six hundred, but the officers repelled them: "They had no notion of sharing their portion of the spoil," they said, "just as though the property lay already at their feet."

About midnight they arrived. The slaves occupying the precincts of the tower, with the mass of goods and chattles, slipped through their fingers, their sole anxiety being to capture Asidates and his belongings. So they brought their batteries to bear, but failing to take the tower by assault (since it was high and solid, and well supplied with ramparts, besides having a large body of warlike defenders), they endeavoured to undermine it. The wall was eight clay bricks thick, but by daybreak the passage was effected and the wall undermined. At the first gleam of light through the aperture, one of the defendants inside, with a large ox-spit, smote right through the thigh of the man nearest the hole, and the rest discharged their arrows so hotly that it was dangerous to come anywhere near the passage; and what with their shouting and kindling of beacon fires, a relief party at length arrived, consisting of Itabelius at the head of his force, and a body of Assyrian heavy infantry from Comania, and some Hyrcanian cavalry, the latter also being mercenaries of the king. There were eighty of them, and another detachment of light troops, about eight hundred, and more from Parthenium, and more again from Apollonia and the neighbouring places, also cavalry.

It was now high time to consider how they were to beat a retreat. So seizing all the cattle and sheep to be had, with the slaves, they put them within a hollow square and proceed to drive them off. Not

*vocabulary*

ἀκέομαι	heal, fix	κώμη	village
ἀνδράποδον	(m/n, 3) slave	μακρός	long, tall
ἀποβαίνω	leave, get off	ὄπλον	tool, weapon, ship's tackle
ἀσπάζομαι	greet, salute	πάνυ	altogether, very
ἀφικνέομαι	arrive	πιέζω	press, squeeze ~piezoelectric
διαβαίνω	pass over, cross	πολεμέω	make war ~polemic; also
διακόσιοι	two hundred	πολεμίζω, πτολεμίζω	
ἐγγύς	near	πολεμόω	make an enemy of
ἐνταῦθα	thither	πορεύω	carry
ἐξάγω	lead out	ποταμός	river ~hippopotamus
ἔπομαι	follow, support, chase ~sequel	πρό	before, forward ~prolog
ἔργω	bound, fend off; do; also	πρόβατον	cattle, flocks, herds; also
ἐργαθεῖν		πρόβασις	
ζεύγνυμι	yoke, join	στράτευμα	-τος (n, 3) army
ζεῦγος	-υς (n, 3) team of animals	στρατιώτης	(m, 1) soldier, mercenary
ἦκω	to have come	συμπράσσω	cooperate
ἥμισυς	half ~hemisphere	σφενδόνη	sling
θύω	rush; sacrifice	τιτρώσκω	wound, bring to grief
ἱερή	holy, sacrifices ~hieroglyph; also	~trauma; also τρώω	
ἱερόν, ἱερός, ἱρός		τῷ	so, therefore; in that case
ἱκανός	sufficient; competent, fit	ὕστεραῖος	the next; later
κύκλος	circle, wheel ~cycle	φοβέω	drive away ~phobia

βουλόμενος μετασχεῖν τοῦ ἔργου· συνεβοήθει δὲ καὶ Προκλῆς ἐξ Ἀλισάρνης καὶ Τευθρανίας ὁ ἀπὸ Δαμαράτου. οἱ δὲ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἐπεὶ πάνυ ἤδη ἐπιέζοντο ὑπὸ τῶν τοξευμάτων καὶ σφενδονῶν, πορευόμενοι κύκλω, ὅπως τὰ ὄπλα ἔχοιεν πρὸ τῶν τοξευμάτων, μάλιστα διαβαίνουσι τὸν Κάρκασον ποταμόν, τετρωμένοι ἐγγὺς οἱ ἡμίσεις. ἐνταῦθα δὲ Ἀγασίας ὁ Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς τιτρώσκειται, τὸν πάντα χρόνον μαχόμενος πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. καὶ διασφύζονται ἀνδράποδα ὡς διακόσια ἔχοντες καὶ πρόβατα ὅσον θύματα.

Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ θυσάμενος ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐξάγει νύκτωρ πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα, ὅπως ὅτι μακροτάτην ἔλθοι τῆς Λυδίας, εἰς τὸ μὴ διὰ τὸ ἐγγὺς εἶναι φοβεῖσθαι, ἀλλ' ἀφυλακτεῖν. ὁ δὲ Ἀσιδάτης ἀκούσας ὅτι πάλιν ἐπ' αὐτὸν τεθυμένος εἶη ὁ Ξενοφῶν καὶ παντὶ τῷ στρατεύματι ἦξι, ἐξαυλιζέται εἰς κόμας ὑπὸ τὸ Παρθένιον πόλισμα ἐχούσας. ἐνταῦθα οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα συντυγχάνουσι αὐτῷ καὶ λαμβάνουσι αὐτὸν καὶ γυναῖκα καὶ παῖδας καὶ τοὺς ἵππους καὶ πάντα τὰ ὄντα· καὶ οὕτω τὰ πρότερα ἱερὰ ἀπέβη. ἔπειτα πάλιν ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Πέργαμον. ἐνταῦθα τὸν θεὸν ἠσπάσατο Ξενοφῶν· συνέπραττον γὰρ καὶ οἱ Λάκωνες καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ὥστ' ἐξαιρέτα λαβεῖν καὶ ἵππους καὶ ζεύγη καὶ τᾶλλα· ὥστε ἰκανὸν εἶναι καὶ ἄλλον ἤδη εὖ ποιεῖν.

Ἐν τούτῳ Θίβρων παραγενόμενος παρέλαβε τὸ στράτευμα καὶ συμμείξας τῷ ἄλλῳ Ἑλληνικῷ ἐπολέμει πρὸς Τισσαφέρην καὶ

βουλόμενος μετασχεῖν τοῦ ἔργου· συνεβοήθει δὲ καὶ Προκλῆς ἐξ Ἀλισάρνης καὶ Τευθρανίας ὁ ἀπὸ Δαμαράτου. οἱ δὲ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἐπεὶ πάνυ ἤδη ἐπέζοντο ὑπὸ τῶν τοξευμάτων καὶ |sling πορευόμενοι |circle, ὅπως τὰ ὄπλα ἔχοιεν πρὸ τῶν τοξευμάτων, μόλις |wheel |pass over, cross Κάρκασον ποταμόν, τετρωμένοι ἐγγὺς οἱ ἡμίσεις. ἐνταῦθα δὲ Ἀγασίας ὁ Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς |wound, , τὸν πάντα χρόνον μαχόμενος πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. καὶ |bring to |grief|ζώνται |slave ὡς διακόσια ἔχοντες καὶ πρόβατα ὅσον θύματα.

Τῇ δὲ |the next; later ἴμενος ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐξάγει νύκτωρ πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα, ὅπως ὅτι μακροτάτην ἔλθοι τῆς Λυδίας, εἰς τὸ μὴ διὰ τὸ ἐγγὺς εἶναι φοβεῖσθαι, ἀλλ' ἀφυλακτεῖν. ὁ δὲ Ἀσιδάτης |ἀκέομαι?: heal, fix ; or |ἀκούω?: hear, listen πάλιν ἐπ' αὐτὸν τεθυμένος εἶη ὁ Ξενοφῶν καὶ παντὶ τῷ στρατεύματι ἤξει, ἐξαυλίζεται εἰς |village ὑπὸ τὸ Παρθένιον πόλισμα ἐχούσας. ἐνταῦθα οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα συντυγχάνουσιν αὐτῷ καὶ λαμβάνουσιν αὐτὸν καὶ γυναῖκα καὶ παῖδας καὶ τοὺς ἵππους καὶ πάντα τὰ ὄντα· καὶ οὕτω τὰ πρότερα ἱερὰ ἀπέβη. ἔπειτα πάλιν ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Πέργαμον. ἐνταῦθα τὸν θεὸν ἠσπάσατο Ξενοφῶν· |cooperate γὰρ καὶ οἱ Λάκωνες καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ὥστ' ἐξάίρετα λαβεῖν καὶ ἵππους καὶ |ζεῦγος?: team ; or |ζεῦγυμι?: yoke, join ὥστε ἰκανὸν εἶναι καὶ ἄλλον ἤδη εἶ ποιεῖν.

Ἐν τούτῳ Θίβρων παραγενόμενος παρέλαβε τὸ στράτευμα καὶ συμμείξας τῷ ἄλλῳ Ἑλληνικῷ ἐπολέμει πρὸς Τισσαφέρην καὶ

that they had a thought to give to the spoils now, but for precaution's sake and for fear lest if they left the goods and chattels behind and made off, the retreat would rapidly degenerate into a stampede, the enemy growing bolder as the troops lost heart. For the present then they retired as if they meant to do battle for the spoils. As soon as Gongylus espied how few the Hellenes were and how large the attacking party, out he came himself, in spite of his mother, with his private force, wishing to share in the action. Another too joined in the rescue— Procles, from Halisarna and Teuthrania, a descendant of Damaratus. By this time Xenophon and his men were being sore pressed by the arrows and slingstones, though they marched in a curve so as to keep their shields facing the missiles, and even so, barely crossed the river Carcasus, nearly half of them wounded. Here it was that Agasias the Stymphalian, the captain, received his wound, while keeping up a steady unflagging fight against the enemy from beginning to end. And so they reached home in safety with about two hundred captives, and sheep enough for sacrifices.

The next day Xenophon sacrificed and led out the whole army under the cover of night, intending to pierce far into the heart of Lydia with a view to lulling to sleep the enemy's alarm at his proximity, and so in fact to put him off his guard. But Asidates, hearing that Xenophon had again sacrificed with the intention of another attack, and was approaching with his whole army, left his tower and took up quarters in some villages lying under the

*vocabulary*

**ἀνάβασις** -ος (f) going up, mounting,  
going inland

**ἀριθμός** number

**ἄρχων** -οντος (m, 3) leader, general,  
governor

**διακόσιοι** two hundred

**ἑκατόν** hundred

**ἐνιαυτός** cycle of a year

**ἐπέρχομαι** approach, arrive

**ὁδός** (f) threshold, road, journey

~odometer; also οὐδός

**παρασάγγης** (m, 1) Persian unit, ca. 5

km

**πέντε** five ~pentagon

**πεντήκοντα** fifty

**πλήθος** -ους (3) numerical superiority

**στάδιον** (m/n) 200 meters (pl also  
masc)

**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
(pl noun) 200 meters; also σταδίη

**σταθμός** cottage; post; also σταθμόν

**σύμπας** all together

**τρεις** three ~three

**χίλιοι** thousand ~kilo-

**χώρα** place

Φαρνάβαζον. Ἄρχοντες δὲ οἶδε τῆς βασιλέως χώρας ὅσῃν ἐπήλθομεν. Λυδίας Ἀρτίμας, Φρυγίας Ἀρτακάμας, Λυκαονίας καὶ Καππαδοκίας Μιθραδάτης, Κιλικίας Σύννεσις, Φοινίκης καὶ Ἀραβίας Δέρνης, Συρίας καὶ Ἀσσυρίας Βέλεσος, Βαβυλῶνος Ῥωπάρας, Μηδίας Ἀρβάκας, Φασιανῶν καὶ Ἑσπεριτῶν Τιρίβαζος· Καρδοῦχοι δὲ καὶ Χάλυβες καὶ Χαλδαῖοι καὶ Μάκρωνες καὶ Κόλχοι καὶ Μοσσύνοικοι καὶ Κοῖτοι καὶ Τιβαρηνοὶ αὐτόνομοι· Παφλαγονίας Κορύλας, Βιθυνῶν Φαρνάβαζος, τῶν ἐν Εὐρώπῃ Θρακῶν Σεύθης. ἀριθμὸς συμπάσης τῆς ὁδοῦ τῆς ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως σταθμοὶ διακόσιοι δεκαπέντε, παρασάγγαι χίλιοι ἑκατὸν πενήκοντα, στάδια τρισμῦρια τετρακισχίλια διακόσια πενήκοντα πέντε. χρόνου πλῆθος τῆς ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως ἑνιαυτὸς καὶ τρεῖς μῆνες.



Φαρνάβαζον. Ἄρχοντες δὲ οἶδε τῆς βασιλέως χώρας ὅσων ἐπήλθομεν.  
 Λυδίας Ἀρτίμας, Φρυγίας Ἀρτακάμας, Λυκαονίας καὶ Καππαδοκίας  
 Μιθραδάτης, Κιλικίας Σύνενοις, Φοινίκης καὶ Ἀραβίας Δέρνης,  
 Συρίας καὶ Ἀσσυρίας Βέλευς, Βαβυλώνος Ῥωπάρας, Μηδίας  
 Ἀρβάκας, Φασιανῶν καὶ Ἑσπεριτῶν Τιρίβαζος· Καρδοῦχοι δὲ καὶ  
 Χάλυβες καὶ Χαλδαῖοι καὶ Μάκρωνες καὶ Κόλχοι καὶ Μοσσύνοικοι  
 καὶ Κοῖτοι καὶ Τιβαρηνοὶ αὐτόνομοι· Παφλαγονίας Κορύλας,  
 Βιθυνῶν Φαρνάβαζος, τῶν ἐν Εὐρώπῃ Θρακῶν Σεύθης. ἀριθμὸς  
 συμπάσης τῆς ὁδοῦ τῆς 

going up, mount-	καταβάσεως	cottage; post
ing, going inland		

  
 διακόσιοι δεκαπέντε, 

Persian	χίλιοι ἑκατὸν πενήκοντα,	στάδιον?: 200
unit, ca. 5		meters (pl also

  
 τρισμῦρια τετρακισ

km	διακόσια πενήκοντα πέντε.	masc) ; or
		στάδιος?: (adj)

  
 πλήθος τῆς 

going up, mount-	καταβάσεως ἐνιαυτὸς καὶ τρεῖς	standing upright,
ing, going inland		firm; (pl noun)

  
 200 meters

town of Parthenium. Here Xenophon's party fell in with him, and took him prisoner, with his wife, his children, his horses, and all that he had; and so the promise of the earlier victims was literally fulfilled. After that they returned again to Pergamus, and here Xenophon might well thank God with a warm heart, for the Laconians, the officers, the other generals, and the soldiers as a body united to give him the pick of horses and cattle teams, and the rest; so that he was now in a position himself to do another a good turn.

Meanwhile Thibron arrived and received the troops which he incorporated with the rest of his Hellenic forces, and so proceeded to prosecute a war against Tissaphernes and Pharnabazus.